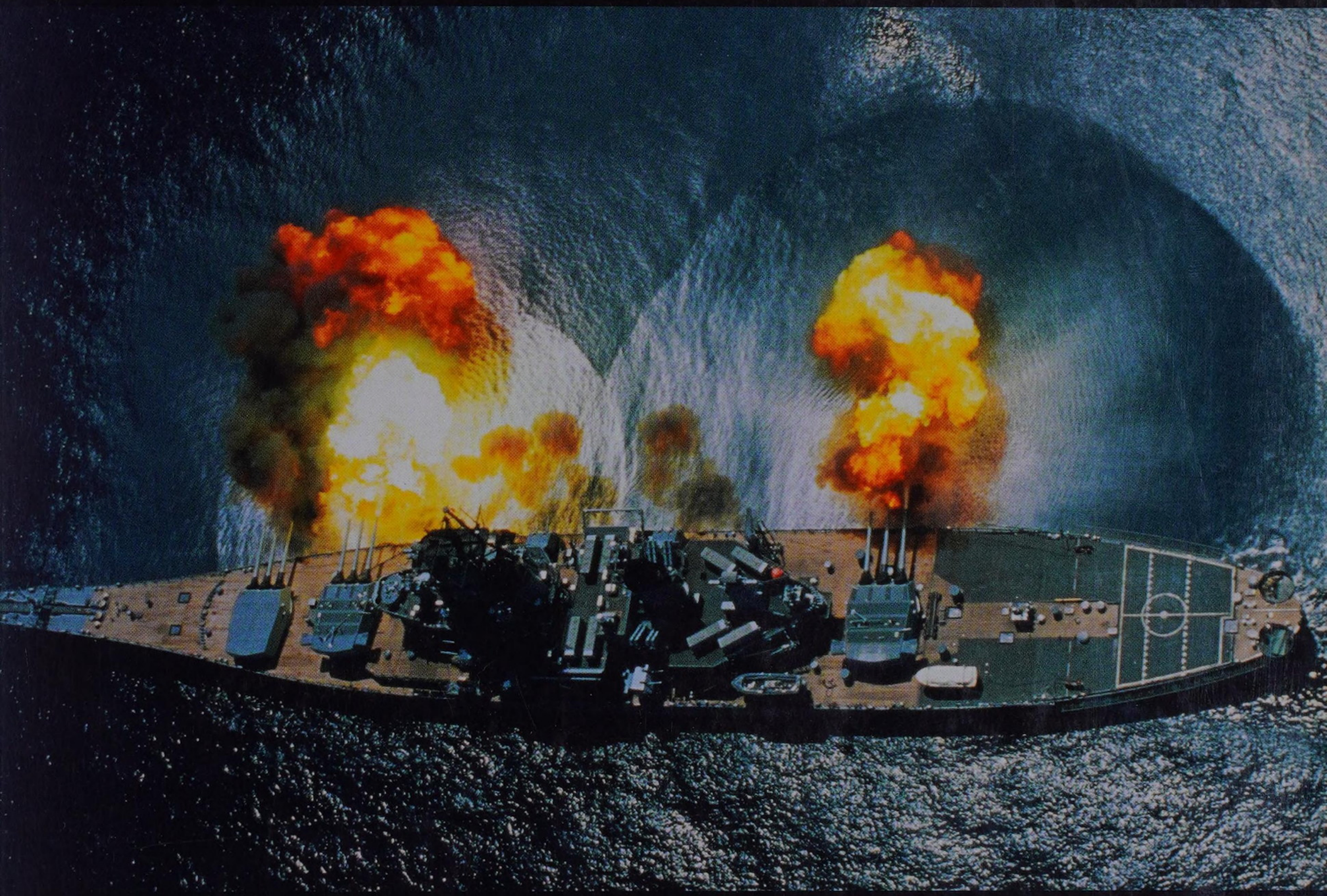
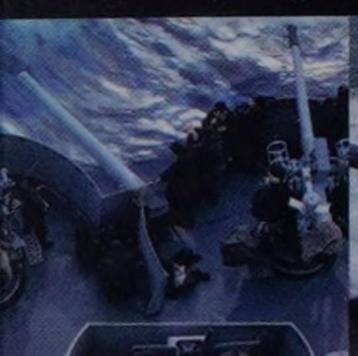
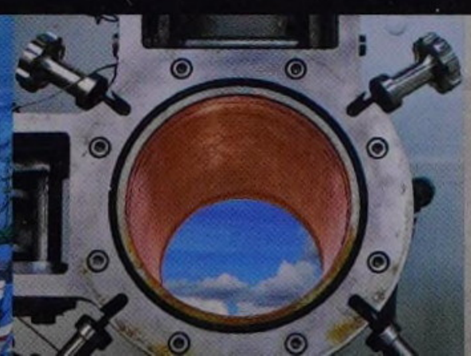
"PERHAPS THE MOST COMPREHENSIVE ONE-VOLUME HISTORY OF WAR AT SEA... HIGHLY RECOMMENDED." —*LIBRARY JOURNAL*



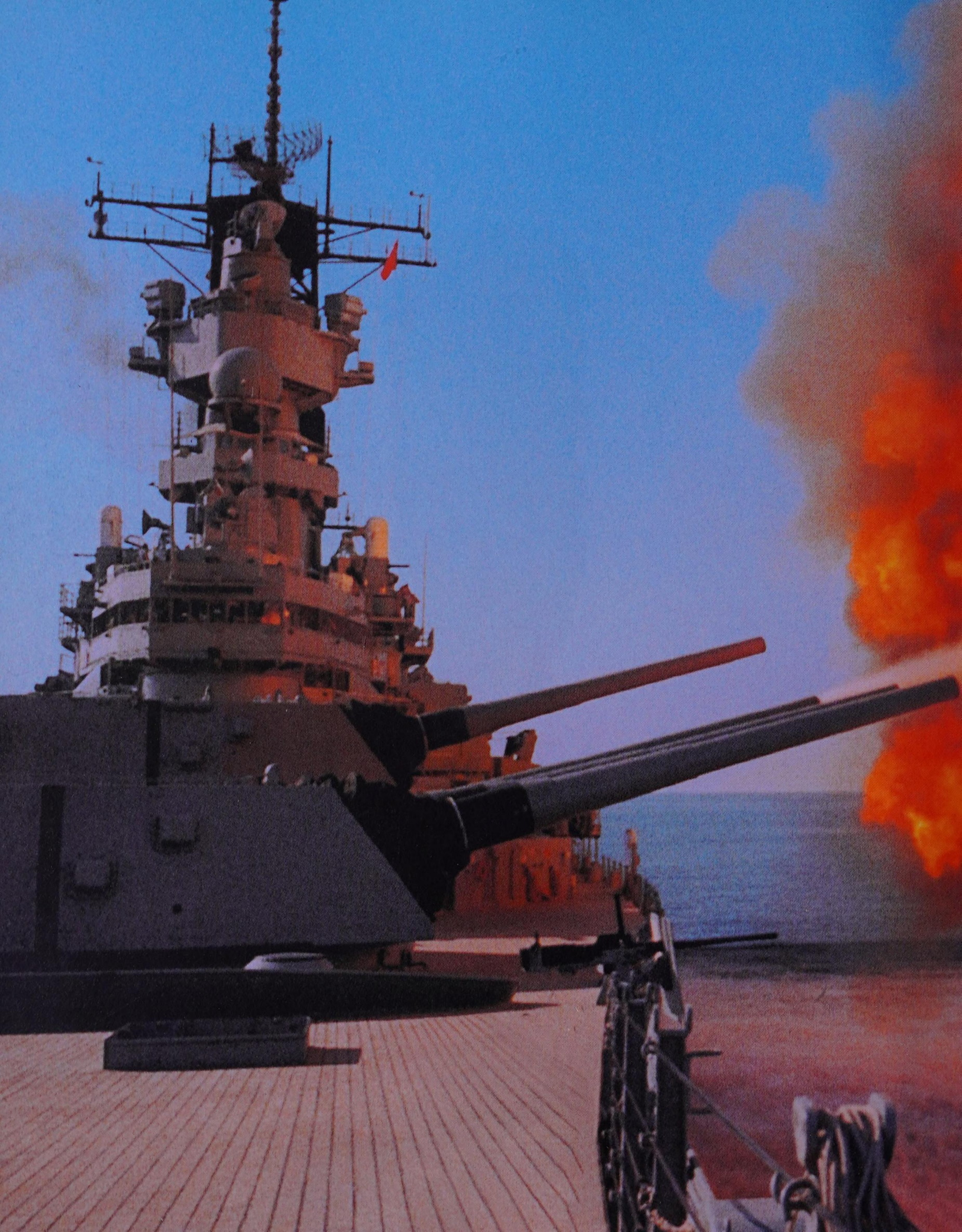
BATTLE AT SEA

3,000 YEARS OF NAVAL WARFARE





BATTLE AT SEA



BATTLE AT SEA

3,000 YEARS OF NAVAL WARFARE

R.G.GRANT

LONDON, NEW YORK, MELBOURNE,
MUNICH, AND DELHI

SENIOR ART EDITOR Gadi Farfour
PROJECT ART EDITOR Victoria Clark
DESIGNERS Philip Fitzgerald,
Amy Orsborne

SENIOR EDITOR Alison Sturgeon
PROJECT EDITORS Ferdie McDonald,
Tom Broder, Andrew Szudek
EDITORS Kim Bryan,
Marcus Hardy, Nigel Ritchie
US EDITOR Chuck Wills

INDEXER Helen Peters

MANAGING ART EDITOR Karen Self
MANAGING EDITOR Debra Wolter
ART DIRECTOR Bryn Walls
PUBLISHER Jonathan Metcalf

CONSULTANT Captain Christopher Page

PICTURE RESEARCHER Sarah Smithies
DK PICTURE RESEARCHER Romaine Werblow

PHOTOGRAPHY Gary Ombler, Graham Rae,
Chester Ong

ILLUSTRATION Darrell Warner, Philip Gamble

CARTOGRAPHY Encompass Graphics

PRODUCTION EDITOR Lucy Baker
PRODUCTION CONTROLLER Linda Dare

First American Edition, 2008
First Paperback American Edition, 2011
Published in the United States by
DK Publishing
375 Hudson Street
New York, New York 10014

11 12 13 14 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

ND111—01/11

Copyright © 2008, 2011 Dorling Kindersley Limited
All rights reserved

Without limiting the rights under copyright reserved above, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission of both the copyright owner and the above publisher of this book.

Published in Great Britain by Dorling Kindersley Limited.

A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress.

ISBN 978-0-7566-7186-0

DK books are available at special discounts when purchased in bulk for sales promotions, premiums, fund-raising, or educational use. For details, contact: DK Publishing Special Markets, 375 Hudson Street, New York, New York 10014 or SpecialSales@dk.com.

Color reproduction by MDP Ltd., UK
Printed and bound in China by Leo Paper Products Ltd.

Discover more at

www.dk.com

CONTENTS

FOREWORD 6
INTRODUCTION 8

THE AGE OF GALLEYS

1200 BCE–1550 CE 24

OVERVIEW 26
EARLY NAVAL BATTLES AND THE RISE OF THE GREEKS 30
THE PERSIAN WARS 32
THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR 36
ROMAN NAVAL WARFARE 42
THE FIRST PUNIC WAR 44
ROME ACHIEVES MASTERY OF THE MEDITERRANEAN 48
NAVAL WARFARE IN ASIA 52
CHINA, JAPAN, AND KOREA 54
BATTLES FOR THE MEDITERRANEAN 62
BYZANTINE–ARAB WARS 64
THE RISE OF THE ITALIAN MARITIME REPUBLICS 66
THE WAR FOR SICILY 70
THE RISE OF SAIL 74
THE VIKINGS 76
SEA BATTLES IN NORTHERN EUROPE 80
THE OTTOMANS 86
CHRISTIAN NAVIES AGAINST THE TURKS 88

GUN, SAIL, AND EMPIRE

1550–1830 102

OVERVIEW 104
JAPAN AND KOREA 108
JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA 110
OCEANIC EMPIRES 114
SPANISH WARS 116
AFTER THE ARMADA 124
THE RISE OF DUTCH SEA POWER 126
RIVALRY ACROSS THE NORTH SEA 130
FIRST ANGLO-DUTCH WAR 132
SECOND ANGLO–DUTCH WAR 134
THIRD ANGLO–DUTCH WAR 138
THE SUN KING'S NAVY 142
THE FRENCH WARS 144
BALTIC CONFLICTS 150
SWEDEN FIGHTS FOR DOMINATION 152
THE GREAT NORTHERN WAR 154
THE RUSSO-SWEDISH WAR 156
MAINTAINING BRITISH NAVAL POWER 158
ROYAL NAVY BATTLES 160
SEVEN YEARS WAR 162
THE AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR 166
THE AGE OF NELSON 174
FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS 176
NAPOLEONIC WARS 186
EARLY 19TH-CENTURY BATTLES 200
THE UNITED STATES AT WAR 202
WARS OF INDEPENDENCE 206
LATER OTTOMAN BATTLES 208

STEAM AND STEEL

1830–1918 **210**

OVERVIEW **212**

NEW NAVIES OF EUROPE **216**

EUROPEAN WARS: FROM SAIL TO STEAM 218

GUNBOAT IMPERIALISM 222

THE AMERICAS AT WAR **226**

THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR 228

SPANISH AND LATIN-AMERICAN CONFLICTS 238

RISE OF THE IMPERIAL JAPANESE NAVY **244**

JAPANESE NAVAL MIGHT 246

THE RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR 248

WORLD WAR I **258**

WARSHIP BATTLES 1914–18 260

THE U-BOAT WAR 1914–18 268

CARRIERS, SUBMARINES, AND MISSILES

1918–present **270**

OVERVIEW **272**

EUROPE BETWEEN THE WARS 276

WORLD WAR II: THE WEST **278**

WARSHIP BATTLES 1939-45 280

THE U-BOAT WAR 1939-45 290

EVACUATIONS AND LANDINGS 300

WAR IN THE MEDITERRANEAN 302

WORLD WAR II: THE PACIFIC **308**

THE JAPANESE OFFENSIVE 310

THE BATTLE FOR GUADALCANAL 316

DRIVE TO VICTORY 320

POSTWAR CONFLICTS **328**

COLD WAR CONFLICTS 330

THE VIETNAM WAR 334

THE FALKLANDS WAR 340

REGIONAL CONFLICTS 342

MIDDLE EAST AND TERRORISM 344

INDEX **354**

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS **359**

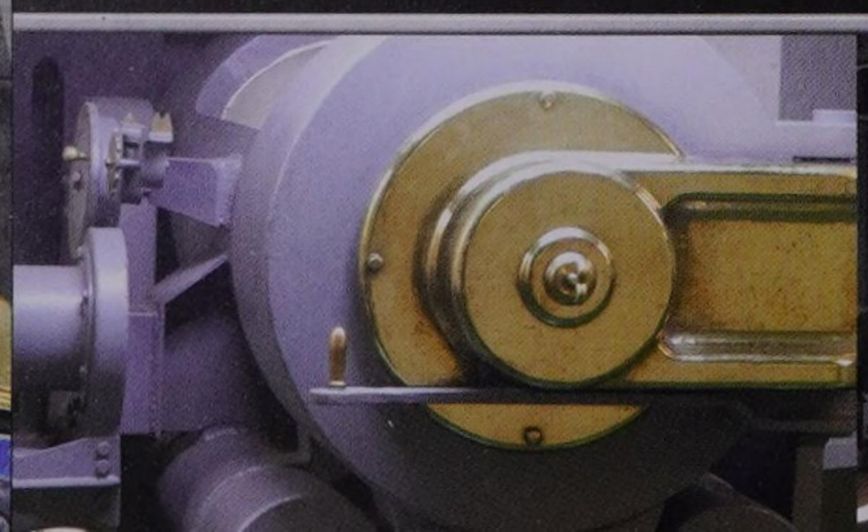
FOREWORD

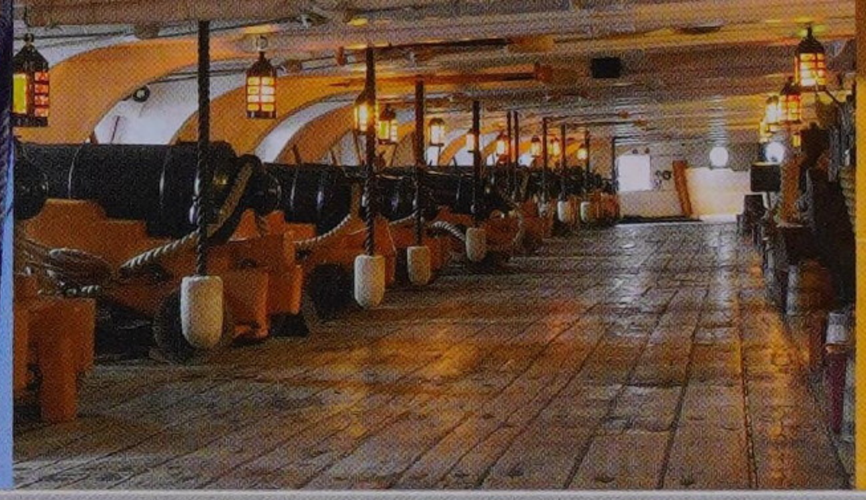
Samuel Johnson said in 1759: "No man will be a sailor who has contrivance enough to get himself into a jail; for being in a ship is being in a jail, with the chance of being drowned." In fact, the great man had understated his case. He was talking of sailors in general, not of those serving in navies in time of war. The naval prayer, first recorded in the 17th century and still part of the church services of Britain's Royal Navy, asks for preservation not only "from the dangers of the sea" but also "from the violence of the enemy." It is this "violence" that is the overriding theme of this book.

Naval warfare is almost as old as conflicts between armies on land, and as in land campaigns, it is the great battles that catch the imagination, the titanic clashes that can be said to have changed the course of history. Some, such as Cape Ecnomus between Rome and Carthage, or Leyte Gulf between the US and Japan in Word War II, involved vast fleets; others, such as the battles of Chesapeake Bay or the Nile, were fought by a relatively small number of ships. In spite of this, their strategic consequences were equally momentous.

While most nations have a long history of fighting on land, the list of countries that can be termed "maritime nations" is much shorter. There are certain nations and peoples that appear again and again as participants in the battles recorded in this book: in the Classical world the Carthaginians and the Greeks, in the Middle Ages the Venetians and the Genoese, in the age of European exploration the Spanish, the English, and the Dutch. Geography plays a key role, and some countries have little or no coastline, or difficult access to the high seas. For some, history teaches that the threat to national existence and way of life comes from across a land border, and this ever-present fact naturally colors thinking about defense. For maritime countries the sea looms larger in their national consciousness.

Historically, those nations with strong navies have developed in this way as a result of experience, sometimes harshly taught. They tend to depend on trade. The sea has always been the major highway for international commerce. Transporting goods in ships is much cheaper than moving them by land, and today, by air. International systems throughout the ages have depended on the free passage of people and





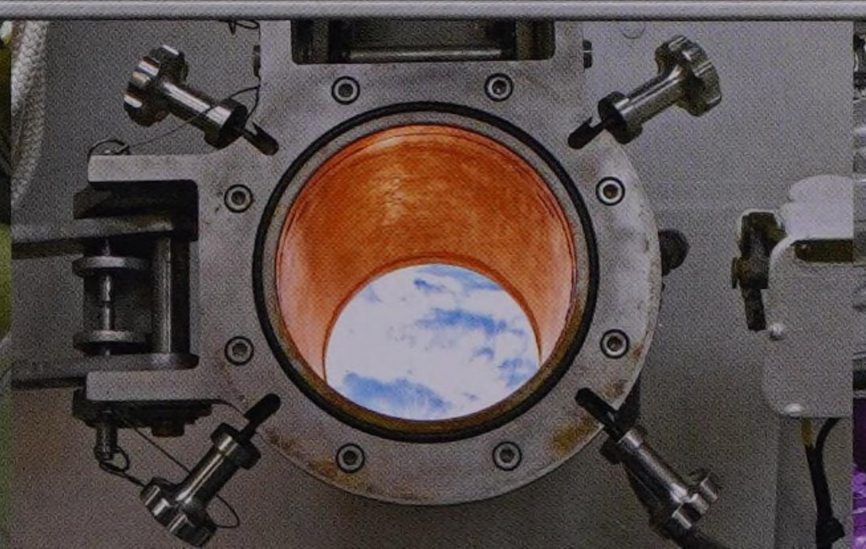
things around the world. When these systems break down because the sea lines of communication are severed or threatened, naval action is required. Uninhibited movement of the vast majority of the traded goods around the globe relies, in the last resort, on the famous phrase of the 19th-century American naval officer, and historian, Alfred Mahan: "command of the sea." The world today is fortunate that trading nations are able to move materials almost anywhere without interference, something we all take for granted.

What naval history tells us, however, is that this freedom, like most others, is not cost-free, and that, periodically, a price has to be paid. The classic way of ensuring command of the sea is to find the battle fleet of the enemy, and destroy it. This has the added benefit for maritime nations of reducing or preventing any chance of invasion. The incidents resulting from the attempts to deny or maintain command of the sea are the battles recorded in this book.

These battles, usually short in duration, tell just a part of what sea power is all about. A key part of historical experience is the ability of maritime powers to project their land power over huge distances, often to a place of their choosing rather than that of their antagonist, to impose a seemingly endless blockade upon an enemy, and to deal with piracy and illegal commerce. They also have the power to do good around the world: working for the abolition of the slave trade, providing assistance to disaster-hit lands, or simply "showing the flag" to reassure friends and deter enemies.

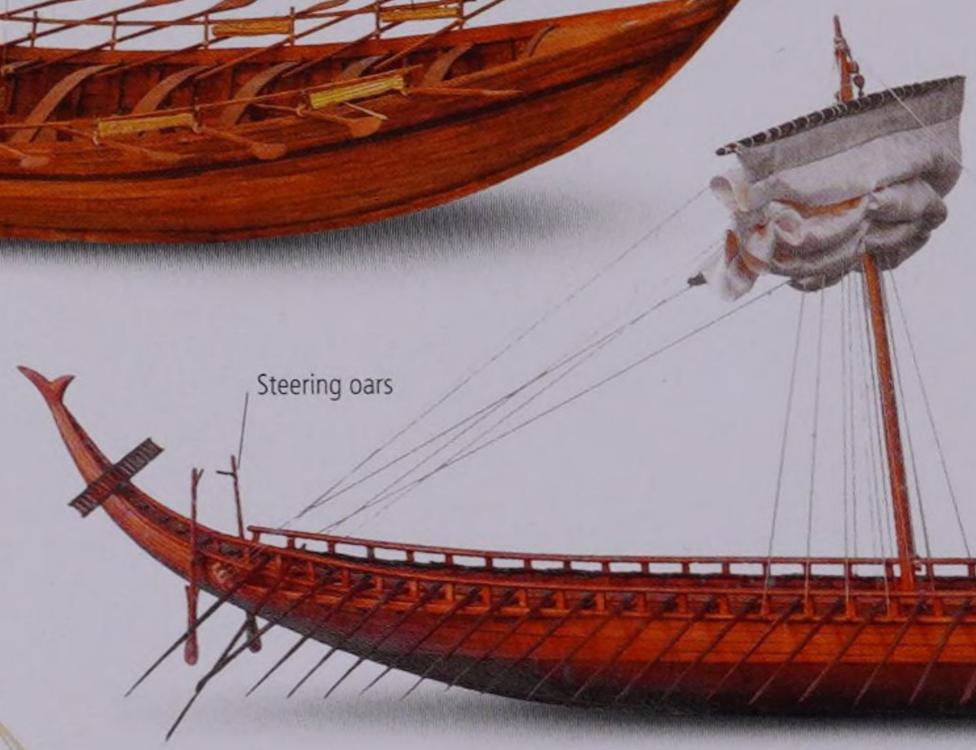
Naval warfare is the story of the use of the most modern, high-tech, and sometimes expensive equipment that a nation can procure. A technological advantage could sometimes define the difference between victory at sea and defeat. The study of naval battles, however, confirms that they are really about people, not just the senior commanders, famous, or notorious, as they might be, but the ordinary man doing extraordinary things under the most stressful of circumstances out of loyalty to his shipmates, his ship, and his country. He is the true hero of this book.

CAPTAIN CHRISTOPHER PAGE
ROYAL NAVY

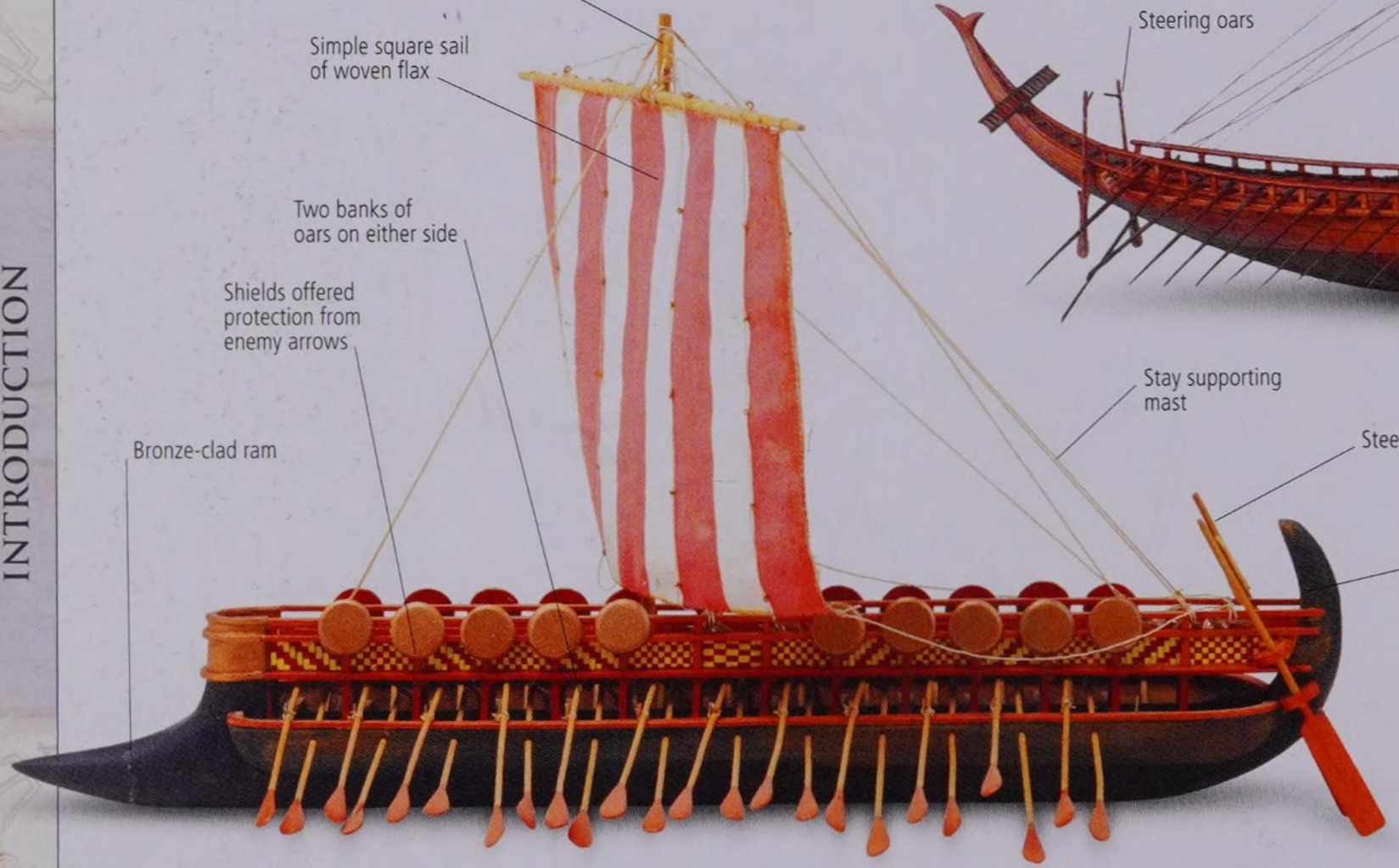


ANCIENT GALLEYS

MINOAN SHIP (c.1500 BCE) The earliest ships used in warfare by peoples such as the Egyptians, the Minoans, and the Mycenaeans were essentially trading vessels that carried armed men instead of cargoes. Fighting almost invariably took place very close to the shore rather than in open water.



GREEK PENTECONTER (c.600 BCE) The Greeks learnt much of their sailing from the Phoenicians. The fast, lean penteconter was probably the first Greek ship to be built with a ram. It owes its name to the fact that it was powered by 50 oars.



PHOENICIAN BIREME (c.700 BCE) The Phoenicians were the dominant trading nation in the Mediterranean. To protect their merchant shipping they developed fast oared war galleys and may also have been the first to fit galleys with rams at the prow. Their ships varied in size and could be powered by as many as 100 oars.

WARSHIPS THROUGH TIME

THE HISTORY OF WARSHIP DEVELOPMENT is an epic one, stretching from oared galleys and longships to modern aircraft carriers and nuclear submarines. As well as superb fighting machines, many warships have been masterpieces of design.

THE MEDITERRANEAN was the focus for the early development of warships. The first boats used in battle were civilian vessels turned to military use, such as those made from pitch-coated reeds that the Egyptians utilized in the 12th century BCE. They were used to carry soldiers and served as platforms for archers and spearmen. In the course of the 1st millennium BCE, maritime states around the Mediterranean developed fighting galleys, the first purpose-built warships.

GALLEY WARFARE

Galleys were propelled in battle by banks of oars. The galley's sail, typically on a single mast in the center of the ship, was generally not used in combat. Greek and Phoenician naval designers created the penteconter, then the bireme (two banks of oars) and trireme (three banks). Fast and maneuverable, these galleys were themselves weapons—a ram at the bow was used to smash the hulls of enemy boats. Over time more oars were added to drive much larger galleys called polyremes, which could be packed with soldiers and with catapults serving as shipborne artillery. Galleys remained the key warships of the Mediterranean throughout the period of the Roman Empire and its successor, the Byzantine Empire, whose dromons were frequently armed with the formidable incendiary weapon known as "Greek fire."

The mast and sail were not usually carried on board during a battle

Chief purpose of deck was to protect the oarsmen below

Central gangway

Ropes for hoisting sail

Epotis (literally "ear"), made of heavy timbers to protect galley when rammed

Oculus ("eye") painted on ship's bow

Ornamental prow

Bronze-sheathed ram

Lower oar ports had leather linings

Three banks of oars

Projecting outrigger for upper tier of oarsmen

« **GREEK TRIREME (c.480 BCE)** This was the most specialized early warship, built for speed and ramming power. The largest triremes were powered by as many as 170 oars, arranged in three tiers, with a single oarsman to each oar. Only a few soldiers were carried on board.

Lateen sail

Fighting top

High sterncastle

Siphon for projecting Greek fire

Forecastle that held archers and other soldiers

Steering oar

» **BYZANTINE DROMON (c.900 CE)** The warship of the Eastern Roman Empire came in many sizes. It had lateen sails that allowed the ship to sail closer to the wind than earlier galleys, but it still depended primarily on oar power. It was well manned with marines.

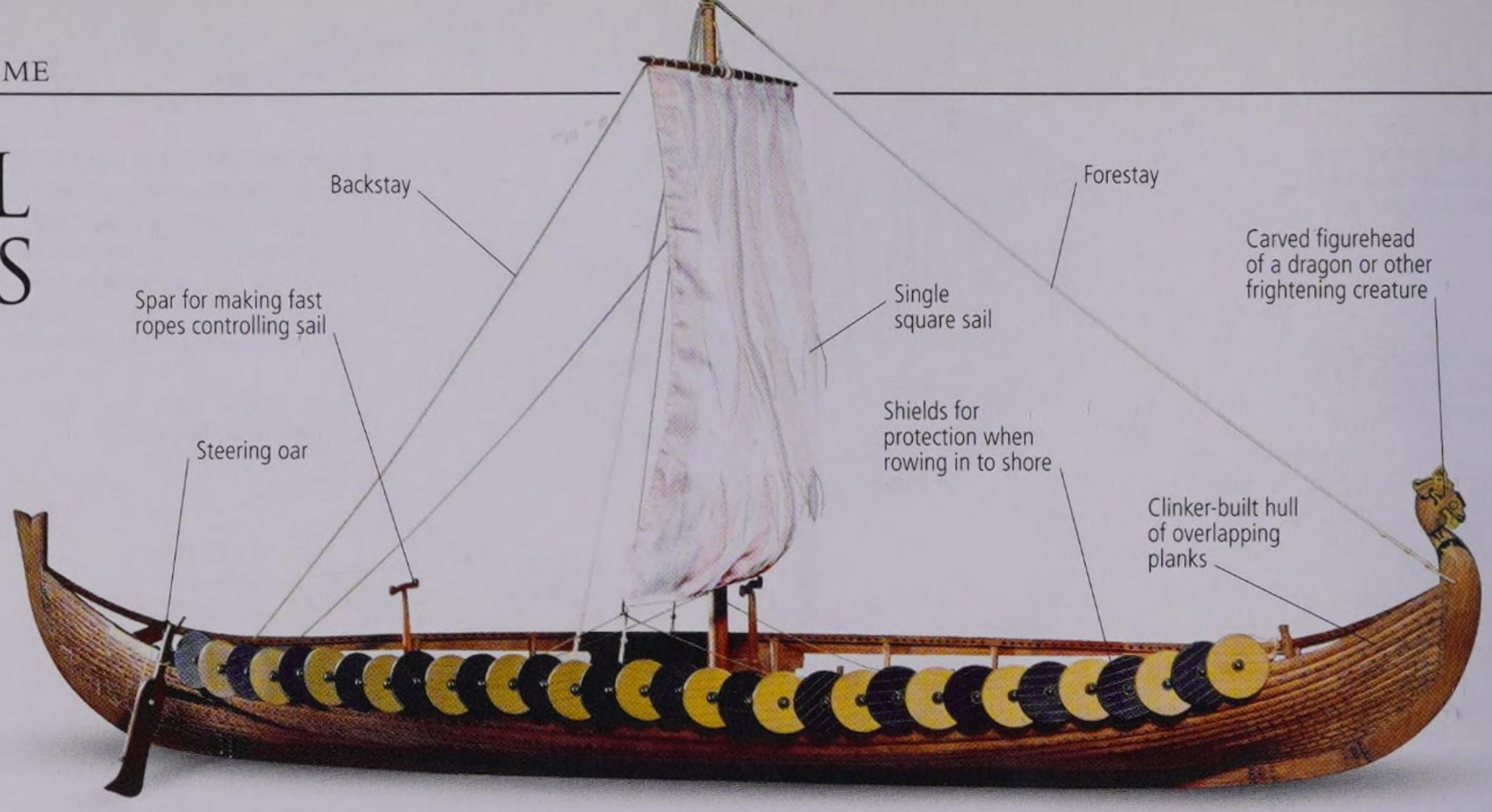
GLOSSARY

An explanation of less familiar nautical and military terms used in the book is given below.

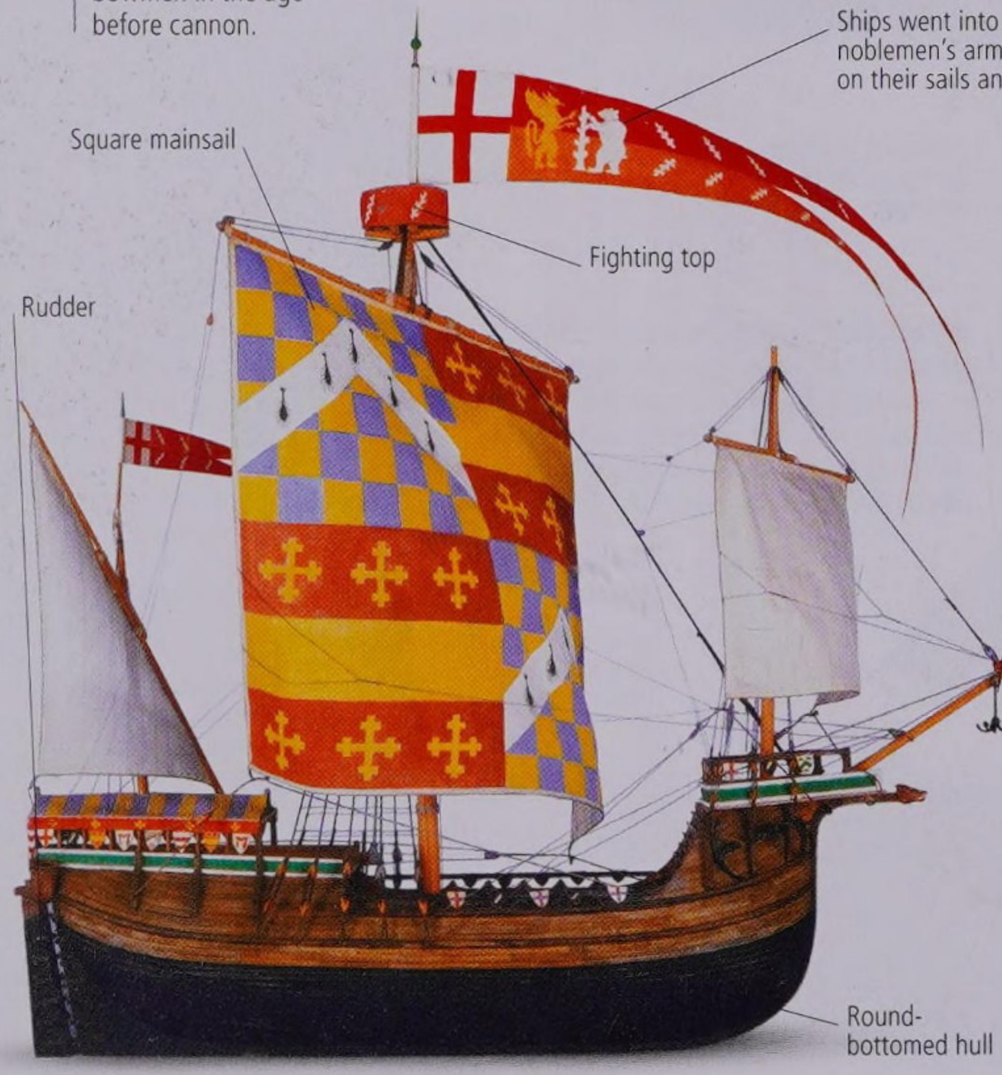
1ST RATE British ship of the line with more than 100 guns on three decks.
2ND RATE British ship of the line with 90–98 guns on three decks.
3RD RATE British ship of the line with 64–74 guns on two decks.
4TH RATE British ship of the line with 46–60 guns on two decks.
5TH RATE British frigate with 32–44 guns on a single deck.
6TH RATE Small British warship with 20–28 guns on a single deck, a small frigate.
AFT Toward the stern of the ship.
ARQUEBUS Early form of musket, used in 16th century.
ARPAX Roman mechanical device for grappling enemy ships.
ASTROLABE Nautical instrument used for measuring latitude.
BALINGER Small shallow-hulled English sailing barge of the late Middle Ages. Could be powered by oars as well as sail.
BALLISTA Roman catapult for firing iron-tipped bolts.
BALLISTIC MISSILE Medium- or long-range missile for delivering (usually nuclear) warhead. Powered initially by rocket fuel, the missile descends to its target in freefall.
BARBETTE Armored cylinder supporting the large gun turrets of 19th- and 20th-century warships.
BAR SHOT Cannon ammunition, consisting of two half-cannonballs linked by a solid bar. Used, like chain shot, for attacking spars and rigging of sailing ships.
BATTLECRUISER Class of heavily armed ship developed in years leading up to World War I as a kind of fast battleship.
BATTLEGROUP Formation of surface ships, originally centered on battleships, but in recent times consisting of a carrier with guided missile destroyers, anti-submarine destroyers, cruisers, and frigates.
BEAM The breadth of a ship at its widest point.
BILGE Lowest part of the interior of the hull, where water collects.
BINNACLE Mount for a ship's compass, in sailing ships usually sited on the quarterdeck.

MEDIEVAL WARSHIPS

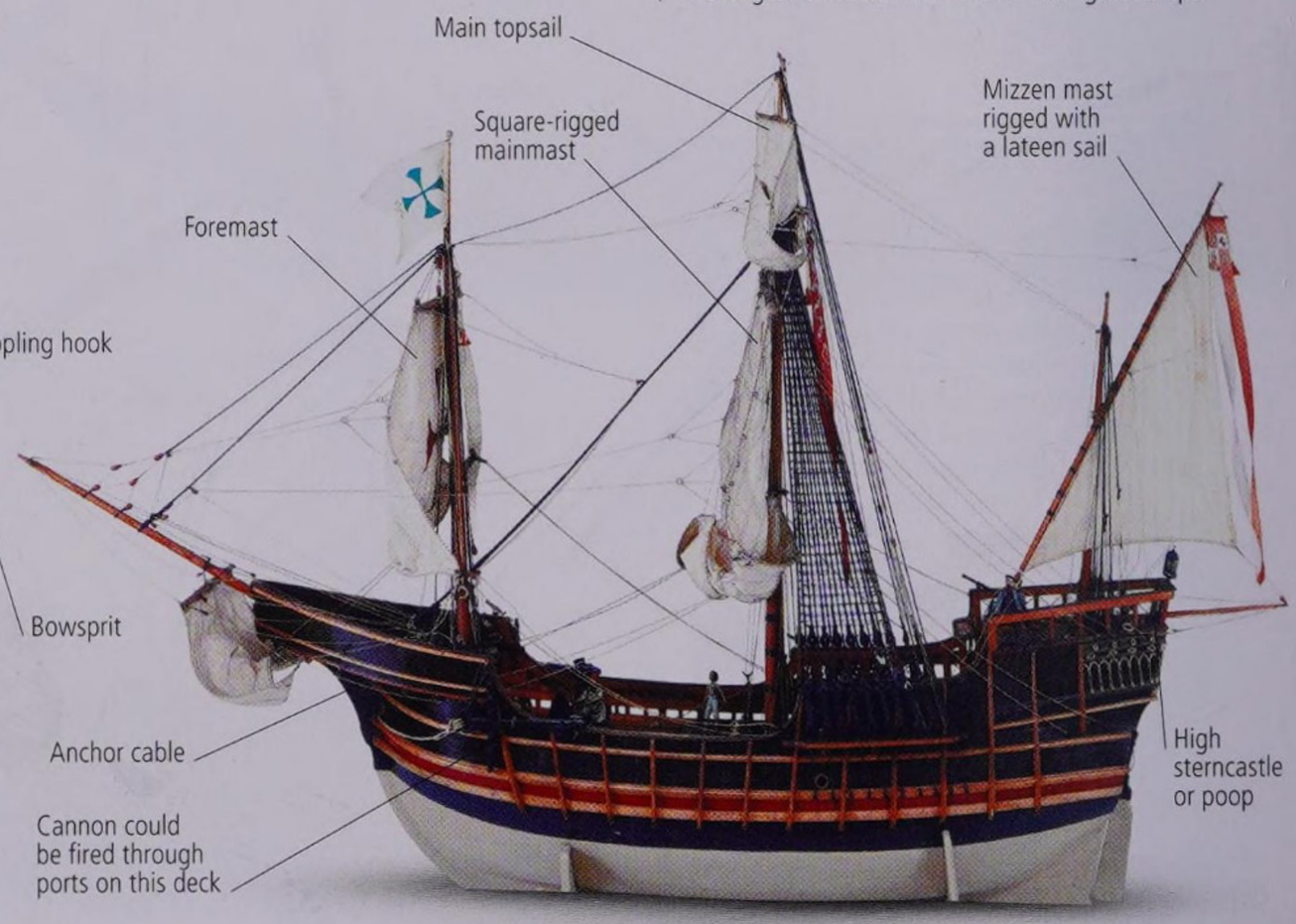
VIKING LONGSHIP (c.1000) Propelled by oars or sail, the longship was capable of ocean voyages and of sailing up rivers. The Vikings rarely fought sea battles as such, but their ships played a key part in raids and invasions. Their shallow draft made for easy beaching and launching.



COG (c.1485) Essentially a merchant ship, the cog was used for battles at sea in northern Europe throughout the later Middle Ages. Its high castles fore and aft made it an excellent platform for bowmen in the age before cannon.

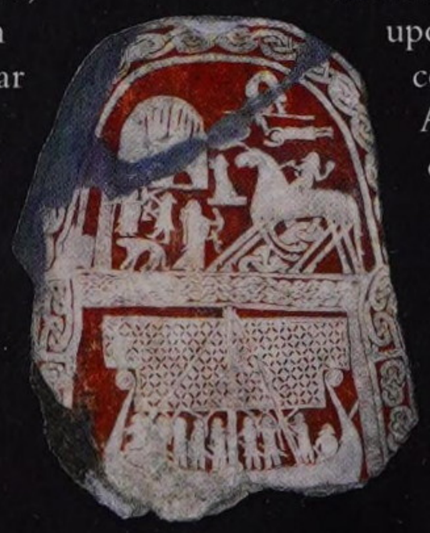


CARRACK (c.1490) The carrack was a three- or four-masted ship used for long-distance trade and warfare. This is Christopher Columbus's flagship *Santa Maria*. More stable, but less maneuverable than the caravel, the carrack was the forerunner of the galleon. The largest carracks were known as "great ships."



THE DESIGN of medieval warships developed along very different lines in the Mediterranean and the seas of northern Europe. Mediterranean states continued to use oared galleys for warfare. Their shipbuilders made hulls that were carvel-built (had flush-fitting planks) and, under the influence of Arab sailors from the Indian Ocean, adopted the triangular lateen sail instead of the square sail. In northern Europe the Viking longship, the prime warship of the early Middle Ages, was clinker-built (had overlapping planks that needed less caulking than carvel-built hulls) and had a square sail. The longship had oars, like a Mediterranean war galley, but was better suited to rough seas.

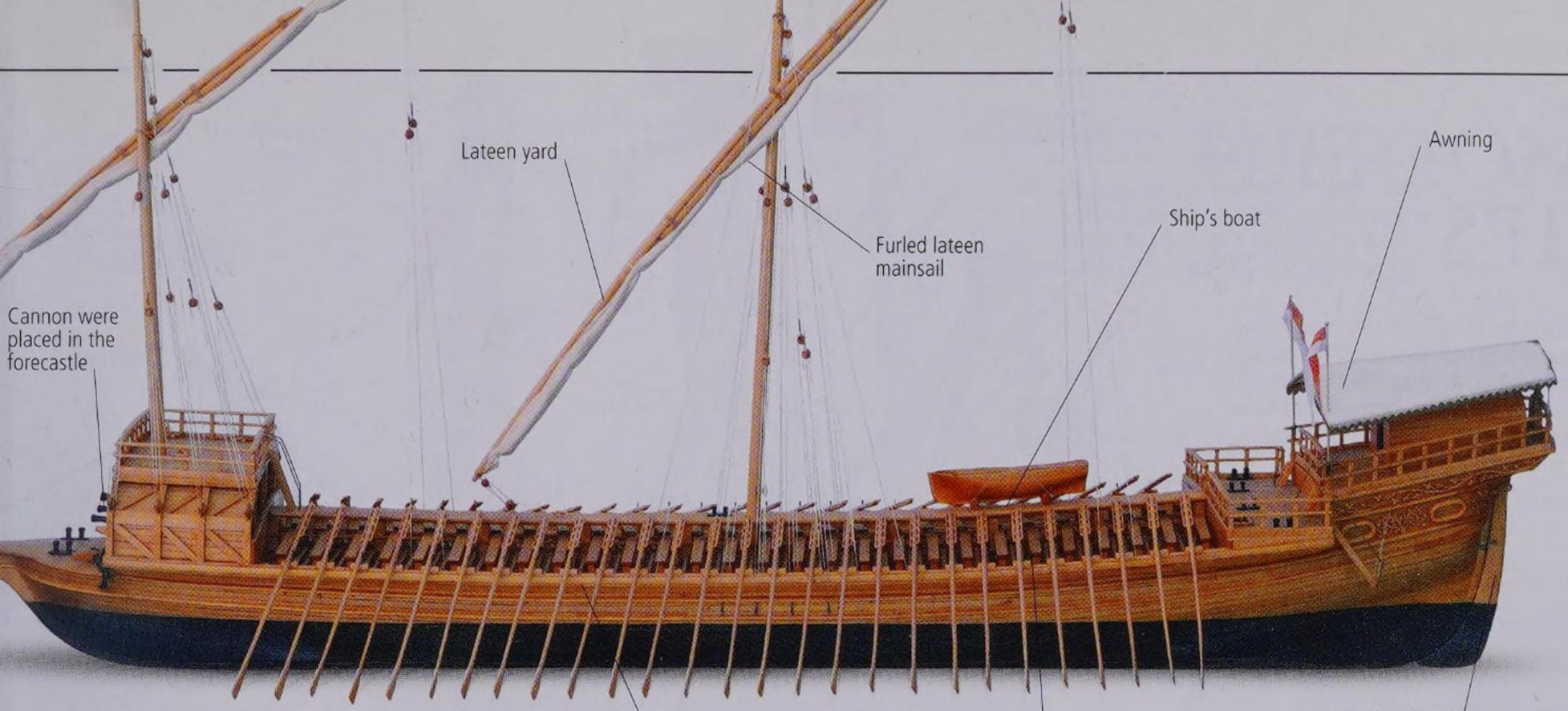
North European shipbuilders also used a clinker-built hull and a square sail on the sturdy round cargo ship known as a "cog." Cogs came to be used in warfare, in the process growing "castles" at both ends of the ship, raised platforms from which soldiers and archers could rain missiles down upon enemy ships and where they could resist attempts to board. Although oared galleys continued to play a part in warfare in northern Europe, sailing ships took precedence.



Shipborne warriors
This 8th-century carved stone from the Swedish island of Gotland shows Viking warriors aboard a longship sailing to Valhalla after a life of raids and invasions.

HYBRID SHIPS

In the 15th century a fruitful cross-fertilization between the Mediterranean and northern European traditions took place. The three- or four-masted carrack combined lateen and square sails to create a larger, more maneuverable descendant of the cog. At the same time the smaller two- or three-masted caravel evolved, mostly with lateen sails but sometimes with a square sail as well. By 1500 the carrack was the dominant warship of northern Europe. It provided a stable platform for cannon, used in large numbers on ships from the late 15th century. With gun ports cut into its hull, the carrack grew into the "great ship"—for example, *Henry Grâce à Dieu*, launched in 1514, which carried some 180 cannon, distributed along gun decks and in prodigiously high castles.



VENETIAN GALLEY (c.1500) Although the Atlantic nations now sailed into battle, oared galleys were still the principal fighting ships of the Mediterranean. Cannon were carried in the bow with smaller guns between the oars.

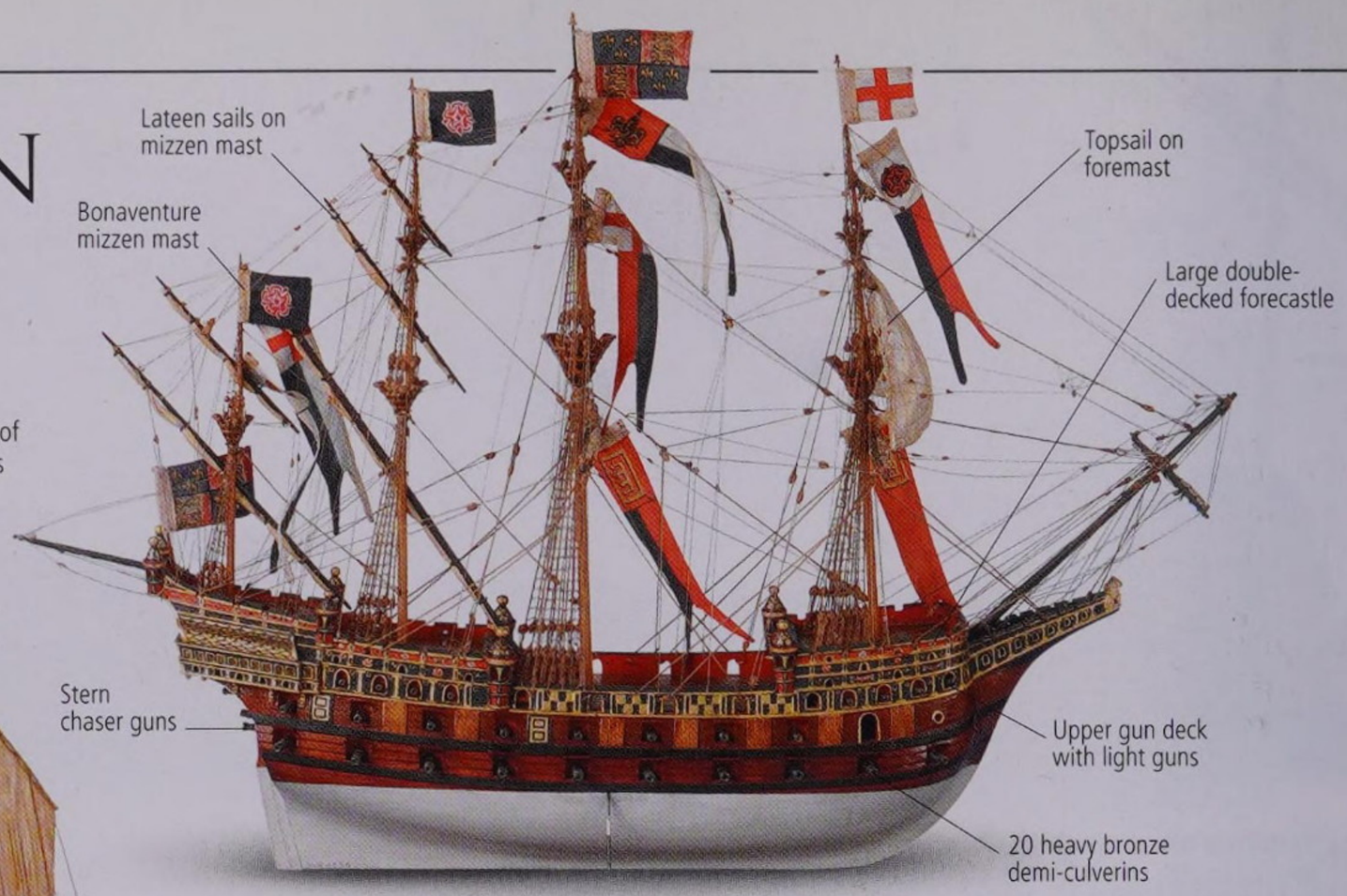
CARAVEL (c.1535) This kind of ship was used by the Portuguese to explore the West African coast in the 15th century. Its lateen sails were good for maneuvering close to shore. The example shown here is a later type with three lateen-rigged masts and a square-rigged foremast.

GLOSSARY

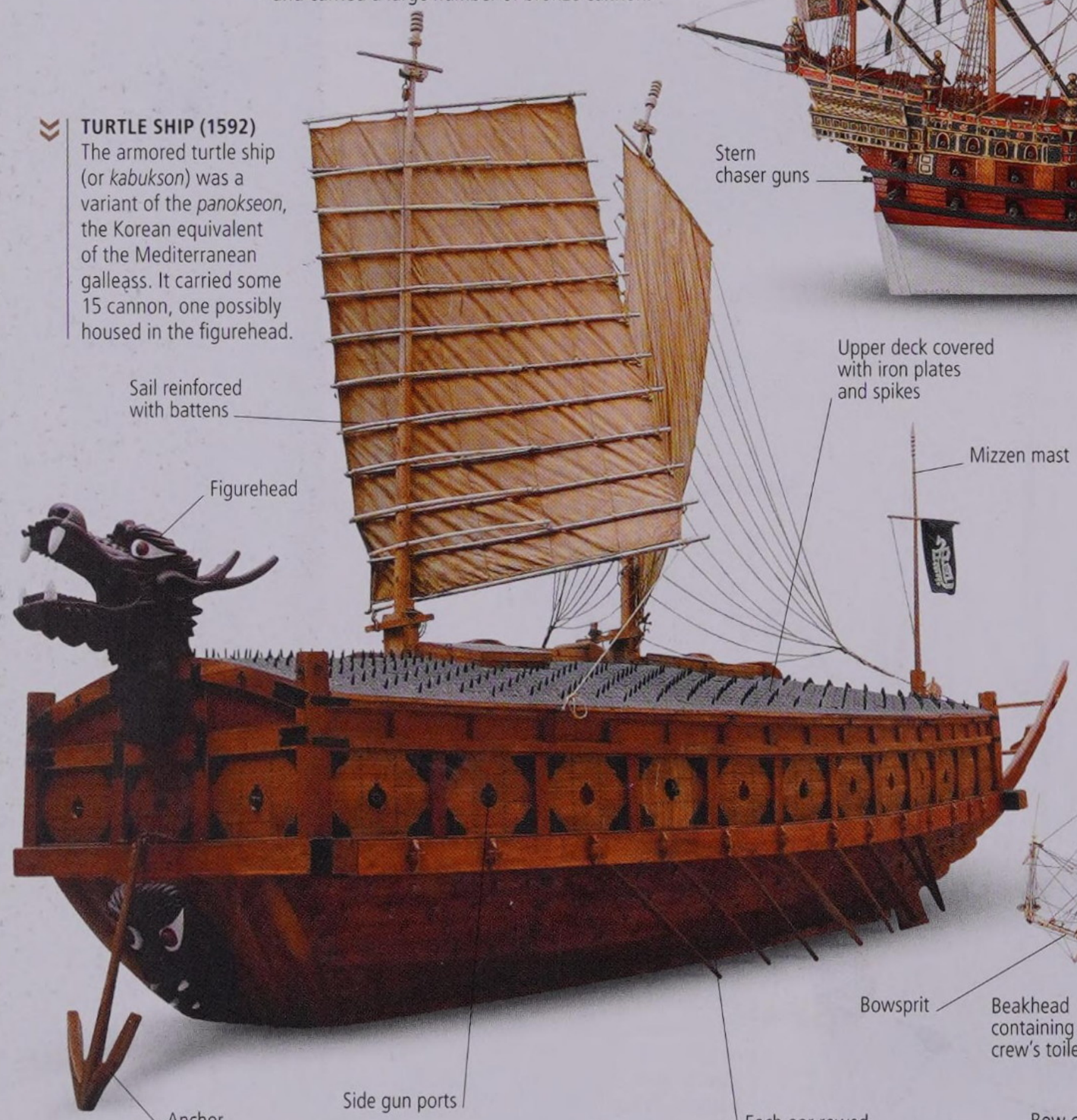
BIREME Galley with two banks of oars on each side.
BLINDAGE Protective screen for soldiers on deck of a sailing ship.
BLOCKSHIP Ship deliberately sunk to block river or harbor entrance.
BOATSWAIN Petty officer in charge of crew and sails, rigging, etc.
BOOM Barrier blocking river or harbor entrance.
BOW Fore-end of a ship.
BOWSPRIT Spar projecting from the bow, providing extra sail area.
BOW CHASER Cannon placed in the bow of a sailing ship for firing straight ahead.
BOMB-KETCH Small, strongly built sailing vessels on which a mortar is mounted.
BREECH-LOADER Gun in which shot or shell is loaded into the rear of the barrel (the breech) rather than the muzzle.
BRIG Small sailing ship with two square-rigged masts.
BRIGANTINE Ship with two masts, a fore-and-aft mainsail and a square-rigged foremast, originally used by pirates.
BROADSIDE Simultaneous firing of all the cannon on one side of a warship.
BULKHEAD Vertical partition below deck that separates one part of a ship from another.
CANISTER Container holding small iron or lead balls, fired from cannon as anti-personnel weapon.
CANNON Large artillery piece for firing heavy projectiles over a long distance. A naval cannon is usually referred to as a gun.
CAPITAL SHIP Warship of the first rank in size and armament, such as a battleship.
CARRACK Three- or four-masted sailing ship of 15th and 16th centuries.
CARAVEL Small, maneuverable ship developed in 15th century with lateen sails on two or three masts.
CARRONADE Short-barreled, short-range cannon developed by Carron Ironworks c.1770.
CHAFF Scraps of metal foil thrown out by planes or ships to confuse enemy's radar.
CHAIN SHOT Ammunition for cannon consisting of two half-balls chained together for attacking rigging, masts, etc.

EARLY MODERN WARSHIPS

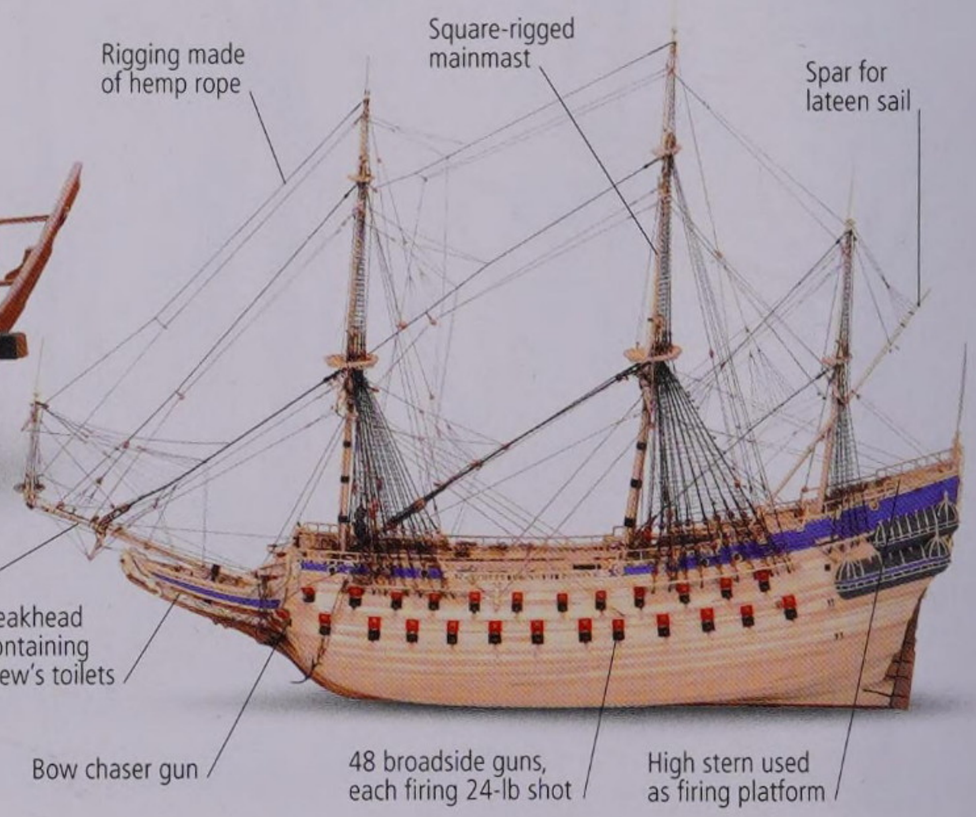
GALLEON (1560) In 16th-century Europe the carrack evolved into the sleeker galleon, which established itself as the most effective warship of its day. Galleons usually had three or four masts and carried a large number of bronze cannon.



TURTLE SHIP (1592) The armored turtle ship (or *kabukson*) was a variant of the *panokseon*, the Korean equivalent of the Mediterranean galleass. It carried some 15 cannon, one possibly housed in the figurehead.



GREAT SHIP (1628) In the 17th century European monarchs had large elaborately decorated ships built for prestige rather than military efficiency. The 64-gun *Vasa* was constructed on the orders of the ambitious Swedish king Gustavus Adolphus. It sank on its maiden voyage.



THE DEVELOPMENT of ocean-going sailing ships in the 16th century allowed European sailors to make voyages around the world. They encountered countries with independent and highly sophisticated naval traditions. For example, in a war against Japan in the 1590s, the Korean fleet included ironclad "turtle ships," the likes of which had never been seen in Europe. China had built sailing ships larger than any that Europeans possessed. Yet the momentum of European progress in shipbuilding and arms manufacture was unstoppable.

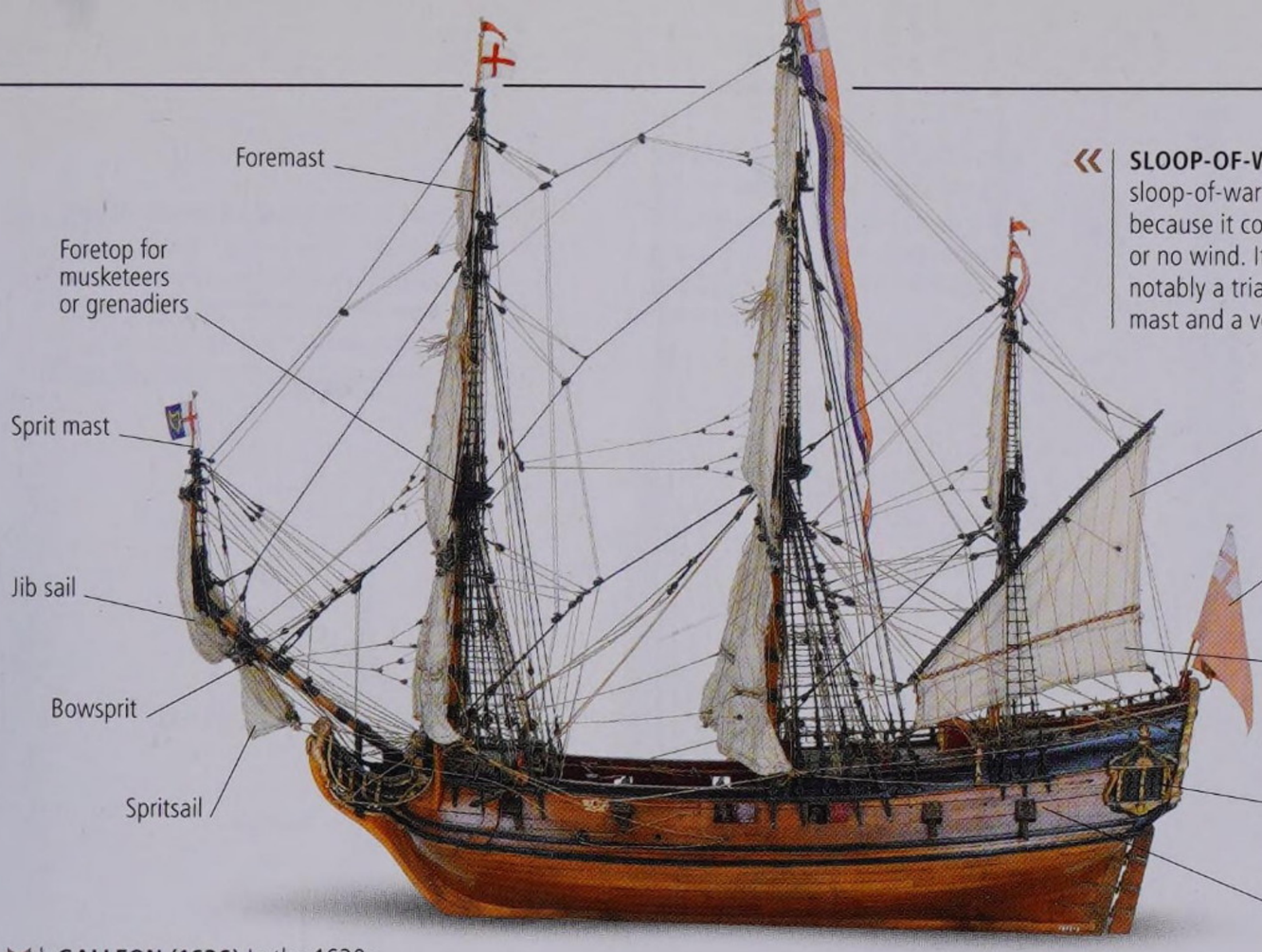
GALLEONS AND GALLEASSES

In the second half of the 16th century the large carrack or "great ship" was surpassed as a fighting warship by the galleon. Galleons had all the advantages of carracks—they were substantial-size ships with gun ports that could carry a heavy weight of cannon—but their designers reduced the height of the castles and lengthened and streamlined the dimensions of the ships for better handling. The sides of the ships were sloped inward from the lower gun deck to the weather deck, enhancing stability and making them more difficult to board.

While galleons dominated warfare in the Atlantic, in the Mediterranean oared galleys remained in use in battle through the 16th and 17th centuries. The Spanish and Venetians turned galleys into floating gun platforms. Venice invented the galleass, a large warship powered by sails and oars, which could mount a truly impressive quantity of cannon. But although galleasses were used outside the Mediterranean—they formed part of the Spanish Armada in 1588—the future lay with ships that relied entirely on sails.

SHIPS OF THE LINE

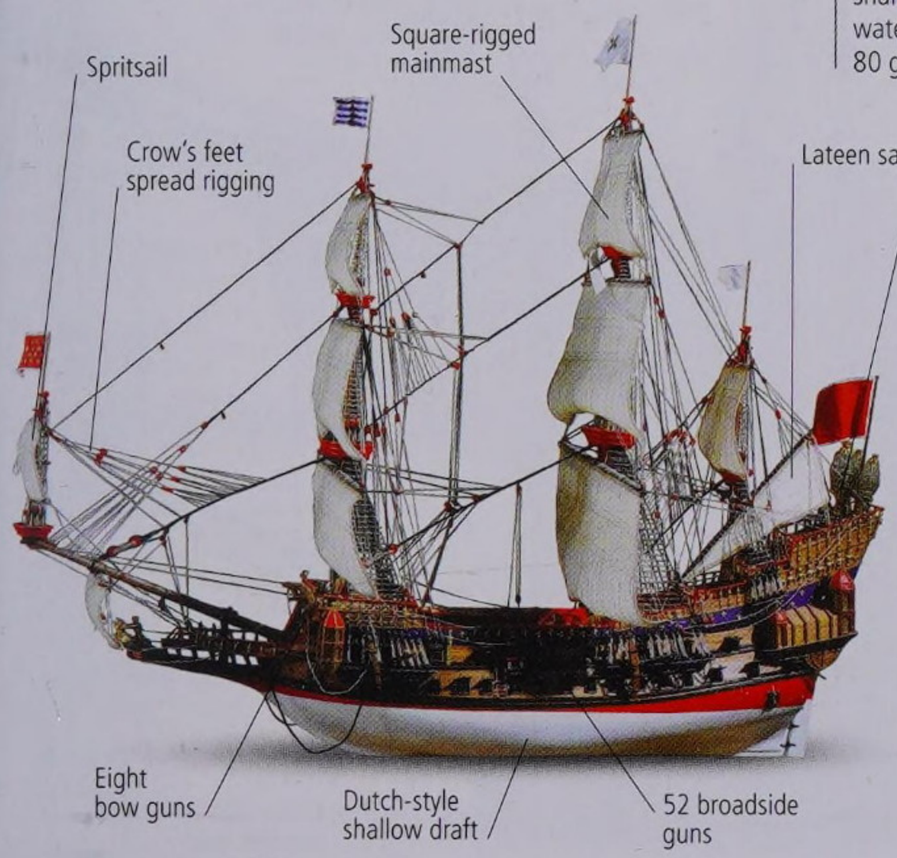
In the course of the 17th century the galleon evolved into the ship of the line. Gunnery became the primary means of engaging enemy vessels and the traditional action of boarding only secondary. Guns were arranged almost exclusively along the sides of the ship, to deliver thunderous broadsides. Ships fought in line of battle, and the ship of the line was a warship powerful enough to hold its own in such a gun duel. The forerunner to such ships was England's *Sovereign of the Seas*, commissioned by King Charles I of England in 1634. Smaller frigates and sloops played a supporting role.

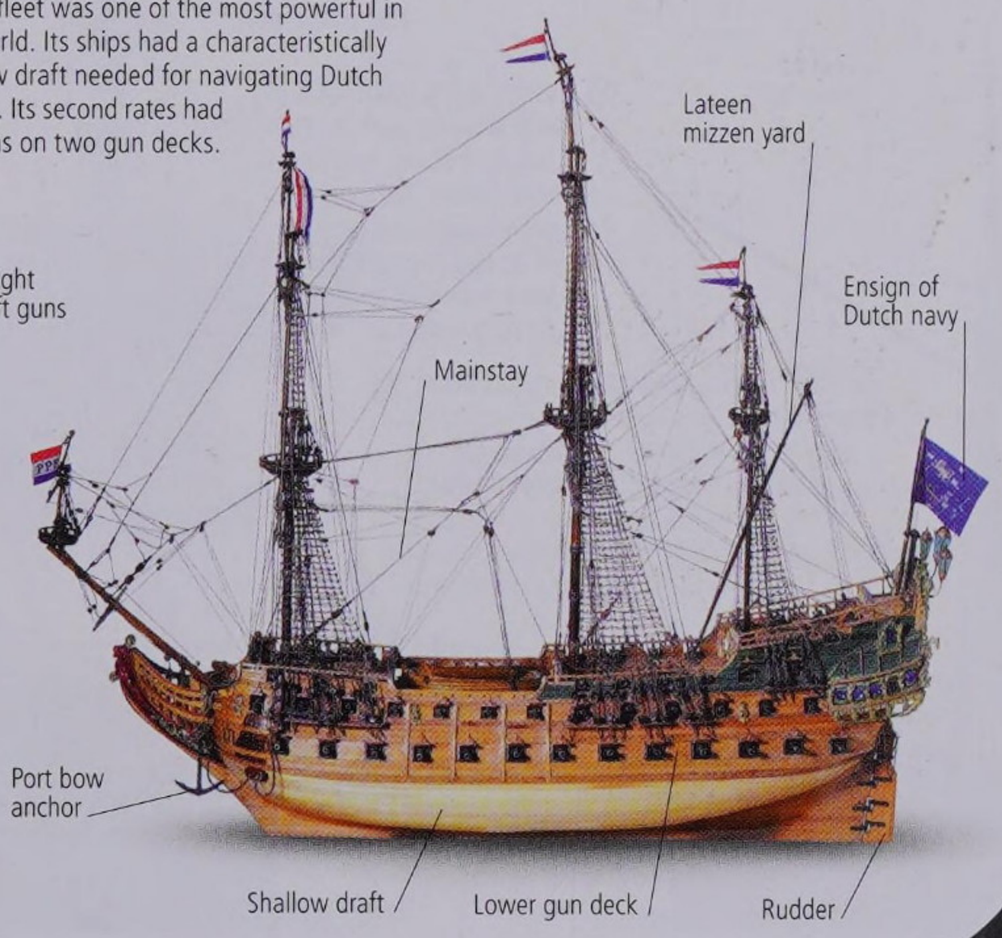


SLOOP-OF-WAR (1652) This 12-gun sixth-rate sloop-of-war was sometimes called a "galley" because it could be rowed if there were little or no wind. It has a typical 17th-century design, notably a triangular lateen sail on the mizzen mast and a vertical sprit mast on the bowsprit.

GALLEON (1636) In the 1630s Cardinal Richelieu developed France's first regular navy. *La Couronne*, based on a Dutch design, was the new navy's most prestigious ship.

SECOND RATE (1670) In the 17th century the Dutch fleet was one of the most powerful in the world. Its ships had a characteristically shallow draft needed for navigating Dutch waters. Its second rates had 80 guns on two gun decks.



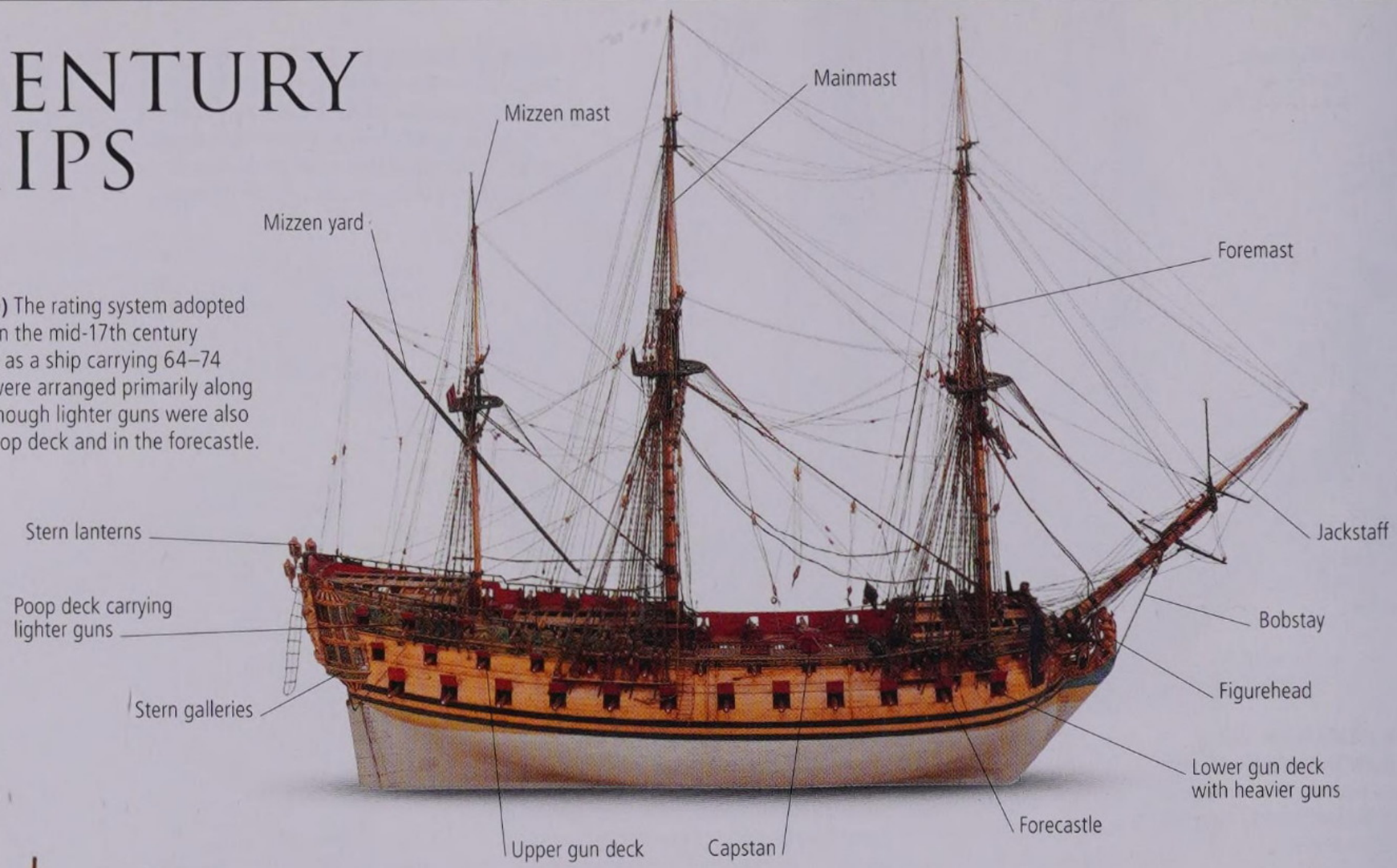


GLOSSARY

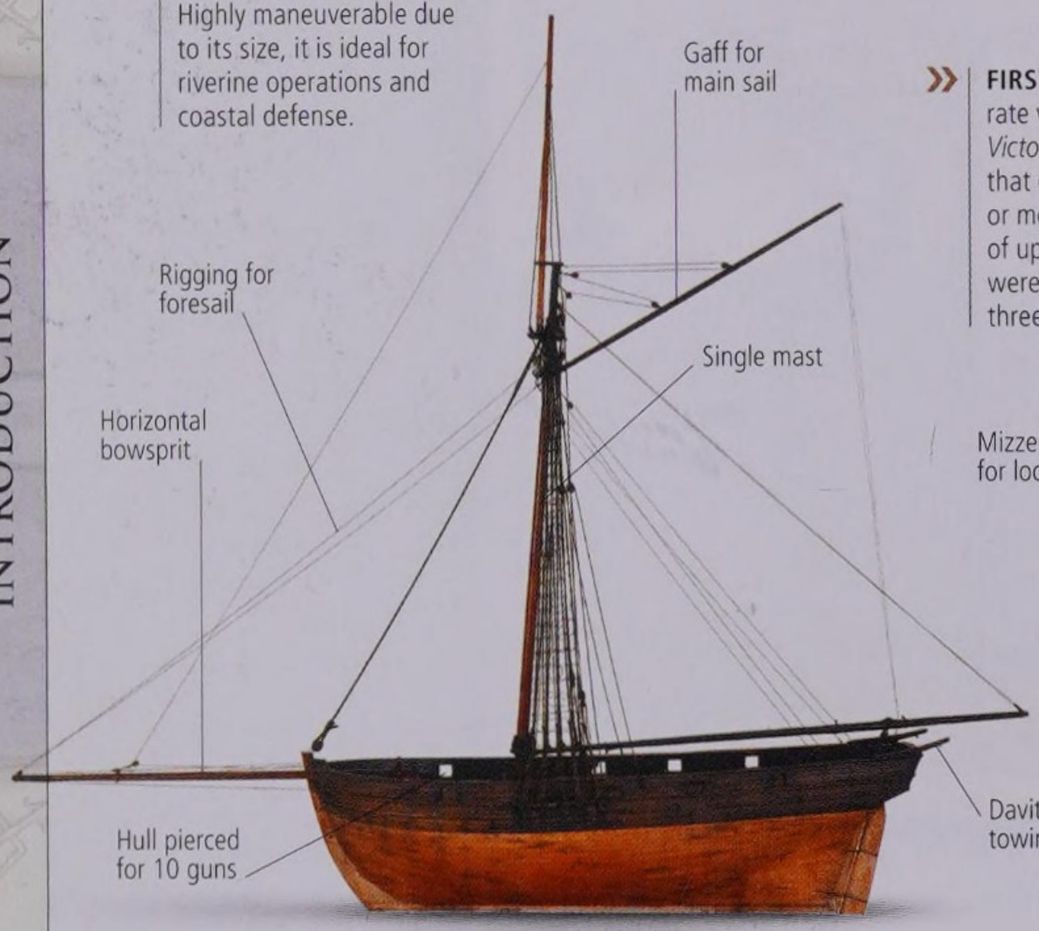
COG Round-bottomed sailing ship developed in northern Europe in the Middle Ages.
CONGREVE ROCKET British self-propelled missile, developed in the early 19th century.
CORSAIR Polite word for "pirate."
CORVETTE Small, fast, lightly-armed, three-masted sailing ship, like a small frigate.
CORVUS Roman device lowered onto the deck of an enemy ship to enable soldiers to board.
COTTONCLAD Confederate ship in US Civil War, protected by cladding of cotton bales.
CRUISER Term originally used to describe ship's role—sailing independently, raiding or attacking merchant shipping. In late 19th century applied to steam warships smaller than a battleship, first the protected cruiser, which had decks armored against explosive shells, then the armored cruiser, with belt of armor around the hull. In 20th century cruisers were usually classed as light and heavy.
CULVERIN Narrow smooth-bored cannon of 16th and 17th centuries.
CUTTER Small sailing boat with a single mast. Also a kind of ship's boat carried by larger sailing vessel.
DAHLGREN GUN Reinforced muzzle-loading cannon, widely used on gunboats in US Civil War.
DEAD-RECKONING Method of calculating one's position at sea by the ship's speed, the time that has elapsed, and the direction steered.
DEPTH CHARGE Anti-submarine weapon designed to explode near target at depth determined by fuse.
DESTROYER Warship conceived at the end of the 19th century as a "torpedo-boat destroyer," then adapted to deliver torpedoes itself. In World Wars I and II destroyers were widely used as escorts for warships and merchant convoys. Today, they are armed with guided missiles to defend other ships from air, submarine, and surface attack.
DOUBLE To attack a single ship with broadsides from both sides.
DREADNOUGHT Launched in 1906, HMS *Dreadnought* gave her name to a new generation of battleships, faster, with more armor and heavier guns than any previous warships.

18TH-CENTURY WARSHIPS

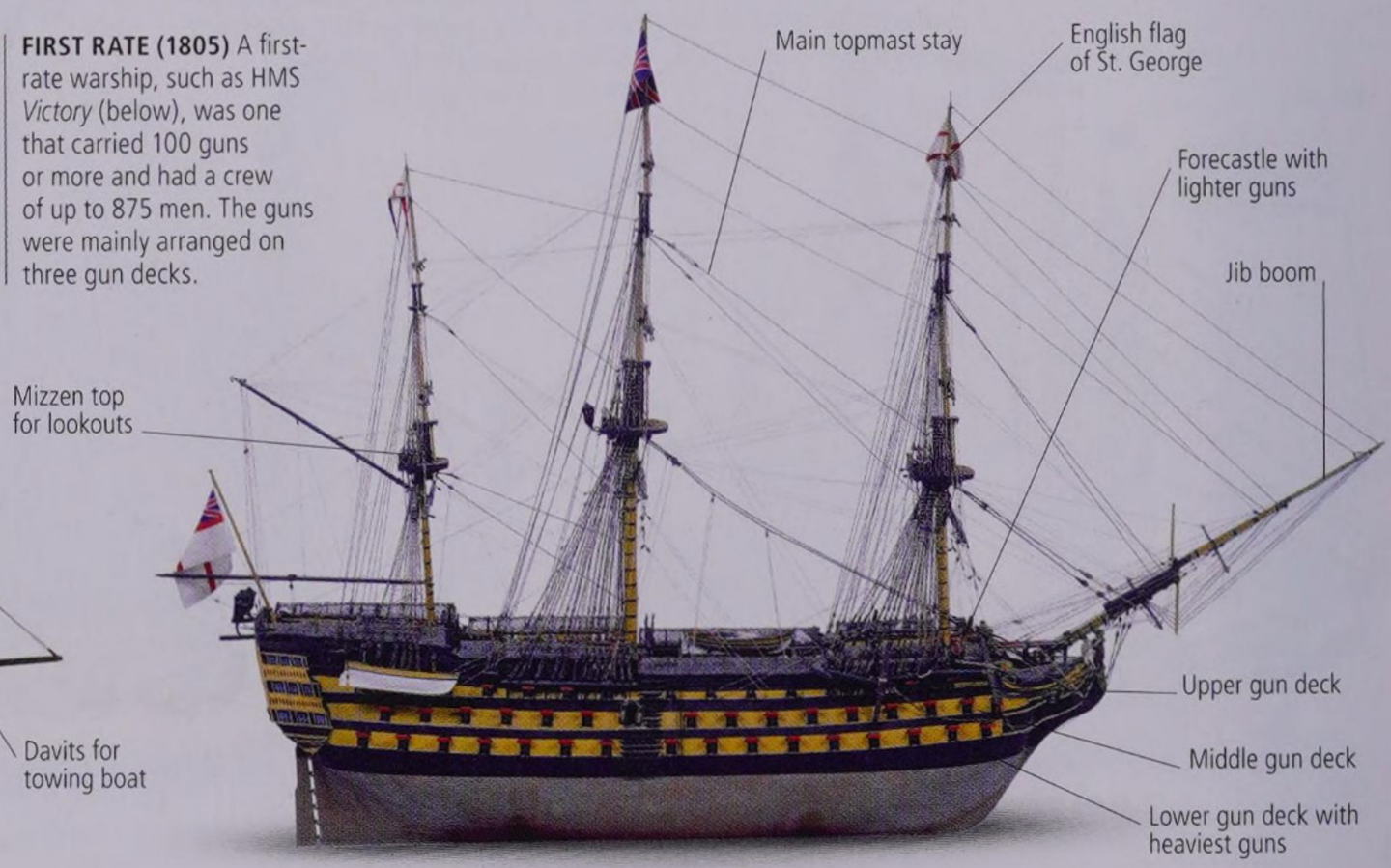
THIRD RATE (1730) The rating system adopted by the Royal Navy in the mid-17th century defined a third rate as a ship carrying 64–74 guns. These guns were arranged primarily along two gun decks, although lighter guns were also mounted on the poop deck and in the forecastle.



CUTTER (1790) A cutter is a small fore-and-aft-rigged single-masted vessel. Highly maneuverable due to its size, it is ideal for riverine operations and coastal defense.



FIRST RATE (1805) A first-rate warship, such as HMS *Victory* (below), was one that carried 100 guns or more and had a crew of up to 875 men. The guns were mainly arranged on three gun decks.



By the 18th century oar power as a means of propulsion in battle had finally fallen by the wayside in most European navies, although galleys still served effectively in the shallow waters of the Baltic. The three-masted, multiple-gun-deck sailing ship, fighting in line of battle, remained unchallenged as the primary warship.

THE RATING SYSTEM

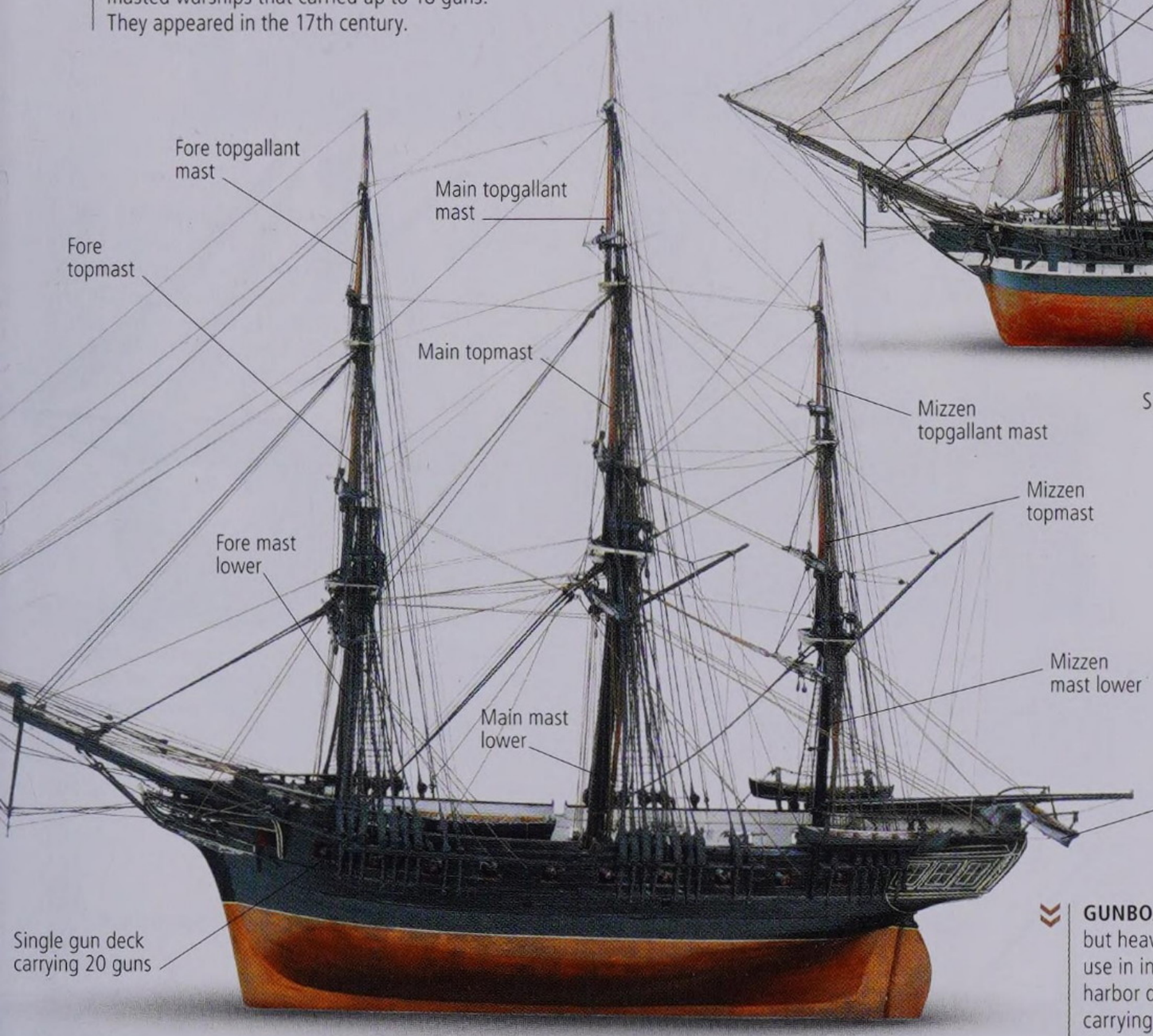
The design of warships became relatively standardized. They were categorized according to a rating system developed by England's Royal Navy in the mid-17th century, which referred to the number of guns a ship carried. By the mid-18th century a first-rate was a three-deck ship with 100 or more guns, while a second-rater had 90–98 guns also on three decks. The standard ship of the line was a two-decker third-rate, typically around 170 ft (52 m) long and mounting from 64 to 74 guns. Fourth-rate ships, with around 50 guns, were sometimes admitted as ships of the line. The naval ships not considered fit for the line of battle included frigates, sloops-of-war, schooners, brigs, and mortar vessels (variously fifth, sixth and unrated ships), which all nevertheless performed vital support functions. Frigates became especially important in the course of the 18th century. Fast and well-armed for their size, they served to great effect as scouts and commerce raiders. The frigates of the fledgling US Navy, such as *Constitution* launched at the end of the century, could carry as many as 60 guns and were a match for any fourth-rate ship of the line.

NEW TECHNOLOGIES

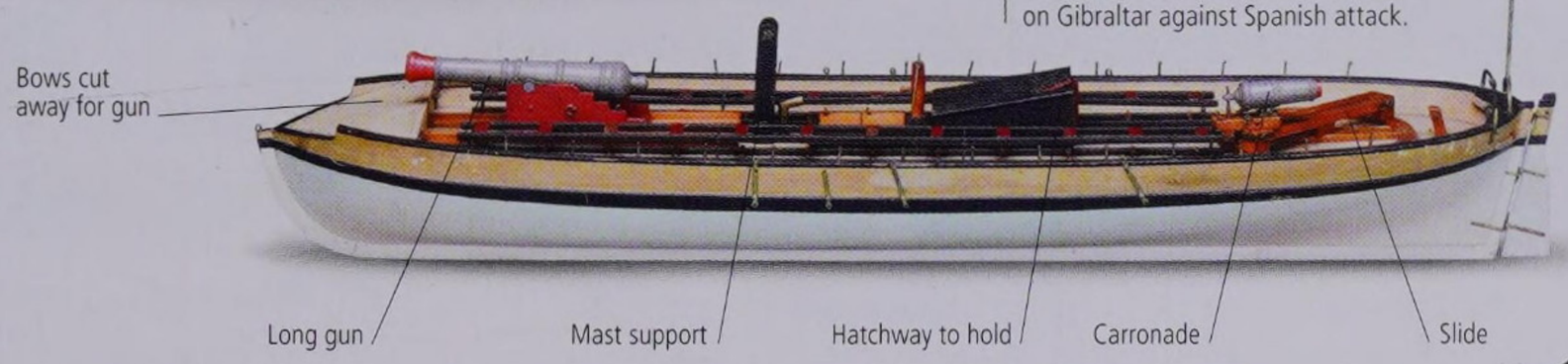
The warships of the 18th century benefited from some crucial technological advances. Firstly, ships' wheels had been introduced to replace the previous tiller system of steering. The pulley mechanism allied to the wheel allowed much greater and swifter movement of the rudder, and hence improved maneuverability. During the late 18th century copper sheathing of hulls was introduced. By protecting the hull, the copper plate allowed warships to spend longer at sea before requiring dry-dock maintenance and repairs. The introduction of the carronade in the 1770s provided a short-range but powerful gun light enough to be mounted on the upper deck without destabilizing the ship—the heaviest guns, such as the 32-lb Blomfields, had to be carried close to the waterline to maintain stability.

SLOOP-OF-WAR (1828) Though the term "sloop-of-war" became associated with all unrated combat vessels (rated ships carried 20 guns or more) sloops-of-war were three-masted warships that carried up to 18 guns. They appeared in the 17th century.

FRIGATE (1840) In the 19th century frigates were classed as fourth-rate warships. Square-rigged on all three masts, and faster than ships of the line, they were used as scouts and commerce raiders.



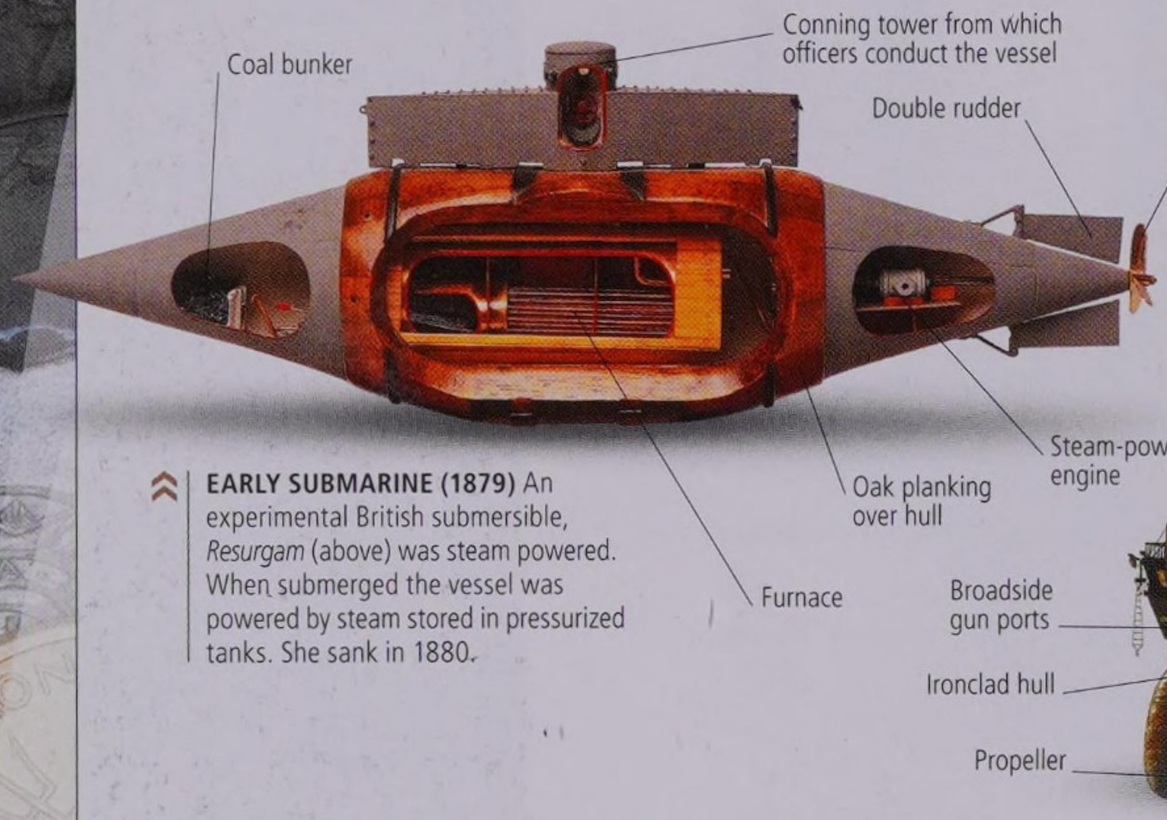
GUNBOAT (1805) Various kinds of small but heavily armed craft were developed for use in inland and coastal waters and for harbor defense. This British gunboat, carrying a carronade and a long gun, was designed to defend the British on Gibraltar against Spanish attack.



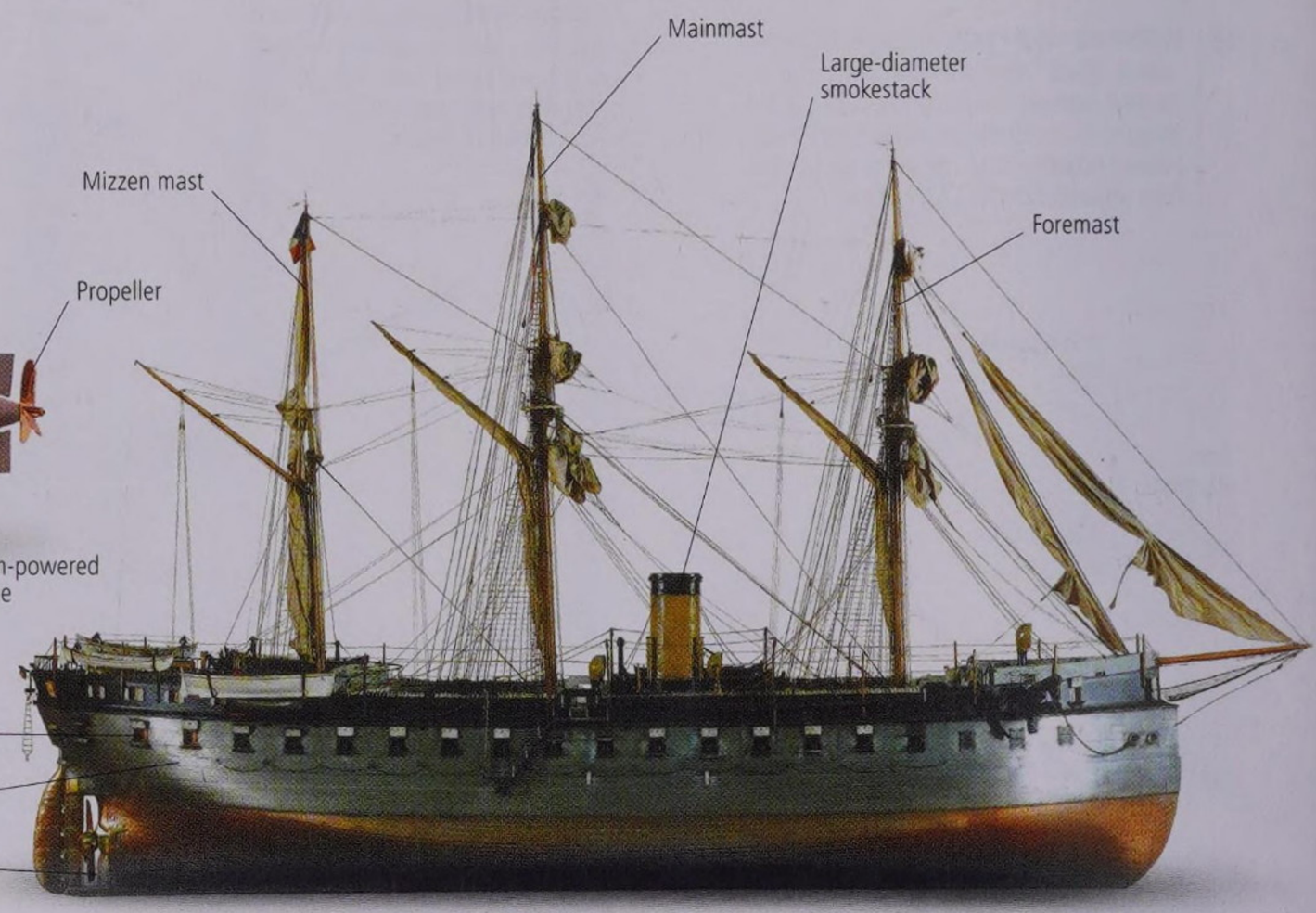
GLOSSARY

DROMON Byzantine warship powered by combination of oars and lateen sails.
E-BOAT High-speed torpedo boat used by Germany in World War II.
ELECTRONIC COUNTERMEASURES In modern warfare, any electronic devices designed to mislead the enemy's radar and other detection or targeting systems.
FIRESHIP Ship deliberately set on fire and propelled toward enemy ships as an incendiary weapon.
FLEET IN BEING A naval force that avoids battle by remaining in port, but remains a theoretical threat to the enemy.
FLINTLOCK Firing mechanism that used spark from steel striking a flint to ignite priming powder. Used for muskets from the 17th century and adopted on some cannon in the following century.
FORE Toward the front of a ship.
FORE-AND-AFT RIG Rig of a sailing ship where the sails are mounted along the line of a ship from stern to bow rather than across it as in a square rig.
FORECASTLE Originally the raised structure at the front of a medieval ship that served as a fighting platform for archers, marines, etc. Now applied to the front part of a ship's upper deck.
FORETOP Platform for lookouts, marines, situated high on the foremast of a ship.
FRIGATE Originally a sailing ship developed in the 17th century that was faster than a ship of the line and had just one gun deck. Used for patrol and escort duties.
FUSTA Fast, light medieval galley.
GALLEASS Large war galley developed by Venetians in 16th century for carrying heavy artillery.
GALLEON The principal European warship of the 16th and 17th centuries. Longer and narrower than the earlier carrack.
GALLIOT Small galley.
GRAPESHOT Small metal balls packed in a sack, used as anti-personnel ammunition in cannons.
GRAPNEL A metal device with several hooks thrown on the end of a rope for grasping hold of another vessel. Also, a small, multi-hooked anchor.

IRON AND STEEL WARSHIPS

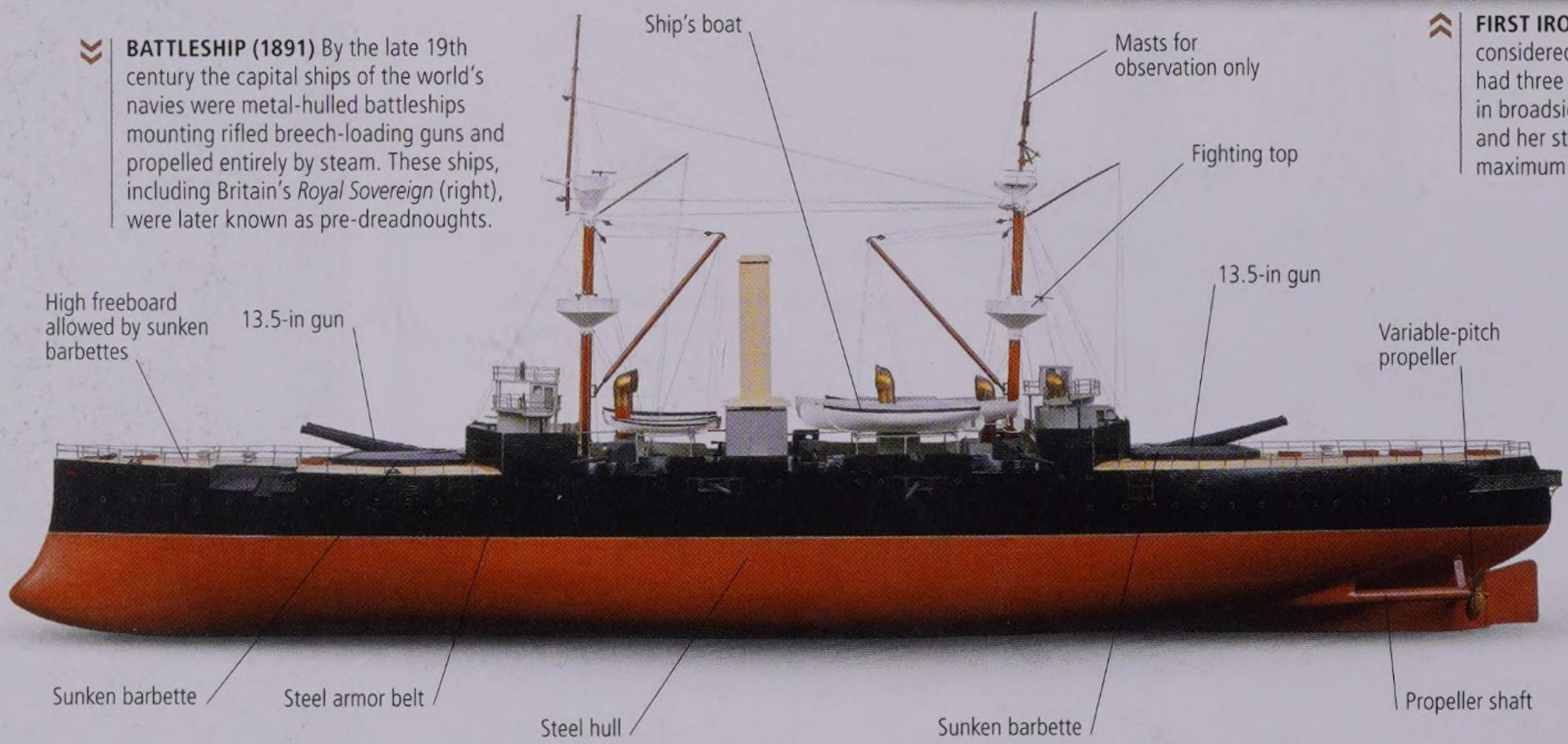


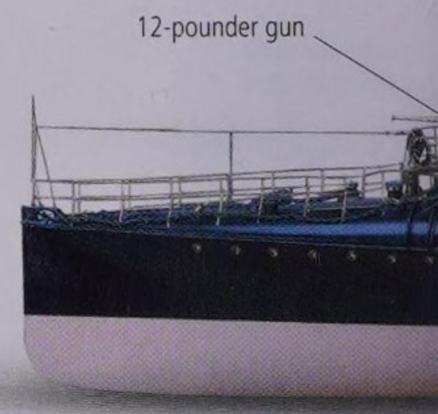
EARLY SUBMARINE (1879) An experimental British submersible, *Resurgam* (above) was steam powered. When submerged the vessel was powered by steam stored in pressurized tanks. She sank in 1880.



FIRST IRONCLAD (1859) The French vessel *Gloire* is considered the first true ironclad warship. She still had three masts, a wooden hull, and guns arranged in broadside, but her hull was clad with iron armor and her steam-driven screw propeller gave her a maximum speed of 13 knots.

BATTLESHIP (1891) By the late 19th century the capital ships of the world's navies were metal-hulled battleships mounting rifled breech-loading guns and propelled entirely by steam. These ships, including Britain's *Royal Sovereign* (right), were later known as pre-dreadnoughts.



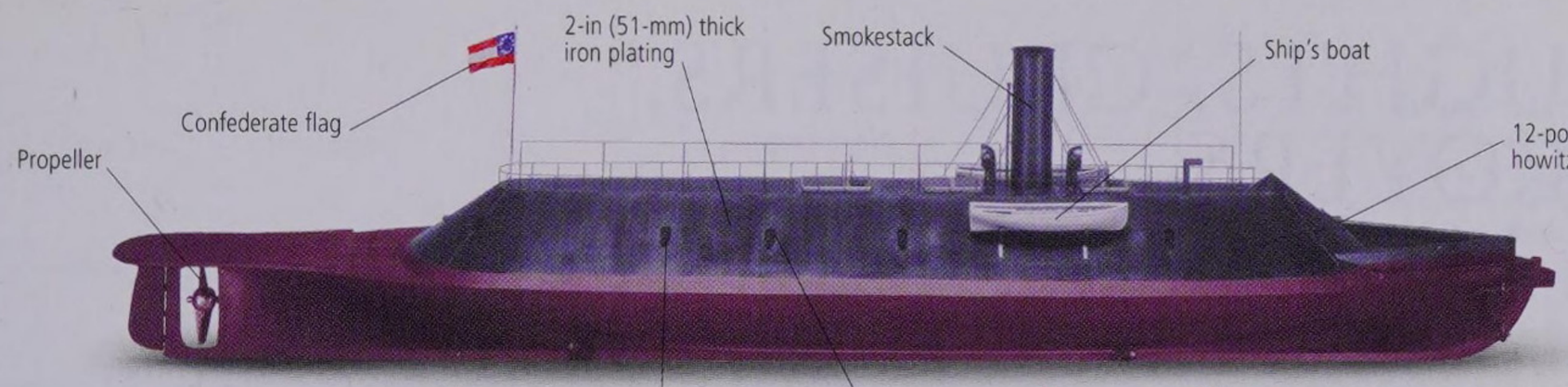


THE DESIGN OF WARSHIPS in the 19th century was revolutionized by the adoption of steam power, the replacement of wood by iron and steel in ship construction, and the development of rifled turret guns firing explosive shells. Change was at first quite slow. The first steam-powered fighting ship was the *Demologos*, an American paddle-wheel-driven harbor defense vessel of 1814, and the first iron-hulled ships emerged in the 1820s. But until the mid-19th century major navies still consisted primarily of wooden sailing ships. The advent of the screw propeller as an alternative to the paddle wheel was a crucial step forward (the first screw-driven warship was launched in 1843) and by the 1850s almost all new-built warships had steam engines as well as sails. The universal adoption of metal construction took longer. In the 1850s ships with hulls of wood or iron were covered with thick iron plates, creating the "ironclad". In the 1870s steel began to be used both for hulls and armor, while sails finally disappeared as marine steam engines became more effective. This revolution in ship construction and propulsion was matched by changes in armament. Explosive shells replaced solid shot. Firing in broadside was gradually abandoned in favor of a much smaller number of large breech-loading guns mounted in revolving turrets—the effectiveness of a turret gun having been demonstrated by the American *Monitor* of 1861. The deployment of torpedoes created new problems for naval tacticians, and gave designers a chance to create new kinds of small, fast torpedo attack craft.

Explosive shell with sabot
This explosive shell from the American Civil War is attached to a wooden sabot. The shell was placed sabot-first into the muzzle to keep the shell's fuze centered; the fuze was ignited by the powder charge.

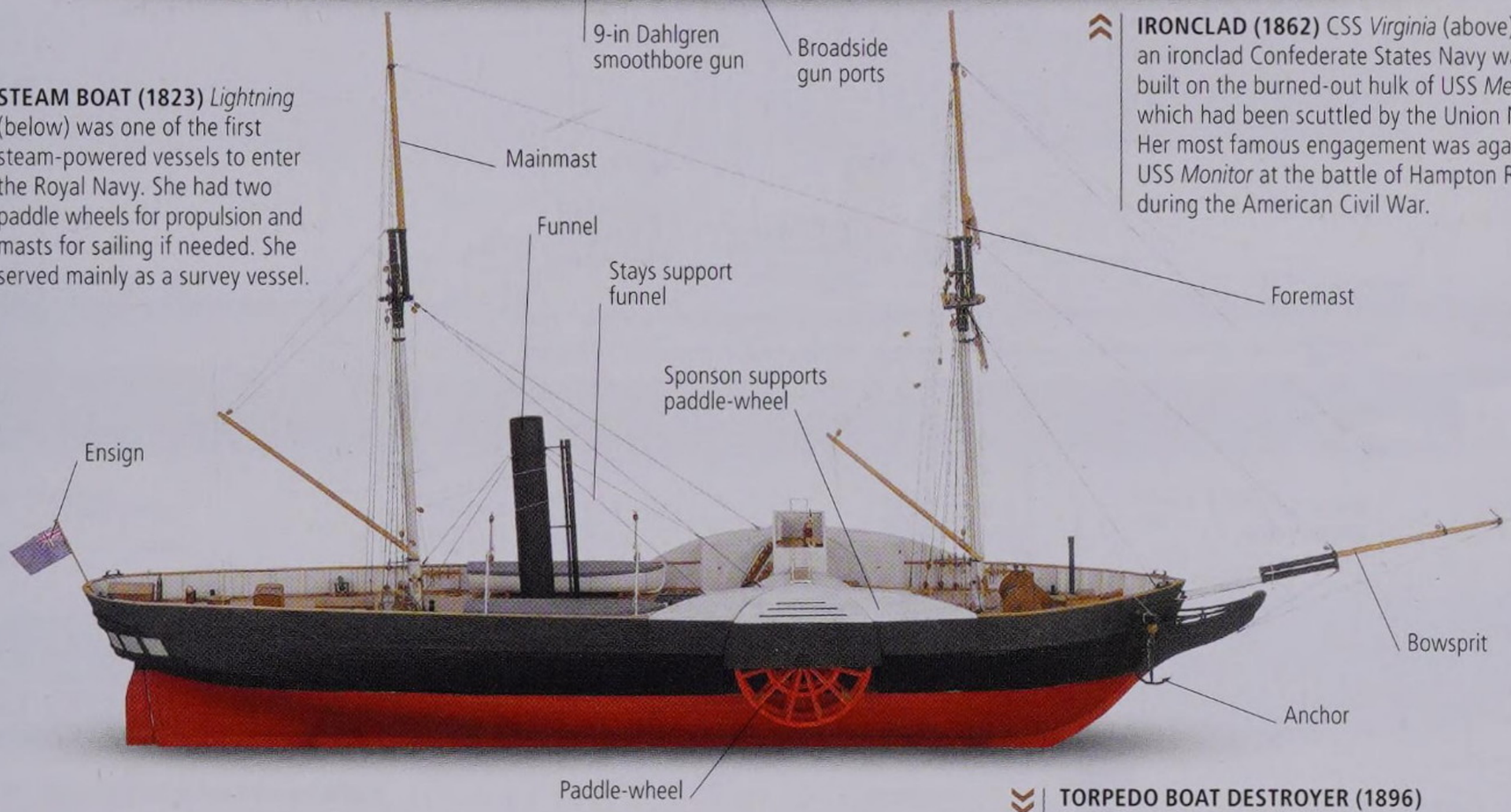
UNEASY TRANSITION

Some of the large warships built during the period of transition from wood and sail to steam and steel were ungainly and even unseaworthy. The positioning of guns, funnels, and masts (still needed for observation posts) often involved unsatisfactory compromises, as did the trade-off between armor and performance.

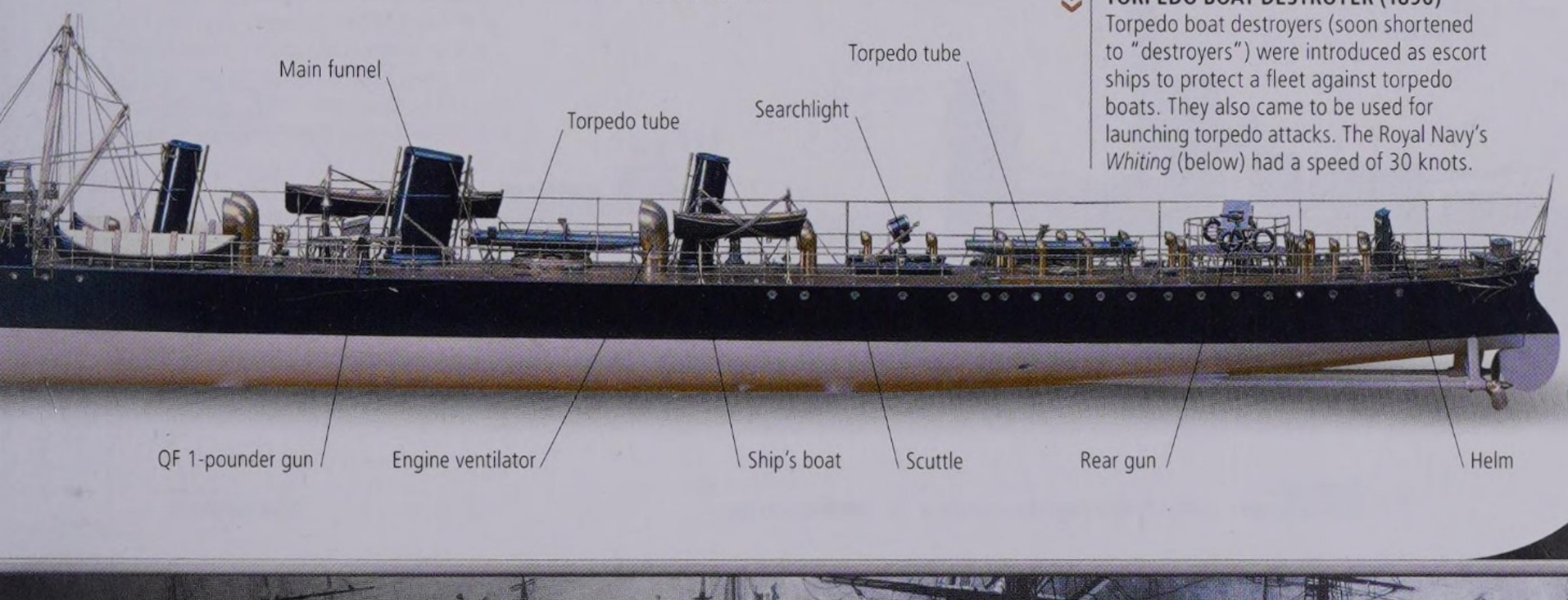


STEAM BOAT (1823) *Lightning* (below) was one of the first steam-powered vessels to enter the Royal Navy. She had two paddle wheels for propulsion and masts for sailing if needed. She served mainly as a survey vessel.

IRONCLAD (1862) CSS *Virginia* (above) was a an ironclad Confederate States Navy warship, built on the burned-out hulk of USS *Merrimack*, which had been scuttled by the Union Navy. Her most famous engagement was against the USS *Monitor* at the battle of Hampton Roads during the American Civil War.



TORPEDO BOAT DESTROYER (1896) Torpedo boat destroyers (soon shortened to "destroyers") were introduced as escort ships to protect a fleet against torpedo boats. They also came to be used for launching torpedo attacks. The Royal Navy's *Whiting* (below) had a speed of 30 knots.

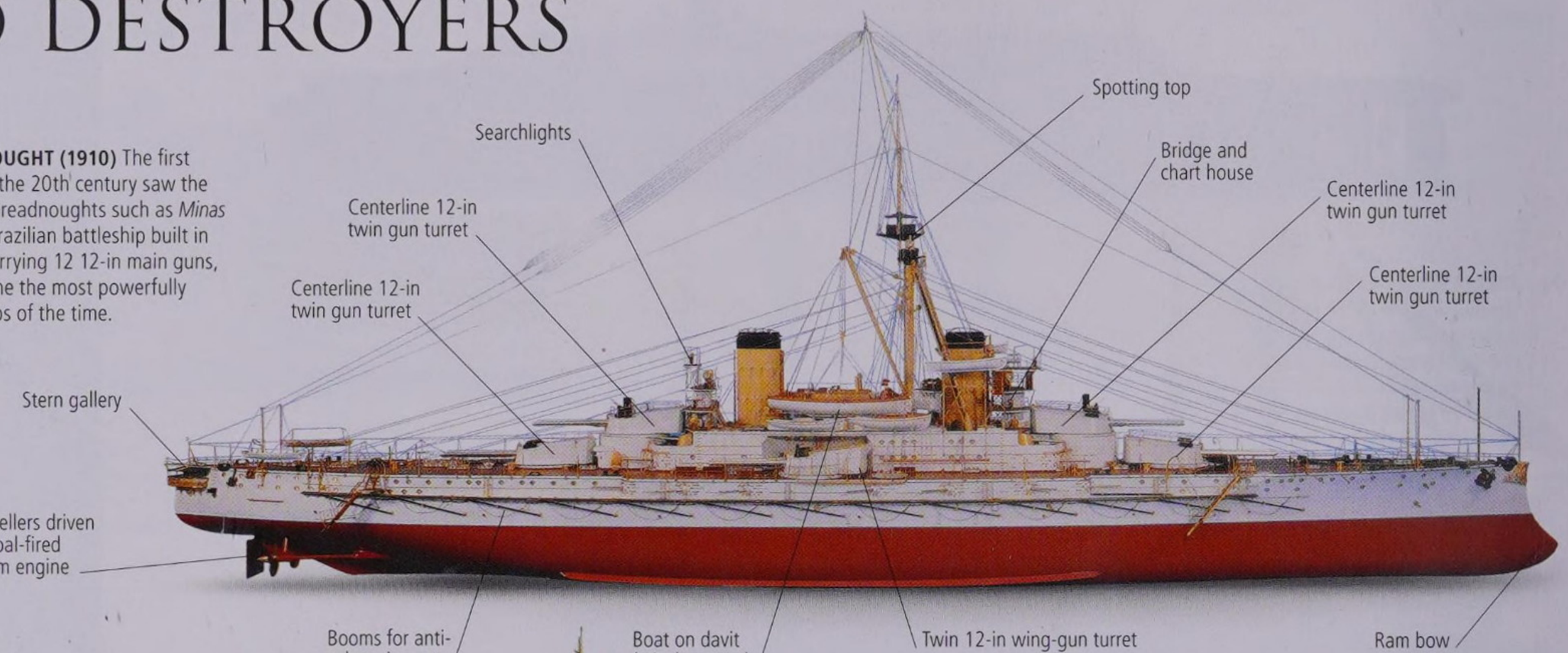


GLOSSARY

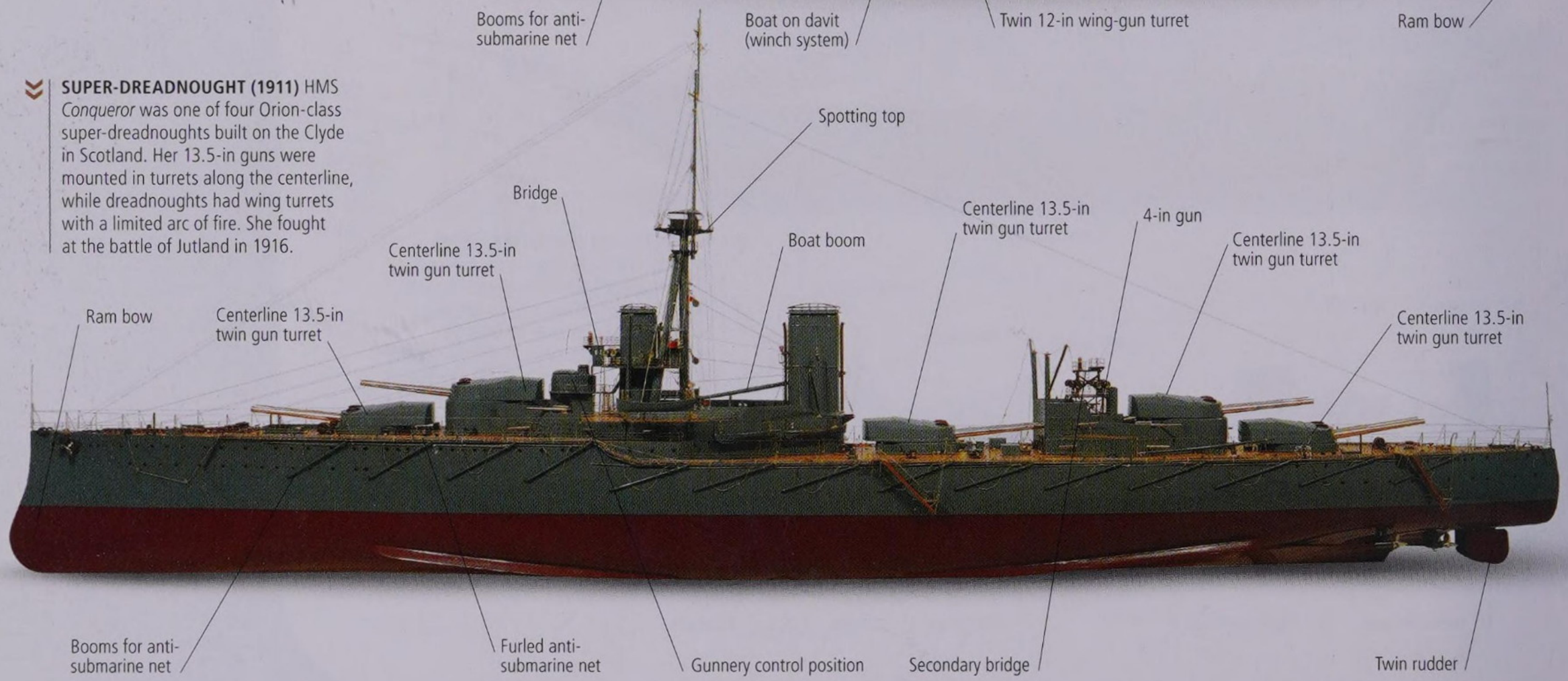
GRAPPLING HOOK A grapnel.
GREEK FIRE Inflammable liquid used as a kind of flamethrower in naval warfare by the Byzantines from the 7th century CE.
GUN PORT Opening in the hull of a ship through which ship's guns are run out for firing.
HAWSER Heavy rope or steel cable used on board ship.
HEAVE TO To prevent forward movement of a ship, usually by bringing bow into the wind. A ship stopped this way is "hove to."
HEMMEMA Swedish warship of the 18th century. Powered by oars or sail, it was used in the shallow coastal waters of the Baltic.
HULK Old, wrecked, or abandoned ship, often used as a barrier.
IRONCLAD Warship of the mid-19th century, originally built with wooden hull armored with iron plates.
KABUKSON Medieval Korean oar-powered warship, fitted with heavy cannon and an armored (spiked) upper deck (also known as a turtle ship).
KAMIKAZE The suicide attacks of Japanese pilots who intentionally crashed their airplanes into enemy ships toward the end of World War II. Usually translated "divine wind" after the typhoon that prevented the Mongol invasion of Japan in 1281.
KNOT Speed of one nautical mile per hour—1.15 mph (1.85 kph).
LANYARD Cord pulled to fire a gun, e.g. to activate the flintlock firing mechanism of a cannon.
LATEEN SAIL Triangular sail mounted at an angle on the mast.
LEE The side (e.g. of a ship) away from the direction of the wind.
LEE SHORE Shore on the leeward side of a ship, i.e. with the wind blowing toward the shore.
LEEWARD Opposite of windward, the direction downwind of the way the wind is blowing.
LIBURNIAN Small Roman warship.
LINE OF BATTLE Tactic developed in 17th century, where warships line up one behind the other to fire broadsides at the enemy with no risk of hitting their own ships.
LINE ABREAST Ships sailing side by side in a line are said to be "in line abreast."

DREADNOUGHTS, CRUISERS, AND DESTROYERS

DREADNOUGHT (1910) The first decade of the 20th century saw the arrival of dreadnoughts such as *Minas Gerais*, a Brazilian battleship built in Britain. Carrying 12 12-in main guns, she was one the most powerfully armed ships of the time.



SUPER-DREADNOUGHT (1911) HMS *Conqueror* was one of four Orion-class super-dreadnoughts built on the Clyde in Scotland. Her 13.5-in guns were mounted in turrets along the centerline, while dreadnoughts had wing turrets with a limited arc of fire. She fought at the battle of Jutland in 1916.



In the years between 1880 and the beginning of World War I in 1914, warship design settled into a generally recognizable format. Multiple guns were mounted along the centerline, and moving turrets provided wide arcs of fire. Armor plate, particularly around the magazine and the engine rooms, became critical, especially as guns, shells, propellants, and targeting equipment all went through dramatic improvements. By the end of World War I, battleships were sending shells of large caliber (12-in or even 15-in) accurately out to ranges of up to 60,000 ft (18,000 m).

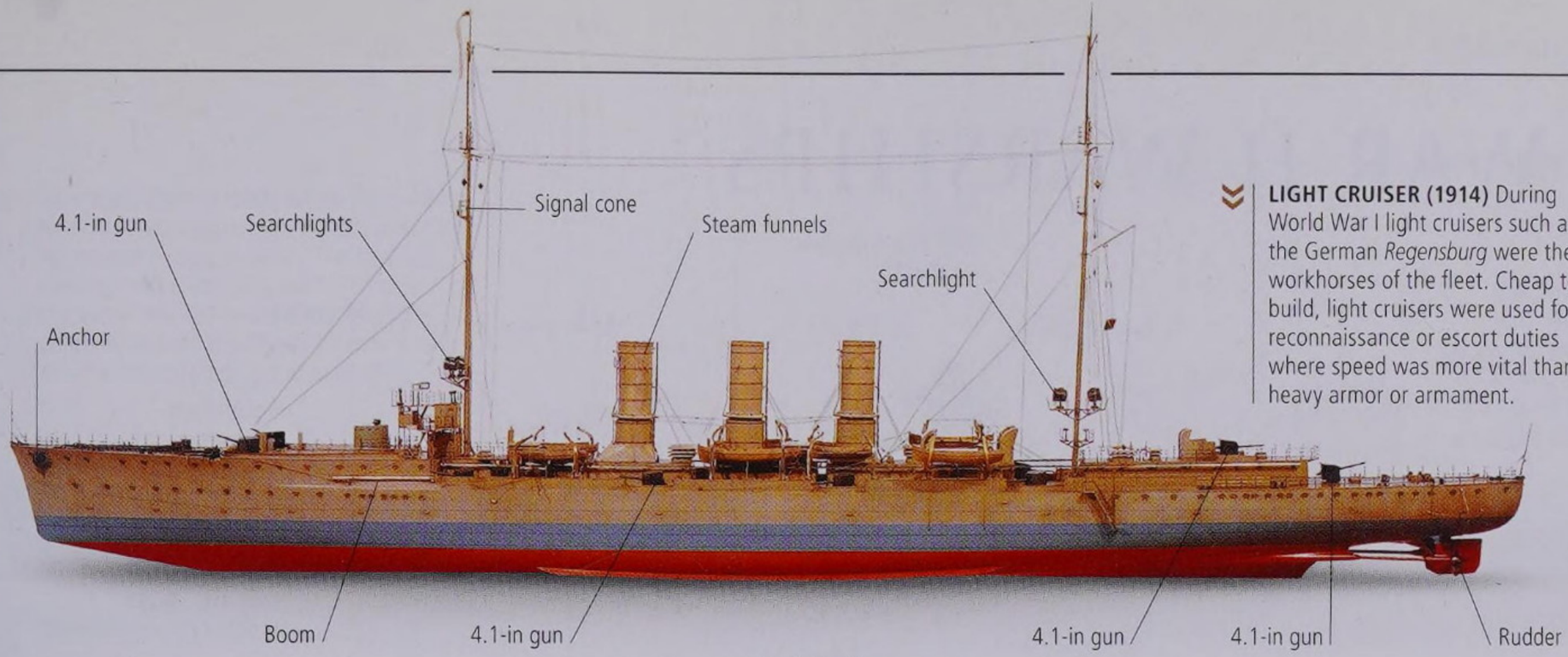
POWER FACTORS

Propulsion also went through important changes from the last decades of the 19th century. The use of steam turbines produced better power more smoothly delivered, and during the second decade of the 20th century the major powers switched from coal-fired engines to oil-burning variants. Oil not only burned cleaner, but could be transferred easily at sea, and could power ships for longer distances.

TYPES OF WARSHIPS

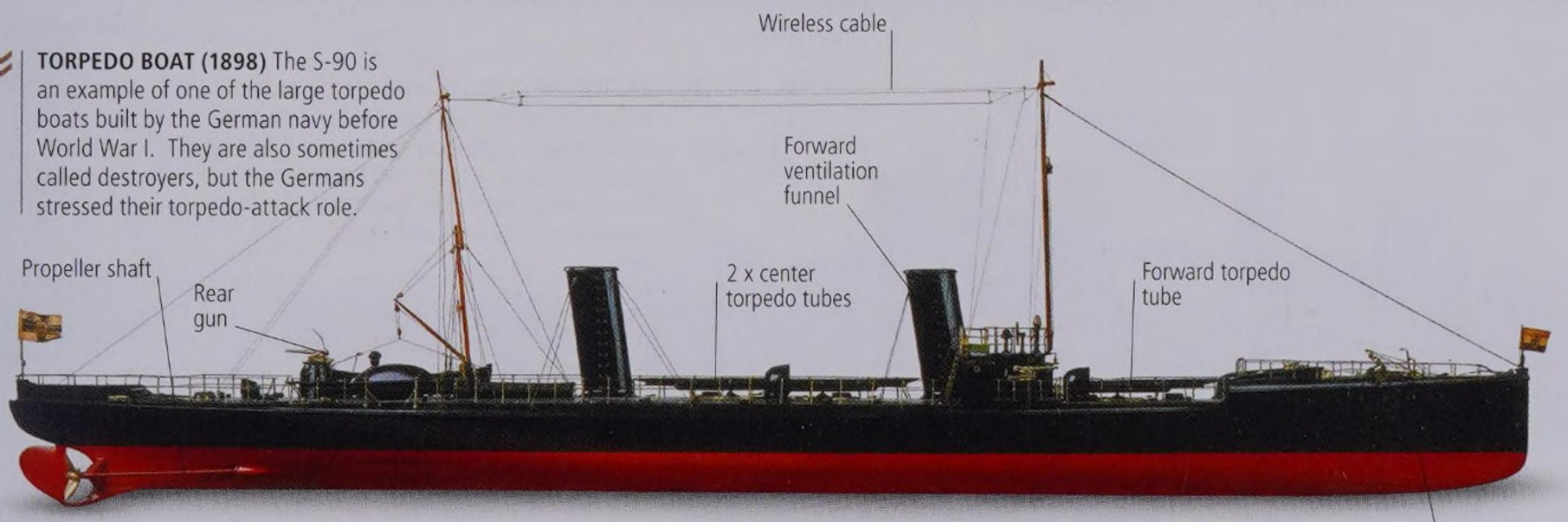
Three primary types of major surface vessel equipped the world's navies from around 1900. Battleships were the capital ships, with multiple batteries of turret-mounted guns. The dreadnoughts, a generic name derived from the eponymous British battleship of 1906, almost exclusively carried very large-caliber guns for long-range ship-to-ship duels. Cruisers were faster and had longer range and lighter armament than battleships. The battlecruiser was designed to combine battleship armament with the speed of a cruiser, at the expense of much reduced armor. Finally, destroyers, developed from early torpedo boats, performed such roles as fleet defense and escort duties, as well as carrying out torpedo attacks. The bane of all surface warships was the submarine that first had a dramatic effect on naval warfare in World War I.

QF 1-pounder gun
The British QF 1-pounder was used as an anti-torpedo boat weapon during World War I.

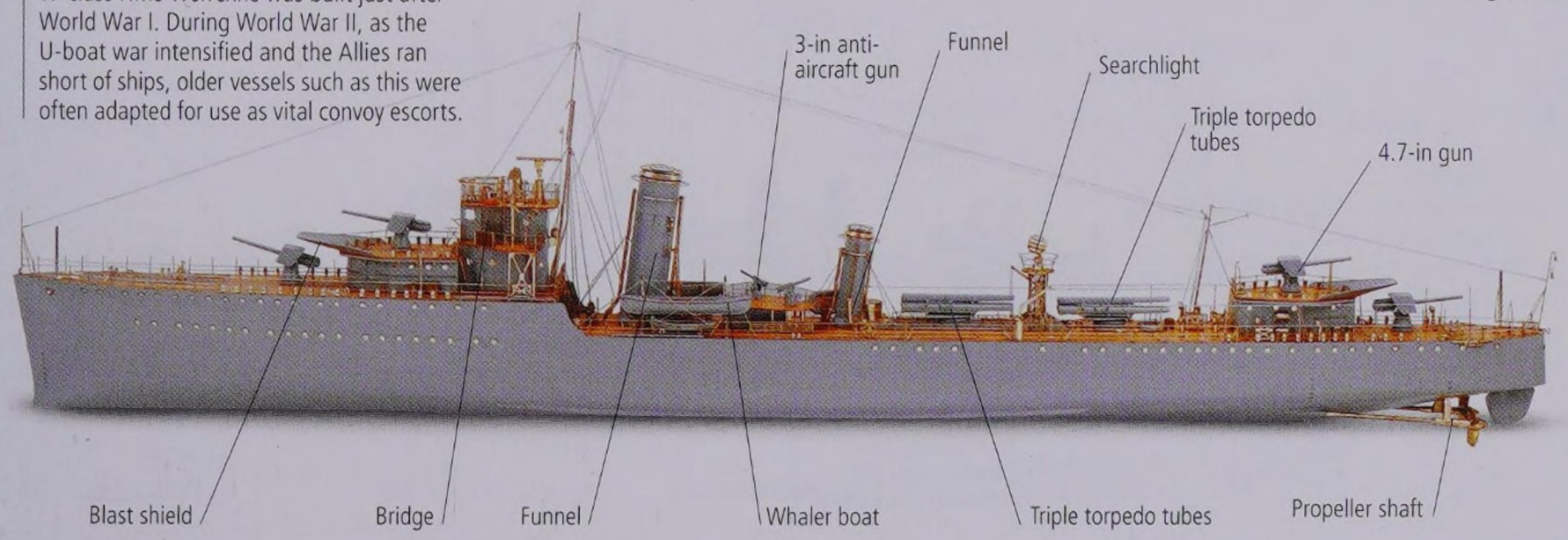


LIGHT CRUISER (1914) During World War I light cruisers such as the German *Regensburg* were the workhorses of the fleet. Cheap to build, light cruisers were used for reconnaissance or escort duties where speed was more vital than heavy armor or armament.

TORPEDO BOAT (1898) The S-90 is an example of one of the large torpedo boats built by the German navy before World War I. They are also sometimes called destroyers, but the Germans stressed their torpedo-attack role.

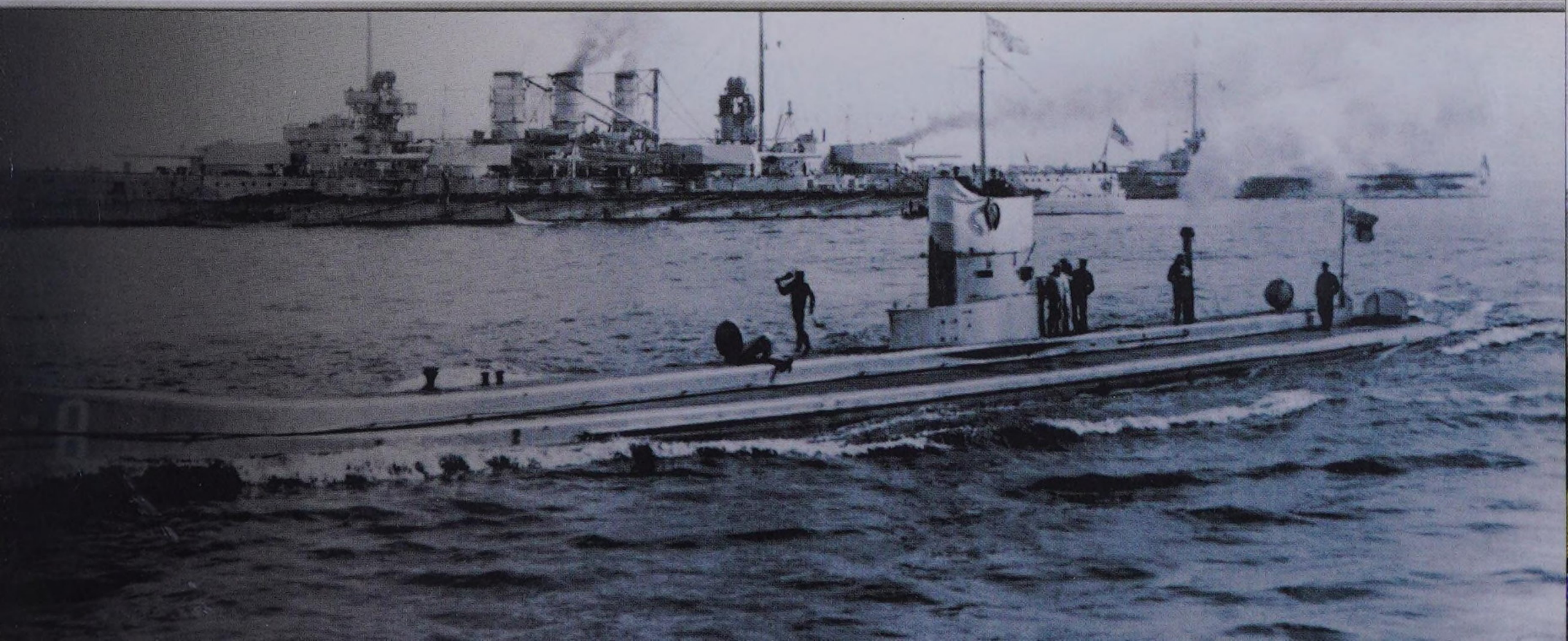


DESTROYER (1919) The modifed British W-class HMS *Wolverine* was built just after World War I. During World War II, as the U-boat war intensified and the Allies ran short of ships, older vessels such as this were often adapted for use as vital convoy escorts.



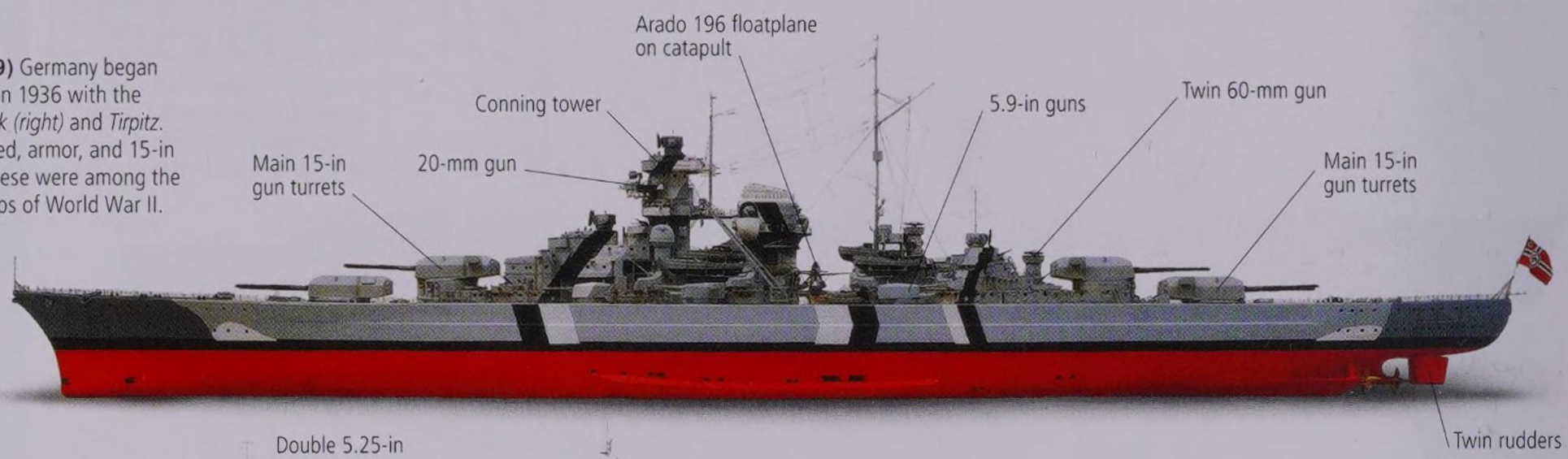
GLOSSARY

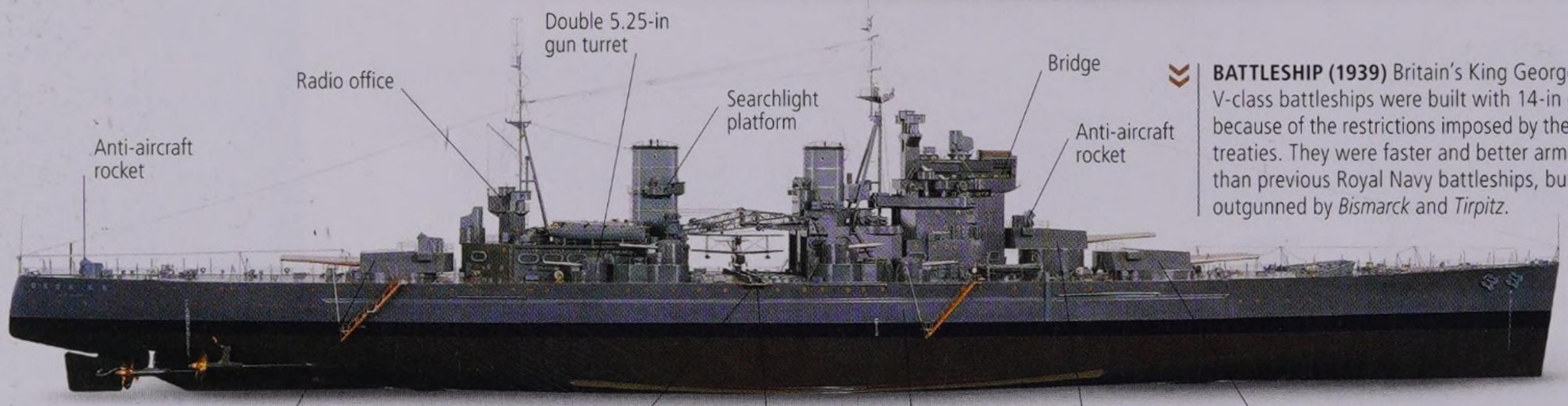
LINE AHEAD Ships sailing in a line, one behind another, are said to be "in line ahead."
MAN OF WAR Large sailing ship armed with cannon on two or three decks, the standard fighting ship of European navies from the 17th to the 19th century.
MANGONEL Medieval catapult, widely used in siege warfare.
MARINE Soldier carried on board a warship.
MARQUE, LETTERS OF License issued by a government to a privateer to engage warships or capture merchant shipping of another nation.
MATCH, SLOW Slow-burning cord used by gunners to light the priming powder in the touch-hole of a cannon.
MIDSHIPMAN Young boy taken aboard ship as a cadet to be trained up to be an officer.
MIZZEN MAST Third mast of a three-masted sailing ship, situated behind the mainmast. Often fitted with a lateen sail.
MONITOR Class of 19th-century ironclad warship that took its name from USS *Monitor*. Often applied to shallow-draft vessels used for shore bombardment.
MORTAR Muzzle-loading gun with a short, wide barrel for firing explosive shells at a high angle.
MUZZLE-LOADER Gun loaded from the front (muzzle) end, such as cannon where the shot and powder charge have to be rammed down the length of the barrel.
NAVARCH Supreme naval commander in Sparta and other Greek city-states.
NAUTICAL MILE 1.15 miles (1.85 km). 60 nautical miles = 1 degree of the earth's circumference.
OCTANT Precursor of the sextant as an instrument for measuring angle of sun, moon, and stars to the horizon.
PANOKSEON Medieval Korean war galley.
PENTECONTER Early Greek war galley, powered by 50 oars.
POLYREME Large oared galley of the Classical era with several oarsmen pulling on each oar.
POOP Highest deck of a sailing ship, situated at the stern, usually above the captain's quarters.



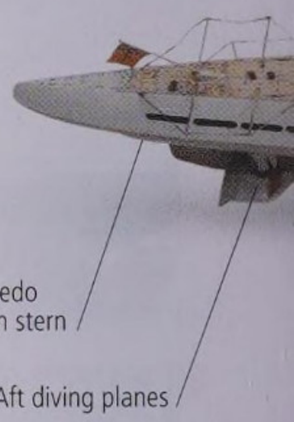
WORLD WAR II WARSHIPS

BATTLESHIP (1939) Germany began rebuilding its navy in 1936 with the battleships *Bismarck (right)* and *Tirpitz*. With their high speed, armor, and 15-in (380-mm) guns, these were among the most advanced ships of World War II.

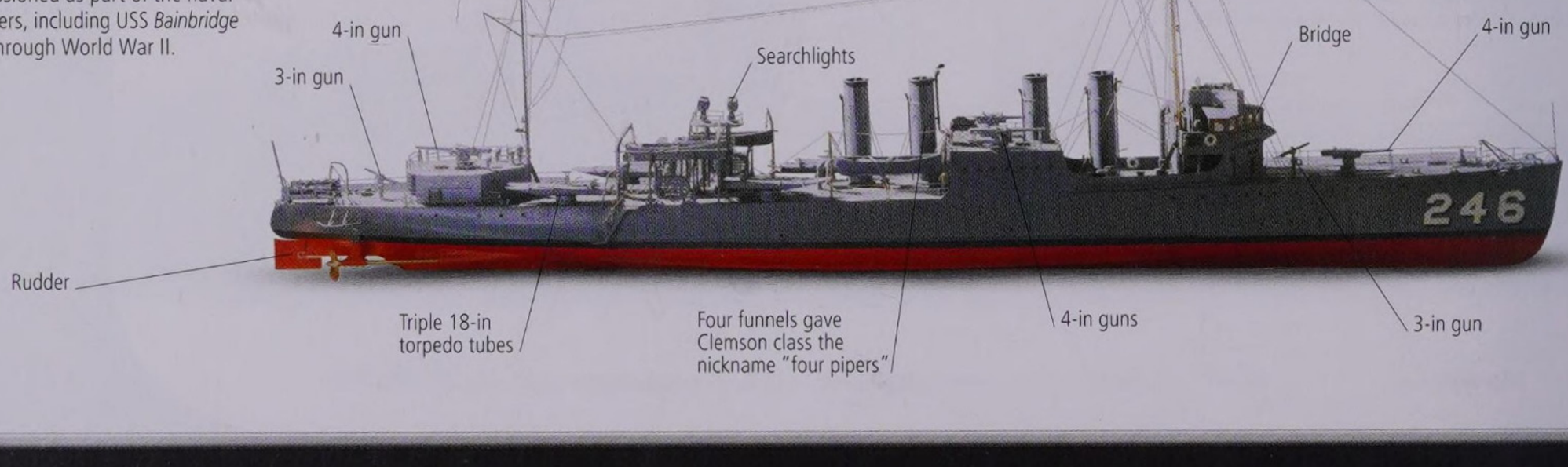




BATTLESHIP (1939) Britain's King George V-class battleships were built with 14-in guns because of the restrictions imposed by the naval treaties. They were faster and better armored than previous Royal Navy battleships, but were outgunned by *Bismarck* and *Tirpitz*.

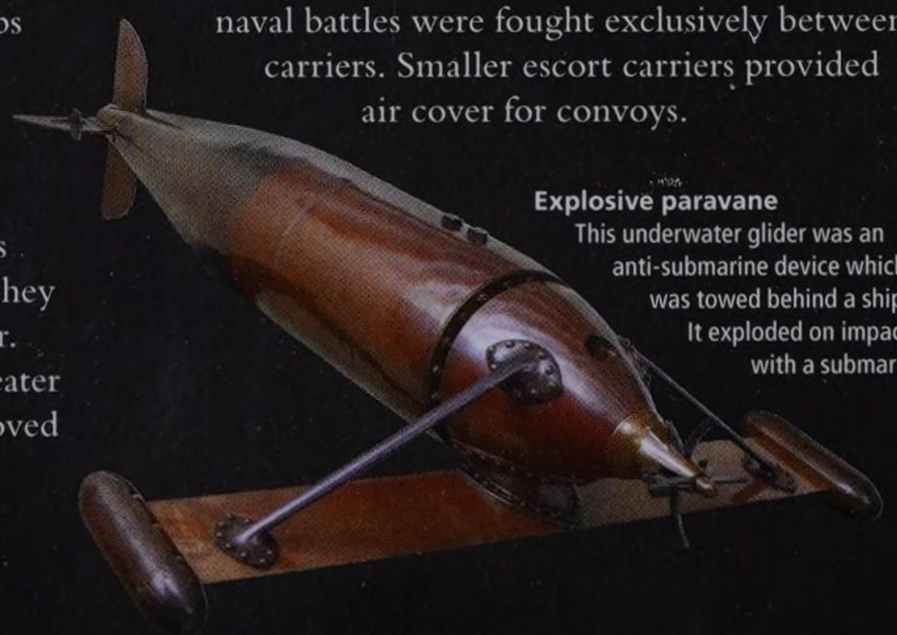


DESTROYER (1920) 156 Clemson-class destroyers were mass-produced for the US Navy from 1919. Many of the destroyers were decommissioned as part of the naval treaties but others, including USS *Bainbridge* (*right*) served through World War II.



MAJOR NAVIES entered World War II still preoccupied with developing bigger and better battleships. Ships under construction when the war started included the German *Tirpitz* and *Bismarck*, the American *Iowa*, and the Japanese *Yamato* and *Musashi*, the two largest battleships ever built. Capable of speeds of around 30 knots and with a main armament of 15-in to 18.1-in guns, these capital ships were extraordinary fighting machines. But although big-gun ships played an important part in the war, they were upstaged by the rise of air power.

Warships were fitted with ever greater numbers of anti-aircraft guns, but proved painfully vulnerable to land- and carrier-based air attack. Aircraft carriers had been under development since World War I, and during World War II naval air power came to maturity. Equipped with a mix of dive-bombers, torpedo, and fighter aircraft, fleet carriers proved a dominant force especially in the Pacific theater, where some naval battles were fought exclusively between carriers. Smaller escort carriers provided air cover for convoys.

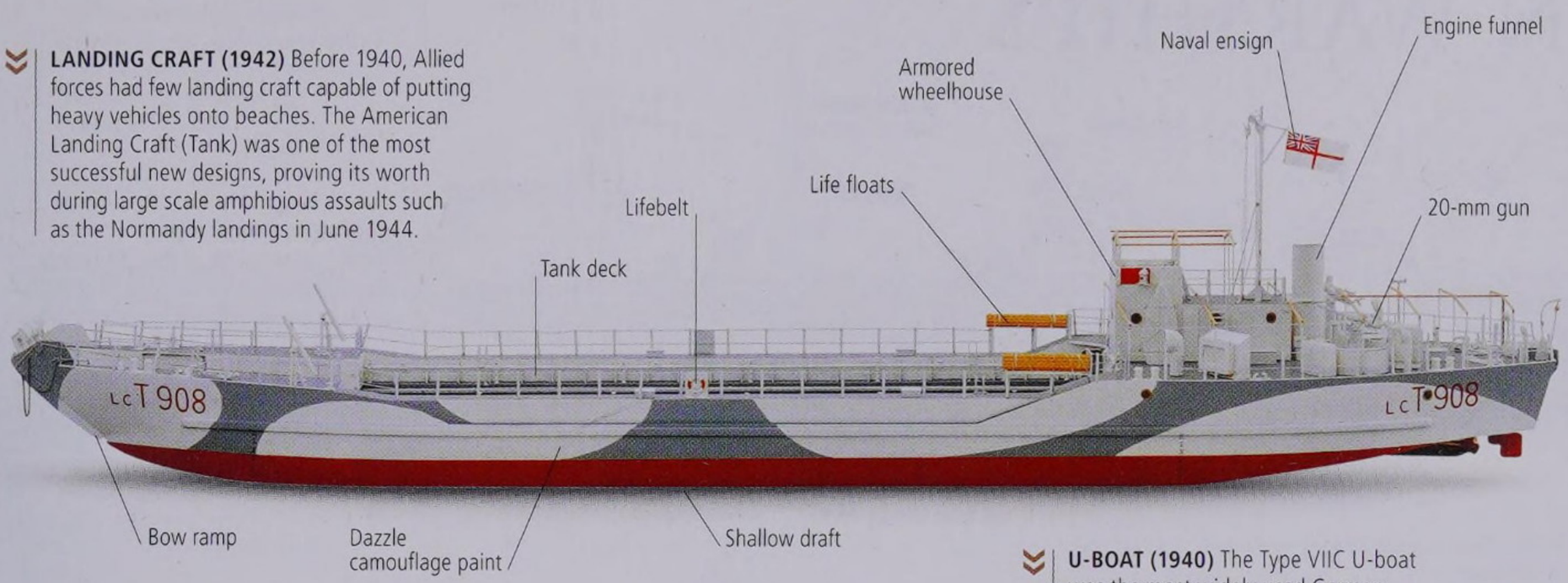


Explosive paravane
This underwater glider was an anti-submarine device which was towed behind a ship. It exploded on impact with a submarine.

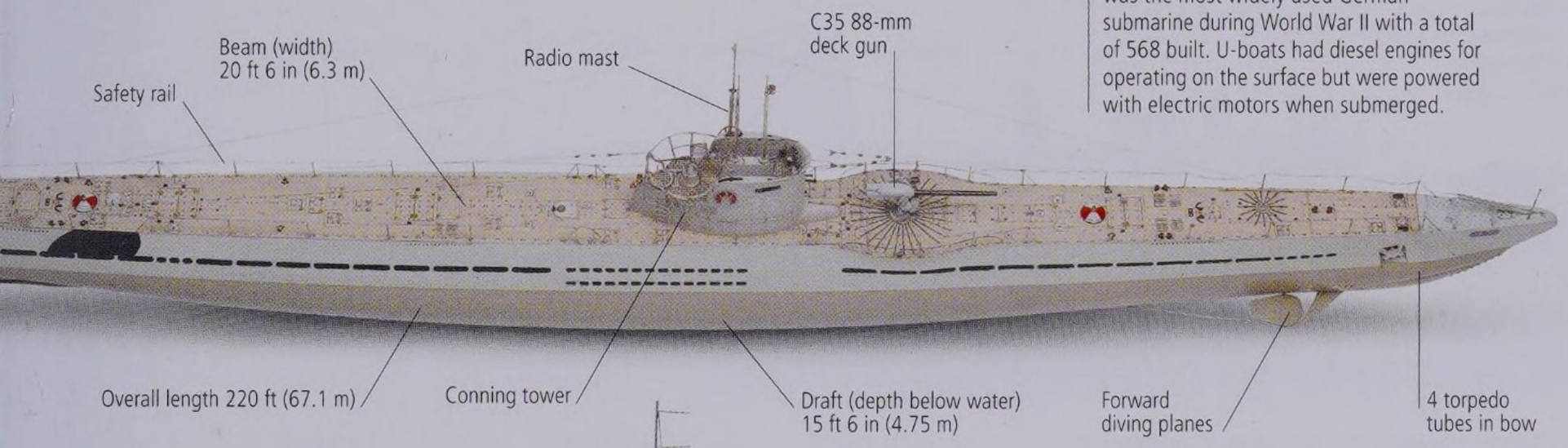
SUBMARINE WARFARE

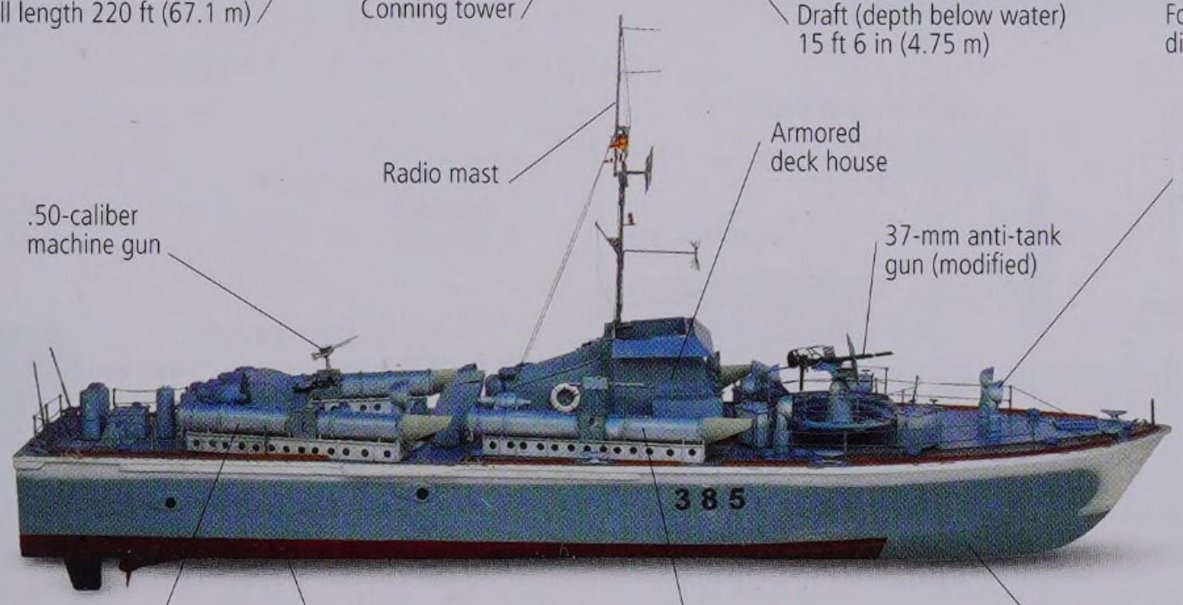
Powered by diesel engines on the surface and electric motors under the sea, submarines remained relatively primitive "submersibles" until relatively late in the war, when the Germans introduced U-boats capable of sustained underwater operations. Yet even these unsophisticated boats had a critical impact in both the Pacific and the Atlantic theaters. A whole new range of anti-submarine weaponry was deployed aboard destroyers, frigates, sloops, and corvettes. Radar and sonar detection technologies became integral to naval warfare, particularly in detecting enemy aircraft or submarines. The importance of amphibious operations in World War II also drove the development of a broad spectrum of landing craft.

LANDING CRAFT (1942) Before 1940, Allied forces had few landing craft capable of putting heavy vehicles onto beaches. The American Landing Craft (Tank) was one of the most successful new designs, proving its worth during large scale amphibious assaults such as the Normandy landings in June 1944.



U-BOAT (1940) The Type VIIC U-boat was the most widely used German submarine during World War II with a total of 568 built. U-boats had diesel engines for operating on the surface but were powered with electric motors when submerged.

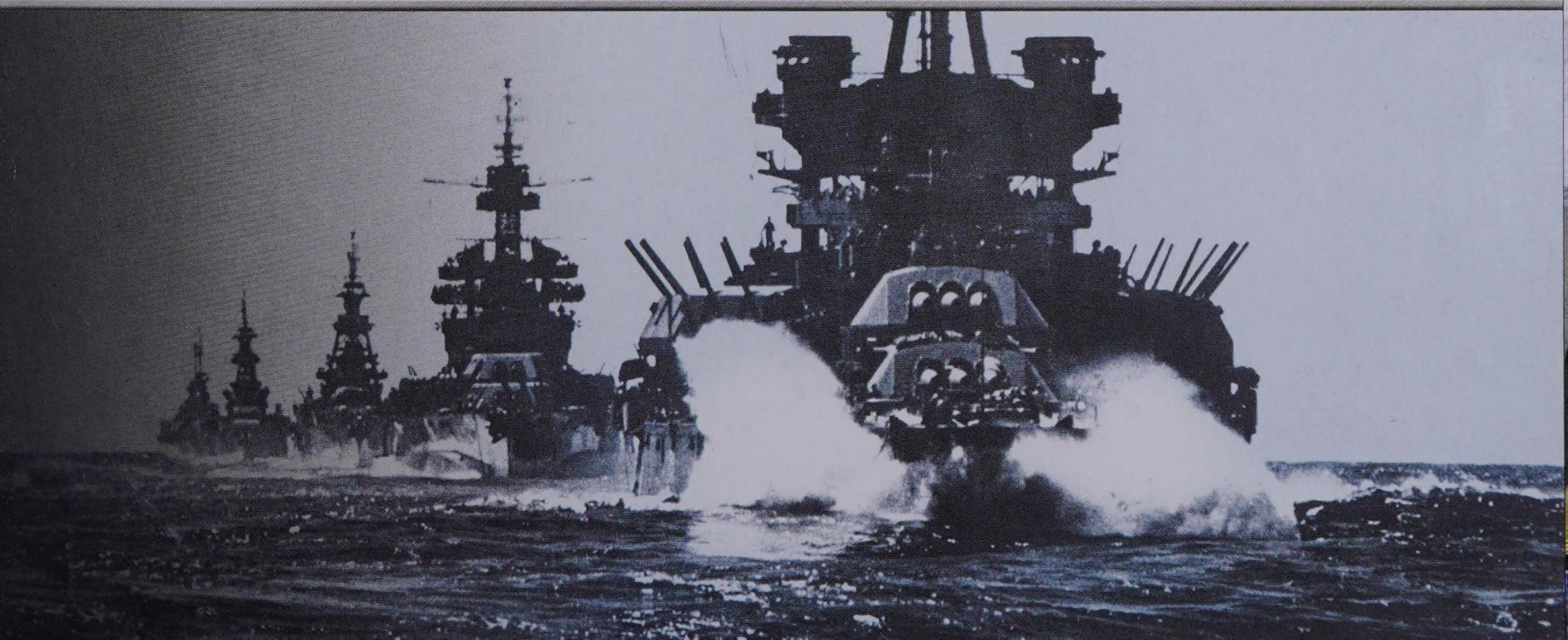




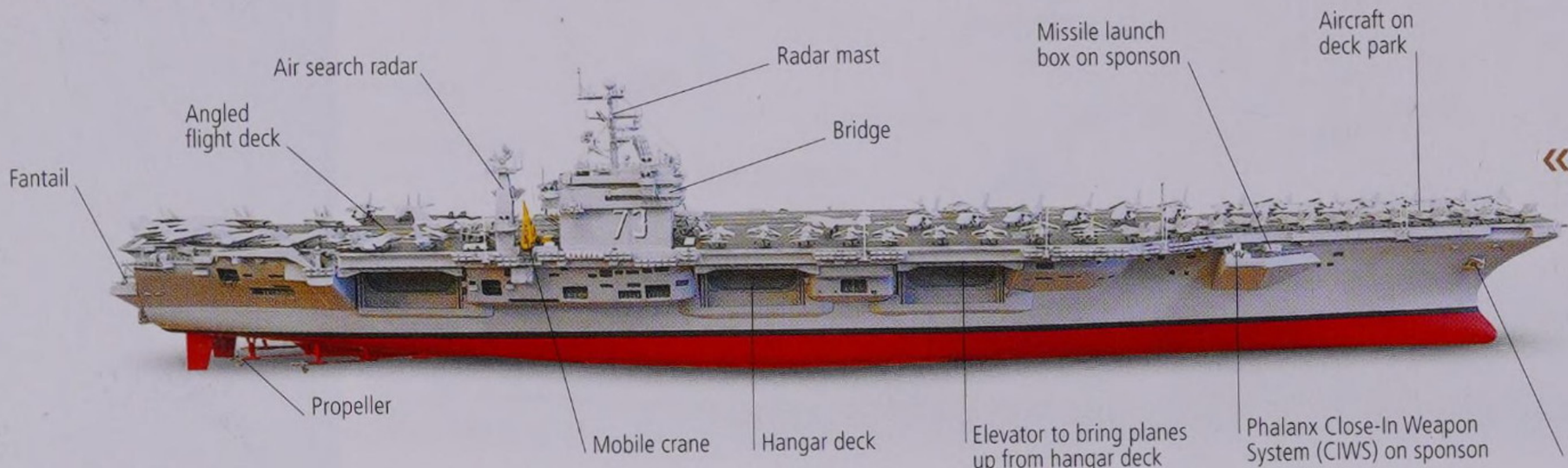
PT BOAT (1942) A variety of motor torpedo boat used by the US Navy in World War II. Small, fast, and armed with several torpedoes, they provided an inexpensive way of attacking large surface ships, even battleships, without requiring heavy naval guns.

GLOSSARY

PORT The left side of the ship, looking foreward.
POWER PROJECTION A state's ability to deploy naval and other military forces far from its own territory. This threat of force can be used as a political weapon.
PRIZE REGULATIONS Rules governing the taking of enemy merchant ships as prizes with regard to treatment of prisoners and profits made from the sale of the ship and its cargo.
PRAM Shallow-hulled Swedish sailing ship used as gunboat in naval warfare in the Baltic.
PRE-DREADNOUGHT Battleship built or ordered before HMS *Dreadnought* set new standards for armament, armor, and speed when she was launched in 1906.
PRESS To conscript sailors to serve on a warship.
PROW, GIVING THE Tactic employed in the 16th century of firing first with guns in the bow then delivering a broadside.
PT BOAT Patrol torpedo boat. Small, fast US craft of World War II, usually with four torpedo tubes.
QUARTERDECK The deck at the rear of a sailing ship below the poop, where the ship's wheel and binnacle are located.
QUINQUEREME Large warship of the Hellenic and Roman eras.
Q-SHIP Merchantman with concealed guns used by the British to trick U-boats in World War I.
RAM Projecting armored beak at the front of an Ancient Greek or Roman galley. Ramming was revived as a tactic in 19th century when early ironclads were fitted with reinforced bows for ramming.
RATING Classification of sailing warships according to the number of cannon they carried.
REEF To reduce the area of sail when a strong wind is blowing.
RIGGING All the ropes, etc. that support masts and yards or are used to hoist, lower, or trim sails.
SCREEN To sail ahead of a fleet for reconnaissance and to act as protection for the other ships.
SCUTTLE To sink one's own ship deliberately, often to avoid capture.
SEXTANT Nautical instrument for measuring the angle of the sun or a star to the horizon.

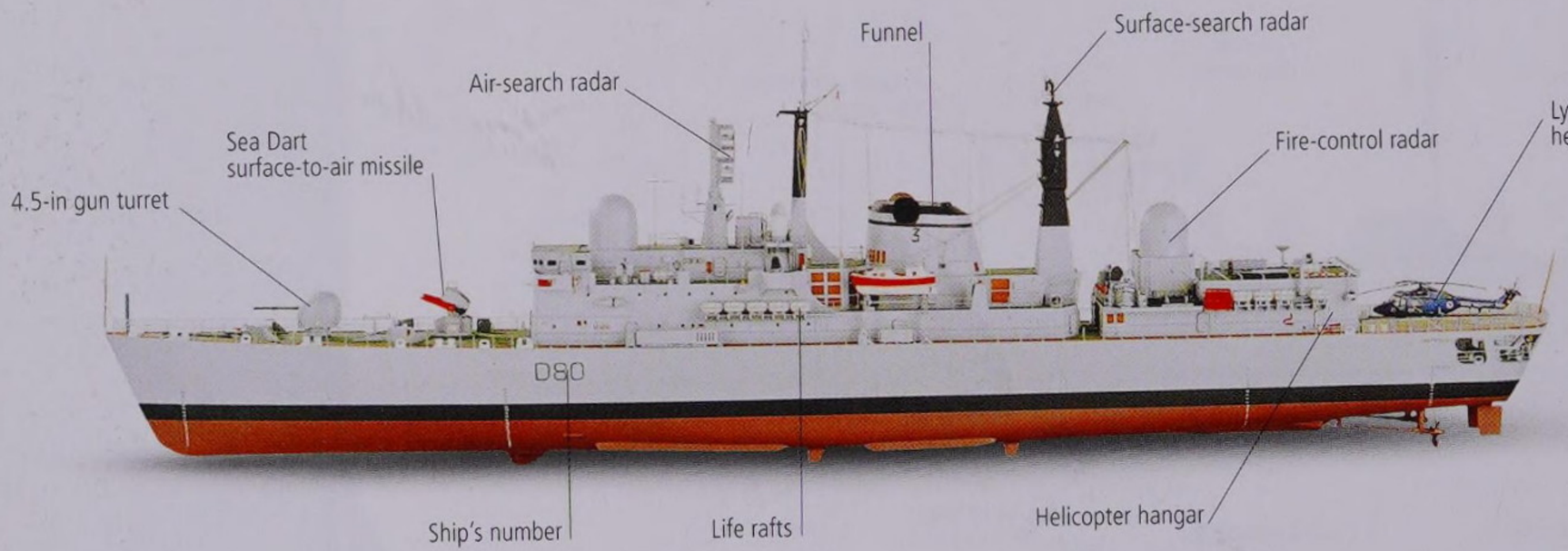


MODERN WARSHIPS



AIRCRAFT CARRIER (1990)
Aircraft carriers such as the USS *George Washington* are powered by nuclear fuel—she has two on-board reactors and can operate for up to 18 years before having to refuel. She carries 85 aircraft, including fighter, strike, and transport planes.

AIRCRAFT CARRIER (1951) HMS *Eagle*, shown here in her 1960s configuration, and her sister ship *Ark Royal* were two of the largest British Royal Navy aircraft carriers ever built. *Eagle* was 804 ft (245 m) long with a range of 7,000 miles (13,000 km). She was in service until 1972.



DESTROYER (1971)
By the 1970s destroyers had evolved into missile-armed air defense ships for fleet escort. The Royal Navy's Type 42 class (left) performed this function in the Falklands War. Destroyers have since become larger multi-purpose missile platforms.

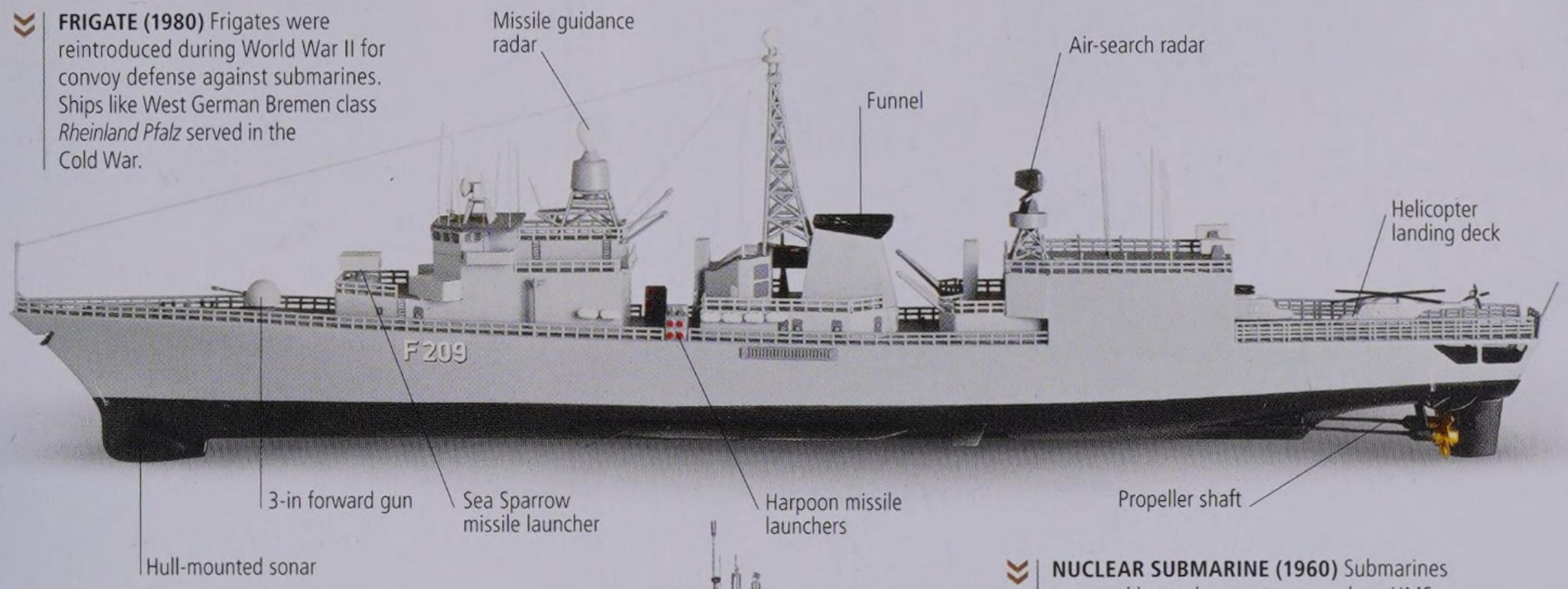
SINCE THE END of World War II, naval warfare has been dominated by the aircraft carrier, the submarine, and the guided missile. The age of the battleship was over, even if big guns still served a purpose for shore bombardment. Aircraft carriers began to grow in size so that they could operate jet aircraft. By the 1970s, however, only the United States could afford to operate a fleet of full-size carriers—these were virtual floating cities, with enough air power to sustain an independent air campaign and were driven by nuclear powerplants that allowed them to stay at sea for an almost indefinite period of time. Smaller carriers were still deployed by some of the less affluent countries, and by the US Navy as "assault ships," operating helicopters and vertical/short take-off and landing (V/STOL) jet aircraft.

Nuclear-powered submarines, capable of phenomenal submerged endurance and speed, were equipped with intercontinental ballistic missiles as part of the nuclear armory of major powers. Hunter-killer submarines were also built, chiefly designed to hunt down enemy submarines. The days of pitched battles between surface fleets seemed over, replaced by a game of underwater cat-and-mouse between nuclear-armed or powered submarines.

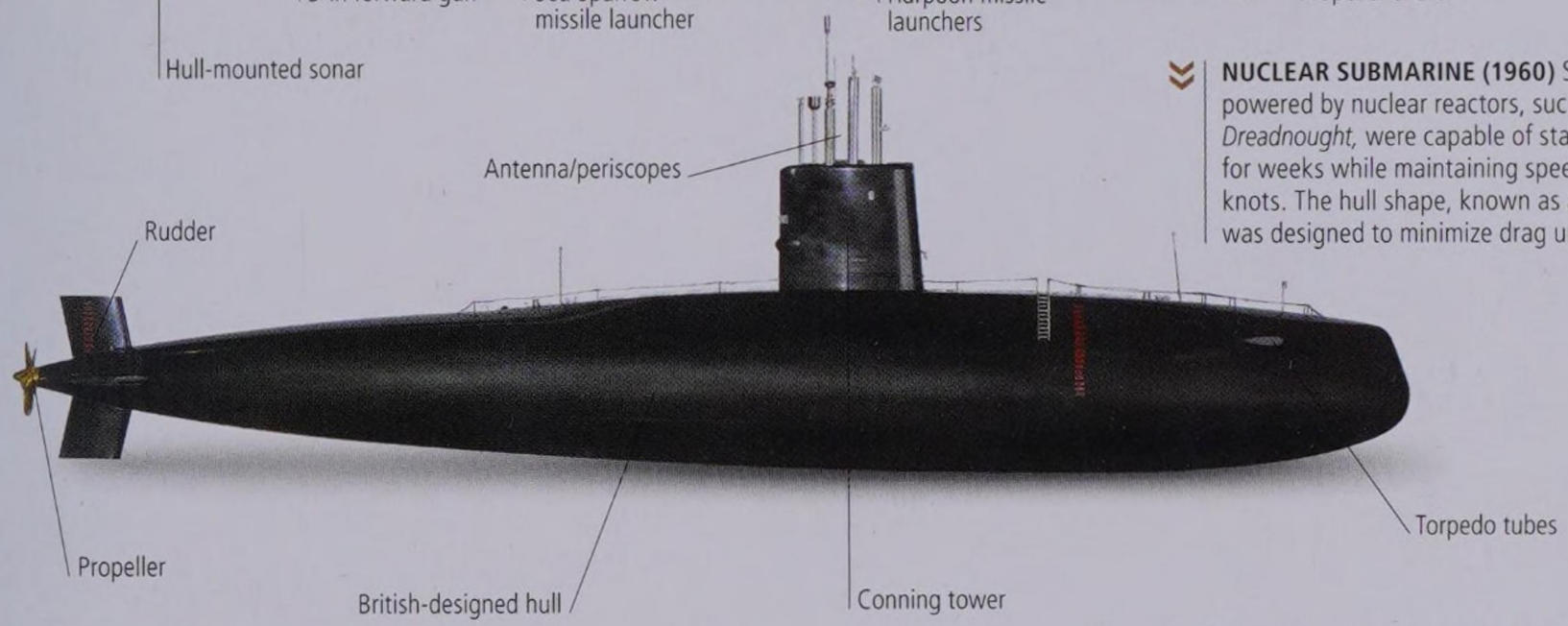
GUIDED MISSILES

The development of guided missiles dramatically altered the nature of surface warfare at sea. Guns were reduced to a subsidiary role, with most surface vessels retaining only a single automatic cannon on the foredeck. By this point in time warships effectively became floating electronics and missile platforms. The destroyer ceased to have a role as a torpedo-attack ship, assuming a range of roles including fleet defense against air attack using anti-aircraft missiles. Frigates tended to specialize in anti-submarine warfare. Both vessels were driven by gas-turbine engines and were designed to be able to carry at least one helicopter. The offensive role of naval guns, meanwhile, was largely taken over by ship-killing missiles—which could be carried even by quite small patrol boats—and by Cruise missiles that were used for the bombardment of land targets. To defend against attack, warships began to deploy a range of electronic countermeasures designed to confuse missile guidance systems. Control rooms on modern naval vessels became vastly complex suites of electronic equipment, including links to surveillance satellites.

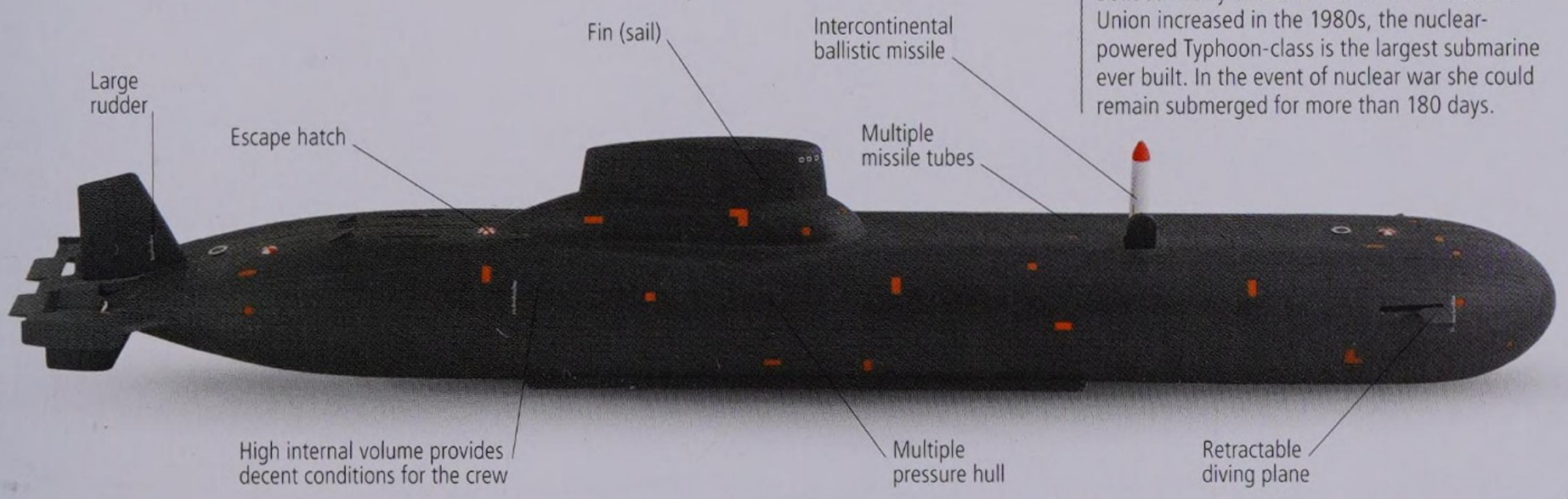
FRIGATE (1980) Frigates were reintroduced during World War II for convoy defense against submarines. Ships like West German Bremen class *Rheinland Pfalz* served in the Cold War.



NUCLEAR SUBMARINE (1960) Submarines powered by nuclear reactors, such as HMS *Dreadnought,* were capable of staying submerged for weeks while maintaining speeds close to 30 knots. The hull shape, known as a "teardrop hull" was designed to minimize drag under water.



TYPHOON-CLASS SOVIET SUBMARINE (1980) Built as rivalry between the US and the Soviet Union increased in the 1980s, the nuclear-powered Typhoon-class is the largest submarine ever built. In the event of nuclear war she could remain submerged for more than 180 days.



GLOSSARY

SHIP OF THE LINE A well-armed sailing warship between the 17th and 19th centuries, built to fight in the line of battle, exchanging broadsides with the enemy's line.
SHROUDS Strong supporting ropes on either side of a mast.
SLOOP Single-masted sailing vessel with a fore-and-aft rig.
SPAR Wooden pole, part of the rig of a ship, for example a yard from which a sail is suspended.
SQUARE RIG Arrangement on a sailing ship where the principal sails are carried on horizontal spars.
STRIKE COLORS To lower a ship's flag to signal surrender.
STARBOARD The right-hand side of the ship.
STERNCASTLE Raised structure at the stern of medieval ships that served as a platform for archers, spearmen, and other soldiers.
TACK To turn ship's bow through the wind, to follow a zigzag course in order to sail into the wind.
TENDER Supply ship for bringing food, fuel, crew, etc. to another ship.
TOPMAST Extension to the mast of a ship that carried the topsail.
TREBUCHET Medieval catapult that used a counterweight system to propel missiles.
TRIERARCH Man who raised the crew for, and was responsible for the running of a Greek trireme.
TRIREME Ancient Greek galley with three banks of oars.
TURTLE SHIP *see* PANOKSEON
UNRATED Term that described small British warships with fewer than 20 guns.
VAN The leading ships at the head of a fleet or squadron.
WEATHER GAGE To have the weather gage means to be upwind of another sailing ship, a favorable position for an attack.
WEAR To turn ship's stern through the wind, so that wind direction changes from one side of the ship to the other.
WINDWARD Position of one ship relative to another in terms of which way the wind is blowing, i.e. upwind of the other.
XEBEC Small, fast Mediterranean galley, favored by Barbary corsairs.
YARD Horizontal spar tapered at the end, used to support and spread a sail.

1

1200 BCE – 1550 CE

THE AGE OF GALLEYS

THE GALLEY WAS INVENTED in the eastern Mediterranean in the early 3rd millennium BCE. Although galleys had a sail or sails, they were distinguished by the fact that they could be propelled by oars alone if required. Oars were used either when the wind was absent or contrary, or when faster propulsion was required or tighter maneuver—as in battle. These extraordinary war machines, propelled by their great gangs of oarsmen, held their place, with variations of design and tactics, as the prime warships of Europe for around 3,000 years. From the 15th century onward galleys were gradually supplanted by ocean-going sailing ships, capable of year-round operation in all weathers and providing a superior platform for heavy cannon.

Minoan galley
A fresco found on the Greek island of Akrotiri, dating from c.1700 BCE, shows a procession of galleys from one coastal port to another. In this detail, the man standing at the back of the boat holds a steering oar, a feature of all Egyptian, Greek, and Roman ships.

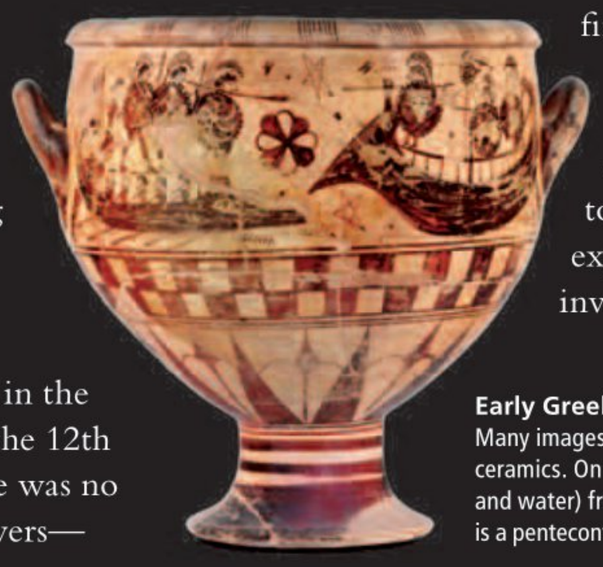
EARLY GALLEY WARFARE

The first recorded use of a warship was an Egyptian sortie into Lebanon and Palestine around 2450 BCE, when troops were landed by sea, presumably ferried from the Nile delta. By the reign of the great pharaoh Thutmose III a thousand years later, seaborne movement of troops was standard Egyptian practice. By this time another warlike use of galleys was emerging. In Egyptian sources around 1500—1300 BCE there is a record of sea raiders seizing merchant ships, attacking coastal settlements, and blockading ports. There are reckoned by this time to have been galleys that carried marines—including archers and javelin-throwers—and others in which the rowers doubled as fighting men, as they would later in the era of the Vikings.

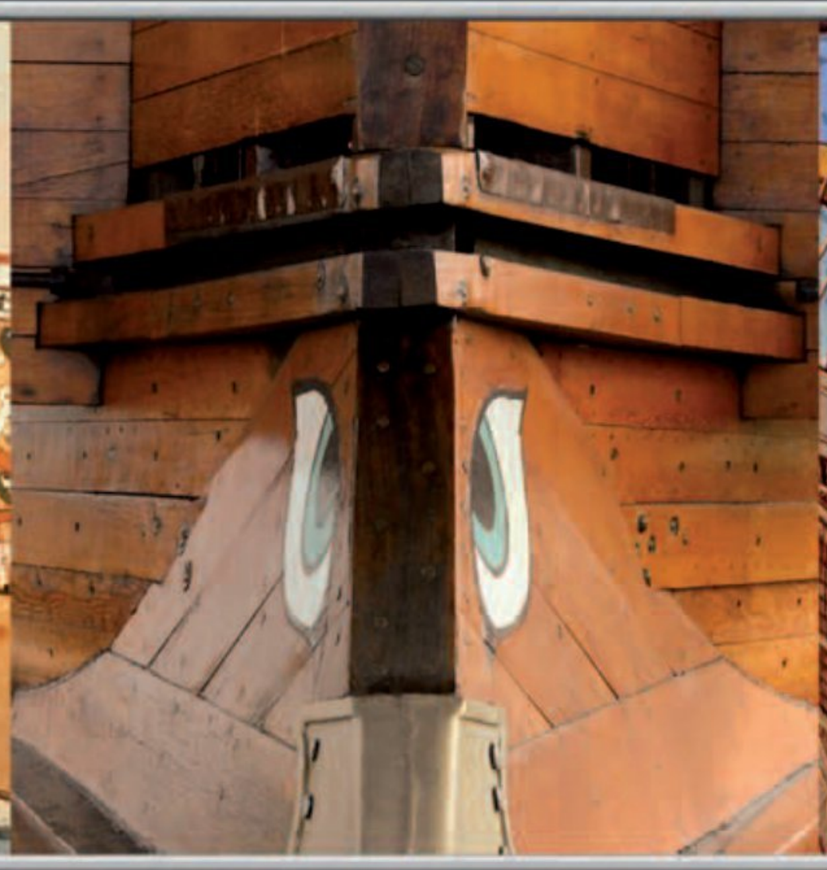
Actual battles at sea emerge in shadowy form in the historical record around the 12th century BCE. At first there was no evidence of naval maneuvers—these were simply fights between soldiers on water. But the sea-going peoples of the eastern Mediterranean, especially the Phoenicians and the Greeks, developed skills as sailors that could be applied to warfare, using the first specialist warships, the penteconter and the trireme.

PERSIA AND THE GREEEKS

Some of the basics of naval warfare became evident very early on. To become a naval power a state needed a population with seafaring skills and the resources to finance a fleet—it has always been very expensive to build and man a body of ships. The Persian Empire was the first state to develop a fleet as an element in large-scale power-projection, buying the services of Phoenician and Greek sailors to provide the necessary expertise. Faced with a Persian invasion in the 5th century BCE,



Early Greek battle at sea
Many images of naval warfare appear on Greek ceramics. On this *krater* (a vessel used for mixing wine and water) from the 7th century BCE the ship on the left is a penteconter with a ram at the prow.



Rome takes to the sea
In the 3rd century BCE the Carthaginians were far more experienced seamen than the Romans, but in the First Punic War they were defeated by Rome's superior military organization. One ingenious device that the Romans used was the corvus, a gangplank lowered onto enemy ships so the Roman legionaries could board them.

the Greek city-state of Athens used the silver produced by its richest mine to pay for a countering fleet. Victorious against Persia, Athens became the greatest naval power in the eastern Mediterranean, creating the world's first maritime empire. It was in the wars between the Greeks and Persians and between Athens and other Greek city-states that naval battles were for the first time fought on a large scale.

BUILDING BIGGER

The success of the Athenians was based upon the ramming power of the swift manoeuvrable trireme—the galley itself used as a weapon to sink enemy ships. This was a tactic that exploited the superior skills of Athenian oarsmen. States with more powerful armies and less skilled sailors opted for different tactics using different kinds of galley. From the 4th century BCE rulers such as Dionysius of Sicily, the Ptolemies in Egypt, and the Seleucids in Syria built larger vessels that were powered by vast numbers of less skilled oarsmen. These quinqueremes and even larger polyremes carried artillery in the form of siege machines, capable of hurling rocks at an enemy, and were packed with troops. Instead of the rapier thrusts of the trireme's ram, battles were won by bludgeoning the enemy's ships with firepower and boarding them with bodies of soldiers. When the rising Roman Republic came into conflict with the greatest naval power in the western Mediterranean, Phoenician Carthage, in the First Punic War in the 3rd century BCE, the stage was set for some of the largest naval battles ever fought, involving hundreds of thousands of men. Eventually Rome's willpower and resources made up for lack of naval experience and it was left as the sole dominant power in the Mediterranean.

CONTINUING THE GALLEY TRADITION

In galley warfare there was no sharp transition from the "ancient" to the "medieval" world. Rome's eastern successor state, the Byzantine Empire, fought Arab fleets from the 7th century in battles whose chief novelty was the use of "Greek fire" as an incendiary weapon. The tradition of galley warfare was maintained in the second millennium above all by the Italian city-states—chiefly Venice and Genoa—which financed fleets from the profits of trade with the Black Sea and the Levant and from selling their services to larger powers. As well as fighting pitched battles, their war galleys also engaged in regular commerce raiding. The Catalans and the sailors of Provence were also involved in wars fought for control of trade routes and for possession of islands and coastal bases.

Explorers and raiders
The Vikings of Scandinavia were the most intrepid sailors of medieval Europe, braving the Atlantic to reach Greenland and North America. The horn (*left*) was used for signalling between ships at night and in foggy weather. The settled populations of Europe lived in constant dread of their destructive raids.

LIMITED WAR

Through the rise and fall of Mediterranean naval powers, there were inevitably changes in galley construction, tactics, and weaponry. But what was most remarkable was perhaps the conservatism of combat between galleys: advance to battle in line abreast; a preliminary exchange of missiles; ramming or grappling, followed by boarding of enemy ships. Such tactics served for 2,000 years. The limitations of galley warfare were considerable. Relatively small ships with a large complement of oarsmen and marines, galleys could not carry supplies to stay at sea for periods longer than a few days. Nor were they suited to sailing in heavy seas. Galley warfare was thus restricted to coastal waters, and almost always ceased in the winter months when the weather was too rough. These limitations did not matter much until the rise of the sailing warship in northern and western Europe presented a direct challenge to the reign of the war galley and to the central importance of the Mediterranean as a theater of naval warfare.

NORTHERN WATERS

Galleys were never confined exclusively to the Mediterranean. The Viking longships that terrorized northern Europe in the 9th century, with their mix of oars and sails, were a kind of galley. Oared ships played an important part in warfare in the Baltic into the 18th century. In medieval times merchant galleys sailed in convoys from the Mediterranean to England and Flanders, and war galleys were used by the kings of France and Castile in battles against the English kings in the English Channel and the Bay of Biscay. But countries with Atlantic shorelines had their own shipbuilding and ship-fighting traditions more suited to rougher, wider waters. The round ships known as cogs, developed initially as merchant vessels, became warships, because navies took over merchant ships in times of war. They provided a high platform for bowmen and men-at-arms in battles such as Sluys, fought between the English and French in 1340—essentially a land battle fought on water. By the end of the 15th century, ships relying on oars for even part of their propulsion had only a subsidiary role to play in warfare in most northern waters, supporting larger sailing ships such as carracks and caravels.

ASIAN DEVELOPMENTS

Asia and the Indian Ocean, meanwhile, had their own traditions of naval warfare. Most of this took place in coastal or inland waters and was a direct adjunct to land warfare. By the time a permanent Chinese navy was founded by the Song dynasty in 1132, China had an array of diverse vessels including paddlewheel ships, galleys, and sailing ships. Exploiting the resources of a prosperous and populous state, China became the world's greatest naval power, although Europeans knew little or nothing about it. In the early 15th century the Ming dynasty embarked on naval power-projection on a vast scale with the voyages of Admiral Zheng He, who took a fleet of massive war junks around southeast Asia and across the

1210
First recorded sea battle, between the Hittites and the Cypriots

800
Foundation of Carthage by the Phoenicians, the leading maritime power in the Mediterranean

500
Greek city states such as Corinth and Athens develop the trireme, powered by three banks of oars and designed for ramming

Corinthian helmet
One of Athens' chief rivals as a sea power, Corinth fought with the Spartans in the Peloponnesian War.

31
Battle of Actium: Octavian's defeat of Antony and Cleopatra gives Rome mastery of the Mediterranean

1200 BCE | 900 BCE | 600 BCE | 300 BCE | 1 CE

1190
Egyptians win sea battle against the "Sea Peoples"

Stone anchors
Simple anchors consisting of stones with holes drilled in them have been found in all parts of the Mediterranean.

480
Battle of Salamis: decisive naval victory of the Greeks over the invading Persians

431–404
Peloponnesian War: Athens defeated by alliance of rival Greek city-states led by Sparta

264–241
First Punic War: Romans build fleet to challenge the Carthaginians for control of the western Mediterranean

Last great galley battle
The victory of the Holy League over the Ottoman navy at Lepanto in 1571 is generally believed to mark the end of the age of galleys. Nevertheless, galleys continued to play an important part in sea battles in the Mediterranean and the Baltic throughout the 17th and 18th centuries.

GALLEY SWANSONG

As this fundamental change took place, however, an intense power struggle developed in the Mediterranean that brought the age of galley warfare to an epic climax. The rapid rise of the Muslim Ottoman Empire, which conquered the Byzantine capital Constantinople in 1453, confronted the Christian states of the Mediterranean with a formidable new enemy. The Ottomans possessed impressive resources, great organizational skills, and an apparently unstoppable will to power. While the Ottoman sultans created a large galley fleet to support military operations against Christian-ruled Mediterranean islands, their vassals and allies, the Barbary corsairs of North Africa raided and pillaged the coasts of Italy and preyed upon merchant shipping. The vast battle of Lepanto, fought in 1571 between an alliance of Christian states and the Ottomans and the Barbary corsairs, was the last great engagement of the long age of galley warfare in Europe.

Although the ramming, grappling, and boarding at Lepanto would have been familiar to many earlier generations of galley sailor, cannon and firearms had now become crucial elements in combat between galleys. Oared ships could never be as successful a platform for cannon as the much larger sailing ships. War galleys remained in use until the end of the 18th century, but their role in naval warfare became increasingly specialized and localized. The age of the sailing ship had arrived.

Indian Ocean as far as east Africa. The decision of the Ming to withdraw from such maritime adventures after the 1430s was one of the turning points of world history.

NEW OCEAN-GOING POWERS

As Ming China turned inward, the states along Europe's Atlantic seaboard sought to exploit their maritime skills to capture the wealth of the luxury trade that previously had always passed through the Mediterranean from Asia to Europe. At the end of the 15th century the Portuguese found their way around southern Africa into the Indian Ocean, while Christopher Columbus, sailing in the name of the Spanish crown, accidentally landed in the West Indies. The result was a total shift in the European—and global—balance of power. The future lay with the ocean-going sailing ships of northern and western Europe, armed with cannon to make them impressive fighting machines engaging in a new kind of naval warfare.

208
Battle of Red Cliffs: decisive battle fought on the river Yangtze during the declining years of the Han Dynasty

440–476
As Roman control collapses, Vandals use large fleet to dominate western Mediterranean

674–678
Arab siege of Constantinople. Byzantines employ Greek fire to defeat invasion fleet

1095
Launch of First Crusade: Italian maritime republics—Venice, Genoa, and Pisa—grow rich by shipping men and supplies to Holy Land

1204
Fourth Crusade: Constantinople sacked by Crusader forces

1340
Battle of Sluys: major battle between England and France at start of Hundred Years War

1453
Constantinople falls to the Ottomans

1492
Columbus crosses the Atlantic in search of India. Spain embarks on creation of empire in the New World

300 CE | 600 CE | 900 CE | 1200 CE | 1500 CE

Roman anchor
The use of metal for anchors began some time around 600 BCE. By Roman times most were made of a combination of wood and iron.

655
Battle of the Masts: Arabs win first naval victory over the Byzantines

793
First recorded Viking raid—on Lindisfarne in northern England

1185
Battle of Dan-no-Ura: decisive victory of Minamoto clan over their rivals the Taira for control of Japan

1282–87
War of the Sicilian Vespers: Aragon emerges as major sea power under Italian admiral Roger di Lauria

1379–80
War of Chioggia: Venice defeats its principal rival Genoa

1571
Battle of Lepanto: coalition of Christian powers led by Spain and Venice inflicts first major defeat on Ottomans at sea

EARLY NAVAL BATTLES AND THE RISE OF THE GREEKS

Battle of Salamis
This fanciful picture of the battle captures the spirit of the chaotic close-quarters duels that developed between pairs of ships. The ships' sails, however, would not have been raised during a Greek sea battle; all the propulsion was provided by the oars.

ALTHOUGH THERE WERE other seafaring peoples, notably the Phoenicians, around the coasts of the Mediterranean in ancient times, the development of early naval warfare is especially associated with the Greek city-states. Their wars against the Persians in the 5th century BCE and then against one another in the Peloponnesian War (431-404 BCE), generated sea battles large and small. The trireme, a powerful but nimble war galley armed with a ram at its prow, made naval combat into a contest of maneuver between teams of skilled oarsmen. The Greek cities—especially Athens—put impressive resources of money and manpower into their navies. At the battle against the Persians at Salamis there may have been as many as 34,000 oarsmen on the Greek side.

EARLY SEA POWER

The first sea battle of which record exists occurred in 1210 BCE off the island of Cyprus. Nothing is known of it but the bare fact that the fleet of Hittite King Suppiluliumus II defeated the Cypriots. Our earliest depiction of naval forces in action comes from two decades later, in 1190 BCE, when the Egyptians fought the invaders known as the Sea People in the Nile Delta. The Sea People's naval force was apparently ambushed, for an Egyptian text states: "Those who entered the river mouths were like birds ensnared in a net." Egyptian archers on oared river vessels and on shore deluged the invaders' packed ships with arrows, before the pharaoh's galleys closed to allow soldiers with shields and spears to board them. There is no evidence that the vessels involved were specifically designed for warfare. This was a battle that could have been fought in similar fashion on land—except that on land it was always possible to run away. Other seagoing peoples in the eastern Mediterranean, such as the Minoans and Mycenaeans, probably fought their sea battles in much the same manner.

Phoenician bireme
The war galley shown on this Phoenician silver shekel of the 4th century BCE is a bireme—powered by two banks of oars rather than the three of a trireme.

The most skilled seafarers of ancient times were the Phoenicians and the Greeks. Their gifted boat-builders and sailors developed specialist warships that depended on experienced crews to operate successfully. In the 6th century BCE Phoenicians and Greeks came into conflict.

War galleys under sail
The oarsmen in a galley naturally took advantage of winds and tides to make their task easier when traveling long distances. Even so, they never ventured far from shore.

The Phoenicians had established a colony at Carthage in North Africa and sought to dominate the western Mediterranean. Various Greek cities challenged this dominance, notably Phocaea, which founded a colony in the South of France that would become Marseilles.

RAMMING AND TRIREMES

The encounters between the Carthaginians and Phocaeans—notably the battle of Alalia fought off Corsica around 540 BCE—were ramming combats. Both sides used 50-oar penteconters, purpose-built warships with rams, although the Carthaginians may also have fielded larger biremes. The contest was a draw: the Phocaeans maintained a toehold in southern France and the eastern part of Sicily, while the Carthaginians retained overall superiority in the western Mediterranean.

Votive offering of a trireme
This small bronze model of an Athenian trireme dates from the time of the Persian Wars, around 500 BCE. It was probably made to appeal to Gods—or thank them—for victory in battle.

The penteconter was the first true warship, but it was surpassed in performance by the trireme, made famous by the Athenian-led Greek victory at Salamis in 480 BCE. The trireme was a fast stripped-down vessel packed with oarsmen for maximum rowing power. There was no room to eat or sleep on board, or to carry substantial supplies. The crew went ashore every day, buying food from coastal towns and villages, and eating and sleeping beside their beached ships. In battle, the trireme was designed to crush the hull of an enemy ship with its ram after maneuvering for superior position—it would not actually "sink" the ship, since the waterlogged wreck of a galley would stay afloat to be towed away by the victor. Sails were not used in battle—the main mast was usually left behind onshore when expecting combat, although a smaller mast might be carried so a sail could be hoisted to flee the field if worsted. Expert oarsmanship was required to get through or around the enemy line. The ideal was to ram from the side, then the trireme had to back oars to disengage from the ship it had rammed—always a tricky performance. The rowing benches were manned by free citizens or hardened professionals from abroad. Even well motivated oarsmen tired easily, so exhaustion was often a major factor in galley warfare.

The Athenians rarely used boarding as a tactic in trireme combat. A handful of hoplite soldiers and archers were carried on board to bombard the enemy with missiles and to cope with a situation in which two galleys accidentally became locked together. Fleets with less skilled crews, however, often carried more marines and hoped to seize a chance to board that would compensate for their shortcomings in maneuver.

END OF AN ERA

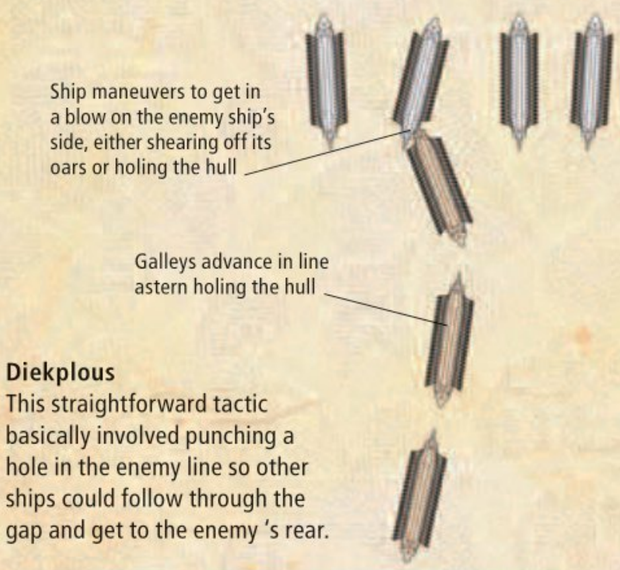
During the 4th century BCE larger galleys packed with infantry and carrying artillery were introduced into Mediterranean warfare. The trireme, which had been both the emblem and the instrument of the naval dominance of the Greek city-state, was relegated to a secondary role in major battles.

TRIREME TACTICS

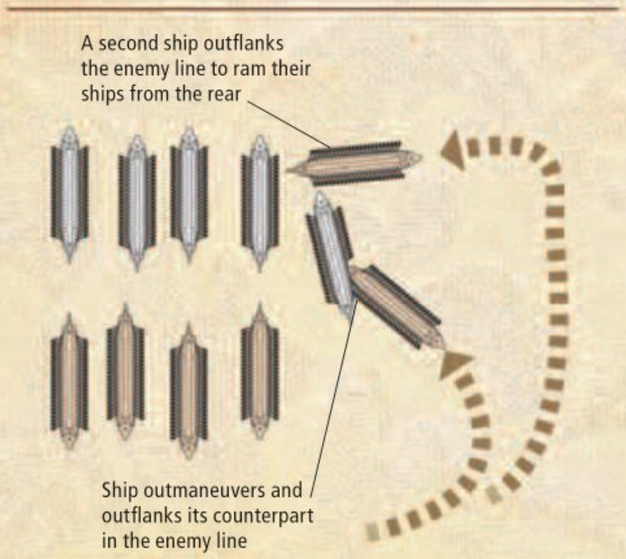
RAMMING

OUTFLANKING MANEUVERS

Although Ancient Greek sea battles tended to degenerate into chaos, there were attempts at coherent command at fleet level and at systematic maneuver. The favored tactical ploys were the *diekplous* and the *periplous*.



Diekplous
This straightforward tactic basically involved punching a hole in the enemy line so other ships could follow through the gap and get to the enemy 's rear.



Periplous
This outflanking maneuver was most easily executed when one fleet was larger than it's enemy's. As with the *diekplous*, its aim was to reach the enemy's rear.

THE PERSIAN WARS

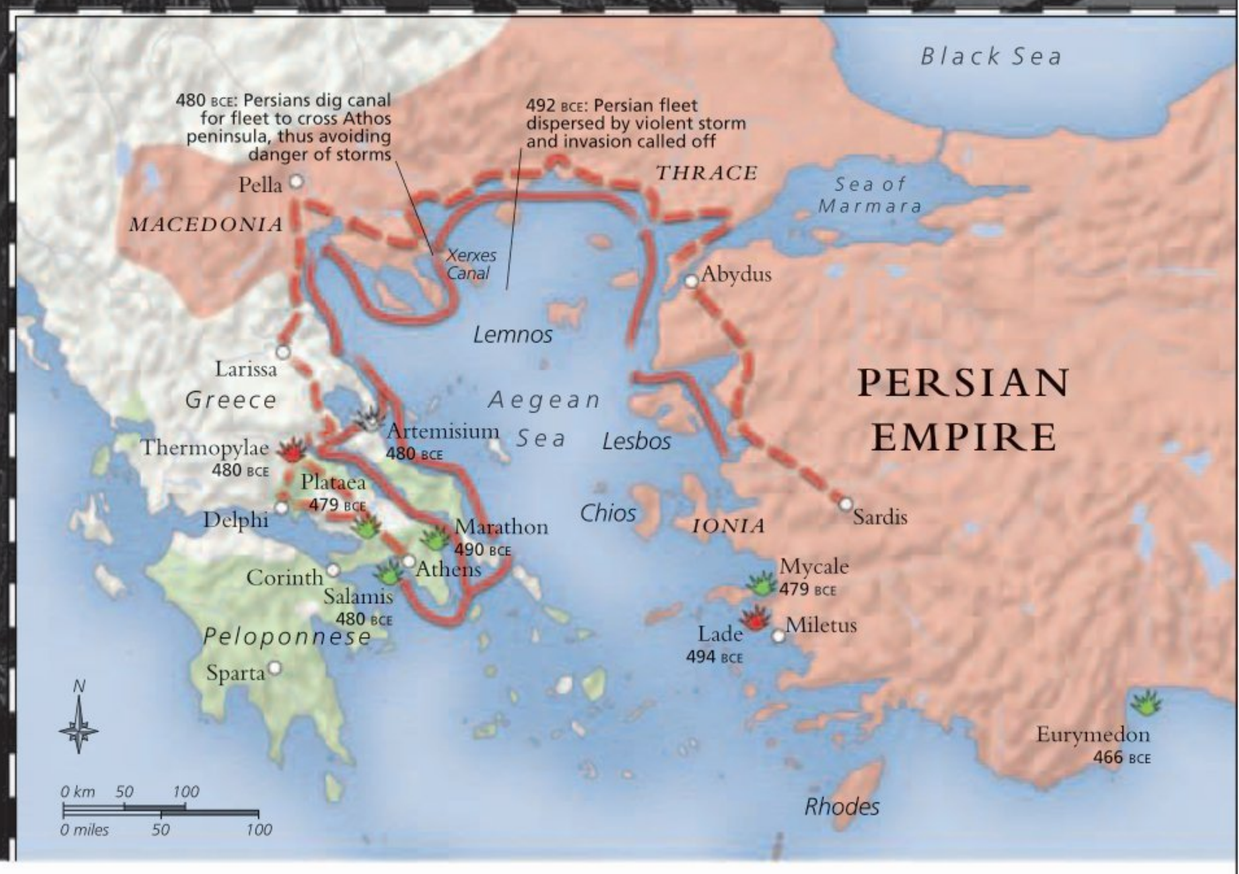
THE FIRST OF THE WARS between the Greek city-states and Persia was provoked by the Ionian revolt in 499 BCE, a rebellion of the Greek cities of Asia Minor, which were under Persian rule. After suppressing this revolt, the Persians embarked on two unsuccessful invasions of Greece itself. The Persian fleets were initially superior at sea, but by 480, under the inspired leadership of Themistocles, Athens had built a formidable force of triremes. This enabled the Greek allies to crush the invaders at Salamis. The Greeks then took the offensive, using their sea power to carry out operations in Asia Minor, Cyprus, and Egypt.

THE PERSIAN WARS c.499—448 BCE

The Persian Empire, founded by Cyrus the Great in the 6th century BCE, expanded westward into the Middle East, Egypt, and Asia Minor, rapidly becoming the dominant power in the eastern Mediterranean. Under Cyrus's successor Darius, it even extended into Europe. The revolt of the Greek city-states on the Aegean coast of Asia Minor led to the invasions of Greece mounted by Darius (492 BCE) and his son Xerxes (480 BCE).

KEY

- Persian Empire and vassals c.500 BCE
- Greek opponents of Persia
- Route of Xerxes' army 480 BCE
- Route of Xerxes' fleet 480 BCE
- Greek victory
- Persian victory
- Inconclusive battle



GRECO–PERSIAN WARS

LADE

Date 494 BCE
Forces Persian fleet (mainly Phoenicians): 600 ships; Greeks: 353 triremes
Losses Persians: 57 ships; Greeks: 234 triremes

Location Off Miletus, western Turkey

During the Ionian revolt of the early 5th century BCE, Persia laid siege to the city of Miletus by land and sea. The Greeks assembled a substantial fleet, mainly from the islands of Chios, Lesbos, and Samos. According to the historian Herodotus, their commander, Dionysius, berated the crews for their slackness, subjecting them to a tough training routine that led to mutinous discontent. The Greeks sailed to confront the Persian fleet at Lade, Miletus's port. The Phoenicians drew up their ships in a defensive formation, while the triremes from Samos led the Greek attack, rowing toward their enemy in line ahead. The aim of the Greek tactics, carefully rehearsed by Dionysius, was to punch a hole in the Phoenician line by ramming. But the Samians, disaffected after their experience in training, had no stomach for the fight. Forty-nine of their 60 triremes never engaged the enemy, instead raising sails and heading for home. The 70 galleys from Lesbos followed suit. Vastly outnumbered, the remaining Greek triremes engaged the enemy, inflicting substantial losses, but were eventually overwhelmed and annihilated. This defeat condemned the Ionian revolt to failure.

GRECO–PERSIAN WARS

TWIN BATTLES OF EURYMEDON

Date c.466 BCE
Forces Delian League: c.350 ships; Persians: c.350 ships
Losses Delian League: c.30 ships; Persians: c.240 ships

Location Eurymedon River, southern Turkey

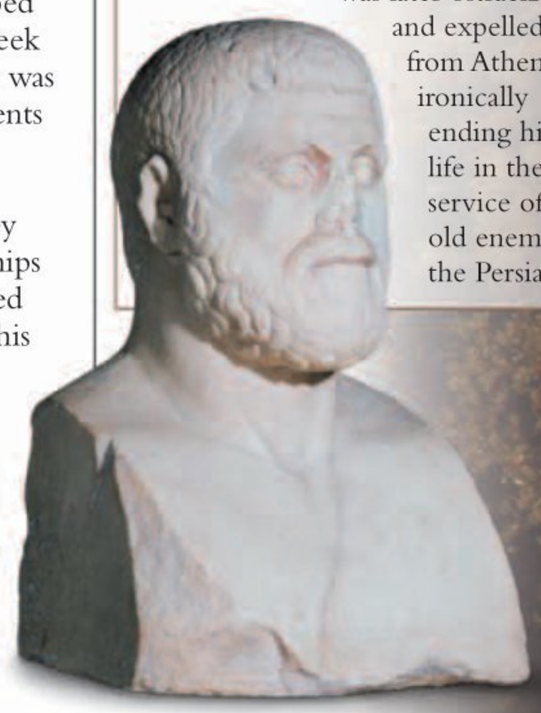
The Athenian-led Delian League mounted a campaign to drive the Persians out of Asia Minor and establish firm control of the Aegean. After most coastal towns had fallen to the League, a fleet under the command of Cimon of Athens sought to bring the Persian fleet to battle. Cimon's naval force consisted of some 250 Athenian triremes plus 100 other ships supplied by allies. The Persians had a similar number of ships commanded by Tithrafstes, an illegitimate son of Xerxes. They were anchored in the mouth of the Eurymedon River, close to a force of Persian soldiers camped on the coast. According to the Greek historian Plutarch, the Persian fleet was expecting Phoenician reinforcements to arrive from Cyprus, so Cimon attacked as soon as he could. The Persians tried to row away but they were trapped and many of their ships were captured. The survivors joined the soldiers ashore. Landing with his sailors and marines, Cimon then won a second battle, attacking the Persian camp under cover of darkness. These "twin battles" were followed by another naval encounter, in which the Delian League pursued and destroyed the Phoenician reinforcements.

c.523–c.458 BCE

THEMISTOCLES

ATHENIAN POLITICIAN AND NAVAL COMMANDER

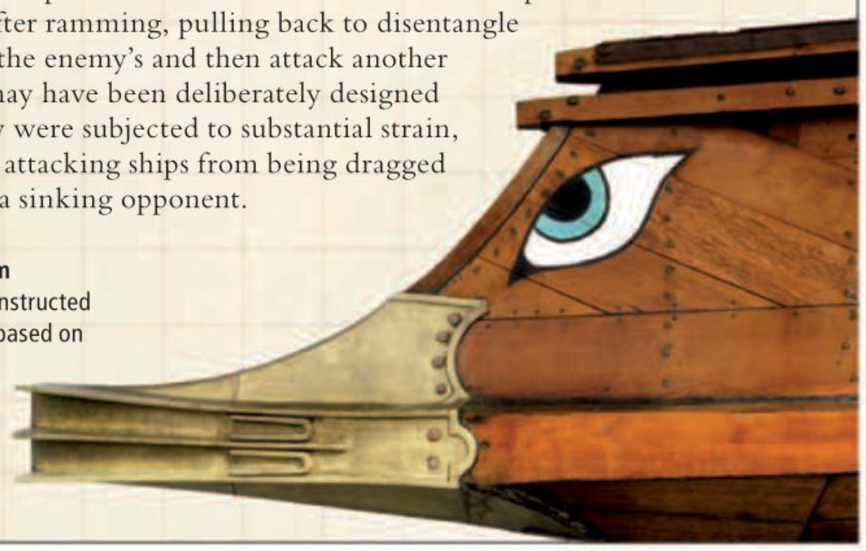
A prominent Athenian political leader, Themistocles takes credit for founding the city's naval power by persuading the popular assembly in 482 to spend the wealth from a newly discovered vein of silver on building a fleet of triremes. The following year he proposed the detailed measures adopted to organize the fleet to meet the Persian invasion, which were codified in the "Decree of Themistocles." During the key battles of Artemisium and Salamis he showed tactical ingenuity and political subtlety. He held together a fragile alliance with Sparta and his other Peloponnesian allies while discreetly exercising personal command of tactics and strategy. After the threat of Persian invasion had passed, Themistocles was involved in the rebuilding of Athens, which had been sacked by Xerxes, and in the development of Piraeus as the city's port. Always a controversial figure, he was later ostracized and expelled from Athens, ironically ending his life in the service of his old enemies, the Persians.



WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

THE RAM OF A TRIREME

The bow of an Athenian trireme was equipped with a bronze-sheathed ram just below the waterline. Weighing around 440 lb (200 kg), its function was to smash the hull of an enemy vessel from the side. The ram was designed to avoid locking into the hull it had penetrated. The trireme crew were expected to reverse fast after ramming, pulling back to disentangle their ship from the enemy's and then attack another victim. Rams may have been deliberately designed to detach if they were subjected to substantial strain, thus preventing attacking ships from being dragged under water by a sinking opponent.



Bronze beaked ram
The ram on the reconstructed trireme *Olympias* is based on depictions in Greek art and on a well preserved example from the seabed near Haifa, Israel.

THE BATTLE OF ARTEMISIUM

GRECO-PERSIAN WARS

THE BATTLE OF ARTEMISIUM

Date	August 480 BCE
Location	Off the island of Euboea, western Greece
Result	Inconclusive battle

COMBATANTS

PERSIA	GREEK CITY-STATES

COMMANDERS

Achaemenes	Eurybiades, Themistocles

FORCES

Ships: c.900 triremes	**Ships:** 324 triremes, 9 pentecontors

LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** unknown	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** c.100 triremes sunk or captured

The Persian Emperor Xerxes invaded Greece in 480 with a massive army accompanied by an impressive fleet. While the Spartans confronted the Persian army at Thermopylae, a Greek fleet of 271 triremes, about half of them Athenian, was sent to Artemisium at the northern end of the island of Euboea. The fleet was commanded by a Spartan, Eurybiades, with Themistocles, the mastermind of Athenian naval expansion, as his second-in-command.

Sailing down the Greek coast the Persian fleet suffered heavily in a violent storm that, according to Herodotus, cost them 400 ships. But the force that reached the harbor of Aphetae, on the mainland north of Artemisium, in mid-August still far outnumbered the Greeks. Sensing the possibility of a crushing victory, the Persian commander Achaemenes sent 200 of his ships down the east coast of Euboea, hoping to sail around the south of the island and cut off the Greek fleet's line of withdrawal.

The fighting at Artesium began with a late afternoon sortie by the Greeks, apparently designed to test their enemy's mettle. The Greeks had by far the better of the resulting skirmish. With skilful rowing they rammed and captured 30 ships before nightfall.

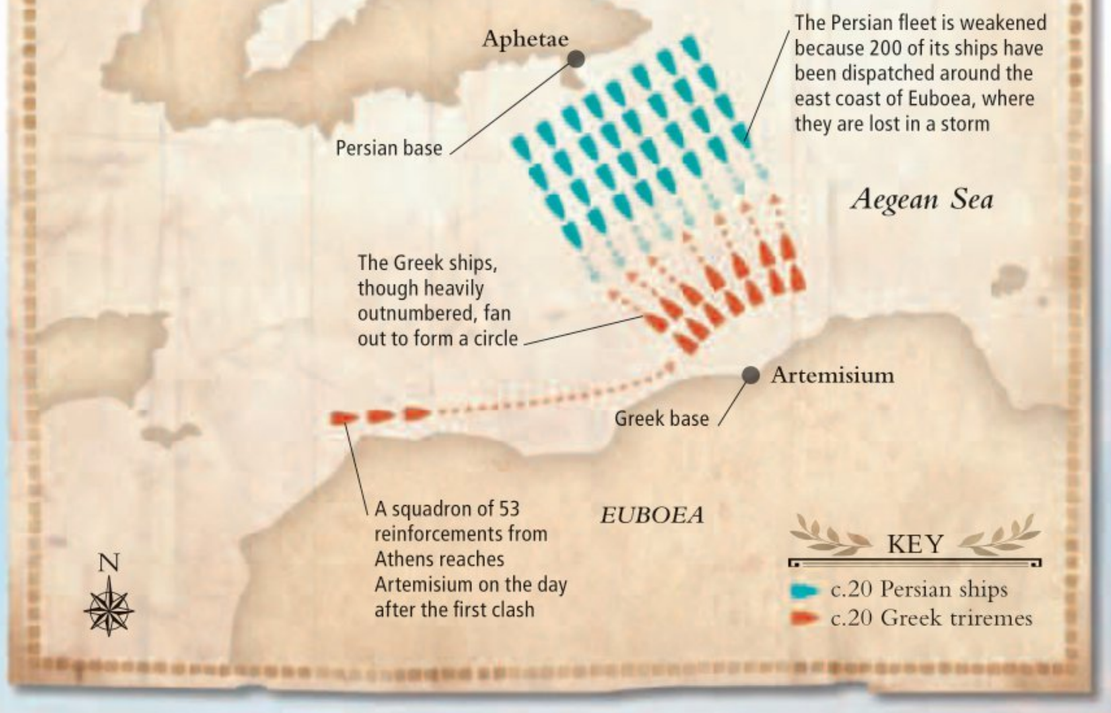
The following day was a fortunate one for the Greeks. Another sudden storm wrecked the fleet of 200 Persian ships traveling along the exposed east coast of Euboea. Meanwhile, the Greek fleet was reinforced by the arrival of 53 more Athenian triremes. The Persians decided to seek a conclusive combat.

The next morning their fleet closed in on Artemisium in a sickle formation designed to block any escape from the bay. The Greeks rowed out vigorously, hoping to smash a way through the Persian line, but, by the time the fleets broke off combat, almost a third of their triremes had been sunk or captured.

Although the Persians had also suffered heavily, the news of the Persian victory on land at Thermopylae persuaded the Greek commanders to withdraw. They pulled back to the island of Salamis, where the decisive battle of the war would be fought.

Initial engagement at Artemisium

On the first afternoon of the battle the Greeks took the initiative, rowing out to meet the vastly superior Persian fleet. Fanning out to form a circle, a risky tactic that might have resulted in complete encirclement by the Persians, they had captured 30 ships before the two fleets withdrew to their respective camps to lick their wounds.



> THE BODIES OF THE SLAIN AND BROKEN PIECES OF THE DAMAGED SHIPS DRIFTED IN THE DIRECTION OF APHETAE, AND FLOATED ABOUT THE PROWS OF THE VESSELS THERE, DISTURBING THE ACTION OF THE OARS.
>
> **HERODOTUS**, DESCRIBING THE AFTERMATH OF THE FIRST CLASH OFF ARTEMISIUM

Sea around the island of Euboea
The Persian and Greek fleets clashed in the narrow straits that divide the Greek mainland from Euboea. The battle of Artemisium was fought at the northern end where the straits open out into the Aegean Sea.

THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS

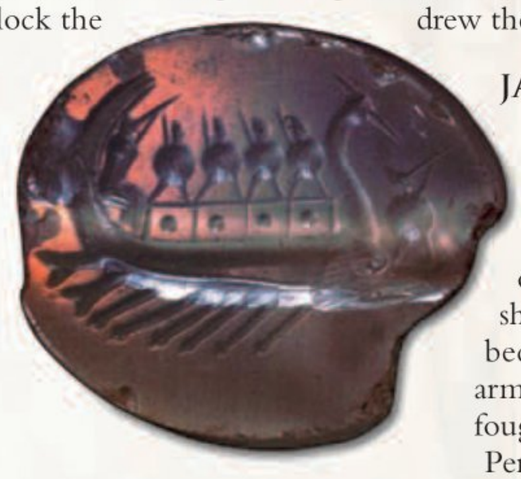
In September 480 BCE the Greek city-states resisting invasion by the Persian Emperor Xerxes were facing defeat. As the Persian army pressed southward, Athens evacuated its population to the island of Salamis, where the Greek fleet assembled in Paloukia Bay. Athens duly fell to Xerxes, who felt confident that the conquest of Greece was close to being accomplished.

FAITH IN THE ORACLE

The Greek fleet's Spartan commander, Eurybiades, favored withdrawal, but the Athenian Themistocles argued they should stand and fight. He invoked a recent prophecy by the Delphic oracle, that Greece would be saved by a "wooden wall." He claimed that this referred to the Greek ships and, since he controlled the Athenian triremes, around half of the entire Greek naval force, his voice prevailed. Xerxes, meanwhile, was bent upon finishing off the Greeks as quickly as possible. He was only worried that their fleet might slip away before he could crush it.

To stand a chance of victory, Themistocles needed to negate the Persians' numerical advantage—perhaps three ships to one. He planned to induce Xerxes to divide his fleet. An agent was sent to the Persian emperor, pretending to be a deserter. He told Xerxes that the Greeks were on the point of withdrawing. Xerxes responded exactly as Themistocles would have wished. One squadron of Persian ships was dispatched to block the western end of the Megarian Strait, another sent to patrol the southern coast of Salamis. During the night his other two squadrons were ordered out to patrol the eastern end of the strait.

At dawn these two Persian squadrons headed into the strait toward Paloukia Bay, but their oarsmen were tired after their night's exertions. The Greeks, who had slept soundly on shore, pushed off from the beach, fresh and ready for battle. The Persians heard them approaching before they saw them, a cacophony of war songs and bugles echoing out from the sheltered bay. The Greeks emerged from behind the island at the mouth of the bay a little too quickly. Wanting to stay close to shore, where the Persians could not use their numbers to outflank them, the Greeks had to back oars momentarily—giving an impression of hesitation or flight that drew the Persians forward.



Saviors of Greece
This amber seal is carved with a striking image of a trireme with a row of armed hoplites on its deck. It dates from the time of the battle of Salamis.

JARRING CLASH

The Greek triremes maneuvered to smash their bronze rams into the hulls of the larger Persian ships. Where galleys became entangled, armored Greek hoplites fought face to face with Persian soldiers, while arrows and spears rained down on both sides. The sea was littered with broken oars, wreckage, and the bodies of the slain. To the dismay of Xerxes, watching the battle from a hilltop on the shore, his right wing gave way under the battering from the Athenian triremes on the Greek left. His commander, Ariabignes, was killed and central control rapidly disintegrated. As the Athenians swung around to attack the Persian center and right from the flank and rear, the battle turned into a rout, with surviving Persian ships escaping as best they could. Salamis ended Xerxes' attempt to conquer Greece. It was the first decisive naval battle in history.

THE PERSIAN WARS

THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS

Date	480 BCE
Location	Off the island of Salamis, Greece
Result	Greek victory

COMBATANTS

GREEK CITY-STATES	PERSIAN EMPIRE

COMMANDERS

Eurybiades Themistocles	Ariabignes

FORCES

Ships: 300–380 triremes	**Ships:** 700–1,000

LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** c.40	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** c.200

Serried ranks of galleys
In the narrow straits where the battle of Salamis was fought, the smaller Greek triremes proved far more maneuverable than the larger galleys employed by the Persians.

ISLAND OF SALAMIS

KEY

GREEK FLEET

30–40 Greek triremes

PERSIAN FLEET

40–50 large Persian warships

1 EARLY MORNING

The Persian fleet blocks the eastern exit from the Salamis channel. Expecting the Greeks to try to escape, they have spent the night on patrol or on watch for Greek ships. The Greeks, however, are well rested after spending the night ashore.

Xerxes sets up his throne on slopes of Mount Aegaleos to watch the battle

XERXES' THRONE

Salamis Channel

GREEK MAINLAND

The Greeks, after spending the night moored outside the town of Salamis, move out to attack the Persians

Port of Piraeus

Salamis

Paloukia Bay

Main Persian force watches for Greek ships attempting to escape the blockade

PSYTTALIA

The Greeks have spent the night moored in Paloukia Bay

ISLAND OF SALAMIS

GULF OF AEGINA

2 THE PERSIAN PURSUIT

The Persians are lured into the narrow strait between the island of Salamis and the mainland. Despite their overwhelming numerical superiority, the size of their ships is now a handicap and they are at the mercy of the nimbler Greek triremes.

Salamis Channel

XERXES' THRONE

Greek left wing, having advanced further than they intended, row back into the Salamis Channel

GREEK MAINLAND

Persians are lured into the channel, as they follow the apparently retreating Greeks

Port of Piraeus

Salamis

Paloukia Bay

PSYTTALIA

Greek right wing consists of Spartans and other allies of the Athenians. The ships remain close to shore, hidden from view

Persian fleet splits in two to round island at entrance of channel

ISLAND OF SALAMIS

GULF OF AEGINA

3 GREEK COUNTERATTACK

In the narrow channel, the smaller Greek triremes outmaneuver the Persians, making devastating use of their rams. At least 200 Persian warships are sunk, while the Greeks lose only 40 of their triremes.

Salamis Channel

XERXES' THRONE

GREEK MAINLAND

Port of Piraeus

Greek left wing draws leading Persian ships into narrow part of the strait, then turns to engage in fierce battle of ramming and boarding. Persian commander is killed and right wing crumbles

Greek right wing attacks Persian flank as the enemy ships row up the channel, successfully sinking many of them by ramming

PSYTTALIA

Very few Persian ships are able to withdraw

The narrow channels on either side of the island of Psyttalia become clogged with Persian ships

GULF OF AEGINA

THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR

IN THE SECOND HALF of the 5th century BCE Sparta, Corinth, and other city-states of the Peloponnese fought to throw off the dominance of Athens. While the Spartans were superior on land, the Athenians' superior seamanship generally gave them the upper hand in battles fought at sea. It was only after the disastrous failure of the Athenian expedition to Syracuse in Sicily (415–413 BCE) that the Peloponnesians were able to make a serious bid for naval superiority. When their fleet was destroyed at Aegospotami in 405, the Athenians had lost the war.

THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR 431—404 BCE

In response to the threat of Persia, many Greek city-states on the islands and coastline of the Aegean formed themselves into the Delian League. The dominant member was Athens, whose wealth and naval power transformed the league into an Athenian empire, incurring the enmity of Sparta, Corinth, and other cities outside the league.

KEY

- Athenian Empire and allies of Athens c.431 BCE
- Sparta and allied states
- Athenian expedition to Sicily 415 BCE
- Athenian victory
- Spartan victory
- Inconclusive battle

THE AGE OF GALLEYS

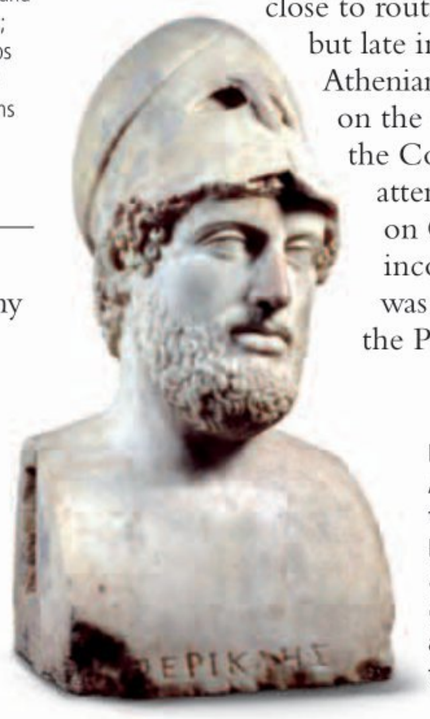
CORINTHIAN WAR WITH CORCYRA

SYBOTA

Date 433 BCE
Forces Corcyraeans and Athenians: 140 ships; Corinthians: 150 ships
Losses Corcyraeans: c.70 ships; Corinthians c. 30 ships

Location Between Corfu and Sybota

In 433 BCE Corinth assembled a fleet to subdue its restive colony Corcyra (Corfu). Following a similar conflict two years earlier the Corcyraeans had agreed a treaty with Pericles, the Athenian leader, and now appealed to Athens for help. At first the Athenians sent only 10 triremes to give moral support. According to Thucydides, the Corinthians and Corcyraeans fought "in the old-fashioned way," using their ships for boarding with soldiers rather than for a ramming contest. The Corinthians came close to routing their enemy, but late in the day 20 more Athenian triremes arrived on the scene, deterring the Corinthians from attempting a landing on Corcyra itself. The inconclusive battle was the prelude to the Peloponnesian War.



Pericles
Athenian leader during the city's "golden age," Pericles, was unable to avert the deterioration of relations with Sparta and Corinth that led to the Peloponnesian War.

PELOPONNESIAN WAR

CYZICUS

Date 410 BCE
Forces Athenians 80–100 ships; Spartans 60–80 ships
Losses Athenians: few; Spartans 60–80 ships

Location
The Hellespont

The Athenians, with Alcibiades as their principal commander, launched an amphibious operation to recapture the city of Cyzicus from the Spartans. Despite an unfortunate tendency to defect to the other side, Alcibiades was one of Athens's most talented military leaders. He had just been reinstated as a general after a political coup in 411 BCE. Sailing from a forward base on the island of Proconnesus, Alcibiades first landed a body of soldiers south of Cyzicus. He then led a squadron of 40 triremes toward the city, while two other squadrons under generals Thrasybulus and Theramenes followed some distance behind, keeping close to shore. When they sighted Alcibiades with such a weak force, the Spartans sensed an easy victory. The Spartan general Mindarus led his triremes out of Cyzicus harbor. As Alcibiades appeared to flee, they pursued.

The Athenian trap now closed. Thrasybulus and Theramenes appeared inshore of the Spartans, cutting them off from the harbor, and Alcibiades turned to attack. Many Spartan ships were sunk; the remainder succeeded in reaching a beach. A fierce land battle ensued, which the Athenians won.

PELOPONNESIAN WAR

NAUPACTUS

Date 429 BCE
Forces Athenians: 20 ships Peloponnesians: 77 ships
Losses Athenians: 1 ship; Peloponnesians: 6 ships

Location Off Naupactus, Gulf of Corinth

In the winter of 430, a small squadron of Athenian triremes under Phormio established a base at Naupactus on the Corinthian Gulf. The following summer the Peloponnesian League sent a convoy of 47 ships carrying troops through the gulf. Phormio ambushed the convoy, which was forced into a defensive circle, then attacked and routed.

The Peloponnesians swiftly sought revenge, dispatching a fleet of 77 ships with the bold Spartan general Brasidas among its commanders. Phormio had received no reinforcements, so the Athenians were outnumbered by almost four to one. The two fleets moored opposite one another at the mouth of the gulf. Faster and more skillful at maneuver, the Athenians wanted to fight in open waters; Brasidas was determined to force them to fight in a confined space, where maneuver would be impossible.

The Peloponnesians headed into the gulf, moving in column toward Naupactus. Obliged to defend his base, Phormio shadowed them on a parallel course close to the land. Choosing their moment, the Peloponnesians turned and bore down on the Athenian line. Nine of the Athenian triremes—the rear of the force—were trapped and forced to the shore, where fierce hand-to-hand fighting took place. The others fled for Naupactus pursued by some 20 enemy ships. As they reached the base, the rearmost trireme turned in a tight circle around a merchant vessel anchored offshore and rammed its nearest pursuer. Thrown into confusion, the Peloponnesians lost formation. An Athenian counterattack scattered them and put them to flight.

WITNESS TO WAR

THUCYDIDES

GREEK HISTORIAN

ACTION BEFORE THE BATTLE OF NAUPACTUS

"… the enemy's ships were now in a narrow space, and what with the wind and the small craft dashing against them, at once fell into confusion: ***ship fell foul of ship****, while the crews were pushing them off with poles, and by their* ***shouting, swearing, and struggling*** *with one another, made captains' orders and boatswains' cries alike inaudible, and through being unable for want of practice to clear their oars in the rough water,* ***prevented the vessels from obeying their helmsmen*** *properly. At this moment Phormio gave the signal, and the Athenians attacked."*

THE FOURTH BATTLE OF SYRACUSE

In 415 the Athenians dispatched a seaborne expedition to attack the city of Syracuse in Sicily. In the spring of the following year they laid siege to the city, with their ships in the Grand Harbor. By fighting the Athenians in the enclosed waters of the harbor, the Syracusans could deny them the room to maneuver their light, agile triremes in the manner that had won so many naval battles. Also, the Syracusans reinforced the bows of their galleys—following the example of the Corinthians at Naupactus—so they could smash the hulls of the lighter Athenian vessels in a head-on collision.

While the Athenians had the worse of naval encounters within the harbor, they were also defeated in their efforts to enforce a blockade of the city by land. By late summer 413 Syracuse had become a trap for the Athenians from which they needed to escape either by land or sea. Their commander Nicias fatally hesitated, influenced by bad omens. By the time he decided to abandon the siege, the Syracusans had blocked the exit from the harbor with a line of galleys and smaller craft, leaving only a narrow passage clear.

Having decided on a breakout, the Athenians packed their ships with infantry and headed for the passage out of the harbor. The Syracusans had warships covering the passage and others in an arc to both sides. As the Athenians tried to smash through the blockade, the Syracusans fell on them from all sides and a general mêlée ensued. According to Thucydides, "never did so many ships fight in so small a space." Triremes rammed and counter-rammed, becoming inextricably entwined; javelins, arrows, and stones showered onto decks; soldiers clashed in hand-to-hand combat. The Athenians tried to use grappling hooks but the Syracusans had covered the prows and other upper parts of their ships with hides so the hooks would not grip. After a long, hard fight the Athenians broke. Many of their galleys were lost and the rest driven back to shore. They still had more ships than their enemies, but their sailors were demoralized and a further breakout was not attempted. Instead, their troops tried to escape overland, but the entire force was captured. Those who were not executed were sold into slavery.

Hoplite helmet
Soldiers in the Greek city-states of southern Italy and Sicily wore helmets in the ornate so-called "Chalcidian" style.

PELOPONNESIAN WAR

FOURTH BATTLE OF SYRACUSE

Date	September 9, 413 BCE
Location	Grand Harbor, Syracuse, Sicily
Result	Syracusan victory

COMBATANTS

ATHENS AND ALLIES	SYRACUSE AND ALLIES

COMMANDERS

Nicias	Gylippus

FORCES

Ships: c.110	**Ships:** c.70

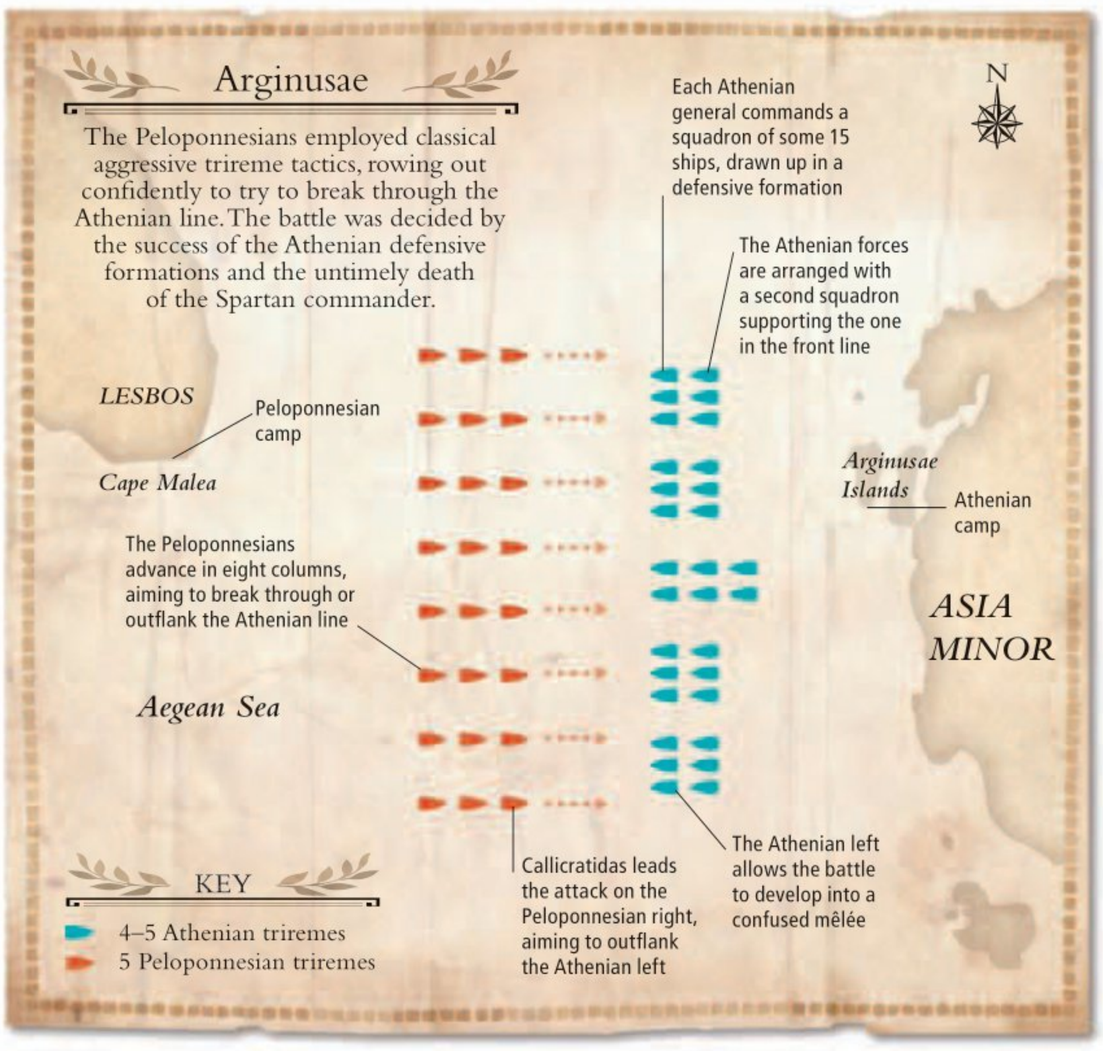
LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** c.50	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** c.20

Beached triremes
Fighting a sea battle in Syracuse harbor ended in disaster for the Athenian ships. When forced to disembark, sailors and soldiers alike were easy prey for the Syracusan troops on the shore.

THE BATTLE OF ARGINUSAE

In 406 BCE Sparta and its Peloponnesian allies assembled a large fleet of triremes. Under the command of the Spartan navarch Callicratidas, it caught up with the Athenian general Conon near Mytilene on the island of Lesbos, and sank 30 of his ships. When Callicratidas blockaded the Athenians in Mytilene harbour, Conon sent a message to Athens detailing his plight. The Athenians reacted by building a new fleet—paid for by melting down the gold statue of Nike—and recruiting slaves and foreigners in the city to serve as oarsmen, since the supply of experienced free rowers was exhausted.



Placed under the command of eight generals, this inexperienced fleet was sent to the relief of Mytilene. Leaving 50 of his ships to maintain the blockade, Callicratidas sailed to meet the Athenians, making camp at Cape Malea, from where he could observe his enemies beached on the Arginusae Islands an hour's rowing away. The Spartan navarch planned a surprise night attack but this was abandoned because of a squall. Instead, it was at dawn that Callicratidas, positioned in the place of honor on the right wing, led his ships across the channel toward the enemy camp.

The Athenians scrambled to launch their ships, each general leading his own squadron. The Peloponnesians approached with groups of galleys in line ahead, intending to break though gaps in the Athenian line or outflank it, the classic maneuvers for victory in trireme contests. The inexperienced Athenian crews could not match Callicratidas for speed or nimbleness, so they adopted a novel defensive formation, each Athenian general organizing his triremes into a compact group several lines deep.

The fighting was prolonged, but at some point Callicratidas's galley was rammed and he disappeared into the sea. The Spartan right then collapsed and fled, leaving the left to sustain the full weight of the Athenian onslaught before it also broke. Athens had a naval victory to celebrate—in fact, its last—and the grateful city granted citizenship

Spartan ship
Sparta's power depended on its soldiers rather than its sailors. This ivory relief of a warship shows Spartan hoplites on its deck.

> AS HIS VESSEL DASHED HER BEAK INTO HER ANTAGONIST, HE WAS HURLED OFF INTO THE SEA AND DISAPPEARED.
>
> **XENOPHON**, DESCRIBING THE DEATH OF SPARTAN COMMANDER CALLICRATIDAS AT ARGINUSAE

Triremes in the Aegean
Triremes could either move forward with their sails raised, sailing with the wind, or under oar power alone. Once two fleets had met and battle was joined, the sails – and often the masts as well – would be lowered.

to the slave and foreign oarsmen. But the aftermath of the battle was less than satisfactory. Most of the Athenian force was to sail to Mytilene to destroy the Spartan blockading force, while the rest would rescue crews clinging to the 25 wrecked Athenian triremes. But a sudden storm prevented either of these plans being put into effect. The failure to save the shipwrecked crews caused such outrage in Athens that six of the victorious generals were executed.

THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR

THE BATTLE OF ARGINUSAE

Date	406 BCE
Location	East of the island of Lesbos
Result	Athenian victory

COMBATANTS

ATHENS	SPARTA AND ALLIES

COMMANDERS

Eight generals	Callicratidas

FORCES

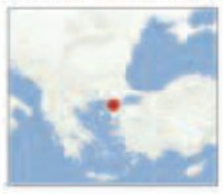
Ships: 143 triremes	**Ships:** 120 triremes

LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** 25 triremes	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** 70 triremes

THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR

AEGOSPOTAMI



Date 404 BCE
Forces Spartans: unknown; Athenians: 170 ships
Losses Spartans: none; Athenians: 160 ships

Location
The Hellespont

The Hellespont was crucial to Athens, for grain convoys passed through it on their way from the Black Sea and without them Athens would starve. The Spartans were able to threaten this lifeline in 404 BCE because of an alliance with the Persians, which gave them the resources to revenge their losses at Arginusae. They recalled their most successful naval commander, Lysander, to lead the new fleet.

Lysander entered the Hellespont and captured the town of Lampsacus. The Athenian fleet, under the collective command of six generals, came after him and beached at Aegospotami opposite Lampsacus. It was a wild location that lacked adequate supplies for the thousands of sailors and marines, forcing the Athenians to bring the Spartans immediately to battle. On four consecutive days the Athenian fleet sortied toward Lampsacus, but each time Lysander refused to be drawn and remained in harbor.

What happened on the fifth day is a matter of dispute. According to the most likely version, Philocles, the Athenian general commanding that day, sent a small force of triremes toward Lampsacus to lure Lysander out. The Athenians were then to launch swiftly from their beach and crush the Spartans. But the plan misfired. The Spartan fleet swiftly smashed the triremes at sea and then destroyed the main force before it could get off the beach and into formation. Only 10 Athenian ships escaped. Lysander had Philocles and 3,000 other Athenian prisoners executed. With its fleet destroyed and no resources to build a new one, Athens surrendered the following year.

DIED 395 BCE

LYSANDER

SPARTAN GENERAL AND NAVAL COMMANDER

Having risen from poor origins, Lysander was appointed nauarch, or admiral-in-chief, of Sparta in 407 BCE. It was a post that could be held only for one year and never twice by the same individual. Lysander cultivated close relations with Cyrus, wealthy son of the Persian emperor Darius II, and thus obtained funds to strengthen the Spartan fleet, creating a naval force capable of challenging Athenian naval might. He defeated an Athenian fleet under Alcibiades at Notium, before his term of office came to an end. After the Spartan defeat at Arginusae Lysander was restored to command, although not accorded the official post of nauarch. His victory at Aegospotami allowed Lysander to make himself the most powerful man in Greece. He was an arrogant and cruel individual, but an inspired naval leader.

CREW PROFILE

GREEK TRIREME

5TH CENTURY BCE

A TRIREME REQUIRED A CREW of around 200 men. In Athens responsibility for recruiting them fell to a trierarch, a wealthy individual who had this task imposed upon him as one of his duties as a citizen. Since the trierarch was unlikely to have much seagoing experience, once at sea he was heavily dependent upon his four naval officers—the helmsman, rowing master, purser, and bow officer—who between them effectively ran the ship. The men on board most similar to the trierarch in social status were the ship's 10 hoplite soldiers.

THE OARSMEN

The oarsmen, who made up the majority of the crew, were usually free men hired from among the poorest citizens. Foreigners were employed when local oarsmen could not be found in sufficient numbers. Only experienced rowers skilled and hardened to the job were really useful, and they could command a good wage. Rowing maneuvers were practiced relentlessly once a crew was assembled. The oarsmen were seated in three rows, the thalamites at the bottom close to the waterline, the zygites in the middle, and the thranites in the highest row at the top. Thranites had the hardest job, because of the angle at which their oars struck the water. They tended to command higher wages than the others. As free men, the oarsmen were generally decently treated. Although they were occasionally expected to take part in fighting with hand weapons, they were normally considered too valuable to risk losing in close combat. Desertion was often a problem, as oarsmen would leave to join a ship offering higher pay, especially if their trierarch's money ran out, as sometimes happened.

Trireme oarsmen
By the time of the Peloponnesian War, Athens had increased her fleet to 200 triremes, each requiring 170 oarsmen seated in 3 tiers on each side.

RECONSTRUCTED ATHENIAN TRIREME

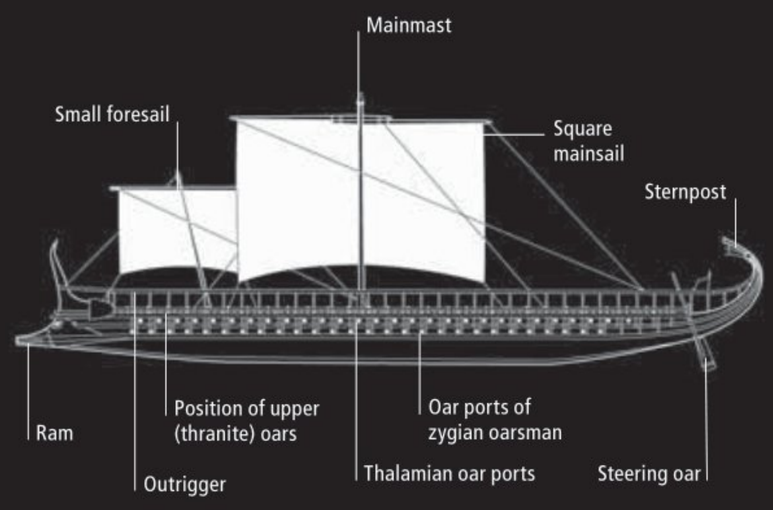
OLYMPIAS

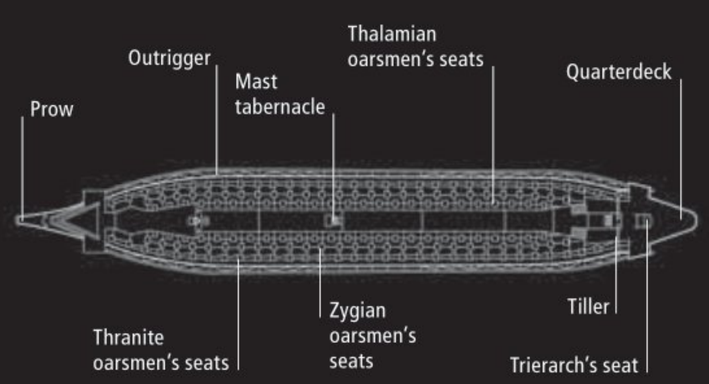
NO ORIGINAL EXAMPLE of a trireme, the key warship of Ancient Greece, has survived from antiquity. *Olympias*, built at Piraeus, Athens, between 1985 and 1987, is a scrupulous reconstruction based on the best available historical evidence. It did well in sea trials, confirming that a galley with three tiers of oars could perform impressively in action.

A GREEK TRIREME was a lightweight, shallow-draft vessel some 115 ft (35 m) long and less than 20 ft (6 m) wide. Although it cruised under sail, it was propelled in battle by 170 oarsmen in three tiers: 62 thranites highest, 54 zygians in the middle, and 54 thalamians at the bottom. With 30 other men completing the crew, including soldiers and archers, it was a crowded vessel. There was no room for carrying more than basic supplies and insufficient space for the whole crew to sleep on board. The trireme was capable under oar of speeds in excess of eight knots and highly maneuverable.

In sea trials *Olympias* was turned about at high speed in two-and-a-half times its own length. A fast-maneuvering trireme did not provide a stable platform for its fighting men—marine hoplites had to learn to throw their spears while sitting down. Even when its hull was smashed by an enemy ram, a trireme would not actually sink, as its wreckage would float.

Trireme under sail and oar power
In this artist's impression of a trireme, the arrangement of the three banks of oars is more or less accurate, but other details, such as the lateen sails, are incorrect.



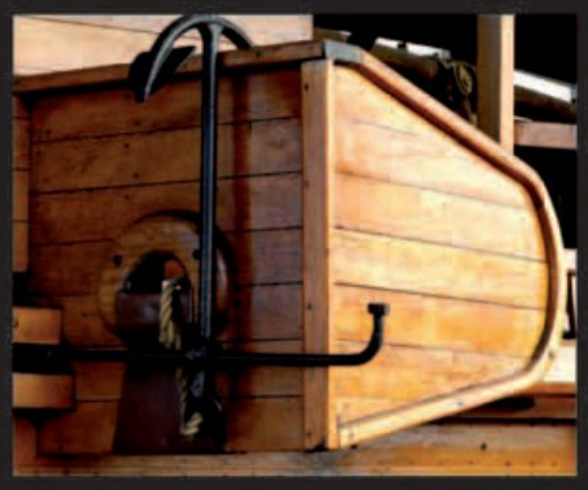


Olympias
The side view of *Olympias* (top) gives an idea of the arrangement of the sails and the three levels of oar ports. The overhead view (bottom) shows the exact location of each individual oarsman's seat. The oarsmen's positions are covered by a protective deck.

> "THE ATHENIANS ... LEARN TO USE THE OAR AS SECOND NATURE ... WHEN A MAN IS OFTEN AT SEA HE MUST OF NECESSITY TAKE AN OAR HIMSELF ... AND LEARN THE LANGUAGE OF THE SEA."
>
> **ANONYMOUS ATHENIAN** WRITING IN THE 5TH CENTURY BCE

» Prow and ram
The business-end of the trireme was the prow with its heavy bronze-sheathed ram for holing the hulls of enemy galleys. The weight of the ram on the *Olympias* is 440 lb (200 kg).

» Ear and anchor
Projecting on either side of the galley were the *epotides* (ears). These structures served as protection for the outriggers and oarsmen behind them and as platforms for sailors to drop and weigh anchor.



» Outrigger
This projection was built out from the sides of the galley, supported by brackets. It allowed the upper tier of oarsmen to row from a position outboard of the other two tiers.

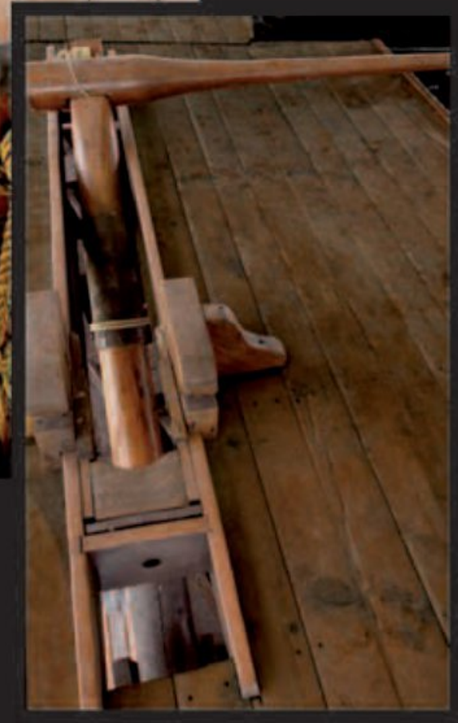
« Mainmast tabernacle
When the crew of the *Olympias* is required to hoist the galley's masts and sails, the foot of the mainmast is slotted into this solid base.

» View from the stern
The helmsman's position overlooks the central slot between the decks covering the oarsmen, where the mast is stowed when not in use.

« Trierarch's seat
At the stern of the galley beneath the ornamental sternpost sat the trierarch, the man responsible for fitting out and crewing the ship. In front of his chair the handles of the two tillers are visible.

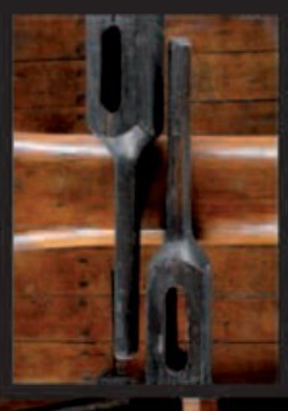
» Central gangway
The narrow gangway that runs the length of the ship also serves as a storage area for the masts and spare spars, oars, ropes, and sails.

» Tiller
The two tillers can be controlled by a single helmsman, but if extra force is needed, one man can pull on one, while a second man pushes the other.



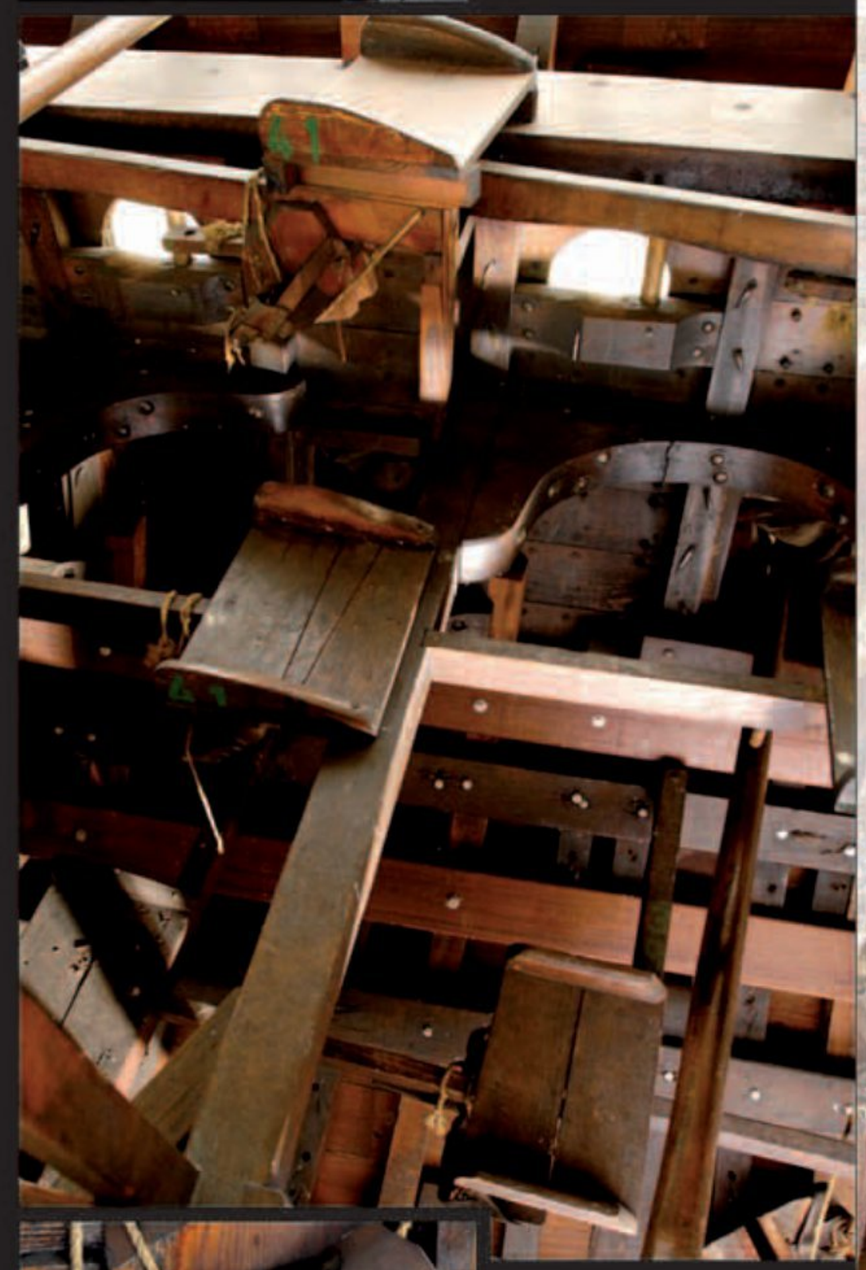
« Thranites' benches
The topmost tier of oarsmen, the thranites, whose oars passed through the outrigger, were the only ones who could actually see their oars entering the water.

» The oarsman's seats
This view shows the extremely cramped positions occupied by the three tiers of oarsmen: the thranites above, the zygians below them, and the thalamians at the bottom.



« Oar handles
The inner part of the oar, the loom, is thick and heavy, giving the oarsman greater control when raising the blade from the water and moving it back for the next stroke.

« The three banks of oars
At any point on the *Olympias* the oars are of the same length for each of the three banks of oarsmen. Where the ship narrows, however, at the bow and the stern, slightly shorter oars are used.



» Steering oar
The *Olympias* is fitted with a pair of steering oars (rudders) on either side of the ship. These can be lowered into the water and used as brakes to the ship's foreward movement on one side or the other. They are controlled from a pair of tillers on the quarterdeck.

» Protective sleeve
The lowest bank of oars, that of the thalamian rowers, was much closer to the waterline than the other two. In order to prevent water from splashing through the holes, they were fitted with a protective leather sleeve.

« Foot stretcher
The oarsmen crewing the reconstructed *Olympias* have experimented with various methods of rowing, including this means of securing one foot on the stretcher.

ROMAN NAVAL WARFARE

Roman port
This detail from a Roman fresco of the 1st century CE shows the port at Castellammare di Stabia in the Gulf of Naples. During the first two centuries of the Empire ports like this ringed the entire Mediterranean, which the Romans justifiably called *Mare Nostrum* (Our Sea).

IN THE THIRD CENTURY BCE the Mediterranean was host to a diversity of naval powers large and small. The western part was dominated by Carthage, a North African city founded by the Phoenicians, which continued their great seafaring tradition in trade and war. In the eastern Mediterranean the wealthy Hellenic states of Antagonid Macedonia and Ptolemaic Egypt maintained imposing fleets of outsized warships appropriate to their notions of royal prestige and large-scale warfare. The island of Rhodes, a major maritime trading center, had an efficiently organized fleet of lighter ships, used to suppress piracy and deter the predatory ambitions of larger states. But all of these diverse maritime powers, along with Seleucid Syria, were ultimately subjected to the naval power of Rome, a state with no tradition of shipbuilding or seafaring that created a navy out of nothing in 260 BCE.

INSTANT NAVAL POWER

Rome's progress to naval dominance began with the defeat of the Carthaginians in the First Punic War (264-241 BCE), continued with the extension of Roman power to the eastern Mediterranean in the 2nd century BCE, and was completed in 67 BCE with the suppression of piracy by Pompey the Great. These successes were not achieved through radical naval innovations, although Roman technical ingenuity did play its part. Rome's first fleet—100 quinqueremes and 20 triremes built in 60 days—was created partly by copying a galley captured from the Carthaginian enemy.

The Roman quinqueremes were smaller than the huge ungainly warships of the Hellenic states, but they still probably had five men operating each oar and 28 oars to a side. This made them better suited to the largely inexperienced crews that Rome had available than the one-man-per-oar trireme. On these heavier and less maneuverable vessels, oarsmen needed muscle power rather than skill. Most important, the quinqueremes could carry some 120 soldiers, enabling the Romans to transfer their proven supremacy in land warfare to the sea. Although most of their ships were still fitted with rams, the Romans' prime aim in naval warfare was to board the enemy's galleys. They would first soften them up by bombarding them with missiles from wooden towers that stood at the prow and stern of their ships.

Sailing from Alexandria
A trireme carrying a large force of legionaries is rowed out of the port of Alexandria, one of the main centers of Roman naval power in the east. Many Egyptians served as oarsmen and sailors in the imperial Roman navy.

Ram in the shape of a boar's head
The ships's ram *(rostrum)* was very important in Roman iconography. The beaks of Carthaginian ships captured at Mylae in 260 BCE were used to decorate the raised platform used by speakers in the Roman forum, hence the word "rostrum" meaning a speaker's podium.

WEAPONS ON BOARD

In their war against Carthage the Romans introduced the spiked corvus (see p44) as an aid to grappling and boarding. Later the extraordinary arpax was invented, a catapult used to propel grappling tackle onto an enemy ship. Most of the Romans' on-board military technology, however, was identical to that used on land. Shipborne artillery consisted of catapults and ballistas, mostly firing darts and stones as anti-personnel munitions, although they could be used to propel heavier rocks to bombard city walls during the siege of a port. Roman success at sea cannot be put down to technological superiority. Rather it was a triumph of willpower and organization. When Rome lost an entire fleet to shipwreck during the Punic Wars, it simply built and manned another to replace it. Pompey's suppression of piracy was achieved by the systematic application of ruthless force, clearing the Mediterranean area by area, leaving no hiding place for the pirates.

Rome's battles against Carthage were fought on a vast scale. In terms of the sheer numbers of men involved—probably more than 300,000—the battle of Ecnomus ranks as one of the largest naval encounters ever. By the 1st century BCE, however, the only major battles were between Roman forces engaged in civil wars. Sea power proved decisive at Actium in 31 BCE, the battle that enabled Octavian to become sole ruler of the Roman world as the Emperor Augustus.

DOMINANCE AT SEA

Since the Roman world encompassed the entire coastline of the Mediterranean, Augustus and his successors faced no major enemies at sea. But they still had need of a navy. Ships provided military supply and transport, as in the invasion of Britain in 43 CE. They also gave river support for the long military campaigns waged in Germany and Dacia. In the Mediterranean they pursued pirates and protected merchant shipping. Some 10,000 men were stationed at a great naval base on the bay of Naples, with another fleet in the Adriatic based at Ravenna, and provincial squadrons elsewhere—for example, in the Black Sea and at Alexandria. Without major enemies the Romans were able to rely for the most part on smaller galleys—triremes and liburnians. The navy was manned by volunteers signed up for 26 years' service, many recruited from among the Phoenicians, Greeks, and Egyptians with their long habit of seafaring.

DECLINE AND FALL

The navy participated in the general decline of the Roman Empire from the 3rd century CE. Shipborne Germanic Goths rampaged through the Aegean and British rebels challenged Roman shipping in northern seas. Meanwhile, widespread piracy revived in the Mediterranean as a weakening Roman navy lost its grip.

The 5th century brought a general collapse of Roman authority in the west. Another Germanic tribe, the Vandals, took to the sea and controlled the western Mediterranean from Carthage and other naval bases in North Africa. In 455 the Vanadal king, Geiseric sailed his fleet across to Italy and sacked the city of Rome itself. The Roman navy's inheritance was to survive, however, in the eastern half of the empire. The Byzantine Empire, centered on Constantinople, would rely on a powerful navy to uphold Rome's imperial tradition.

A riverine navy
This scene, part of the frieze on Trajan's column in Rome, shows Roman ships on the Danube. In the first two centuries CE the Danube and Rhine formed the Roman Empire's eastern border and were patrolled by squadrons of warships.

THE FIRST PUNIC WAR

THE ROMAN REPUBLIC fought the First Punic War against Carthage for control of the island of Sicily. The Romans were dominant on land, but initially the Carthaginians controlled the seas. To challenge this well-established maritime power the Romans had to build a fleet from scratch and teach themselves the skills of naval warfare. They were so successful that the Carthaginians scored only one sizable naval victory in the course of the war—at Drepana—while suffering many defeats, including at Mylae and the huge battle of Cape Ecnomus. The Romans used sea power to carry the war into Carthaginian territory in North Africa, although they suffered catastrophic losses when fleets were sunk by storms in 255, 253, and 249. After a final defeat at the Aegates Islands in 241 the Carthaginians could no longer supply their troops on Sicily by sea and were forced to make peace on Roman terms.

THE FIRST PUNIC WAR 264–241 BCE

In the mid-3rd century BCE territory under Roman control was limited to the Italian mainland. By the terms of the treaty at the end of the war with Carthage, they gained not only Sicily—the original cause of the conflict and scene of most of the fighting—but the islands of Sardinia and Corsica as well.

KEY

- Area controlled by Carthage 264 BCE
- Area controlled by Rome 264 BCE
- Roman gains at end of war
- Carthaginian victory
- Roman victory
- Roman fleet lost in storm

FIRST PUNIC WAR

MYLAE

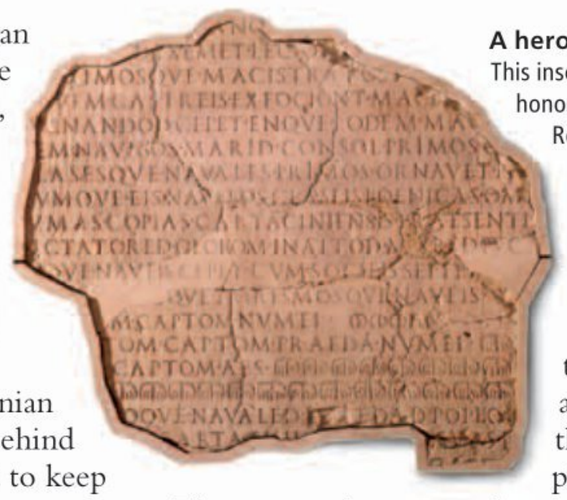
Date 260 BCE
Forces Romans: c.130 ships; Carthaginians: 130 ships
Losses Romans: unknown; Carthaginians: c.45 ships

Location Off northern Sicily

The Romans built a fleet of 100 quinqueremes and 20 triremes in 60 days and somehow found the men to crew them. This inexperienced navy went to sea in 260 and soon lost 17 ships in a skirmish at the Lipari Islands. This inauspicious start led to a swift change at the top, the consul Gaius Duilius taking control of the navy. The Romans realized that their green sailors were no match for the seasoned Carthaginians in a battle of maneuver. On the other hand, no one was better at close-quarters fighting than a Roman soldier. Seeking to exploit their strength, they came up with the corvus as a way of boarding enemy ships and sailed to meet the Carthaginians at Mylae.

Carthaginian commander Hannibal Gisco was puzzled by the Roman ships with the strange-looking devices at their prows. Nonetheless, he led the way as the Carthaginian ships surged forward in loose formation to engage the enemy. The Romans kept their prows turned toward the Carthaginians and at the right moment brought their corvuses crashing downward. Thirty of the Carthaginians' leading ships were pinned, including Hannibal's. Roman soldiers then began to pour across the boarding bridges, slaughtering efficiently with sword and spear. Hannibal had to make his escape in a small rowing boat.

The Carthaginian ships following behind realized they had to keep away from the Roman prows. They maneuvered around the Roman fleet and attacked with their rams from the rear, but still the balance of losses went against them.



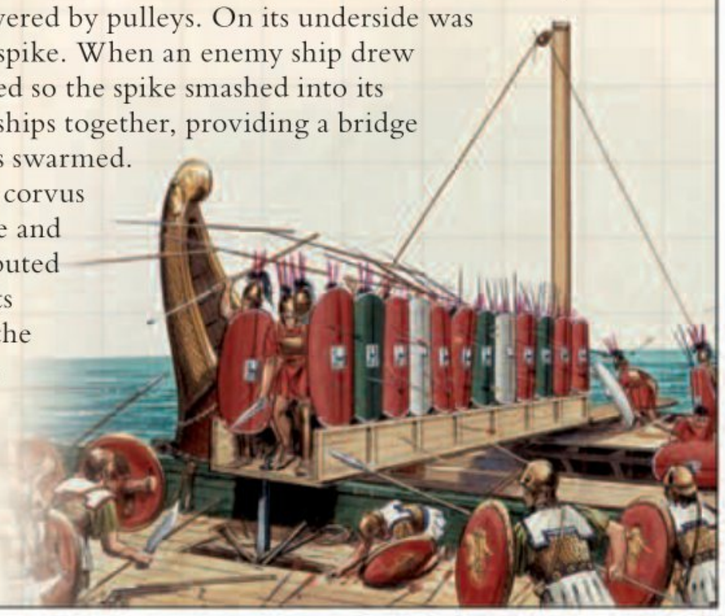
A hero remembered
This inscription in the Roman forum honored Duilius, commander at Rome's victory at Mylae.

When the surviving Carthaginian ships broke off the battle, the Romans did not attempt a pursuit. After the battle, the speakers' platform in the Roman forum was decorated with prows cut from enemy ships to celebrate Rome's first naval triumph. Hannibal was crucified by his own captains.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

CORVUS

The corvus ("raven" in Latin) was an ingenious boarding device adopted by the Romans before the battle of Mylae. Attached by a cable to a pole at the prow of a ship, it was raised and lowered by pulleys. On its underside was a sharp beak-shaped metal spike. When an enemy ship drew near, the corvus was lowered so the spike smashed into its deck. This locked the two ships together, providing a bridge over which Roman soldiers swarmed. Unfortunately ships with a corvus proved dangerously unstable and the device probably contributed to heavy losses in storms. Its use was abandoned before the end of the First Punic War.



Corvus in action
The "beak" of the corvus sticks into the enemy ship's deck as the legionaries march across.

FIRST PUNIC WAR

AEGATES ISLANDS

Date 10 March 241 BCE
Forces Romans: c.200 ships; Carthaginians: c.250 ships
Losses Romans: c.30 ships; Carthaginians: c.120 ships

Location Off coast of western Sicily

In 241 the Carthaginians sent a large fleet to carry grain from North Africa to feed their hard-pressed army in Sicily. The fleet sailed to the Aegates Islands and awaited a favorable wind that would carry it to the Sicilian mainland. But the Romans were well informed of their movements and had a fleet under Caius Catullus ready to intercept. On 10 March a strong breeze blew from the west and Carthaginian commander Hanno ordered the dash for Sicily. The Romans had to row against a heavy swell to get into position, but their now experienced crews coped magnificently and formed a line blocking their enemy's path. The Carthaginians had no choice but to take down their masts, take up their oars, and prepare to fight. They rowed boldly into battle, their crews shouting encouragement to one another from ship to ship, but they were severely overburdened with the supplies they were carrying and short on marines.

The Romans had the better of the contest both in ramming and boarding, sinking 50 enemy ships and capturing another 70. Carthage could no longer deny Rome command of the sea.

THE BATTLE OF DREPANA

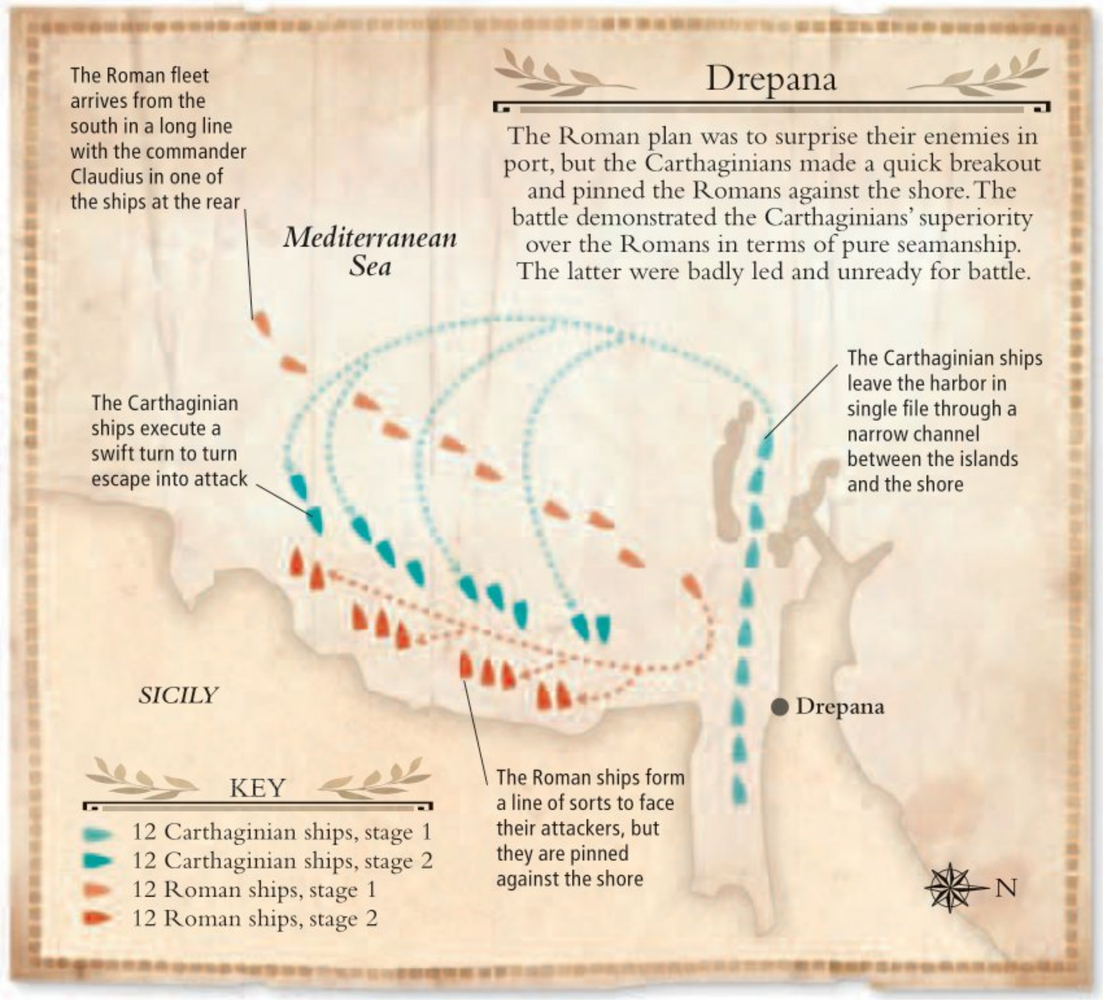
When a Roman fleet was sent to support the army in a siege of the coastal stronghold of Lilybaeum, the Carthaginians sailed reinforcements to the fortress right under the noses of the Romans, repeatedly running ships into Lilybaeum from their nearby base at Drepana. The Romans eventually managed to seal the blockade, but they wanted to avenge these humiliations.

One of the consuls for 249, Publius Claudius Pulcher, decided to launch a surprise raid on Drepana with ships and marines. The Roman fleet sailed up the coast at night, but this led to its losing formation. Dawn found a straggling line of galleys approaching Drepana, with Claudius's flagship well to the rear. Fearing he would be pinned in harbor, the Carthaginian admiral, Adherbal, boldly set to sea as soon as the Romans were sighted.

Meanwhile Claudius performed one of the most important functions of any Roman leader: he sought evidence of the support of the gods. Sacred chickens were carried on board for the purpose. If they were happy, divine support in battle could be expected. Ominously, when offered grain, the birds sulkily refused to eat. Instead of canceling the battle, Claudius had the chickens thrown into the sea, explaining with an irreverent quip that if they would not eat, perhaps they would drink.

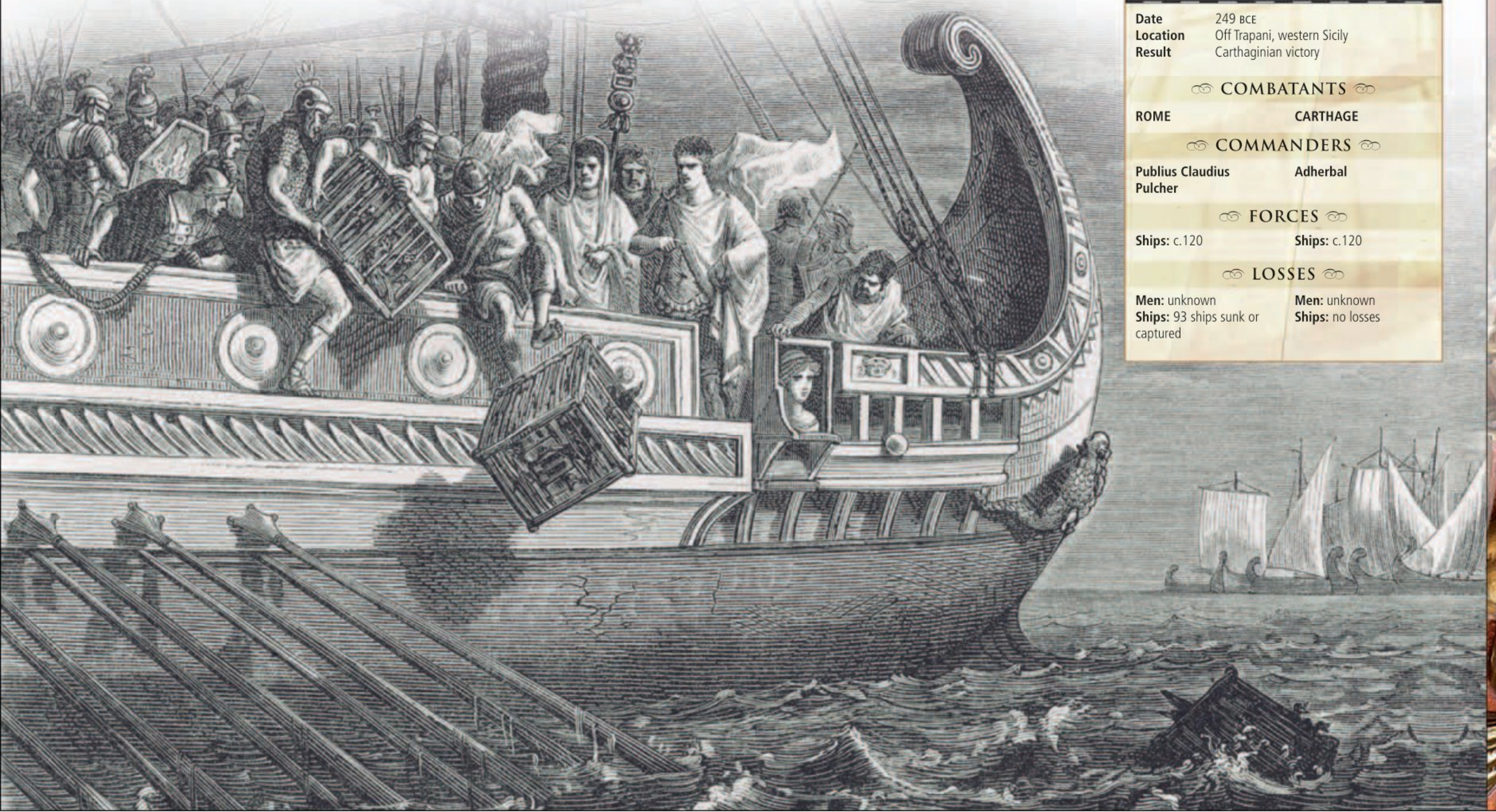
CARTHAGINIAN TRIUMPH

Adherbal skilfully led his ships out to sea, rounding two islands at the northern end of the harbor mouth as the first Roman ships were entering the harbor from the south. Claudius realized what they were doing, but had difficulty communicating with his leading galleys. After a period of confusion, in which several ships collided, the Romans were organized into a line with their sterns to the coast, facing the Carthaginians who had swiftly rowed round to attack shoreward. The Punic crews used their rams with deadly efficiency against the cornered Roman ships, many of which ran aground trying to avoid being sunk. Claudius escaped with around 30 ships; the rest were lost. When he returned to Rome Claudius was put on trial and exiled, with his cavalier treatment of the sacred chickens topping the list of his misdemeanors.



A moment of pride and folly
Publius Claudius Pulcher commits the sacrilege of ordering the drowning of the sacred chickens. These were carried aboard Roman ships so their behavior could be analyzed by the priests.

> HE ONLY RIDICULED THE GODS IN JEST, BUT THE MOCKERY COST HIM DEAR, FOR HIS FLEET WAS UTTERLY ROUTED ...
>
> **CICERO** ON PUBLIUS CLAUDIUS PULCHER'S TREATMENT OF THE SACRED CHICKENS



THE FIRST PUNIC WAR

THE BATTLE OF DREPANA

Date	249 BCE
Location	Off Trapani, western Sicily
Result	Carthaginian victory

COMBATANTS

ROME	CARTHAGE

COMMANDERS

Publius Claudius Pulcher	**Adherbal**

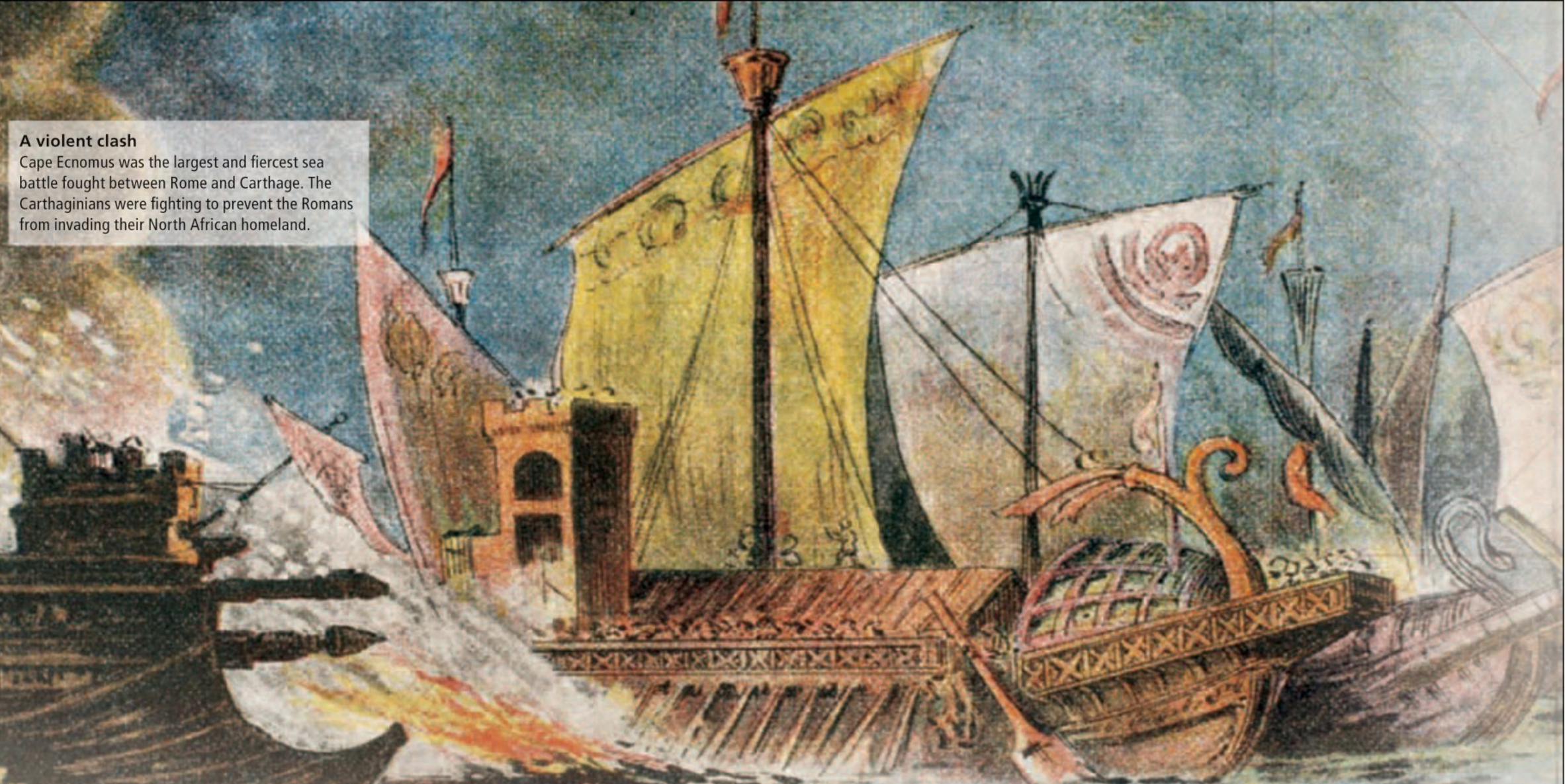
FORCES

Ships: c.120	**Ships:** c.120

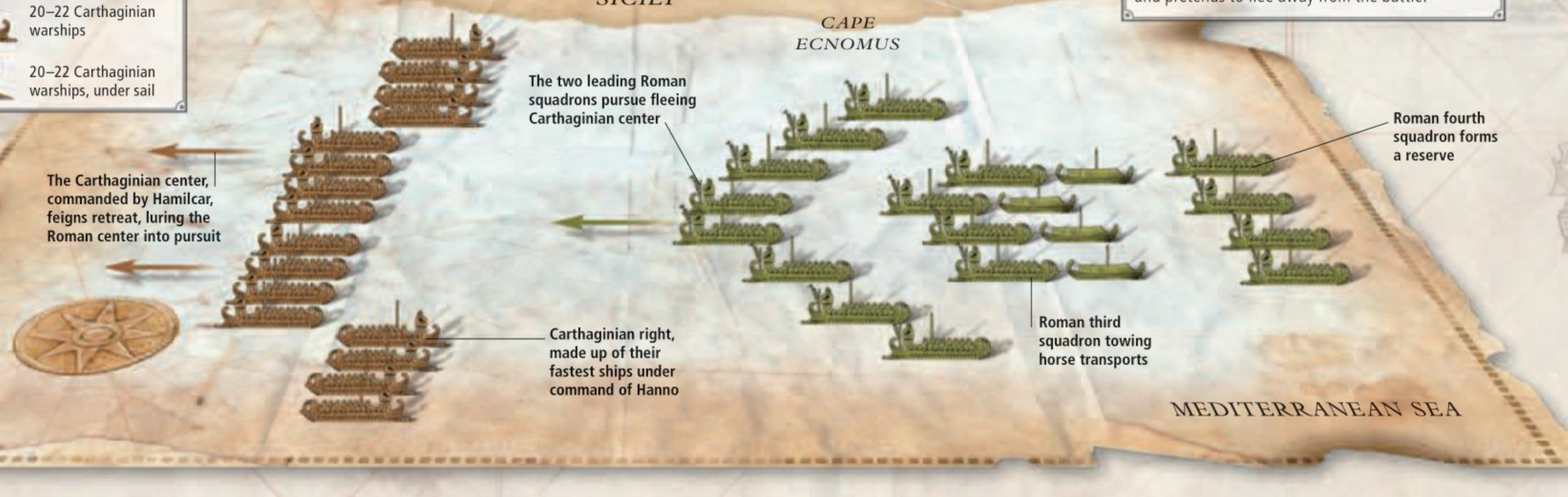
LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** 93 ships sunk or captured	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** no losses

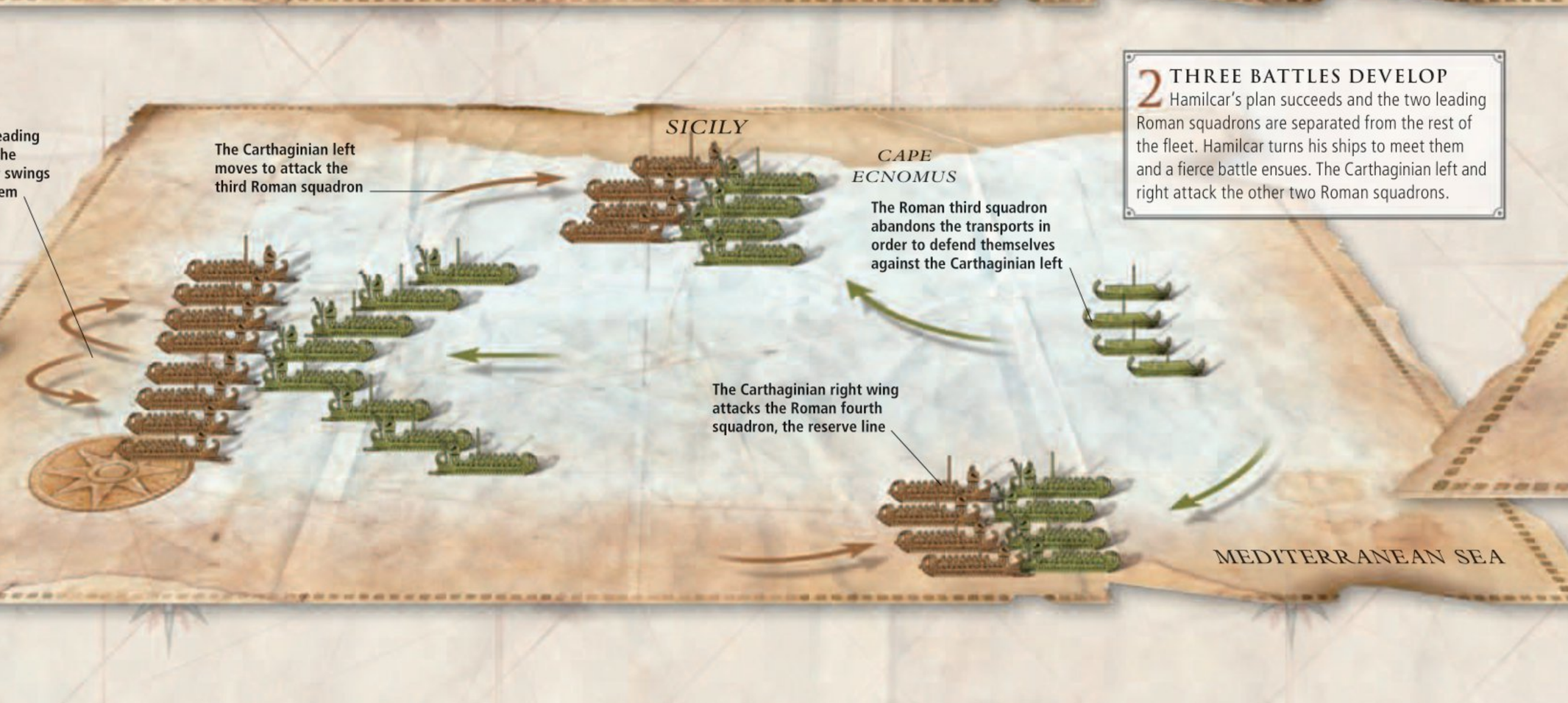
A violent clash
Cape Ecnomus was the largest and fiercest sea battle fought between Rome and Carthage. The Carthaginians were fighting to prevent the Romans from invading their North African homeland.



1 CARTHAGINIAN SUBTERFUGE
As the Roman fleet sets sail for Africa, the Carthaginians are there to block their path. But as the Romans sail along the coast to try and force their way through, the Carthaginian center turns and pretends to flee away from the battle.



2 THREE BATTLES DEVELOP
Hamilcar's plan succeeds and the two leading Roman squadrons are separated from the rest of the fleet. Hamilcar turns his ships to meet them and a fierce battle ensues. The Carthaginian left and right attack the other two Roman squadrons.



THE BATTLE OF CAPE ECNOMUS

By 256 BCE the Roman Republic had been fighting Carthage for control of Sicily for eight years. Increasingly confident of their power to challenge Carthaginian dominance at sea, the Romans decided to mount an invasion of North Africa, sailing across the Mediterranean from Sicily to put Carthage itself under threat. They assembled a vast fleet which, according to the historian Polybius, numbered 330 ships. Most were quinqueremes with around 100 rowers. For the invasion attempt each ship also carried about 150 soldiers. The Roman consuls Lucius Manlius Vulso and Marcus Atilius Regulus led the expedition. The Carthaginians were well aware of Roman plans and determined to stop the invasion taking place. They assembled a fleet of broadly similar size, also in Sicily at Heraclea Minoa, under the command of the generals Hanno and Hamilcar. The scene was set for one of the largest battles in the entire history of naval warfare.

Frieze of a Roman warship
Despite the success of the corvus against the Carthaginians, it was subsequently abandoned in favor of a tower for launching missiles.

HAMILCAR'S STRATAGEM

As the Roman fleet set out for Africa, the Carthaginians spread theirs out in a line across its path, with its left wing close to the Sicilian shore. Hamilcar was in the center and Hanno on the right. The Romans advanced in a compact formation. In the van were two squadrons, each commanded by a consul. Behind these a third squadron towed horse transports. A fourth squadron protected the rear. Assuming that the Romans would attempt simply to smash through the Carthaginian line, Hamilcar ordered his captains in the center to withdraw as the Romans approached. This would draw the Roman van forward, allowing the Carthaginian wings to outflank them.

At first Hamilcar's plan worked. The leading Roman squadrons surged forward and a gap opened up between them and the rest of the fleet to the rear. At a signal from Hamilcar, the ships in the Carthaginian center turned back to face the Roman quinqueremes. The ships on the left turned inward to engage the Roman third squadron, whose warships were forced to cast the transports adrift in order to defend themselves. Meanwhile Hanno's right wing, with the Carthaginians' fastest ships, fell fiercely upon the fourth squadron in the rear.

Both sides sought to exploit their strengths. The Romans had the better soldiers and, in the spiked corvus, a superbly effective method of grappling and boarding an enemy ship. The Carthaginians, as the more skilled sailors, hoped to outmaneuver the Romans. Their aim was to avoid being boarded and to sink ships by ramming them from the side or rear.

CRUCIAL TURNING POINT

Hamilcar's plan fell apart in the center, where the two Roman squadrons had the advantage. The Carthaginian galleys found it difficult to manoeuvre in a dense mêlée. A number of them were captured—a corvus spike smashed into their deck and Roman legionaries swarming across to board—and the rest fled. Vulso secured the captured vessels while Regulus led a force of quinqueremes back to aid the rear squadron. This had suffered serious losses, but the arrival of Regulus's ships drove Hanno off. The Roman third squadron, hemmed in against the shore, had adopted a defensive formation with their prows facing outward, holding off the Carthaginians, who thus found themselves trapped as both Vulso and Regulus came up behind them. The Romans succeeded in capturing 50 Carthaginian ships.

The Roman fleet was in no condition to pursue the scattered Carthaginian survivors and retired to Sicily for a refit before proceeding with the planned invasion of North Africa. After some initial success, the invasion itself resulted in disaster, but from this point on the Carthaginians could never again hope to achieve dominance at sea.

THE FIRST PUNIC WAR

THE BATTLE OF CAPE ECNOMUS

Date	256 BCE
Location	Off Cape Ecnomus, Sicily
Result	Roman victory

COMBATANTS

ROMAN REPUBLIC	CARTHAGE

COMMANDERS

Lucius Manlius Vulso **Marcus Atilius Regulus**	**Hamilcar Barca** **Hanno**

FORCES

Ships: 330 **Men:** 139,000	**Ships:** 350 **Men:** 147,000

LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** 24 ships sunk	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** 64 ships captured, 30 ships sunk

3 THE CENTER COLLAPSES
In the center the Roman ships make highly effective use of the corvus to board and capture enemy ships. As the remaining Carthaginians flee, the victorious Romans are now free to go to the aid of the beleaguered squadrons in the rear.

SICILY

CAPE ECNOMUS

Vulso's squadron goes to the relief of the Roman ships pinned against the shore

The Carthaginians succeed in pinning the Roman third squadron aginst the shore, but the Romans adopt an effective defensive formation

Captured Carthaginian ships are secured by Vulso's squadron

After driving off Hanno's squadron, Regulus sails to assist Vulso in surrounding and capturing the last of the Carthaginian ships

Having had the worst of the engagement with the Roman ships in the center, the surviving Carthaginian ships turn and flee

Regulus leads his ships back to relieve the hard-pressed reserve. He drives off Hanno's squadron

MEDITERRANEAN SEA

ROME ACHIEVES MASTERY OF THE MEDITERRANEAN

AFTER THE DEFEAT OF CARTHAGE, Rome turned its attention to the eastern Mediterranean, where regional powers were engaged in their own struggles for dominance. Macedonia and Seleucid Syria possessed imposing fleets, while the island of Rhodes was a major naval power. The mauling of the Macedonian fleet at Chios in 201 BCE opened the way for Roman involvement in the region as an ally of Rhodes. Macedonia and the Seleucids were defeated and Egypt occupied, leaving the Romans with no one to fight at sea except pirates—and one another.

The civil wars in the second half of the 1st century BCE, as Rome made the transition from republic to empire, brought major sea battles that had a crucial impact on the outcome of the struggle for power. The defeat of Sextus Pompeius at Naulochus left Octavian and Mark Antony the only contenders for leadership of the Roman world. The issue between them was settled at Actium in 31 BCE. With Octavian installed as the Emperor Augustus, Roman naval mastery of the Mediterranean was established. It remained virtually unchallenged for the next two centuries.

SECOND MACEDONIAN WAR

CHIOS

Date 210 BCE
Forces Macedonians: 53 large ships, c.150 others; Rhodians and allies: 65 large ships, 12 others
Losses Macedonians: 42 ships; Rhodians and allies: 9 ships

Location Off Chios, Aegean Sea

Philip V of Macedon was fighting for control of the eastern Mediterranean. Rhodes and Pergamon formed an alliance against him, aided by Cyzicus and Byzantium. Philip had landed an army on the island of Chios when he was surprised by a fleet under the Rhodian admiral Theophiliscus and the Pergamonese ruler Attalus.

Some of the ships engaged in the ensuing battle were huge polyremes with eight or ten oarsmen to each column of oars. One of these monsters, the Macedonian flagship, was sunk early in the battle when its ram stuck inextricably in a smaller vessel, exposing it to ramming from both sides. The small, nimble Rhodian galleys attacked from the flank, ramming Philip's ships from the rear or slicing off their oars. But the Macedonians made good use of smaller galleys to protect their larger ships from ramming and held off their attackers with catapults mounted on the high decks.

Both allied commanders were in the thick of the contest. Theophiliscus was wounded three times coming to the aid of one of his quinqueremes that was sinking surrounded by enemy ships—he later died of his injuries. Attalus was forced to run his flagship ashore to escape enemy pursuit. Philip escaped with the majority of his ships, but his losses had been extremely heavy.

ROMAN–SELEUCID WAR

MYONESSUS

Date 190 BCE
Forces Romans and Rhodians: 83 ships; Seleucids: 90 ships
Losses Romans and Rhodians: 3 ships; Seleucids: 29 ships

Location Off west coast of Turkey

Between 192 and 188 Rome, in alliance with Rhodes and Pergamon, fought a war against the Seleucid ruler Antiochus III of Syria. The Seleucid admiral Polyxenidas, based at Ephesus, came out to give battle to a combined Roman and Rhodian fleet off Myonnesus. Control of the Aegean was at stake. The Rhodians under Eudoras skilfully maneuvered their lighter, faster galleys, blocking an attempted outflanking move by Polyxenidas by swiftly transferring from one wing to the other. They broke up the Seleucid formation through the aggressive use of incendiary devices. The heavier Roman ships under Lucius Aemilius Regillus punched through the center of the enemy line. In places, with opposing ships locked together, crews and marines fought hand-to-hand. Once the Seleucids realized that there were Roman ships to their rear, they turned and fled. This victory gave Rome command of the sea, enabling its armies to carry the war to a successful conclusion on land.

Legionary helmet
The sight of Pompey's well-equipped legions was enough to make most pirates surrender. This replica helmet is of a kind widely used in the 1st century BCE.

PIRACY IN THE MEDITERRANEAN

POMPEY'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE PIRATES

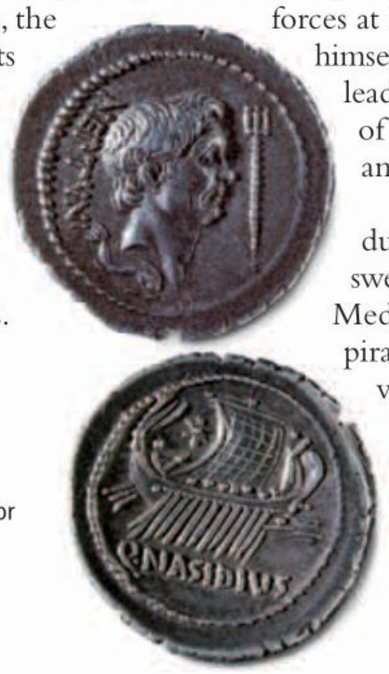
Date 67 BCE
Forces Pompey: 500 ships; Pirates: unknown
Losses Pompey: unknown; Pirates: 846 ships surrendered

Location Mediterranean

Despite Rome's nominal sovereignty over the Mediterranean Sea, the seafaring inhabitants of ports and coastal areas were inevitably tempted to make a living preying on merchant vessels, especially during the frequent periods when Rome was preoccupied with civil wars. The unpoliced waters became too hazardous for trade, while the pirates grew ever richer and bolder, raiding Rome's port of Ostia and kidnapping Roman officials on the Italian coast.

After several ineffectual attempts to crack down on piracy, in 67 BCE the politician and general Pompey, known as "the Great," was given wide-ranging powers and large-scale resources for a war on the pirates. He divided the Mediterranean into 13 zones, each under a legate with army and naval forces at his command. Pompey himself kept a roving brief, leading 60 ships in pursuit of the most troublesome and persistent offenders.

In a mere 40 days during the spring Pompey swept the western Mediterranean clear of pirates, most submitting virtually without a fight. He then turned to the eastern Mediterranean, the heartland of piracy. On Crete and along the coast of Cilicia in Asia Minor pirate chiefs held many ports and strongholds. Pompey went after them in person, taking with him a large quantity of siege equipment in the expectation of hard fighting to subdue fortified pirate bases. But as in the west, a show of strength usually sufficed. According to Roman historian Florus, at the approach of Pompey's galleys the pirate crews would throw down their weapons, relinquish their oars, and clap their hands as a gesture of surrender.



Coin of Pompey the Great
Issued by Pompey's son Sextus Pompeius, this silver coin shows Pompey's head with a trident in honor of his achievement of ridding the Mediterranean of pirates.

Pompey is reported to have taken just 71 pirate ships in combat, out of 846 captured in the campaign. Pirates were resettled where the Romans could keep an eye on them and there was more chance of making an honest living.

> "THERE WERE OF THESE CORSAIRS ABOVE A THOUSAND SAIL, AND THEY HAD TAKEN NO LESS THAN 400 CITIES ..."
>
> **PLUTARCH**, GREEK HISTORIAN OF THE 1ST CENTURY CE IN HIS *LIFE OF POMPEY*

THE BATTLE OF NAULOCHUS

In the course of the civil wars that succeeded the assassination of Julius Caesar in 44 BCE, Sextus Pompeius, son of Pompey the Great, attempted to grab a share of the spoils. In command of the Roman fleet, he captured Sicily, a vital source of grain supplies. Octavian, a member of Rome's ruling triumvirate, entrusted Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa with creating a fleet to retake Sicily.

Agrippa established a naval base, Portus Julius, near modern-day Naples. There he built ships and trained their crews in the latest fighting techniques. They learned to use not only the rock-hurling artillery now standard upon warships, but also a new device known as the arpax, a catapult that projected grappling irons onto an enemy galley. Agrippa also had his ships' hulls reinforced with beams around the waterline to resist ramming.

THE POMPEIANS CRUSHED

In summer 36 BCE, Octavian launched an invasion of Sicily with armies from Italy and North Africa. Agrippa, who was to cover the movement of troops and keep their supply lines open, moved to a forward base on the Lipari islands. From there he made a successful but inconclusive attack on part of Sextus's fleet at Mylae. Sextus then sent his entire naval force to confront Agrippa in a desperate bid to regain command of the sea, which alone offered him a chance of resisting Octavian's invasion.

Almost equal in number, the two forces approached each other in line abreast along the Sicilian coast. Agrippa's ships were, however, slightly more widely spaced. This enabled them to turn Sextus's flank on the seaward side and press their enemy in to the shore. As the battle developed into a close-packed mêlée, Agrippa's well-trained force gained the upper hand. His archers, mounted on towers, shot fire arrows down onto the enemy. His catapults battered hulls and carved deadly paths through crowded decks. The arpax allowed his men to grapple and board ships weakened by the missile barrage.

When the fighting stopped, 28 of Sextus's ships had been sunk and almost all the rest had been captured. Only 17 ships escaped out of a fleet of around 300 vessels. Sicily fell to Octavian. Sextus slipped away to the east, but the following year fell into the hands of one of Mark Antony's followers and was summarily executed.

ROMAN CIVIL WARS

BATTLE OF NAULOCHUS

Date	September 3, 36 BCE
Location	Off north coast of Sicily
Result	Crushing victory for Octavian

COMBATANTS

OCTAVIAN	SEXTUS POMPEIUS

COMMANDERS

Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa	Sextus Pompeius

FORCES

Ships: c.300	**Ships:** c.300

LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** 3	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** 28 sunk, c.255 captured

c.63–12 BCE

MARCUS VIPSANIUS AGRIPPA

ROMAN NAVAL COMMANDER

Agrippa was a friend of Julius Caesar's adopted son Octavian from childhood, and became the future emperor's right-hand man during his rise to power. He made a reputation as a general on land before, in 37 BCE, Octavian made him consul and gave him responsibility for creating a fleet to defeat Sextus Pompeius. His victories over Sextus at Naulochus and Mark Antony at Actium showed a firm grasp of naval tactics as well as great powers of organization and leadership. Much of his later life was spent on campaign in Gaul, Spain, Germany, and Rome's eastern provinces.

Mosaic of Roman war galley
The mosaic shows the helmsman in the stern, the commander standing in the galley's bow, and armed soldiers ready to board an enemy ship.

THE BATTLE OF ACTIUM

The Battle of Actium was the climax of the great power struggle between Mark Antony and Octavian for the leadership of the Roman world following the assassination of Julius Caesar in 44 BCE. In the summer of 31 BCE the forces of Antony and his Egyptian ally Cleopatra were cornered by Octavian at Actium, a Roman colony on the Greek coast. Octavian's admiral, Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa, who commanded a battle-hardened Roman fleet, pinned Antony's fleet in harbor with a close blockade and cut his supply line from Egypt. This allowed Octavian to ferry an army from Italy across the Adriatic unchallenged and to confront Antony on land.

DESPERATE MEASURES

By August, Antony's soldiers and seamen had run desperately short of food and other supplies, their ranks decimated by desertion and disease. Antony and Cleopatra devised a plan for a breakout by sea, hoping to escape back to Egypt with as much as possible of their treasure and their army. Many of their ships were in poor condition and, even after sending out press-gangs to round up able-bodied locals, they were short of oarsmen. Although the least seaworthy ships were burned, the rest were still undermanned.

The breakout was planned for August 29, but four days of storms delayed the operation until the morning of September 2. Antony led his war galleys out of harbor, while transport vessels loaded with treasure remained in the rear under Cleopatra's command. Most unusually, all of Antony's galleys had their masts and sails on board—normally these were never carried into battle. The plan was to exploit the expected offshore breeze from the north in order to sail off to Egypt and safety.

Throughout the morning there was a stand-off, Antony's fleet staying inshore and waiting for the wind. Then, as Agrippa's ships attempted to outflank their enemy, battle was joined. The squadron that included Antony's flagship, on the right of his line, was especially hotly engaged.

AN UNEQUAL CONTEST

Agrippa's host of small warships, mostly liburnians, were far nimbler than Antony's hefty quinqueremes, however these larger galleys provided a high platform for catapults and for soldiers with bows, spears, and slingshots. Ships grappled closely, many set aflame by incendiary devices such as fire arrows. In the afternoon the long-awaited breeze got up and Cleopatra seized the opportunity to sail her ships through the center of the blockading line, which had thinned as battle raged on the flanks. Deserting his flagship, which had been grappled by the enemy, for a lighter vessel, Antony sped after the Egyptian queen. Few of his warships were able to follow. The leaderless fleet fought on for a while until, heavily battered, it surrendered. Antony and Cleopatra reached Alexandria with around 60 vessels, but, the following summer, abandoned by almost all his troops, and facing defeat, Antony committed suicide. A week later Cleopatra did the same.

Antony and Cleopatra
Cleopatra was the last of the dynasty of pharaohs founded by Ptolemy, one of Alexander the Great's generals. In order to prevent Egypt from falling to Rome, she used her legendary charms to seduce first Julius Caesar, then Mark Antony.

ROMAN CIVIL WARS

THE BATTLE OF ACTIUM

Date	September 2, 31 BCE
Location	Ionian Sea, off the Gulf of Abracia, western Greece
Result	Decisive victory for Octavian

COMBATANTS

OCTAVIAN	MARK ANTONY CLEOPATRA VII

COMMANDERS

Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa	Mark Antony

FORCES

Ships: 400 warships, mostly liburnians and triremes	**Ships:** 230 warships, mostly quinqueremes

LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships**: unknown	**Men:** 5,000 dead **Ships:** 300 vessels of all types—warships and transports

Cleopatra's escape
This fanciful representation of the battle shows Cleopatra fleeing treacherously—a version of Actium no longer widely accepted. The escape of the Egyptian queen was rather a pre-planned maneuver.

KEY

OCTAVIAN'S FLEET

15–18 small liburnian vessels

15–18 larger triremes

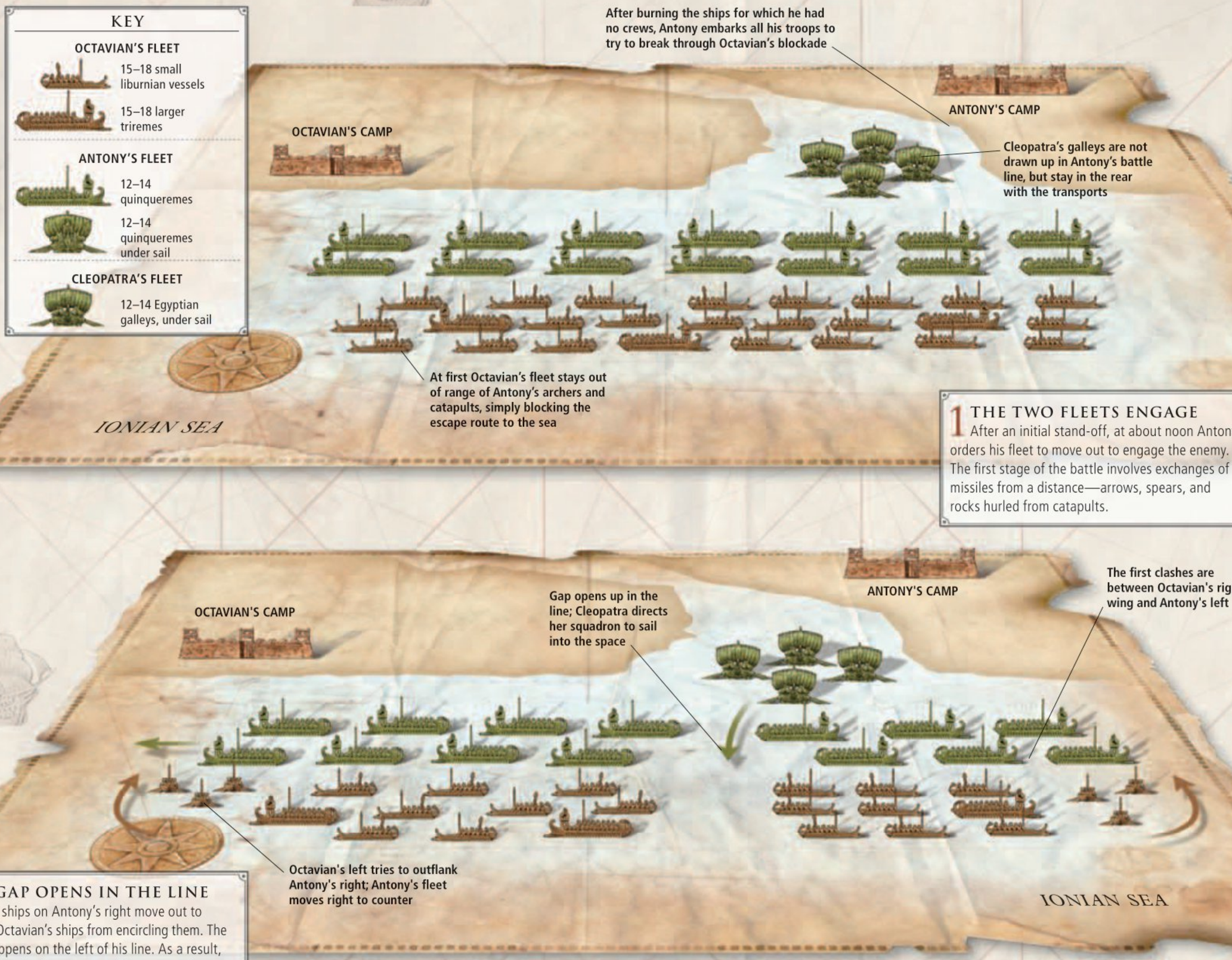
ANTONY'S FLEET

12–14 quinqueremes

12–14 quinqueremes under sail

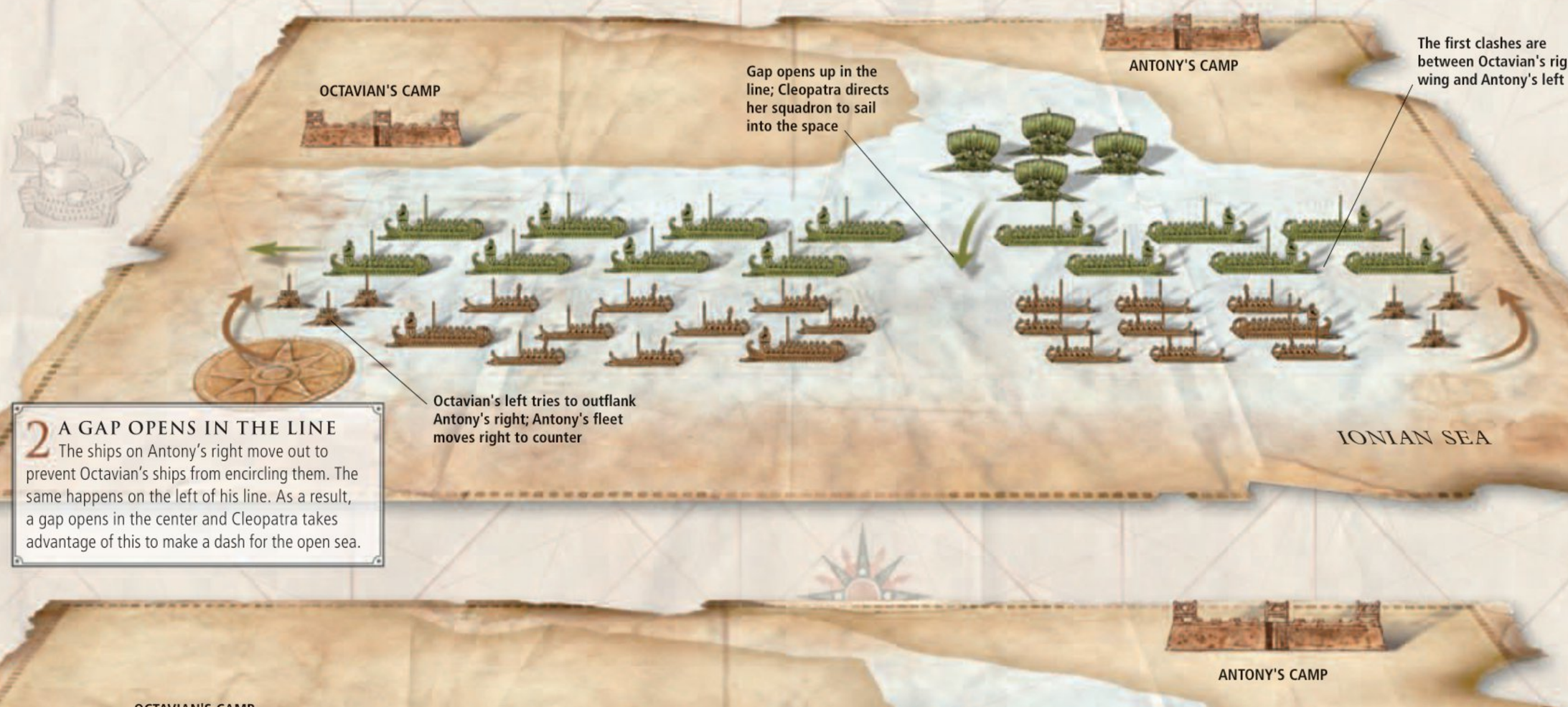
CLEOPATRA'S FLEET

12–14 Egyptian galleys, under sail



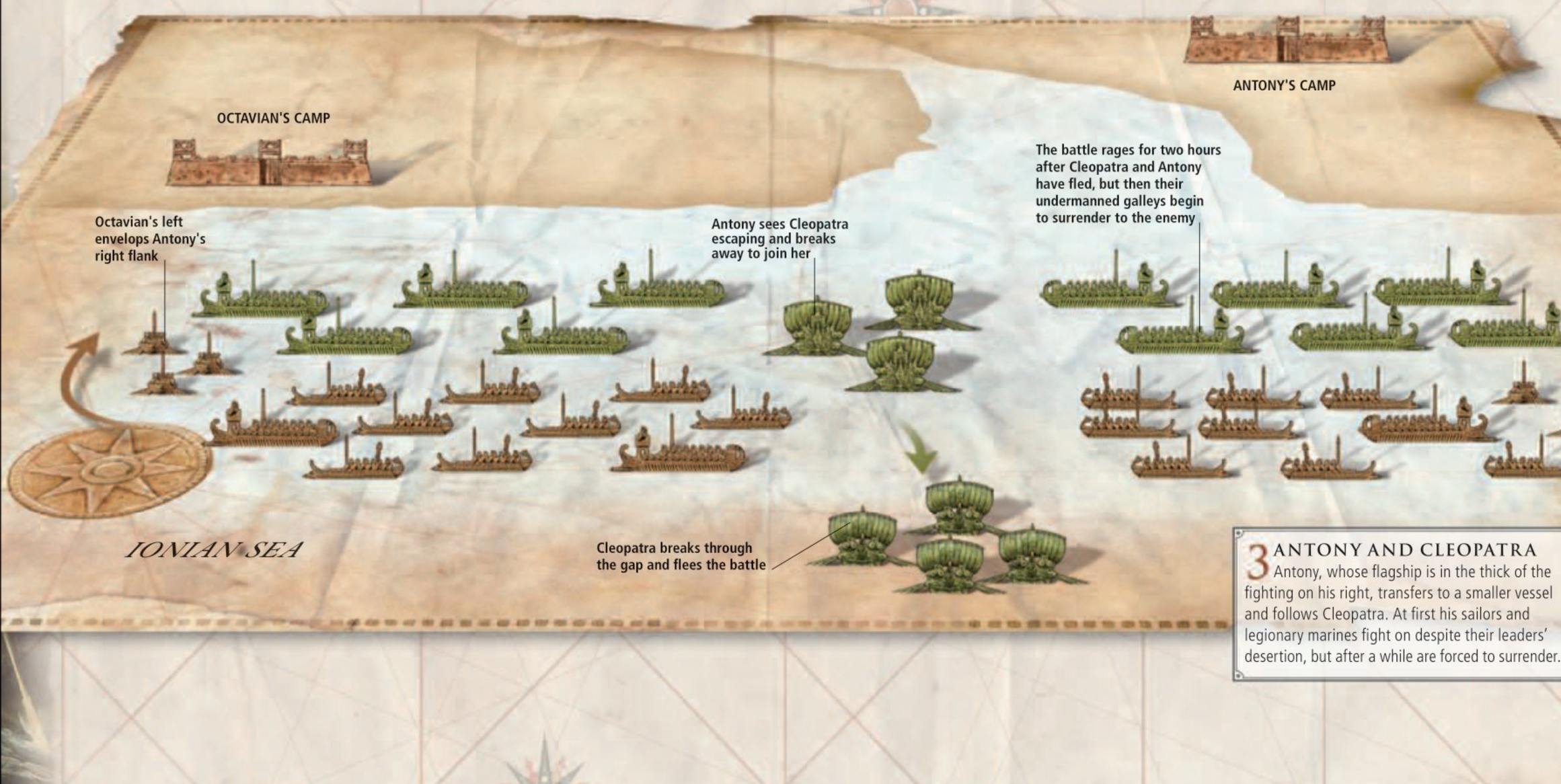
1 THE TWO FLEETS ENGAGE

After an initial stand-off, at about noon Antony orders his fleet to move out to engage the enemy. The first stage of the battle involves exchanges of missiles from a distance—arrows, spears, and rocks hurled from catapults.



2 A GAP OPENS IN THE LINE

The ships on Antony's right move out to prevent Octavian's ships from encircling them. The same happens on the left of his line. As a result, a gap opens in the center and Cleopatra takes advantage of this to make a dash for the open sea.



3 ANTONY AND CLEOPATRA

Antony, whose flagship is in the thick of the fighting on his right, transfers to a smaller vessel and follows Cleopatra. At first his sailors and legionary marines fight on despite their leaders' desertion, but after a while are forced to surrender.

NAVAL WARFARE IN ASIA

Samurai warriors at sea
Samurai sailed out on fast, light boats to harass the invasion fleets of Kublai Khan's Mongols. Two attempts to invade Japan from China failed, the second in 1281 when the invasion fleet was destroyed by a typhoon.

THE DEVELOPMENT OF NAVAL WARFARE in East Asia was in some ways similar to that of Europe. At the time of the Roman Empire, Chinese warships fought using the tactics of ramming or grappling and boarding just as fleets did in the Mediterranean. The Chinese even had an equivalent to the corvus, the Romans' boarding bridge. Naval warfare in Japan, where samurai contested land battles on water fought with bows and swords, at times resembled the battles fought between seaborne medieval European knights and archers. Yet Asian navies developed a distinctive range of ships, including large numbers of vessels with paddlewheels, a form of propulsion that did not catch on in Europe until the steam era. The Chinese in particular were at the cutting edge of technology, using gunpowder, crossbows, and the compass earlier than Europeans, and by the 15th century building the world's largest sailing ships.

MASSIVE BATTLES

There is record of naval battles in China dating back to around 400 BCE, but land warfare was understandably the major preoccupation of the Chinese emperors, given their country's barely defensible western frontier. Battles on rivers and lakes usually accompanied land operations. Japan and Korea also developed naval forces early on. The Koreans largely outfought the Chinese in the Yellow Sea during the wars between the Korean Goguryeo and Chinese Sui dynasties from 598 to 614. The Chinese navy was more successful against Japan in the Baekje War, fought in Korea in 663. Under the Tang Dynasty (618–907) Chinese influence was extended around southeast Asia into the Indian Ocean and across to the east coast of Africa. This brought the Chinese into contact with Arab sailors and with Indian fleets such as that of the southern Indian Chola dynasty in the 11th century. By the time the Song dynasty founded China's first permanent navy in 1132, southern China almost certainly had the world's largest concentration of naval forces. The Song fought massive naval battles against Jurchen Jin and Mongol Yuan assailants from the north. After the Yuan triumphed over the Song under Kublai Khan in the 1270s, Chinese naval power was asserted from the Indian Ocean to Japan—although Yuan attempts at a seaborne invasion of Japan failed. The Japanese, meanwhile, were feared as pirates raiding the coasts of the Asian mainland. They also undertook major naval battles during the civil conflict known as the Gempei Wars, fought in the 12th century, when the movement of troops around Japan's Inland Sea became strategically crucial. A naval victory at Dan-no-Ura ensured that the Minamoto clan would take power in Japan as shoguns in 1185.

Legends of the Three Kingdoms
Three leaders competing for the fragmented Han Empire fought a decisive river battle at Red Cliffs in 208 CE. This illustration shows legendary events from the period, including "borrowing" arrows by sailing boats manned with straw scarecrows past the enemy's camp.

SHIPS AND WEAPONRY

The Chinese developed a range of warship types with different tactical roles. These included large multi-deck war junks and "tower ships" with portholes through which crossbows could be fired and lances thrust, and often carrying varieties of catapult. Smaller vessels included "covered swoopers," fast assault ships covered with thick hides to protect against missiles and incendiary devices, which were designed for aggressive "swoops" on the enemy. "Flying barques" were fast moving galleys with more oarsmen than usual and a smaller

Samurai helmet
Most battles at sea are won by selfless teamwork, but the medieval samurai warrior was able to show off his individual prowess, especially his skill as an archer, just as well on water as on land.

complement of soldiers—comparable to the Greek trireme in concept. Paddle-wheel craft, initially introduced in the 8th century, became of paramount importance under the Song dynasty. The wheels were driven by treadmills inside the hull typically operated by the leg-power of crews of 28 to 42 men. Large vessels might have 23 wheels—11 on each side and one at the stern—and measure up to 360 feet (110 m) in length. One type, known as a "sea-hawk" ship, had a low bow and a high stern, a ram at the prow and iron plates for armored protection. Used on rivers and lakes, the paddle-wheel craft were extremely maneuverable, capable of traveling forward or backward with equal ease. On-board weaponry ranged from crossbows and lances to catapults and, later, primitive cannon. Gunpowder became a common element in missile warfare in the Song period. It could be wrapped in small packages around arrowheads to make fire-arrows, or used to fuel a fire-lance—a kind of proto-flamethrower—or made into explosive grenades or bombs. Many Chinese naval battles were decided by ships being set on fire.

MING SEAPOWER

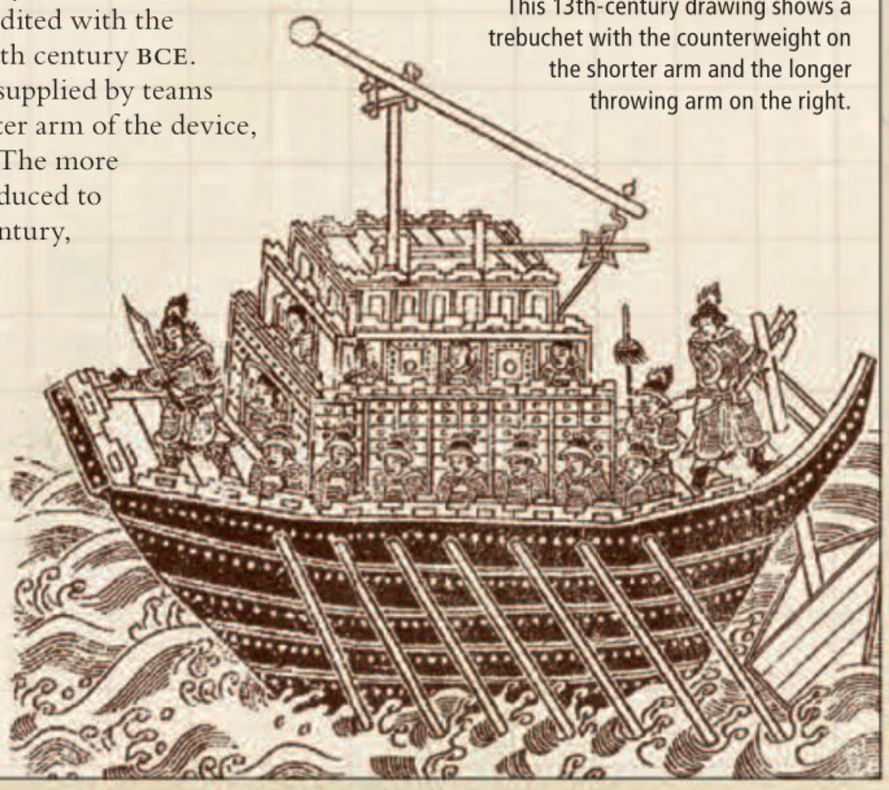
Naval conflict played a critical role in the warfare that ended in the establishment of the Ming dynasty in China in the 14th century. There were engagements between probably some of the numerically largest fleets ever assembled. Once in power, the Ming at first devoted vast resources to shipbuilding. Since they also had the magnetic compass at their disposal, there was nothing to stop them embarking upon oceanic voyages. Between 1405 and 1433 fleets led by the eunuch Admiral Zheng He cruised around southeast Asia and across the Indian Ocean, entering the Red Sea and voyaging down the east African coast as far as Mozambique. The greatest of the Chinese fleets comprised 63 large war junks—the largest more than 390 ft (120 m) long and almost 160 ft (50 m) broad—plus more than 200 support vessels and nearly 30,000 men. This constituted a thoroughly intimidating assertion of imperial suzerainty. On the few occasions when he encountered resistance, Admiral He did not hesitate to use force to impose respect—for example arresting and executing a Sumatran ruler who objected to paying tribute.

From the 1430s, however, China's Ming emperors turned instead to a policy of inward-looking development that rejected all overseas ventures. The maintenance of an ocean-going navy was completely abandoned. By the time European mariners arrived in Chinese and Japanese waters in the 16th century, they encountered no serious competitors in their bid for control of the world's ocean trade routes.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

SONG CATAPULT SHIP

A trebuchet is a sling for hurling missiles, using the principle of the lever to give greater power and accuracy than a torsion device such as a ballista. The Chinese are credited with the invention of the first trebuchets around the 5th century BCE. The power for these traction trebuchets was supplied by teams of men pulling on ropes attached to the shorter arm of the device, the sling being at the end of the longer arm. The more powerful counterweight trebuchet was introduced to China from Muslim west Asia in the 13th century, first playing a crucial role in the siege of Xiangyang in 1273. In the Song dynasty navy trebuchets were habitually deployed as shipborne artillery, mounted on the larger "tower ships" both as a weapon for ship-to-ship combat and as a siege weapon for bombarding land fortifications from the water. When attacking ships, the trebuchets would often hurl explosive incendiary devices, an effective tactic against highly flammable vessels. Many of the Song catapult ships were driven by paddlewheels, but they could also be propelled by oars.



River ship with trebuchet
This 13th-century drawing shows a trebuchet with the counterweight on the shorter arm and the longer throwing arm on the right.

CHINA, JAPAN, AND KOREA

NAVAL POWER played an important part in East Asian warfare, as a sometimes crucial ancillary to land campaigns. As early as the 3rd century CE, the battle of Red Cliffs established a consistent theme in Chinese history: the ability of the southern Chinese to defend themselves against invaders from the north by resort to river and sea warfare. This pattern was repeated against the Jurchen at Tangdao and initially against the Mongols in the 13th century. The Mongol Yuan dynasty eventually conquered the Song after adapting to naval warfare. The period of Yuan rule was framed by two naval battles: a Mongol victory at Yamen in 1279 and a defeat at Lake Poyang in 1363. Sea battles were also crucial in the histories of Korea and Japan. The Japanese failed to extend their influence into Korea in the 7th century, repulsed by the Chinese navy, and the Mongols made equally unsuccessful attempts to invade Japan. The outcome of Japan's civil wars was affected by fighting on water, notably at Dan-no-Ura in 1185.

SILLA–BAEKJE WARS

BAEKGANG

Date August 27–28, 663
Forces Japanese: 800 ships; Chinese: 170 ships
Losses Japanese: 400 ships, Chinese: unknown

Location Geum River, Korea

China's Tang dynasty occupied the Baekje kingdom of southern Korea in alliance with another Korean kingdom, Silla. Japan's Yamato government sent a fleet and an army of more than 40,000 men to aid Baekje forces under siege at Churyu. They intended to ferry the troops up the Geum River, but found the river blocked by a Chinese fleet. The Chinese were heavily outnumbered but their ships held a disciplined line from bank to bank. In two days of repeated attacks the Japanese failed to break through. Seeing the Japanese tired and disorganized, the Chinese then launched a counterattack, outflanking and encircling the Japanese fleet. Many of the Japanese ships were burned and thousands of soldiers drowned. Baekje was defeated and, with Chinese aid, the Silla kingdom unified Korea.

JURCHEN–SONG WARS

TANGDAO

Date November 16, 1161
Forces Song: 120 ships; Jurchen: 600 ships
Losses Unknown

Location Near Shandong peninsula, East China Sea

In 1161 the Jurchen of northern China were attempting to conquer southern China, ruled by the Song dynasty. An invasion force of warships and troop transports was intercepted by the Song navy among the islands of the East China Sea. The Song had developed paddle-wheel craft powered by treadmills, which moved swiftly into the attack. On their decks they had trebuchets that hurled primitive incendiary bombs to explode on the wooden enemy ships. Soon much of the Jurchen armada was ablaze. Its commander, Zheng Jia, jumped into the sea and was drowned. The following month another Jurchen fleet was defeated by the Song at the battle of Caishi on the Yangtze River, ensuring the survival of the southern Song as an independent state for another century.

THE BATTLE OF RED CLIFFS

The Battle of the Red Cliffs, or Chibi as it is sometimes known, was a crucial point in the transition from the Han Dynasty to the Three Kingdoms period in Chinese history. The all-powerful Han minister Cao Cao had embarked on a campaign to unify China under his rule. His army was enormous and initially victorious. But in order to conquer southern China, he needed to gain command of the Yangtze River. This ambition was opposed by the warlords Liu Bei and Sun Quan, who formed an alliance to resist Cao Cao.

FIGHT OR SURRENDER

The warlords looked doomed when Cao captured a powerful river fleet and the Yangtze naval port of Jiangling. Cao loaded his men onto the boats and set off downstream toward Sun's power base at Chaisang. The majority of Sun's advisers advocated surrender, but his military commander Zhou Yu argued that Cao's forces were less formidable than they seemed. Exhausted after a long, hard campaign and unaccustomed to naval warfare, they would be outfought by a fresher enemy skilled in river fighting. What is more, he anticipated correctly that Cao's northeners would succumb to illness when they were exposed to the disease environment of the south.

Cao Cao on the eve of Red Cliffs
In this atmospheric 14th-century painting, the great general ponders the wisdom of confronting his enemies in a river battle.

Zhou Yu led the combined forces of Sun and Liu upriver. The precise location of their encounter with Cao's fleet is uncertain. The battle opened with indecisive skirmishing, after which the two sides broke off to rest. Cao was concerned about the spread of disease in his army and the difficulty his soldiers experienced in fighting on water. To provide a more stable platform for his troops, he had his boats lashed together in large groups. This made it impossible for them to maneuver and vulnerable to incendiary weapons, such as fire arrows, that were a feature of Chinese warfare.

It appears that a veteran soldier, Huang Gai, offered to sail fire ships, loaded with dry reeds and inflammable wax, into Cao's tethered fleet. To confuse the enemy, Huang approached Cao's boats pretending he wanted to surrender. Then the crews set the ships on fire, disembarked into small boats, and watched as the blazing vessels drifted down on to their immobile target.

Enough of Cao's fleet was destroyed to discourage him from any further naval adventures. His army set off overland on a retreat that turned into a rout. The defeat ended Cao's chances of unifying China, which entered a period of warfare between conflicting kingdoms.

FALL OF THE HAN DYNASTY

THE BATTLE OF RED CLIFFS

Date	208 CE
Location	Chibi, Yangtze River
Result	Victory for Liu Bei and Sun Quan

COMBATANTS

LIU BEI, SUN QUAN	CAO CAO

COMMANDERS

Zhou Yu	Cao Cao

FORCES

Men: c.50,000	Men: c.220,000

LOSSES

Men: unknown Ships: unknown	Men: unknown Ships: unknown

Unleashing the fire ships
Having ignited the flammable materials aboard the fire ships, Huang Gai's men escape in rowing boats as the ships drift downriver to collide with their targets.

GEMPEI WARS

MIZUSHIMA

Date November 17, 1183
Forces Minamoto: unknown; Taira: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location Between Honshu and Shikoku

Beginning in 1180, the Gempei Wars pitted the Minamoto samurai clan against the rival Taira clan in a struggle for control of Japan. In the summer of 1183 the Minamoto seized the upper hand in the civil war. Minamoto no Yoshimaka defeated the Taira at the battle of Kurikara and surrounded the imperial capital, Kyoto. The Taira were forced to flee and take refuge in their traditional power base in western Honshu and Shikoku, where they had a number of fortresses around the shores of the Inland Sea.

Taking the offensive, Minamoto no Yoshimaka sent an army to attack the Taira fortress at Yashima, a small island off the coast of Shikoku. The army was put under the command of a general, the unsophisticated Yada Yoshiyasu, since Yoshimaka himself was preoccupied with power struggles in his own clan.

The Minamoto army embarked at Mizushima on Honshu to cross the Inland Sea, but was surprised by a Taira fleet sent to intercept them. This force was commanded by Taira no Tomomori and Taira no Noritsune, experienced fighters with victories to their name. They ordered their ships to be tied together with hawsers at the stem and stern, and planks laid across them, so the whole fleet was a level surface for the samurai and their followers to fight on. The Taira then drew their bows and deluged the Minamoto ships with a rain of arrows. When the fighting came to close quarters, men attacked one another with swords and daggers, while some infantry with long rakes tried to pull enemy warriors into the water.

As the battle turned against him, Yada Yoshiyasu led a desperate foray forward with a few followers in a small boat, but the vessel was overturned and all aboard drowned. Desperate Minamoto soldiers splashed to shore through the shallows, but they were pursued by the Taira, who had horses on board their ships. The Taira horsemen rode down upon the Minamoto remnants and scattered them in flight. This spectacular victory could not prevent Yoshimaka from seizing Kyoto for the Minamoto the following year.

1152–1185

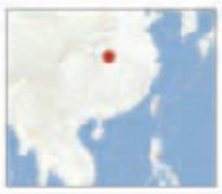
TAIRA NO TOMOMORI

COMMANDER OF THE FORCES OF THE TAIRA CLAN

The son of a famous father—the clan leader Taira no Kiyomori—Tomomori was the most successful of the Taira military commanders in the Gempei Wars. He won battles against the Minamoto on land at Uji in 1180 and Sunomata in 1181 and on the sea at Mizushima in 1183. Although primarily a soldier, he also seems to have possessed considerable experience in the use of ships in war. He committed suicide after the final defeat of the Taira at the sea battle of Dan-no-Ura, jumping into the water with an anchor tied to his feet.

MONGOL–SONG WARS

XIANGYANG



Date 1268–1273
Forces Mongol Yuan: 5,000 ships; Song: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location Xiangfan, Hubei province, China

The Mongol warrior Kublai Khan made himself ruler of northern China in 1260, establishing the Yuan dynasty. The wealthy and populous lands of southern China, however, remained under the rule of the Song dynasty.

The Mongols were steppe horsemen with no knowledge of naval warfare, but in order to conquer the south they had to learn to fight on rivers and lakes. The lengthy struggle to reduce the fortified city of Xiangyang, held by the Song, was in effect a battle for control of the Han river, a major tributary of the Yangtze. Xiangyang was surrounded on three sides by mountains and on the fourth by the river. The Mongols had already realized the need for naval power in the conquest of the Song and recruited a vast fleet of river craft. This enabled them to impose a river blockade, as well as besieging Xiangyang by land. One Song flotilla managed to break through the blockade to resupply the city's defenders, but this was not enough to save Xiangyang. Once it fell, the Yuan fleet could sail down the river system to capture the major Song cities.

GEMPEI WARS

YASHIMA

Date March 22, 1185
Forces Minamoto: unknown; Taira: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location Yashima, off Shikoku

By 1185 Japan's Gempei Wars between the Minamoto and Taira clans were approaching their climax. Minamoto no Yoshitsune was pursuing the Taira in their last remaining fortresses in Shikoku. While crossing the Inland Sea, however, Yoshitsune ran into a storm and much of his fleet was lost. Although he was resupplied by his ally Kajiwara Kagetoki, he no longer had a clear advantage. By lighting hundreds of fires around the fortress of Yashima, Yoshitsune tricked the Taira into thinking that he had a much larger army. They abandoned the fortress, embarking on ships with their most precious possessions, the child emperor Antoku and the imperial treasure. As the Taira fled, one of the Minamoto samurai, Nasu no Yoichi, rode into the sea and shot a fan off the masthead of one of the departing ships—a celebrated feat of archery.

Aftermath of Yashima
Although most of the Taira escaped with the child emperor, some fell into the hands of the enemy. Here a Taira lady is discovered by Yoshitsune.

MONGOL–SONG WARS

YAMEN

Date March 19, 1279
Forces Mongol Yuan: unknown; Song: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location Guangdong, South China Sea

After years of stubborn resistance, in 1278 southern China, ruled for 300 years by the Song dynasty, was finally overrun by the armies of Kublai Khan, Mongol founder of the Yuan dynasty. The surviving officials and members of the Song imperial family became fugitives, seeking a base from which to begin organizing resistance. In March 1279 they were on board ship in a bay at Yamen, on the Guangdong coast, when they were located by a Yuan fleet under the command of Kublai's general Zhang Hongfan. The Song fleet and soldiers were commanded by grand general Zhang Shijie. Instead of advancing his ships to defend the mouth of the bay, which would have left the option of fleeing in case of defeat, Zhang Shijie adopted a passive formation inside the anchorage. He had his ships tied together and awaited the Yuan attack.

Zhang Hongfan first sent fire ships into the bay, but the Song coped successfully with this timeworn tactic. So the Yuan divided their fleet in order to attack from three directions. They were apparently heavily outnumbered by the Song, but their ships were equipped with primitive gunpowder weapons and stone-hurling catapults.

The Song soon lost heart. Zhang Shijie attempted to stage a breakout with a few ships carrying the seven-year-old emperor and the imperial entourage. When this failed, a senior official picked up the emperor and jumped overboard with the boy in his arms. Other officials and concubines followed his example. Zhang Shijie himself survived the battle but was drowned in a storm shortly after.

Mongol bowcase
The Mongols learned to use siege weapons to conquer the Song, but they still relied on the bows that brought them such success on the Asian steppe.

MONGOL–JAPANESE WARS

FAILED MONGOL INVASION OF JAPAN

Date June–August 1281
Forces Mongols: 4,400 ships: Japanese: unknown
Losses Mongols: c.3,000 ships

Location
Tsushima Strait

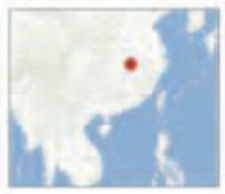
The Mongol emperor of China, Kublai Khan, demanded that the Japanese acknowledge his suzerainty. In 1274 he raided Japan, sending a substantial force across from Korea to land in Hakata Bay. The attack failed to cow the Japanese, but it did stimulate them to organize new coastal defences. In 1281 Kublai mounted a full-scale invasion, assembling more than 4,000 ships from China and Korea to carry some 150,000 troops. The 900 Korean ships were thoroughly seaworthy vessels, but the Chinese ones were mostly flat-bottomed river or coastal craft. Kublai's fleet formed two squadrons, the smaller sailing from Korea and the larger from northern China. The force from Korea arrived first, but was unable to land its soldiers because of the coastal fortifications built and manned by the Japanese since 1274.

Anchored offshore, the Mongols were harassed by Japanese samurai in small craft, who set fire to ships and killed crew and soldiers. The Mongols withdrew to Iki island to rendezvous with the squadron from China. They then attacked Takashima island, while the Japanese awaited an assault on the mainland. The invasion never came, however, for a typhoon—known to the Japanese as the "divine wind" or "kamikaze"—struck the Mongol fleet, sinking most of the Chinese ships.

Hit-and-run tactics
Before the Mongol invasion fleet was struck by a typhoon, it was attacked by waves of attacks by samurai archers in fast, light boats.

FALL OF THE YUAN DYNASTY

LAKE POYANG



Date August 30–September 2, 1363
Forces Ming: unknown; Han: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location
Lake Poyang, China

By the mid-14th century the rule of the Yuan dynasty in China was disintegrating. Rebel peasant bands known as the Red Turbans took control of the Yangtze River region, and two of their leaders, Chen Youliang and Zhu Yuanzhang, became rivals for power. Chen declared himself emperor and founder of the Han dynasty. Zhu, leader of the Ming, ruled a large area of southern China from his capital city, Nanjing. The war between them lasted from 1360 to 1363, climaxing in a large-scale naval battle on China's largest freshwater lake, Lake Poyang.

Zhu Yuanzhang voyaged up the Yangtze from Nanjing with a large number of ships to confront the Han fleet blockading Ming forces in the lakeside town of Nanchang. Some sources claim that a million men were present in the two fleets, making this possibly the largest naval battle in history, although such immense figures have to be doubted. Chen Youliang had the largest vessels, three-decked "tower ships" propelled by sails and oars, with high sterns and iron-armored turrets. The Ming ships were smaller but more numerous and maneuverable, many of them treadmill-powered paddle ships.

The lake battle lasted four days. The initial Ming attack came close to disaster. Zhu's flagship ran aground on a sandbank and was set on fire by incendiary weapons. His other ships rescued him, but Ming attempts to close and board Han vessels failed. On the second day, Zhu exploited a favorable wind to send in fire ships—small boats packed with straw and gunpowder. These had considerable success against the tower ships, whose deep draft limited their mobility in the shallow waters of the lake. After a day spent on repairs, battle was resumed on September 2. This time the Ming ships penetrated the weakened Han formation and a number of ships were boarded and taken.

The battle ended inconclusively and there followed a month-long stand-off between the two fleets. In a skirmish on October 4, Chen Youliang was shot through the head with an arrow and killed. The Han cause collapsed without its leader. Zhu Yuanzhang went on to overthrow the Yuan and founded the Ming dynasty four years later.

Battle of Shimonoseki Strait
It was a challenge for both sides to negotiate the fast-flowing waters of the strait. At first the Taira had the advantage of the tide, but once they lost this, their cause was doomed.

KEY

MINAMOTO FLEET

40–45 galleys

TAIRA FLEET

40–45 galleys

HONSHU

Shimonoseki Strait

KYUSHU

INLAND SEA

Direction of ebb tides

The Minamoto galleys, which have the tides against them, are drawn up in line abreast across the entrance to the strait

The Taira divide their fleet into three squadrons and make use of the powerful tides to launch an attack on the stronger Minamoto fleet

1 CONTRASTING BATTLE LINES
The Minamoto draw up a defensive line across the entrance to the Shimonoseki Strait. The Taira, who plan one last, desperate action to escape their pursuers, split their fleet into three to launch an attack, making use of the favorable tide.

HONSHU

Shimonoseki Strait

KYUSHU

INLAND SEA

The Minamoto maintain their line, but the Taira start to outflank them

The battle begins with exchanges of arrows at long range

The Taira advance in three squadrons, hoping to outflank the Minamoto both on their left and their right

2 THE TAIRA HOLD THEIR OWN
The Taira attack goes well as they hit the enemy line on both its flanks and in the center, raining down arrows on the Minamoto ships. As battle is joined more closely, the Taira fight bravely and nobody can predict the outcome.

THE BATTLE OF DAN-NO-URA

By 1185 the Gempei Wars, in which the Minamoto and Taira clans fought for control of Japan, had turned decisively in favour of the Minamoto. The Taira had possession of the child emperor Antoku and the sacred imperial treasure, but they were on the run from the samurai Minamoto Yoshitsune after being driven from their fortress of Ichi-no-Tani in March 1184. The Taira only escaped massacre at Ichi-no-Tani by taking to their boats. Yoshitsune pursued them by sea, driving them from an anchorage at Yashima later in the same year. In April 1185 he caught up with them again in the strait of Shimonoseki between Honshu and Kyushu.

The vessels employed by both sides in the battle were oared galleys, carrying samurai armed with bows, swords, and daggers. The Taira were outnumbered but had the advantage of familiarity with local weather and tides. They adopted a well-organized formation in three squadrons, while the Minamoto came forward in a single line abreast. Like a Japanese land battle at this period, the combat began with a long-range archery duel, in which the splendidly armoured samurai competed to show off their prowess with the bow—then the most prestigious samurai weapon rather than the sword.

Taira commander Tomomori was waiting for an ebb tide to flow in mid-morning, which would aid his oarsmen. With the help of the tide, his three squadrons maneuvered to surround the Minamoto fleet on three sides and engage at close quarters. Soon ships were grappled and samurai fought samurai with sword and dagger. Men armed with hooks or rakes—perhaps grappling implements—used them to pull enemy warriors into the water. Archers targeted helmsmen and rowers, hoping to immobilize ships or put them out of control by disabling the crew.

Suicide of Taira no Tomori
Tomomori (center) has tied himself to an anchor before throwing himself into the sea, accompanied by one of his retainers (left) and his mistress (right).

THE TAIRA BETRAYED

The battle was evenly poised until two events—one predictable, the other not—swung the balance. The tide turned, giving the advantage formerly enjoyed by the Taira to their opponents. And one of the Taira commanders, Taguchi Shigeyoshi, suddenly defected and attacked his own side. More important than his contribution to the fighting was information he brought with him. The Taira had concealed the child emperor, his female relatives, and the sacred treasure on an unremarkable ship. Shigeyoshi indicated which vessel this was. The Minamoto closed in to capture this most valuable of prizes.

The end of the battle is the stuff of legend. Facing certain defeat, the Taira apparently chose mass suicide rather than captivity. Taira no Tomomori set the example in spectacular fashion, jumping into the sea tied to an anchor, which carried him to the bottom. The emperor's grandmother Taira no Tokiko took her six-year-old grandson in her arms and leapt into the sea. The Taira also tried to throw the imperial crown jewels overboard, but the ultimate fate of the sacred treasures—a sword, a mirror, and a necklace—remains a mystery. The sea was red with blood and, we are told, with dye from the Taira banners.

The battle of Dan-no-Ura brought the Gempei Wars to an end, enabling the Minamoto to establish a shogunate, a form of government that was to persist in Japan in various forms until the mid-19th century.

GEMPEI WARS

THE BATTLE OF DAN-NO-URA

Date 25 April 1185
Location Strait of Shimonoseki
Result Minamoto victory

COMBATANTS

MINAMOTO CLAN | **TAIRA CLAN**

COMMANDERS

Minamoto Yoshitsune | **Taira no Tomomori**

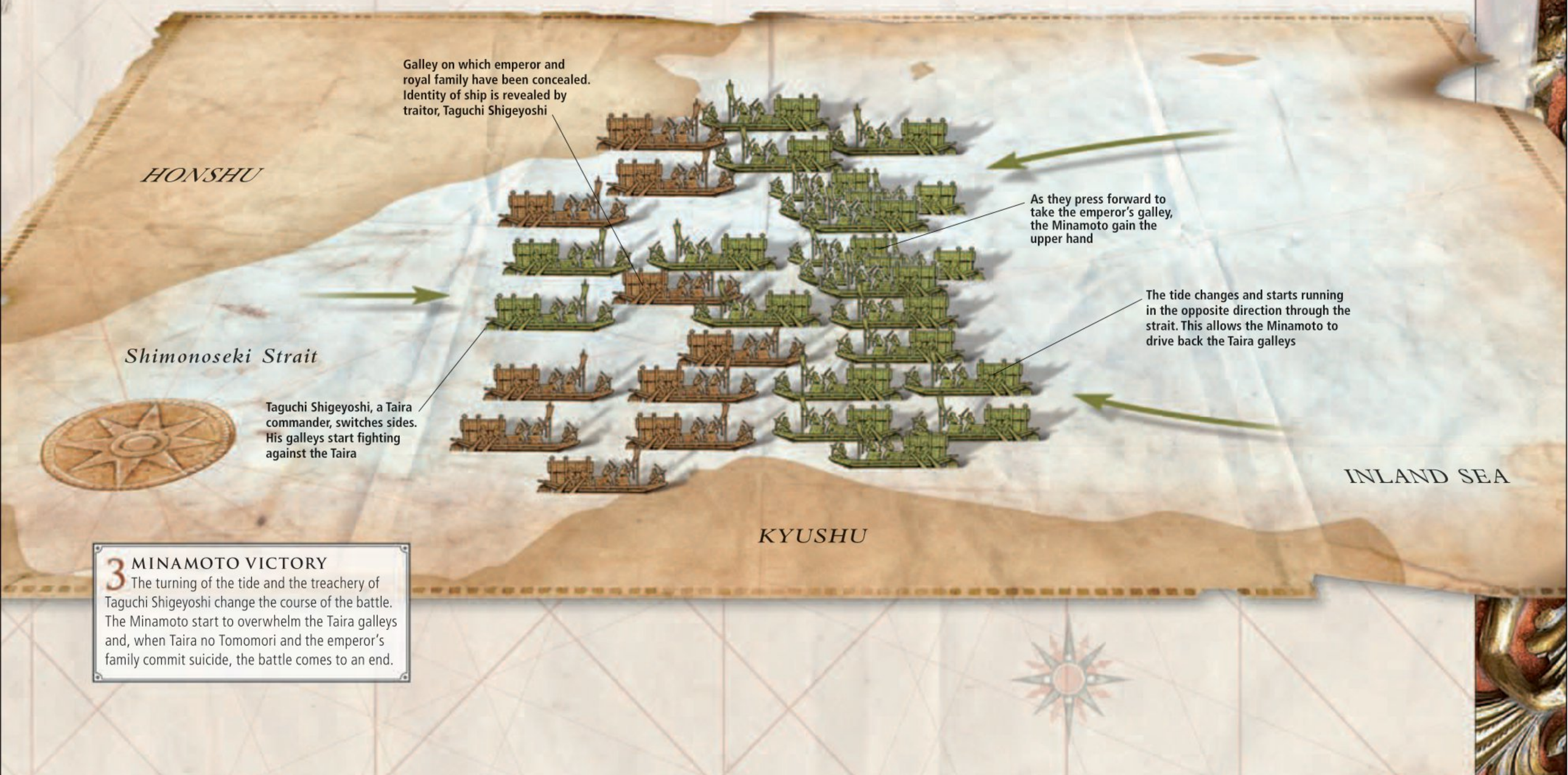
FORCES

Ships: 850 | **Ships:** 500

LOSSES

Men: unknown
Ships: unknown

Men: unknown
Ships: unknown



3 MINAMOTO VICTORY
The turning of the tide and the treachery of Taguchi Shigeyoshi change the course of the battle. The Minamoto start to overwhelm the Taira galleys and, when Taira no Tomomori and the emperor's family commit suicide, the battle comes to an end.

THE GEMPEI WARS

The wars fought in medieval Japan between the rival Minamoto and Taira clans became the subject of a popular epic sung by blind musicians. In this detail from a screen that shows the last great battles, the Taira ships are being attacked by the mounted warriors of Minamoto at Yashima in March 1185. The Taira managed to escape their pursuers for a time, but were defeated at the decisive naval battle of Dan-no-Ura in April 1185.

BATTLES FOR THE MEDITERRANEAN

DURING THE THOUSAND YEARS between 500 and 1500 CE maritime powers rose and fell in the Mediterranean. The initial dominance of the Byzantine Empire, the successor state to Rome, was first challenged by the Muslim Arabs, then supplanted by the Italian maritime republics, Venice, Genoa, and Pisa, and by the Catalan galleys of the kingdom of Aragon. With no single state capable of achieving command of the sea, outbreaks of naval warfare were inevitable. Innovative weaponry, from Greek fire to the crossbow, produced important changes in combat at sea, as did variation in ship design and rowing systems. But galleys still predominated and boarding the enemy remained the essential goal in battle, as it had been in Roman times.

The sack of Constantinople
Venice contracted with the organizers of the Forth Crusade to ship their army to Egypt. When the crusaders were unable to pay the full sum, the fleet was diverted to the Byzantine capital, Constantinople, where, in 1204 the Venetians and crusaders ended up capturing and sacking the city.

TACTICS AND TECHNOLOGY

The dominant warship of the period of Byzantine-Arab wars was the dromon. This was a formidable platform for marines, catapults, and flamethrowers, heading into battle propelled not only by up to 100 oarsmen but also by sails—a radical departure from the practice of the ancient world. The raised beak at the prow of the dromon would smash through an opponent's oars and provide a bridge for boarding soldiers to swarm across. Oarsmen were expected to take up arms and join the fighting once the enemy was engaged at close quarters. From the 12th century the crossbow was introduced as an important element in Mediterranean sea battles. The Genoese and the Aragonese were especially famed for their use of this weapon. It added a deadly new element to the array of missiles hurled against an enemy as galleys closed for combat—which included incendiary grenades, darts, containers filled with soap thrown onto the opponent's deck to make it slippery under foot, and lime dust intended to blind the enemies' eyes. Galleys entered battle in line abreast, each ship protecting its neighbor's vulnerable flank. Maintaining formation was considered of far greater importance than maneuver—galleys were sometimes loosely linked together with cables, to keep them in line and prevent an enemy from penetrating between them.

SHIFTING POWER

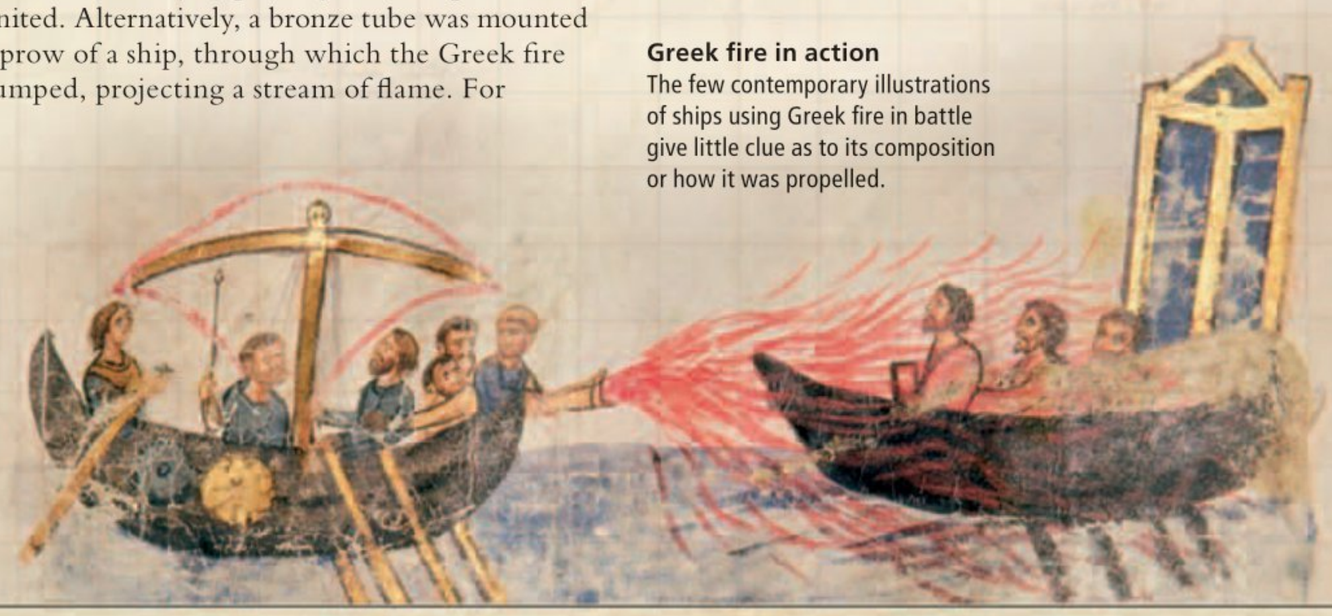
Similar tactics and technology were used by all sides in medieval Mediterranean naval conflict. For example, the dromon and its style of warfare—including the use of Greek fire—was invented by the Byzantines but was over time adopted by the Arabs as well. Relative success in naval warfare depended upon material resources and seafaring and fighting skills. Once it had resisted the initial Arab onslaught in the 7th and early 8th centuries, which briefly threatened to overrun Constantinople, the Byzantine Empire remained a dominant presence at sea in the eastern Mediterranean because it could afford a large fleet and dockyards.

From the end of the 11th century the balance of naval power shifted as maritime trade brought rising wealth to relatively small states further west. The Italian republics of Venice and Genoa had populations of only a few hundred thousand, but their involvement in the Crusades in the 12th and 13th centuries brought them a dominant position in the trade of the Levant and the Black Sea. This provided them with the

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

GREEK FIRE

The inflammable liquid known as "Greek fire" was reportedly invented by an engineer called Callanicus in Constantinople around 670 CE. It was used chiefly in incendiary grenades and flamethrowers. A small catapult on deck propelled clay jars containing the substance onto enemy ships; the jar broke apart and the fire ignited. Alternatively, a bronze tube was mounted at the prow of a ship, through which the Greek fire was pumped, projecting a stream of flame. For psychological effect, the tube of the flamethrower often stuck out from the mouth of a carved dragon's or lion's head. It was known as a "siphon." The composition of Greek fire was a carefully guarded secret and can still only be guessed at. It was employed in Byzantine naval warfare for five centuries.



Greek fire in action
The few contemporary illustrations of ships using Greek fire in battle give little clue as to its composition or how it was propelled.

Portolan chart
From the 13th century Mediterranean sailors used a distinctive kind of map, the portolan. Coasts and ports were well charted and the maps were criss-crossed with a network of lines projecting from compasses.

funds to develop powerful navies to defend their trade routes and fight their competitors—chiefly one another. There was in this period only relatively minor conflict between Christians and Muslims at sea, but intense armed rivalry between Christian states, much of it fought out around the coasts of Italy and Sicily between galleys from Catalonia and Provence as well as various Italian ports.

VENETIAN EMPIRE

Of all medieval Mediterranean states, Venice was the quintessential naval power. The shipbuilding and repair facilities of the Venetian Arsenal, founded around 1200, grew into the biggest industrial enterprise in Europe—it was said they could build and fit out a galley in a single day. Venetian galleys were rowed "alla sensile"—with oarsmen grouped in threes, each with a single oar—and proved successful, highly maneuverable warships. The Venetians were generally reckoned the first to adopt such innovations as the compass, the stern rudder, and the lateen sail. Their oarsmen—volunteers or conscripts—were honored seamen rather than galley slaves, some earning promotion through long careers to captain. By the 15th century Venice had created a Mediterranean empire based on sea power, as Athens had done in ancient times. But by the end of that century profound changes were under way, both in the naval balance of power with the rise of the Ottoman Empire, and in technology with the introduction of cannon into naval warfare.

Provisioning the Crusades
The larger items of cargo are being loaded aboard a cog, while the galley in front of it is filled with armed men. Among the banners of the various crusading states involved, those of England and France are most prominent, along with the crossed keys of the papacy.

BYZANTINE–ARAB WARS

WHEN THE ARABS, inspired by the newly founded religion of Islam, embarked upon their campaigns of conquest around 630 CE, the Byzantine Empire was the dominant naval power in the Mediterranean. This status was swiftly challenged by the victory of an Arab fleet at the battle of the Masts in 655. Although the technologically innovative use of Greek fire helped the Byzantines drive back Arab ships from under the walls of Constantinople two decades later, the fall of Carthage to the Muslims at the end of the 7th century extended Arab sea power into the western Mediterranean. Fierce naval battles were fought over the following two centuries in struggles for control of major islands such as Sicily, Cyprus, and Crete. In the 11th and 12th centuries the strategic situation began to shift, with Turks replacing Arabs as the dominant force in the Muslim world and the Byzantines becoming increasingly dependent upon the navies of the Italian city-states of Genoa and Venice.

THE MEDITERRANEAN WORLD c.650—950

Following the conquest of Egypt in 639–646, it took Arab armies just 70 years to extend the lands of the Caliphate across North Africa into the Iberian Peninsula. Since the Arabs had no experience of seafaring, conquests by sea were less spectacular. In the east the Byzantine Empire remained a powerful block to Arab expansion, but in the 9th century the Byzantines were ejected from Sicily and Arab raids extended into Italy and the South of France, where Arab corsairs established bases.

KEY

- Abbasid Caliphate c.850
- Other Islamic states
- Byzantine Empire
- Arab invasion/ raid
- Arab victory
- Byzantine victory

THE AGE OF GALLEYS

ARAB EXPANSION IN THE MEDITERRANEAN

BATTLE OF THE MASTS

Date 655
Forces Byzantines: c.500 ships; Arabs: c.200 ships
Losses Byzantines: c.400 ships; Arabs: unknown

Location Off Lycia, southern Turkey

The Arab conquests of the 7th century gave them control of ports and seafaring populations on the coasts of Egypt and Syria. Muawiyah, the governor of Syria, urged the development of naval warfare but Caliph Omar, a man bred in the Arabian desert, was unconvinced, describing people on board ship as like "a worm in a log of wood." When Uthman succeeded to the caliphate in 644, however, Muawiyah was uthorized to develop a fleet, as was the governor of Egypt, Abdullah bin Saad bin Abil Sarh. This took two years, after which the Arabs began conquering or raiding Byzantine-ruled islands throughout the eastern Mediterranean.

With the fall of Rhodes in 654, the young Byzantine Emperor Constans II woke up to the threat and sought to organize a counter-offensive. The following year he sailed south in command of an imperial fleet possibly numbering 500 ships. At the same time, the combined Egyptian and Syrian fleets, under the command of Abdullah bin Saad, were advancing along the coast of Asia Minor, intending to raid the shores and islands of the Aegean.

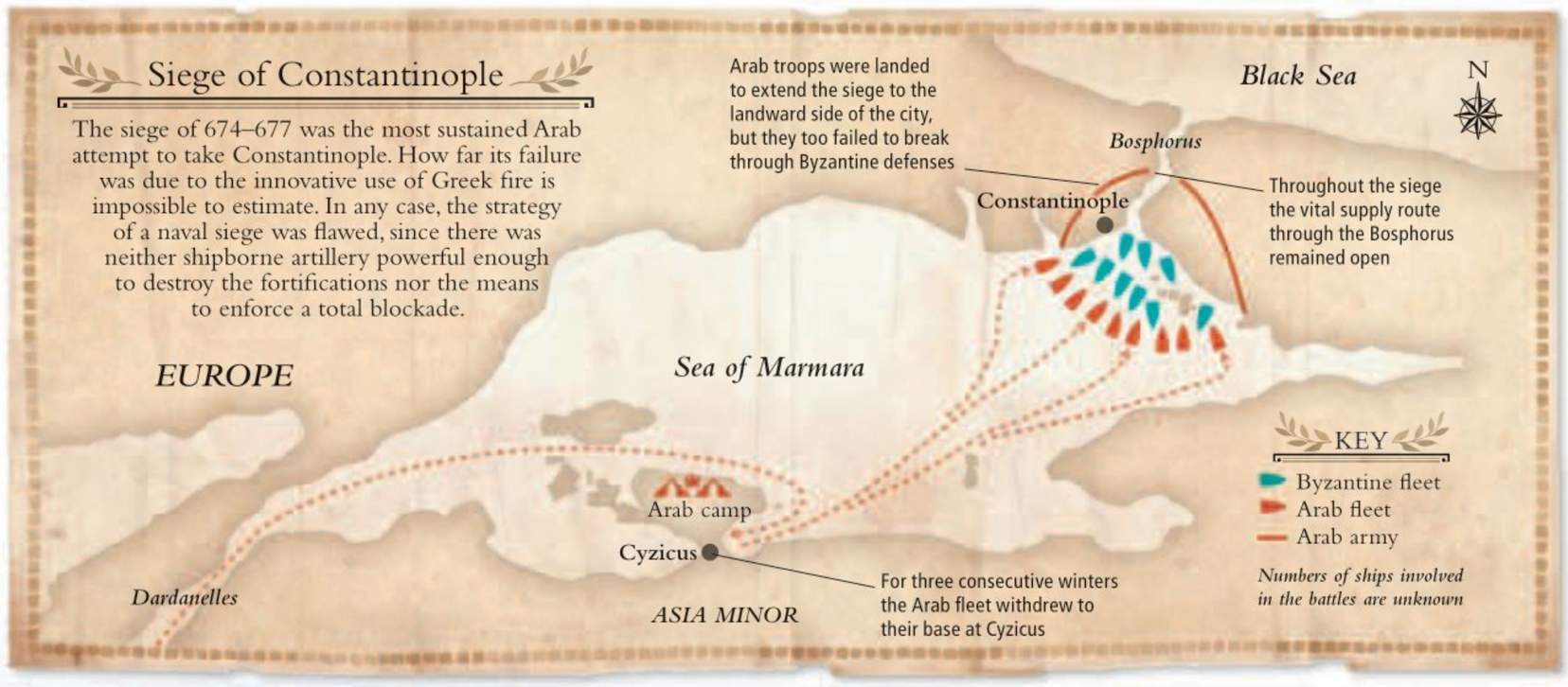
The Arabs came upon the Byzantine fleet anchored off southwest Turkey. The Arabs were probably outnumbered by more than two to one, but after some hesitation they decided to attack. Both fleets carried archers and as the distance between the ships closed, showers of arrows fell upon both sides, causing substantial casualties. The Byzantine were more skilled in naval maneuver and this, together with their superior numbers, at first gave them the advantage. At one point the Arab flagship was grappled by a Byzantine dromon and almost captured. But soon ships became so packed together that men fought with swords and daggers from deck to deck. The forest of masts gave the battle its name—in Arabic, *That al-Sawari*.

The tide of battle turned in favor of the Arabs. Amid scenes of carnage, many Byzantine dromons were boarded and captured. Constans himself escaped after prudently changing clothes with one of his men. The Byzantine navy was shattered. Fortunately for the empire, the following year the Arab world was thrown into political turmoil, ending further naval ventures until the establishment of Muawiyah as caliph in 661.

Byzantine dromon
The word "dromon," which meant "swift runner," was applied to a range of ships, from small galleys to large biremes like the one shown here.

THE SIEGE OF CONSTANTINOPLE

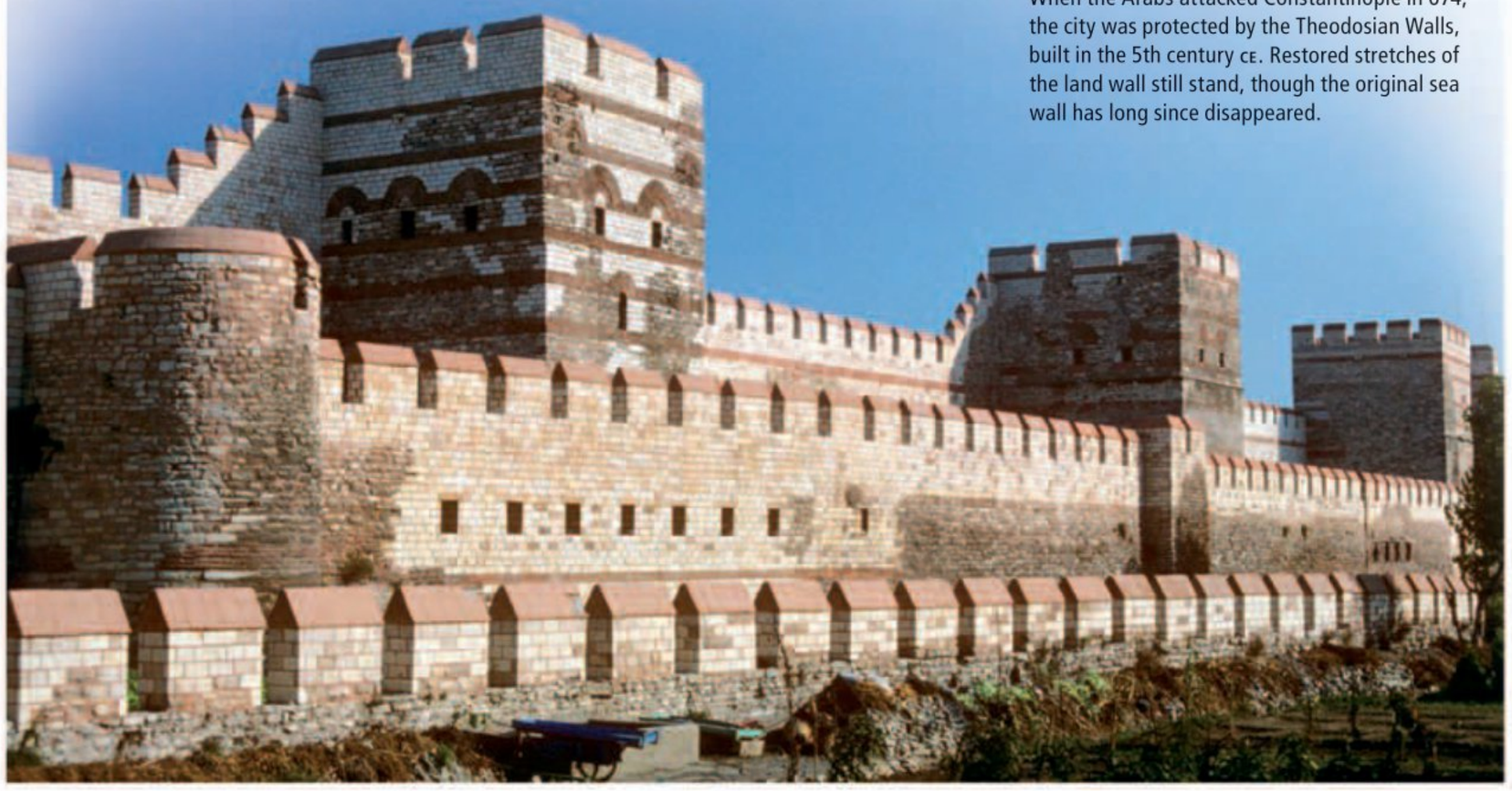
The establishment of the Umayyad Caliphate in Damascus, Syria, in 661 was followed by a reinvigoration of Arab efforts to conquer the Byzantine Empire. Caliph Muawiyah understood the importance of sea power and in 672 sent a fleet through the Dardanelles into the Sea of Marmara, where it established a base at Cyzicus, about 80km (50 miles) from Constantinople. Four years later Muawiyah's son Yazid led a full-scale naval attack on the Byzantine capital.



A FOUR-YEAR CAMPAIGN

The Byzantine ruler, Constantine IV, was a vigorous leader who ensured the city's defenses were in excellent repair. The Arabs used their ships as artillery platforms, sailing up to the city walls and bombarding them with rocks from giant catapults mounted on deck. The Byzantines responded with harassing sorties by small, fast-moving galleys, some of them probably employing the newly invented Greek fire as a shock tactic. The Byzantine fleet also prevented the Arabs sailing into the Bosphorus, which remained a lifeline for grain supplies from across the Black Sea.

The Arab attacks on Constantinople were maintained through the summer of 674 without much effect on the impressive fortifications. In October the Arab fleet withdrew to Cyzicus, where they refitted their ships and rested their crews, ready to renew the fight in the spring. This pattern was repeated stubbornly through to fall 677, before the Arabs finally gave up. In that year they suffered two disasters. They were defeated by a Byzantine fleet at Syllaeum, a site probably in the Sea of Marmara, and a large part of a force returning to Syria was sunk in a storm.



The walls of Constantinople
When the Arabs attacked Constantinople in 674, the city was protected by the Theodosian Walls, built in the 5th century CE. Restored stretches of the land wall still stand, though the original sea wall has long since disappeared.

BYZANTINE–ARAB WARS

SIEGE OF CONSTANTINOPLE

Date	674–677
Location	Sea of Marmara, near Istanbul, Turkey
Result	Byzantine victory

COMBATANTS

BYZANTINE EMPIRE	UMAYYAD CALIPHATE

COMMANDERS

Emperor Constantine IV	Caliph Muawiyah I

FORCES

Ships: unknown	**Ships:** unknown

LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** unknown	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** unknown

BYZANTINE–ARAB WARS

CARTHAGE

Date 698
Forces Byzantines: unknown; Arabs: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location Carthage, near present-day Tunis

When the port of Carthage was lost in the Arab advance across North Africa, Byzantine Emperor Leontius sent a large fleet under Ioannes the Patrician to retake the city. Caught by surprise, the Arabs were defeated at sea and Carthage returned to Byzantine rule—but not for long. The Arabs mounted a siege by sea and land. The city held out while resupplied by sea, but eventually the Arab fleet broke through the line of ships defending the harbor. Carthage fell but Ioannes escaped with much of the fleet, only to be murdered by his second-in-command, a German called Apsimarus. With the support of his mutinous crews, Apsimarus then sailed to Constantinople and seized the throne as Emperor Tiberios III.

BYZANTINE–ARAB WARS

CALABRIA

Date 964
Forces Byzantines: unknown; Arabs: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location Off Calabria, southern Italy

In 827 Arabs and Berbers invaded Byzantine-ruled Sicily from North Africa. The struggle for control of the island lasted for more than a century, during which time Byzantine naval forces based in southern Italy fought a number of battles with an Arab fleet based in Palermo. By 964 Byzantine resistance was at an end and Patriarch Nicetas organized a squadron of ships to evacuate the last Byzantine forces from eastern Sicily. Unfortunately the squadron was intercepted by a superior Arab force off the coast of Calabria. The Arabs reportedly used swimmers to attack the Byzantine ships with incendiary devices, an unconventional tactic that contributed to the total destruction of the patriarch's squadron.

THE RISE OF THE ITALIAN MARITIME REPUBLICS

THE ITALIAN CITY-STATES of Venice, Genoa, and Pisa grew rich on seaborne trade and providing transport and naval support for the Crusades. Their rivalry for control of trade routes from the Levant and the Black Sea led inevitably to conflict. Pisa was knocked out of the competition by defeat at the hands of Genoa in 1284, while Venice and Genoa fought one another to exhaustion in four inconclusive wars between 1253 and 1381. The battles between Venetian and Genoese galley fleets often resulted in crushing losses for one side or the other, but defeat had little long-term effect as new galleys were built and fresh crews were recruited. Losses of merchant convoys to commerce raiders often had more strategic significance. By the 15th century Genoa was becoming exhausted while Venice faced the task of defending its scattered possessions in the eastern Mediterranean against the rising power of the Ottoman Empire.

THE ITALIAN MARITIME REPUBLICS c.1050–1400

Although their territorial possessions were negligible, the Italian maritime republics gained extraordinary wealth through trade with the east—especially in silks and spices. Venice acquired a string of ports on the Adriatic and the coasts of Greece, while Genoa had trading posts in Greece and even on the Black Sea.

KEY

- Venetian Republic and possessions c.1270
- Republic of Genoa
- Republic of Pisa
- Genoese victory
- Venetian victory
- Inconclusive battle

NORMAN–BYZANTINE WAR

DURAZZO

Date June 1081
Forces Venetians: 59 ships; Normans: 150 ships
Losses unknown

Location Adriatic, off modern-day Albania

When Norman adventurer Robert Guiscard conquered Sicily and southern Italy, threatening Venetian shipping in the Adriatic, Venice agreed an alliance with the Byzantines. In spring 1081 Guiscard sailed with 30,000 men from Brindisi, captured Corfu, and besieged the city of Durazzo. A Venetian fleet under Doge Silvio arrived to confront the Normans anchored in the city's harbor. During the night the doge had his largest ships anchor in a line, with cables looped from ship to ship, making an impassable barrier described as a "sea harbor." Behind this he positioned his war galleys.

In the morning the Normans, led by Guiscard's son Bohemond, attacked. The Venetians had built towers on their ships, which were manned by soldiers armed with heavy timbers studded with iron spikes. When the Norman ships were halted by the Venetian barrier, the soldiers hurled the timbers down to smash holes in their hulls. Bohemond's ship was one of those sunk. Retreating from this bombardment, the Normans were pursued to shore by the Venetian galleys and routed. The battle marked a significant step in the rise of Venetian maritime power.

FIRST VENETIAN–GENOESE WAR

TRAPANI

Date June 1266
Forces Genoese: 27 ships; Venetians: 24 ships
Losses Genoese: entire fleet; Venetians: none

Location Off western Sicily

During the first war between Genoa and Venice, Venetian admiral Jacopo Dandolo's galleys sailing round Sicily met Lanfranco Borbonino's Genoese fleet sailing south from Corsica. Aware that most of his crews were Lombards with no seafaring skills and no battle experience, Borbonino adopted a static defensive formation, cabling his galleys together with their sterns to the shore. The Venetians, experienced sailors inspired by patriotic fervor, launched a vigorous and noisy attack, exciting terror in the Lombards who abandoned ship in droves, making for the nearby shore. Three of the Genoese galleys were burned and the rest captured.

PISAN–GENOESE WAR

MELORIA

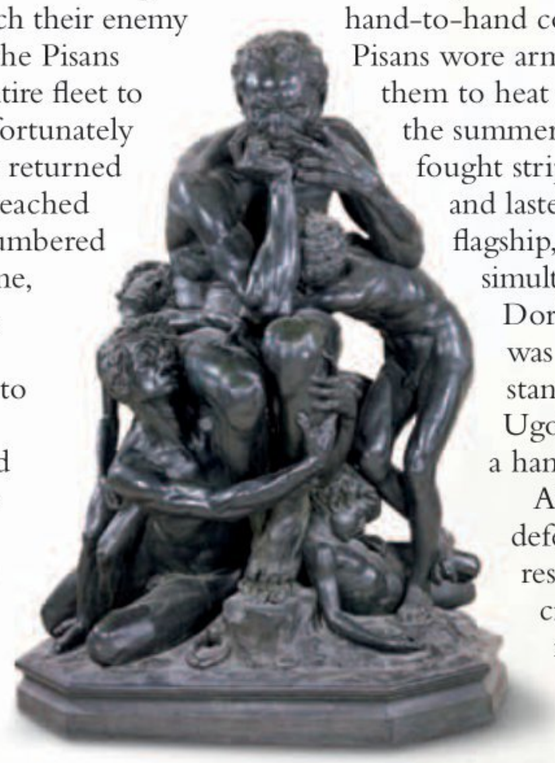
Date 6 August 1284
Forces Genoese: 93 galleys; Pisans: 72 galleys
Losses Genoese: unknown; Pisans: c.40 galleys, c.10,000 casualties and prisoners

Location Off Livorno, Italy

Genoa and Pisa went to war in 1282 over control of the islands of Corsica and Sardinia. In the summer of 1284 the Genoese sent part of their fleet to Sardinia under the command of Benedetto Zaccaria. Seeing an opportunity to catch their enemy at a disadvantage, the Pisans dispatched their entire fleet to attack Genoa. Unfortunately for them, Zaccaria returned just as their ships reached the city. The outnumbered Pisans fled for home, with the Genoese, under the overall command of Oberto Doria, in pursuit. The Pisans reached the safety of Porto Pisano, at the mouth of the Arno, but were lured out by a ruse. Doria drew up his own 63 galleys in a line offshore; Zaccaria's 30 galleys lurked behind with their masts lowered. Believing they had the numerical advantage, the Pisans' Venetian commander Alberto Morosini and his second-in-command Ugolino della Gherardesca led their 72 galleys out to sea. By the time they saw Zaccaria's galleys coming up to join Doria, it was too late to retreat.

The Pisans fought fiercely against the odds. The opening exchange of missiles—bolts fired from crossbows, stones hurled by mangonels—was followed by boarding and murderous hand-to-hand combat. Many of the Pisans wore armor, which exposed them to heat exhaustion under the summer sun; the Genoese fought stripped to their shirts and lasted better. Morosini's flagship, eventually under simultaneous attack from Doria and Zaccaria, was overcome and the standard cut down. Ugolino escaped with a handful of galleys.

After this catastrophic defeat, Pisa lacked the resources to build and crew a new fleet. It never regained its status as a naval or commercial power.



Survivor of Meloria
Ugolino later starved to death in captivity with his sons and grandsons, an event narrated in Dante's *Inferno*.

THE BATTLE OF CURZOLA

SECOND VENETIAN–GENOESE WAR

THE BATTLE OF CURZOLA

Date	7 September 1298
Location	Adriatic, off Dalmatia (Croatia)
Result	Genoese victory

COMBATANTS

VENICE	GENOA

COMMANDERS

Andrea Dandolo **Maffeo Querini**	**Lampa Doria**

FORCES

Ships: c.100	**Ships:** c.85

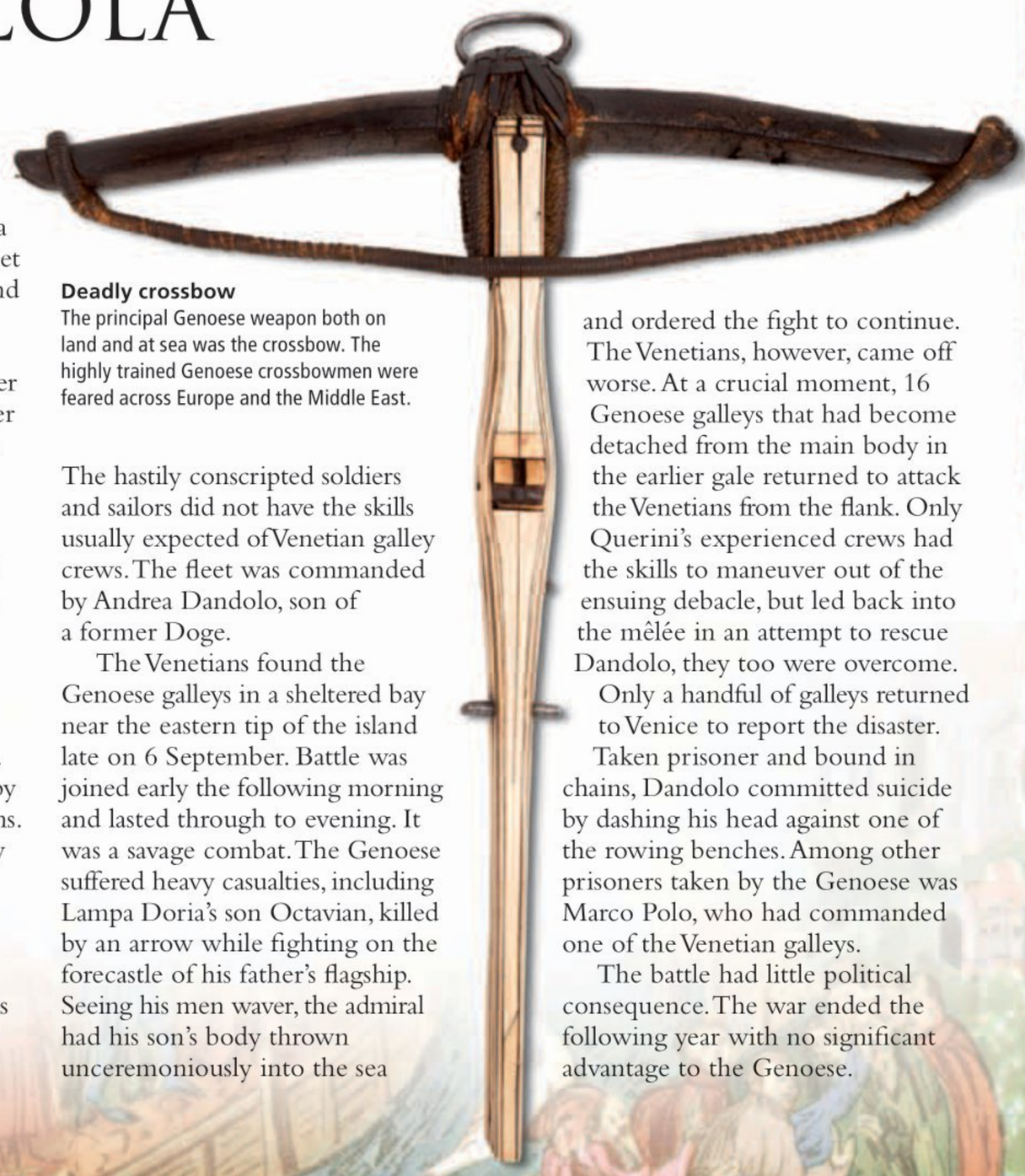
LOSSES

Men: 7,000 killed, 7,400 taken prisoner **Ships:** 18 galleys sunk, 66 captured	**Men:** c.2,000 killed **Ships:** unknown

An indirect legacy of the battle
It is said that Marco Polo began dictating his famous memoirs while in Genoese captivity after the battle of Curzola. He is seen here departing from Venice with his father and uncle on his journey to China.

The battle of Curzola occurred during the Second Venetian-Genoese War (1294-99). In 1298 Genoa mounted a bold raid into Venetian home waters. Sailing from La Spezia on the west coast of Italy, a fleet of Genoese galleys made its way round to the Adriatic via Tunisia and Sicily. It was commanded by the veteran Admiral Lampa Doria, younger brother of the Doria who had triumphed over the Pisans at Meloria 14 years earlier. Entering the Adriatic Doria's galleys were scattered by a storm, but most of them reassembled and proceeded up the coast of Dalmatia, burning and plundering the Venetian-ruled towns of the mainland and offshore islands. On the afternoon of 6 September they were busy pillaging the island of Curzola when a large Venetian fleet suddenly appeared on the scene.

Venice had been caught off guard by the attack on its Dalmatian possessions. A squadron of galleys commanded by Maffeo Querini was brought back from the Ionian islands and joined with freshly equipped and crewed galleys from Venice and Dalmatia to form the largest war fleet the Venetians had ever assembled. Quality had, however, been sacrificed to quantity.



Deadly crossbow
The principal Genoese weapon both on land and at sea was the crossbow. The highly trained Genoese crossbowmen were feared across Europe and the Middle East.

The hastily conscripted soldiers and sailors did not have the skills usually expected of Venetian galley crews. The fleet was commanded by Andrea Dandolo, son of a former Doge.

The Venetians found the Genoese galleys in a sheltered bay near the eastern tip of the island late on 6 September. Battle was joined early the following morning and lasted through to evening. It was a savage combat. The Genoese suffered heavy casualties, including Lampa Doria's son Octavian, killed by an arrow while fighting on the forecastle of his father's flagship. Seeing his men waver, the admiral had his son's body thrown unceremoniously into the sea and ordered the fight to continue. The Venetians, however, came off worse. At a crucial moment, 16 Genoese galleys that had become detached from the main body in the earlier gale returned to attack the Venetians from the flank. Only Querini's experienced crews had the skills to maneuver out of the ensuing debacle, but led back into the mêlée in an attempt to rescue Dandolo, they too were overcome.

Only a handful of galleys returned to Venice to report the disaster. Taken prisoner and bound in chains, Dandolo committed suicide by dashing his head against one of the rowing benches. Among other prisoners taken by the Genoese was Marco Polo, who had commanded one of the Venetian galleys.

The battle had little political consequence. The war ended the following year with no significant advantage to the Genoese.

THE WAR OF CHIOGGIA

The conflict known as the War of Chioggia (1378–81) was the last fling in the long struggle between Venice and Genoa. In alliance with Hungary and Padua, the Genoese came close to inflicting a humiliating defeat on their Venetian enemies.

Venice's problems began in the spring of 1379. A fleet commanded by Vettor Pisani—nephew of the Niccolo Pisani defeated at Modon and one of Venice's most successful admirals—had wintered at Pola in the northern Adriatic. The galleys were still there on May 7, refitting and taking on supplies, when a Genoese squadron appeared at the harbor mouth. Pisani had only 16 galleys ready for action, but this seemed enough since the Genoese galleys in sight numbered 14. When the Venetians went out to give battle, however, 10 more enemy galleys appeared from behind a headland. After fierce fighting most of the Venetian galleys were captured along with their crews. Pisani survived but, on his return to Venice, was permanently banned from holding a command and, for a time, clapped in irons.

The destruction of its galleys at Pola put Venice at great risk. Its other major fleet, commanded by Carlo Zeno, was far away, commerce raiding in the eastern Mediterranean. Doge Andrea Contarini hastily improved the defenses of the city, but could do nothing to prevent a reinforced Genoese fleet of 47 galleys under Pietro Doria entering the Venetian lagoon in early August. With the aid of the land forces of Francesco da Carrara, lord of Padua, Doria seized the port of Chioggia at the southern end of the lagoon.

Pisani was immensely popular with his sailors—he was known as the "chief and father of all the seamen of Venice."

Venetian and Genoese gold coins
Both republics introduced gold coinage in the 13th century in imitation of the Byzantine Empire and the Arab world. The coins shown here are a Genoese grosso (below) and a Venetian ducat or sequin (above).

THIRD VENETIAN–GENOESE WAR

BOSPHORUS

Date February 13, 1352
Forces Venetians, Aragonese, Byzantines: 78 ships; Genoese: 64 ships
Losses Unknown

Location Near Constantinople

In its third war with Genoa, Venice was allied with Aragon, which included Catalonia, and the Byzantine Empire. In February 1352, Paganino Doria's Genoese fleet was wintering on the Bosphorus when a fleet of mostly Venetian and Catalan galleys under Niccolo Pisani appeared. The Genoese came out to give battle and a fierce action ensued, fought beyond nightfall in strong winds and rough seas. Next day Pisani judged his fleet no longer in fit shape to continue and withdrew.

THIRD VENETIAN–GENOESE WAR

ALGHERO

Date August 29, 1353
Forces Venetians and Aragonese: unknown; Genoese: unknown
Losses Venetians and Aragonese: unknown; Genoese: 33 galleys

Location Off Sardinia

After the battle of the Bosphorus the Byzantines made peace with Genoa, but the war continued. In summer 1353 the Aragonese were fighting for control of Sardinia, supported by a force of Venetian and Catalan galleys under Niccolo Pisani. The Genoese, without their inspired admiral Paganino Doria, were defeated in another fierce battle. Pisani took 4,500 prisoners, most of whom were executed. Genoa was then forced to accept rule by Milan as the price for financing a new fleet.

THIRD VENETIAN–GENOESE WAR

MODON

Date November 3, 1354
Forces Venetians: unknown; Genoese: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location Gulf of Sapienza, Peloponnese

In 1354 Niccolo Pisani anchored his fleet for the winter at Porto Longo, near Modon. The Genoese had rebuilt their fleet with Milanese money after the defeat at Alghero, so Paganino Doria sailed to Porto Longo to challenge the Venetians to fight. Outnumbered, Pisani refused, so the Genoese penetrated the harbor and overwhelmed the Venetians, capturing Pisani and many others. Venice made peace shortly afterward.

At this moment of crisis, many refused to serve under anyone else. The Venetian authorities gave in to popular pressure and reinstated the fired admiral, placing him in control of the defense of the city.

VENICE STRIKES BACK

The Genoese did not attempt a direct attack on Venice, depending instead on a blockade by land and sea to reduce the city to surrender. Doge Contarini did seek peace terms from the enemy, but found the price too high to pay. Pisani naturally had no intention of surrendering. On December 21 he launched an operation to turn the tables on the Genoese. Under cover of darkness he sank stone-filled hulks in the channels leading from Chioggia to the open sea. The original besiegers were now the besieged. It still seemed possible that the hungry, demoralized Venetians would be forced to give up the fight when, on January 1, 1380, Carlo Zeno's ships were sighted on the horizon. This tipped the balance of forces decisively in favor of Venice. A Genoese relief fleet led by Matteo Marufo arrived on May 12, but could find no way through to Chioggia. On June 24, the Genoese and their allies inside Chioggia surrendered. When a peace treaty was signed the following year, the terms were equable, but Genoa's attempt to win control of the lucrative trade routes through the eastern Mediterranean had failed. Venetian naval power would not be challenged again until the rise of the Turkish Ottoman Empire.

> "TAKE BACK YOUR PRISONERS ... I SHALL BE AT VENICE IN A FEW DAYS TO RELEASE THEM ... FROM YOUR DUNGEONS."
>
> **FRANCESCO DA CARRARA** RULER OF PADUA, REFUSING THE VENETIAN PEACE OFFER

Venetian galleys outside Chioggia
In this triumphalist painting celebrating Venice's victory over the Genoese in 1380, the galleys depicted are typical 16th-century vessels rather than those in use two centuries earlier.

FOURTH VENETIAN–GENOESE WAR

THE WAR OF CHIOGGIA

Date	August 16, 1379–June 24, 1380
Location	Venice lagoon
Result	Venetian victory

COMBATANTS

VENICE	GENOA, PADUA, HUNGARY

COMMANDERS

Vettor Pisani Carlo Zeno	Pietro Doria

FORCES

Ships: unknown	**Ships:** unknown

LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** unknown	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** unknown

THE WAR FOR SICILY

WHEN THE PEOPLE OF SICILY rose in rebellion against their hated ruler Charles of Anjou in 1282, King Peter III of Aragon landed troops in Sicily to fight the Angevins. The complex conflict that followed the uprising known as the "Sicilian Vespers" brought a number of naval engagements, from the battle of Malta in 1283 to Ponza in 1300, in which Aragonese admiral Roger di Lauria proved himself a ruthless master of galley warfare. The war ended in 1302 with the Aragonese in control of Sicily and the Angevins ruling Naples and southern Italy.

WAR OF THE SICILIAN VESPERS 1282—1302

Southern Italy and Sicily had been part of the domains of Holy Roman Emperor Frederick II. When he died in 1250, the papacy was determined that the kingdom should not pass to his heirs and in 1265 gave it to Charles of Anjou, brother of Louis IX of France (St Louis).

KEY

- Kingdom of Sicily (to House of Anjou) 1282
- Kingdom of Aragon
- Route of Aragonese invasion
- Aragonese victory over the Angevins
- Aragonese–Angevin victory over Sicily

WAR OF THE SICILIAN VESPERS

GULF OF NAPLES

Date June 5, 1284
Forces Aragonese: 36 galleys; Angevins: c.30 galleys
Losses Aragonese: unknown; Angevins: c.12 galleys captured

Location Gulf of Naples, Italy

The victory of the Aragonese fleet at Malta in 1283 gave Admiral Roger di Lauria a temporary naval superiority he was eager to exploit. Charles of Salerno, Charles of Anjou's son, was in command in Naples, capital of the mainland half of the kingdom of Sicily. In spring 1284 Charles of Anjou was preparing to send powerful naval reinforcements to Naples. Di Lauria took his fleet to blockade the city, hoping to provoke Charles of Salerno into sending his galleys out to fight before reinforcements arrived.

Charles of Anjou had given his son strict instructions to avoid a sea battle, but the young man was impetuous and eager to demonstrate his courage and fighting prowess. He was humiliated to stand by passively as di Lauria's fleet captured incoming ships and carried out raids around Naples. On June 5 the Aragonese admiral succeeded in luring Charles of Salerno out of harbor with the apparent offer of an easy victory. Making a conspicuous show of sending a dozen of his galleys away to the south, di Lauria approached the harbor with a weakened force. Charles could not resist the temptation to engage a numerically inferior enemy and led his Neapolitan and Provencal galleys out to attack. Di Lauria turned and fled southward with Charles in pursuit.

As the galleys approached Castellammare the trap was sprung. The group of Aragonese galleys that had sailed southward rejoined the main body of di Lauria's ships. The opposing forces were now roughly equal in numbers, but the Aragonese were far superior in organization and fighting experience. Forming a crescent in line abreast, they turned and bore down on Charles's galleys, which had been pursuing in no particular formation. The Neapolitan galleys had lagged behind and were thus able to flee in disorderly fashion back to the harbor. The Provencal galleys, including Charles's own ship, were outflanked and attacked from the sides and rear. Outnumbered and outfought, the galleys were captured after a short, sharp action. Charles's ship was the last to surrender, deluged with the bolts of the Catalan crossbowmen and assailed by combat swimmers.

The capture of Charles was the crucial outcome of a victory otherwise lacking in strategic significance. He was carried off to Aragon, where he was held prisoner until 1288. He was then released after swearing that he would cede Sicily to the Aragonese, but this was a promise he felt free to renounce once he had returned to Naples.

Coronation of Charles of Anjou
This French manuscript illumination shows Charles arriving in Rome by sea in 1265 and being crowned king of Naples and Sicily by Pope Clement IV.

The Gulf of Naples
The spectacular bay dominated by Mount Vesuvius was the scene of three of Roger di Lauria's great naval victories, the first being over Charles of Anjou's son Charles of Salerno in 1284.

WAR OF THE SICILIAN VESPERS

LAS HORMIGAS

Date September 4, 1285
Forces Aragonese: 40 galleys; French: 30 galleys
Losses Aragonese: unknown; French: 13 galleys captured

Location
Off Catalonia, Spain

In 1285 Philip III of France invaded the kingdom of Aragon, a rapacious enterprise declared a crusade by a partisan pope. French troops advanced down the coast of Catalonia, supported by a force of Provencal and Genoese galleys. Roger di Lauria's fleet sailed from Sicily to help resist the invasion.

Arriving in Barcelona at the end of August, di Lauria led his own 40 galleys from Sicily and 10 Catalan galleys north toward Gerona, which was under siege. At the same time, unaware of di Lauria's arrival, the French fleet advanced south toward Barcelona, hoping to annihilate the small Catalan galley force. The two fleets met, to their mutual surprise, some time before daybreak on September 4. Chroniclers disagree about almost every detail of the battle that followed. In the darkness the action must have developed into a confused close-quarters mêlée, with boarding the only effective tactic.

A lucky dozen of the outnumbered French galleys escaped back to Aigues-Mortes. The rest fell into the hands of a vengeful enemy. The wounded were tied to cables behind galleys and left to drown. Fit prisoners were blinded and sent back to the French king, led by one of their number left with a single eye. The invasion failed.

WAR OF THE SICILIAN VESPERS

THE COUNTS

Date June 23, 1287
Forces Aragonese: 44 galleys; Angevins: c.70 galleys
Losses Aragonese: unknown; Angevins: 40 galleys captured

Location
Bay of Naples, Italy

By 1287 the original contenders for the throne of Sicily had disappeared from the scene. Charles of Anjou died in 1285, leaving southern Italy to his son Charles of Salerno, still a prisoner of the Aragonese after his defeat at the battle of the Gulf of Naples. In 1286 Peter III of Aragon also died. He left his Aragonese kingdom to his eldest son Alfonso III, but Sicily to his second son James II. In the absence of the imprisoned Charles II, the Angevin cause was led by Count Robert II of Artois. He assembled substantial land and naval forces in Naples for an invasion of Sicily, hoping to prevent James II's succession.

The Aragonese defense of the island still lay primarily in the hands of Roger di Lauria and his experienced fleet. In the spring of 1287 he sailed to relieve Augusta in eastern Sicily, which had been seized by Angevin troops, leaving the west of the island vulnerable to invasion. But the Angevins failed to act and di Lauria had time to sail back around the south of Sicily to seek battle with their fleet. In June he found them in harbor at Naples.

Catalan astrolabe
Many of the Catalans' naval skills were inherited from Spain's Muslims, as was the use of the astrolabe as an astronomical aid. This one is from the late 13th century.

The Count of Artois was willing to send his galleys out to fight. He had a far more substantial galley force than the one defeated by di Lauria off Naples three years before. There was also an impressive array of military leaders at his side, including Reynald III Quarrel, Count of Avella; Hugh, Count of Brienne, who was ruler of the Principality of Taranto; and Guy de Montfort, Count of Nola, son of ruled England. But these counts, for whom the battle is named, were no match for di Lauria in a sea fight. Far superior at maneuver, his experienced and highly motivated Sicilian galley crews attacked their opponents from the beam, destroying their oars and leaving them immobilized, to be massacred by the Catalan crossbowmen and boarding parties of fierce Spanish light troops, the *almogavers*.

More than half the Angevin galleys were captured, along with some 5,000 crew and soldiers. Those taken prisoner included Hugh of Brienne, and Guy de Montfort, who did not survive his captivity. The planned invasion of Sicily was abandoned, enabling James II to confirm his hold on the throne.

c.1245–1305

ROGER DI LAURIA

ADMIRAL OF THE ARAGONESE FLEET

Roger di Lauria was born into the nobility of Calabria, southern Italy, but was driven into exile at the court of Peter III of Aragon when the Angevins seized his family's lands in 1266. He proved his worth as a soldier before his appointment as admiral at the start of the War of the Sicilian Vespers in 1282. His energy and administrative skill were demonstrated in strengthening the Aragonese fleet, but he is respected above all for his leadership in combat. He never lost a single sea battle, showing a cunning, good judgement, and boldness that have earned him a reputation as the finest of medieval naval commanders. Ruthless toward his enemies, he remained unswervingly loyal to the Aragonese throne.

WAR OF THE SICILIAN VESPERS

CAPE ORLANDO

Date July 4, 1299
Forces Aragonese and Angevins: 56 galleys; Sicilians: 48 galleys
Losses Aragonese and Angevins: unknown: Sicilians: 36 galleys captured

Location
Off northern Sicily

In the 1290s the struggle for Sicily took on a radically altered shape. James II inherited the throne of Aragon, leaving Sicily to his brother Frederick. But James then made an alliance with his old enemy, Charles II of Anjou, and led an expedition to regain Sicily for the Angevins. Roger di Lauria stayed loyal to Aragon and found himself fighting against his old Sicilian fleet, now led by Frederick and admiral Conrad d'Oria.

In summer 1299 King James and di Lauria sailed from Naples for northern Sicily, the war galleys escorting a convoy of troop transports. Frederick sailed from Messina to intercept, but moved too slowly. James was able to land his troops and horses at Cape Orlando.

When the Sicilians arrived, an onshore breeze made it hard for di Lauria to leave the bay where he was moored. Instead he adopted a tight defensive formation, his galleys drawn up in line close to the shore and linked by cables.

Frederick entered the bay on the morning of July 4, also placing his fleet in a cable-linked line. The galleys exchanged missiles at distance until a Sicilian captain, tiring of the punishment his crew was taking from the Catalan crossbowmen, cut his cables and plunged forward to engage the enemy at close quarters. Others followed suit and the battle became a mêlée. In the heat and exhaustion of combat Frederick, in the center of the Sicilian line, fainted and was rowed from the battle. Di Lauria got some of his galleys behind the Sicilians, who were gradually ground down in fierce fighting. Only 12 Sicilian galleys escaped. As at Las Hormigas, di Lauria was savage in victory, slaughtering the crews of captured galleys out of hand.

Prisoners of war
Angevin prisoners are escorted onto a Sicilian galley. Sicilian soldiers and sailors captured by di Lauria were not so lucky—they were often executed on the spot.

WAR OF THE SICILIAN VESPERS

PONZA

Date June 14, 1300
Forces Aragonese and Angevins: 59 galleys; Sicilians 32 galleys
Losses Aragonese and Angevins: 1 galley captured; Sicilians: c.20 galleys captured

Location Gulf of Gaeta, north of Naples, Italy

Despite his crushing victory at Cape Orlando, James II failed to seize Sicily for the Angevins from his brother Frederick. The following year a rebuilt Sicilian fleet boldly entered the Bay of Naples, challenging Roger di Lauria's Angevin galleys to come out and fight. Di Lauria prudently chose to wait for reinforcements from Genoa and Apulia before accepting the challenge. The one-sided engagement took place off the island of Ponza. The Sicilians' admiral Conrad d'Oria bravely attacked di Lauria's flagship, but despite inflicting some damage, was obliged to surrender, along with more than half his force. Frederick nonetheless retained Sicily in the peace treaty signed two years later.

THE BATTLE OF MALTA

The outbreak of the War of the Sicilian Vespers in 1282 set Charles of Anjou, Count of Provence and ruler of Naples and Sicily, against King Peter III of Aragon, whose domains included Catalonia. Initially the Aragonese had the better of the Angevins at sea, so Charles ordered the creation of a new galley fleet at Marseille—to be manned by Provencal crews and soldiers, and commanded by two Marseillais admirals, Guillaume de Cornut and Bartolomé Bonvin. In June 1283 these Provencal galleys arrived in Malta to aid an Angevin garrison besieged in Fort St. Angelo on the Grand Harbor.

In the Sicilian port of Messina, Aragon's newly appointed admiral Roger di Lauria was informed of the Angevin move and set off in pursuit. The Aragonese fleet was considered the best in the western Mediterranean. Its oarsmen were Sicilians in revolt against Angevin rule, and therefore highly motivated. Each galley carried 30 or 40 Catalan crossbowmen and some 50 *almogavers*—tough fighters recruited from wild areas of Spain bordering on Muslim territory.

WAR OF THE SICILIAN VESPERS

THE BATTLE OF MALTA

Date	July 8, 1283
Location	Grand Harbor, Valletta, Malta
Result	Aragonese victory

COMBATANTS

PETER III OF ARAGON	**CHARLES OF ANJOU**

COMMANDERS

Roger di Lauria	**Bartolomé Bonvin** **Guillaume de Cornut**

FORCES

Ships: 18 galleys	**Ships:** 19 galleys

LOSSES

Men: 300 **Ships:** none	**Men:** 3,500 **Ships:** 14 galleys

GIVE THE ENEMY A CHANCE

Di Lauria reached Malta on June 7. That night, under cover of darkness, he slipped an armed boat into the harbor to reconnoiter. It found the Angevin galleys beached with oars unshipped in a narrow inlet under the castle walls. Di Lauria decided to draw them out into the open harbor to fight. Sacrificing the chance to surprise a sleeping enemy, he announced his presence with a blast of trumpets. While the startled Angevins rushed to man and launch their galleys, di Lauria organized his fleet in line abreast across the harbor. Heavy cables were strung from galley to galley, making it impossible for enemy ships to pass between them.

Valletta harbor
The harbor today is still dominated by Fort St. Angelo. It retains its medieval appearance, but has been completely rebuilt since the time of Roger di Lauria.

At daybreak the Angevin galleys emerged into the harbor, their complement of marines augmented by a hundred armored knights from the castle. They deluged the Aragonese galleys in a hail of missiles—crossbow bolts, stones, javelins, darts, and pots containing a variety of substances from burning pitch to lime (intended to blind its victims). Di Lauria told his men to take cover and return fire only with crossbows. Ranging from heavy winched machines to light hand-held weapons spanned using a foot-stirrup, these were cruelly effective. A chronicler says the Catalan archers "did not discharge a shot without killing or disabling the man they attacked

When the Angevins had exhausted most of their supply of missiles, di Lauria ordered his galleys forward. They crashed into the prows of the enemy ships with a splintering shock. Then Aragonese missiles rained down on the enemy decks, including pots filled with soap that shattered, making the pitching decks treacherous for armored soldiers. The fierce *almogavers*, nimble and lightly clad in leather, sure-footedly stormed the Angevins' galleys. The Sicilian oarsmen joined in the fight, leaving their benches to take up sword and shield.

The Angevins were overwhelmed and slaughtered. Only a handful of their galleys evaded capture. Bonvin was among those who escaped, but de Cornut was killed along with the majority of those he commanded. Roger di Lauria had laid the foundations of his reputation as the greatest naval commander of his age.

Medieval Catalan galleys
This romantic image shows the ships crammed with *almogavers*, the troops that played such a vital role in the Aragonese victory at Malta.

KEY

ARAGONESE FLEET

2 Aragonese war galleys

1 small Aragonese scout ship

ANGEVIN FLEET

2 Angevin galleys

1 small Angevin guard boat

The Angevins place two boats to guard the harbor entrance, moored close to the shore

An Aragonese boat slips into the harbor under cover of darkness. Rowing with muffled oars, the crew spies out the Angevins' strength and positions

Di Lauria's galley fleet arrives from Sicily during the night

FORT ST ANGELO

GRAND HARBOR

Angevin galleys are beached close to the fort. With their sterns to the shore, their position is easily defended

1 NIGHT BEFORE THE BATTLE

The Aragonese galleys reach the harbor on the night of July 7. Di Lauria orders them to remain outside the harbor while he sends a small boat inside to reconnoiter. The Angevins have posted two guard boats, but these fail to spot the intruder.

2 CLASH IN THE HARBOR

Di Lauria decides to fight in open water rather than attack the Angevins on shore. Taking up a position at the harbor entrance, he orders his trumpeters to wake the Angevins. The latter hastily board their galleys and row out to do battle.

The Angevins, roused from their slumbers by the Aragonese trumpets, sail out to do battle with the enemy

Just before sunrise, di Lauria deploys his galleys in line abreast across the harbor entrance. The ships are tied together with strong cables to stop the enemy from breaking through

The Angevins attack the Aragonese with spears, crossbows, and other projectiles

FORT ST. ANGELO

GRAND HARBOR

3 CRUSHING VICTORY

The Angevins attack fiercely but eventually run out of ammunition. Di Lauria's men now emerge to start firing themselves, then grapple and board the enemy galleys, capturing most of them and slaughtering their crews.

The Aragonese close on their defenseless foe, unleashing a hail of missiles, then start boarding the Angevin ships

A few Angevin galleys manage to escape the carnage in the harbor and return to Marseille

MEDITERRANEAN SEA

FORT ST. ANGELO

The Angevins start to run out of crossbow bolts and other ammunition

GRAND HARBOR

THE RISE OF SAIL

Warship fit for a king
Henry VIII's trip to France in 1520 to meet with French King François I was a chance to show off the largest ship in his navy—possibly in all Europe—the *Henry Grace à Dieu*. Launched in 1514, the "Great Ship" was armed with 21 heavy bronze cannons and scores of smaller iron ones.

THE EVOLUTION of the three-masted sailing ship in the 15th century was a turning point in history. Armed with cannon, it was to give Europe global reach and maritime dominance. It also brought a fundamental change to naval warfare within Europe. Large sailing ships rendered maneuverable by a combination of square and lateen sails could outfight galleys, providing a superior platform for large numbers of cannon. These ocean-going ships began to shift the focus of European seapower from the Mediterranean to the Atlantic. Portugal showed the way in voyages down the African coast in the 15th century, but Spain was best placed to take the lead in ocean sailing because it was both a Mediterranean and an Atlantic power. Northern Europe had a long sailing tradition but its states rarely had the resources and political organization to maintain substantial fleets of warships until the 16th century.

LONGSHIP RAIDERS

The first distinctive contribution of northern Europe to naval history was provided by the Viking warriors of Scandinavia from the 8th century. Their longships used sails and oars, like Mediterranean galleys, but were better able to function in heavier seas. Warriors doubled as oarsmen. Viking raiders devastated coastal settlements around the British Isles, besieged Paris, and even sailed into the Mediterranean and penetrated the Black Sea via the river systems of the Ukraine. Raiding parties grew into fleets as political consolidation created powerful Scandinavian kingdoms.

Viking ships were mostly employed in amphibious operations—the fighting took place on land—but crude sea battles occasionally took place with exchange of missiles and boarding with hand weapons. Although Anglo-Saxon England in particular tried to develop naval strength, there was little that any country—at least any as undeveloped as the states of northern Europe were at this time—could do to stop the Vikings landing forces or settlers whenever they wanted. England was invaded twice in 1066, by Scandinavians and their Frenchified descendants the Normans, without succeeding in mounting a response at sea.

ANGLO-FRENCH RIVALRY

The development of England and France as naval powers was slow. Medieval English fleets were improvised from a few king's ships, vessels provided by port towns and merchant cogs—round sailing ships—pressed into service for the purpose. Under French King Philip le Bel in the late 13th century the "clos des galées" for a while functioned as a kind of royal dockyard at Rouen, but there was nothing in northern waters that was remotely comparable with the size and sophistication of the great arsenals at Venice and Genoa. Henry VII finally established a permanent dock for the English king's ships at Portsmouth at the end of the 15th century.

Nevertheless, Anglo-French rivalry ensured that the English Channel became a focal point of naval operations from the 13th century onward. Large numbers of ships were sent in both directions to land troops, horses, and supplies, and for coastal raids, as when Southampton was sacked by French galleys in 1338. During the Hundred Years War, English military operations in northern France and Aquitaine would have been impossible without maritime support. Sea battles as such, however, were infrequent, and when they did take place, consisted mostly of fights between knights, men-at-arms, and archers on board ships.

Sea battle at La Rochelle
During the Hundred Years War sieges of ports often led to clashes at sea. In 1372 an English convoy taking supplies and reinforcements to their troops in La Rochelle lost all its ships to a Castilian squadron fighting for the French.

Catching the wind
Many later Viking longships were equipped with a bronze weather vane that was attached to the tip of the prow. These were often decorated with grotesque animals.

COGS AND CARRACKS

The French used galleys for cross-Channel raiding and in the battles of the Hundred Years War—the oared vessels were often supplied by Genoese mercenaries. The Castilians also used galleys successfully against the English, who for their part had balingers, small singled-masted vessels powered by a combination of oars and sails. But ships powered by sails alone were becoming increasingly important in northern wars. Sturdy single-masted cogs were the trusty workhorses of maritime trade in the Baltic and North Sea. With high castles added fore and aft, these merchant ships provided excellent platforms for the archers who played a major role in combat at sea, as well as spacious holds for the purposes of military transport.

The carrack emerged in the 15th century as a large hybrid of the cog and sleeker Mediterranean lateen-sailed ships. The Genoese brought carracks into the Channel in support of the French fighting England's Henry V in 1416. Henry himself built the massive *Grace Dieu*, a carrack as large as a first-rate ship of the line of the Nelson era. Such "Great Ships" appealed to monarchs for their prestige value. Initially, their fighting advantage lay primarily in how difficult they were to board, with their high inward-sloping hull. But by the start of the 16th century they were being equipped with cannon in large numbers, with gun ports cut into the hull. Purpose-built warships such as England's *Mary Rose* were a new kind of fighting machine whose firepower would make earlier forms of naval warfare redundant.

Portuguese carracks
Having explored the entire west coast of Africa, the Portuguese reached their true goal when Vasco da Gama completed his historic voyage to India in 1498. Carracks were the mainstays of their long-distance voyages of exploration.

THE VIKINGS

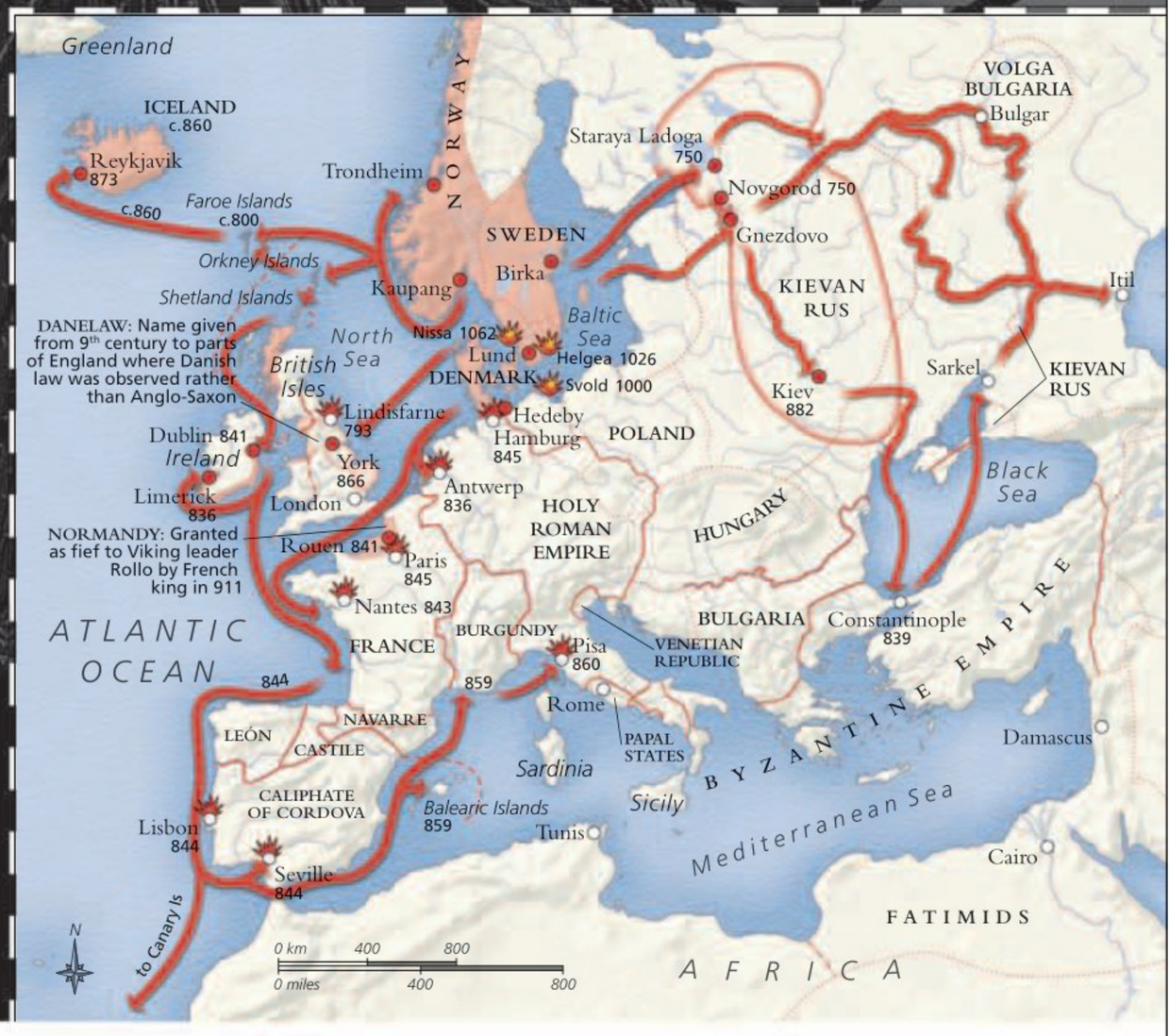
DURING THE LATE 8th and 9th centuries Viking sea warriors from Scandinavia terrorized much of Europe, devastating sites along coasts and up rivers. At first small-scale hit-and-run raids mounted by single war bands, these attacks grew into sustained operations involving hundreds of longships, and led to permanent Viking settlement in France and the British Isles. From around 980 a new wave of Viking expansion, led by warriors such as Olaf Trygvasson, struck in particular at Anglo-Saxon England, which came under the rule of the Danish King Canute from 1017. In Scandinavia the kingdoms of Norway, Denmark, and Sweden were consolidated and their warrior kings, or claimants to their thrones, fought one another repeatedly in shifting alliances. Longships were central to Viking invasions and raids, but actual battles on water were rare. When forces clashed at sea, the style of fighting differed little from a battle on land, with an exchange of missiles followed by close combat with axe, sword, and spear.

THE VIKING WORLD c.793–1050 CE

The Viking raids of the late 8th and early 9th centuries were followed by a period of conquest and settlement, with Vikings settling in Iceland as well as in conquered areas of France, Britain, and Ireland. As the regions ruled by the Vikings grew to become powerful states, wars between rival Viking leaders became increasingly frequent as they quarreled over their inheritance.

KEY

- Area settled by Vikings
- Area of Viking influence
- Viking voyage, trade route, or raid
- Major Viking settlement
- 866 Date of Viking voyage, battle, raid, or settlement
- Viking sea battle
- Viking raid



THE AGE OF GALLEYS

VIKING ATTACKS ON NORTHERN ENGLAND

RAID ON LINDISFARNE

Date June 793
Forces Vikings: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location Lindisfarne Island, off Northumbria

In the 8th century the monastery on Lindisfarne was a famed center of Christian learning. Its remote coastal location showed the security felt by a people unsuspecting of seaborne attack. The Viking raiding party that crossed the North Sea and beached its longships near the monastery in 793 met little or no resistance. According to the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, the raiders "devastated God's church on Lindisfarne island by looting and slaughter." The Vikings stole the treasures of the church and either killed the monks or carried them off in chains to be sold as slaves. Only a hit-and-run attack by a small war band, the raid was a profound shock to Christian Europe. The scholar Alcuin wrote that "never before has such terror appeared as we have suffered from a pagan race."

Viking leader's helmet
Elaborate bronze helmets contributed to the terrifying spectacle of sudden landings of groups of Viking raiders.

VIKING ATTACKS ON NORTHERN FRANCE

RAID ON PARIS

Date November 885–October 886
Forces Vikings: c.300 longships; Franks: 200 men-at-arms
Losses Unknown

Location Paris

In 885 a vast Viking fleet, led by the chieftain Sigfrid, sailed up the River Seine, bent upon pillaging inland France and Burgundy. The Frankish town of Paris, built on the Ile de la Cité, was joined to each bank of the Seine by bridges, one of wood and one of stone. To the surprise of the Vikings, the handful of Frankish warriors in the town, led by Count Odo, defended the bridges, blocking the raiders' progress up the river. A prolonged siege ensued. The Vikings were determined not to be thwarted by a few Frankish warriors: they used siege engines to bombard the fortifications; they attempted to burn the wooden bridge with fireships; they filled moats with dead bodies. After the timber bridge was destroyed by winter floods, some of the Vikings sailed on to plunder elsewhere. The rest were eventually bought off by the Frankish emperor, Charles the Fat, with 60 pounds of silver.

NORWEGIAN-DANISH WAR

SVOLD

Date September 1000
Forces Norwegians: 11 ships; Coalition: c.70 ships
Losses Norwegians: 11 ships; Coalition: unknown

Location Baltic Sea

Olaf Trygvasson, king of Norway, was opposed by a coalition of Danish king Svein Forkbeard, Swedish king Olaf Eiriksson, and the Earl of Lade, Eirik Hakonarson, a pretender to the Norwegian throne. Olaf was sailing home from Wendland when his small fleet was intercepted by a far superior coalition force. The battle that followed is best described by Icelandic chronicler Sonni Sturluson in his sagas of the Norwegian kings, the *Heimskringla*.

King Olaf was traveling on board *Long Serpent*, a ship 165 ft (50 m) long, powered by 70 oars and carrying 200 warriors. As the opposing fleets closed for battle, raining spears and arrows upon one another, he had smaller longships lashed to each side of his large warship, to provide a stable platform on which he and his followers could fight.

Earl Eirik led the attack on Olaf's floating fortress. Sailing alongside and grappling the smaller ships, Eirik's warriors boarded them and cleared their decks in tough hand-to-hand fighting. They then cut the hawsers holding the smaller ships to *Long Serpent*. Earl Eirik brought his longship *Barthi* directly alongside *Long Serpent*, but his first boarding party was repelled with heavy losses. Despite desperate resistance, Olaf's men were gradually worn down, until they held only the aft of their ship, grouped around their king. To avoid being taken, Olaf leaped into the sea and was never seen again. The victors divided Norway between them, with Earl Eirik taking the lion's share.

Presumed death of Olaf Trygvasson
The king throws himself overboard to avoid capture at Svold, an event that passed into Norse folklore.

> THE PAGANS ... CAME WITH A NAVAL FORCE TO BRITAIN LIKE STINGING HORNETS AND SPREAD ON ALL SIDES LIKE FEARFUL WOLVES, ROBBED, TORE, AND SLAUGHTERED ...
>
> **SIMEON OF DURHAM**, *HISTORIA REGUM*, 1129

Viking longship
This reconstruction of a Viking longship of the 11th century, created at Roskilde in Denmark, has demonstrated its ability to sail long distances in open water without resort to oar power.

WARS OF KING CANUTE

HELGEÅ

Date 1026
Forces Danish and English: c.600 ships; Swedes and Norwegians: c.400 ships
Losses Unknown

Location
Coast of Sweden

While Canute, king of England and Denmark, was ruling his English domains, Swedish King Anund Jacob and Norwegian King Olaf Haraldsson ravaged his Danish territories. In search of revenge, Canute led a large fleet in pursuit of the marauders. Olaf and Anund devised a trick to counter their enemy's superior force. Landing at the mouth of the Helgeå River—a site located on the Swedish coast—they had a dam constructed upstream. When Canute's war fleet was sighted, the Swedes and Norwegians hastily took to their ships and rowed out of the harbor, taking up a defensive formation offshore. Since it was late in the day and his fleet was widely dispersed, Canute sailed into the now empty harbor to spend the night. As there was limited space, most of his ships remained in open sea. The following morning his enemies breached the dam, releasing a cascade of water. Some of Canute's men were drowned. The king's own ship rode the surge out into the sea, where it was surrounded by the enemy. But Canute's vessel was so large and well defended that it could not be boarded. There was some fierce fighting before Olaf and Anund, sure that they would lose heavily once Canute's ships were properly organized for battle, decided to withdraw. Their flight confirmed Canute's dominance of Scandinavia. He replaced Olaf as king of Norway two years later.

c.990–1035

CANUTE

KING OF ENGLAND, DENMARK, AND NORWAY

Canute accompanied his father Svein Forkbeard, king of Denmark, on an invasion of England in 1013. The following year his father died and the Danish army elected him king of England, although it was only after a second seaborne invasion and much hard fighting that the Anglo-Saxons submitted to his rule. Canute succeeded his brother as king of Denmark in 1018 and, after the battle of Helgeå in 1026, also affirmed his claim to be "king of the Norwegians and some of the Swedes." He ruled his North Sea empire wisely but failed to create any political structure that could maintain it after his death.

NORWEGIAN-DANISH WAR

NISSA

Date 9 August 1062
Forces Norwegians: 150 ships; Danes: 300 ships
Losses Norwegians: unknown; Danes: more than 70 ships captured

Location
The Kattegat

Harald III Sigurdsson, also known as Harald Hardrada, was one of the most celebrated of Viking warriors. He served in the elite Varangian Guard of the Byzantine Empire before returning to become king of Norway in 1047. He also claimed the throne of Denmark, held by Svein Estridsson, a nephew of Canute. There was warfare between the two for 15 years. In summer 1062 Harald sailed south to seek battle with the Danes. He laid waste the Danish coast to draw Svein out to fight. The Danish king appeared with a far larger fleet than Harald's, but many of his followers seem to have been lacking in confidence. On either side of Svein's own vessel ships were tied together with cables, but many other Danish ships were loose and disorganized, some hanging back while others pressed forward to fight.

The battle was joined late in the day and continued through the night. Enemies assailed one another with stones and arrows, as well as closing to clash with swords and shields. The loose Danish vessels were mopped up by aggressively-led groups of Norwegian longships. Svein's ship and those tied to it in the center were finally overrun after savage fighting, although the king escaped capture. Despite the scale of the Norwegian victory, Harald made peace with Svein in 1064. Instead he pursued a flimsy claim to the English throne. Harald was killed leading an invasion of England at Stamford Bridge in 1066.

LIFE ON BOARD

RELIGION AND SUPERSTITION

THE HAZARDOUS AND UNPREDICTABLE nature of any seaman's life, subject to the vagaries of weather and waves, is compounded in naval service by the uncertainties of warfare creating fertile ground for superstition of all kinds. Religious belief at sea has in some of its aspects been hard to distinguish from superstition, although religion has often developed a very different role as a motivating and bonding force, and a source of spiritual comfort on board.

APOLLO Ancient Greek galley crews sang specific hymns, or paeans, to the god Apollo as they rowed into battle. Battlefield paeans were accompanied by pipes and instruments called *kitharas*, like the one Apollo is seen holding here.

OMEN AND SACRIFICE

In ancient times any enterprise, whether in peace or war, would be preceded by animal sacrifice and the consultation of omens, often by examination of burned entrails. On important occasions renowned professionals were employed for the purpose, like Euphrantides the Soothsayer who allegedly advised Themistocles to sacrifice three Persian prisoners to the gods before the battle of Salamis. When Roman consul Publius Claudius infamously refused to heed the omen presented by sacred chickens before the defeat at Drepana, Rome was in uproar and it nearly cost him his life. The Viking warriors, worshipers of Odin and Thor, practiced human sacrifice and divination from examining the remains of the victims. Omens could also be accidental, however. At Lepanto a number of crows were seen over the Turkish fleet before the battle, and their admiral had great difficulty persuading his men to enter the fight.

SACRED CHICKENS Roman leaders would consult sacred chickens, specially brought on board for the purpose, for signs of divine support prior to battle. A chicken that refused to eat the grain it was offered could prove ominous.

> *Now Friday came. Your old wives say,*
> *Of all the week's the unluckiest day.*
>
> **RICHARD FLECKNOE,** Diarum (1656) on the belief preventing ships launching on Fridays.

SILVER COIN In deference to Charon, ferryman of the underworld in Greek legend who was paid with a coin, shipbuilders once placed a silver coin under the masthead.

EX-VOTO These works were a display of gratitude to God for sparing the mariner, fulfilling part of the deal they made with God in a time of difficulty. The painting by a Spanish sailor opposite depicts the moment of peril.

SUPERSTITIONS

Sailors maintained into modern times many beliefs that are widely though to be pagan in origin. For example, death was believed to come with the ebb tide. If a dying man survived one ebb tide, he would live until the next. Possessing a caul from a newborn baby was believed to ensure a man against drowning—sailors were still known to buy cauls into the 20th century. It was also unlucky to kill a seagull or, especially, an albatross, since they embodied the souls of lost mariners. This prohibition was not universally observed—sailors were known to make tobacco pouches out of albatrosses' webbed feet. It was bad luck to carry a corpse on board. If unavoidable, it should always be carried sideways onto the ship, not end on. Whistling was generally disapproved of as likely to cause a storm, although soft whistling might be indulged in a dead calm as a way of summoning a wind. Placing a silver coin under the mast might ensure good fortune, while it was taboo to launch a ship on a Friday.

PRAYER SERVICE Sailors often attended religious services before and after battle. Here British officers and men pray for their fallen comrades after the battle of the Nile (1798).

ORTHODOX CHAPEL Many ships had their own chapels, where a chaplain could perform services and rites. This Orthodox chapel from the Greek WWII-era battleship *Georgius Averof* came with its own icons.

> *May the great God . . . grant to my country and . . . Europe in general, a great and glorious victory: and may no misconduct, in anyone, tarnish it . . .*
>
> **HORATIO NELSON** Prayer written before battle of Trafalgar on October 21, 1805

RELIGION ON BOARD

Clergymen, monks, or nuns on board were traditionally regarded as unlucky. In the 16th century Spanish royal galleys, which operated close to shore and were never at sea for long periods, had clergy assigned to them, but the oceangoing sailing fleet did not. The celebration of mass on board was banned because the consecrated wafer or wine might be spilled in the sea. The ship's master led services on board and the ship's boys sang the Ave Maria at sunset. Spanish sailors wore medallions of the saints and Virgin around their necks as charms, and made ex-voto offerings in churches to give thanks for a safe voyage. English sailors of Francis Drake's time, affected by Protestantism, would sing hymns on deck, while denouncing their Catholic enemies as merely superstitious. Religious services on board Royal Navy ships in the 18th century were mostly conducted by the captain. The growth of Christian evangelicalism in the early 19th century affected Royal Navy officers, who were more likely to take their religious duties seriously. From 1812 the official policy of the Royal Navy was that every ship from a sixth-rate upward should have a chaplain, but until the mid-19th century there were never enough chaplains to fulfill this aspiration. Eventually, in the course of the 19th century, religious personnel on board were generally provided by navies around the world as part of a concept of a well-run ship caring for its sailors.

BLESSING CEREMONY Clergy inspect a submarine after a ceremony. Another maritime tradition views a priest on board as bad luck.

ORGAN Specially built organs for submarines, such as this WWII model, were issued for religious services until the 1980s.

SEA BATTLES IN NORTHERN EUROPE

DURING THE PERIOD of almost half a millennium between the Norman invasion of England in 1066 and the loss of the English "Great Ship" *Mary Rose* in the Solent in 1545, naval warfare in northern Europe underwent decisive technological changes. The Normans crossed the Channel in vessels resembling Viking longships; by the 16th century war fleets included large three- and four-masted carracks armed with cannon. But the place of sea power in north European warfare remained relatively constant. It enabled states to conduct coastal raids or to land troops and horses for larger scale military incursions. Naval matters were most important to the English kings, who needed to ferry armies to the European mainland where they possessed or claimed substantial territories, and also depended on the Channel to protect them from attack by continental armies. Rivalry between the kings of France and England, at its fiercest during the Hundred Years War (1337–1453), was at the root of most naval conflicts in the region. Permanent navies were slow to emerge, however, limiting the scale and frequency of sea warfare.

THE NORMAN INVASION OF ENGLAND

In 1066 Anglo-Saxon England was the target of no less than three seaborne attacks, all concerned with contesting the accession to the Anglo-Saxon throne of Harold Godwinson at the start of the year. In May Harold's exiled brother Tostig landed on the Isle of Wight with a fleet from Flanders and went on to raid Harold's main naval base at Sandwich. In early September a fleet of some 300 ships commanded by Norwegian King Harald Hardrada, with Tostig as his ally, landed an army in northern England. This invasion failed because King Harold defeated King Harald's land forces at Stamford Bridge. The third seaborne operation, mounted by William Duke of Normandy, was a resounding success.

The invasion fleet
The Bayeux Tapestry includes a fairly faithful representation of William's ships, especially the sails, stays, and steering oars. Less realistic is the method shown of transporting horses.

DAUNTING LOGISTICS

Whatever the merits of William's claim to the English throne, his preparations were thorough and determined. William had to transport an army of 7,000 men or more, along with some 2,000 horses, and equipment that included the components for a prefabricated wooden fort. At Dives-sur-Mer on the Normandy coast he assembled a fleet that has been estimated at around 700 ships. Some of these were built from scratch, a process shown in the Bayeux Tapestry. Most of the ships were probably much broader in the beam and deeper in draft than a Viking longship. It has been estimated that one such ship would have taken a team of 12 shipwrights three months to build. Given the scale of the enterprise, most vessels must surely have been existing craft supplied by the duke's seagoing subjects.

Norman helmet
Standard equipment of the Norman knights that crossed the Channel in 1066 was chainmail armor and an iron helmet with a distinctive nose guard.

The fleet was ready by August 12, but the weather would not cooperate and a north wind kept the ships firmly bottled up in harbor for a month. On September 12, the fleet moved to St Valéry-sur-Somme, losing several ships en route through stormy weather. This placed William's invasion force closer to England, enabling him to target a landing site nearer London. King Harold was well informed of William's preparations and waited with his own ships and army on England's south coast. The long delay worked against Harold, however. Firstly, on September 8, most of his forces were sent home. Then the invasion by Harald Hardrada required a hasty march

WITNESS TO WAR

MASTER WACE

ANGLO-NORMAN CHRONICLER (C.1115 – C.1183)

NORMAN INVASION OF ENGLAND

"… but I have heard my father say—I remember it well, although I was but a lad—that there were ***seven hundred ships, less four,*** *when they sailed from St. Valéry; and that there were besides these ships,* ***boats and skiffs*** *for the purpose of carrying the* ***arms and harness****. I have found it written (but I know not whether it be true) that there were in all three thousand vessels bearing sails and masts. Any one will know that there must have been a great many men to have furnished out such vessels …The duke placed* ***a lantern on the mast of his ship****, that the other ships might see it, and hold their course after it."*

northward. When a southerly wind finally set in that could carry the Norman fleet to England, coastal defences were almost nonexistent.

Soldiers and horses boarded the ships on September 27—probably ten horses to each transport—and at high tide around 3:00 p.m. they rowed out to an assembly point at sea. There, sails were raised and the fleet set off with the duke's ship in the lead. When night fell, there was no moon, so lanterns were hoisted to keep the ships in formation. A few became detached, but the main body came ashore—unopposed—on the pebble beach at Pevensey on the morning of September 28. Such ships as Harold had on duty were stationed in the Solent, far to the west.

William went on to defeat Harold at Hastings and replace him on the English throne, an event that radically altered the structure of English society and England's relation to mainland Europe.

NORMAN CONQUEST

NORMAN INVASION OF ENGLAND

Date	September 28, 1066
Location	Pevensey, southern England
Result	Norman victory

COMBATANTS

NORMANS	ANGLO-SAXONS

COMMANDERS

William Duke of Normandy	King Harold II of England

FORCES

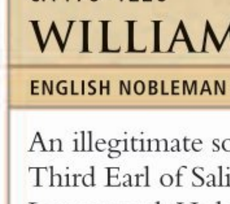
Ships: c.600–700	Ships: c.200

LOSSES

Men: none Ships: none	Men: none Ships: none

KING JOHN'S WAR WITH FRANCE

DAMME



Date May 30–31,1213
Forces English: c.500 ships; French: c.1,700 ships
Losses English: none; French: c.400 ships

Location Scheldt estuary, Flanders

In 1213 French King Philip Augustus was threatening an invasion of England. He assembled a large fleet at the mouth of the Seine, but when English King John made a number of concessions that undermined the justification for an invasion, Philip instead turned his forces against England's ally, the Count of Flanders. The French fleet sailed to the area of the Scheldt estuary known as the Zwyn and came ashore at Damme, threatening the important Flemish cities of Bruges and Ghent.

King John assembled his own fleet, under the command of William de Longespee. It comprised some 500 ships carrying 700 knights and large numbers of mercenaries. Whether the plan was for a preemptive strike to prevent a French invasion is not clear. Leaving England on May 28, the ships reached the Zwyn two days later. The French were totally unprepared for an attack from the sea. Hundreds of their ships lay at anchor or beached on mudflats outside the port, with few men aboard. The English seized these vessels almost without a fight, taking 300 as prizes and burning a hundred more.

The following day de Longespee attacked the port of Damme itself. The fighting moved onto land and there was some sharp combat as the French organized a counterattack. The English force had to reembark in some haste, but sailed happily back to England with its prizes and a wealth of booty.

c.1176–1226

WILLIAM DE LONGESPEE

ENGLISH NOBLEMAN AND MILITARY COMMANDER

An illegitimate son of King Henry II, de Longespee, Third Earl of Salisbury, was also known as William Longsword. Holding the post of warden of the Cinque Ports may have given him some knowledge of naval affairs, but he commanded the English fleet at Damme in 1213 as a leader of fighting men, not as a sailor. He subsequently fought the French on land at the battle of Bouvines in 1214 and later in Gascony. In 1225 he was shipwrecked in the Bay of Biscay while en route to England. He eventually reached home but died shortly after, possibly poisoned by the victor of the battle of Dover, Hubert de Burgh.

FRENCH INVASION OF ENGLAND

DOVER

Date August 24, 1217
Forces English: c.40 ships; French: c.80 ships
Losses English: none; French: 65 ships

Location English Channel, off Dover

The barons' revolt against King John enabled the French to invade England in 1215 and occupy a large part of the country. After John's death in 1216, they wanted to install the Dauphin Louis on the throne of England in place of the nine-year-old Henry III. William Marshal and Hubert de Burgh led the resistance to the French and tried to prevent reinforcements and supplies reaching England from France.

In summer 1217 Marshal and de Burgh were besieged in Dover. On August 24, 70 French supply vessels approached the coast escorted by 10 warships under the command of Eustace the Monk, a famed sea warrior from Boulogne. De Burgh reacted swiftly, setting sail with some 40 ships. At first the English sailed past the incoming convoy, but then came about to attack from the rear and grappled the enemy ships for boarding. They captured almost all the French vessels and towed them into Dover. Eustace was found hiding in the bilges of his ship and summarily executed.

This defeat forced the French to abandon their invasion of England. The battle can probably be counted as the first fought between sailing ships in open sea.

Arms of the Cinque Ports
The Cinque Ports were Dover and four other nearby ports, entrusted with defending England from invasion.

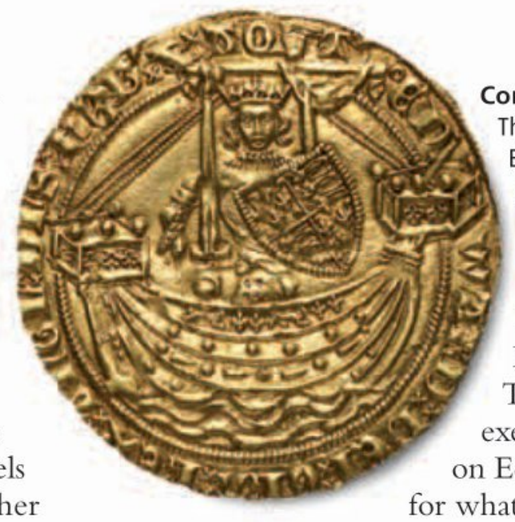
THE BATTLE OF SLUYS

On June 22, 1340, the English king, Edward III, set sail across the North Sea from the Orwell estuary on board *Cog Thomas*, bound for the Scheldt in Belgium. His large fleet of round ships, balingers, galleys, and barges was packed with troops, although a party of high-born English ladies was also on board, being carried to the court of Edward's Flemish wife at Ghent. Joined by the English North Sea squadron under the command of Sir Robert Morley, Edward arrived off the Flanders coast to find a large French fleet anchored in the Scheldt estuary.

DEPLOYMENTS BEFORE THE BATTLE

According to the French chronicler Froissart, the king was astonished by the number of French ships, whose "masts resembled a forest." Commanded by Admiral Hugues Quiéret and by a lawyer, Nicolas Béhuchet, the French force had been assembled for an invasion of England. It included a contingent of Genoese galleys under the experienced mercenary naval commander Egidio Bocanegra, known as Barbavara. While the English waited for a favorable wind and tide to enter the estuary, the French placed their ships in a defensive formation, anchored in lines tied together with cables. The idea was to create a stable floating platform to be defended by the crossbowmen and men-at-arms. The *Christopher*, one of five large English ships recently captured by the French, was stationed in front of this mass, with Genoese crossbowmen manning her high castles. Barbavara, a true sailor, kept his own ships separate and maneuverable.

The English fleet was arranged with one ship packed with men-at-arms between each two ships of longbowmen. Maneuvering to approach with the sun and wind behind them, the English attacked at around noon on June 24. Both sides sounded trumpets, horns, and drums to encourage resolve as battle was joined. According to Froissart, "fierce fighting broke out on every side, with archers and crossbowmen shooting arrows and bolts at each other pell-mell, and men-at-arms struggling and striking in hand-to-hand combat." Iron grappling hooks were used to hold the enemy ships fast for boarding. The *Christopher* was one of the first vessels to be taken, and all her defenders were killed or captured.



Commemorative coin
This gold noble was issued by Edward III in the year of the battle of Sluys. It shows the king standing in a ship armed with a sword and shield.

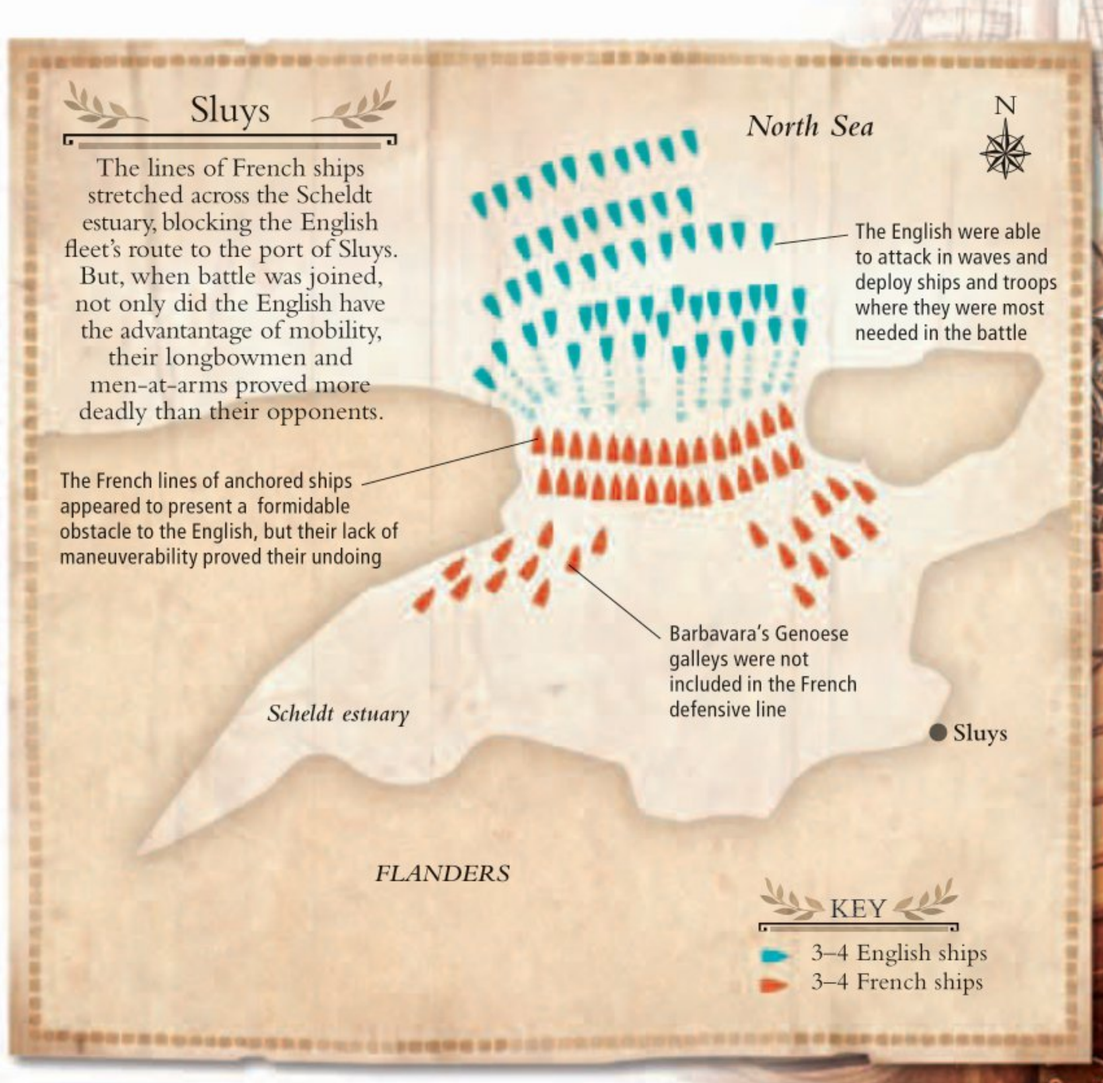
CONTROL OF THE SEA

According to a letter written by King Edward after the battle, the fighting continued "all that day and the night after." The French clearly had the worst of it, possibly because of the rapid rate of fire and accuracy of the English king's longbowmen, or because the English ships were free to move around their anchored adversaries. It is no doubt significant that Barbavara's galleys were the only ships on the French side to escape the debacle, taking two prizes into the bargain.

Both Quiéret and Béhuchet were killed. The latter was possibly executed after the battle on Edward's orders, though for what reason is not known.

The sea was red with blood and thick with the bodies of French soldiers and sailors who had sought vainly to escape. The English victory, establishing naval dominance at the outset of the Hundred Years War, was strategically decisive, ensuring that the conflict would be fought in France, with little risk of a counter-invasion of England.

> "THE FRENCH SHIPS WERE ALL CHAINED TOGETHER, SO THAT THEY COULD NOT BE SEPARATED FROM ONE ANOTHER; THUS ONLY A FEW ENGLISH SHIPS WERE NEEDED TO GUARD ONE GROUP OF THOSE WHICH HAD BEEN ABANDONED."
>
> **GEOFFREY LE BAKER DE SWYNEBROKE**, ENGLISH CHRONICLER



A land battle fought on the sea
Sluys was not a battle of naval maneuver: the ships were effectively static and it was fought out by two armies of knights, men-at-arms, and archers.

HUNDRED YEARS WAR

BATTLE OF SLUYS

Date June 24, 1340
Location Flanders coast, Belgium
Result English victory

COMBATANTS

ENGLAND

FRANCE

COMMANDERS

King Edward III

Admiral Hugues Quiéret
Nicolas Béhuchet
Egidio Bocanegra (Barbavara)

FORCES

Ships: c.210

Ships: c.190

LOSSES

Men: 4,000–9,000
Ships: 2 captured

Men: c.20,000–30,000
Ships: c.170 lost

HUNDRED YEARS WAR

LES ESPAGNOLS SUR MER

Date August 29, 1350
Forces English: 50 ships; Castilians: 40 ships
Losses English: 2 ships; Castilians: 14 ships sunk or captured

Location Off Winchelsea, S. England

English King Edward III decided to intercept a fleet of France's ally Castile, as it sailed from Flanders for Spain. He assembled a naval force at Winchelsea under his personal command aboard *Cog Thomas*. Castilian commander Carlos de la Cerda was happy to give battle. He had larger ships, their fighting tops crammed with crossbowmen and soldiers armed with various missiles. The English sallied forth to meet the Castilians as they sailed into the Channel. King Edward ordered the master of his ship to sail directly into one of the enemy ships. Damaged by the impact, *Cog Thomas* began to founder. Edward succeeded in grappling another Castilian vessel and transferred his men across before his cog sank. Although the king's son, the Black Prince, also lost his ship, the English generally had far the better of a hot engagement.

HUNDRED YEARS WAR

LA ROCHELLE

Date June 22–23,1372
Forces English: unknown; Castilians: 12 galleys
Losses English: entire fleet, 8,400 captured; Castilians: none

Location La Rochelle

The Earl of Pembroke led a large convoy of round ships carrying troops, horses, and money to reinforce the English army at La Rochelle, which was under siege by the French. France called upon its ally Castile to intercept the English convoy. A Castilian squadron of 12 galleys commanded by Genoese mercenary Ambrosio Bocanegra, met the English in the mouth of La Rochelle harbor.

The first encounter was indecisive, but on the second day the Spanish galleys exploited their superior maneuverability and ability to operate in shallow water. Many of the English ships were grounded. The Castilians sprayed their decks with oil and set them ablaze with burning arrows. The Earl of Pembroke and all his men were captured, along with £20,000. It was a striking example of a victory for galleys over sailing ships. The English had now clearly lost the control of the sea, which had been theirs since their victory over the French at Sluys in 1340.

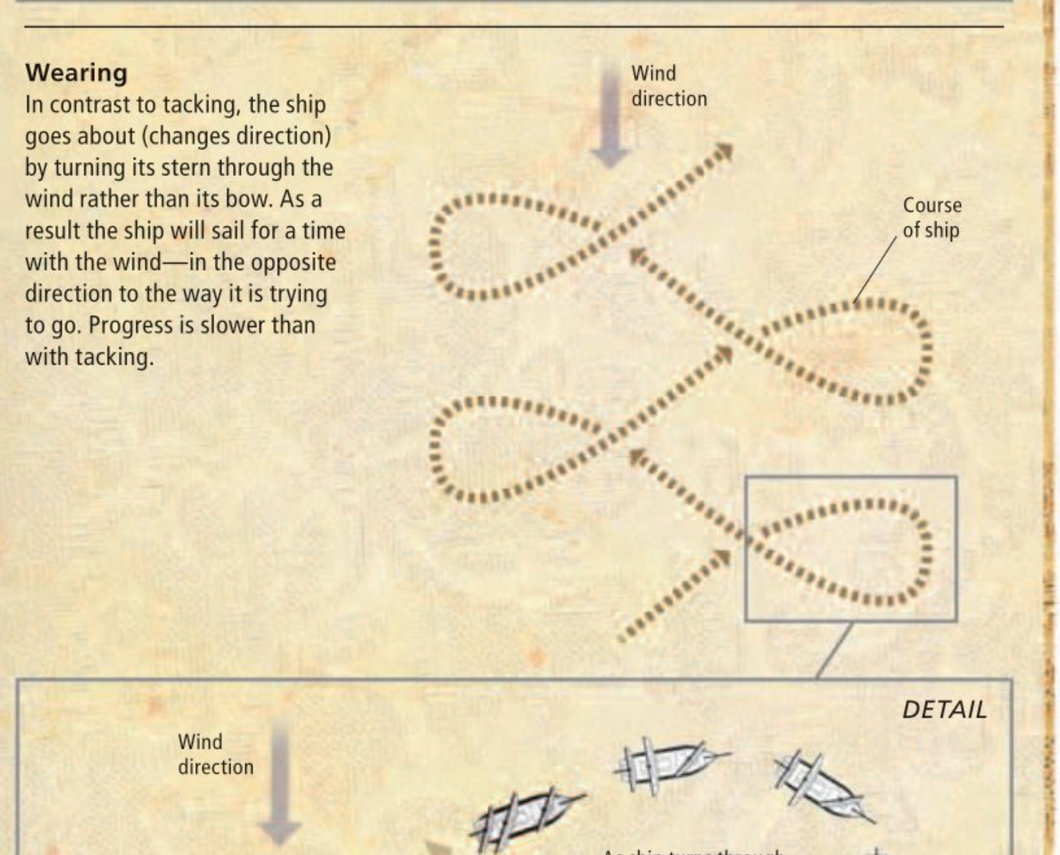
SAILING TACTICS

TACKING AND WEARING

SAILING INTO THE WIND

The obvious disadvantage of a sailing ship is that it cannot move directly into the wind. To make progress against the wind a ship has to follow a zig-zag course toward its ultimate destination. When the ship turns with its bow into the wind to change direction, this is known as "tacking": when it turns with its stern facing the wind, this is called "wearing". Wearing required more sea room, so in a confined space—for example, when leaving port—a sailing ship was often obliged to tack.

Tacking
To follow its zig-zag course into the wind, the ship turns its bow through the direction of the wind before setting off in the other direction—the "opposite tack."



Wearing
In contrast to tacking, the ship goes about (changes direction) by turning its stern through the wind rather than its bow. As a result the ship will sail for a time with the wind—in the opposite direction to the way it is trying to go. Progress is slower than with tacking.

1200 BCE – 1550 CE

WAR OF THE LEAGUE OF CAMBRAI

BREST

Date August 10, 1512
Forces English: 25 ships; French: 22 ships
Losses English: 1 ship; French: 2 ships

Location Off Brest, Brittany, France

In 1512 England went to war with France. Edward Howard took a fleet to sea and harassed French shipping. To put a stop to these depredations, Louis XII ordered a fleet to be assembled at Brest under Vice Admiral René de Clermont.

On August 10 the English surprised the French at anchor off the Pointe de St Mathieu. Many Breton gentry were on board the ships to celebrate the Feast of St Lawrence. The French cut their cables and many fled for the safety of the Brest roadstead. De Clermont's flagship was assailed by Howard aboard the newly commissioned *Mary Rose* and had his mainmast shot away before drifting out of the battle. The largest English ship, the 1,000-ton *Regent*, commanded by Sir Thomas Knyvet, grappled *Cordelière*, whose captain Primauget was a noted Breton seaman. Knyvet was cut in two by a cannonball, but *Cordelière* seemed sure to be taken when it exploded, destroying both ships and killing more than a thousand men. Despite the loss of *Regent*, it was a clear English victory. In reward, King Henry VIII appointed Howard Admiral of England.

THE BATTLE OF THE SOLENT

In 1543 English king Henry VIII went to war with France as an ally of Emperor Charles V. After the English seized Boulogne, French king François I planned an invasion of England. He assembled a fleet at Le Havre in the summer of 1545, bringing 25 Mediterranean galleys north to join his Channel ships. In June English admiral John Dudley led an attempted pre-emptive strike against the French invasion fleet but failed to do significant damage. Dudley arrived back at Portsmouth on July 13 with his ships in need of resupply and repair. The English fleet was far from ready when the French invasion force arrived.

WARS OF FRANÇOIS I & CHARLES V

THE BATTLE OF THE SOLENT

Date	July 10-15, 1545
Location	Solent, off Portsmouth, southern England
Result	Inconclusive battle

COMBATANTS

ENGLAND	FRANCE

COMMANDERS

Admiral John Dudley	Admiral Claude d'Annebault

FORCES

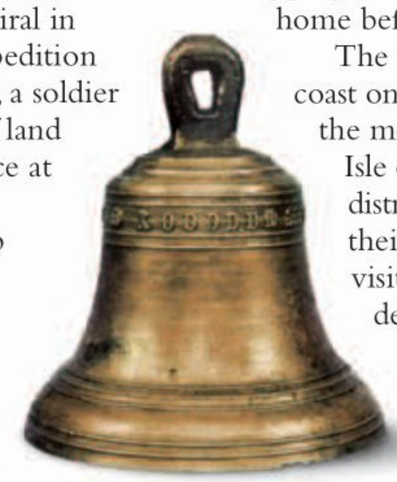
Ships: 80	Ships: 150 sailing ships, 25 galleys

LOSSES

Men: unknown Ships: unknown	Men: unknown Ships: unknown

AN INAUSPICIOUS START

The man appointed admiral in charge of the French expedition was Claude d'Annebault, a soldier with great experience of land warfare but no experience at sea. He suffered an early setback when his flagship *Carraquon* caught fire before leaving harbor and had to be abandoned. He then shifted his flag to *La Grande Maîtresse*, which subsequently ran aground as the invasion fleet left the French coast on July 15. The *Maîtresse* continued across the Channel but was shipping water, and had to be sent home before battle was joined.



Relics of the Mary Rose
Among the nautical instruments found in the wreck of the *Mary Rose* were this wooden compass dial and a pair of dividers.

The French reached the Sussex coast on 18 July and sailed west to the mouth of the Solent, off the Isle of Wight. The English were distracted by the presence of their king, who had come to visit his fleet and inspect the defenses of Portsmouth. Sunday, 19 July was a fine, still day. With sailing ships becalmed, some

> WHEN SHE HEELED OVER WITH THE WIND, THE WATER ENTERED BY THE LOWEST ROW OF GUN PORTS WHICH HAD BEEN LEFT OPEN AFTER FIRING.
>
> **VAN DER DELFT,** IMPERIAL AMBASSADOR, REPORTING THE ACCOUNT OF A SURVIVOR FROM THE *MARY ROSE*

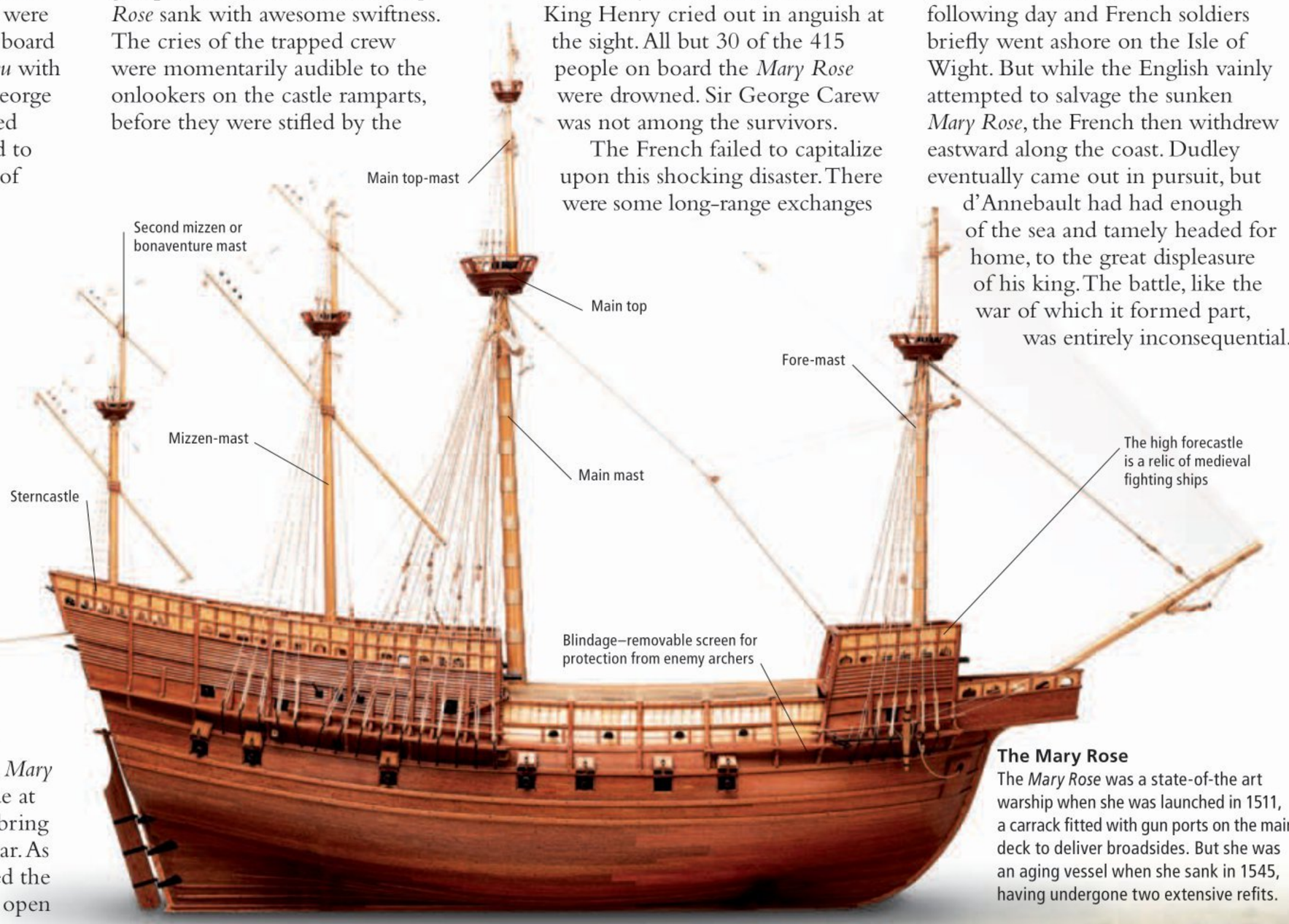
French galleys rowed into the Solent toward Portsmouth. When they were sighted, the king was dining on board the great ship *Henry Grace à Dieu* with various officers, including Sir George Carew, Dudley's newly appointed vice-admiral. The king departed to view events from the ramparts of Southsea Castle, while his fleet prepared to fight.

The English ships had great trouble extricating themselves from their crowded anchorage with barely a breath of wind to aid them. In the afternoon, however, a wind arose and they began to emerge, sailing out toward the French galleys in the Solent. The large but aged carrack *Mary Rose*, with Vice-Admiral Carew on board, took the lead. The vice-admiral's wife Lady Mary Carew was among the spectators alongside King Henry who were watching the action from Southsea Castle.

THE MARY ROSE SINKS

Witnesses to the battle saw the *Mary Rose* fire her starboard broadside at the galleys and come about to bring the guns on the port side to bear. As she did so, a gust of wind caused the ship to heel over, plunging her open gun ports below water. The *Mary Rose* sank with awesome swiftness. The cries of the trapped crew were momentarily audible to the onlookers on the castle ramparts, before they were stifled by the waves. Lady Carew fainted, while King Henry cried out in anguish at the sight. All but 30 of the 415 people on board the *Mary Rose* were drowned. Sir George Carew was not among the survivors.

The French failed to capitalize upon this shocking disaster. There were some long-range exchanges of fire between the two fleets the following day and French soldiers briefly went ashore on the Isle of Wight. But while the English vainly attempted to salvage the sunken *Mary Rose*, the French then withdrew eastward along the coast. Dudley eventually came out in pursuit, but d'Annebault had had enough of the sea and tamely headed for home, to the great displeasure of his king. The battle, like the war of which it formed part, was entirely inconsequential.



The Mary Rose
The *Mary Rose* was a state-of-the art warship when she was launched in 1511, a carrack fitted with gun ports on the main deck to deliver broadsides. But she was an aging vessel when she sank in 1545, having undergone two extensive refits.

Watching the spectacle
Massed English forces line the shore as the *Henry Grace à Dieu* (center) exchanges fire with French galleys. Nearer to shore small boats try to rescue survivors from the sinking *Mary Rose*.

THE OTTOMANS

A constant menace
An Ottoman fleet commanded by Kheir-ed-Din sails past the entrance to the harbor at Genoa. No port in the Christian Mediterranean was safe from his raids. At times the Ottomans were allied with the French, as when Kheir-ed-Din joined forces with François I to sack Nice in 1543.

AT THE BEGINNING of the 14th century the Ottoman Turks were a small band of Muslim warriors in northern Anatolia. In a remarkably short time they made themselves rulers of a great land empire and a major naval power. The capture of Constantinople in 1453 completed their conquest of the Byzantine Empire. This was followed by expansion westward and southward that gave them control of the eastern Mediterranean, coastal areas of North Africa, and the Red Sea. Through most of the 16th century the Christian states of the Mediterranean could do little to counter Ottoman naval operations, which threatened Italy and Provence with invasion and filled the slave markets of the Islamic world with Christians carried off by Muslim privateers. Victory at Lepanto in 1571 gave the Christian powers a breathing space, but the Ottoman navy remained a major force into the 18th century.

FIGHTING CORSAIRS

The Ottoman navy was a hybrid force that drew strength from its diversity. The empire was run by a well organized bureaucracy and had impressive financial resources. Once these were devoted to constructing, equipping, and manning a navy in the late 15th century, a formidable fleet was the almost inevitable result. But the Ottomans also relied heavily upon the skills and initiative of privateers. The Barbary corsairs of Algiers and other North African ports, officially sanctioned by the Ottoman sultans, not only preyed upon Christian merchant shipping and raided the coasts of Christian states, but also provided a considerable percentage of the galleys found in Ottoman war fleets. The daring and aggression of their commanders was a vital adjunct to the more formal fighting style of the official Ottoman navy. The Ottoman state always tended to regard sea power as a support to land operations, best used for transporting large armies such as the 100,000 soldiers employed in the successful siege of Rhodes in 1523, or the 40,000 used in the failed siege of Malta in 1565.

Ottoman war galley
This 16th-century depiction of an Ottoman galley bristles with cannons. This was more typical of a Venetian galleass of the period—Ottoman ships were usually more lightly armed.

CHRISTIAN DISUNITY

The Christian states around the Mediterranean struggled to mount a unified response as the Ottomans pressed westward. No country alone was sufficiently strong to stand up to the Turks. Venice suffered first and worst. After they had suffered defeat at the hands of the Ottoman navy at the end of the 15th century, the Venetians found all their possessions and trade in the eastern Mediterranean under threat. The Knights of St. John, who operated as Christian predators upon Muslim shipping, were driven out of their stronghold on Rhodes but survived precariously in a new base at Malta. Emperor Charles V and subsequent Habsburg rulers of Spain fought, with little success, to contest Ottoman control of the Muslim states of North Africa. Even when the Christians achieved sufficient unity to send out a combined fleet, they were defeated at Preveza in 1538 and Djerba in 1560, before a victory for the Holy League in the great galley battle of Lepanto in 1571 sent the whole of Christendom delirious with relief.

FIREPOWER REVOLUTION

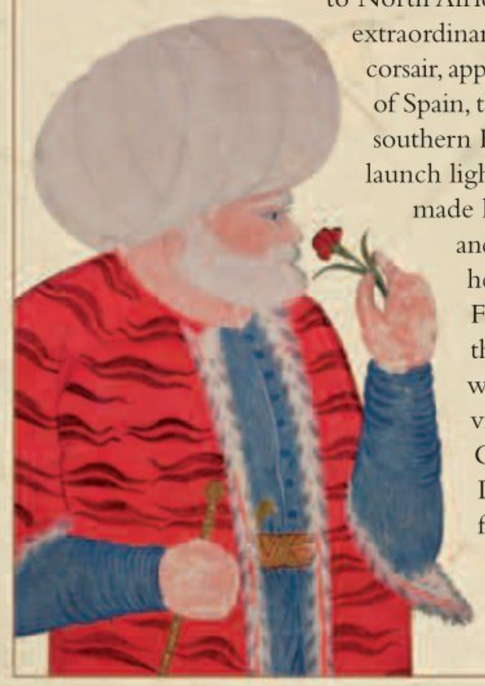
The rise of Ottoman naval power coincided with the introduction of cannon and handguns into naval warfare. On land the Turks were not at all backward in the deployment of gunpowder weapons, but their Christian opponents were definitely more thoroughgoing in their use at sea. Even the Venetians' low and nimble galleys would have a bow gun firing

c.1478–1546

KHEIR-ED-DIN

OTTOMAN NAVAL COMMANDER AND PRIVATEER

Kheir-ed-Din, known to Europeans as Barbarossa, was born on the island of Lesbos, probably to a family of Albanian origin. He went to sea at an early age and became a corsair, a role in which he was initially overshadowed by his elder brother Oruç Reis. Kheir-ed-Din succeeded Oruç as ruler of Algiers in 1518, swearing allegiance to the Ottoman sultan. Like his brother, he helped large numbers of mudejars, Spanish Muslims, to escape from Andalusia to North Africa. He was also extraordinarily active as a corsair, appearing off the coast of Spain, the Balearic Islands, southern France, and Italy, to launch lightning raids that made him both feared and admired. In 1534 he was appointed Fleet Admiral of the Ottoman navy, winning a great victory over the Christian Holy League at Preveza four years later. He retired to Istanbul in 1545, shortly before his death.



THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE

The great period of Ottoman expansion was in the reigns of Selim the Grim (1512–20) and Suleiman the Magnificent (1520–66). The former conquered Egypt and much of the Middle East, the latter extended Ottoman rule far into southeastern Europe and North Africa. During this time the Ottomans also became the dominant naval power in the eastern Mediterranean and threatened to do the same in the western half.

KEY

- Ottoman Empire 1512
- Ottoman conquests by 1639
- Austrian Habsburg possessions
- Spanish Habsburg possessions
- Frontiers 1600
- Holy Roman Empire
- Ottoman victory
- Ottoman defeat

straight ahead—aimed by pointing the galley at the target—augmented by swivel guns to rake the enemy decks. Other Christian vessels might carry a much heavier weight of armament. Large galeasses—converted merchant ships—were even capable of firing broadsides. Christian fighting men often wore armor and fired arquebuses instead of crossbows, while the Muslims remained lightly clad and equipped with traditional missile weapons. An Ottoman fleet often had the advantage of superior maneuverability, however. In the course of the 16th century most Christian states resorted to *a scaloccio* rowing—very large oars, each pulled by four, five, or even more rowers. These were operated mostly by slaves and criminals condemned to the galleys. Venice alone maintained a predominance of free oarsmen. The *a scaloccio* system militated against deft and skilful maneuver, as did the increasing size of galleys viewed as gun platforms. Christian fleets typically advanced in line abreast to defend their flanks and maximize forward fire. Handled aggressively, Ottoman galleys could break up the Christian line and win in a pell-mell battle.

AFTER LEPANTO

Lepanto, the last major battle in which galleys overwhelmingly predominated, was a major Ottoman defeat. But it was far from ending Ottoman naval efforts, because the empire had the resources to build a new fleet to replace the one it had lost. The Ottomans were long able to hold their own against Christians in the eastern Mediterranean, beating Venice in a war for control of Crete in the mid-17th century and besting a combined Christian fleet at Matapan in 1717. Meanwhile, the Barbary corsairs extended their activities into the Atlantic, their nifty xebecs even raiding the coasts of the British Isles—almost the entire population of the Irish village of Baltimore was carried off by the North African raiders in 1631. The depredations of the Barbary pirates continued largely unchecked until the early years of the 19th century.

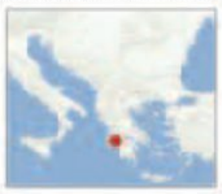
The Crescent and the Cross
In this clash of galleys of the Lepanto era, the Christians fire their foredeck cannons on the Ottoman foe.

CHRISTIAN NAVIES AGAINST THE TURKS

THE FIRST CHRISTIAN STATE to feel the effects of Ottoman naval power was Venice, thoroughly defeated in a war fought between 1499 and 1503. From then until the battle of Lepanto in 1571, the Christians were unable to challenge Ottoman command of the eastern Mediterranean. However, the galleys of Malta, under the Knights of St. John, harassed Turkish communications, and the failure of the Ottoman siege of the island in 1565 was a major relief for Christian Europe. Efforts to wrest control of North Africa from the Muslims repeatedly failed and the Barbary corsairs of Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, acting as Ottoman privateers, were a constant threat in the western Mediterranean. The Ottoman cause was aided by lack of unity between the Christian powers, with Venice and the Habsburgs fixed enemies, and the French mostly allied with the Turks. The battle of Diu, which extended Christian-Muslim conflict into the Indian Ocean, was a reminder that the Mediterranean powers were fighting for control of a backwater, as oceanic voyages opened up new trade routes and ocean-going ships transformed naval warfare.

VENETIAN–OTTOMAN WAR

ZONCHIO



Date August 12–25, 1499
Forces Ottomans: 87 galleys and galliots, c.200 other ships; Venetians: 64 galleys and galliots, c.100 other ships
Losses Unknown

Location Cape Zonchio, Lepanto, Greece

In spring 1499 a Venetian force under Antonio Grimani met an Ottoman fleet under Kemal Reis off Lepanto. Both fleets had a number of great galleys and carracks that provided a high platform for breach-loading iron cannon and primitive handguns, as well as men armed with bows and other traditional missiles. Kemal Reis's flagship, *Göke*, could reputedly carry 700 soldiers. In the first engagement on August 12 *Göke* was boarded by two Venetian carracks, one of them commanded by Andrea Loredano. A fire broke out on *Göke* and all three vessels were burned. Grimani was accused of failing to come to Loredano's aid.

Further actions were fought between the two fleets on August 20, 22, and 25. The overall result was a clear defeat for the Venetians. Grimani was arrested on his return to Venice, but survived to become doge later in life.

Grappling and boarding
This contemporary woodcut shows the central event of the battle of Zonchio, when two Venetian ships grappled the Ottoman flagship, resulting in hand-to-hand fighting and deadly exchanges of arrows.

PORTUGUESE–OTTOMAN WAR

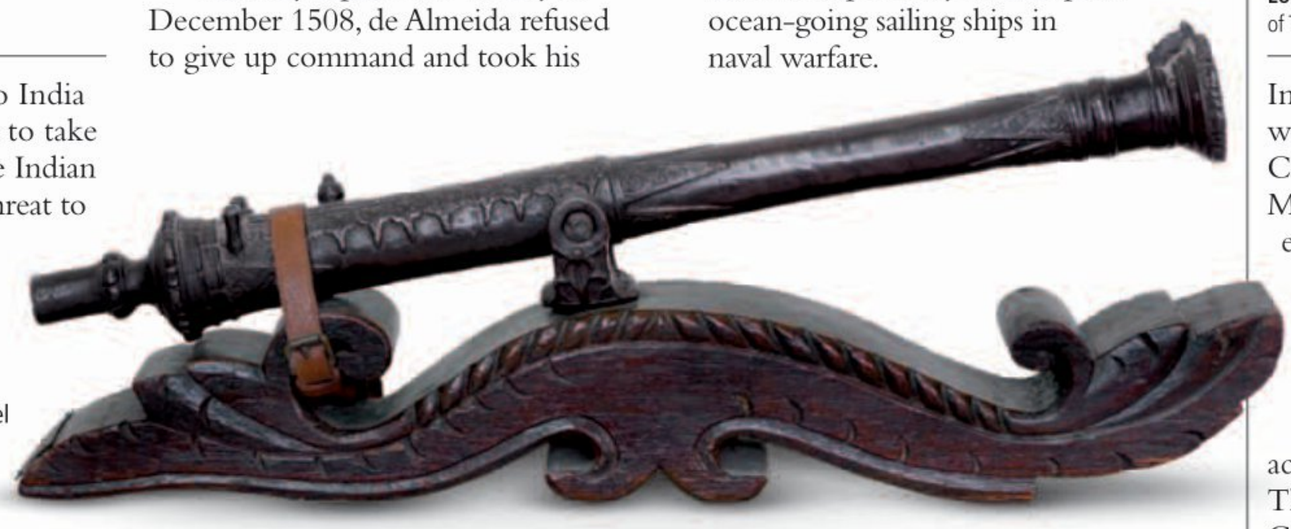
DIU

Date February 1509
Forces Portuguese: 18 ships; Egyptian-Gujerati force: 12 ships
Losses Unknown

Location Diu, western India

After Vasco da Gama's voyage to India in 1498, the Portuguese set out to take over the spice trade between the Indian Ocean and Europe. This was a threat to Egypt, Venice, and the Ottoman Empire, which all profited from the trade. The Ottomans gave the Egyptians galleys to send into the Indian Ocean. The Egyptian squadron joined with the dhows of Gujerati Sultan Mahmud Begada and, in March 1508, intercepted a Portuguese convoy. In the action Lourenço de Almeida, son of Portuguese viceroy Dom Francisco de Almeida, was killed.

Officially replaced as viceroy in December 1508, de Almeida refused to give up command and took his carracks and caravels to seek revenge. He found the Egyptian-Gujerati force in port at Diu. The Portuguese used their cannon to bombard the enemy, then closed to board. The many prisoners taken were vilely mistreated by de Almeida, incensed at his son's death. The battle established the absolute superiority of European ocean-going sailing ships in naval warfare.



Portuguese naval artillery
The swivel-gun was a small anti-personnel weapon with a wide arc of fire, fired at the enemy's deck as one closed to board.

> AS LONG AS YOU MAY BE POWERFUL AT SEA, YOU WILL HOLD INDIA AS YOURS; AND IF YOU DO NOT POSSESS THIS POWER, LITTLE WILL AVAIL YOU A FORTRESS ON THE SHORE.
>
> **FRANCISCO DE ALMEIDA** IN A LETTER TO KING MANUEL OF PORTUGAL AFTER THE VICTORY AT DIU

OTTOMAN–HABSBURG WARS

DJERBA

Date May 1560
Forces Ottomans: 86 galleys or galliots; Christians: 54 galleys, 66 other vessels
Losses Ottomans: none; Christians: 30 ships captured

Location Off coast of Tunisia

In 1560 panic at Muslim raids in the western Mediterranean led various Christian powers, including Genoa, Malta, and Savoy, to support an expedition mounted by Philip II of Spain against North Africa. Led by the Genoese Giovanni Andrea Doria, they captured the island of Djerba. With Djerba and Malta in their hands, they would control access to the western Mediterranean. The Ottomans dispatched a fleet under Grand Admiral Piyale Pasha, who arrived off Djerba to find the Christian ships scattered and half their crews ashore. He attacked immediately and captured half the Christian galleys in a few hours. Doria escaped in a small boat, but thousands were taken prisoner. Piyale returned to Constantinople towing the captured galleys in triumph.

THE BATTLE OF PREVEZA

In 1537 the Ottoman admiral-in-chief Kheir-ed-Din (Barbarossa) launched a campaign to annexe Venetian possessions around the coasts of Greece. He also raided the Italian coast, ravaging the Papal States and the domains of the Spanish Habsburgs. In desperation the Christian states united to face a common enemy, forming a Holy League under the leadership of Pope Paul III. In summer 1538 they assembled a large fleet under the overall command of the Habsburgs' admiral, the Genoese Andrea Doria.

Terracotta grenades
The Ottomans were very innovative in their use of gunpowder weapons. As well as powerful cannons, they used arquebuses and exploding grenades made of terracotta.

Barbarossa, who was in the Aegean when he heard that the Christian fleet had appeared in the Ionian Sea, sailed around Greece to confront it. The Holy League attacked Preveza, an important Ottoman base on the Greek mainland at the mouth of the Gulf of Arta. The attack failed and Barbarossa reinforced Ottoman control of the coast by seizing the fortress of Actium on the opposite shore of the gulf. With the guns of these two strongholds under his command, he was able to shelter his fleet inshore while the Christian ships were forced to keep out to sea.

The Ottomans were greatly inferior in numbers and firepower. Their 122 galleys and light fustas faced more than 130 Christian galleys with a host of other vessels in support. The Holy League may have had as many as 60,000 fighting men, outnumbering the Ottomans by three to one. Yet Barbarossa had no intention of avoiding battle. The Ottomans attacked at dawn on 28 September, a still day that virtually immobilized the sailing ships that made up a substantial part of the Christian fleet. Much of the fighting consisted of lightweight Ottoman galleys and fustas maneuvering deftly around relatively static but heavily armed Christian ships in order to board them.

Doria's conduct during and after the battle was controversial. He organized his fleet in depth rather than exploiting the opportunity for outflanking that numerical superiority provided. He also failed to engage the Ottoman center with any vigor, maneuvering to avoid close contact. The Papal and Venetian galleys on the flanks were meanwhile heavily engaged and the sailing ships exposed to capture. By the end of the day the Ottomans had suffered substantial casualties but had taken 36 ships as prizes and some 3,000 prisoners.

HIDDEN AGENDA

The Venetians wanted to continue the fight the following day, but Doria insisted on withdrawal to Corfu. He may have been influenced by financial considerations, since he owned many of the galleys under his command. But he was probably obeying secret orders from his Habsburg masters, who were not at all sorry to see Venice lose territory, the immediate consequence of the battle.

Crushing victory for the Turks
Barbarossa and his captains exploited the speed and mobility of their galleys to outmaneuver the heavier Christian ships, inflicting heavy material losses.

OTTOMAN–HABSBURG WARS

THE BATTLE OF PREVEZA

Date	September 28, 1538
Location	Ionian Sea, off northwest Greece
Result	Ottoman victory

COMBATANTS

HOLY LEAGUE	OTTOMAN EMPIRE

COMMANDERS

Andrea Doria	Kheir-ed-Din (Barbarossa)

FORCES

Ships: 130 galleys and 172 other ships	**Ships:** 122 galleys and light fustas

LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** 49 ships lost or captured	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** none

1466–1560

ANDREA DORIA

GENOESE ADMIRAL

The most famous Christian admiral of his day, Andrea Doria was admired and distrusted in equal measure. Born into one of Genoa's most distinguished families, he earned his reputation fighting for the French in the 1520s before changing sides and selling his services to the Habsburgs. A military entrepreneur who rented out his galleys to his employer, he was always suspected of putting his business interests first in the struggle against the Turks. He did not retire from fighting until the age of 89. His great nephew Giovanni Andrea Doria inherited his role as Habsburg admiral.

THE CAPTURE OF TUNIS

Holy Roman Emperor Charles V, who was also king of Spain, organized regular campaigns against the Muslim states of North Africa to try to curb the depredations of Christian shipping by Kheir-ed-Din and other Barbary corsairs. In 1535, Charles led a force of 60,000 soldiers, with a Genoese fleet commanded by Andrea Doria, to take the port of Tunis. The Spanish held on to a base at Tunis until 1574, when it was recaptured by the Ottomans.

OTTOMAN EXPANSION

SIEGE OF MALTA

Date May 18–September 11, 1565
Forces Ottomans: c.180 ships; Knights of Malta: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location
Malta

In spring 1565 the Ottoman sultan Suleiman the Magnificent sent an expedition to capture Malta. The navy was commanded by Grand Admiral Piyale Pasha, aided by the Barbary corsair Turgut Reis and an Egyptian fleet under Uluç Ali. Some 40,000 soldiers were landed, including at least 6,000 janissaries, the Ottomans' crack troops. Cannon and gunpowder was shipped to the island in enormous quantities to besiege the Knights of Malta in their fortresses around the Grand Harbor. A relief force gathered in Sicily, but Spanish commander Don Garcia de Toledo knew his fleet was not strong enough to take on the Turks.

The first fortress to suffer the onslaught of the Turkish artillery was Fort St. Elmo at the entrance to Grand Harbor. The defenders held out valiantly for over a month, but Turgut Reis was killed during the siege. An attempt to attack St. Michael fort across the Grand Harbor failed, the Turkish ships blocked by a boom and blasted by cannon at water level.

In September the Ottomans admitted defeat and headed for home. The failed siege was the first significant reverse for the Ottomans in the Mediterranean.

Ottoman landings on Malta
The Ottoman army disembarks at Marsascirocco on the east coast of Malta south of Grand Harbor. The distinctive white headgear of the janissaries is conspicuous among the Turkish forces.

CREW PROFILE

RENAISSANCE GALLEY

16TH CENTURY

THE CREW OF A RENAISSANCE WAR GALLEY was typically assembled by a captain of high social status, appointed to his command by the state. On the other hand, a galley might also be the private venture of a mercenary or corsair. The captain did not necessarily have any nautical experience, relying on a team of experienced seamen to navigate and run the ship. Spanish royal galleys had a chaplain to look after the crew's spiritual welfare and a governor to maintain order and discipline. Although sailors and even oarsmen might at a push take part in combat, the fighting force was a separate body of men—a land army at sea that included gentleman volunteers, infantry, and specialist artillerymen.

CONVICTS AND SLAVES

Oarsmen made up the great majority of the crew. Some were free men, either signing on as volunteers or recruited by conscription—the latter common in Ottoman and Venetian fleets. But in the 16th century free oarsmen became increasingly rare, especially in the Spanish galley fleet, partly because they were too expensive to employ. Their place was taken by convicts or slaves. A spell in the Spanish galleys was the punishment for offences such as murder, robbery, blasphemy, rape, bigamy, and vagrancy, with sentences ranging from a few months to life.

CONDITIONS ON BOARD

The slaves were usually prisoners of war, although more likely to have been seized by marauding privateers than taken prisoner in battle. Slaves in Christian galleys were chiefly Muslims, and vice versa. Free oarsmen were not chained and might have a weapon so they could fight if needed. But convicts and slaves were shackled to their benches. Life below deck on a crowded galley was miserable. A drum was beaten to give the rhythm for their strokes, but the lash was often used freely on any man thought to be slacking. An oarsman was a valuable item and intelligent captains kept their ships clean and the crew well fed. But more often sanitary arrangements were poor, ships stank, disease was rife, and gross ill-treatment common. Average life expectancy for a convict in a Spanish galley has been estimated at two years.

Venetian galley slave
As the Venice lost its possessions in the Ionian and Aegean to the Ottomans, there were fewer free men to recruit as oarsmen, so it relied more and more on slaves and convicts.

OTTOMAN EXPANSION

GOZO

Date July 15, 1570
Forces Knights of Malta: 4 galleys; Ottomans: 19 galliots
Losses Knights of Malta: 3 galleys captured; Ottomans: none

Location Off Cape Passaro, Sicily

In June 1570 the Knights of Malta sent four galleys under the command of French knight François de St Clément to join a Christian fleet in Sicily that had assembled for a campaign against the Turks. As things turned out, this campaign, did not come to fruition until the following year, when the fleet of the Holy League defeated the Ottomans at Lepanto. Since there was little prospect of action in Sicily, St. Clément decided to return to Malta, setting sail on the evening of July 14.

The following morning, some 20 miles (30 km) off the island of Gozo, the Knights' galleys were spotted by a squadron of galliots that Uluç Ali, recently appointed Beylerbey of Algiers, was taking to Constantinople. St. Clément turned back for Sicily with the Muslims in pursuit. The galliots were faster under oars than the large Maltese galleys, whose Muslim slave oarsmen had no incentive to hurry. Two galleys, *Santa Anna* and *San Giovanni*, were surrounded by galliots and boarded after heavy fighting that left their decks strewn with the dead and dying. The other two galleys reached the Sicilian coast, where St. Clément's flagship ran aground. As the knights fled, the slave oarsmen took over the galley and handed it over to Uluç Ali. Returning to Malta, St. Clément was condemned to death and his body thrown into the sea in a sack.

The opposing lines at Lepanto
This painting, completed in 1581, gives a spectacular aerial view of the battle. It depicts three Christian squadrons (left) firing on the smaller galleys of the Ottoman fleet (right).

THE BATTLE OF LEPANTO

On September 16, 1571, a large Christian fleet set sail from Sicily on an expedition to relieve Venetian-owned Cyprus, then under attack by the Ottoman Empire. Most of the men and galleys had been supplied by Venice and Habsburg Spain, but Genoa, the Papacy, Savoy, and Malta's Knights of St. John had all made contributions. In command was the Habsburg prince Don John of Austria.

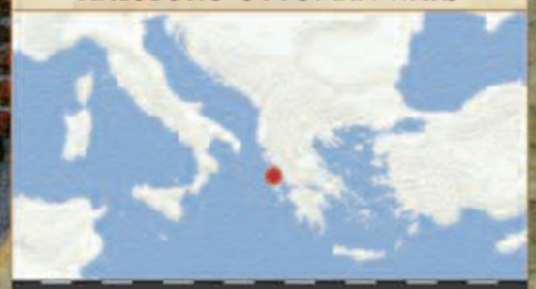
As his fleet drew near to where the Ottomans lay at Lepanto in western Greece, Don John organized the galleys into four squadrons: that on the right commanded by Genoese Giovanni Andrea Doria, the left under Venetian Agostino Barbarigo, the center under Don John himself. Spanish admiral Santa Cruz was placed in reserve.

Facing the Christian fleet, the Ottoman forces advanced in a crescent, with the admiral Ali Pasha in the center, the right wing under Suluc Mehmed Pasha, and the left under the feared corsair Uluç Ali, an Italian-born convert to Islam. As the moment for combat approached Don John had the Holy League's banner of Christ crucified raised above his flagship, *Real*. Ali Pasha sailed under a banner embroidered 29,800 times with the name of Allah.

CANNON AND ARQUEBUS

The Christians placed their faith in firepower. Most of their galleys had a centerline cannon or culverin in the bows firing up to a 60 lb (25 kg) iron shot, flanked by up to four smaller cannon, plus many swivel guns and soldiers with arquebuses. The Ottoman galleys were smaller than the Spanish ones, but similar to the Venetian. They had fewer and less powerful cannon and their soldiers depended more on composite bows than on firearms. The Ottomans hoped to maneuver, ram, and board the Christian vessels. Both sides hoped to maintain formation and avoid being attacked on the flank.

HABSBURG–OTTOMAN WARS



THE BATTLE OF LEPANTO

Date	October 7, 1571
Location	Gulf of Patras, off western Greece
Result	Victory for the Holy League

COMBATANTS

HOLY LEAGUE: SPAIN VENETIAN REPUBLIC PAPAL STATES REPUBLIC OF GENOA SAVOY KNIGHTS OF MALTA	OTTOMAN EMPIRE

COMMANDERS

Don John of Austria	Muezzinzade Ali Pasha

FORCES

Ships: 206 galleys, 6 galleasses	**Ships:** 230 galleys

LOSSES

Men: 8,000 casualties **Ships:** 13 galleys sunk	**Men:** 20,000 casualties, **Ships:** 50 galleys sunk, 130 captured

1547–1578

DON JOHN OF AUSTRIA

COMMANDER OF SPAIN'S MEDITERRANEAN GALLEY FLEET

The illegitimate half-brother of Philip II of Spain, John of Austria was named commander of the Spanish galley fleet at the age of 18, with more experienced admirals to advise him. He developed a reputation for reckless courage during the suppression of the Moriscos revolt in Andalusia, before his appointment to lead the fleet of the Holy League. Victory at Lepanto was followed by the capture of Tunis from the Muslims in 1573. Philip then sent him to deal with a rebellion in Flanders, where he died aged 31.

Commemorating the victory
Lepanto became a favorite subject for art all over Catholic Europe. This colorful Spanish version is painted on tiles. Between the Christian fleet (below) and the Ottomans (above), the huge Christian galleasses open fire at the start of the battle.

Crucially, the Venetians also provided six galleasses—large transport galleys turned into floating gun platforms. These were so unwieldy they had to be towed into position, but their massed guns packed a formidable punch. The presence of the galleasses was a surprise to the Ottomans. They were unsure of their tactical function, but soon found out as the thunder of the galleases' guns sent a savage hail of iron balls lashing into the galleys of the Ottoman center.

Although his fleet was thrown into disorder and two galleys had been sunk, Ali Pasha pressed on past the galleasses and through the fire from the galleys behind to engage the Christian center at close quarters. On the flanks a desperate battle was joined as the horns of the Turkish crescent attempted to outflank the Christian line. The Venetian galleys on the Christian left were close to shore, but some of Suluc's ships succeeded in rowing through shallow water beyond the edge of their line. Barbarigo's galleys skillfully backed to turn outward facing toward the shore, presenting their bow guns to the Ottoman ships, which were forced to turn to face them. A close-quarter mêlée ensued, in which Barbarigo was hit by an arrow and killed.

On the Christian right there was open water. Uluç Ali tried to outflank Doria's squadron, and Doria shifted further to the right to block him. This stretched the line between the Christian right and center. Choosing his moment, the wily Uluç Ali turned swiftly back to attack the straggling Christian galleys left behind by Doria's rightward move.

CHAOS AND BLOODSHED

By this stage, cloaked in a fog of gunpowder smoke, the battle was a scene of brutal slaughter. Everywhere galleys were locked together, soldiers fighting hand-to-hand on the decks with sword and pike. At the heart of the battle, Don John's flagship was boarded by janissaries—elite Ottoman infantry—from Ali Pasha's *Sultana*.

The key to the outcome was the use of the reserve squadron made by Santa Cruz. Feeding his galleys into the action where they were needed, he enabled the Venetians on the left to hold and then put to flight their adversaries—many Ottoman troops escaping through the shallow water onto land.

Santa Cruz then decisively intervened in the struggle in the center. The *Sultana* was stormed and taken. Ali Pasha's severed head was displayed on a pike and the Ottoman standard struck from the mast. As the Ottoman center collapsed, fighting turned to massacre and plunder. Only Uluç Ali was able to extricate his galleys from the debacle, leading perhaps a sixth of the original force back to Constantinople.

The Ottomans quickly built a new fleet—their grand vizier bragged that the Christians had merely shaved the Ottoman beard that "would grow all the better for the razor." But Christian jubilation at victory in one of the largest sea battles ever fought was justifiable, for it stemmed the tide of Ottoman expansion that had threatened to engulf the whole Mediterranean.

Detailed contemporary record
The individual ships engaged in the center are clearly identifiable by their banners. At this early stage of the battle several of the Christian galleys have been boarded by Ottoman troops.

KEY

HOLY LEAGUE FLEET

10 Christian galleys

2 Venetian galleasses

OTTOMAN FLEET

10 Ottoman galleys

1 THE FLEETS LINE UP

As the Christian galleys sail past Scropha Point and into the Gulf of Patras, the Ottoman fleet is sighted around 9 miles (14 km) to the east. The Ottoman galleys are more numerous than the Christian, but also smaller and less heavily armed.

SCROPHA POINT

The Christian left is commanded by Venetian Agostino Barbarigo

The Ottoman right is commanded by Suluc Mehmed Pasha

Small Ottoman reserve

The Ottomans advance in a crescent formation with Ali Pasha in the center

A reserve squadron under Spanish admiral Santa Cruz remains at the rear of the Christian line

The main Christian line is drawn up in three squadrons, with Don John of Austria in the center

The galleasses are towed toward the advancing Ottomans. Their guns launch a devastating hail of iron shot

The feared corsair Uluç Ali commands the Ottoman left

The Christian right is commanded by Genoese Giovanni Andrea Doria

GULF OF PATRAS

2 THE FLEETS ENGAGE

The guns of the huge Christian galleasses cause havoc as the two sides engage. The Ottoman wings attempt to outflank their Christian counterparts, while fierce battles develop as the galleys in the center close with the enemy.

SCROPHA POINT

The first clash takes place close to the coast as Suluc's light galiots attempt to outflank the Christian galleys by rowing through shallow water near the shore

Seeing that the Christian left wing is under pressure, Santa Cruz moves the reserve squadron forward to assist

As the fleets clash in the center, a crucial battle develops around the two flagships. Troops engage in fierce hand-to-hand fighting as they attempt to board enemy galleys

A few galleys become isolated from Doria's squadron

Uluç Ali abandons attempt to outflank Doria and makes for gap that has opened in Christian line

As Doria's squadron advances, most of his galleys move to the right to counter Uluç Ali's outflanking maneuver

Uluç Ali's squadron attempts to outflank the Christian right wing initially

GULF OF PATRAS

3 CHRISTIAN VICTORY

The Christian left wing traps the Ottoman right against the shore. With the reserve Christian squadron joining in the battle for the center, the Ottoman line finally collapses. A few Ottoman galleys escape but most are captured.

SCROPHA POINT

Some Turkish soldiers escape onto the shore

The galleys on the Christian right wing succeed in pinning the Ottomans' ships against the shore

The collapse of the Ottoman right wing frees up some of Santa Cruz's galleys to join in the battle for the center

Don John's galley is boarded from Ali Pasha's *Sultana*, but then the tables are turned, the Ottoman flagship captured, and Ali Pasha killed

Two galleasses move up to help prevent threatened breakthrough on the Christian right

Seeing the Ottoman standard cut down from the flagship's mast, the Turkish center collapses

A few Ottoman galleys escape, chiefly those of Uluç Ali

Doria's right wing turns to assist the isolated galleys that had been under attack from Uluç Ali

GULF OF PATRAS

RECONSTRUCTED RENAISSANCE GALLEY

GALERA REAL

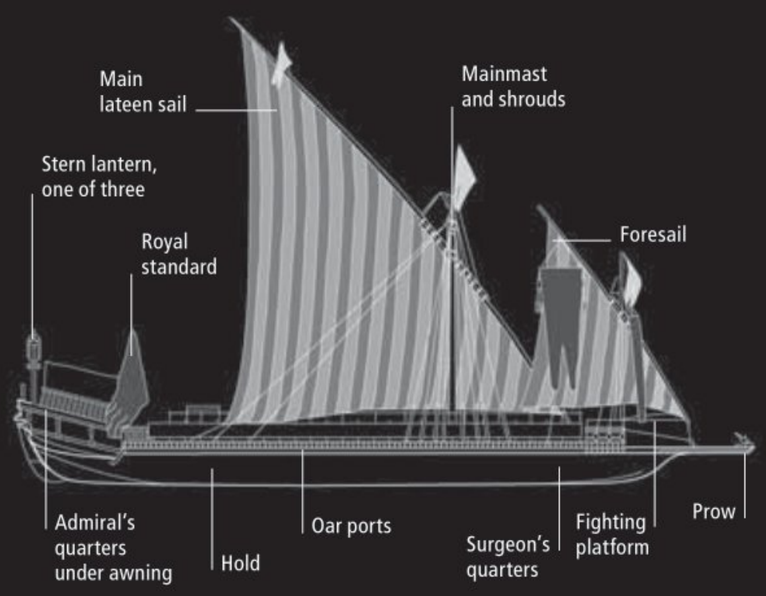
THE GALERA REAL was no ordinary war galley, but a luxury vessel made for Don John of Austria, commander-in-chief of the fleet of the Holy League assembled to fight the Ottoman Turks. A gift from his half-brother, King Philip II of Spain, the galley was built in the shipyards of Barcelona in 1568, then decorated and gilded in Seville.

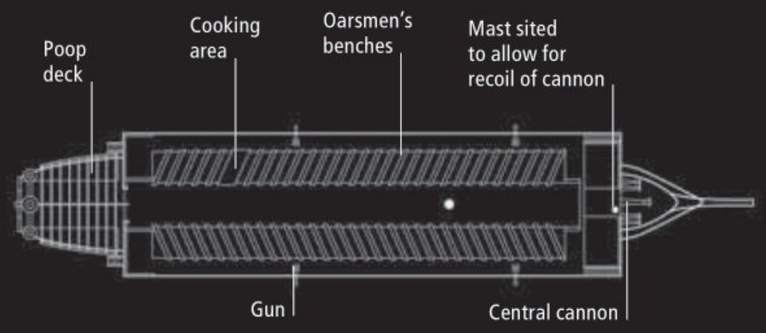
THE PALATIAL ROYAL FLAGSHIP was 197 ft (60 m) long and 24 ft (6.2 m) wide and carried a crew of as many as 400 men. Of these, 236 were required simply to row the galley, with four men manning each oar. In addition, there were a number of skilled sailors to steer and manage the two lateen sails, as well as a large detachment of soldiers. The galley was armed with a large central cannon in the bow, flanked by four medium-sized guns. There were also four much smaller guns sited between the oarsmen's stations, two on each side of the ship.

This replica of the galley was made for the Maritime Museum in Barcelona to mark the 400th anniversary of the Holy League's victory at the battle of Lepanto on October 7, 1571. The ship's most striking feature is the sheer richness of its decoration, from the figurehead of Neptune to the paintings and statues on the stern. These were painstakingly recreated from a description written at the time. Many of them feature the Classical heroes Hercules and Jason.

The choice of these two figures was significant: in his quest for the Golden Fleece Jason sailed with the Argonauts to Colchis on the Black Sea, while legend placed the Pillars of Hercules at the Strait of Gibraltar—the two extremes of the vast length of coastline controlled by the Ottoman Empire.

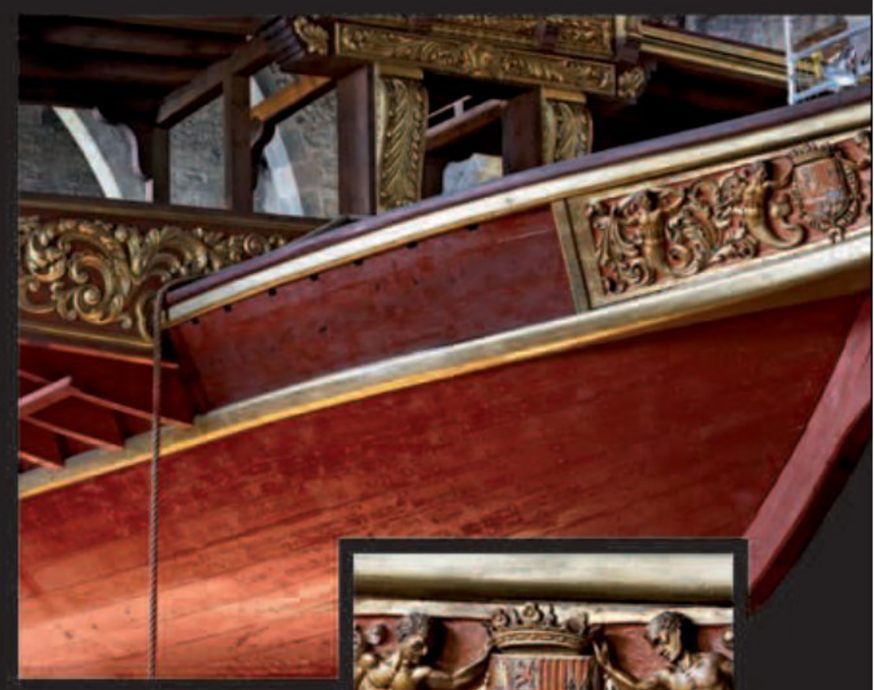
In action at Lepanto
Don John's galley fought a close-quarters duel with the Ottoman flagship *Sultana*. Turkish soldiers boarded the galley, but were driven back.





Galera Real
The galley raised its sails when crossing open sea with a favorable wind, but in battle relied on its 236 oarsmen. The main battle tactic was to board and capture enemy ships.

> "THE GREAT BANNER OF THE LEAGUE, DISPLAYING CHRIST CRUCIFIED, ... THE COATS OF ARMS OF HABSBURG SPAIN, THE POPE, AND THE REPUBLIC OF VENICE, WAS HOISTED ON THE REAL'S MAINMAST."
>
> **NICCOLÒ CAPPONI** DESCRIBING THE OPENING OF THE BATTLE OF LEPANTO

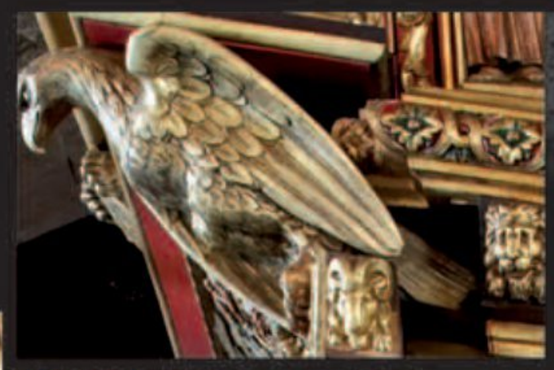


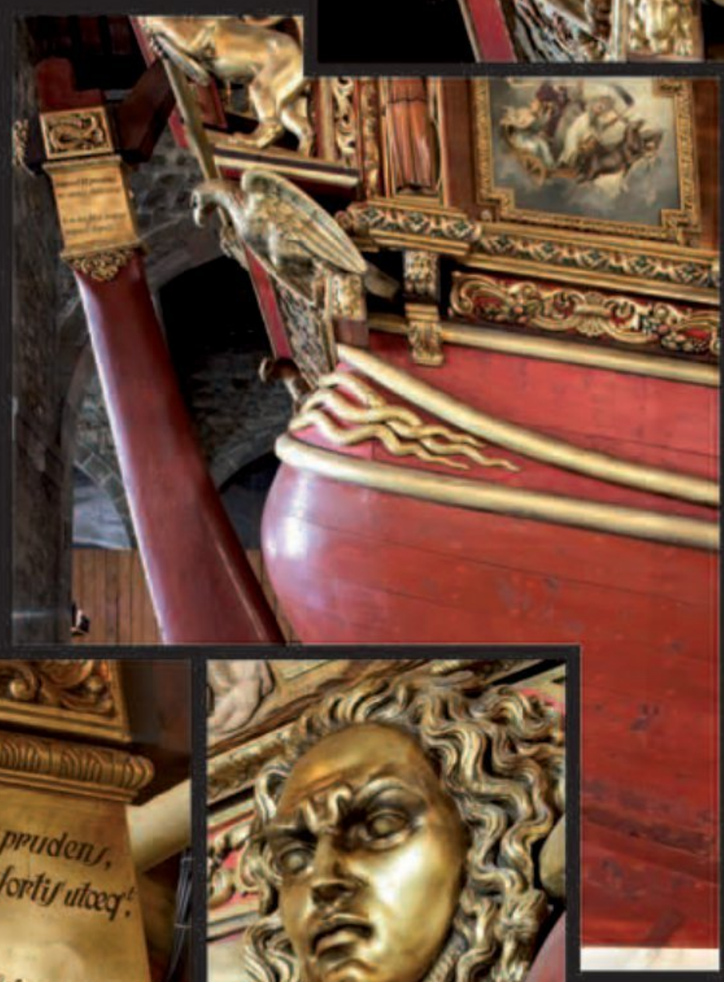
» **Classical figurehead**
The prow ends in this magnificent figurehead of a gilded Neptune, the Roman god of the sea, riding on a dolphin and brandishing a trident. The statues and reliefs on the original galley were created by the leading sculptors of Renaissance Spain.

» » **Prow**
The galley's long prow is decorated with the coat of arms of Philip II of Spain, supported by two mermen. Before Lepanto Don John had the end of the prow cut off so that the central cannon could be depressed to shoot down on the Ottoman ships.

» Rudder
The rudders fitted on Mediterranean galleys were smaller than those found on sailing ships of comparable size. It was always possible to use the oars to alter course.

» Imperial ambition
The gilded eagles on the stern are a reference to the Roman Empire and Christian Europe's desire to win back Rome's former possessions from Ottoman domination.





» Latin motto
The motto engraved at the top of the rudder extols the virtues of prudence and strength, essential qualities needed to control the power of the sea.

» Head of Medusa
The gorgon Medusa stares out from the the stern, deflecting evil and bringing destruction to Don John's enemies.

« Stern lantern
The poop deck, where the helmsman controlled the tiller, is crowned with three ornate lanterns, beacons for keeping the fleet together at night.

» Statues on the stern
The frieze at the top shows Hercules in the Garden of the Hesperides. Below, the two lions hold the coats of arms of Austria and the Order of the Golden Fleece, while the four female figures represent Christian virtues.

« Gilded baluster
Every tiny detail around the stern of the ship, where the admiral and his officers were housed in the poop, is richly carved and decorated.

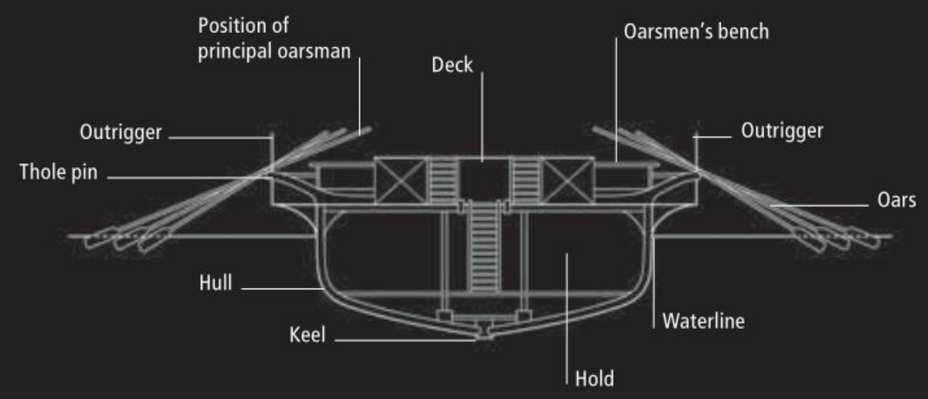
» Paintings with a moral
The painting of Time's chariot suggests that the leader must seize any opportunity when it comes, while the elephant and the rhinoceros about to do battle express the idea "be ready for victory or death."

» Entry ports
The pair of curved ladders on either side of the poop were used for embarking and disembarking. LIke everything else at the stern end of the galley, they are richly decorated with gilded reliefs.

» Fancy scuppers
Even the scuppers, the ports that could be opened to let excess water run off the decks, contributed to the decorative scheme of Don John's galley.

ABOVE DECK

THE GALERA REAL mounted five cannon on the raised fighting platform or forecastle at the prow and four lighter artillery pieces. Going into battle, soldiers were stationed around the galley from the bow to the stern, many of them armed with arquebuses. The galley was rowed *a scaloccio*, with four men to a single oar. Although elaborately decorated, the poop functioned as the center of armed resistance if the galley was boarded in battle, fighting men clustering there to defend their flag and their commmander. At Lepanto the galley was rammed by the Turkish flagship, the enemy prow penetrating as far inboard as the fourth oarsman.



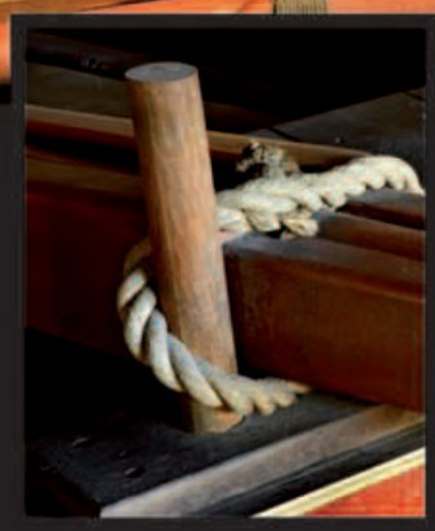
Cross-section of galley
The galley has 30 oars on the starboard (right) side and 29 on the port (left) side, with four oarsmen to each oar. As the men rowed the inside oarsman had to move further than the others, rising to his feet as he pressed on the foot brace in front of him to pull the oar through the water.

Interior of the poop
The poop deck, where Don John and his officers spent most of their time, was richly decorated with marquetry. The scenes on the backrest of the bench are episodes from Greek mythology, most having a nautical angle as well as a moral point to make.

Canopy and awning
The admiral's quarters on the poop deck did not have a permanent roof. When necessary the canopy would be covered with a large cloth to keep out the sun or the wind and rain. This covering was also used in battle.

« Auxiliary gun
Unlike the cannon in the prow, the small breech-loading guns on either side of the galley could swivel. They would be loaded with small shot and used as anti-personnel weapons against the crew on the deck of an enemy galley.

« The binding of the oars
The oars are made of beechwood and 37 ft (11.4 m) long. Oars were sometimes made from a single piece of wood, but these broke easily and more often they were made of two lengths bound together.



« Renaissance rowlock
This peg, known as a thole pin, was the point at which the oar pivoted as the oarsmen drove the blade into the water. The oar was simply tied to the pin with a loop of rope.

» Rowing bench and oar
The most experienced and trusted oarsman took the position on the inside, from where he dictated the timing of the stroke to the other three oarsmen, who were normally less skilled. These each grasped one of the three handhold battens.

BELOW DECKS

THE GALERA REAL had a wider and deeper hold than ordinary war galleys, and although there was not much headroom, there was plenty of space for stores. Below the poop deck were the armories and the majordomo's pantry, where food and drink were prepared for Don John and his advisers and officers. Foreward of this were storerooms for bread and fresh vegetables, which would be taken on board whenever possible. Then there were the basic stores of water, wine, and grain for the oarsmen. More or less amidships was the gunpowder room and beneath the mainmast an extensive area given over to spare sailcloth, spars, and ropes. At the front of the hold was the surgeon's dispensary and a cramped surgery where he could set the bones or amputate the limbs of the wounded.

« Stores in the hold
Besides food, the spacious hold contained spare clothing, armor, and weapons. This recreated scene includes a selection of rapiers and a lockable chest of the kind that would have been used by the gentlemen on Don John's staff.

» Basic stores
The hold contained sacks of grain and barrels of wine and water. The oarsmen were fed on simple gruel and given wine and water to drink. When fighting in the heat of summer, it was essential to keep the crew well watered.

» Essential gear
Buckets were in constant use on the galley: for carrying food and water, for washing the filth from the decks and the oarsmen's benches, and on occasions for putting out fires during battle.

» Range on the deck
One of the luxury extras on Don John's galley was a fire for cooking. On the replica of the *Galera Real* one of the oarsman's benches on the port side has been removed and the space created used for a fire with a metal bar above it for suspending cooking pots. This leaves the ship with 30 oars on one side and only 29 on the other.

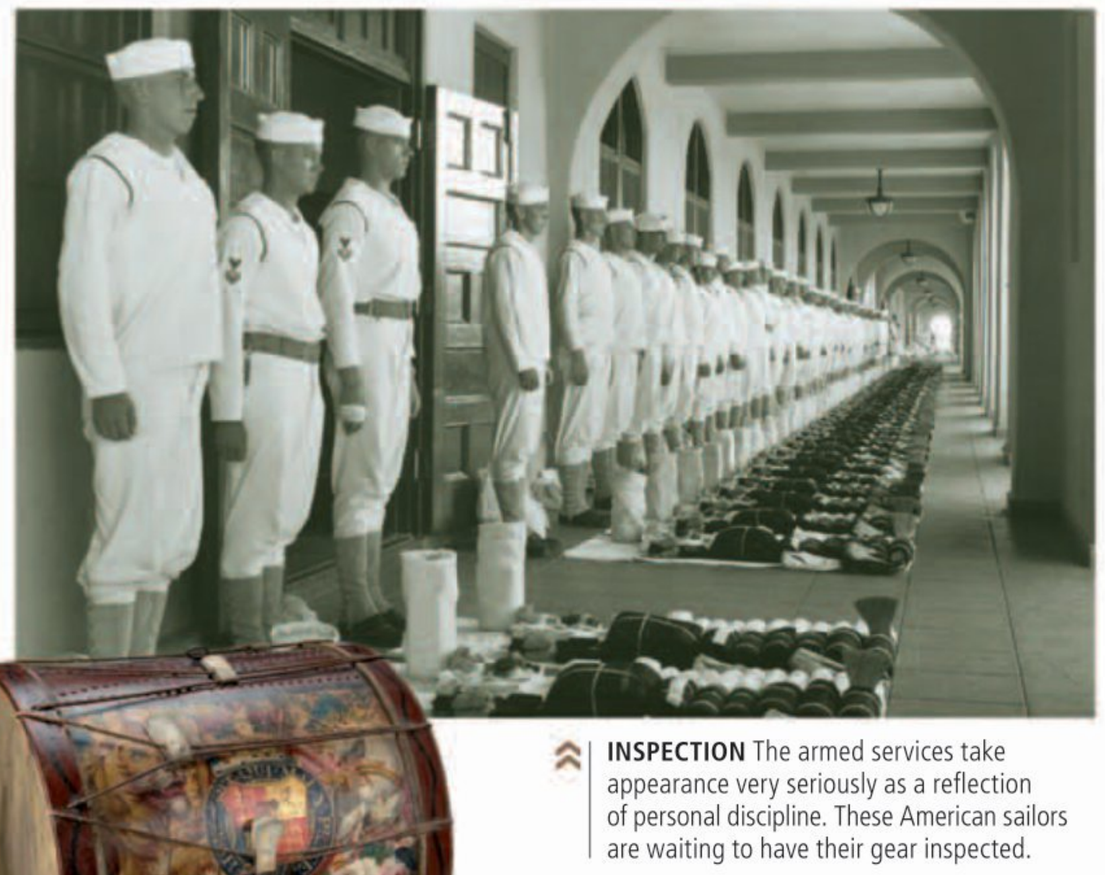
LIFE ON BOARD

DISCIPLINE AND PUNISHMENT

A SHIP IS AN ENVIRONMENT in which problems of order and discipline are naturally acute. Men are crammed together for long periods of time, in boredom, danger, and discomfort. The lower orders always outnumber the officers, who are poorly placed to call for help in case of trouble. Crews also need to be drilled to work together as a tight-knit team in case of combat or to face crises such as storms at sea. The danger of their situation made most sailors favor good discipline, which would contribute to their survival.

STICKING TOGETHER

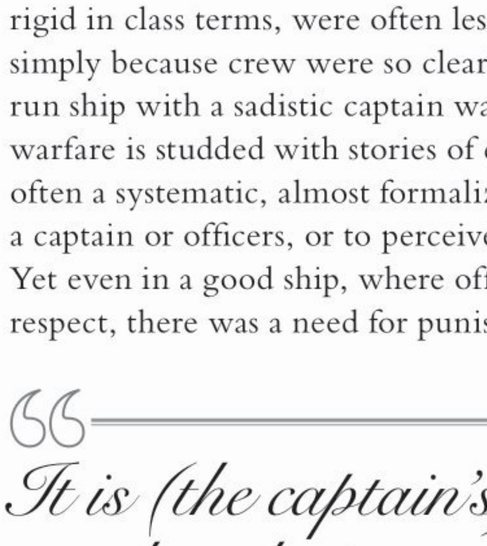
At best a ship's crew became its captain's bonded followers—a self-sufficient band owing allegiance primarily to one another and to their leader. Divisions between officers and men, normally rigid in class terms, were often less sharp in practice once at sea, simply because crew were so clearly all in it together. But a badly run ship with a sadistic captain was a hell-hole in any age. Naval warfare is studded with stories of desertion and mutiny—the latter often a systematic, almost formalized response to bad practice by a captain or officers, or to perceived breaches of customary law. Yet even in a good ship, where officers and men practiced mutual respect, there was a need for punishment to enforce discipline.



INSPECTION The armed services take appearance very seriously as a reflection of personal discipline. These American sailors are waiting to have their gear inspected.

BEATING TO QUARTERS Drums, such as this 18th-century British example, were historically used to "beat to quarters," preparing the men for action. Sailors were exptected to clear the main gun deck and prime the cannons in preparation for battle.

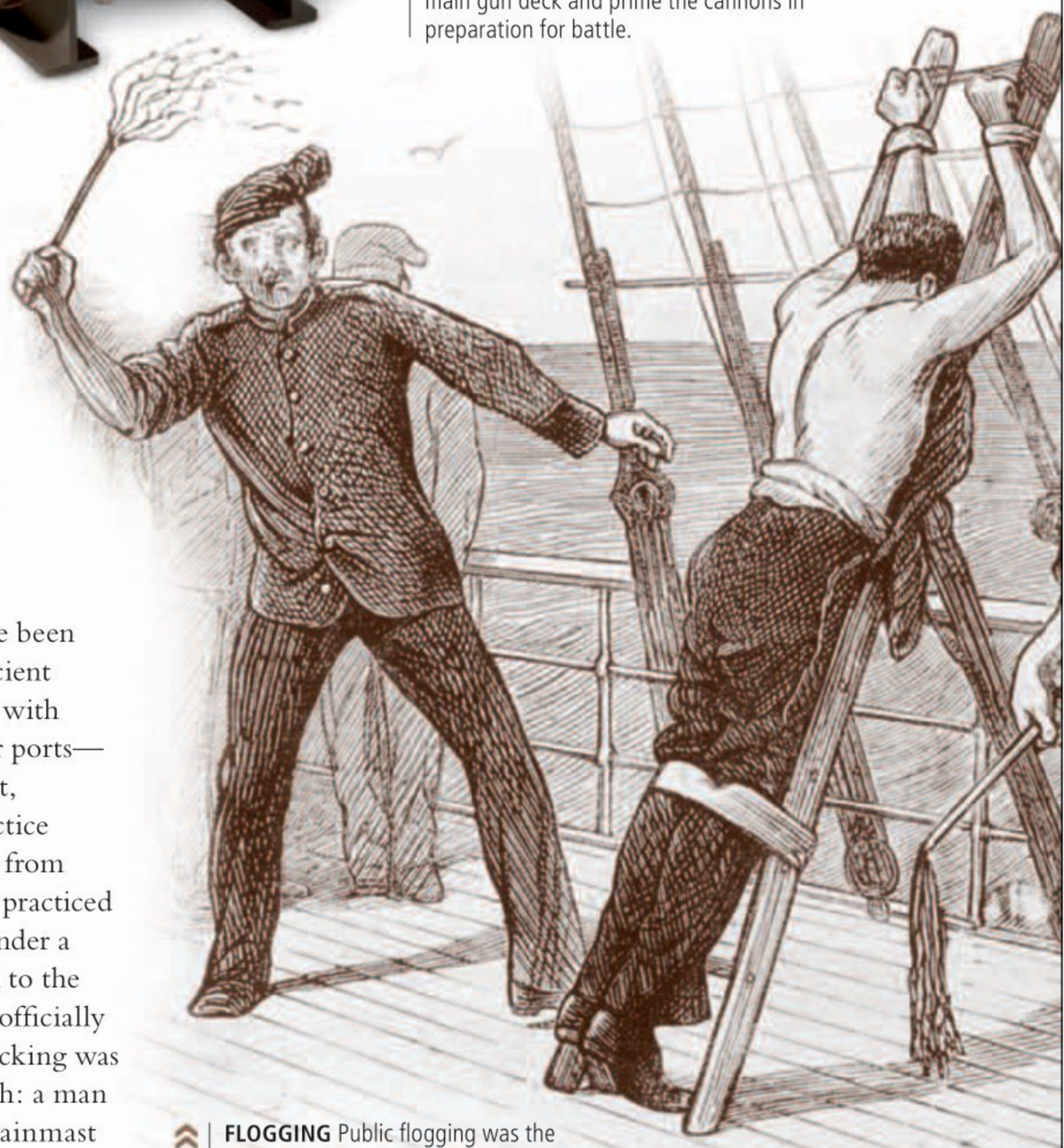
> *It is (the captain's) indispensable duty to see that the poor seaman be not wronged of his due, nor the service carried on by noise, stripes or blows.*
>
> **CAPT. CHRISTOPHER O'BRIEN,** Advice on Sea-Discipline & from a Father to his Son in Naval Tactics



LEG IRONS Also known as bilboes, these were fixed to the deck, and could be used either for punishment or to hold a man awaiting trial. The prisoner, who was locked in for several days, was fed on bread and water.

PECULIAR PRACTICES

Some ingeniously cruel punishments have been unique to navies. At the time of the Ancient Greek galleys, a malefactor might be lashed with his head sticking out of one of the lower oar ports—an uncomfortable public humiliation in port, but torture if at sea. Keel-hauling was a practice particularly associated with the Dutch navy from the 16th century, although also occasionally practiced by others. A man was tied to a rope slung under a ship and dragged from one side of the vessel to the other under the hull. Keel-hauling was not officially abolished in the Dutch navy until 1853. Ducking was a punishment much practiced by the French: a man was tied to a rope attached to one of the mainmast cross-trees and dropped into the sea, then heaved up again to repeat the exercise. There is little evidence to suggest "walking the plank" occurred.



FLOGGING Public flogging was the most widespread form of corporal punishment for breaches of naval code, with the number of lashes dependent on the severity of the crime.

PRISON HULK After the American Revolutionary War stopped Britain offloading convicts in America, the authorities started using old warships moored offshore. The greatest use of these was made during the French Wars of 1793 to 1815 when they accommodated prisoners of war and many a French sailor was held in awful conditions.

> *At an anchor in Leghorn Road ... were three seamen whipped from ship to ship ...*
>
> **POWELL,** *Weale Journal*, 1654 on "flogging round the fleet"

CORPORAL AND CAPITAL

In general, though, punishments at sea have always tended to reflect the norms of the society from which the navy is drawn. For example, Britain's 18th-century navy used public corporal and capital punishment just as Britain did on land—but with less capital punishment because one could not afford to lose the men. Mutiny, treason, desertion, and sodomy were capital offences for which a man could be hanged from the yard-arm. Flogging with the cat-o'-nine tails was the punishment for many other serious offenses. It was carried out with formal ceremony, the ship's crew drawn up to watch and a roll of drums to add drama. Boys were exempt from flogging, instead made to "kiss the gunner's daughter"—they were tied over a gun and caned on their bare behinds. Theft from shipmates was usually punished by running the gauntlet, with the crew themselves whipping the offender in turn. Much resented by sailors was casual "starting"—bosun's mates hitting a man with a rope or cane when he was felt not to be working hard enough. Starting was banned in the Royal Navy in 1809.

HANGING In Nelson's navy death by hanging was the most serious punishment, usually for sodomy or mutiny. Like flogging, it was always inflicted in public with great theatricality to ensure the maximum deterrence. The crew would be formed up on deck, with the officers separated from the seamen.

CORPORAL DISCIPLINE The cane (far left) was used on the boys, the starter (center) was used to motivate the men as they performed their duties, while wayward crew members were punished by a lashing with the whip or cat-o'-nine tails (left).

CLEANING UP THE ACT

During the 19th century social norms altered away from corporal to custodial punishment. These changes were inevitably reflected at sea, although navies have often lagged behind reforms on shore. The last man in the US Navy hanged on board ship was Midshipman Philip Spencer, son of the secretary of war, allegedly guilty of mutiny in 1842. Britain's Royal Navy suspended flogging in 1881. At the same time there was more formality on board, with emphasis on saluting and minutiae of uniform. And punishments could still be harsh. The imprisonment routines of the US Navy in the "brig," including confinement on bread and water, were notoriously tough into the second half of the 20th century. The emphasis is now on "correction" rather than punishment, in line with current prison theory. Easier conditions have generally made naval service in the contemporary era a more mellow experience.

2

1550 – 1830

GUN, SAIL, AND EMPIRE

FOR APPROXIMATELY THREE CENTURIES, from the early 1500s through to the 1830s, naval warfare was dominated by three-masted ocean-going sailing ships, armed with cannon. Although the tactics of grappling and boarding continued to hold their place in war at sea, from the 17th century the dominant mode of combat became the exchange of broadsides—volleys of cannon fire designed to bring down masts and rigging, hole the hull, and kill or wound the crew of an enemy vessel. European navies fought battles in the East Indies, the Caribbean, and the mid-Atlantic, as well as the Mediterranean and north and west European coastal waters. Sea power grew from an adjunct to land operations into a major source of imperial dominance in its own right.

The Golden Hind
The *Golden Hind* was the Elizabethan galleon Sir Francis Drake used to circumnavigate the globe (1577–80) and launch numerous raids on the Spanish. It carried an armament of 22 guns and had a top speed of 8 knots (15kph). This full-size replica was launched in 1973.

FIGHTING MACHINES

The design of warships and combat tactics evolved subtly rather than dramatically through the age of sail. During the course of the 16th century ungainly carracks, conceived as large floating fortresses, were supplanted by sleeker galleons. The need to bring guns to bear in broadsides led to the adoption of the line of battle, and by the late 17th century the dominant warships were "ships of the line", graded into first-, second-, and third-rate by their weight of cannon. These were extraordinary fighting machines. Even in the 16th century there were "great ships"—large vessels built for prestige as much as combat—carrying more than 50 guns, but by the late 18th century a three-deck first-rate ship of the line would carry from 100 to 130 guns. Such ships needed large crews packed into their decks because of the number of hands required to sail the vessel and to man the cannon in battle. In order to stay at sea for long periods they also had to carry substantial supplies of all essentials.

MANNING SHIPS

Fleets of sail were extremely expensive to build, maintain, and supply. Any country that wanted to have a dominant navy needed an extensive organization of dockyards for repair and shipbuilding, an administrative system to supply munitions and food, and a pool of sailors to draw on, since only experienced seamen were really useful on board. No country could afford to maintain a full navy in peace and war. Until the mid-17th century, merchant ships, under their peacetime captains, were pressed into frontline service when war broke out. This practice was discontinued because of the superior performance of purpose-built warships

The Spanish Armada
Various events in the defeat of the Spanish Armada in August 1588 are combined in this painting: the English fireship attack off Calais, columns of smoke from the warning beacons lit in England, and even the appearance of Queen Elizabeth I on a white horse.

under military command, but sailors remained a general body of men who might sail in naval ships or merchant ships, or as privateers. Every sea power had to have a system for transferring its seagoing population into naval service in wartime. The Dutch banned merchant ships from sailing, forcing seamen to opt for naval employment. France registered its sailors, who were called up in "classes" and served their share of conscription. Britain used "press-gangs" to forcibly recruit sailors on shore and at sea, or tried to attract volunteers by offering bonuses to those who signed on. In a crisis, landsmen had to be accepted as extra muscle on board, a dilution of seafaring expertise that became acute for Britain during the Napoleonic Wars. Permanent bodies of naval officers developed very gradually. Until the late 17th century senior commanders were usually not seamen and the senior seamen on board were often merchant captains or privateers. A career structure for naval officers emerged only slowly.

Armada medal
Silver medals, depicting English naval galleons, were cast to commemorate the defeat of the Spanish Armada in 1588.

PRIVATEERS

The expense of maintaining navies encouraged states to turn to private enterprise as a way of financing sea warfare. Privateering ranged from the authorization of individual captains to prey upon the commerce of an enemy nation, to the mounting of major operations in which rulers, from England's Elizabeth I to France's Louis XIV, took a financial stake along with other wealthy individuals. At times, the marauding of privateers amounted to what we would now call state-backed terrorism. The exploits of Jean Bart, Piet Heyn, Francis Drake, and other famous "sea dogs" made them national heroes, but they were understandably denounced as pirates by the victims of their depredations. The distinction between privateer and naval vessels was not always clear, not only because they might fight alongside one another—as in the English resistance to the Spanish Armada in 1588—but because naval ships also operated with a profit motive, most navies offering prize money for the capture of enemy vessels and their cargoes.

PEACE AND WAR

In the age of sail, life on board ship was harsh as a matter of course. Crews suffered heavy losses, even in peacetime, to disease, accident, fire, and weather. In many ways life on ships was chaotic. Often, for example, there were children on board, as well as farm animals to provide food. Ratings had no uniforms and on many ships neither did officers. Yet by the 18th century, a well-run warship could equally be regarded, by contemporary standards, as a model of organization and efficiency—the regular processes of navigation, the handling of the sails, the keeping of watches, the maintenance of cleanliness, and frequent gunnery drill. The experience of sea combat, although infrequent, was intense by any standards. Broadside duels were bloody affairs, ships battering one another at close range with their cannon while sailors and marines with muskets fired down onto the enemy's deck from the rigging. Amid scenes of unutterable carnage, traditional principles of honorable conduct were maintained. Officers disdained to take cover, standing at great risk on the exposed quarterdeck. The convention of striking colors—lowering the flags—to signal surrender put a limit to the sufferings of a defeated crew, although honor dictated that a captain should not "strike" until his ship was a shambles. Surrender was usually conducted with great ceremony, the defeated commander handing his sword to his victorious opponent who would formally return it to its owner with a few polite words of respect. Such ceremonies took place on blood-spattered decks strewn with the dead.

BATTLE TACTICS

Naval engagements fought by sail were always subject to the influence of the wind, which could change direction, rise, or drop altogether in the course of a battle, confounding planned maneuvers. A contrary wind might trap a fleet in harbor or prevent an entire division from joining a combat in which their comrades were hotly engaged within sight of them. The ships that held the weather gage were well situated to attack—it was the position the British always preferred. The slow movement of the ships meant that hours passed between sighting an enemy and opening fire. Once an engagement started, the fighting was usually quite static for long periods, with opposing ships sometimes locked together or even anchored opposite one another. Rowing boats might be sent from ship to ship around a fleet in battle carrying messages. Until the mid-17th century, tactics involved little more than a scrimmage in which fleets might show a greater or lesser inclination for boarding or for reliance on firepower. The adoption of the line of battle brought more order into naval combat, but no less savagery as each ship chose an enemy to set alongside and duel with. Although its formality could appear stultifying, fighting in line allowed for aggressive maneuvers such as sailing around the enemy van to trap ships between two fires. In the 18th century more adventurous commanders used variants on line tactics such as the "general pursuit" and "breaking the line." But even the famous Admiral Horatio

Saluting the flagship
A 17th-century Dutch states yacht (right) fires a salute to the admiral's flagship (left), possibly belonging to the popular Admiral Michiel de Ruyter. Following naval tradition, a salute usually consists of an odd number of shots. An even number denotes a death. A 21-gun salute is reserved for heads of state.

1568
Start of 80 Years War, Dutch struggle for independence from Spain

1588
Defeat of the Armada prevents invasion of England by Philip II of Spain

1628
Dutch privateer Piet Heyn succeeds in capturing Spanish silver fleet at Matanzas in northern Cuba

1652–73
Anglo-Dutch Wars: series of three wars fought for control of the English Channel and North Sea

1653
Line-of-battle tactics used at the battle of the Gabbard, between England and the United Provinces

Cat-o'-nine tails
This rope whip was used on board ships for administering corporal punishment.

1550 | 1580 | 1610 | 1640 | 1670

Musketeer's powder flask
The matchlock musket was the standard firearm of marines in the 17th century.

1572
Group of privateers, known as the Sea Beggars, capture port of Brielle (Brill) from the Spanish

1592–98
Japanese invasion of Korea thwarted by naval victories of Yi Sunshi

1628
The *Vasa*, pride of Sweden's navy, sinks on her maiden voyage

1639
Dutch under Maarten Tromp defeat Spanish fleet at battle of the Downs (French Gloire and British Warrior)

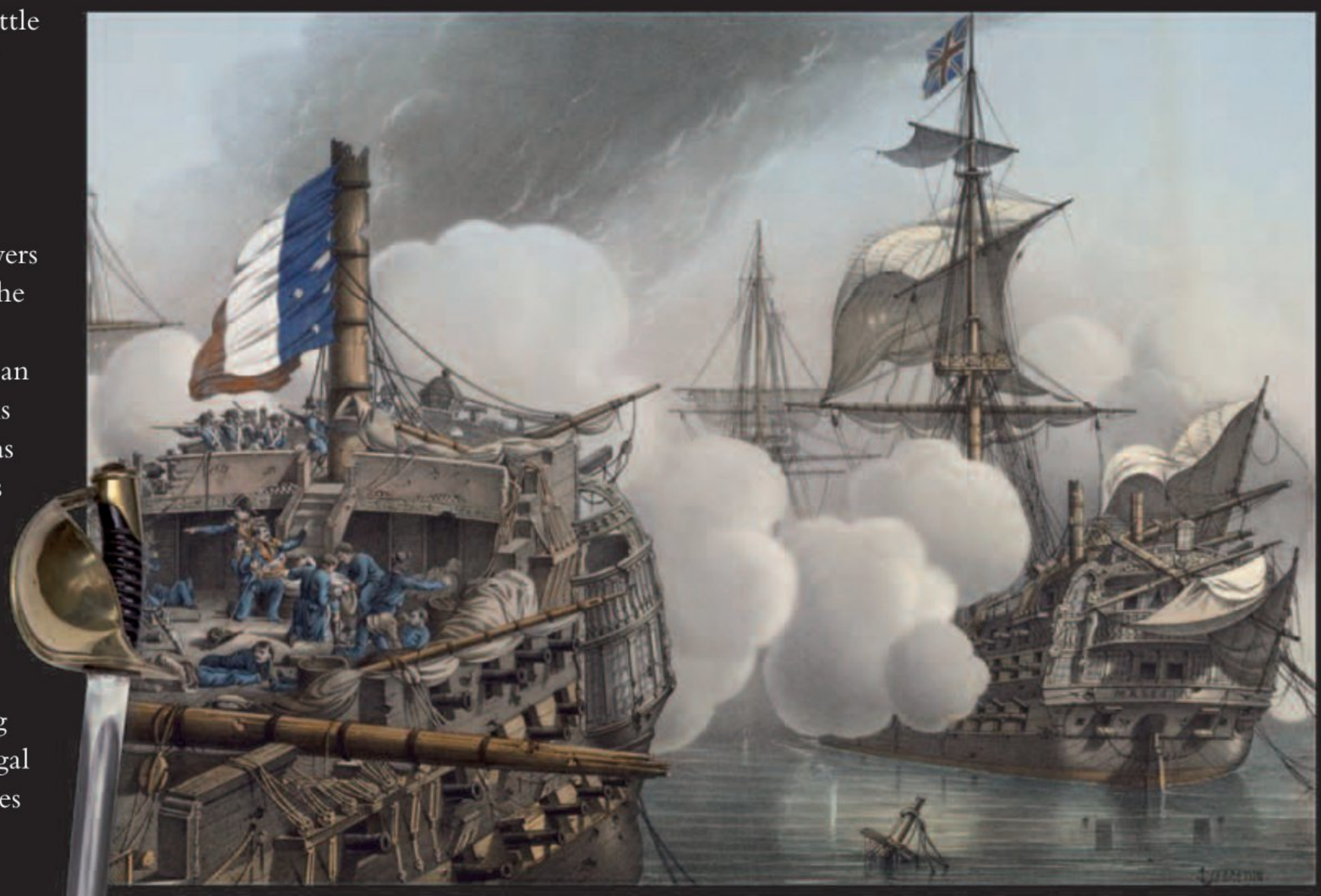
1690
War of the League of Augsburg: newly built French navy defeats Dutch and English at the battle of Beachy Head

Nelson, whose pursuit of the "pell-mell" battle gave a less formal and more decisive quality to naval warfare, for the most part adhered to the broad principles of the line of battle.

RISE AND FALL

Their sailing ships guaranteed European powers dominance in the oceans of the world and the ability to found overseas empires. Korea triumphed in an intensive naval war with Japan in the late 16th century, but even the Koreans could not begin to challenge the Europeans as oceanic sailors. Different European countries rose and fell in the naval pecking order through the resources they had available for—or were prepared to devote to—their navies and the quality of the seamen they had available to man their ships. Spain was the first dominant naval power of the sailing ship era, especially after incorporating Portugal in 1580. England was one of the first countries to organize a naval infrastructure and bureaucracy, but at first could not match the resources of the Spanish Empire. The Dutch proved themselves superb seamen and built a trading empire in the early 17th century, but they were slow to build a naval administration, relying for too long on merchantmen and privateers. France devoted major resources to naval power under the Sun King Louis XIV, but the counter-demands of land warfare always militated against French concentration on sea power.

By the late 17th century Britain had established itself as the world's leading naval power, a status it maintained—not without serious challenges from the French—through the 18th century, but then triumphantly reaffirmed in the Napoleonic Wars. The United States, founded in 1776, showed signs of naval potential but was still a minor sea power when the age of sail ended.



The Battle of the Nile (1798)
In 1798 Nelson's British fleet defeated the French fleet at the Battle of the Nile. The 80-gun French ship of the line *Tonnant* had its mast blown away, but fought on heroically, only surrendering after the death of its captain.

PROGRESS AND CHANGE

Many changes occurred over the 300 years of the sailing ship era. There were enormous improvements in navigation and nautical charts, in sailors' nutrition and health, and in the design of ships—copper bottoms in particular vastly increased the time wooden sailing ships could stay at sea. By the later part of the period navies fought almost exclusively in purpose-built warships and privateering had been supplanted by the marauding of naval frigates. There was an increasingly formal structure of naval careers and hierarchies. Yet the era holds together in retrospect as a time of extraordinary conflicts and exploits that made naval battles central to the historical identity of European seagoing nations.

US Navy cutlass
The American navy played a minor role on the world's stage, but men such as Stephen Decatur performed heroic deeds with cutlass and pistol, boarding the ships of the Barbary pirates in the wars of 1804 and 1815.

1700

1702 Peter the Great starts building a Russian fleet

1700–21 Defeat of Sweden in Great Northern War leaves Russia the most powerful state in the Baltic

1730

1731 Invention of sextant: replaces astrolabe as a means of determining latitude

1756–63 Seven Years War: French and British clash in North America and India

1760

1775 American Revolutionary War: French navy plays major role in Britain's loss of its colonies

1776 The *Turtle*, the first military submersible, used against British flagship *Eagle* in New York Harbor

1779 The carronade adopted by the Royal Navy

1781 Battle of Chesapeake Bay; French defeat the Royal Navy

1790

1792–1802 French Revolutionary Wars

1798 Battle of the Nile establishes British naval superiority

1803–15 Napoleonic Wars

1805 Battle of Trafalgar. French have to abandon all plans for invading Britain

1812 First steam-powered warship, *Demologos*, built for US Navy

1815 Defeat of Napoleon at Waterloo

1820

1821 Henri-Joseph Paixhans invents first naval guns to use explosive shells

1827 British, French, and Russian fleets destroy Ottoman navy at battle of Navarino

1829 First workable ship's screw invented by Joseph Russell

JAPAN AND KOREA

Building a turtle ship
Admiral Yi Sunshin himself inspects the progress and plans of the shipbuilders. The extraordinary armored turtle ships captured the Koreans' imagination, despite the fact that Yi's navy probably never had more than three of four of them at any one time.

JAPAN INVADED KOREA TWICE in the late 16th century, precipitating epic naval conflicts between two countries with very different seafaring traditions. Since the 1220s Japanese pirates had plagued the Korean coasts. This forced Korea to organize a naval defense system, with large, well-armed ships, to protect merchant convoys and coastal settlements. In Japan, by contrast, despite a thriving population of fishermen, pirates, and sea traders, naval development was limited. Accounts of Japan's long drawn out civil wars of the 16th century include few references to fighting on water. When Japan's warrior leader Toyotomi Hideyoshi mounted a large-scale invasion of Korea in 1592, he saw ships merely as troop transports. But for the Koreans their naval strength proved to be a trump card, allowing them to achieve decisive victories at sea that forced the Japanese invaders to withdraw in 1593 and again in 1598.

CHINESE ABSENCE

The naval war between Japan and Korea in the 1590s was fought without the intervention of the major regional power, China. Ming China was the most sophisticated, technologically advanced society in the world, but its decision, taken in the 15th century, to get rid of large warships and abandon long-distance voyages left a naval vacuum in Asian waters. Japanese pirates—known as *wako* ("dwarf raiders") to their victims—were free to raid China's defenseless coasts, while the Portuguese, once they were well established in the Indian Ocean, sought further trading opportunities in China and Japan. When Japan invaded Korea, the Chinese sent an army to support the Koreans, but, because of their naval weakness, only intervened on a small scale in the conflict at sea.

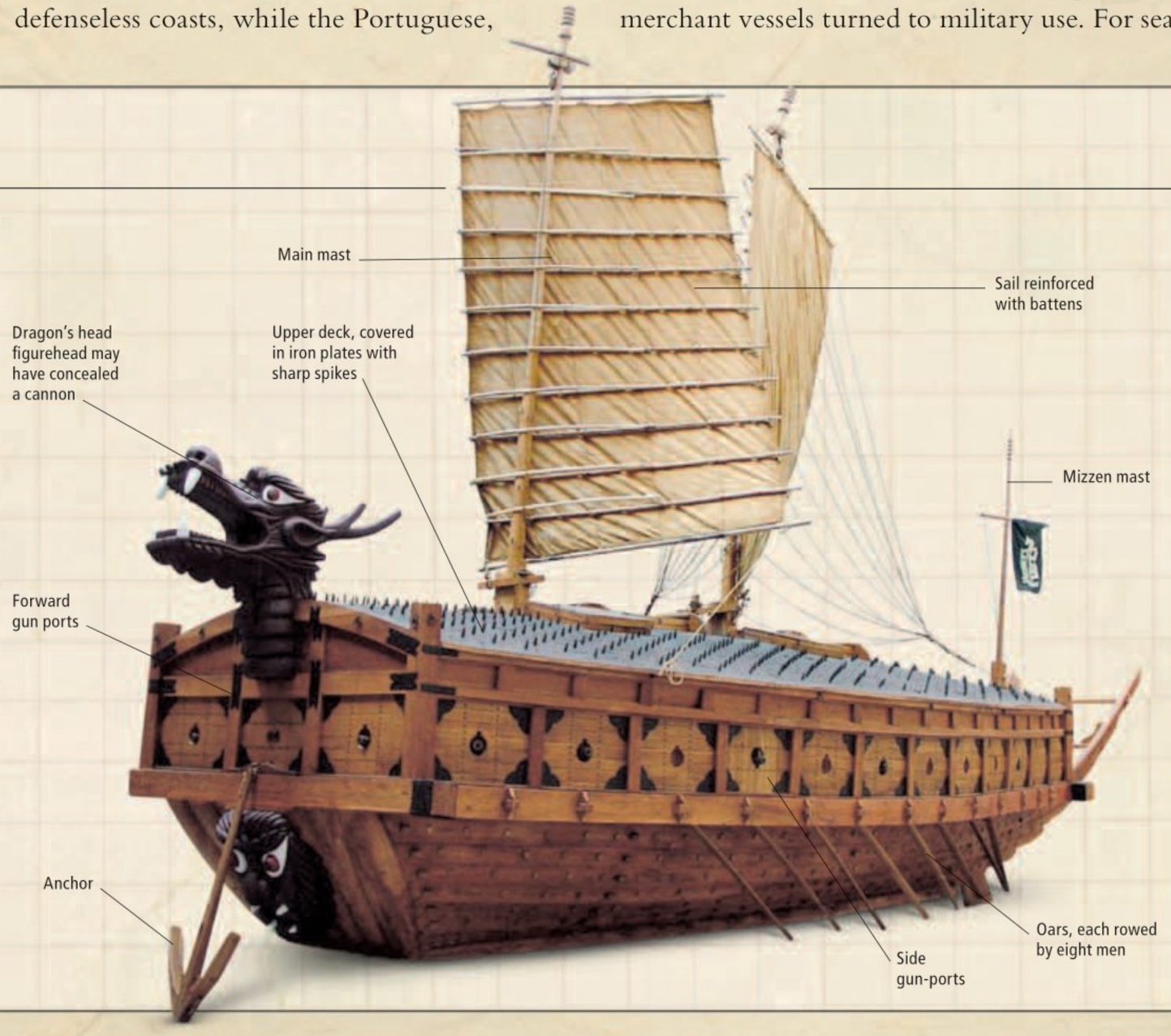
JAPANESE SEA POWER

The Japanese were able to assemble a fleet large enough to transport 160,000 soldiers to Korea in 1592. The fleet consisted chiefly of pirate or merchant vessels turned to military use. For sea

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

TURTLE SHIP

The turtle ship, or *kobukson,* was a variant on the *panokseon*, the Korean cannon-armed warship, comparable to a Mediterranean galleass. Admiral Yi Sunshin is credited with reviving the design, which had been tried out experimentally almost two centuries earlier. The first of Admiral Yi's turtle ships was launched in March 1592, just as the Japanese invasion of Korea began. Its most original feature was the covered upper deck, shielded with iron plates and spikes—thought to resemble a turtle's shell. This protected the crew from missiles and, more importantly, made the ship impossible to take by boarding. The impressive array of cannon fired out of portholes, with two at the prow, one at the stern, and possibly 10 along each side. A cannon may also have been placed to fire from the dragon's head. The oars, each pulled by eight men, permitted rapid maneuver in combat. The turtle ships' role in the war between Korea and Japan has often been exaggerated—only three were built at the time, possibly because iron was in short supply.



Replica turtle ship
Korea's Naval Academy Museum houses this life-sized replica of a turtle ship, one of a number that have been built in the country. There is even one replica that is regularly sailed on a lake.

JAPANESE-KOREAN WAR

Japanese leader Toyotomi Hideyoshi's first step toward fulfilling his ambition of conquering China was to invade Korea. In 1592 he shipped a large army to Pusan, the port closest to Japan across the Tsushima Strait. Japanese land forces made rapid progress northward, but their seaborne supply lines were always vulnerable and the invasion was called off in 1593. When the Japanese returned in 1597, they conquered less territory on land and again suffered crucial defeats at the hands of Yi Sunshin's navy.

KEY

- Japan
- Korea
- Area of Korea occupied by Japanese forces
- Japanese invasion route
- Korean victory
- Japanese victory

Korean naval cannon
Usually mounted on wheeled wooden carriages, Korean cannons fired a range of projectiles, including solid shot, fragmentation bombs, and incendiary "fireballs." Some longer cannons fired giant arrows with iron tips.

fighting, Japanese raiders traditionally employed swift-moving boats crammed with warriors, who would board and overwhelm larger, slower-moving craft. The larger Japanese ships would also be packed with fighting men, armed with missile weapons to soften up the enemy, prior to boarding and fighting with sword and spear. One striking advantage the Japanese held over the Koreans was the possession of firearms. The arquebus, the precursor of the matchlock musket, which had been introduced by the Portuguese, was enthusiastically adopted by the Japanese during their 16th-century civil wars. Deployed at sea, it was a highly effective complement to traditional bows. But the Japanese lacked larger gunpowder weapons. They had lagged behind China and Korea in the development of cannon, and their ships were in any case too flimsy and unstable to provide a good platform for guns.

KOREAN VICTORY

The Koreans had learned the use of gunpowder weapons from Ming China, but they had quickly surpassed the Chinese in the manufacture of cannon for naval use. By the late 16th century they had the most advanced shipborne artillery in Asia. Their key warship, the *panokseon*, was a robustly constructed ship that functioned as a stable gun platform. It carried cannon capable of delivering a variety of missiles, including gunpowder-based incendiary devices known as "fireballs." While Japanese ships had only square sails, the *panokseon* could be propelled by oars in combat, giving it impressive speed and maneuverability. With an admiral of genius in charge, Yi Sunshin, the Koreans repeatedly outmaneuvered and outfought the Japanese. Yi Sunshin used local knowledge of currents, tides, and winds to gain a huge advantage for his ships, even in situations where they were vastly outnumbered by the enemy.

JAPAN TURNS INWARD

Although its invasions of Korea were defeated at sea, it still seemed that Japan might emerge as an Asian naval power. The Japanese had galleons built under European influence in the early 17th century, one of which carried a Japanese embassy to Europe. But like Ming China before it, Japan then turned its back decisively on oceanic travel. It is said that, by order of the Japanese shoguns, all ships had to be built with a hole in the hull so as not to survive an ocean voyage. Japan's next foray into naval history was not until the 19th century.

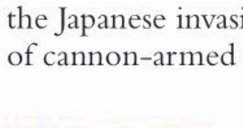
Korean turtle ship in action at Hansando
Yi Sunshin's most spectacular victory over the Japanese was at Hansando in August 1592. Cannon and fire arrows wrought incredible destruction among the enemy ships, of which 47 were destroyed, while the Koreans lost none.

JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA

AFTER UNIFYING WAR-TORN JAPAN in 1590, warrior leader Toyotomi Hideyoshi then devised a megalomanic plan to conquer Ming China and India. When the Koreans refused to allow his army free passage through their country, in 1592 Hideyoshi embarked upon the conquest of Korea as a prelude to an invasion of China. Japanese troops were largely successful on land, advancing north as far as Pyongyang, but the Korean Admiral Yi Sunshin organized a naval campaign that severely disrupted Japan's supply lines. The Japanese suffered a crushing defeated at Hansando, but avoided total catastrophe in a defensive sea battle at Pusan. Hideyoshi was put under so much pressure, however, that he was forced to withdraw his troops in 1593. A second invasion in 1597 was no more successful. Although Japan scored a naval victory at Chilchonryang—in the absence of Yi Sunshin—the subsequent defeat at Myongyang was a setback from which Hideyoshi's project of conquest never recovered. The Japanese leader had died by the time Yi Sunshin inflicted the final humiliation on Japanese naval forces at Noryang in 1598, a battle that cost the Korean admiral his life.

JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA

PUSAN



Date September 1, 1592
Forces Koreans: c.250 ships; Japanese c.470 ships
Losses Unknown

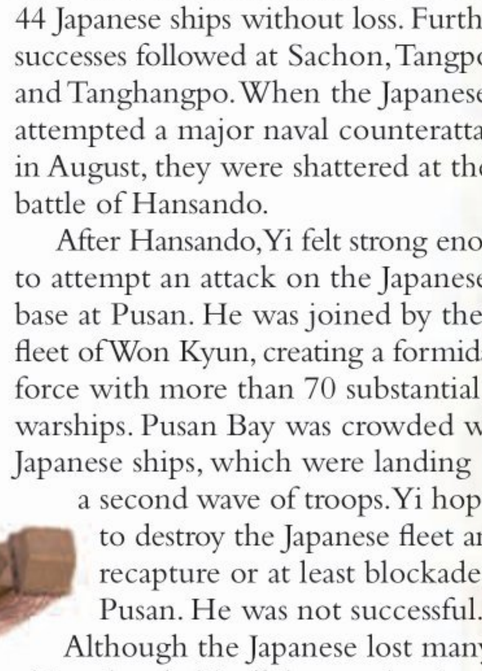
Location
Pusan, Korea

In spring 1592 a vast Japanese fleet set off from Naguya on northern Kyushu island carrying an army some 160,000 strong for the invasion of Korea. The first 700 boats landed their troops near the fortified port of Pusan on April 13. The Koreans were caught unprepared. Their warships in the Pusan area, commanded by Won Kyun, simply fled when confronted by the Japanese armada. Toyotomi Hideyoshi's soldiers, battle-hardened after years of civil war in Japan, swiftly took Pusan by assault. As the Japanese fought their way up the Korean peninsula, Pusan became the gateway for supplies and reinforcements brought by sea from Japan.

Fortunately for Korea, Admiral Yi Sunshin, commander of the Cholla Left Naval District at Yosu, to the west of Pusan, was better prepared to react to the Japanese invasion. He had a force of cannon-armed warships, known as *panokseon*, and had recently completed construction of three iron-armored "turtle ships" or *kobukson*. With these ships he mounted a counterattack in the offshore islands between his base at Yosu and Pusan. In a five-day period in early May at and around Okpo, he sank 44 Japanese ships without loss. Further successes followed at Sachon, Tangpo, and Tanghangpo. When the Japanese attempted a major naval counterattack in August, they were shattered at the battle of Hansando.

After Hansando, Yi felt strong enough to attempt an attack on the Japanese base at Pusan. He was joined by the fleet of Won Kyun, creating a formidable force with more than 70 substantial warships. Pusan Bay was crowded with Japanese ships, which were landing a second wave of troops. Yi hoped to destroy the Japanese fleet and recapture or at least blockade Pusan. He was not successful. Although the Japanese lost many ships, they held off the attack using cannon captured from the Koreans. The Korean fleet was forced to withdraw but, with its supply lines insecure, the first Japanese invasion was doomed.

Multiple rocket-launcher
The Koreans possessed an array of ingenious artillery weapons. These included the *hwacha*, a rocket-launcher used with great success both against Japanese land forces and for firing volleys of incendiaries at enemy ships.



1545–1598

YI SUNSHIN

ADMIRAL OF THE KOREAN FLEET

Yi Sunshin pursued a successful career in the army until disgraced as a result of political machinations. In 1590, suddenly returned to favor, he was appointed naval commander of the Cholla District. His outstanding performance in a series of naval battles during the Japanese invasion of 1592 to 1593 did not save him from being once more disgraced and demoted to a lowly rank. Returned to command after the Korean defeat at Chilchonryang, he again trounced the Japanese at Myongyang and Noryang, dying in the hour of victory. Yi Sunshin is deservedly one of Korea's greatest national heroes.

Japanese capture of Pusan
The main Japanese landing was at Pusan at the southern tip of the Korean peninsula. The invaders were able to repel all attempts to retake the port, but convoys to and from Pusan were always vulnerable.

JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA

CHILCHONRYANG

Date July 16, 1597
Forces Koreans: 166 ships; Japanese: c.500 ships
Losses Koreans: 153 ships; Japanese: unknown

Location Chilchonryang, off southern Korea

In 1597, command of the Korean navy was entrusted to Won Kyun, promoted in place of the disgraced Yi Sunshin. Urged by the royal court to take an aggressive stance, Won Kyun led the entire Korean fleet to attack the Japanese at Pusan.

The Japanese appeared in overwhelming strength and brought the Koreans to battle on their own terms. As the Korean fleet was ill-coordinated, the Japanese were able to impose a close-quarters mêlée in which the Koreans could not use their cannon, while the Japanese were able to grapple and board the ships of their enemies. Korean ships that attempted to flee were pursued and captured. Those who sought to escape to shore on nearby Kojedo Island, including Won Kyun, were massacred by the island's Japanese garrison. Only 13 Korean warships, which had prudently fled before the fighting began, survived the debacle.

JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA

MYONGYANG

Date September 16, 597
Forces Koreans: 13 ships; Japanese: 133 ships
Losses Koreans: none; Japanese: 31 ships

Location Myongyang Strait, southwest Korea

Encouraged by their overwhelming victory at Chilchonryang, the Japanese sought to destroy the remnants of the Korean navy and to take control of the Yellow Sea, opening up a maritime supply line along the west coast of Korea to their armies, which were advancing to the north. There was no time to rebuild the Korean navy, but on the advice of his counselors the king belatedly reinstated Yi Sunshin to the command of what was left of it. On his way to resume his duties as admiral, Yi wrote to the Korean royal court: "As I am alive, the enemies will never gain the Western Seas."

Korean quiver
Archers played a major role in Korea's naval victories over Japan, making extensive use of fire arrows to attack the flimsy Japanese ships.

Admiral Yi had only 13 serviceable *panokseons* with which to confront the Japanese, but he took advantage of his knowledge of local conditions to even the odds. After fighting a holding action at Oranpo he withdrew to the Myongyang Strait, which separates Jindo Island from the mainland. The strait has strong currents that change direction every three hours. Yi Sunshin correctly anticipated that the Japanese fleet would enter the strait when the current was favorable to carry them toward the Yellow Sea.

MIRACULOUS VICTORY

Yi placed his ships across the western end of the strait so that the Japanese were borne toward his cannon on the current. A well-coordinated barrage of shot, abetted by fire arrows, threw the Japanese van into confusion. The admiral in command of the van, Kurushima Michifusa, was blown overboard and his body drifted to the Korean line. Yi had the admiral's head cut off and stuck on a masthead. When the current changed the Korean ships were carried down at speed upon the demoralized and disorganized Japanese, who left 31 blazing or sinking vessels behind them as they fled in disorder. The battle is known to Koreans as the "miracle of Myongyang" because of the unlikely balance of forces between the victors and the defeated.

JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA

NORYANG

Date November 19, 1598
Forces Koreans and Chinese: 150 ships; Japanese: c.500 ships
Losses Koreans and Chinese: 1 ship lost; Japanese: c.200 ships sunk, 100 captured

Location Noryang Strait, southern Korea

In the autumn of 1598, with their leader Toyotomi Hideyoshi dead and with the Chinese having now entered the war in support of Korea, the Japanese were hastening to extricate themselves from their ill-judged Korean adventure.

On November 18 some 200,000 Japanese troops had embarked on a large fleet of transport ships, their aim to join up with other Japanese forces and return to Japan. A combined fleet of Korean and Chinese warships was blockading the Japanese-held fortresses along the southern coast of Korea. Chen Lin, commanding the Chinese squadron of 65 warships, favored making a deal to let the Japanese go. But Yi Sunshin, with 85 Korean *panokseons* and turtle ships, was not prepared to allow the enemy to escape unmolested, and his view prevailed. The combined fleet waited at the entrance to the narrow Noryang Strait.

Commanded by Shimazu Yoshihiro, the vast Japanese convoy approached the strait at night and blundered into the Korean and Chinese ships in the early hours of the morning. With large numbers of ships clashing in darkness in confined waters, the conflict was inevitably confused. The Japanese fought desperately to open a passage through the strait; the Koreans and Chinese struggled to stop them. The mêlée favored the Japanese, who could bring their arquebus fire to bear at close quarters. One Chinese ship was taken by the Japanese and all on board slaughtered. Chen Lin's flagship was boarded and only narrowly saved from capture. Yet dawn revealed that the allied fleet had triumphed, with hundreds of Japanese transports captured or sunk.

Yi led the pursuit of the Japanese ships that had broken through and were heading for Pusan, but in the course of the action, he was shot dead. This fact was concealed until the combat was over. One week after the battle, the Japanese army sailed from Pusan back to Japan, and the war came to an end.

Death of Yi Sunshin
Like Nelson, Yi was killed in his hour of triumph, struck by a stray shot fired by an enemy arquebusier. The captain on his flagship had been lucky to escape with his life when an arquebus ball hit his helmet.

Korean panokseons at Hansando
The workhorse of Yi Sunshin's navy at all his famous victories over the Japanese was the *panokseon*, a reliable, maneuverable platform for the Korean archers and artillery.

KEY

JAPANESE FLEET

4–5 Japanese war galleys (*sekibune* or *atakebune*)

4–5 Japanese scout ships

KOREAN FLEET

4–5 Korean *panokseons* (unless otherwise stated)

1 Korean *kobukson* (turtle ship)

MIRUK ISLAND

KOREAN MAINLAND

HWADO ISLAND

HANSANDO ISLAND

The six ships sent forward by Yi Sunshin race back to the main fleet with the Japanese in hot pursuit

A number of *panokseons* are held in reserve

The Korean "turtle ships" are deployed in the center

The Japanese fleet, led by the scout ships, pursues the decoy ships into open water

The main fleet is still unaware of the size of the Korean fleet waiting in ambush

The majority of the Korean ships deploy in a "crane's wing" formation. This allows interlocking fields of fire—they can fire on the enemy ships from several angles

1 THE LURE AND THE TRAP
Yi Sunshin sends six ships forward to lure the Japanese fleet into following them into open water, where he carefully deploys his fleet in a "crane's wing" formation. The Japanese commander Wakizaka obliges by taking the bait.

MIRUK ISLAND

KOREAN MAINLAND

Cannon fire keeps the Japanese at a distance so their soldiers have no chance to grapple and board the Korean ships

The "turtle ships" hold the Korean center, their spiked decks making it impossible for the Japanese to board them

Kyonnaeryang Strait

The impetuous Japanese commander Wakizaka orders his ships straight into the waiting Korean trap

The wings close in around the Japanese fleet, causing their ships to collide with each other, making it harder and harder for them to maneuver

As the Korean "crane's wing" formation encircles the Japanese, reserve ships move up to plug the gaps in the expanding line

HWADO ISLAND

HANSANDO ISLAND

2 CLOSING THE TRAP
The Japanese rush headlong into the Korean trap to be met by a withering barrage of cannon fire and fire arrows from three sides. Many Japanese ships are soon set on fire or sunk and many of their soldiers are killed.

THE BATTLE OF HANSANDO

When Japanese shogun Toyotomi Hideyoshi embarked upon the invasion of Korea in May1592, he seems to have anticipated little resistance from the Koreans at sea. His mistake was soon evident, as Korean ships inflicted heavy losses on the Japanese in a series of encounters through June and July, of which those at Okpo and Sacheon were the most notable.

As Korean naval power threatened Japanese supply and reinforcement of its land army on the Korean peninsula, Hideyoshi called on one of his boldest warlords, Wakizaka Yasuharu, to lead a counter-offensive. Wakizaka sailed from the Japanese base at Pusan with 73 ships, in search of the Korean fleet. The Koreans were equally keen on a battle. Their inspired admiral Yi Sunshin had also assembled a large fleet and was confident of victory.

Using information from local people, Yi located the Japanese fleet at anchor in Kyonnaeryang strait. He sent six ships into the strait, hoping to lure the Japanese into more open water. The stratagem worked. An impulsive, aggressive commander, Wakizaka ordered his captains to pursue the Korean ships as they fled, leading him to Yi's main fleet waiting off Hansan island. Yi had adopted a "crane's wing" formation—a U-shape designed to envelop an approaching enemy on both flanks. Wakizaka obligingly thrust his ships forward into the open trap.

Yi Sunshin's war diary
Yi recorded all the events of his career in his diary. Despite the unfair treatment he received as a result of intrigues at court, his loyalty to his king and the Korean people never faltered.

Half the Japanese ships were multiple-decked *atakebune*, the rest smaller vessels, but all were packed with fighting men, armed with bows, swords, and arquebuses. Their aim was to board Korean ships. But Yi planned to keep the fighting at a distance. Most of his ships were *panokseons*, stoutly-built galleys mounting 10 to 20 cannon on their upper decks. There were also two or three *kobuksons*, the iron-spiked vessels known as "turtle ships," that deployed even more firepower and were almost impossible to board.

> "THE REMAINING JAPANESE BOATS ... SEEING FROM AFAR THE HORRIBLE SIGHT OF BURNING VESSELS AND FALLEN HEADS, ROWED THEIR BOATS FAST AND FLED IN ALL DIRECTIONS."
>
> **YI SUNSHIN**, DESCRIBING THE END OF THE BATTLE IN HIS WAR DIARY

FALLING INTO THE TRAP

As the Japanese advanced into the "crane's wing," they became targets for ships to the front and on both sides. The Korean cannon were slow to reload, but the oarsmen kept their ships turning so that both broadsides and guns at the stem and stern were brought to bear in succession, maintaining a constant fire. The *panokseons* also carried large complements of archers, whose composite reflex bows had greater range than Japanese bows or arquebuses. Wakizara himself was hit several times by arrows, his life saved by the quality of his armor.

Inexorably the Koreans drew their formation tighter around the Japanese fleet, driving the enemy ships closer together so they could no longer maneuver and offered a dense-packed target for the gunners and archers.

Incendiary weapons were also apparently used – a Japanese source speaks of "fireballs shot at our ships, which were burned and destroyed". The carnage was awesome. Several Japanese commanders committed ritual suicide aboard their sinking ships. Wakizaka was on board one of only 14 Japanese vessels to escape the scene of destruction.

The annihilation of the Japanese fleet had a decisive effect on the invasion. Unable to guarantee the seaborne supply of his army, Hideyoshi had to scale back his plans and the Japanese eventually evacuated Korea in 1593 – although Admiral Yi would be called upon to save his country from invasion again before the century's end.

JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA

THE BATTLE OF HANSANDO

Date	August 14, 1592
Location	Off Hansan Island, Korea
Result	Korean victory

COMBATANTS

JAPAN	KOREA

COMMANDERS

Wakizaka Yasuharu	Yi Sunshin

FORCES

Ships: 73	**Ships:** 56

LOSSES

Men: 9,000 **Ships:** 47 destroyed, 12 captured	**Men:** 123 **Ships:** none

3 VICTORY IS COMPLETE
Yi Sunshin's plan works to perfection. The "crane's wing" encircles the Japanese fleet and concentrated cannon fire completes the destruction. Only 14 Japanese ships, including Wakizaka's flagship, manage to escape.

OCEANIC EMPIRES

Battle of Gibraltar
After the Dutch had gained the upper hand in their own home waters, they extended their naval operations to attack Spanish shipping in its overseas colonies and even off the coast of Spain, as here at Gibraltar in 1607, where they destroyed an entire Spanish fleet of 21 ships.

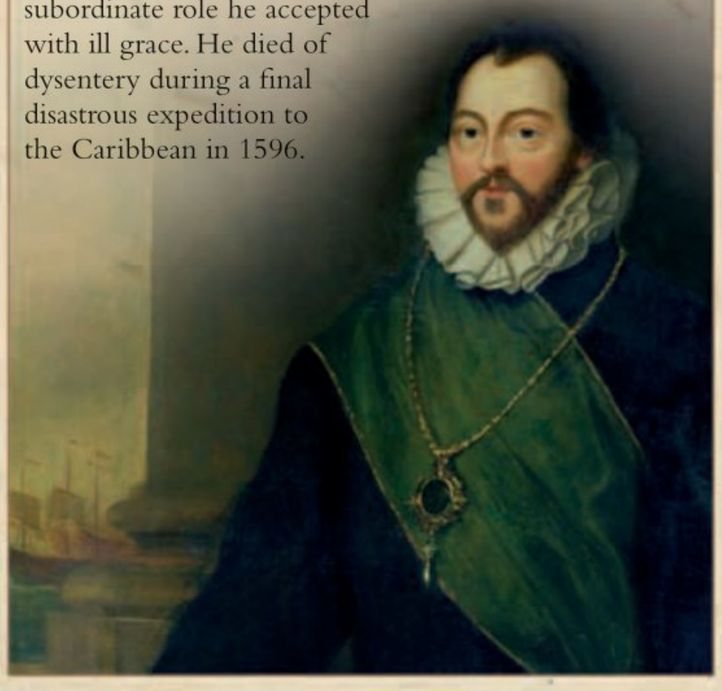
THE OCEANIC VOYAGES of European sailors wrought fundamental changes in world trade and power politics in the 16th century. The Portuguese played a leading part in the initial voyages of exploration, establishing bases in Africa, Brazil, and India, and reaching as far as Japan by the 1540s. Trade in Asian spices and other luxury goods brought wealth flooding into the coffers of the Portuguese monarchy. But it was Spain that emerged as the first oceanic imperial power. After backing Christopher Columbus's transatlantic voyage of 1492, the Spanish took control of areas of Central and South America rich in precious metals. Silver from mines in Peru, carried across the Atlantic by an annual treasure fleet, financed a bid by the Spanish monarchy to achieve dominance in Europe. Resistance to Spanish power bred wars in which Dutch and English sailors proved themselves doughty sea fighters against the odds.

c.1540–1596

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE

ENGLISH PRIVATEER AND NAVAL COMMANDER

Born in Tiverton, Devon, England, Francis Drake went to sea at an early age. Fearless, arrogant, and quarrelsome, he built a reputation as a peerless privateer, ravaging the Spanish colonies around the Caribbean. In 1577, with the covert backing of Elizabeth I, he sailed around Cape Horn to attack Spain's possessions on the Pacific coast of the Americas. Returning home in 1580 he was knighted as the first Englishman to circumnavigate the globe. His raid on Cadiz in 1587 confirmed his status as Spain's "most wanted" enemy. During the resistance to the Spanish Armada the following year Drake was vice admiral of the English fleet, a subordinate role he accepted with ill grace. He died of dysentery during a final disastrous expedition to the Caribbean in 1596.



SPANISH ASCENDANCY

Spain was unquestionably the strongest European naval power in the second half of the 16th century, especially after it annexed Portugal in 1580. Despite having simultaneously to maintain a Mediterranean galley fleet to fight the Ottomans, the Spanish monarchy had the resources and the bureaucratic organization to build and supply a fleet of sail on a scale beyond the reach of any other European state. The Dutch, in revolt against Spanish rule, and the English, determined to remain free of it, had relatively puny resources. What they did possess, however, was a large number of adventurous, independent-minded seamen. The foundations of a permanent English Royal Navy were laid under Henry VIII (reigned 1509–47) and the later Tudors, especially Elizabeth I (reigned 1558–1603), maintained a royal interest in the navy that, by contrast, was only intermittently present in France. But even the English were far from achieving the level of naval organization and funding present in Spain—England typically could not afford to pay the sailors who fought off the Spanish Armada in 1588. Both the Dutch and English depended to a large degree on privateers to wage war upon the Spanish Empire. Men such as Francis Drake and Piet Heyn operated sometimes as licensed pirates or maritime guerrilla fighters, sometimes as conventional naval commanders.

Heart of the empire
This view of Cadiz shows Spanish ships preparing to sail to the West Indies. Despite raids by the English and Dutch at the end of the 16th century, Cadiz and Seville remained immensely wealthy commercial centers.

GUNS AND GALLEONS

During the second half of the 16th century the galleon replaced the carrack as the purpose-built warship in European fleets. A leaner, sleeker vessel, it was built for speed, especially in the low-hulled version favored by the English. How best to use these ships in combat was still a matter for experiment. The English, who had the best cannon, favored gun duels, chiefly targeting the opponent's hull. The Spanish, although fully aware of the importance of guns in naval warfare, regarded cannon fire as a prelude to boarding—their galleons carried large numbers of soldiers. The English, in their smaller, nimbler ships, hoped to avoid being boarded by holding the weather gage and thus dictating the range at which the encounter was fought. The battles of the Spanish Armada campaign showed that English guns were not powerful enough to inflict serious damage upon large Spanish galleons. It is worth noting that the Dutch, using even smaller ships than the English, favored boarding as a tactic.

DUTCH GLORY

Spanish naval predominance survived the maritime disaster of the 1588 Armada. Further expeditions were planned against England and magnificent ships built for new Armadas. But in the 17th century, as Spanish financial and military resources began to decline, the Dutch seized the opportunity not only to win their independence but to become a global sea power.

Dutch privateers and irregular coastal forces had performed well against the Spanish in the 16th century, but the Dutch flowering in the first half of the 17th century was on an altogether different scale. The ships of the Dutch East India Company ruthlessly supplanted the Portuguese in much of Asia, most profitably in Indonesia, creating a fabulously wealthy trading empire.

In the Americas the Dutch attacked Portuguese and Spanish colonies and their privateers stole a fortune in Spanish silver.

By the 1630s Spain could no longer communicate with its forces fighting in the Netherlands by sea, having to send arms, supplies, and pay for their troops overland from Italy. Dutch dominance of their home waters was confirmed in spectacular fashion by their total annihilation of a Spanish fleet at the Downs in 1639, a battle that marked the eclipse of Spain as a major naval power.

Galleon against galley
In a clash off the coast of the Netherlands in the early 17th century, a Dutch galleon gets the better of two Spanish galleys, sinking one of them by ramming.

SPANISH WARS

THE DUTCH REVOLT of 1568 against the rule of Spanish Catholic king, Philip II, started a war that would last for 80 years. With William of Nassau, Prince of Orange, as their leader, the Dutch fought a desperate struggle for survival against the might of Spain, greatly aided by the skill and courage of their sailors, whose small ships fought a seaborne guerrilla campaign against Spanish naval might. The English queen, Elizabeth I, tried to avoid war with Spain, but she could not resist backing privateers preying on Spanish colonies in the New World. England was also drawn into support for the Dutch rebels. By 1585 Philip had decided that the heretical English queen must be subdued. Victory over French-backed mercenaries in the Azores in 1583 encouraged him to believe that he could defeat the English navy with an oceanic fleet. The Spanish Armada operation of 1588, intended to allow an invasion of England by Spanish troops from the Netherlands, was an ambitious but ill-conceived exercise in the use of naval power. The skill and courage of English sailors ensured its failure, although the subsequent destruction of the Armada by storms was fortuitous.

ENGLISH PRIVATEERING EXPEDITION

SAN JUAN DE ULÚA

Date September 24, 1569
Forces English: 5 ships; Spanish: 13 ships
Losses English: 3 ships captured: Spanish: none

Location Veracruz, New Spain (Mexico)

After two years' illegal trading and piracy around the coasts of Spain's American colonies, in September 1569 English privateer John Hawkins and his cousin Francis Drake entered the port of Veracruz, with the reluctant permission of the Spanish authorities. They were anchored in the harbor off San Juan de Ulúa island when a fleet from Spain arrived, bringing a new viceroy. At first the viceroy pretended to accept the English presence, but on September 24 he ordered a surprise night attack. Hawkins and Drake escaped on board two small ships, *Minion* and *Judith*. After much hardship, they reached home the following year.

DUTCH REVOLT

ZUIDERZEE

Date October 5–12, 1573
Forces Spanish: 18 ships; Dutch: 24 ships
Losses Spanish: 6 ships captured; Dutch: none

Location Zuiderzee, near Hoorn, Netherlands

In 1569 William of Nassau, Prince of Orange, issued letters of marque to a motley assembly of sea captains prepared to offer their services to the Dutch revolt. As the rebels in the Netherlands had adopted the ironic nickname of "the Beggars," these privateers became known as the Sea Beggars. Operating out of safe havens provided by the Protestant French in La Rochelle and by Queen Elizabeth in southern England, they raided the Netherlands coast and inhibited the seaborne trade of the Spanish-ruled provinces. The Sea Beggars' indiscriminate plunder of merchant shipping led Elizabeth to ban them from English ports in spring 1572, whereupon they seized new bases on the Dutch coast.

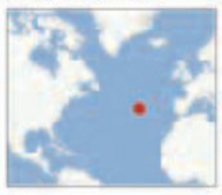
The Spanish fought back and in the summer of 1573 retook the rebel city of Haarlem. They then planned to regain control of the Zuiderzee, the inland water between Spanish-held Amsterdam and the North Sea. Maximilien de Henin, Count of Bossu, assembled a war fleet at Amsterdam. In October he sailed out aboard his provocatively named 34-gun flagship, *Inquisition*. The Sea Beggars emerged from their bases around the Zuiderzee to give battle, with Cornelis Dirkszoon, mayor of Monnickendam, in command.

The Spanish were superior in firepower, but Dirkszoon hoped to close with them with his smaller ships and take them by boarding. The first encounter, on October 5, went badly for the Sea Beggars. In adverse winds they were unable to board the enemy ships and suffered heavily from cannon fire. There followed a standoff until October 11, when the wind shifted in Dirkszoon's favor. His ships bore down upon the Spanish, three of them engaging *Inquisition*, which ran aground on a sandbank. The fighting was fierce. Dirkszoon was wounded, command passing to his captain Jan Floor. Several Spanish ships were taken, while the rest fled back to Amsterdam. *Inquisition* held out the longest but was captured after more than 24 hours' combat. Bossu was among those taken prisoner.

Sea Beggars in action
The Sea Beggars make a surprise landing in a coastal town, putting the Spanish and the Catholics among the local residents to flight.

WAR OF THE PORTUGUESE SUCCESSION

AZORES



Date July 26, 1582
Forces French: 56 ships; Spanish: 32 ships
Losses French: 11 ships; Spanish: none

Location Terceira island, Azores

In 1580 the Spanish king, Philip II, took over Portugal. His claim to the throne was contested by Don Antonio, Prior of Crato. Basing himself in the only remaining independent Portuguese territory, the Azores, Don Antonio won the backing of France. Filippo Strozzi, a Florentine who had been commander-in-chief of the French army, recruited a multinational mercenary force that sailed from France for the Azores in June 1582.

Philip II reacted by sending the Marqués de Santa Cruz with a fleet of galleons and armed merchantmen, which reached the Azores on July 22. The Spanish were outnumbered, but their ships were larger. For four days the fleets maneuvered in light winds. On the morning of July 26 they were sailing in opposite directions a few miles apart when Don Lope de Figueroa, commander of the galleon *San Matteo*, made a death-or-glory dash toward the enemy. Five of Strozzi's ships surrounded the isolated galleon, battering it with cannon fire for two hours, but were unable to board the high-sided vessel. Meanwhile, the rest of the Spanish fleet maneuvered to come to Figueroa's aid. The armed merchantmen of their rear squadron arrived first and soon disabled Strozzi's flagship with their powerful guns. A confused mêlée ensued. Santa Cruz, on board *San Martin*, sought out Strozzi's limping ship and bombarded it until most of those on board were dead or wounded. The Spanish boarded the vessel and took Strozzi off, but he was badly injured and soon died. The survivors of his fleet fled in all directions, bringing the battle to a close. Victory in the Azores convinced Santa Cruz that a Spanish Armada could defeat the English.

Spain's takeover of Portugal
The Spanish fleet under Santa Cruz sails into Lisbon to back up Philip II's claim to the Portuguese throne in 1580. Santa Cruz sailed on to defeat the only pocket of resistance to Spanish rule in the Azores in 1582.

1526–1588

MARQUÉS DE SANTA CRUZ

SPANISH ADMIRAL, VICTOR AT LEPANTO AND THE AZORES

Don Álvaro de Bazán was born in Granada, southern Spain. He followed in the footsteps of his father, who was commander of Spain's Mediterranean galleys. Bazán was created Marqués de Santa Cruz in reward for his outstanding performance as a galley commander at Lepanto in 1571. Appointed Admiral of the Ocean in 1583, he showed equal aptitude for warfare under sail at the battle of the Azores. The original idea of sending a fleet to attack England was his, and he would have led the Armada but for his death in February 1588.

ANGLO–SPANISH WARS

CADIZ

Date April 29–May 1, 1587
Forces English: 21 ships; Spanish: 8 galleys
Losses English: 1 ship captured; Spanish: 24

Location Cadiz, southern Spain

In spring 1587 Spain was preparing an Armada to invade England. Sir Francis Drake, on board *Elizabeth Bonaventure*, sailed from Plymouth with a force of warships and armed merchantmen to carry out a preemptive strike against the Spanish. On the afternoon of April 29, Drake's ships appeared off Cadiz and immediately entered the harbor. Brushing aside the galleys defending the port and sinking a Genoese merchant ship that had the audacity to put up a fight, the English settled in among the crowd of ships at anchor, emptying them of their cargoes and setting them on fire. The Spanish galleys harassed the English with hit-and-run attacks and succeeded in capturing one ship that had become isolated. The next day Drake explored further reaches of the harbor, in particular destroying a large galleon belonging to the Marqués de Santa Cruz. But the Spanish brought up heavy guns on shore and began to fire on the English ships. *Golden Lion*, commanded by Drake's vice admiral, William Borough, had to manoeuvre briskly to avoid serious damage. An unfavorable wind confined Drake's ships in the harbor for another night, but they skillfully fended off attacks by Spanish fireships, as well as the persistent attentions of the galleys. Drake sailed out of Cadiz the following day, claiming to have "singed the king of Spain's beard." In practical terms, perhaps the expedition's greatest achievement was the destruction of thousands of barrel staves, making it hard for the Spanish to make sufficient barrels for the food and water required for the Armada.

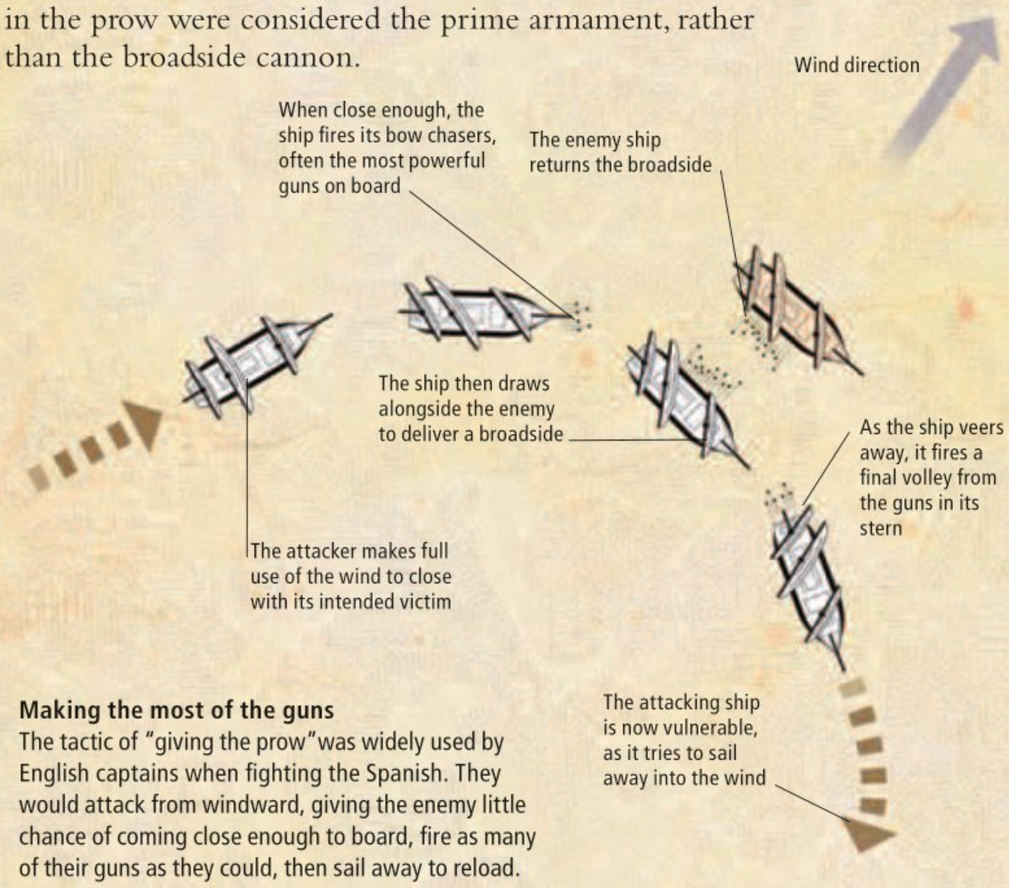
> THE LOSS WAS NOT VERY GREAT, BUT THE DARING OF THE ATTEMPT WAS VERY GREAT INDEED.
>
> **KING PHILIP II OF SPAIN**, COMMENTING ON DRAKE'S RAID ON CADIZ

MAN-OF-WAR TACTICS

GIVING THE PROW

MAKING MAXIMUM USE OF THE WIND

Guns on 16th-century ships were very slow to reload. A ship would typically sail toward an enemy, firing the powerful guns mounted in the prow, and then turn to allow the broadside and stern guns to be fired. If the maneuver was possible, the captain might turn his ship about to fire the other broadside. The ship would withdraw to a safe distance to reload. The guns in the prow were considered the prime armament, rather than the broadside cannon.



Making the most of the guns
The tactic of "giving the prow" was widely used by English captains when fighting the Spanish. They would attack from windward, giving the enemy little chance of coming close enough to board, fire as many of their guns as they could, then sail away to reload.

CREW PROFILE

GALLEON

1550–1650

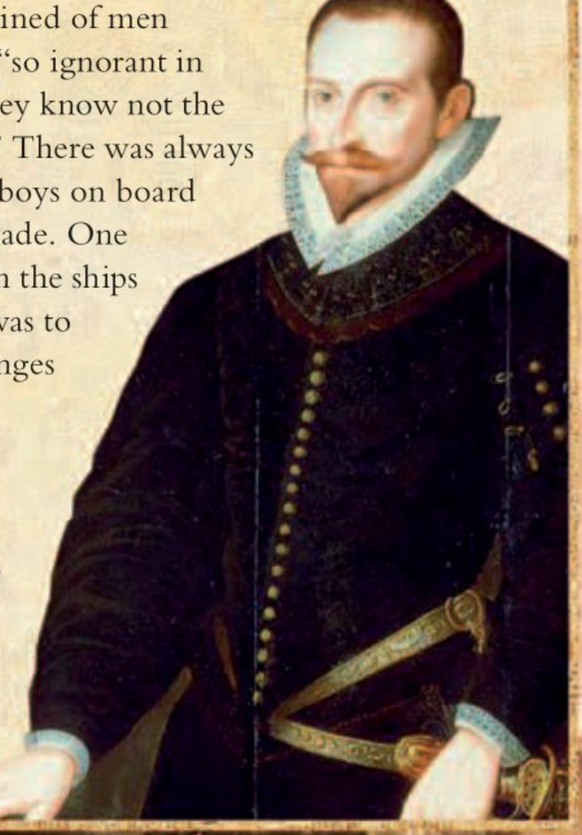
A LATE 16TH-CENTURY GALLEON might typically have 200 to 300 men on board. The normal social hierarchy continued to function at sea, with those of higher standing relatively privileged, but life aboard was hard for everyone. Men slept on the wooden deck unless they had brought their own bed with them—hammocks were not yet in common use and no specific areas were designated for sleeping. Food was often poor due to storage problems, and beer, wine, and water was sometimes sour and undrinkable. Outbreaks of disease were a constant threat, taking a heavy toll of galleon crews at all times. Pay was low and uncertain, but there was always the chance the crew might profit from seizing a prize.

CAPTAIN AND OFFICERS

The captain of a galleon would be at least a gentleman and often a nobleman. Many were experienced soldiers but in no sense men of the sea. In the Spanish navy the captain might be supported by a hierarchy of commissioned officers, but on board an English galleon he held command alone. The only other officer on board was likely to be the commander of the body of soldiers carried in the forecastle. The captain's only social equals on board were likely to be gentleman adventurers who pressed forward to serve in pursuit of glory. Regarded as rank amateurs who drove admirals to despair, many were nonetheless taken on board with varying degrees of usefulness.

PROFESSIONAL SEAMEN

The captain was not necessarily expected to know anything about sailing a ship, a job which fell to his most important subordinate, the master, an experienced mariner, along with the pilot and the boatswain. The bulk of the crew—some of them volunteers but most pressed into service—were in theory experienced seamen. The Spanish used convicts to row galleys but not to man galleons. Crew were taken in time of war from the population of fishermen, merchant seamen, and privateers in port towns. However, Sir Walter Raleigh complained of men being taken on "so ignorant in sea service, as they know not the name of a rope." There was always a flock of ship's boys on board learning their trade. One of their duties on the ships of the Armada was to sing out the changes of the watch.



Sir James Lancaster
A typical captain of the era, Lancaster was part merchant, part privateer. In 1588 he commanded an armed merchantman in the battle against the Armada.

ANGLO-SPANISH WARS

DEFEAT OF SPANISH ARMADA

Date	July 29–August 12, 1588
Location	Seas around the British Isles
Result	English victory

COMBATANTS

ENGLAND	SPAIN

COMMANDERS

Lord Howard of Effingham	**Duke of Medina Sidonia**

FORCES

Ships: 197 galleons and armed merchantmen	**Ships:** 130, including 22 galleons, 4 galleasses

LOSSES

Men: c.400 **Ships:** none	**Men:** c.2,000 in battle **Ships:** 6 in battle, 57 on voyage back to Spain

The crucial battle
There were a number of small engagements as the English ships followed the Armada up the Channel. The fleets did not fully engage until the Spanish reached Calais, when the English launched a full-scale attack.

THE DEFEAT OF THE SPANISH ARMADA

On May 28, 1588, Spanish king Philip II's "Invincible Armada" sailed from Lisbon on the "Enterprise of England." Goaded by English privateers' attacks on his colonial possessions and treasure fleets, and by Queen Elizabeth's support for Dutch rebels in the Netherlands, Philip had decided that England must be taught a lesson. The Armada was to sail through the English Channel and escort a Spanish army from the Netherlands across the North Sea to land in Kent. The original leader of the enterprise was the Marqués de Santa Cruz, Spain's most distinguished admiral, but on his untimely death in February 1588 command had been most reluctantly assumed by the Duke of Medina Sidonia—who, by his own account, "did not understand it and knew nothing about it."

The assembly, equipping, and supply of this vast fleet had been a long and arduous task, rendered more difficult by English raids on Spanish ports. It took the Armada a further three weeks to reach Coruña in northern Spain, and it did not weigh anchor again until July 21. The English were not inclined to wait for the slow-moving Spanish to arrive. The fiery Francis Drake persuaded his commander-in-chief, Lord Howard of Effingham, to attempt the destruction of the Armada before it sailed, but three times ships sent south toward Spain were driven back by bad weather. The English commanders then resolved to base their main force in Plymouth, ready to tackle the Armada as soon as it approached the Channel.

THE COUNTRY ALERTED

The Spanish were spotted off the Lizard on July 29, news conveyed by the lighting of a string of beacons along the coast from Devon to the Scottish border. The Armada was an awesome sight—some 130 ships carrying possibly 18,000 soldiers as well as their complement of sailors. But it was a heterogeneous collection of vessels. Less than 50 of them could be described as fighting ships, the rest being transports. The fleet's Spanish and Portuguese galleons were state-of-the-art warships, although they were slower and less maneuverable than their English equivalents. The English had about 65 galleons and armed merchantmen at Plymouth, with another contingent waiting at the eastern end of the Channel.

Armada medal
This silver medal was made for Dutch prince Maurice of Nassau. The inscription reads "He (Jehovah) blew and they were scattered."

On the day the alarm was raised Howard and Drake were pinned in Plymouth Sound by the wind, but the following morning the wind turned off shore. For most of the next eight days, while they shadowed the Spanish along the Channel, the English held the weather gage. The Armada advanced in a well-disciplined crescent, the fighting ships sheltering the transports in the center. The nimble English ships buzzed tirelessly around the Spanish flanks, harassing them with largely ineffective long-range cannon fire. Whereas the English saw their galleons as gun platforms, the Spanish regarded cannon as ancillary weapons, useful for softening an enemy prior to boarding. Keeping the advantage of the wind, however, the English had no intention of letting the enemy get close enough to board.

By the time the Armada anchored off Calais on August 6, Howard was thoroughly satisfied with his fleet's performance. "We have so daily pursued them at heels," he wrote, "that they never had leisure to stop at any place along our English coast."

Yet Medina Sidonia had lost only two major ships in the course of the run up the Channel. *Nuestra Senora del Rosario* was damaged in a collision and snapped up by the indisciplined Drake as his personal prize, and *San Salvador* was destroyed by an unexplained explosion. Philip's great "Enterprise of England" fell apart not because of the efforts of the English sailors, but because the intended coordination with the Duke of Parma's army in the Netherlands never happened. The Duke informed Medina Sidonia on arrival that he did not have the barges ready with which to ferry his troops to England.

With no suitable harbor at its disposal, the Armada was left waiting in the exposed Calais roads. At a council on board Howard's flagship *Ark Royal*, the English captains agreed upon a night attack using fireships. It was a familiar tactic and the Spanish had a screen of boats with grapnels—barbed anchors—prepared to haul the burning hulks off course. The British, however, were helped that night by a stiff wind and a following tide, and most of the eight blazing ships bore down into the anchorage. Although not a single Spanish ship was set on fire, panic seized the fleet and ships slipped their cables, fleeing in disorder in the darkness.

Relic of an Armada wreck
This Spanish mariner's astrolabe was found on Valentia Island off the west coast of Ireland, where three Armada ships are known to have been wrecked.

The following morning, August 8, found the ships of the Armada scattered northward off Gravelines, between Calais and Dunkirk, and pressed toward dangerous shoals by an onshore wind. The English, led by Drake's squadron, sailed into the attack while Medina Sidonia gallantly marshaled a defensive formation. The cannon fire was, according to one observer, "the greatest that was even seen or imagined." The Spanish could not match their opponents' rate of fire and were again given no chance to board, although the fighting was often within musket range. The flagship *San Martin* was especially hard hit, with shot tearing the rigging and sails, holing the hull, and killing and wounding many on board. The galleons *San Mateo* and *San Felipe* were so badly shot up that they had to be run aground. Most of the other Spanish front-line fighting ships were damaged, although only the armed merchantman *Maria Juan* was actually sunk by cannon fire.

AFTERMATH OF THE BATTLE

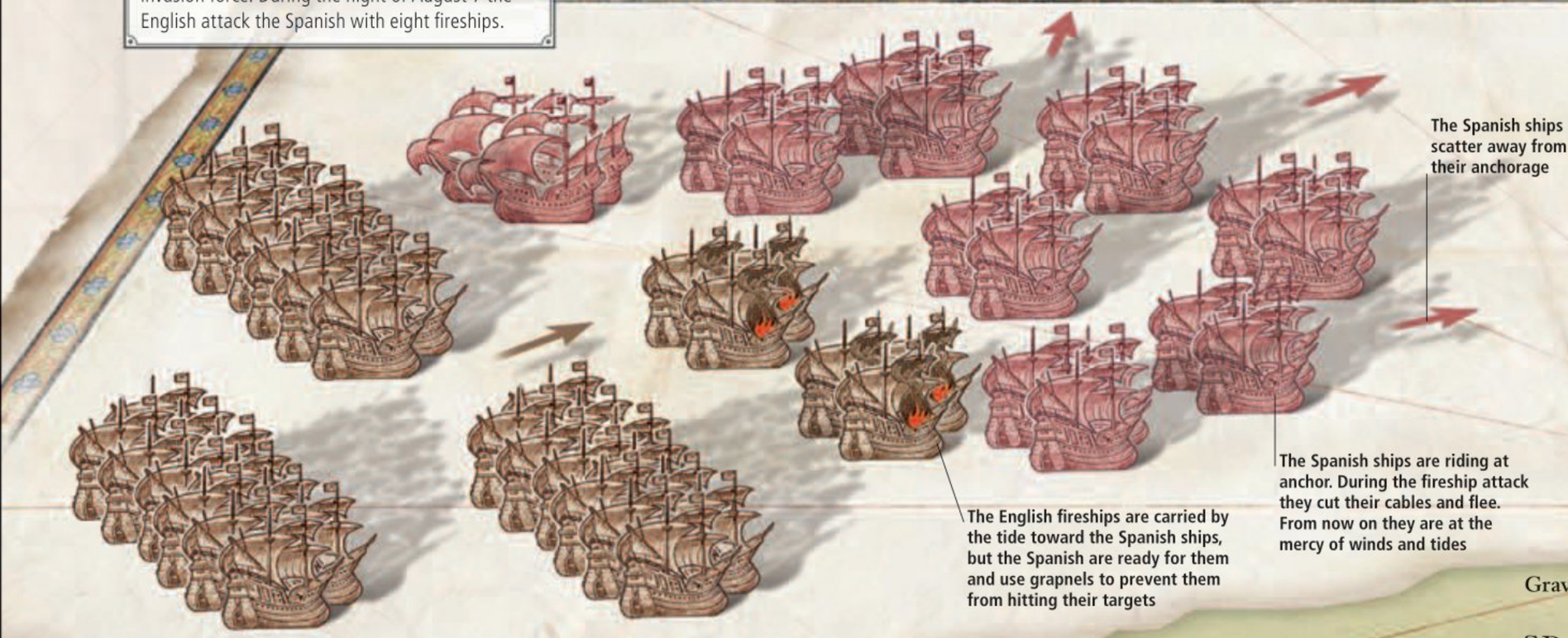
The English broke off the battle after about nine hours, because they were running low on ammunition and confident that the battered Spanish were facing imminent catastrophe, as a rising gale drove them inexorably toward the shoals. The following morning, however, the wind veered as if by miracle and blew the Armada clear into the North Sea. Howard shadowed them as far as the Firth of Forth before turning back, short of supplies and with rapidly sickening crews. Medina Sidonia decided to return to Spain by sailing around the north of Scotland and down the west coast of Ireland.

For English sailors the aftermath of the fighting was a disillusioning experience. Kept in service in case the Armada returned, they were unpaid and short of food, adequate clothing, and shelter. Thousands of them died of epidemic diseases. The fate of the Spanish was worse. Freak storms turned their voyage home into a naval catastrophe. Ships disappeared without trace in the ocean or were wrecked upon the wild Irish coast. Those who survived experienced extremes of deprivation and exhaustion. Just 67 ships out of the original fleet of 130 succeeded in returning to Spanish shores, most of them limping to the port of Santander, where they were repaired and refitted.

Gravelines
This dramatic representation of the battle was painted in 1796, at a time when England again faced the threat of invasion by sea, this time from Revolutionary France. It shows the scene in the early morning after the English fireship attack, with the prow of a Spanish ship silhouetted against the flames.

1 THE FIRESHIP ATTACK

Following a series of inconclusive engagements in the English Channel, the Armada anchors off Calais, waiting to be joined by the Duke of Parma's invasion force. During the night of August 7 the English attack the Spanish with eight fireships.



KEY

ENGLISH FLEET

5–6 galleons or armed merchant vessels

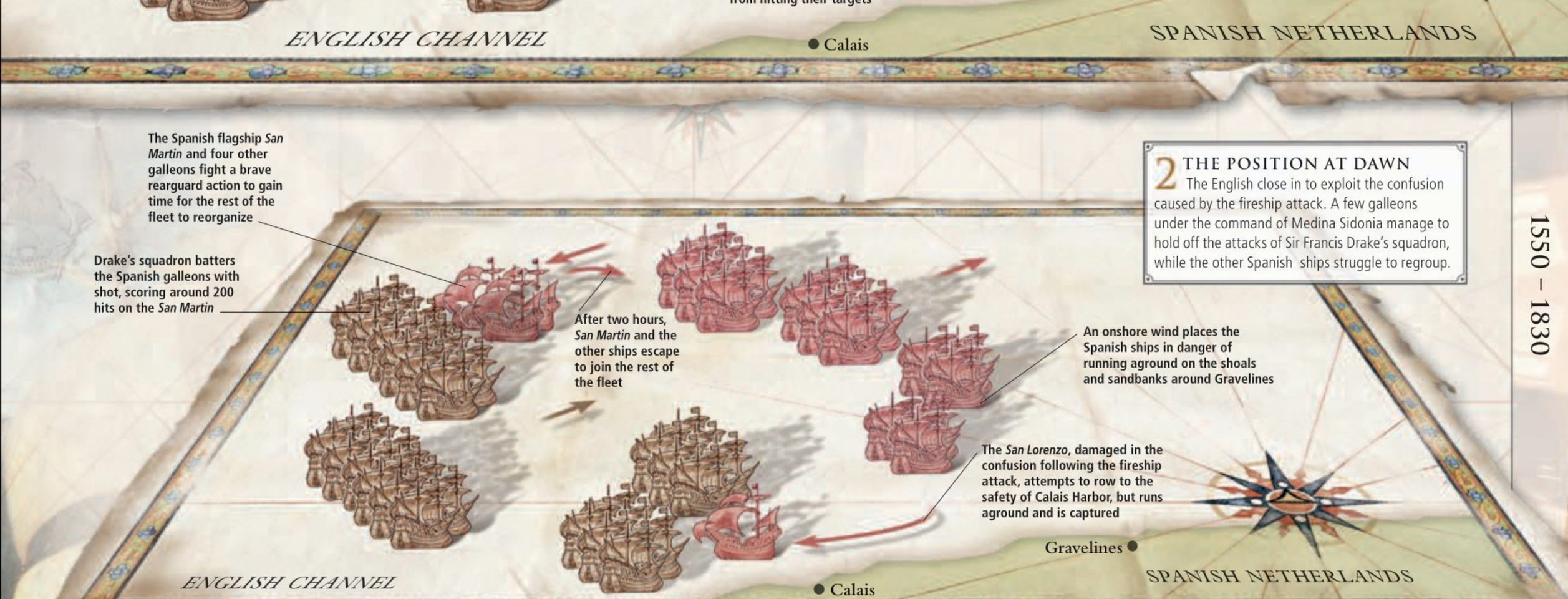
1–2 fireships

SPANISH AND PORTUGUESE FLEET

5–6 galleons or armed merchant vessels (unless otherwise stated)

2 THE POSITION AT DAWN

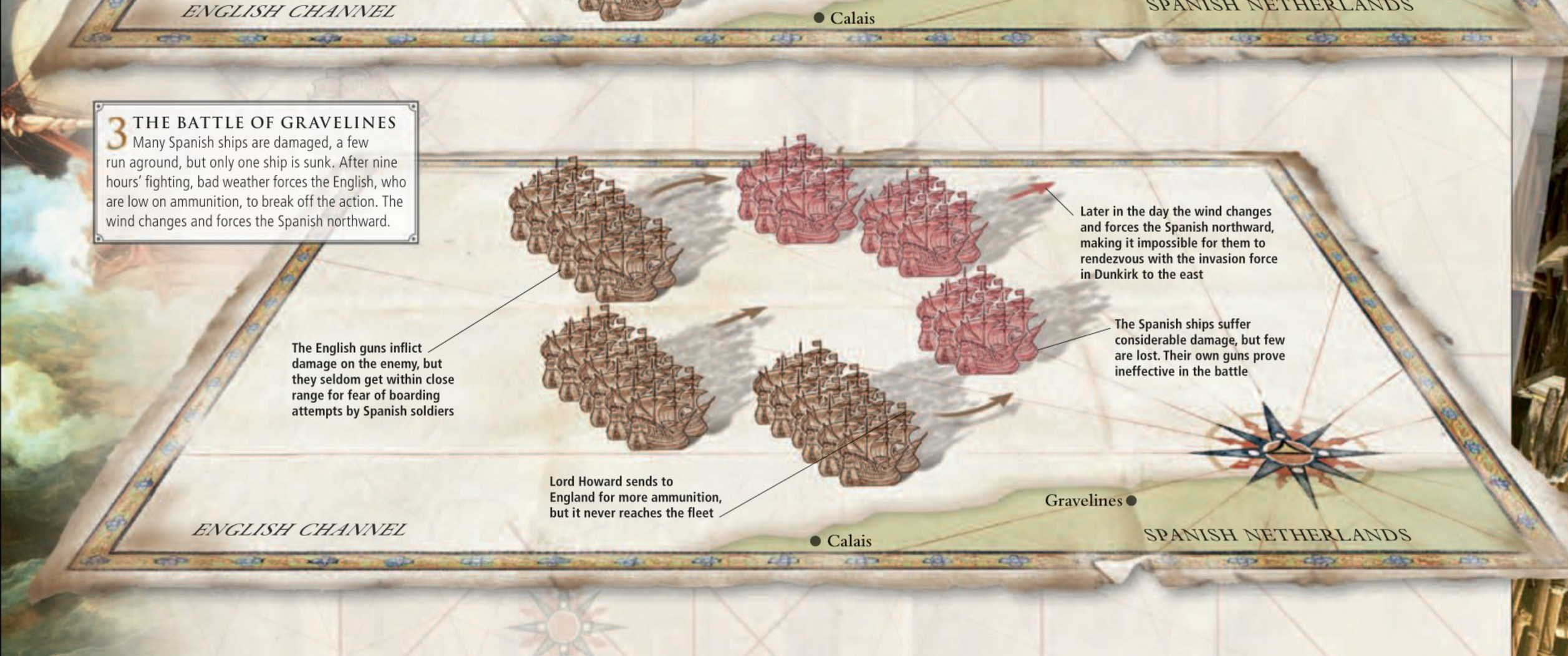
The English close in to exploit the confusion caused by the fireship attack. A few galleons under the command of Medina Sidonia manage to hold off the attacks of Sir Francis Drake's squadron, while the other Spanish ships struggle to regroup.



1550 – 1830

3 THE BATTLE OF GRAVELINES

Many Spanish ships are damaged, a few run aground, but only one ship is sunk. After nine hours' fighting, bad weather forces the English, who are low on ammunition, to break off the action. The wind changes and forces the Spanish northward.



DEFEAT OF THE SPANISH ARMADA

Philip II of Spain's "Invincible Armada" sailed up the English Channel in order to ship an army across from the Spanish Netherlands to conquer England. In the end it was defeated in this battle, fought off Gravelines, and failed to rendezvous with the army. The Spanish fleet consisted of all kinds of ships, including galleons, armed merchantmen, and even Mediterranean galleasses, heavy oar-powered galleys, like the one shown in the center of the foreground.

AFTER THE ARMADA

THE SPANISH ARMADA of 1588 was a military fiasco and a maritime disaster, but in the 1590s Spain reasserted its status as the leading oceanic naval power. The English "Counter-Armada" of 1589 failed to exploit Spain's temporary weakness, and after that the willpower and resources of the Spanish state were marshaled to restore the strength of the Spanish navy. The overwhelming force sent to attack an English fleet off the Azores in 1591 was indicative of Spanish recovery, even as the resistance put up by Sir Richard Grenville and the *Revenge* exemplified the best of English fighting spirit. The Spanish were capable of sending further Armadas to attack England in 1596 and 1597. Although both were defeated by the weather before reaching their objective, they were a more serious threat to England than the English raid on Cadiz in 1596 was to Spain. For England, the deaths of Sir John Hawkins and Sir Francis Drake on a vain expedition to the Caribbean symbolized the end of an era. The accession of James I to the English throne in 1603 led to peace with Spain and a period of decline for the English navy.

ANGLO–SPANISH WARS

THE COUNTER-ARMADA

Date April–June 1589
Forces English: c.120 ships; Spanish: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location Coruña, Spain and Lisbon, Portugal

Flush with victory over the Armada, England sought to strike a decisive blow against a weakened Spain. An expedition was mounted with three ambitious goals: to destroy the Spanish ships refitting in northern Spain; to seize Lisbon and restore Portugal's independence; and to capture the Spanish treasure fleet from the Americas. Since the English state was broke, the expedition was financed as a joint-stock venture, with Queen Elizabeth as one of the investors. After endless delays a large fleet carrying 20,000 troops set out from England in April, with Sir Francis Drake and Sir John Norreys in command. Also on board, against the Queen's wishes, was her courtier the Earl of Essex.

The Counter-Armada was a fiasco from start to finish. It failed to attack the port of Santander, where most of the refitting Spanish fleet lay defenseless, instead taking Coruña, where the most notable prize was a damaging quantity of wine. The attempt to take Lisbon failed dismally: the population refused to rise against the Spanish and the expedition had no siege engines with which to breach the city's walls. The interception of the Spanish treasure fleet was foiled by Atlantic storms. Decimated by disease—as many as 10,000 men may have died – the fleet straggled home, to the special distress of its disappointed financial backers.

1532–1595

SIR JOHN HAWKINS

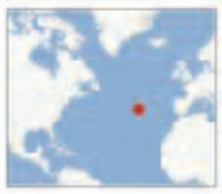
ENGLISH PRIVATEER AND ADMIRAL

Born in Plymouth, Hawkins was a privateer who pioneered English participation in the Atlantic slave trade in the 1560s. In 1577 he was appointed treasurer to the queen's navy. He was a fine administrator, making improvements in ship design and showing an admirable concern for sailors' welfare. Hawkins fought against the Armada as a vice admiral on board *Victory*, a service for which he was knighted. In the 1590s he was a leading advocate of an offensive strategy in the war with Spain. He died of disease on an expedition to the Caribbean in 1595.

The port of Lisbon
The Portuguese capital, under Spanish rule since 1580, was one of the main targets of the Counter-Armada, but the English failed to cause any damage.

ANGLO–SPANISH WARS

AZORES



Date August 30-31, 1591
Forces Spanish: 53 ships; English: c.20 ships
Losses Spanish: 1 ship sunk; English: 1 ship captured

Location Off Flores island, Azores

In spring 1591 an English fleet under Lord Thomas Howard set sail for the Azores, hoping to intercept the annual Spanish treasure fleet. Howard's second-in-command was Sir Richard Grenville, a soldier and privateer of an arrogant and violent disposition, feared by his enemies and his own men alike. Grenville was on board *Revenge*, widely respected as one of the finest galleons in the world. While Howard waited at the Azores for a treasure fleet that never came, a large force of warships assembled in the Spanish port of Ferrol, commanded by Don Alonso de Bazán, a brother of the deceased Marqués de Santa Cruz.

Bazán reached the Azores in late August. The English were weary with waiting, many of their crew struck down by disease. They had landed their sick on Flores island and were taking on water and cleaning out their bilges when they learned that a Spanish fleet was approaching. Bazán had cleverly split his force in two, sending ships around both sides of the island to catch his enemy in a pincer movement. The English were just ready to make sail when the Spanish appeared around a headland at 5:00 p.m. Howard led a dash to open sea between the pincers of Bazán's trap. One ship lagged behind: Grenville's *Revenge*. As the trap closed, Grenville attempted to break through the mass of Spanish ships. Rammed by the galleon *San Felipe*, he was trapped, while Howard led the rest of the English fleet away to safety.

The struggle that followed was an epic of resistance by Grenville's crew. Grappled by another galleon, *San Barnabe*, and surrounded by four others, she fought off repeated attempts to board, even succeeding in sinking one Spanish ship. Wounded in the head, Grenville insisted on continuing resistance, although it was evidently hopeless. The following morning his crew disobeyed his order to blow up the ship and surrendered. Grenville died of his wounds; *Revenge* sank in a gale two weeks later.

Defying the odds
The last stand of the *Revenge* was the kind of heroic tale told again and again to inspire patriotism in generations of English schoolboys.

WITNESS TO WAR

SIR WALTER RALEIGH

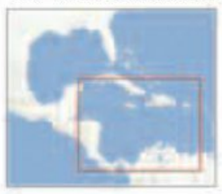
ENGLISH NAVAL COMMANDER

LAST FIGHT OF THE REVENGE IN THE AZORES

"Sir Richard finding himself in this distress, and unable any longer to make resistance, having endured in this ***fifteen hours fight****, the assault of fifteen several Armadoes, all by turns aboard him, and by estimation* ***eight hundred shot of great artillery****, besides many assaults and entries … commanded the Master Gunner, whom he knew to be a most resolute man, to split and sink the ship; that thereby* ***nothing might remain of glory or victory to the Spaniards****: seeing in so many hours fight, and with so great a Navy they were not able to take her, having had fifteen hours time,* ***fifteen thousand men****, and* ***fifty and three sail of men of war*** *to perform it withal."*

ANGLO–SPANISH WARS

CARIBBEAN



Date August 1595–January 1596
Forces English: 26 ships; Spanish: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location
The Caribbean

In 1595 the aging Sir Francis Drake and Sir John Hawkins planned a return to privateering. They would raid Spanish colonies in the Caribbean, combining private profit with damage to the Spanish war effort. The two leaders of the expedition, strong-willed contrasting characters, soon fell to arguing. Drake insisted on attacking Grand Canary island en route, but an attempted landing failed in the face of stiff resistance. They then crossed the Atlantic to attack the port of San Juan in Puerto Rico, hoping to capture a disabled Spanish treasure ship sheltering in the harbor. When they arrived off San Juan, Hawkins died of a fever. The Spanish authorities on the island had been warned of their approach and the defenses were too strong for Drake's force to overcome. In search of easier prey they shifted to the mainland, going ashore at Nombre de Dios, but when the expedition's land commander, Sir Thomas Baskerville, led a march on Panama he met stiff resistance and had to turn back. Drake refused to give up, saying: "We must have gold before we reach England." He died of dysentery off Puerto Bello on January 28, 1596. The expedition was a fiasco, although Baskerville brought most of the ships home.

ANGLO–SPANISH WARS

CADIZ

Date July 20–June 5, 1596
Forces English and Dutch: 120 ships; Spanish: unknown
Losses English: none; Spanish: 2 ships sunk, 2 captured

Location
Cadiz, Spain

On June 3, 1596, a fleet set sail from Plymouth to attack the Spanish port of Cadiz. Its commanders were Elizabeth I's favorite Robert Devereux, Earl of Essex, and her experienced lord admiral, Lord Howard of Effingham. Also on board was Sir Walter Raleigh, with the post of rear admiral. The queen regarded the expedition as a hopefully self-financing pre-emptive strike against Spanish preparations for a new Armada, but Essex had a more ambitious objective—to seize and hold the port with a permanent garrison. Arriving at Cadiz, the English fought a sharp, successful naval engagement during which competition for glory between rival English commanders was as prominent as hostility to the enemy. Two large Spanish galleons were destroyed and two captured. Essex then stormed the town walls and seized control of Cadiz. His soldiers ransacked the town for valuables—one account describes common soldiers "with their arms full of silk and cloth of gold." But the English failed to seize the rich merchant ships in the inner harbor, which the Spanish were able to scuttle. Howard refused to go along with Essex's plan for a permanent occupation of Cadiz. The English were in any case keen to get their treasure back home. They left on July 5 with the city in flames. The raid was a severe blow to Spanish prestige, but it did not prevent the dispatch of an Armada four months later that was, fortunately for England, forced back by bad weather.

Anglo-Dutch attack on Cadiz
This Dutch engraving of the 1596 attack on Cadiz shows buildings around the port in flames. The Dutch published many such propaganda images of Spain's discomfiture at the hands of its Protestant enemies.

THE RISE OF DUTCH SEA POWER

IN THE FIRST HALF of the 17th century the sailors of the Dutch United Provinces, in rebellion against the rule of Habsburg Spain, were the world's most formidable sea fighters. Their best commanders—men such as Piet Heyn and Maarten Tromp—showed a combination of seamanship and ruthless aggression that their enemies, although sailing in larger warships, could not match. Dutch naval victories helped force the Spanish to conclude a 12-year truce in 1609. Meanwhile the fleet of the Dutch East India Company supplanted the Portuguese in the Indian Ocean and East Asia, forcibly seizing control of the valuable spice trade. By the time the war with Spain resumed, the Dutch had used increasing wealth to finance naval expansion. The Dutch West India Company, established in 1621, harassed the Spanish and Portuguese in the New World, occupying part of Brazil and, in 1628, capturing the entire Spanish treasure fleet. A stunning victory over the Spanish at the Downs in 1639 confirmed Dutch naval supremacy and rendered inevitable Spain's eventual acknowledgement of Dutch independence.

DUTCH–PORTUGUESE WAR

BANTAM BAY

Date December 27, 1601–January 1, 1602
Forces Dutch: 3 ships, 2 yachts; Portuguese: 8 galleons, 22 other vessels
Losses Dutch: none; Portuguese: 3 fustas captured
Location Sunda Strait, western Java

On April 23, 1601, five ships sailed from the Netherlands for Indonesia—then known as the East Indies or simply the Spice Islands. Calling itself the Moluccan Fleet, this flotilla was commanded by Admiral Wolphert Harmensz and consisted of three armed merchantmen and two yachts—fast lightly armed ships used as scouts. The Moluccan Fleet was intended to break the Portuguese monopoly of the spice trade. Portuguese sailors had dominated the Indian Ocean for almost a century, but they were ill-prepared to meet a ruthless challenge from an aggressive European arrival. Harmensz's ships appeared off the Javanese port of Bantam, a major center for the export of pepper, at Christmas 1601. The Portuguese had a superior force of galleons and fustas—light galleys—in harbor, but when skirmishing began they had the worst of it. On January 1, the Portuguese abandoned the port, which became the Indian Ocean headquarters of the newly formed Dutch East India Company.

Horary quadrant
Used for telling the time by the angle of the sun, the quadrant has a scale that is adjusted for every day of the year.

EIGHTY YEARS WAR

GIBRALTAR

Date April 25, 1607
Forces Dutch: 26 ships; Spanish: 21 ships
Losses Dutch: none; Spanish: 21 ships destroyed
Location Bay of Gibraltar

In early April 1607 a fleet of 26 small but well-armed Dutch warships set sail for the Iberian peninsula, accompanied by four supply ships. In command was the audacious and experienced Jacob van Heemskerk on board *Aeolus*. Arriving off Lisbon, he learned that a Spanish war fleet was in the Strait of Gibraltar and headed south to engage it. The Dutch found ten large Spanish galleons—far bigger ships than any of their own—and a number of lesser vessels anchored in Gibraltar Bay. Van Heemskerk decided to attack. He knew his ships would have no chance to withdraw if the battle went against them—there would be, he told his captains, "no choice between triumph and destruction."

The Spanish fleet was under the command of Admiral Don Juan Álvarez de Ávila, a veteran of Lepanto. He was astonished by the presumption of the small Dutch ships, which sailed fearlessly into the bay, drifting gradually toward his galleons in a faint wind. Van Heemskerk's plan was for two ships to place themselves alongside each galleon, firing point-blank broadsides into both sides of the hull. His *Aeolus* was to engage the Spanish flagship *San Augustin*, with *Tiger* on the other side. During the long slow approach the Dutch held their fire, the gunners ordered to wait until the ships were hull-to-hull. In the first broadsides van Heemskerk was fatally wounded, his leg torn off by a cannonball. De Ávila was also killed immediately. The carnage as the Dutch ships fired into galleons packed with soldiers was appalling. Several galleons were set ablaze and reduced to burning hulks, drifting out of control onto shore. Other Spanish ships were sunk. One exploded as a shot ignited its powder store, showering blazing debris across the smoke-darkened bay. *San Augustin* was the last to succumb, boarded from both sides. The fighting ended toward sunset, but not the slaughter. The Dutch sailors rowed boats around the wreckage-strewn bay shooting or stabbing Spaniards who had leaped into the water from their burning ships. Around 4,000 Spanish sailors and soldiers are reckoned to have lost their lives; the Dutch dead numbered about one hundred. Van Heemskerk was awarded a hero's funeral in Amsterdam.

Death by fire and water
The battle of Gibraltar saw the total destruction of the Spanish fleet. Here, one of the Spanish galleons explodes as it is hit in the powder magazine.

EIGHTY YEARS WAR

MATANZAS BAY

Date September 8, 1628
Forces Spanish: 4 galleons, 11 merchantmen; Dutch: 35 ships
Losses Spanish: all ships captured; Dutch: none

Location
Matanzas Bay, Cuba

Every year a treasure fleet sailed across the Atlantic carrying silver, gold, and valuable exotic goods to Spain from its American colonies, riches used to finance Spain's wars in Europe. In 1628 the Dutch West India Company sent warships to capture the treasure fleet, a feat never before achieved. They were led by Admiral Piet Heyn on board the 50-gun *Amsterdam*, with Witte de With as his flag captain. The Spanish treasure ships habitually sailed from Cartagena in Venezuela and Vera Cruz in Mexico, rendezvousing in Havana, Cuba, before crossing the Atlantic. Heyn waited off Havana for the ships to arrive. Warned of the Dutch presence the Cartagena squadron did not sail, but the Vera Cruz ships—four large galleons stuffed with bullion and 11 lesser merchantmen—approached Cuba on September 7.

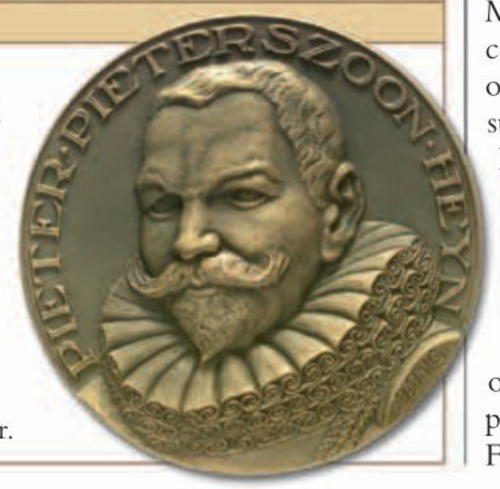
Spanish pieces of eight
The silver coins were minted in the Americas and shipped back to Europe—a tempting target for pirates and privateers.

The convoy was led by Juan de Benavides y Bazan, a man with influence at court but little personal merit. One of Heyn's ships ran into the fleet during the night and at dawn, firing a quick broadside, hastened away to report the contact. Although the Dutch ships were much smaller than the galleons, their collective firepower was formidable. Benavides did not rate his chances in a fight. Abandoning the merchantmen to capture, the galleons sought refuge in Matanzas Bay. But they were too heavily laden with cargo and passengers, and all four ran aground. The Dutch ships fired a few broadsides and then sent in boats that received the surrender of the galleons—from which senior officers had fled ashore—with hardly a shot fired. The captured treasure included 90 tons of silver and gold and was valued at 11.5 million guilders.

1577–1629

PIET HEYN

DUTCH NAVAL COMMANDER AND PRIVATEER



Born in Delftshaven, Heyn was a seafarer from boyhood. Twice captured by the Spanish, he served four years as a galley slave before joining the Dutch East India Company in 1607. He rose to captain and then, in the 1620s, vice admiral in the Dutch West India Company. He raided Spanish and Portuguese settlements and shipping in Africa, South America, and the West Indies, famously seizing the Spanish treasure fleet in 1628. Made Lieutenant Admiral of Holland in March 1629, he died fighting Dunkirk privateers three months later.

EIGHTY YEARS WAR

SLAAK

Date September 12–13, 1631
Forces Dutch: 50 boats; Spanish: 90 boats
Losses Dutch: unknown; Spanish: c.60 boats

Location Slaak channel, Scheldt estuary

The Spanish mounted an amphibious operation to seize strongpoints on the border between rebel Holland and Zeeland, embarking soldiers, under the Marquis of Aytona, on shallow-draft boats and sailing from Antwerp into the Scheldt. Forewarned of the incursion, the Dutch assembled 50 boats under Marinus Hollaer to intercept the convoy. Their attack on the evening of September 12 took the Spanish by surprise. The Dutch used their superior knowledge of the narrow channels and sandbanks to outmaneuver their enemy. Hundreds of Spanish drowned, jumping into the water in an attempt to escape. Aytona was among the few to return to Antwerp. The Admiralty of Amsterdam wanted the Spanish prisoners killed, but Dutch stadtholder Frederick Henry would not allow it.

PRIVATEER ACTION

DUNKIRK SORTIE

Date August 14–September 8, 1635
Forces Dunkirkers: 21 ships; Dutch: 35 warships
Losses Dunkirkers: unknown: Dutch c.120 fishing boats

Location
North Sea

Through most of the Dutch war of independence Dunkirk was controlled by the Spanish. They authorized the Dunkirkers to sail as privateers raiding Dutch merchant convoys and fishing fleets. The Dutch attempted to blockade Dunkirk to stop these attacks, but failed to prevent the privateers inflicting heavy losses. Jacob Collaart, vice admiral of the Dunkirk privateers, succeeded in running the blockade with 21 ships on August 14, 1635. Over the following five days he savaged two Dutch fishing fleets, driving off their armed escorts and sinking more than 120 herring boats. The Dutch sent every available warship in pursuit of the marauders. On August 21, a squadron of 20 Dutch ships under Lieutenant Admiral Filips van Dorp engaged the Dunkirkers near the Dogger Bank. They inflicted little damage and four of them were crippled by the Dunkirkers' guns. When 15 more Dutch warships arrived, Collaart skillfully disengaged. Taking advantage of poor weather, he slipped back into Dunkirk on September 8, carrying 975 Dutch fishermen as prisoners.

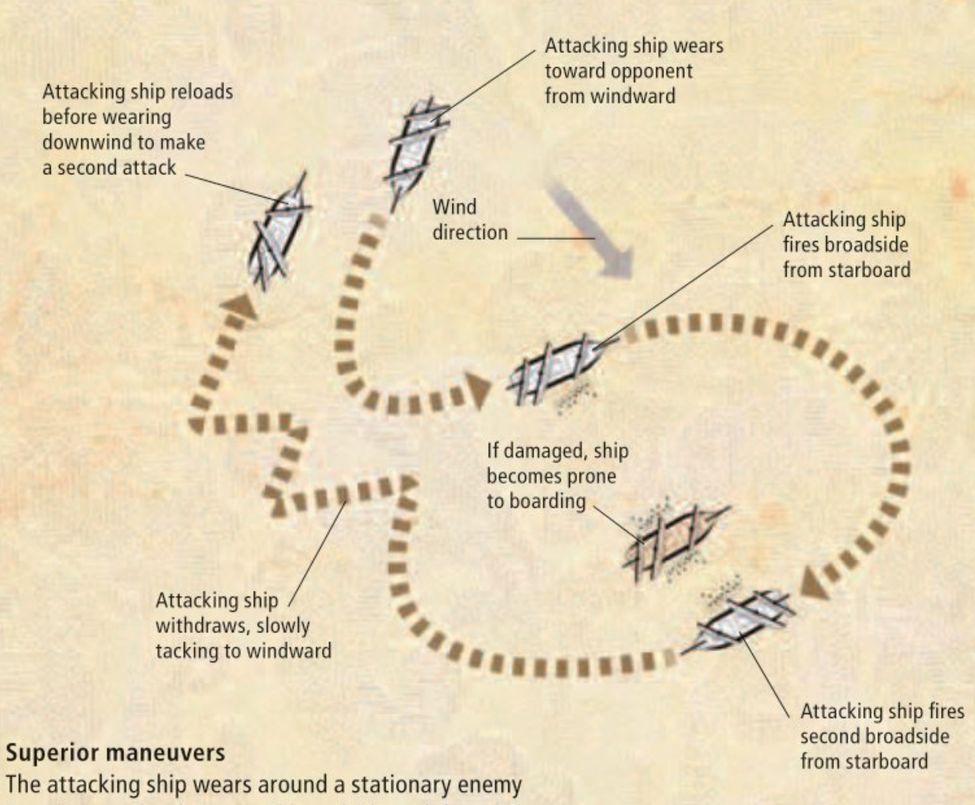
Dunkirk harbor
Throughout the 17th century Dunkirk was a hotbed of privateers, encouraged—first by the Spanish, then by the French—to attack Dutch and English convoys.

MAN-OF-WAR TACTICS

MÊLÉE TACTICS

MAKING MAXIMUM USE OF THE WIND

Before Europe's navies all started to adopt line-of-battle tactics in the mid-17th century, a naval battle in the open sea was a disorderly affair that could easily degenerate into a series of duels between individual ships. A skillful captain and crew would use their superior seamanship to outmaneuver an opponent, using the wind to wear and tack around the enemy, getting in as many shots as possible while avoiding the enemy's fire. The Dutch were particularly formidable opponents when this kind of mêlée developed.



Superior maneuvers
The attacking ship wears around a stationary enemy in order to unleash a second broadside and then tacks upwind to reload and get in a second attack. A duel between two ships could last a long time, sometimes a matter of hours if the crews were evenly matched.

THE BATTLE OF THE DOWNS

EIGHTY YEARS WAR

THE BATTLE OF THE DOWNS

Date	October 31, 1639
Location	South coast of England
Result	Dutch victory

COMBATANTS

DUTCH REPUBLIC	SPAIN

COMMANDERS

Maarten Tromp	Antonio de Oquendo

FORCES

Ships: 105 warships	**Ships:** c.40 warships, 40 transport ships

LOSSES

Men: 500 **Ships:** 1	**Men:** 700 **Ships:** 29 destroyed, 14 captured

Before the battle of the Downs
The Dutch fleet assembles off the straits of Dover. In the foreground is Tromp's flagship *Aemilia*. The coat-of-arms on the ship's stern belongs to Prince Frederick Henry of Orange-Nassau.

In 1639 Spain's long struggle to suppress the Dutch revolt was in its desperate final phase. At war with France, the Spanish could only reinforce and pay its troops in the Netherlands by sea. Antonio de Oquendo was put in command of a fleet of around 40 Spanish and Portuguese warships and a similar number of troop transports to sail from Spain to Flanders.

The Spanish fleet sailed from La Coruña on September 16. Nine days later Dutch Admiral Maarten Tromp, on board *Aemilia*, spotted them heading along the Channel toward the Catholic (i.e. pro-Spanish) port of Dunkirk. Tromp had only 13 ships, one of which he soon lost. He was joined by Witte Corneliszoon de With, vice admiral of Holland and West Frisia, with five more, but was still heavily outgunned by the Spanish, whose men-of-war were much larger as well as more numerous than the Dutch. Yet Tromp engaged his enemy in a running duel, adopting a line of battle firing broadsides. Many of Oquendo's ships took damage. Concerned above all for the safety of his transports, the Spanish commander took refuge in the Downs, an anchorage on the English coast. He expected the protection of the English, who were officially neutral but covertly pro-Spanish.

SPAIN IN ECLIPSE

Tromp established a blockade of the Downs and gathered reinforcements. The Dutch authorities increased the blockade force to over 100 ships. English vice admiral John Pennington was sent with a squadron to observe proceedings, and English merchant ships began ferrying Spanish troops and treasure to Flanders. Tromp ordered English ships to be stopped and searched. The situation was delicate, for the Dutch did not want to go to war with England but wanted to destroy the Spanish fleet. With winter drawing near, Tromp knew he could not sustain the blockade indefinitely.

On October 31, with an easterly wind in their favor, the Dutch decided to attack. Leaving one squadron to deter Pennington from intervening, Tromp sailed into the Downs. By accident or design, some of the Spanish ships ran ashore, where they were gleefully plundered by English crowds that had gathered to see the fighting. Others followed Oquendo's flagship *Santiago* in an attempted dash for

Grappling hook
A ship attempting to board an enemy would throw grappling hooks aboard, usually hoping to snag them in the rigging.

Dunkirk. The release of Dutch fire ships into the crowded waters spread panic. The Portuguese ship *Santa Teresa*, the largest vessel in the battle, was set ablaze and destroyed with heavy loss of life. Only a dozen ships, including *Santiago*, reached Dunkirk and safety.

The battle of the Downs was a landmark in the precipitous decline of Spanish power. In 1648 Spain was obliged to acknowledge Dutch independence after an 80-year conflict. The battle also triggered an uprising against Spanish rule in Portugal. England, meanwhile, had been humiliated by its failure to react to a violation of its coastal waters. The desire to avenge this insult contributed to the outbreak of the first Anglo-Dutch War in 1652.

1598–1653

MAARTEN TROMP

DUTCH ADMIRAL

Dutch admiral Maarten Tromp was born into a seagoing family in Briel. Twice in his early years he was captured by pirates— the first time at the age of 12— but on both occasions he regained his freedom. He proved his worth as a naval officer serving under Piet Heyn in the 1620s, and was appointed lieutenant admiral commanding the Dutch fleet in 1637. His victory at the Downs in 1639 made him a Dutch national hero. He was, however, too independent-minded to suit the States-General, which dismissed him from office in the summer of 1652. By the end of the year he was reinstated, only to be killed on August 10 at the battle of Scheveningen.

> TOO GREAT FOR SEA ALONE, HE HAS CARVED HIMSELF AN IMAGE IN THE HEARTS OF ALL MORE LASTING THAN GRAVE'S SPLENDOR AND ITS MARBLE STONE.
>
> **JOOST VAN DEN VONDEL**, DUTCH POET, ON ADMIRAL TROMP

DUTCH-PORTUGUESE WAR

PERNAMBUCO

Date January 12-15, 1640
Forces Dutch: 41 ships; Portuguese and Spanish: c.90 ships
Losses Dutch: 3 ships; Portuguese and Spanish: c.11 ships
Location Off coast of northeast Brazil

A large Spanish-Portuguese fleet commanded by Admiral Fernão de Mascarenhas tried to retake Pernambuco, Brazil, which the Dutch had seized from Portugal. A smaller Dutch fleet under Admiral Loos gave battle near the island of Itamaraca. Loos was killed during the first day's fighting, but the Dutch continued the battle under James Huyghens. On the fourth day of the action a number of Portuguese ships were driven aground on coastal shoals. The Spanish-Portuguese force limped home. The Dutch held Pernambuco until 1654.

EIGHTY YEARS WAR

PUERTO DE CAVITE

Date June 1647
Forces Dutch: 12 ships; Spanish: coastal batteries
Losses Dutch: 1 ship; Spanish: 1 fort destroyed
Location Manila Bay, Philippines

Manila was the eastern end of the Spanish cross-Pacific trade route plied by galleons carrying silver from Acapulco in Mexico. For the Dutch this was a tempting target. On June 10, 1647, a fleet of 12 Dutch ships sailed into Manila Bay and laid siege to Puerto de Cavite. The Spanish defended the port vigorously with shore guns and sank the Dutch flagship. Although the Dutch destroyed a fort at Porta Vaga, they could not take Cavite.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

CULVERIN

The culverin was a long-barreled cannon typically firing a solid round shot of 17–18 pounds weight. A muzzle-loader, it was the longest-range gun on a 16th–17th century warship. Demi-culverins, firing roughly half the weight of shot, were also common. Culverins and demi-culverins were much favored by the Dutch and English, whereas the Spanish tended to prefer heavier guns with shorter range. A long-barreled gun posed problems for loading in a confined space, but the small truck carriage made the culverin relatively easy to handle. The stepped side of the carriage provided a fulcrum for the lever used to raise and lower the barrel.

English culverin
This 18-pounder culverin, dating from the English Civil War, has a caliber of 5.2 in (13.2 cm) and a range of some 3,280 yds (3,000 m).

RIVALRY ACROSS THE NORTH SEA

Dutch men-of-war in harbor
The ship in the foreground is anchored at the entrance to a harbor, with small boats going alongside to deliver supplies. Another man-of-war is entering the harbor under sail. The scene was painted in the early 1650s about the time of the First Anglo-Dutch War.

IN THE THIRD QUARTER of the 17th century the English and the Dutch fought one another in three wars that rank among the most intensive naval struggles of all time, with many large fleet encounters and heavy loss of life on both sides. The toll of casualties was partly a result of the massive firepower deployed, with a single ship carrying a larger weight of cannon than an entire 17th-century land army, but also a consequence of the close proximity of the opposing fleets, facing one another across the southern North Sea. The Anglo-Dutch Wars forced both sides to improve their navies at every level. The wars established the importance of fighting in line and made reliance on armed merchantmen, rather than purpose-built warships, obsolescent.

COMMERCIAL WARFARE

Each of the Anglo-Dutch Wars—the first lasting from 1652 to 1654, the second from 1665 to 1667, and the third from 1672 to 1674— had its own specific origins. The third war also involved France, for once in alliance with England. But the common root of the series of conflicts lay in commercial and colonial rivalry between two maritime nations.

The Dutch were regarded as Europe's leading naval power, and their prowess at sea had enabled them to accumulate enormous wealth through the control of trade and colonies. English governments and merchants envied Dutch success and hoped by war to steal trade and colonies for themselves. Despite raiding and small-scale fighting in Africa, Asia, and the Americas, however, the decisive battles were all fought in the "Narrow Seas"—the English Channel and southern North Sea. By asserting their sovereignty over these waters, the English threatened Dutch commerce, which depended on free passage through the Narrow Seas. England had the geographical advantage in the wars, being better placed to block Dutch trade, although the conflict cut England off from essential nautical supplies from the Baltic. One geographical advantage that the Dutch enjoyed over the English was that their coastline was protected by shoals and sandbanks that provided a safe haven for their ships.

IMPROVEMENTS IN GUNNERY AND COMMAND

After the First Anglo-Dutch War had demonstrated the clear superiority of English guns and gunnery, the Dutch had to build bigger, more heavily armed ships. It was a sign

Battle of Scheveningen
The last battle of the First Anglo-Dutch War was fought off the Dutch coast in 1653. The Dutch succeeded in lifting the blockade that the English had imposed on them, but their great admiral, Maarten Tromp, lost his life in the process.

THE ANGLO-DUTCH WARS

Although the theater of action sometimes switched to the Mediterranean, the coast of West Africa, and North America, the most destructive fleet engagements of the Anglo-Dutch Wars took place in the North Sea and the English Channel. The three wars that England and the Dutch fought between 1652 and 1674 were forgotten when the two states allied to face the threat of the expansionist policies of Louis XIV's France.

KEY

- England
- United Provinces
- Spanish Netherlands
- Borders 1650
- Dutch convoy route
- Dutch victory
- English victory
- Inconclusive battle

Badge of wealth
The Dutch East India Company, the Vereenigde Oost-Indische Compagnie, founded in 1602, controlled the highly lucrative trade routes to the Spice Islands of Indonesia. VOC, the company's monogram, appears on this 17th-century seal.

of the inflation of firepower that the cannonade in the Four Days Battle, fought off the North Foreland during the Second Anglo-Dutch War in 1666, was audible to strollers in London's Hyde Park, at a distance of some 80 miles (120 km) from the battle.

Command and control needed improvement as well as armament. The top commanders on the English side, such as Robert Blake and George Monck, were land officers sent to sea, while Dutch commanders were seamen born and bred—Michiel de Ruyter and the Tromps began their careers as cabin boys. But both sides initially depended heavily on merchant captains forced to bring their ships into temporary naval service. These not surprisingly often proved unreliable in the heat of battle. Thus there was swift progress toward creating a body of dedicated senior ratings and naval officers—in England a mix of "tarpaulins" bred to the sea and "gentleman commanders"—to man fleets ideally consisting entirely of warships.

In 1653 the English navy's famous Articles of War were first instituted, prescribing severe punishments for officers who failed to obey orders or who hung back from a fight. The systematic adoption of the line of battle, initially by the English, was intended to improve discipline and organization in combat, as well as making it less likely ships would be hit by "friendly fire." Although battles still tended to disintegrate into general mêlées, the line of battle gave commanders some chance of effecting coherent maneuvers.

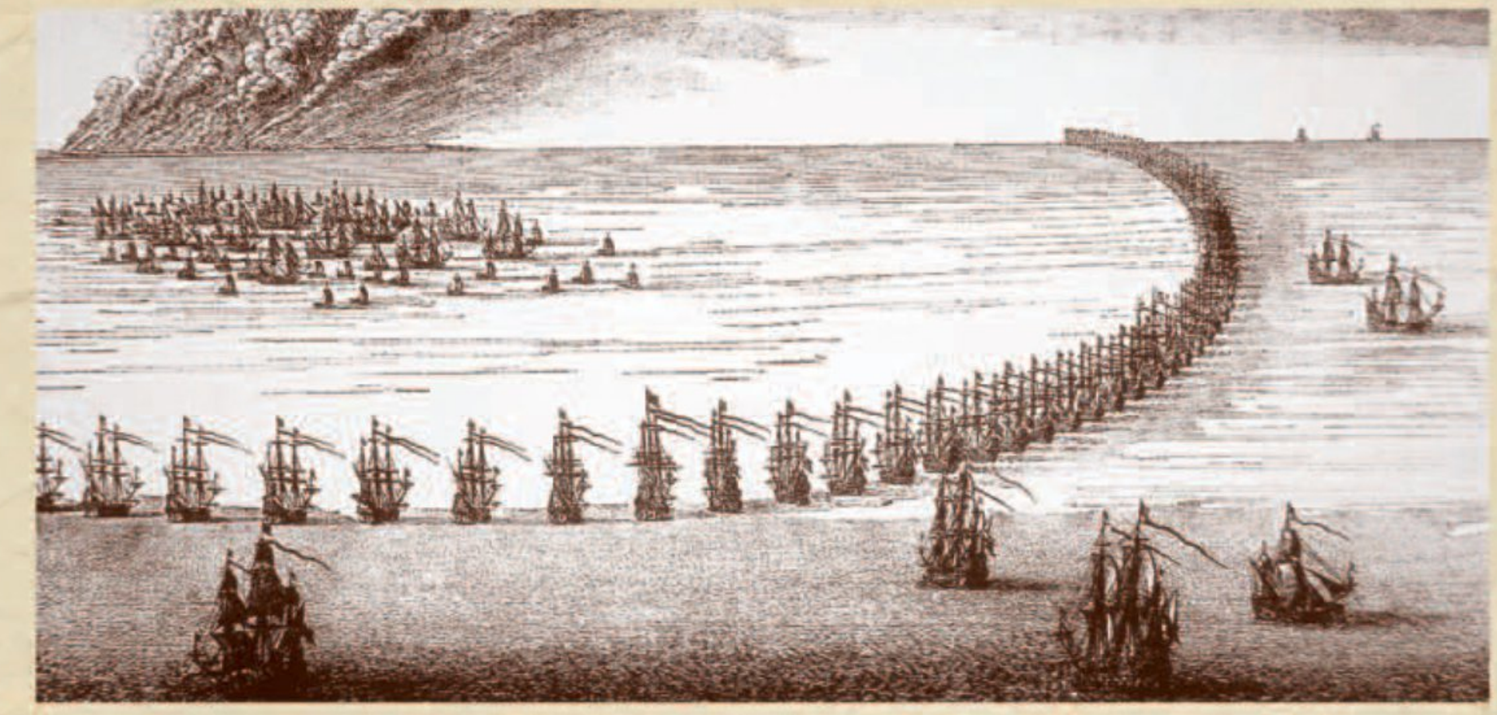
ESCALATING DEMANDS OF WAR

Both sides struggled to meet the material and financial demands of naval warfare. The docks at Chatham were by far the largest industrial enterprise in England, and a sea battle used up shot and powder at a phenomenal rate. A fleet of ships contained as many people as a major contemporary town—Norwich in England or Haarlem in Holland, for example—posing daunting problems of supply of food and water.

Racked by political conflicts, both states struggled to keep up with these demands. England had just been torn apart by civil war, the king executed and replaced by the Lord Protector, Oliver Cromwell. The Restoration of the monarchy under Charles II came between the First and the Second Anglo-Dutch Wars. When the monarchy's money ran out during the second war, sailors were not paid and supplies could not be bought. Sustaining warfare was made more difficult because it interrupted trade, both through enemy commerce raiding and the transfer of seamen from merchant to naval service, thus cutting into the revenues available.

The difficulties experienced by both sides in financing the war effort helped make these conflicts, despite their savagery, totally indecisive. Yet a fundamental shift in the naval balance of power was under way. Before the end of the century, the once dominant Dutch would become the junior partner of the English in their joint wars against the French.

Holmes's Bonfire
In August 1666 the British fleet lay off the Dutch coast and watched as a small squadron of frigates and fireships under Sir Robert Holmes raided the town of Terschelling. They not only burned the town, but also destroyed 140 merchantmen.



FIRST ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

IN 1651 THE PARLIAMENT of the Commonwealth of England, just emerging from a civil war, passed the first Navigation Act. Stating that all goods brought to England must be carried either in English vessels or those of the country of origin, the act was a deliberate challenge to Dutch domination of maritime trade. The Dutch responded to England's search and seizure of merchant ships by assembling an imposing war fleet to protect merchant convoys and to intimidate the English in the Channel and North Sea. War broke out unintentionally through a naval clash at Dover in May 1652. After an initial setback at the battle of the Kentish Knock, the Dutch scored victories at Dungeness in winter 1652 and at Leghorn in the Mediterranean in spring 1653. But the English improved the organization of their fleet and had the better of a series of fierce encounters at Portland, Gabbard Bank, and Scheveningen. The war exhausted both countries and was ended in April 1654 with a peace treaty that resolved nothing. Unsurprisingly, the Anglo-Dutch contest for maritime supremacy was resumed in the following decade.

FIRST ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

DOVER

Date May 29, 1652
Forces English: 25 ships; Dutch: 47 ships
Losses English: none; Dutch: 2 ships captured

Location Goodwin Sands, off Dover

The English provocatively asserted the right to be saluted by foreign ships in the Channel and the North Sea. Admiral Maarten Tromp, escorting a Dutch merchant convoy down the Channel in May 1652, had been authorized by his government to dip his flag in salute if necessary. On May 29, Tromp met an English squadron commanded by General-at-Sea Robert Blake, whose warning shots hit Tromp's flagship *Brederode*. Tromp replied with a broadside and a general fight ensued. After five hours nightfall brought an end to the exchanges and Tromp escorted his convoy onward. A formal declaration of war followed six weeks later.

FIRST ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

KENTISH KNOCK

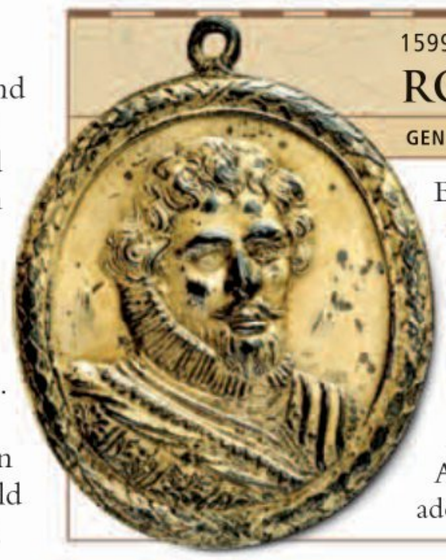
Date October 8, 1652
Forces English: 68 ships; Dutch: 62 ships
Losses English: none; Dutch: 1 ship sunk, 1 ship captured

Location North Sea, off Thames estuary

By October 1652 the Dutch States-General had lost faith in Admiral Maarten Tromp. They replaced him with Vice-Admiral Witte de With, whose instructions were to seek out and destroy the English fleet. Adopting the *Prins Willem* as his flagship, de With led a fleet of 62 ships to attack the English at their anchorage in the Downs.

Under the overall command of General-at-Sea Robert Blake, the English came out to fight, but bad weather delayed the start of the battle. The two fleets finally met near the sandbank of the Kentish Knock late in the afternoon of October 8. Blake held the weather gage and chose to attack, but the battle started badly for the English when two of their largest ships, *Sovereign* and *James*, ran aground in the shallow channels. While Blake, on board *Resolution*, led an onslaught against de With, the rear English squadron under Rear Admiral Nehemiah Bourne was surrounded by a superior force of Dutch ships commanded by Michiel de Ruyter. Bourne's ships were "very much maimed" before Blake came to their rescue. But the Dutch suffered worse. One ship, *Burgh van Alkmaar,* exploded, and another, *Maria*, was captured. De With was obliged to move his flag after *Prins Willem* lost two masts.

Darkness brought the fighting to a close and saved the Dutch from an even worse defeat. De With failed to convince his captains to continue the battle on the following day, and both he and de Ruyter succeeded in withdrawing without further loss.



1599–1657

ROBERT BLAKE

GENERAL-AT-SEA

Born in Somerset, England, Robert Blake made his name as a Parliamentary land commander during the English Civil War. In 1649 he was appointed General-at-Sea, despite a lack of naval experience. After a sterling performance in the First Anglo-Dutch War, he led a punitive mission against the Barbary pirates in 1655, and in 1657 destroyed a Spanish treasure fleet at Tenerife. He also influenced the drawing up of the Articles of War governing captains' conduct and the adoption of line-of-battle tactics by the English fleet.

FIRST ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

PORTLAND

Date February 28–March 2, 1653
Forces Dutch: c.80 warships; English: c.80 warships
Losses Dutch: 10 warships; English: 1 warship

Location The Channel

On December 10, 1652, reinstated in command of the Dutch fleet, Admiral Maarten Tromp inflicted a significant defeat on the English at Dungeness. As a result, he was able to escort a large convoy of merchant vessels down the Channel to the Atlantic. Tromp then waited at La Rochelle to gather more ships and shepherd them back to the Netherlands—a delay that gave the English time to recover.

The English and Dutch sighted one another at dawn on February 28. Tromp had the weather gage and chose to attack, rather than passively shield his merchant convoy. The English were scattered and General-at-Sea Robert Blake at first had to engage around 30 Dutch ships with only a dozen of his own. Blake's flagship *Triumph* was battered at close range by broadsides from Tromp's *Brederode*, suffering over 100 casualties. But only one English frigate was sunk, while the Dutch lost eight ships as the main body of the English fleet joined the combat.

Over the following days a running battle ensued. Though short of powder, the Dutch saved most of their warships and more than half the merchant convoy from capture or destruction.

Running battle
In defense of its merchant convoy, the Dutch fleet descended on the English in the Channel. By the third day, the battle had drifted as far as Kent.

FIRST ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

SCHEVENINGEN

Date August 8-10, 1653
Forces Dutch: 106 ships; English: c.120 ships
Losses Dutch:15 ships; English: none

Location Off the Netherlands

In August 1653 Admiral Maarten Tromp attempted to break a blockade of the Dutch coast by the English fleet under General-at-Sea George Monck. Tromp's ships in the Maas needed to link up with Witte de With's squadron in the Texel. With a brilliant maneuver, on August 8 Tromp drew Monck southward, allowing de With to sortie. With Tromp and de With united, battle was joined. Crossing and recrossing the enemy fleet in line, the English devastated the Dutch ships with their heavy guns. The battle ended with the Dutch in disorganized flight, but they had inflicted enough damage for the English to abandon the blockade.

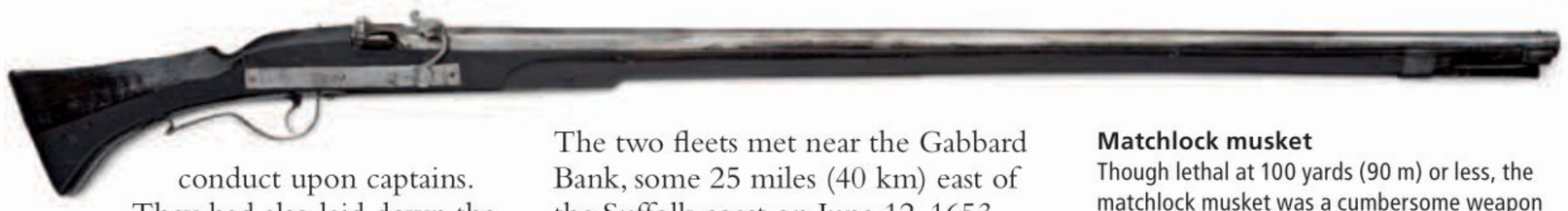
FIRST ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

THE GABBARD

Date June 12-13, 1653
Forces English: 110 ships; Dutch: 98 ships
Losses English: none; Dutch: 10 ships sunk, 11 captured

Location Off Suffolk, eastern England

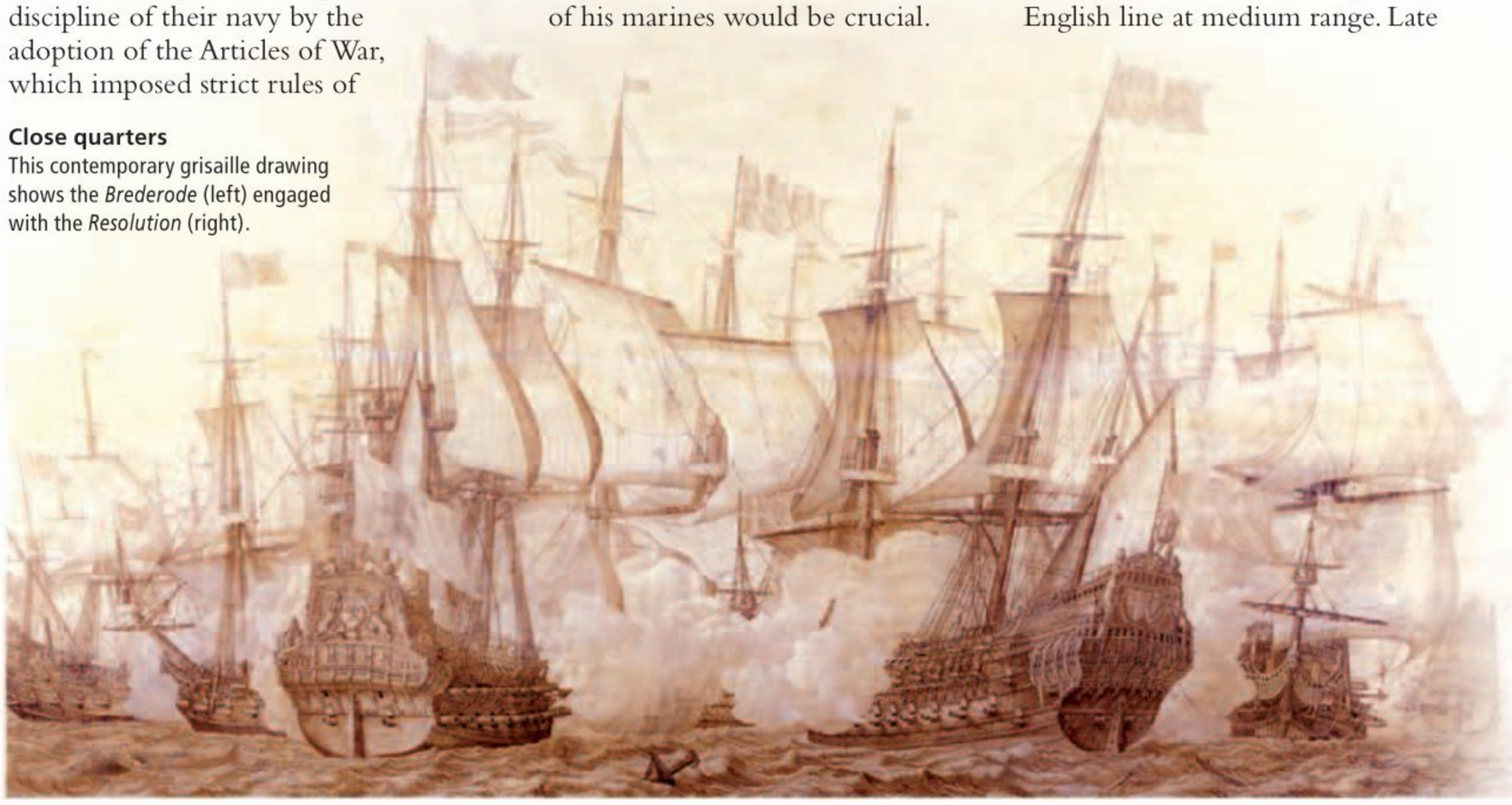
The spring of 1653 found both sides in the Anglo-Dutch War still keen for battle. The English had improved the discipline of their navy by the adoption of the Articles of War, which imposed strict rules of conduct upon captains.



Matchlock musket
Though lethal at 100 yards (90 m) or less, the matchlock musket was a cumbersome weapon that often failed to fire in wet conditions.

They had also laid down the principles of fighting in an orderly line of battle that would maximize the impact of their broadsides. Dutch Admiral Maarten Tromp, however, was still confident that his lighter ships could outmaneuver the English with superior seamanship and force them into a mêlée in which the firepower of his marines would be crucial.

The two fleets met near the Gabbard Bank, some 25 miles (40 km) east of the Suffolk coast on June 12, 1653. The battle opened disastrously for the English when one of their two commanding Generals-at-Sea, Richard Deane, was killed by almost the first shot fired. But a light wind made it hard for the Dutch to maneuver and exposed them to steady attrition by broadsides fired by the disciplined English line at medium range. Late in the day Tromp succeeded in trapping part of the English fleet between two of his squadrons, but the balance of damage in the day's fighting was very much in England's favor.



Close quarters
This contemporary grisaille drawing shows the *Brederode* (left) engaged with the *Resolution* (right).

ENGLISH VICTORY

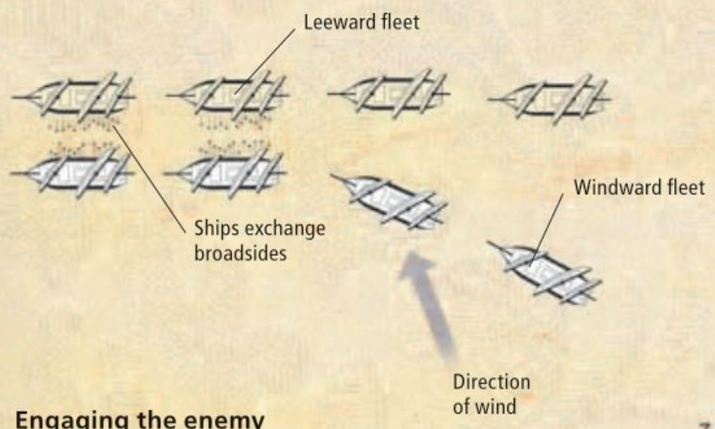
The English fleet was strengthened on the evening of June 12 by the arrival of Admiral Robert Blake with 18 more ships. Tromp nonetheless attacked the next day, which proved unwise. Many Dutch ships were running low on powder and some of Tromp's captains were far keener to escape than to fight. Tromp's flagship *Brederode* was badly holed but avoided capture, its withdrawal covered by the lieutenant admiral's more devoted captains. Eleven Dutch ships were taken by the English, however, and probably as many as 11 destroyed. The survivors found refuge from a pursuing enemy in the shoals off the Dutch coast, where they were put under blockade. Morale on board Tromp's ships was so poor that he did not dare send them into port for repair, for fear of mass desertion. Nonetheless, with trade stopped, Tromp would have to challenge the English again.

MAN-OF-WAR TACTICS

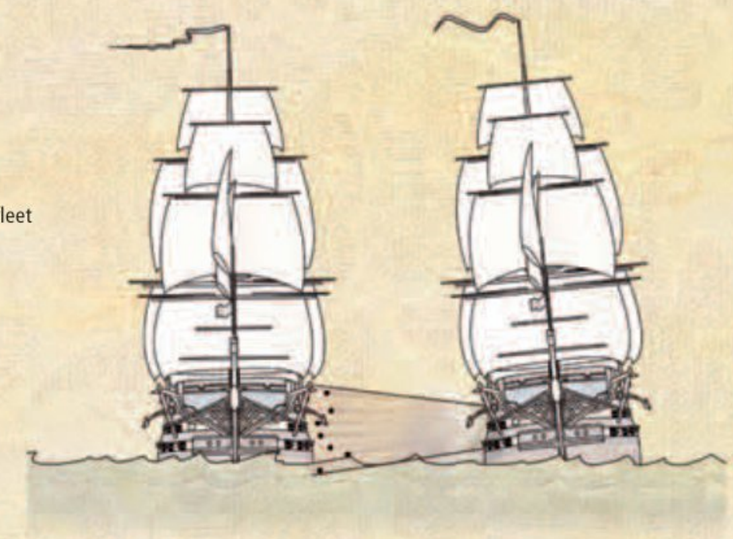
THE LINE OF BATTLE

MAXIMIZING THE USE OF BROADSIDES

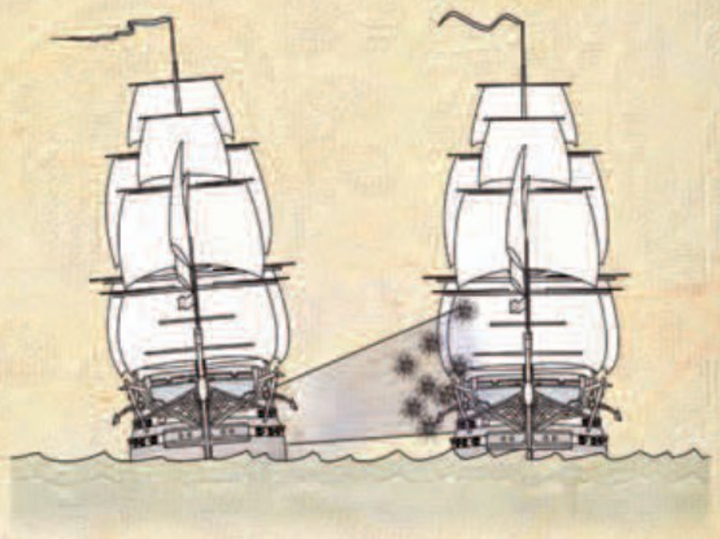
Although casually used on earlier occasions, notably by the Dutch in the prelude to the battle of the Downs in 1639, line-of-battle tactics were first adopted systematically by the English in 1653, during the First Anglo-Dutch War. The line usually consisted of three squadrons, with the senior admiral commanding the center, and vice and rear admirals commanding the van and the rear. It soon became an assumption of naval warfare that both sides would use essentially the same formation. Typically the fleet to windward would approach in line abreast, and then wear together with each ship placing itself alongside an enemy. In a perfect battle, the two lines would sail on the same tack exchanging broadsides, with ships matched to opponents from the lead ship of the van to the rearmost vessel. Only warships from fourth-rate upward were reckoned powerful enough to act as ships of the line. These tactics could be a straitjacket for captains, with more attention focused on keeping alignment than on attacking the enemy. Yet they enabled commanders to keep some control of their fleets and execute coherent maneuvers such as doubling the enemy line if there were spare ships in the van.



Engaging the enemy
The attacking fleet sails from the windward side to attack the enemy. Each ship singles out one of the enemy with which to engage. The windward fleet has many advantages, including being clear of gun smoke, but it cannot easily withdraw.



Firing on the downward roll
This tactic was especially associated with the English. By firing shot into the enemy's hull, they spread death and destruction through the gun decks.



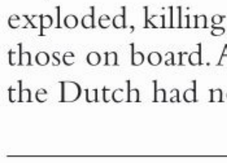
Firing on the upward roll
Some navies preferred directing chain-shot and canister upward to sails and rigging and kill men on the upper decks. The disabled ship would then be open to boarding.

SECOND ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

THE RESTORATION OF THE English monarchy under Charles II in 1660 did nothing to improve relations with the Dutch. A faction at the English court associated with Charles's brother James, Duke of York, was determined to challenge Dutch dominance of world trade. In 1664 the English attacked Dutch slave trading posts on the west coast of Africa, captured New Amsterdam in North America, which they renamed New York, and seized Dutch merchant ships. War was formally declared in March 1665. The Dutch were building a new navy with larger warships, although this was still incomplete. Hostilities opened with a stunning defeat for the Dutch at Lowestoft. Vigorous action by Dutch leader Johan de Witt and the return of Admiral Michiel de Ruyter from colonial duties then shifted the balance in favor of the Dutch. England was struck by the disasters of the Plague and the Fire of London, while royal finances collapsed. The bold Dutch raid on the Medway in 1667 was a final humiliation for England's rulers, who hastily signed a peace that left them no gains but the little-valued possession of New York.

SECOND ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

LOWESTOFT



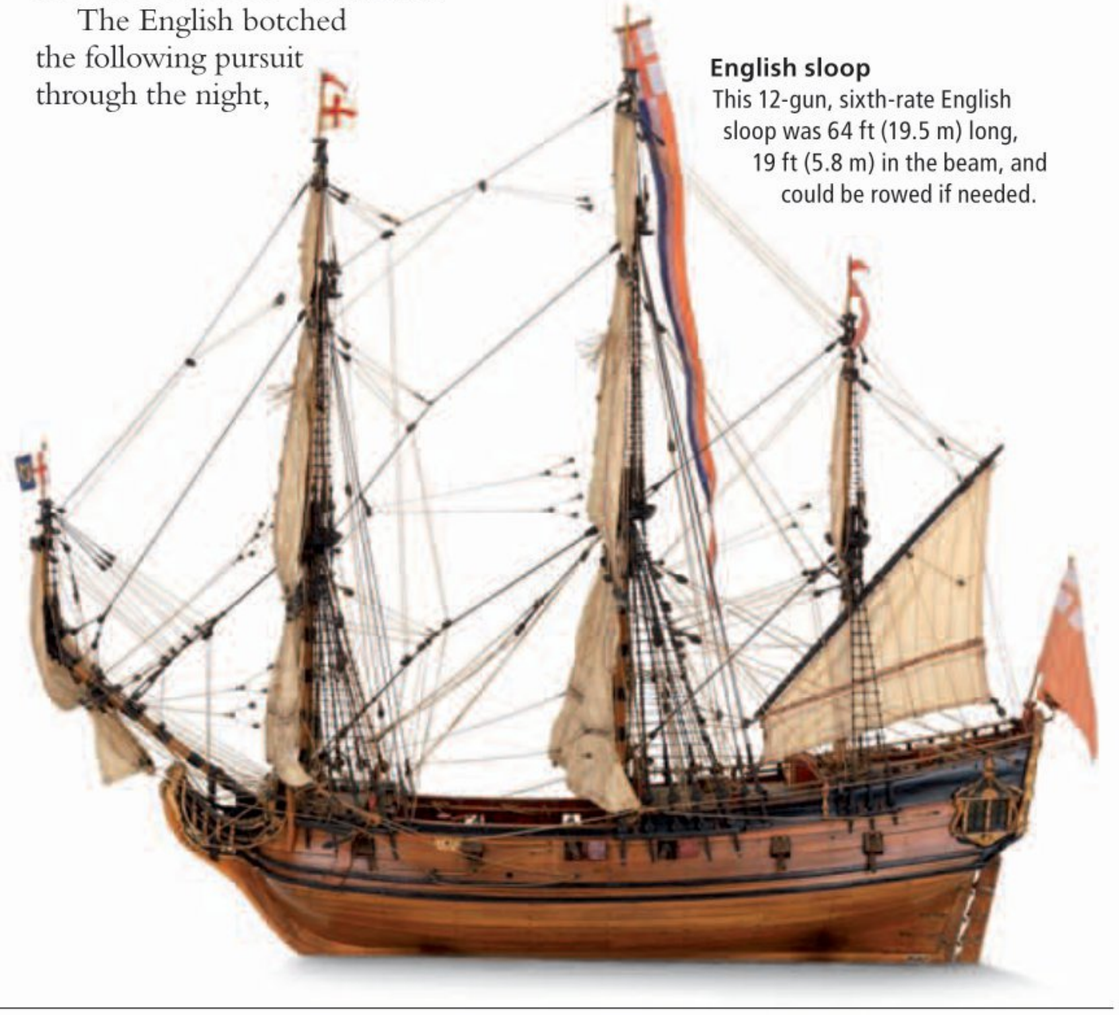
Date June 13, 1665
Forces English: 109 ships; Dutch: 103 ships
Losses English: 1 ship lost; Dutch: 17 ships lost

Location Off Suffolk, eastern England

When war broke out the Dutch government had great confidence in the strength of its new navy. Admiral Jacob van Wassenaer Obdam was sent to seek out the English fleet and give battle. Aware of Dutch intentions, the English were waiting for Obdam when he appeared off East Anglia.

There was little tactical coherence to a battle fought in shifting winds. The English commander James, Duke of York, struggled to maintain a formation but the Dutch engaged pell-mell. The combat grew in ferocity. James, on his flagship *Royal Charles*, narrowly escaped death when chain-shot decapitated several courtiers standing alongside him. Obdam was less fortunate. After a lengthy duel with *Royal Charles*, his flagship *Eendracht* exploded, killing Obdam and almost all those on board. After Obdam's death, the Dutch had no overall commander. Panicking Dutch captains began to flee back across the North Sea piecemeal. Several ships became entangled together in the confusion and were subsequently set ablaze by English fireships. Vice Admiral Cornelis Tromp distinguished himself by organizing a rearguard action to cover the withdrawal.

The English botched the following pursuit through the night, allowing most of the Dutch ships to regain the safety of the Texel shallows. Still, the Dutch had two ships sunk, six burned, and nine captured, plus some 6,000 men killed or taken prisoner. It was the heaviest Dutch defeat of the three Anglo-Dutch Wars.



English sloop
This 12-gun, sixth-rate English sloop was 64 ft (19.5 m) long, 19 ft (5.8 m) in the beam, and could be rowed if needed.

1607–1676

MICHIEL DE RUYTER

DUTCH ADMIRAL

Spending more than six decades at sea and fighting in over 40 maritime battles, Michiel Adrianzoon de Ruyter was the greatest Dutch naval commander of the 17th century. Going to sea as a boy, he worked his way up to merchant captain before proving his worth as a naval commander in the First Anglo-Dutch War. He fought the English in West Africa and the Caribbean, and liberated some 2,500 Christian slaves from the Barbary pirates in the Mediterranean, before returning to take command of the Dutch navy in August 1665. He led his fleet to a hard-fought victory in the Four Days Battle, but only held nominal command in the raid of the Medway. His finest hour came fighting against the odds in the Third Anglo-Dutch War.

He was fatally wounded in a battle with the French off Sicily in 1676.

SECOND ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

BERGEN

Date August 13, 1665
Forces English: 14 warships; Dutch: 60 merchant ships
Losses none

Location Bergen, Norway

After the English victory at Lowestoft, a Dutch merchant fleet took shelter at Bergen in Norway, then ruled by the king of Denmark. On attempting to capture the fleet, the English, commanded by Rear Admiral Thomas Teddiman, failed to win the Danes' cooperation and were battered by the guns of a fortress commanding the bay. The Dutch also kept up a brisk fire, forcing the English to withdraw.

SECOND ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

FOUR DAYS BATTLE

Date June 11–14, 1666
Forces English: 79 ships; Dutch: 84 ships
Losses English: 10 ships; Dutch: 4 ships

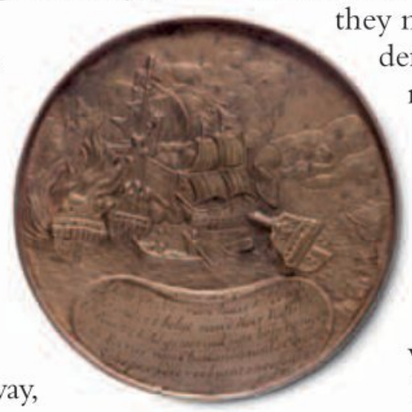
Location Between England and Flanders

By June 1666, France had gone to war with England and the Dutch had strengthened their navy with a substantial shipbuilding program. So when George Monck, Duke of Albemarle, came upon the Dutch fleet anchored off Dunkirk on June 11, he had only 56 ships to Michiel de Ruyter's 84. Monck nonetheless attacked, precipitating the bloodiest battle of the Anglo-Dutch Wars.

In the first day's fighting English Vice Admiral William Berkley was killed by a musket ball in the throat as he resisted the boarding of his ship, *Swiftsure*. Dutch Lieutenant Admiral Cornelis Evertsen was cut in half by a shot from Rear Admiral John Harman's flagship *Henry*, which had refused to strike despite being on fire and part of its crew jumping overboard in panic. By the end of the second day, with only 29 ships in fighting condition, Monck was desperately trying to disengage. Late on the third day Prince Rupert's ships tardily arrived to even the odds, but when Rupert's flagship *Royal James* was dismasted the following morning his squadron left Monck to face de Ruyter unaided. After further heavy losses (totalling 2,000 killed) the English disappeared into a fog bank and de Ruyter abandoned the pursuit.

THE RAID ON THE MEDWAY

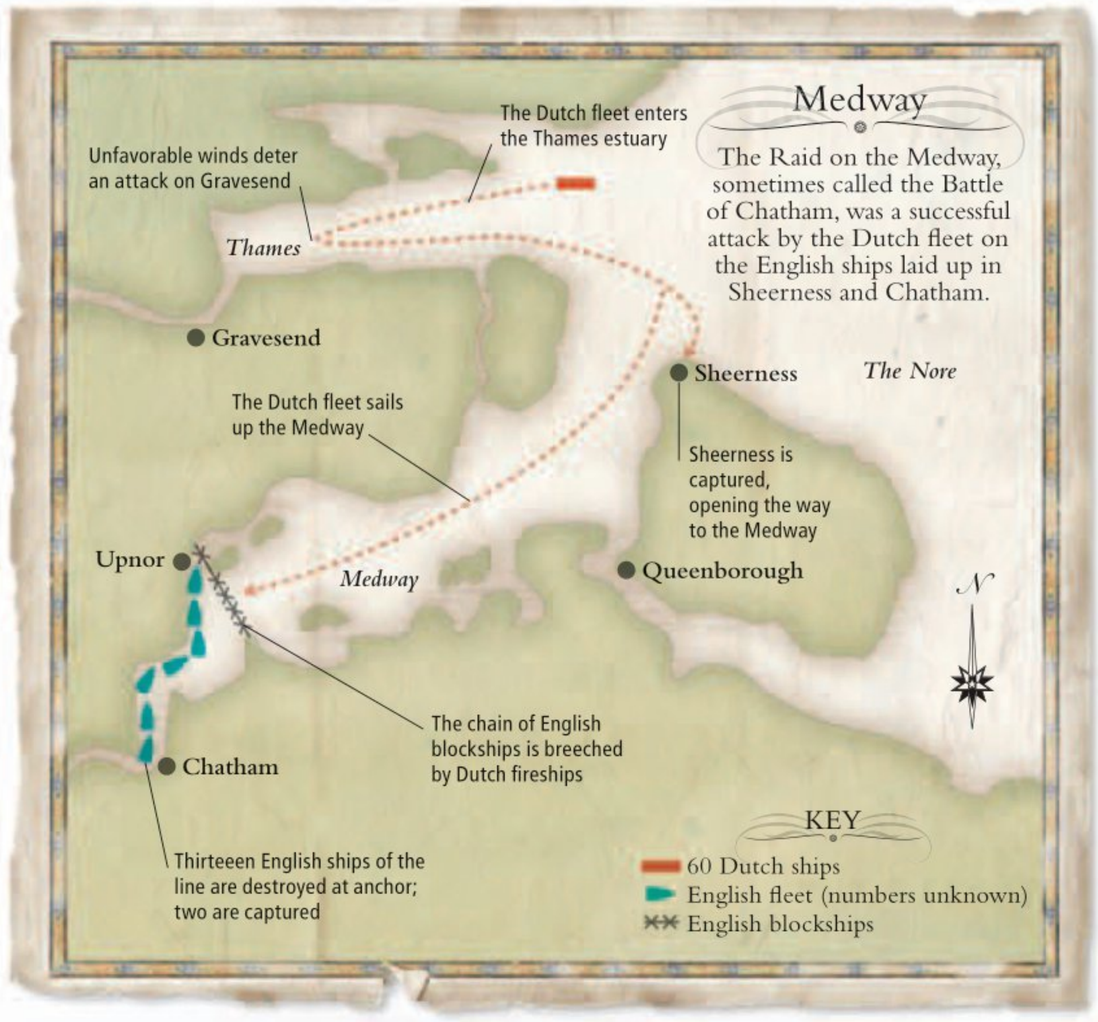
In the winter of 1666–67, with peace negotiations with the Dutch under way, King Charles and his advisers decided to keep the fleet laid up in dockyards when spring came. Meanwhile, the Dutch political leader Johan de Witt wanted to inflict a humiliating defeat on England that would enable him to dictate peace terms. He ordered an expedition to raid the Thames and the Medway, placing his brother Cornelis in charge to ensure bold aggressive action. The Dutch fleet appeared in the Thames estuary on June 7. Overcoming the objections of his cautious sea captains, Cornelis de Witt ordered his ships into the mouth of the Thames, where they failed to capture 20 merchantmen that took refuge in the direction of London. An attack on Sheerness three days later was more successful, Dutch marines capturing the poorly defended fort without difficulty.



Commemorative medal
This Dutch medal remembers the day "the ships of war... were attacked, burnt and sunk".

A clutch of English commanders, including George Monck (Duke of Albermarle), gathered at Chatham to organize the defense of the dockyards. Blockships were hastily sunk at various points in the Medway's navigable channels. The chain was defended by the frigate *Unity*, two captured Dutch merchantmen renamed *Matthias* and *Charles V*, and the ship of the line *Monmouth*. When the Dutch ships advanced into the Medway on 12 June they made short work of these defences. The *Unity*'s crew rapidly jumped ship, leaving their vessel to be taken. Fireships daringly sailed over the chain and set *Charles V* and *Matthias* ablaze. Dutch engineers dismantled the chain and worked to haul off the blockships, soon clearing the passage upriver.

The 80-gun first-rate *Royal Charles* had been left in an exposed position with a skeleton crew and was easily taken. Numerous other English vessels—including the great ships *Loyal London*, *Royal James*, and *Royal Oak*—were scuttled to prevent them too being captured. Half sunk, the three great ships were set on fire by the Dutch to complete the scene of destruction. Only *Monmouth* escaped. The Dutch took some casualties from the fire of shore batteries and guns in Upnor Castle. On June 14 they decided to withdraw, without having destroyed the dockyard stores. *Royal Charles* was towed back to the Netherlands, to be shown off to foreign visitors over the following years. Peace was soon made on terms highly favorable to the Dutch. But, rather like the United States after Pearl Harbor in 1941, England was soon able to rebuild its fleet and plot its revenge.



> "A DREADFUL SPECTACLE AS EVER ENGLISHMAN SAW AND A DISHONOUR NEVER TO BE WIPED OFF."
>
> **JOHN EVELYN**, WRITER AND DIARIST, JUNE 1667

Destruction at Chatham
Some of the English navy's best ships were destroyed at Chatham, where they were laid up some 30 miles (48 km) east of London.

SECOND ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

THE RAID ON THE MEDWAY

Date	June 12, 1667
Location	Southeast England
Result	Dutch victory

COMBATANTS

ENGLAND	DUTCH REPUBLIC

COMMANDERS

George Monck	Michiel de Ruyter, Cornelis de Witt

FORCES

Ships: Unknown	**Ships:** 60

LOSSES

Ships: 15	**Ships:** 1 fireship

FIRESHIP ATTACK

Fireships, which played a major role in the Anglo-Dutch Wars, are known to have been used in Classical times, and remained in use well into the 19th century. Here, French fireships attack the British fleet off Quebec in June 1759, during the Seven Years War. Though spectacular, the attack was largely ineffective, most of the fireships being towed away before they could cause any damage.

THIRD ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

IN 1670 England's King Charles II made a secret alliance with France's King Louis XIV to attack the Dutch Republic. A declaration of war was delayed until April 1672, giving Lieutenant Admiral Michiel de Ruyter time to train the Dutch fleet in disciplined battle tactics. The combination of the English fleet and the French navy, recently strengthened and expanded by Louis's chief minister Colbert, gave the allies an overwhelming superiority of numbers. But they cooperated poorly and quarrels disrupted their naval operations. De Ruyter fought an inspired campaign with inadequate resources, tempering aggression with a necessary concern to preserve his fleet. He came under political attack at home after his friend Johan de Witt was expelled from office and lynched by a mob, but at sea his performance was impeccable. His successes in defensive battles at Scheveningen and Texel led to recriminations between the allies and fueled anti-war feeling in England, where the alliance with Catholic France was deeply unpopular. Under pressure from his own people, King Charles made peace with the Dutch in 1674.

THIRD ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

THE BATTLE OF SOLEBAY

Date	June 7, 1672
Location	Off Southwold, eastern England
Result	Dutch victory

COMBATANTS

ENGLAND **FRANCE**	**DUTCH REPUBLIC**

COMMANDERS

Duke of York, **Comte d'Estrées**	**Michiel de Ruyter**

FORCES

Ships: English: 63 French: 30	**Ships:** 75

LOSSES

Ships: 1	**Ships:** 3

THE BATTLE OF SOLEBAY

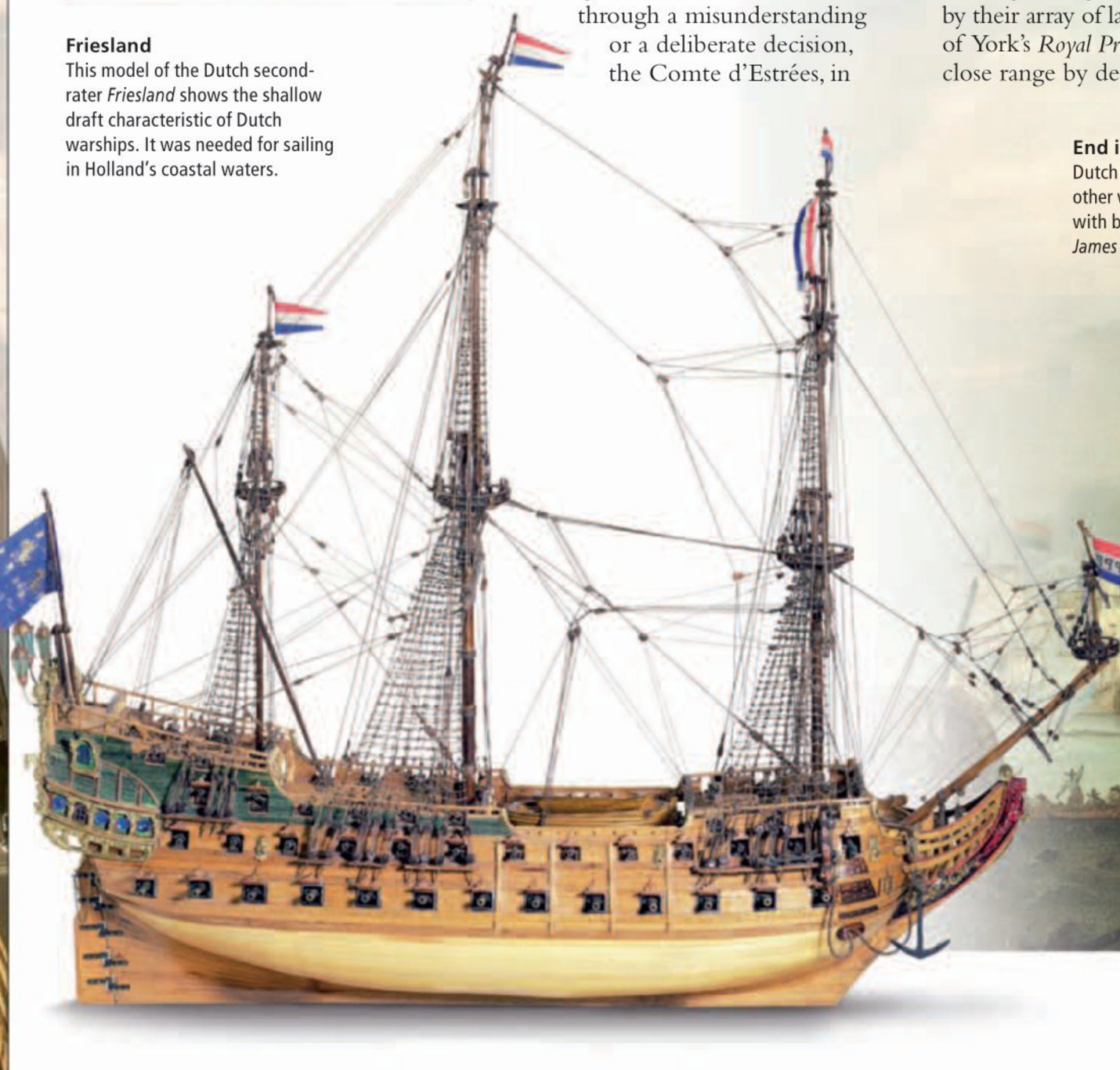
At the outset of the war, the Dutch planned to attack the English fleet before it could join with its French allies, but they delayed too long. By early June 1672 the allied fleets, under the overall command of King Charles's brother James, Duke of York, had met up and were anchored in Solebay, careening hulls and taking on supplies. They heavily outnumbered the Dutch, but de Ruyter decided to attack, with the advantage of surprise and an onshore wind behind him.

At 2.30 on the morning of June 7, a French frigate reported sighting the Dutch approaching Solebay. The allies were totally unprepared, moored in no particular order, and with many sailors sleeping ashore. Ships hastily made ready for battle and strove to get out to sea against the breeze. Whether through a misunderstanding or a deliberate decision, the Comte d'Estrées, in command of the French fleet, steered to the south, despite a signal from the Duke of York to follow him northward. The allied line was thus split in two. De Ruyter detached the 15 ships of his rear squadron to keep d'Estrées' 30 ships occupied in a long-range duel, while his center and van went for the English fleet, now deprived of their numerical advantage.

Battle of Solebay medal
This French medal depicts a horse-drawn Neptune threatening Holland with his

Putting to sea in haste, the English ships were spread out in a ragged formation, and thus poorly placed to support one another. The Dutch concentrated on attacking the English flagships, easily identifiable by their array of large ensigns. The Duke of York's *Royal Prince* was engaged at close range by de Ruyter's flagship *Zeven Provincien* and the 76-gun *Eendracht*. The power of *Royal Prince*'s guns kept the Dutch at bay, but after two hours' battering the Duke was forced to shift his flag from the crippled ship. A worse fate befell *Royal James*, the 100-gun flagship of the Earl of Sandwich. She was grappled by the 60-gun *Groot Hollandia*, which raked her with broadsides point blank until she was disabled. The Earl refused to strike his colors, and got away from the panic to abandon the blazing vessel, the Earl of Sandwich was drowned, his body washing ashore a few weeks later, identifiable only by his Order of the Garter. The Dutch had also suffered losses and toward nightfall de Ruyter broke off the engagement.

Friesland
This model of the Dutch second-rater *Friesland* shows the shallow draft characteristic of Dutch warships. It was needed for sailing in Holland's coastal waters.



End in fire
Dutch and English sailors shoot at each other with pistols as men-of-war engage with broadsides. To the right, *Royal James* burns after a Dutch fireship attack.

THIRD ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

SCHOONEVELD

Date June 7 and 14, 1673
Forces English: 54 ships; French: 27 ships; Dutch: 55 ships
Losses English and French: 2 ships; Dutch: 1 ship

Location Off the Scheldt estuary

In 1673 the French army was invading the Dutch Republic. The English intended to land troops to support the French, but first needed to defeat de Ruyter or blockade him in port. In May, the Dutch moored in the Schooneveld, an anchorage protected by shoals.

Prince Rupert led an Anglo-French fleet to confront them but did not dare take his ships into the narrow channels.

On June 7 de Ruyter surprised the allies by coming out to fight against the odds. Seizing the weather gage, he broke up the French formation in the allied center and then turned to support Admiral Cornelis Tromp's squadron hard-pressed by Rupert. At nightfall the allies were happy to disengage. De Ruyter made a second sortie a week later, once again surprising the allies who had believed the Dutch fleet to be badly mauled. By the end of the second engagement the allies were in no condition to continue at sea and returned to England for repairs.

The following day the Duke of York ordered a pursuit as the Dutch headed for home. The French, in the van, overtook the Dutch rear but unaccountably failed to engage and the pursuit was soon abandoned. Both sides had suffered heavy casualties, yet the moral victory clearly lay with the Dutch. Allied officers indulged in bitter recriminations, even between opposing factions within the national fleets, and the Comte d'Estrées' second-in-command Abraham Duquesne refused to serve under him again.

> "THE FIGHTING WAS SO STUBBORNLY CONTESTED BY BOTH SIDES THAT ONE COULD NOT COUNT EITHER SIDE AS HAVING THE ADVANTAGE..."
>
> **MARCUS GJOE**, DANISH OBSERVER, REPORTING ON THE BATTLE OF SOLEBAY

Royal Prince dismasted
English and Dutch sailors fight each other with oars, daggers, and cutlasses. In the background, Tromp's flagship *Gordon Leeuw* sails to the right of *Royal Prince*, Spragge's dismasted flagship.

THIRD ANGLO-DUTCH WAR

TEXEL

Date August 21, 1673
Forces English and French: 92 ships; Dutch: 75 ships
Losses none

Location Between Kamperduin and Texel

De Ruyter remained in his safe haven at Schooneveld until August 1673, when concerns for the safety of the incoming Dutch spice fleet made him sail north to the Texel and contest the Anglo-French blockade. As in the previous battles in this war, the tactical dexterity of the Dutch and the failure of coordination between different divisions of the allied fleet negated the Anglo-French numerical superiority.

The opposing rear divisions were commanded by Admiral Sir Edward Spragge and Lieutenant Admiral Cornelis Tromp. Spragge had developed a feud with Tromp and had given King Charles his word that he would kill the Dutch admiral. Pursuing his vendetta with no regard for the overall shape of the battle, he allowed his squadron to become detached from the center under Prince Rupert. Spragge and Tromp fought their personal duel with such ferocity that both had to shift their flags twice from corpse-strewn, dismasted ships. Transferring for the second time, Spragge was killed when a cannonball struck his boat.

Meanwhile, the French in the van became totally detached from the fight. De Ruyter initially sent a handful of ships under Adriaen Banckert to take on the Comte d'Estrées' division. At a chosen moment, Banckert disengaged and turned to join the battle in the center, where de Ruyter was engaged with Prince Rupert. Unable or unwilling to follow Banckert, the French were left with no one to fight. At the end of the day the Dutch disengaged and returned to safe anchorage. The allied naval command subsequently disintegrated in a storm of accusations of cowardice and treachery, focused chiefly upon the Comte d'Estrées' failure to come to Prince Rupert's aid.

WITNESS TO WAR

ENGLISH OFFICER, BLUE SQUADRON

IN A REPORT ON THE BATTLE

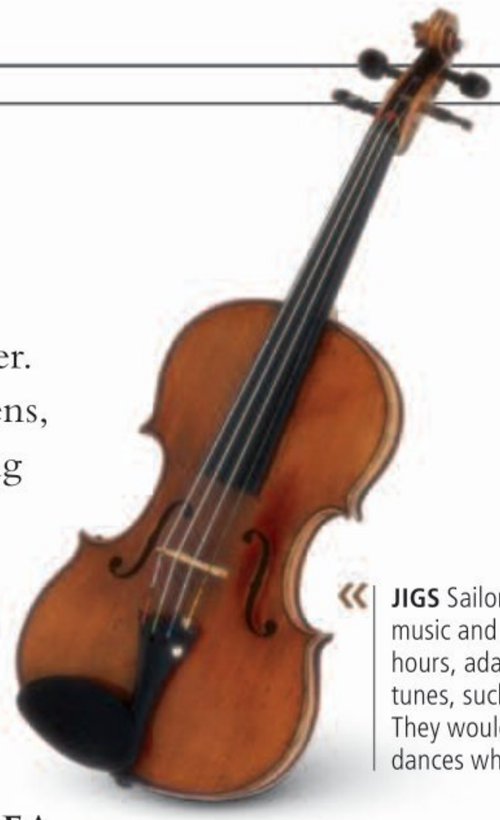
AT THE BATTLE OF TEXEL

"I went aboard Sir Edward Spragge … and found his ship extremely disabled, and as we set our boat from his ship, ***down fell his main mast*** *within a yard of our boat … after this, Sir Edward Spragge came on board the St. George where* ***he put up his flag*** *… at two of the clock St. George was so disabled too that Sir Edward Spragge took boat to go on board the Royal Charles …* ***but a bullet came through the St. George and broke his boat****; they made back again as fast as they could … but the boat sunk, and* ***Sir Edward Spragge drowned*** *being taken up dead, his head and shoulders above water having taken so dead hold of the boat, they* ***could hardly disengage him from it****."*

LIFE ON BOARD

REST AND RECREATION

OFF-DUTY SAILORS have often had a deserved reputation for excess and disorder. Naval towns were known for their drinking establishments, brothels, gambling dens, and tattoo parlors, where seamen could be relieved of their hard-earned pay during a brief spell of shore leave, ending back on board with empty pockets and a severe hangover. But sailors, of course, have not all been drinkers and brawlers in their leisure time. They might be as likely to spend their free hours making music, sketching caricatures, or even writing poetry.



JIGS Sailors would often play music and jigs in their off-duty hours, adapting many popular tunes, such as the hornpipe. They would also play in naval dances when on shore.

PLAYING MAH JONG The Chinese game of Mah Jong was popular with sailors who were responsible for its introduction to Britain.

UCKERS BOARD A more complex form of Ludo, Uckers has a long tradition in the Royal Navy and is still played widely below decks today.

LEISURE AT SEA

At sea in the age of sail, the forecastle was the place where sailors relaxed in their off-duty hours during the week, and on Sundays after a religious service and the reading of the Articles of War. Sailors sprawled on the deck in fine weather, combing and plaiting one another's hair. They also danced and sang songs—known as fo'c'sle songs. These were distinct from sea chanties that were sung to relieve the tedium and keep rhythm while working. Younger sailors might indulge in skylarking, playing and chasing in the rigging high above the deck, a dangerous sport generally disapproved of. In a calm, the captain might have a sail let down over the side to make a swimming pool. Gambling games with dice and cards were always popular, although they were usually officially banned as counter to religious principle and a potential source of disorder—many fights on board were caused by gambling disputes.

DRUNKENNESS

Drinking alcohol to excess was always a favorite off-duty activity for sailors. While navies of the sailing-ship era issued men with alcohol as part of their daily rations, they clamped down with a heavy hand on men who drank any more than their ration on board—drunkenness was a major cause of accidents and was incompatible with the good running of a ship. Official disapproval and severe punishments did not prevent men going to extreme lengths to procure drunkenness, either illegally saving up their ration for a binge or smuggling drink on board. The ban on excessive drinking never applied to officers, who were often the most flagrant offenders, indulging in spectacular drinking bouts involving the consumption of extraordinary quantities of wine and brandy.

HORN OF PLENTY Alcohol has often fueled sailors' lives both on board and off. Beer, wine, and rum have been served by many navies as part of regular rations, although the authorities at the same time have attempted to suppress outright drunkenness.

RELAXING ON DECK Off-duty German sailors in the late 1800s are permitted some time off on a Sunday afternoon to take advantage of the fine weather and take in the fresh air before disappearing back below deck to their service.

WOMEN

In the age of sail the need of hundreds of young men crowded on ships to find sexual relief once in harbor was widely—though not universally—accepted by their officers. Port towns were notorious sites of debauchery and it is no surprise that venereal diseases were commonplace in all navies. When captains were reluctant to let men ashore for fear of desertion, they frequently allowed women to come on board while in port. Officially tolerated as "wives," sometimes hundreds would be accommodated on a warship's gun deck at one time. In the absence of privacy, this lead to scenes that shocked more religious consciences.

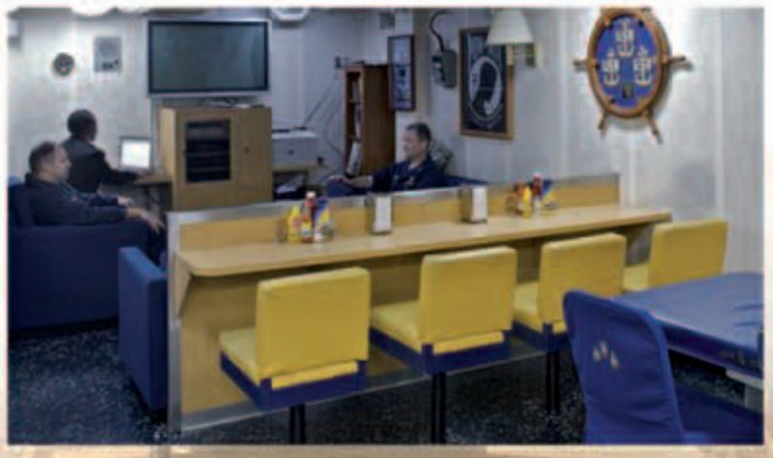
» **PORT OF PLEASURE** The expansion of London's maritime trade during the 18th century, and the presence of two Royal Navy dockyards, created an increasing demand for prostitution in the capital.

> *Many a man of war hath been her willing prisoner, and paid a proper ransom . . . [she] loves to fight yard arm . . . and be briskly boarded.*
>
> **HARRIS'S LIST OF LONDON LADIES (1758)**, John Harris's popular list of ladies was updated annually until the 1790s

MODERN TIMES

In the 20th century the maritime authorities made increasing efforts to regulate leisure activities. They encouraged more salubrious games by organizing official competitions—racing ship's boats was a favorite of the pre-World War I Royal Navy. The US Navy tried to clean up its act by, for example, banning all alcohol consumption on ships along with indecent tattoos—an edict that sent many sailors scurrying to tattoo parlors to "dress up" their naked ladies. During World War II the ban on alcohol was subverted on some US ships by the operation of illegal stills, refining alcohol from various cleaning substances or fuels. Gambling also flourished unchecked by official disapproval. Radios and record players replaced group singing, while increasing literacy made reading a favorite pastime.

» **SHIP'S LOUNGE** This lounge room on the American destroyer USS *Donald Cook* combines a dining area with a plasma TV, a DVD player, and easy chairs.



READING A midshipman reads a Sunday lesson to marines and sailors on the gun deck of a 19th-century frigate. One of the leisure activities of the literate sailor was reading.

THE SUN KING'S NAVY

Battle of La Hogue
The disastrous series of actions in 1692 resulted in the burning of 12 French ships of the line. It put an end to Louis XIV's plan to give naval support to an invasion of England by the deposed Catholic monarch James II.

IN THE COURSE of the 17th century the kings of France made their country the dominant land power in Europe, but maritime affairs traditionally had less importance for the French than for the English or the Dutch. It was not until the reign of the "Sun King" Louis XIV that a thoroughgoing effort was initiated to turn France into an oceanic power. From the 1660s the Sun King's principal minister, Jean-Baptiste Colbert, embarked on a programme of naval expansion that went hand in hand with the development of overseas colonies and maritime commerce. France had a sufficient population of seamen, greater resources than any other contemporary European state, and a powerful centralized administration. What it turned out to lack was the political will to sustain world-beating naval forces. After promising beginnings, the Sun King's navy in effect conceded command of the seas to the British.

COLBERT'S ACHIEVEMENT

Cardinal Richelieu, principal minister of King Louis XIII, had made an initial move to build up French naval forces in the 1620s, but both ships and shore facilities had subsequently fallen into disrepair. Colbert thus had to start almost from scratch. His aim was to create a formidable force of warships with efficient crews and officers, supported by an effective infrastructure. To build the ships he at first brought in expertise from abroad, chiefly employing Dutch master shipwrights, but also the Englishman Anthony Deane and the Neapolitan Biagio Pangallo. Through this transfer of technology the French soon became fine shipbuilders in their own right. They favoured large three-deck ships of the line, decorated with magnificent figureheads and carvings by noted artists such as sculptor Pierre Puget. France's great military engineer Vauban was entrusted with the building and fortification of naval bases. Toulon was developed as the main Mediterranean port and Brest as the principal Atlantic naval base. These were backed up by less satisfactory facilities at Rochefort and Le Havre, and by Dunkirk, sold to France by the English in 1662. Colbert also promoted improvements in navigation and hydrography. Appearing after Colbert's death in the 1690s, the *Neptune Français* charts produced by French maritime surveyors were the best in Europe.

MEN AND OFFICERS

In 1668 Colbert instituted a rational system for the conscription of sailors into the navy. All seamen in France had to register – the "Inscription Maritime" – and men from the register were called up by rotation in "classes". Each class performed naval service for a fixed number of years. To make this compulsory service more palatable there were social benefits. The children of seamen on naval duty were educated free and there was also provision for sick pay. The sailors' wages were sent to their homes rather than paid on ship, preventing the men from spending it all on drink and loose women. Some officers were transferred from the army to the navy; others were recalled

Shipbuilding in the reign of Louis XIV
Colbert aimed to create a merchant marine to rival that of the Dutch, so that French trade would always be carried in French ships. A strong navy was essential to protect merchant shipping from Dutch, English, and other raiders.

from service with the galley fleet of the Knights of St John in Malta, where many French gentlemen had gained naval experience. A path for the sons of the well-born to enter naval service was opened by the creation of the Garde de Marine, training them to become commissioned officers. The structure of French society required senior commanders to be noble, but merit was usually rewarded. Abraham Duquesne had been born into a Dieppe merchant family, but was ennobled so that he could hold a high command. French officers' seamanship was not always faultless – Admiral Jean d'Estrées lost an entire fleet through bad navigation, running onto rocks in the West Indies in 1678 – but they usually showed a high level of courage and fighting spirit.

Abraham Duquesne
One of Louis XIV's most able naval commanders, Duquesne won significant victories over the Spanish and Dutch in the Mediterranean. His Protestant faith prevented him from reaching the rank of full admiral.

TEST OF BATTLE

The Sun King's fleet was blooded as an ally of the English in the Third Anglo-Dutch War of 1672-74. It fought the Dutch and Spanish in the Mediterranean, and then took on the English and Dutch together in the War of the League of Augsburg from 1689. The English and Dutch were ill-prepared for this conflict and at first the French scored notable successes. An army was landed in Ireland and victory at Beachy Head in 1690 gave France temporary command of the sea. Yet a major war soon put the structure that Colbert had created under severe strain. Orderly conscription failed to deliver sufficient sailors and soon press-gangs were in action, although ships still remained undermanned. As France was both a Mediterranean and an Atlantic power, concentrating all its naval forces to fight for control of the English Channel proved impossible. A major defeat at the twin battles of Barfleur and La Hogue in 1692 convinced Louis that major fleet engagements were a costly and fruitless indulgence.

COMMERCE RAIDING

Renouncing the struggle for command of the sea, the king ordered his sailors to focus on commerce raiding. They did so very successfully, with bold captains such as René Duguay-Trouin from St Malo and Jean Bart from Dunkirk sailing at the head of small hunting packs. By the time the war ended in 1697 some 4,000 English and Dutch ships had been captured, including the immensely valuable Smyrna convoy ambushed by the French Mediterranean fleet in 1693. When fighting resumed in 1702, in the War of the Spanish Succession, French commerce raiding was again effective, but there was no disguising the overall decline of the French navy. Increasingly short of money, Louis was reduced to fitting out fleets of privateers by sharing the cost and the profits with wealthy businessmen. In truth, as a continental land power, France logically had to give priority to its army in the allocation of resources. Colbert's vision of France as the hub of a maritime trading empire was never more than partially realized.

1619–1683

JEAN-BAPTISTE COLBERT

FRENCH MINISTER OF FINANCE AND THE NAVY

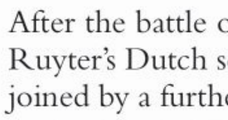
Born in Reims, eastern France, Colbert learned his trade as an administrator in the service of Cardinal Mazarin, the effective ruler of France during the minority of Louis XIV. Soon after Louis took power into his own hands in 1661, Colbert was appointed Intendant of Finance, in control of taxation, trade, and manufactures. Two years later he was also styled Intendant of the Navy. Colbert saw that a strong navy was essential to protect maritime trade and to enable France to expand its empire. His financial reforms vastly increased tax revenues, making funds available for the building of ships and naval facilities. In his later years Colbert was unpopular, blamed for the high taxation that financed Louis' wars. He never convinced the king of the overriding importance of naval power and overseas trade. Yet by 1683, when he died, the French navy was the largest in Europe, with 117 ships of the line, 1,200 officers, and over 50,000 men.

THE FRENCH WARS

THE AMBITIONS OF French King Louis XIV generated a series of wars in which to test his freshly expanded navy. After England made peace with France in 1674, Louis remained at war with the Dutch, who allied themselves with their former enemies the Spanish. A series of sharp sea battles were fought in the Mediterranean, which ended in a notable success for the French navy under Admiral Duquesne. However, the War of the League of Augsburg (1688–97) brought France into conflict with England, which was supported by the Dutch, now fielding a distinctly inferior naval force. An early victory at Beachy Head, under the excellent Admiral de Tourville, gave the French navy command of the sea, but this was soon reversed by a disastrous defeat at the twin battles of Barfleur and La Hogue. For the rest of the war, and through the subsequent War of the Spanish Succession (1701–14), the French made no further serious attempt to contest the dominance of the English fleet, although France's seamen demonstrated their skill and boldness in commerce-raiding and other small-scale actions.

FRANCO-DUTCH WAR

ALICUDI



Date January 6, 1676
Forces Dutch and Spanish: 19 ships of the line; French: 20 ships of the line
Losses Dutch and Spanish: 1 ship; French: none

Location
Aeolian islands, Sicily

In 1674 the people of Messina in Sicily rose up in revolt against Spanish rule and invited the French to come to their aid. King Louis XIV sent a squadron to Messina, installing a viceroy to rule the island. When the Spanish fleet attempted to intercept a troop convoy sent to Sicily in February 1675, it was roundly defeated off Stromboli. The Spanish called on the Dutch for help and Dutch Admiral Michiel de Ruyter was sent with a weak squadron of 18 ships to link up with the Spanish fleet. He found Spain in a hapless state of disorganization, however, and sailed for Sicily with only a single Spanish ship of the line to augment his squadron, plus a handful of galleys.

De Ruyter encountered a French force under Admiral Duquesne off the island of Alicudi. The French had a similar number of ships but far superior firepower and de Ruyter was reluctant to give battle, but once the wind shifted to Duquesne's advantage the French attacked. Approaching the Dutch line obliquely, the French van took a pounding and several ships were forced to withdraw. Nonetheless, once the two lines were closely engaged the French guns did their work. After six hours the fighting ceased. The Spanish galleys towed off the most badly damaged Dutch ships, one of which sank during the night. The French had suffered the heavier casualties, however, in a thoroughly inconclusive encounter.

> "THE DUTCH FLEET UNDER DE RUYTER CAN ENTER A MOONLESS NIGHT IN HEAVY WIND AND FOG AND EMERGE THE NEXT DAY IN PERFECT LINE AHEAD."
>
> **FRENCH ADMIRAL ABRAHAM DUQUESNE**, REPORT TO KING LOUIS XIV, 1676

FRANCO-DUTCH WAR

AGOSTA

Date April 22, 1676
Forces Dutch and Spanish: 27 ships of the line; French: 29 ships of the line
Losses none

Location Off Agosta, eastern Sicily

After the battle of Alicudi, Michiel de Ruyter's Dutch squadron was belatedly joined by a further eight Spanish ships under Admiral Don Francisco de la Cerda. Admiral Duquesne entered Messina. The total French strength still exceeded that of the combined Spanish and Dutch fleet, but they allowed themselves to be blockaded in harbor by de Ruyter, so little confidence did they have in their ability to defeat the legendary Dutch admiral.

In April, despairing of the French ever coming out, the Spanish and Dutch sailed to threaten the French-controlled harbor of Agosta. Duquesne felt bound to respond and the two fleets met on April 22. The haughty Admiral de la Cerda insisted on being recognized as overall commander of the combined fleet and thus holding the position of honour in the center of the line. He also insisted that his Spanish squadron remain together under his command. Thus the Dutch were split, de Ruyter leading half of their ships in the van and the rest of the Dutch ships making up the rear division.

Eendracht
The Dutch ship *Eendracht* was de Ruyter's flagship at Agosta when the admiral was mortally wounded by the French guns.

De Ruyter closely engaged the French van, but the Spanish held off, limiting themselves to some token long-range exchanges with the French center. The Dutch in the rear, under Admiral den Haen, mostly focused on the Spanish, although they did succeed in engaging the rearmost French ships. At first the Dutch van had the better of the fighting, but once Duquesne realized the Spanish were not going to fight he began moving ships forward from his center. Isolated and outgunned, the Dutch van suffered grievously. De Ruyter was wounded in the leg, and his flagship was shattered.

Both sides were happy to break off the fight at the end of the day. De Ruyter died a week later of gangrene; a sad end for an admiral who deserved to fall in a more distinguished combat.

FRANCO-DUTCH WAR

PALERMO

Date June 2, 1676
Forces Dutch and Spanish: 27 ships of the line; French: 28 ships of the line
Losses Dutch and Spanish: 7 ships; French: none

Location
Palermo, Sicily

The combined Dutch and Spanish fleet was in poor shape after the battle of Agosta. Demoralized by the loss of Admiral de Ruyter, they anchored in a defensive line across Palermo Harbor. The French, largely at the inspiration of the Comte de Tourville, conceived a bold plan of attack. The Marquis de Preuilly took nine ships to attack one end of the enemy line at close quarters. The rest of the French fleet maintained a barrage from longer range while sending fireships down on the harbor.

In panic the Dutch and Spanish ships cut their cables, drifting into shore. Three Dutch ships and four Spanish ships were destroyed by fire, including both flagships. Satisfied with this triumph, the French fleet subsequently withdrew from Sicily, allowing the island to return to Spanish rule.

Matchlock musket
Muskets were brought to bear when ships came within 220 yards (200 m) or so of each other. Matchlocks remained in use in Europe until about 1700.

Destruction of the Soleil Royal
The French ships *Soleil Royal*, *Triomphant*, and *Admirable* are set on fire by English fireships at Cherbourg. Only one crew member on board the French flagship *Soleil Royal* survived the raid.

WAR OF THE LEAGUE OF AUGSBURG

BARFLEUR AND LA HOGUE

Date	May 29–June 4, 1692
Location	Off northern France
Result	Anglo-Dutch victory

COMBATANTS

ENGLAND AND DUTCH REPUBLIC	FRANCE

COMMANDERS

Edward Russell	Anne Hilarion de Tourville

FORCES

Ships: 82 ships of the line	**Ships:** 44 ships of the line

LOSSES

Ships: none	**Ships:** 15

BARFLEUR AND LA HOGUE

Encouraged by the French victory over the English and Dutch fleets at Beachy Head in 1690, French King Louis XIV planned an invasion of England in 1692 to reinstate the deposed King James II. Admiral de Tourville was to concentrate the French fleet at Brest, then sail on to Le Havre where French and Jacobite soldiers would embark in transports to be escorted across the Channel.

The project was from the outset plagued by delays. Originally planned for April, it had to be postponed because the transports were not ready in time. Even with an extra month, the French Mediterranean fleet, held up by bad weather, never arrived to join Tourville, who also had to sail without 20 of his own ships for lack of crews to man them. His fleet was thus woefully inadequate to confront the combined forces of the English and Dutch, who had been given ample time to gather in the Channel.

Tourville sighted the allied fleet off Cape Barfleur on the morning of May 29. Although it was twice his strength, he opted to give battle, perhaps hoping that English captains of Jacobite sympathies would change sides. None did. Holding the weather gage, Tourville no doubt hoped to exploit skilful seamanship and gunnery to inflict damage on a superior force and disengage at will.

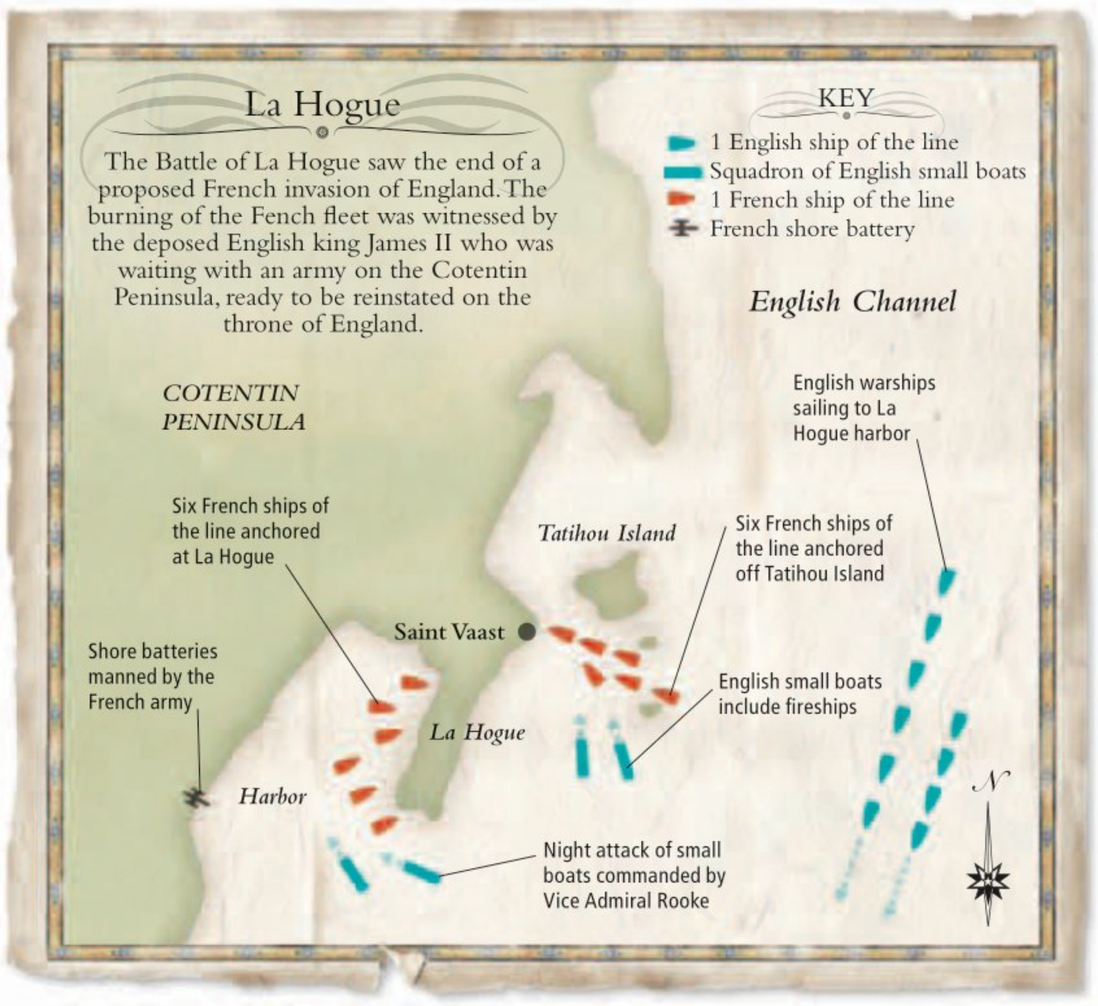
Fireships at La Hogue
This Dutch delftware plaque depicts French sailors at La Hogue escaping from their burning ships, all 12 of which were destroyed.

BROADSIDES AND FIRESHIPS

Tourville laid his center, including his superb flagship *Soleil Royal*, alongside the allied center and a brutal exchange of broadsides began. The French van avoided envelopment by the Dutch ships of the allied van by continually giving way until at right-angles to the center. Tourville's attempt to control the battle was undermined by the caprice of the wind, which first shifted to deny him the advantage, and then dropped altogether. In a flat calm, ships of the line maneuvered under tow from their boats, sailors straining at the oars, or were carried by the tide if they opted not to anchor. The French center, unable to disengage, heroically fought a prolonged gunnery duel against the odds, while the allied rear strove to bring them under fire from both sides.

Fighting continued in an increasingly confused mêlée after nightfall. The English sailed fireships toward the enemy on the tide but the French coped with them efficiently. Exhaustion brought the battle to an end around 10:00 p.m.

Both sides suffered heavy casualties, but no ship was sunk or taken. If the French had escaped the following day, they could have celebrated a fine performance against a superior force. But too long was spent trying to save the crippled *Soleil Royal* and it was evening before Tourville ordered a general flight. Twenty-two ships used local knowledge to navigate a dangerous channel past Alderney to safety. Several escaped further afield, including two ships that took the Armada route around the north of Scotland. But 15 ships did not escape. The *Soleil Royal* and two others were beached at Cherbourg, where the English destroyed them with fireships. The rest beached at La Hogue. Despite the presence of shore batteries, the English attacked with long boats and fireships, and burned them all. The invasion plans were abandoned.



THE BATTLE OF BEACHY HEAD

The War of the League of Augsburg, sparked by the Protestant William of Orange's accession to the English throne in 1688, set the navy of Louis XIV's Catholic France against the formidable maritime power of the English and the Dutch. On June 21, 1690, the French Mediterranean fleet commanded by the Marquis de Châteaurenault sailed into Brest to join the Atlantic fleet commanded by the Comte de Tourville. This combined fleet had a local numerical advantage over its enemies, for the English had dangerously dispersed their forces, with detachments in the Mediterranean and the Irish Sea, as well as numerous ships on convoy escort duties.

Tourville entered the English Channel with 70 magnificent ships of the line, intending to attack the depleted English in their anchorage at Spithead. But English admiral Arthur Herbert, the 1st Earl of Torrington, did not wait to be attacked, advancing cautiously westward along the south coast of England, where he was joined by a squadron of 22 Dutch ships under Cornelis Evertsen. Encountering the French off the white cliffs of Beachy Head, Torrington held the weather gage and at first used it to avoid battle with a superior force. But the English royal council rejected this negative posture and ordered Torrington to attack.

Battle was joined on the morning of July 10. The two fleets formed up conventionally in line ahead. Since the French ships of the line outnumbered the English and the Dutch, their line was longer, a problem the allies failed to address. The Dutch squadron forming the allied van boldly sailed forward to engage the enemy but failed to reach the front of the French line, the foremost Dutch ship exchanging broadsides with the eighth French ship. Châteaurenault, commanding the French van in the 110-gun *Dauphin Royal*, ordered the Marquis de Villette-Mursay to double back with the seven front ships down the lee side of the Dutch, who were caught between two lines of fire. When Tourville, commanding the center in his three-decker flagship *Soleil Royal*, succeeded in slipping some of his ships into a gap that had opened up between the hesitant Torrington's center and the van, the Dutch ships were surrounded.

The French rear squadron, vigorously attacked by the third English squadron under Sir Ralph Delaval, took some heavy punishment. Three French ships had to withdraw from the line, one with its poop blown off when cartridges exploded on deck. But their losses were as nothing to those suffered by the Dutch. Only one ship, *Friesland*, struck and was sunk, but all were shattered, their decks littered with the dead and wounded. In the afternoon the wind dropped and the ships drifted with the current. As the tide began to ebb, Torrington gave the signal to anchor. Caught unawares, the French drifted away from the allied ships, bringing the day's fighting to an end.

The aftermath brought controversy on both sides. Torrington fled for the Thames, abandoning any ships too badly damaged to follow (all but one of them Dutch). Tourville contented himself with finishing off these defenseless wrecks and then, after sacking the port of Teignmouth, returned to France to unload his wounded and refit his mauled ships. Torrington was imprisoned in the Tower of London. Although a court martial cleared him of treachery, he was dismissed from the service. Tourville was also criticized for failing to pursue the defeated English. His great victory failed to have any decisive consequence.

Victory at Bévéziers
This French medal commemorating the Battle of Beachy Head (Bévéziers, in French) depicts Louis XIV as Neptune ruling the seas.

WAR OF THE LEAGUE OF AUGSBURG

BATTLE OF BEACHY HEAD

Date	July 10, 1690
Location	Off Sussex, southern England
Result	French victory

COMBATANTS

FRANCE	ENGLAND DUTCH REPUBLIC

COMMANDERS

Comte de Tourville	Earl of Torrington

FORCES

Ships: 70 ships of the line	**Ships:** 56 ships of the line

LOSSES

Men: none **Ships:** none	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** 17 ships of the line

Dutch ship ablaze
A Dutch ship catches fire after sustained bombardment from the French. The battle saw the complete destruction of the Dutch fleet that formed the van.

70 French warships carrying 4,600 guns meet the Anglo-Dutch fleet off Beachy Head

The French line is longer than the Anglo-Dutch

TOURVILLE'S CENTER SQUADRON

D'ESTRÉES' REAR SQUADRON

CHÂTEAURENAULT'S VAN SQUADRON

English squadrons engage the French rear and center

Dutch squadron engages the French van

DELAVAL'S REAR SQUADRON

TORRINGTON'S CENTER SQUADRON

EVERTSEN'S VAN SQUADRON

Wind

ENGLISH CHANNEL

KEY

ANGLO-DUTCH FLEET

6 English ships of the line

7 Dutch ships of the line

FRENCH FLEET

7 French ships of the line

1 THE TWO FLEETS ENGAGE

Tourville arrives in the Channel with 70 ships of the line. His intention to attack the British in Spithead is foiled by Torrington, who sails west along the coast. Joined by the Dutch under Evertsen, they encounter the French near Beachy Head.

Arc in French line makes center squadrons difficult to engage

French van heads off Anglo-Dutch van

English engage French squadron-for-squadron

English center squadrons unengaged with French center squadrons

Dutch van becomes encircled by French

Wind

ENGLISH CHANNEL

2 THE DUTCH TRAPPED

The Anglo-Dutch van and rear engage with the French, the center staying detatched due to an arc in the French line. While the English in the rear are mauled, the Dutch become encircled by the French. The latter overpower the Dutch.

French rear mauled by encounter with English squadrons

Outnumbered Dutch van caught between two fires

Unable to match French, English ships draw out of battle by dropping anchor

French center squadrons complete the encirclement of the Dutch van

Two Dutch ships sunk. Seven are damaged and later scuttled

Wind

ENGLISH CHANNEL

3 FRENCH VICTORY

By 4:00 p.m. the French have won the battle. The English withdraw by dropping anchor, allowing the French to drift downwind, while the Dutch are surrounded and destroyed. The French then sack the port of Teignmouth.

WAR OF THE LEAGUE OF AUGSBURG

ACTION OF JUNE 29, 1694

Date June 29, 1694
Forces French: 6 warships: Dutch: 8 warships
Losses French: none; Dutch: 3 warships captured

Location Off Texel, North Sea

With the French people facing starvation after bad harvests, Jean Bart was dispatched to escort a large grain convoy crossing the North Sea. He met the convoy off Texel—in the possession of a Dutch flotilla that had captured it. Bart held the weather gage and, although outnumbered, attacked the Dutch ships fiercely. His flagship *Maure* was almost disabled by the guns of the Dutch flagship *Prins Friso*, but he nonetheless boarded and captured her. Two other Dutch ships were also taken and the rest fled. Bart brought the 120 ships of the convoy with their invaluable cargo safely to port in France.

1651–1702

JEAN BART

FRENCH PRIVATEER AND ADMIRAL

The son of a Dunkirk fisherman, Jean Bart proved from an early age an outstanding sailor and fighter. He was the leader of the Dunkirk privateers by 1676 and rose to the rank of admiral in the French navy despite his lack of noble birth. In 1689 he was captured by the English but escaped after three days and crossed from Plymouth to Brittany in a rowing boat. He was ennobled after saving France from starvation by the rescue of a grain convoy captured by the Dutch in June 1694. A supreme commerce raider, Bart repeatedly defied English efforts to blockade him in port and is credited with capturing over 300 ships in his career. His exploits made him a French national hero.

WAR OF THE LEAGUE OF AUGSBURG

DOGGER BANK

Date June 17, 1696
Forces French: 7 warships: Dutch: 5 warships
Losses French: none; Dutch: 5 warships, 25 merchant ships

Location Dogger Bank, North Sea

Blockaded inside Dunkirk by an English squadron under Admiral John Benbow, Jean Bart slipped out of harbor on a misty night in June 1696 and headed for the North Sea, fruitful ground for commerce raiding. On June 17 the French happened upon a Dutch convoy of a large number of merchant vessels escorted by five frigates. Since Bart had under his command seven naval warships mounting from 36 to 54 guns, supported by two privateers, it was an unequal contest. Bart's flagship *Maure* and the other naval ships engaged the Dutch escorts, while the privateers set about pursuing and overtaking the merchant ships. The fight began at 7:00 p.m. and was hotly contested. The Dutch flagship *Raadhuis van Haarlem* duelled valiantly with *Maure*, which lost 15 of her crew, killed before forcing her opponent to surrender. The rest of the escorts also struck their colors and the entire convoy was captured.

However, Benbow's blockade squadron and a group of Dutch warships were searching for Bart and their arrival on the scene forced the French to depart in haste. They set fire to most of the ships they had captured and fled, carrying some 1,200 prisoners with them. Dodging the English and Dutch ships pursuing them, they sailed along the Norwegian coast to Denmark. Bart eventually slipped back into Dunkirk in late September. The loss of the convoy was a serious blow to Dutch merchants and a demonstration of the limitations of Anglo-Dutch command of the sea.

WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION

VIGO BAY

Date October 23, 1702
Forces English and Dutch: 28 ships of the line; French and Spanish: 17 ships of the line
Losses English and Dutch: none; French and Spanish: all ships destroyed or captured

Location Vigo Bay, northern Spain

An Anglo-Dutch fleet commanded by Admiral Sir George Rooke was sent to attack the Spanish port of Cadiz. At the same time French Vice Admiral Louis Rousselet de Chateau-Renault was escorting a Spanish treasure fleet across the Atlantic from Cuba. Hearing of the presence of enemy ships at Cadiz, the treasure fleet prudently diverted to Vigo, where the unloading of its silver bullion got under way.

Rooke's raid on Cadiz was a failure, but on his way home he learned of the arrival of the treasure ships in Vigo and seized the opportunity to redeem himself. The harbor was well defended, its entrance blocked by a boom of masts chained together, covered by the fire of shore batteries and the guns of ships anchored inside. Rooke landed troops to attack the Spanish forts and ordered the British and Dutch vice admirals Thomas Hopsonn and Philip van der Goes to sail in and break through the boom. The Allied ships came in for very heavy punishment. Hopsonn's *Torbay* was especially hard hit and he was obliged to shift his flag to *Monmouth*. But the boom was breached and the Allies broke into the harbor. Believing he had no chance in a fight, Chateau-Renault ordered his captains to fire their ships. The harbor was soon an amazing spectacle of blazing and exploding vessels. The Allies succeeded in capturing some of the ships before fire took hold, including galleons that still had bullion and other valuables worth £14,000 on board. Apart from ships and treasure, the disaster cost the French and Spanish some 2,000 casualties. English and Dutch dead and wounded numbered around 800.

Commemorative medal
Hercules seizes a French soldier holding the Golden Fleece—a reference to Spanish treasure.

Start of the attack on Vigo Harbor
Torbay leads the Anglo-Dutch ships round the headland to bombard the boom placed across the harbor. In the foreground, the attacking force has landed troops on the shore south of the harbor.

Heat of the action at Malaga
On the left, the French flagship, *Foudroyant*, commanded by the Comte de Toulouse, an illegitimate son of Louis XIV, is closely engaged with Admiral Rooke's flagship, *Royal Katherine*.

WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION

MALAGA

Date August 24, 1704
Forces English and Dutch: 53 ships of the line; French: 50 ships of the line
Losses none

Location South of Malaga, Spain

In early August 1704 an Anglo-Dutch fleet under Admiral Sir George Rooke captured Gibraltar from the Spanish. A French fleet under the Comte de Toulouse sailed from Toulon to retake it. Rooke met the French south of Malaga. The action was an indecisive slaughter, two powerful forces in formal line of battle battering one another with broadsides. Occasionally a ship withdrew because of the scale of the damage and casualties suffered, but no vessel had been lost by either side when they disengaged at the day's end. The Anglo-Dutch fleet was overall in worse shape and desperately short of powder and shot. But the French did not renew the battle next morning, instead sailing back to Toulon. Both sides claimed victory, even though the English retained Gibraltar.

WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION

LIZARD

Date October 21, 1707
Forces English: 5 ships of the line; French: 13 ships of the line
Losses English: 1 ship of the line sunk, 3 captured, 60 transport ships captured; French: none

Location Off Cornwall, southwest England

An English convoy of 80 transport ships sailed from Plymouth, bound for Portugal with men and supplies for the war then being fought in Spain. On the following day the convoy was intercepted off the Lizard by two French squadrons, one led by the Saint-Malo privateer Captain René DuGuay-Trouin and the other by Admiral Claude de Forbin.

With only five ships of the line to his opponents' 13, the commander of the English convoy escort, Commodore Richard Edwards, stood little chance. The English ships nonetheless formed up in line of battle and mounted a spirited resistance, hoping this would allow at least some of the transports to escape. Edwards' flagship, the 80-gun *Cumberland*, was captured after being attacked by DuGuay's 74-gun *Lys* and two smaller ships. The other 80-gun English ship, *Devonshire*, defended herself against overwhelming odds until dusk, when the ship exploded, killing more than 800 men on board. *Royal Oak* was the sole English warship to escape, reaching Kinsale in southern Ireland with a handful of transports.

WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION

CARTAGENA

Date June 8–9, 1708
Forces English: 3 ships of the line; Spanish: 4 galleons, 13 other vessels
Losses English: none; Spanish 2 ships destroyed, 1 captured

Location Isla de Baru, Cartagena, Colombia

Admiral Charles Wager with three English ships of the line—*Expedition*, *Kingston*, and *Portland*—intercepted a Spanish treasure fleet bound for Cartagena from Porto Bello. The two largest and most heavily armed galleons, *San José* and *San Joaquín*, were carrying most of the silver and gold bullion. The fight began late in the afternoon. Wager's flagship *Expedition* engaged *San José* in a lengthy exchange of broadsides. Darkness had fallen when the Spanish galleon suddenly exploded, showering *Expedition* with burning splinters of wood. In moonlight *Expedition* then engaged a smaller galleon *Santa Cruz*. Both *Kingston* and *Portland* joined him, allowing *San Joaquín* to steal away. *Santa Cruz* surrendered during the night and Wager sent *Kingston* and *Portland* to pursue *San Joaquín*. They found the galleon the following morning but failed to stop her entering Cartagena Harbor. Wager was furious at the failure to capture the bullion and the captains of *Kingston* and *Portland* were court-martialed. Still, his share of *Santa Cruz*'s valuable cargo made Wager a rich man.

Explosion of the galleon San José
The Spanish treasure ship, which still lies at the bottom of the Caribbean, is thought to have been carrying a fortune in silver, gold, and jewels.

BALTIC CONFLICTS

Battle of Fredrikshamn
On May 15, 1790, the Swedish fleet under the command of King Gustavus III engaged and destroyed a Russian fleet off Fredrikshamn (now Hamina, Finland) in the Gulf of Finland.

Running the gauntlet
After two disastrous attacks on the Russian fleet, the 400-strong Swedish fleet found itself blockaded in Vyborg Bay on July 3, 1790, by 150 Russian ships. Thanks to a lucky change in wind direction, they were able to escape, but lost 10 ships.

THE BALTIC WAS A STRATEGICALLY crucial area of Europe in the Age of Sail, for it was a source of vital nautical supplies—timber, tar, flax, and hemp—as well as of other important trade goods. Yet the naval conflicts in the region fought in the 17th and 18th centuries were almost exclusively contests between the countries around the Baltic shores. The Dutch intervened in Baltic warfare to protect their naval supplies and trading interests in the 17th century, as the British later did during the Napoleonic Wars, but mostly the combatants were Sweden, the kingdom of Denmark-Norway and, in the 18th century, Russia. The battles they fought often took place in the shallow waters around the inlets and islands of the Baltic coast. Thus in Baltic navies large sailing ships were often less decisive in combat than shallow-draft oared galleys and flat-bottomed boats.

POWERFUL SWEDES

Sweden established its independence from Denmark and Norway in the 1520s. A navy was founded under King Gustav Vasa (ruled 1523–60), but when his famous grandson Gustavus Adolphus came to the throne in 1611 it consisted only of small and aging vessels.

To serve both his military ambitions and sense of personal prestige, in the 1620s the king had a new fleet built at the Royal Dockyard in Stockholm, under the direction of Dutch master shipwright Henriks Hybertszoon. This included some of the largest warships in the world, but was far from a total success. The mighty *Vasa*, intended to be the pride of the new navy, sank ignominiously in Stockholm Harbor on her maiden voyage in August 1628. This was not untypical of the general performance of the Swedish navy.

The Danes benefited from the income generated by the tolls on the straits they controlled at the mouth of the Baltic. They were also aided by the formidable

Dutch and generally had the better of naval combat in the Baltic during the 17th century.

RUSSIAN ASCENDANCY

The rise of Russia under Tsar Peter the Great fundamentally altered the power balance in the Baltic. The Great Northern War in the first two decades of the 18th century brought victories not only for Russian armies but also for the newly created Russian navy at the battles of Ezel and Grengam. Peter's absolute power in Russia enabled him to build fleets and naval facilities in the Baltic and Black sea. The lack of a Russian seafaring tradition was more difficult to overcome. For many decades the officers of the Russian navy were recruited abroad. Like the Swedes, the Russians maintained two separate forces in the Baltic, a conventional sailing ship fleet for open waters and a fleet of galleys and prams—flat-bottomed ships carrying a heavy gun—to serve in coastal waters.

Backstaff
The backstaff, or English quadrant, was one of the main instruments of navigation until the development of the octant in the 1730s.

SWEDEN'S LAST THROW

Russia replaced Sweden as the major power in the Baltic after the Great Northern War, but through the 18th century Sweden put substantial effort into upgrading its navy, especially the coastal fleet. The traditional galley and prams were augmented by varieties of gun sloop and coastal frigate—udemas, turumas, and hemmemas—the largest capable of mounting up to 48 guns. Sailing ships designed to be rowed when necessary, these innovative British-designed vessels performed well when Sweden went to war with Russia again in 1788–90. There were large-scale battles, ending with the mighty but indecisive encounter known as Second Svensksund. It was Sweden's most impressive naval performance, but the size and population of Russia inevitably meant it would dominate the Baltic in the future.

1672–1725

PETER THE GREAT

LIEUTENANT-ADMIRAL OF THE UNITED PROVINCES

Tsar Peter the Great was the ruler who turned Russia into a major military power. An absolute monarch and ruthless modernizer, he looked to western Europe for examples to follow and for expertise to import. Peter created the Russian navy out of nothing. Fascinated by boats from an early age, he traveled to the Netherlands and England in the 1690s to study shipbuilding and navigation. He worked at the East India Company shipyard in Amsterdam and at the Royal Dockyard in London to gain personal experience of maritime technology. He took back with him shipwrights, experienced seamen, and designs for ships. Peter's conquests on land gave Russia access to the Black Sea and the Baltic, where he founded the city of St Petersburg in 1703 with the naval base of Kronstadt alongside. By the time of his death in 1725 the Russian navy had 48 ships of the line and some 800 galleys.

Peter the Great
Emperor Peter I was physically imposing, loud, violent, and a keen learner. He transformed Russia into a modern European state.

SWEDEN FIGHTS FOR DOMINATION

DURING THE 17th century Sweden established itself as a major power in Europe, especially through its wars with Poland and its prominent participation in the Thirty Years War (1618-48) in Germany. Swedish monarchs wanted a navy to match their great power status, but despite spending heavily on warship construction they found success at sea elusive, repeatedly depending upon the triumphs of their land forces to compensate for maritime failings. Denmark and Norway, united under the Danish crown since 1537, struggled to resist Swedish domination of the Baltic on land and at sea. The Dutch United Provinces at times gave support to Denmark because the Baltic was a prime source of trade and naval supplies to which they needed secure access. Their principle was to support whichever of the Scandinavian states was weakest, to prevent a naval power emerging that might control the Baltic at their expense. Despite the severe setbacks of the Scanian War (1675-78), which brought humiliating defeats for the Swedish navy at Öland and Kjöge Bay, Sweden remained the dominant power in the Baltic until the early 18th century.

DUTCH-SWEDISH WAR

BATTLE OF THE SOUND

Date	October 29, 1658
Location	The Oresund, off Copenhagen
Result	Dutch victory

COMBATANTS

DUTCH UNITED PROVINCES, DENMARK	SWEDEN

COMMANDERS

Jacob van Wassenaer	Karl Gustav Wrangel

FORCES

Ships: Dutch 35, Danes 7	**Ships:** 45

LOSSES

Men: 450 **Ships:** 2	**Men:** c.1,000 killed or wounded **Ships:** 5

THE BATTLE OF THE SOUND

For the Dutch United Provinces access to the Baltic for naval supplies and trade was commercially and militarily crucial. Sweden wished to exclude the Dutch from the Baltic by forcing the Danes to block their passage through the Oresund, the narrow sound between Denmark and Sweden. In 1658 Sweden's king Karl X Gustav put the Danish capital Copenhagen under siege by land and naval blockade. The Dutch sent a fleet to prevent the Swedes from defeating the Danes.

On the morning of October 29 a north wind allowed the Dutch commander Lieutenant Admiral Jacob van Wassenaer to sail into the Oresund and confront the Swedish blockade squadrons. There were seven Danish warships in Copenhagen, but they were unable to join the fighting because the wind that filled the Dutch sails kept them pinned in port. This left the Dutch substantially outgunned, with around 1,300 cannon to the Swedes' 1,600, although they could claim the advantage of being upwind.

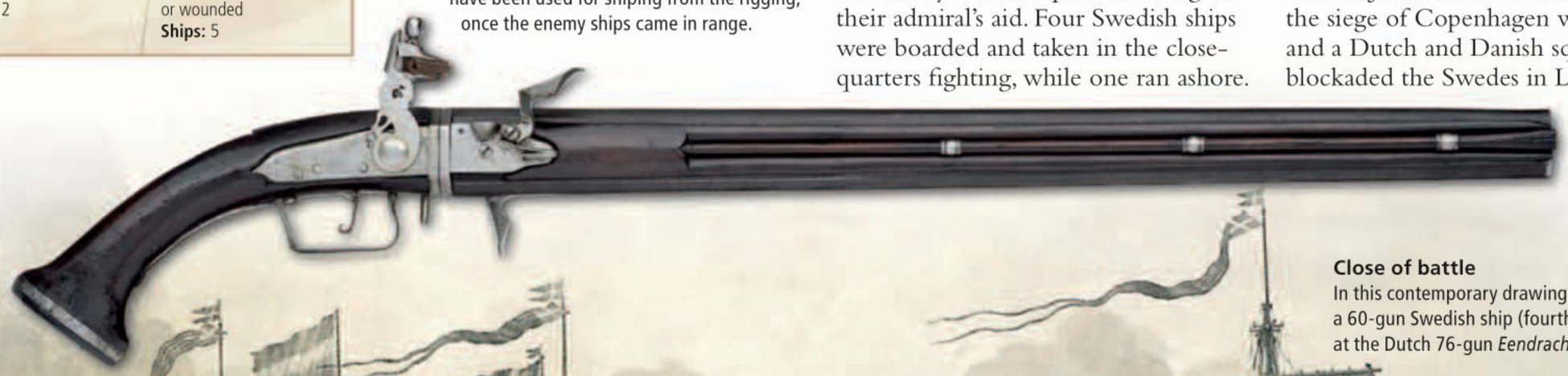
A DISORDERED CONFLICT

Strong currents prevented ships maintaining much order on either side and a savage piecemeal battle ensued. Wassenaer's flagship *Eendracht* was surrounded by Swedish ships and took some heavy punishment, but was rescued by Dutch captains coming to their admiral's aid. Four Swedish ships were boarded and taken in the close-quarters fighting, while one ran ashore.

In the course of battle the Dutch lost one of their most famous—and controversial—admirals, the choleric and notoriously insubordinate Witte Cornelizoon de With. His flagship *Brederode* ran aground and, lying defenseless, was battered for two hours by enemy fire before being boarded. De With was injured by musket fire and died of his wounds—his embalmed body was exhibited by the Swedes as a trophy, before being returned to the Dutch for burial.

At around 2:00 p.m. the Dutch broke contact to sail into Copenhagen. The Swedes withdrew to the Swedish port of Landskrona. Both fleets were in a battered state and both claimed a victory. But the Dutch had achieved their objective, for the blockade and the siege of Copenhagen was lifted, and a Dutch and Danish squadron blockaded the Swedes in Landskrona.

Dutch double-barreled flintlock
Double-barreled flintlocks, like this, would have been used for sniping from the rigging, once the enemy ships came in range.



Close of battle
In this contemporary drawing by an eyewitness, a 60-gun Swedish ship (fourth from left) fires back at the Dutch 76-gun *Eendracht* as she passes by.

POLISH-SWEDISH WAR

OLIWA

Date November 28, 1627
Forces Swedish: 6 ships; Polish: 10 ships
Losses Swedish: 1 ship captured, 1 destroyed; Polish: none

Location Off Danzig (Gdansk), Poland

In 1627 Sweden was at war with the Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth. In May the Swedish navy sent 15 ships to blockade the Polish port of Gdansk. Outbreaks of disease and wear and tear to the ships took its toll on the blockading squadron. By November only six ships were left on station. Poland had no naval tradition, but it had assembled a scratch naval force under the command of a Dutch merchant captain resident in Gdansk, Arend Dickmann. On November 28 Dickmann attacked the Swedish squadron with four galleons and six smaller vessels. His flagship *Sankt Georg* tackled the Swedish flagship *Tigern*. Swedish commander Nils Stjernskjold was killed; *Tigern* was captured. Another Swedish galleon, *Sol*, was blown up by her captain to avoid capture. The rest of the Swedish squadron fled. Dickmann, however, was killed, his legs shot away by a cannonball on Tigern's deck. It was the Polish navy's most famous victory.

THIRTY YEARS WAR

COLBERGER HEIDE

Date July 1, 1644
Forces Swedish: 34 ships; Danish: 40 ships
Losses none

Location Near Femern Island, off Germany

In 1644 Sweden and Denmark were on opposite sides in the Thirty Years War. A Swedish fleet under Finnish admiral Klas Fleming landed troops on the Danish island of Femern. Danish king Christian IV responded by leading a fleet out from Copenhagen. The Danes had more ships but were significantly outgunned by the Swedes. Fleming had the best of the initial manoeuvres. His flagship *Scepter* led an attack by several ships upon Danish admiral Jorgen Wind's *Patientia* heading the Danish van. King Christian's *Trefoldighed* came to Wind's aid but was also battered. The king suffered a head wound, which would cost him the sight of one eye, but stayed on deck. Wind was mortally injured and *Patientia* withdrew. Overall, however, the Danes had the better of the action, which ended with sunset. The badly mauled Swedish fleet was blockaded in Kiel Fjord for a month, during which time Fleming was killed.

Under fire
A Swedish man of war in the foreground exchanges fire with ships bearing the red Danish ensign. In the background more ships, possibly enemy reinforcements, approach to join the engagement.

SCANIAN WAR

ÖLAND

Date June 1, 1676
Forces Swedish: 26 ships of the line, 12 frigates; Dutch and Danish: 25 ships of the line, 10 frigates
Losses Swedish: 3 ships of the line, 4 other vessels; Dutch and Danish: none

Location Off Öland Island, the Baltic

The decision of Swedish king Charles XI to ally himself with French king Louis XIV in his struggle against the Dutch United Provinces eventually led to the Scanian War, in which the Dutch combined forces with Denmark against Sweden. Off Bornholm Island in late May 1676 a Danish and Dutch squadron under Danish admiral Niels Juel had the better of an encounter with a numerically superior Swedish force, which withdrew toward Stockholm. The allies were then reinforced by the arrival of nine ships under Dutch admiral Cornelis Tromp. Tromp immediately gave pursuit and caught up with the Swedes off the island of Öland. The Swedish commander, Admiral Lorens Creutz, was on board *Kronan*, one of the largest and most heavily armed warships of its day. The lower gun ports were opened on the flagship's leeward side as the Danish-Dutch fleet approached holding the weather gage. In a moment of confusion, Creutz ordered a sharp change of tack without reefing the sails. The open gun ports went under water as the ship heeled over. With sea pouring into the ship there was an explosion in the gunpowder store. *Kronan* sank rapidly, taking 801 of the 842 men on board to their deaths. Despite this catastrophe, some Swedish ships fought bravely. The 94-gun *Svärd* held out for two hours before striking its colors. After surrender she was hit by a Dutch fireship, causing a fire and explosion in which most of the 670 crew were killed. Scattered Swedish ships fleeing were pursued and a few captured. With this comprehensive defeat, Sweden decisively lost naval control of the Baltic.

SCANIAN WAR

KJÖGE BAY

Date July 1–2, 1677
Forces Swedish: 31 ships; Danish: 25 ships
Losses Swedish: 8 ships; Danish: none

Location Kjöge Bay, south of Copenhagen

In spring 1677 the Swedish navy sought to attack the Danes in the absence of their Dutch allies, who were slow to send ships to the Baltic that year. Danish admiral Niels Juel was also keen to fight in the absence of the Dutch, since the arrival of Admiral Cornelis Tromp would mean that he was superseded in overall command.

Juel deliberately offered the Swedes a chance to attack him in Kjöge Bay. The Swedish fleet was led by Henrik Horn, a field marshal who had no experience at sea. Juel unsurprisingly outmaneuvered him. On the morning of July 1 the Swedes attacked with the advantage of an offshore wind. The Danes skillfully fended off some Swedish fireships and then squeezed the Swedes against the coast. The 64-gun *Drake* ran aground at Stevns Point. Six Swedish ships remained behind to defend the exposed ship, while the rest broke for more open seas. *Drake* was forced to strike colors, lowering the ensign in surrender, while two of the ships left to protect her were also captured. Juel pursued the rest of the Swedish force and a fierce engagement ensued, during which the Danish admiral was forced to transfer his flag from the *Christianus V*.

The Dutch presented themselves for the second day of the battle and captured three Swedish ships, but the honor went to the Danish navy for their fine defeat of a numercially superior force.

Three victories
A medal commemorates Öland, Langeland, and Kjöge triumphs. The Swedish flagship is shown as she strikes her flag to the Danish.

THE GREAT NORTHERN WAR

FOUGHT BETWEEN 1700 and 1721, the Great Northern War was a contest between Sweden and a coalition of other countries determined to end Swedish domination of the Baltic region. Russia under Tsar Peter the Great and Denmark-Norway—at that time united under the Danish crown—were Sweden's major opponents at sea. The naval battles, which were contested by a mix of deep-sea sailing fleets and inshore galley fleets, mostly centered on the need for both sides to reinforce and resupply land forces fighting around the shores of the Baltic and North Sea. Through roughly the first decade of the war Sweden had the upper hand, but a series of defeats inflicted both by the Russians and by Denmark-Norway decisively turned the tide in the second half of the conflict. The overall outcome of the war was to establish Russia as a significant European naval and land power at the expense of Sweden.

THE GREAT NORTHERN WAR 1700–1721

Sweden's chief rival was Peter the Great's Russia, which gained a toehold in the Baltic with the founding of the city of St. Petersburg in 1702. By the end of the war a newly confident Russia was well established in the region with significant territorial gains around the Baltic coast. Sweden also lost all its possessions in Germany, mainly to another emergent power, Brandenburg-Prussia.

KEY

- Sweden
- Russia
- Denmark
- Borders 1700
- Russian gains from Sweden by 1721
- Russian victory over Sweden
- Danish victory over Sweden
- Inconclusive action

THE GREAT NORTHERN WAR

GANGUT

Date August 7, 1714
Forces Russians: c.100 galleys; Swedish: 1 pram, 6 galleys, 3 smaller boats
Losses Russians: 1 galley captured; Swedish: all ships lost

Location Hanko Peninsula, Finland

In summer 1714 Russian tsar Peter the Great's army was campaigning in Finland. The Russians wanted to open a line of supply and reinforcement to their land forces by sea, but the presence of the Swedish fleet off southern Finland blocked the passage of their vessels out of the Gulf of Finland.

In July Admiral Fyodor Apraksin led a strong force of galleys packed with soldiers as far as the Hanko Peninsula—known as Gangut to the Russians—where Swedish Vice Admiral Gustav Wattrang was waiting with 15 ships of the line supported by galleys and other smaller vessels. The Russians also had a sailing fleet commanded by the tsar himself, but Peter shifted to a galley, intending to mastermind the outflanking of the Swedish ships. The Russians planned to drag their galleys overland across the peninsula and refloat them behind the Swedish line, thus slipping through to join the army to the northwest. Gaining word of this plan, Wattrang sent Rear Admiral Nils Ehrenskjold with the pram *Elefant*—a shallow-draft ship with heavy guns—and a few galleys and skerries (rowing boats) to attack the Russian galleys as they reached the northern shore of the peninsula.

MAIDEN VICTORY

Unfortunately for Ehrenskjold, the Russians changed their plan. Taking advantage of a dead calm, Apraksin rowed his galleys past the flanks of the line of Swedish sailing ships, which were unable to move or bring guns to bear. Only one Russian galley ran aground and was captured. The swarm of galleys then fell upon Ehrenskjold's isolated squadron. The Swedish admiral arranged his ships across a narrow channel with *Elefant* in the center, broadside on to the enemy, and his galleys on the flanks. In the limited space the Russians could not bring all their galleys into the battle at once and *Elefant*'s guns drove off two attacks. On the third occasion, however, the Russians focused on the flanks, boarding the Swedish galleys with so many men that one was swamped and sank. Isolated and surrounded, *Elefant* was on fire with her admiral wounded. She surrendered as Russians swarmed aboard from all sides.

The Swedish lost 361 men killed on the spot, and about 400 more died of their wounds in Russian captivity. Russian dead and wounded numbered 466. Gangut was the first victory of the Russian Navy and allowed the tsar's fleet to operate freely in support of the land forces in Finland.

Closing in for the kill
Among the islands and narrow straits of the Baltic coast, oared galleys could often get the better of large sailing ships. At Gangut the Russian galleys scored a notable victory, even though it was against a much smaller and isolated Swedish force.

THE GREAT NORTHERN WAR

DYNEKILEN

Date July 8, 1716
Forces Danish-Norwegians: 2 prams, 2 frigates, 3 galleys; Swedish: 1 pram, 4 galleys, 10 other armed boats
Losses Danish-Norwegians: none; Swedish: 1 pram, 3 galleys, 5 other armed boats, 19 transports captured

Location Dynekilen Fjord, western Sweden

King Charles XII of Sweden invaded Norway in 1716, besieging the citadel of Frederikstad. A squadron of Danish-Norwegian ships of the line in the Kattegat was unable to prevent the Swedish ferrying men and supplies from Gothenburg to their army, as transports and their escorts hugged the coast where the water was too shallow for the big sailing ships. Peter Tordenskjöld was sent from Copenhagen with a flotilla of Norwegian-crewed, shallow-draft vessels to break the Swedish supply line. On his way Tordenskjöld learned that a Swedish convoy was sheltering in Dynekilen fjord. He entered the narrow fjord on the morning of July 8 and found the Swedish sheltering under the protection of the 12-pounder guns of an island fort. Tordenskjöld's flotilla anchored and opened fire at around 7.30 a.m. After a lengthy exchange the fort was captured in the early afternoon. The Swedish pram *Stenbock* surrendered and the crews of her accompanying galleys fled. As Tordenskjöld secured his prizes he came under heavy fire from Swedish land forces. He made his escape late in the evening and anchored next day off Frederikstad. Sweden soon abandoned the siege and the invasion.

1691–1720

PETER TORDENSKJÖLD

DANISH NAVAL COMMANDER

Born Peter Wessel in Trondheim, Norway, Tordenskjold ran away to sea as a boy and was a merchant seaman and privateer before becoming an officer in the Danish navy in 1711. He attracted the favour of Danish King Frederick IV through the boldness of his attacks on Swedish shipping, although his unorthodox style alienated his conservative naval superiors. He was ennobled with the title Tordenskjöld ("thundershield") shortly before his great victory at Dynekilen in 1716. His capture of the Swedish fortress at Marstrand in 1718 was another notable feat. He was killed in a duel with a Livonian colonel he had accused of cheating at cards.

THE GREAT NORTHERN WAR

GRENGAM

Date August 7, 1720
Forces Swedish: 2 ships of the line, 6 frigates, 10 other vessels; Russians: 61 galleys, 25 other vessels
Losses Swedish: 4 frigates captured; Russians: 43 galleys

Location Åland Islands, Baltic Sea

The newly built Russian deep-sea sailing fleet recorded its first victory at Ezel on May 24, 1719, when it captured three Swedish warships. The galley fleet, however, continued to play a leading role in Russia's Baltic war.

In summer 1720 General Mikhail Golitsyn was commanding a large force of galleys in operations around the Åland Islands. Admiral Karl Wachtmeister, the Swedish commander-in-chief, sent a squadron under Erik Sjoblad to the islands with orders to cover the withdrawal of Swedish ships from the area. However, Sjobald chose instead to attack Golitsyn's galleys near Grengam Island. Confronted by Swedish ships of the line and frigates, the galleys hastily withdrew toward the shallow waters of Flisesund. There they formed up in line abreast and turned to face their pursuers. The Swedish cannon inflicted heavy damage on the Russian galley fleet but, maneuvering in the treacherous sound, two of the Swedish frigates soon ran aground. Russian galleys swarmed around the grounded ships and boarded them. Two other Swedish frigates were also chased and captured as the Russians took the offensive. Sjoblad's flagship, the 52-gun *Pommern*, had a narrow escape, saved only by the outstanding seamanship of its crew.

More than two-thirds of the Russian galleys were so badly damaged they had to be scuttled, leading Sweden to claim victory in the battle. However, there was no question that the Swedish had been put to flight, leaving Golitsyn in possession of the four frigates as prizes. The balance of casualties was also in Russia's favor, with the Swedish losing 103 men killed and 407 captured, compared with the Russians' 82 killed and 236 wounded.

Triumphal medallion
The capture of the Swedish frigates is commemorated on this wooden medallion from the workshops of Peter the Great.

Moment of victory
The battle of Grengam ended with the Swedish sailing ships overwhelmed by the sheer numbers of Russian galleys.

THE RUSSO-SWEDISH WAR

KING GUSTAV III OF SWEDEN was an unpopular ruler who hoped to drum up support for his rule by success in war. Seeking to profit from the involvement of Russia's empress Catherine II in a conflict with Ottoman Turkey in the Black Sea, he pre-emptorily demanded that Russia hand over Finland. When the Russians refused, in June 1788 he faked a Russian attack on Sweden and declared a war of self-defense. As usual in the Baltic the conflict that ensued was fought both by coastal fleets, including galleys, and by deep-sea sailing ships. Foreign naval officers, especially British, played a prominent role in the conflict. Gustav hoped to seize St. Petersburg, the Russian capital, in a swift campaign, but a setback for his ships of the line at Hogland dashed hopes of a quick victory. Despite a success at Svensksund in 1798, Sweden mostly had the worse of the war and narrowly escaped total disaster at Vyborg Bay in July 1790. Yet a stunning victory at Second Svensksund unexpectedly restored Swedish fortunes, allowing them to negotiate a peace without gains on either side. King Gustav was assassinated two years later.

THE RUSSO-SWEDISH WAR

HOGLAND

Date July 17, 1788
Forces Russians: 17 ships of the line; Swedish: 15 ships of the line
Losses Russians: 1 ship captured; Swedish: 1 ship captured

Location Off Hogland Island, Gulf of Finland

Early in the war a Swedish sailing fleet commanded by King Gustav III's brother, Prince Karl, entered the Gulf of Finland. The Russians hastily sent out their own ships of the line from Kronstadt, commanded by Scottish-born admiral Samuel Greig. The two fleets met off Hogland Island on a day of light winds that made maneuver painfully slow. The Russians were superior in firepower. Fighting in traditional line of battle, the two sides inflicted considerable losses on one another to little decisive effect. The 70-gun *Prince Gustav*, flagship of Swedish vice admiral Gustav Wachtmeister, was so battered that it surrendered to Greig's 100-gun *Rostislav*. The Russian 74-gun *Vladislav* was surrounded by Swedish ships and taken. After six hours night fell and the battle ended. Russian casualties were heavier—1,800 against the Swedes' 1,200—but the Swedish force withdrew, allowing Russia to claim a strategic victory.

THE RUSSO-SWEDISH WAR

FIRST BATTLE OF SVENSKSUND

Date August 24, 1789
Forces Russians: 86 ships; Swedish: 49 ships
Losses Russians: 2 ships; Swedish: 8 ships

Location Svensksund, Gulf of Finland

Admiral Carl August Ehrensvärd, commanding a Swedish squadron of small sailing ships, gunboats, and galleys, was trapped in Svensksund harbor by two squadrons of Russian coastal vessels. Prince Charles of Nassau-Siegen, in overall command of the Russian forces, attacked from the north with 66 vessels, while a much smaller squadron attacked from the south. Ehrensvärd blocked the northern entrances to the harbor with sunken ships and, posting a few gunboats to cover them, concentrated his forces against the Russian southern squadron. The Russians failed to coordinate their movements, the northern squadron starting far too late, so Ehrensvärd was able to rout the southern squadron before turning to engage Nassau-Siegen. But the Swedes ran low on ammunition and had to retreat under hot pursuit, losing a number of ships in the process. The way was open for the Russian fleet to support land operations in Finland.

THE BREAKOUT FROM VYBORG BAY

Swedish king Gustav III began the third year of his war with Russia boldly, with a bid to land troops on the Russian coast at Vyborg and to establish naval dominance of the Baltic. However, a Swedish attack on part of the Russian fleet in its anchorage at Reval in May misfired, and, in a further action in early June, the Swedes failed to prevent the junction of the main Russian fleet from Kronstadt with the Reval squadron. As a result, the Swedish battle fleet under Grand-Admiral Prince Karl was bottled up in Vyborg Bay with the galley flotilla and troop transports commanded by King Gustav—around 400 ships and 30,000 men under naval siege.

Dangerously short of food and water, and fearing a Russian attack, the Swedish forces needed to break out of the bay. Both feasible channels through the shallow seas were blocked by Russian ships anchored broadside-on with mortar vessels in support. The Swedes decided to break out through the western channel by Krysserort after a feint toward Björkö in the east. It was not until early July that the wind shifted to the east and the attempt could be made.

On the morning of July 3 the ship of the line *Dristigheten*, commanded by Colonel Johan af Puke, led the Swedish battle fleet toward the line of Russian blockade ships, accompanied by the flotilla of coastal galleys inshore to the west. Braving the Russian broadsides, Puke sailed through the blockade between the ships of the line *Selsav* and *St. Peter*, raking them with his cannon as he passed. Overwhelmed by the number of ships bearing down upon them, the Russian blockade vessels were badly shot up as the Swedish ships of the line and oared gunboats came through. The shallowness of the waters was the worst hazard, one ship of the line and four galleys soon running aground. Around 10:00 a.m. the Swedes suffered a spectacular mishap. The rearmost ship of the line, *Enigheten*, was towing a fireship, *Postiljonen*. This was ignited at the wrong moment and collided with *Enigheten*'s stern. The two ships ablaze ran into a third, the frigate *Zamine*, and the whole tangled mass was destroyed in a massive explosion. As smoke blocked visibility, several more Swedish

THE RUSSO-SWEDISH WAR

BREAKOUT FROM VYBORG BAY

Date	July 3, 1790
Location	Near St. Petersburg, Russia
Result	Swedish victory

COMBATANTS

RUSSIA	SWEDEN

COMMANDERS

Vasili Chichagov	King Gustav III Prince Karl, Duke of Sodermanland

FORCES

Ships: 50 sailing ships 80 galleys	**Ships:** 400, including 21 ships of the line

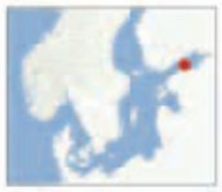
LOSSES

Men: unknown **Ships:** none	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** 6 ships of the line, 3 frigates, 4 galleys

Russian medal
This medal was awarded to the seamen and marines who fought for Russia at Vyborg Bay. Galleys and ships of the line are depicted engaging the Swedes.

THE RUSSO-SWEDISH WAR

SECOND BATTLE OF SVENSKSUND

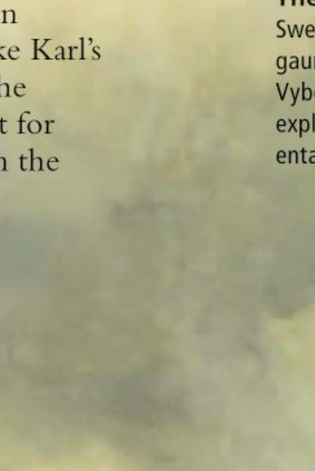


Location Svensksund, Gulf of Finland

Date July 9–10, 1790
Forces Swedish: 6 sailing ships, 18 galleys, 172 other vessels; Russians: 30 sailing ships, 23 galleys, 88 other vessels
Losses Swedish: 1 sailing ship, 4 smaller ships; Russians: 10 sailing ships, 16 galleys, 17 other vessels

The Second battle of Svensksund was an immediate sequel to the battle of Vyborg Bay. The Russians under Prince Charles of Nassau-Siegen pursued the Swedish galley flotilla, commanded by King Gustav, to Svensksund. There the king's force was joined by a squadron under Colonel Carl Cronstedt and anchored in a strong defensive position. They spread out in a crescent formation blocking the entrance to Svensksund Harbor, with their gunboats on the wings and their sailing ships and galleys in the center.

Nassau-Siegen prepared to attack on July 9 and went ahead with his plan on the day, despite the fact that a fresh wind and choppy sea created conditions that were far from ideal for galley warfare. He arranged his ships in four squadrons, one on each flank and two in the center. The battle was hard fought but soon turned in Sweden's favor. On both flanks the Russians were met with determined fire from the Swedish gunboats, supported by shore batteries, and were gradually pushed back. By the afternoon the Swedes, first on the left and then also on the right, had achieved a position from which to turn inward and rake the Russian galleys and sailing ships in the center from both sides. The galleys were soon in desperate trouble, taking damage and being swamped by waves. As rowers left their benches to man the pumps, some vessels drifted aground or sank. Around 7:00 p.m. Nassau-Siegen ordered a withdrawal. Many of his sailing ships could not get away and were boarded—either taken as prizes or burned. Night ended the day's combat, but fighting resumed the following morning, this time with the Swedes on the attack and the Russians striving to escape. Several more Russian ships were lost in the confused flight. Although exact figures for losses sustained in the battle are hard to establish, the Swedes had inflicted a major defeat on a superior enemy. Unable to crush Sweden, Russia accepted the need to make peace the following month.



Swedish naval reward medal
Inscribed to King Gustav III, this medal depicts Victory standing on a two-masted galley with a wreath in each hand.

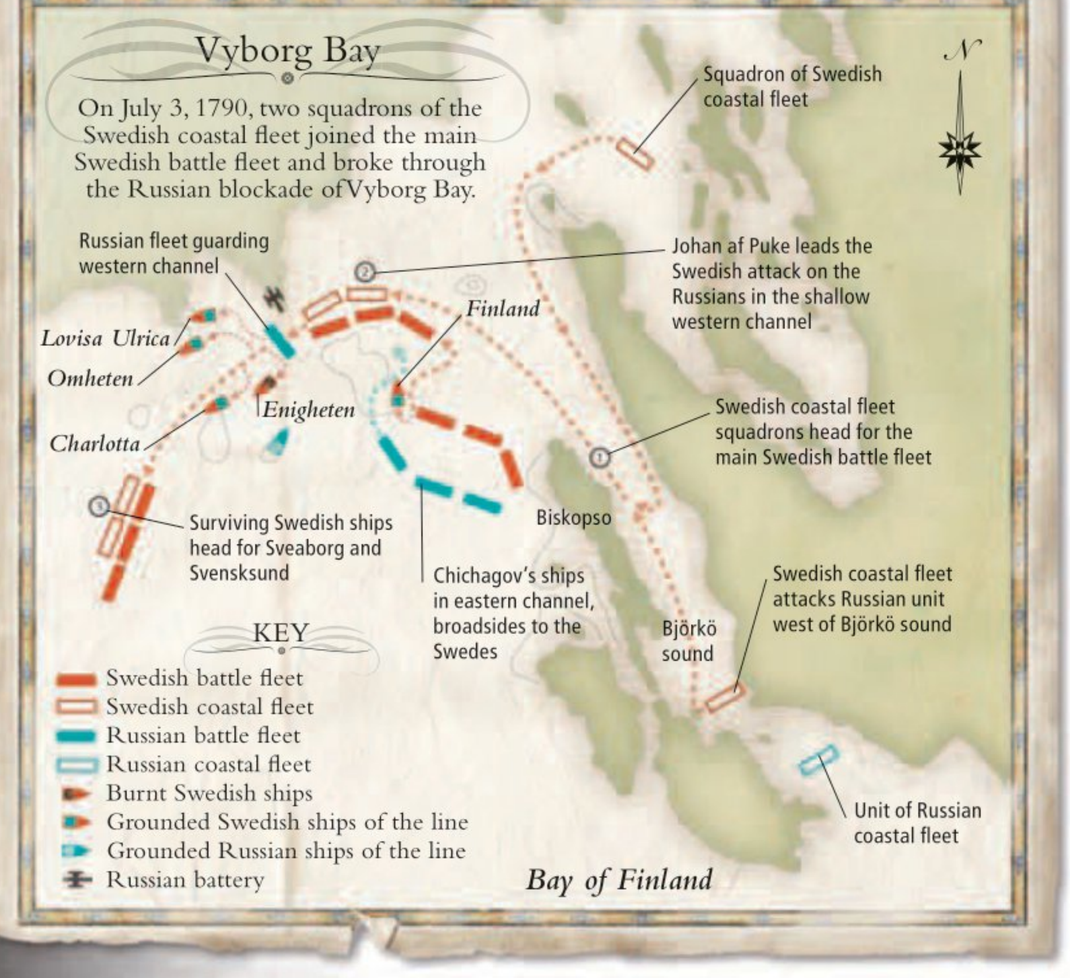
Russian ships of the line
Prince Charles of Nassau-Siegen arrives with the Russian fleet to face the Swedish force anchored at Svensksund Harbor.

ships ran aground, King Gustav's British naval adviser Sidney Smith needing to be rescued from one of them.

Despite these losses, both the Swedish battle fleet and galley flotilla broke out into the Baltic; the former sailed for Sveaborg in Finland for repairs; the latter took shelter at Svensksund, where it anchored in a strong defensive position. Russian admiral Chichagov mounted a tentative and tardy pursuit of the battle fleet, succeeding in capturing *Retvisan*, one of Duke Karl's ships of the line. Within days the Swedish galleys were the target for a determined Russian attack in the Second Battle of Svensksund.

> CAPTAIN DENISON ... HAD HIS HEAD SHOT OFF BY A CANNONBALL ... CAPTAIN AIKEN HAD HIS THIGH-BONE SHATTERED SO AS TO RENDER AMPUTATION NECESSARY ...
>
> **WILLIAM TOOKE**, HISTORIAN, WRITING IN 1798 OF BRITISH OFFICERS IN RUSSIAN SERVICE AT VYBORG BAY

The gauntlet of Vyborg Bay
Swedish oared gunboats run the gauntlet of Russian ships blockading Vyborg Bay. The Swedish ship *Enigheten* explodes as she accidentally becomes entangled with a Swedish fireship.



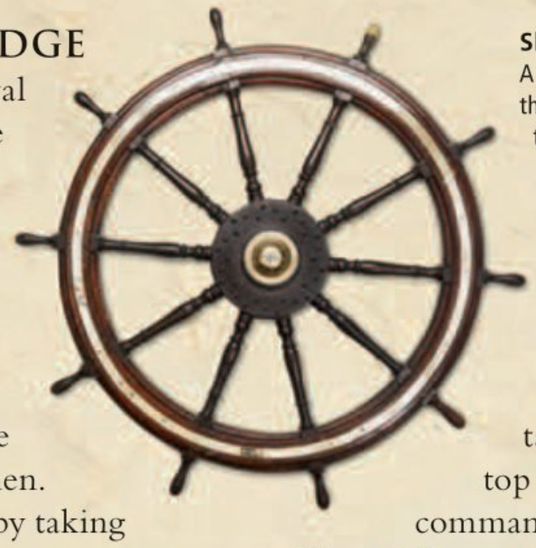
MAINTAINING BRITISH NAVAL POWER

Capture of Porto Bello
A typical exploit of the Royal Navy that caught the imagination of the British public was the capture of Porto Bello on the Isthmus of Panama. Vice Admiral Vernon had claimed in the House of Commons that he could take the Spanish port with just six ships of the line. A few months later in November 1739 he duly made good his boast.

BY THE START of the 18th century, Britain had established itself as the world's dominant naval power. But maintaining this status was at times a close-run thing. France and Spain pushed Britain hard, especially when they fought together. The French in particular had the potential to challenge British naval supremacy, although they were usually distracted by land wars in Europe. The responsibilities the Royal Navy had to shoulder in war—defense of overseas colonies, protection of merchant shipping, prevention of an invasion of the British Isles—meant resources were thinly spread. The British rarely fought battles with any great numerical advantage, but in the last resort no one could match them for bold aggressive leadership allied to seamanship of a high order.

PRACTICAL KNOWLEDGE

The administration of the Royal Navy was efficient for the time but the system of recruitment was far from ideal. The use of press-gangs to transfer seamen from merchant ships in time of war was clumsy and haphazard compared with the French system of "classes"—the conscription of registered seamen. The training of British officers by taking young boys on board as midshipmen meant their formal education was minimal, whereas the French developed a body of well-educated naval officers with a scientific knowledge of navigation and gunnery. Yet the British officers' practical knowledge of the sea was incomparable.



Ship's steering wheel
A major innovation of the late 17th century was the ship's wheel, which allowed the helmsman to stand on the quarterdeck and control the tiller via a system of ropes and pulleys.

Although promotion in the Royal Navy was governed by a mix of personal patronage and strict seniority, men of talent were able to rise to the top by merit—outstanding commanders such as Edward Hawke, Edward Boscawen, and George Rodney.

MAJOR WARS

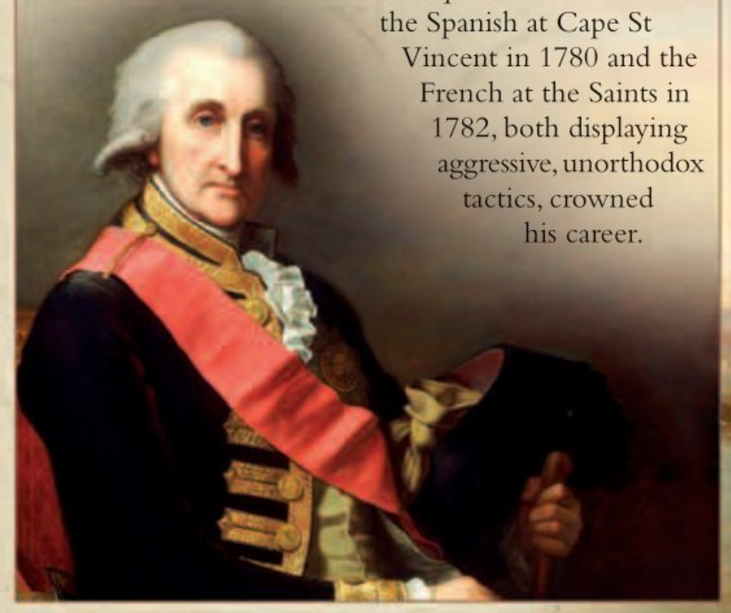
Between the death of French King Louis XIV in 1715 and the outbreak of the French Revolution in 1789, Britain and France fought

1719–1792

GEORGE RODNEY

BRITISH ADMIRAL

The son of a marine officer, George Rodney joined the navy aged 13 and saw action as a captain under Admiral Hawke at Cape Finisterre in 1747. Rodney distinguished himself during the Seven Years War, especially in the capture of Martinique in 1762. Despite being made Rear Admiral of Great Britain, in the subsequent peace he fell heavily into debt and fled to France to escape his creditors. He was able to return to fight in the American Revolutionary War only because a French aristocrat settled his debts. Although aging and ill, he was appointed to command the West Indies squadron. Victories over the Spanish at Cape St Vincent in 1780 and the French at the Saints in 1782, both displaying aggressive, unorthodox tactics, crowned his career.



Opening exchange of broadsides
The battle of Negapatam (1782) was one of five actions fought by the French and British East Indies squadrons during the American Revolutionary War. The British line, commanded by Sir Edward Hughes, is on the left.

on opposite sides in three major wars: the War of the Austrian Succession (1740–48), the Seven Years War (1756–63), and the American Revolutionary War (1775–83). After a shaky start, Britain's navy was clearly superior in the first of these. The Seven Years War was a hard-fought but overwhelming triumph of British naval power, allowing a major expansion of Britain's colonial empire. But the French navy achieved a remarkable recovery in the 1760s under the direction of Louis XV's chief minister the Duc de Choiseul, with a shipbuilding program funded by the French public inspired by patriotic enthusiasm. During the American Revolutionary War, facing a coalition of European powers supporting the rebellious American colonists, Britain suffered a crucial naval defeat at the hands of the French at Chesapeake Bay in 1781, although Rodney's victory at the Saints the following year redeemed the Royal Navy's reputation.

TECHNOLOGY AND TACTICS

During the 18th century two-deck 74-gun or 80-gun warships became established as the key ships of the line alongside 100-gun three-deckers. The French introduced a new breed of sleek frigate that became crucial to naval warfare, both as scouts and raiders. Cannon became more reliable, with a range of different shot, and experiments were made with replacing linstocks by flintlocks. The introduction of carronades by the Royal Navy in the 1770s—a lightweight upper deck gun potent at short range—increased the deadliness of close combat, as did improved muskets. The tactics employed in naval battles remained broadly unchanged, with broadsides forced by ships sailing in line, but some British commanders chafed at the formality of established rules and introduced the "general pursuit," allowing captains, when appropriate, to chase and engage the enemy in a free-for-all. Rodney's breaking of the French line at the Saints pointed forward to the Nelson era.

MAN-OF-WAR TACTICS

THE WEATHER GAGE

GUNNERY AND WIND DIRECTION

The British preferred to hold the weather gage in battle—that is, to fight from the windward side of the enemy. When they prevented the Spanish Armada from closing to board in 1588, they used the weather gage defensively, but it was above all an attacking position. While the French held a defensive line to leeward, the British would approach aggressively with the wind to engage them. During the approach they were exposed to French fire without being able to respond. On the other hand, the windward position meant smoke from cannon fire blew toward the enemy, giving the windward fleet better visibility. Lying to windward also favoured the British tactic of firing into the enemy's hull.

ROYAL NAVY BATTLES

AT THE END of the War of the Spanish Succession in 1713 Britain was indisputably Europe's dominant naval power. In a brief war with Spain from 1718 to 1720, it crushed the Spanish navy almost effortlessly. British merchants urged their government to use sea power aggressively to advance the nation's trade. The severing of the ear of Captain Robert Jenkins, master of the trading brig *Rebecca*, by Spanish coast guards in the Caribbean in 1731 provided ammunition for those arguing for action against Spain's empire in the Americas. The War of Jenkins' Ear, launched by Britain on a tide of jingoistic enthusiasm in 1739, began well with the capture of Porto Bello, but soon ran into disaster in the failed expedition against Cartagena de Indias. This ignominious defeat severely dented British prestige. The war of the Austrian Succession (1740–48) brought Britain once more into conflict with its old enemy France, as well as with Spain. The French navy was in no condition to challenge British supremacy, and the British found themselves fighting, with varying degrees of competence, engagements in which they held a clear superiority.

WAR OF THE QUADRUPLE ALLIANCE

CAPE PASSARO

Date August 11, 1718
Forces British: 21 ships of the line; Spanish: 18 ships of the line
Losses British: none; Spanish: 11 ships of the line captured or burned

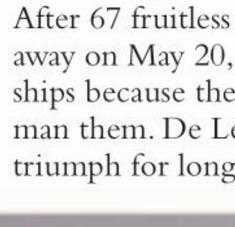
Location Cape Passaro, southeast Sicily

In 1718 Britain sent a fleet to the Mediterranean under Admiral Sir George Byng to oppose Spanish ambitions in Sicily. Although Britain and Spain were not officially at war, Byng pursued a Spanish squadron under Vice Admiral Don Antonio Castaneta down the east coast of Sicily. At daybreak on August 11 battle was joined. Byng's 90-gun *Barfleur* and the other largest British ships overcame one Spanish division, including Castaneta's flagship *Real San Felipe*, while Captain George Walton led the chase of another, laconically reporting: "We have taken or destroyed all the Spanish ships which were upon this coast the number as per margin."

The British Mediterranean squadron
British ships of the line under Admiral Byng stop at Naples en route to Sicily. They engaged the Spanish near Cape Passaro, south of Messina.

WAR OF JENKINS' EAR

PORTO BELLO



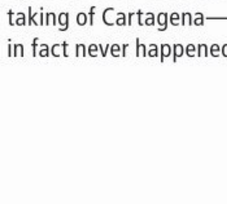
Date November 21–22, 1739
Forces British: 6 ships of the line
Losses none

Location Porto Bello, Panama

The desire of British merchants wanting access to the markets of the Spanish Empire in the Americas reached fever pitch in 1738 when Captain Jenkins exhibited his ear, severed by Spanish coast guards, to the House of Commons. Naval officer and Member of Parliament Edward Vernon boasted that he could take Porto Bello, a Caribbean port used for the export of silver, "with six ships only." Succumbing to the pressure for war, in 1739 the British government made Vernon a vice admiral with orders to do just that. Vernon appeared off Porto Bello on November 20 with seven ships, one of which he sent away so he could fulfil his promise. The following day, with his flag on board the 64-gun *Hampton Court*, he led his ships in line into Porto Bello. The assortment of coast-guard vessels and warships present could offer no resistance to the British squadron, but the fort of San Felipe, with some 100 guns manned by 300 soldiers, had to be overcome. A failing wind for a time left *Hampton Court* immobilized and alone under the fort's guns, although her broadsides were easily a match for the shore batteries. When the other ships came up the balance of firepower swung heavily against the fort, which surrendered after the landing of marines. Thomas Arne composed "Rule Britannia" for the celebrations and areas of London, Dublin, and Edinburgh were named Portobello.

WAR OF JENKINS' EAR

CARTAGENA



Date March 14–May 20, 1741
Forces British: 29 ships of the line, c.150 other vessels; Spanish: 6 ships of the line
Losses British: 50 ships of all kinds; Spanish: 6 ships of the line

Location Cartagena de Indias, Colombia

The success at Porto Bello in 1739 inspired the British to prey further upon Spain's colonial possessions. A massive force, requiring a quarter of the entire strength of the Royal Navy, was sent to the Caribbean the following year. The death of the expedition's overall commander, Lord Cathcart, en route left the naval force under Vice Admiral Edward Vernon, victor of Porto Bello, and the troops under Major-General Thomas Wentworth, with no one to arbitrate if they disagreed.

Victory medal
The Vernon medal was struck by the British to celebrate the taking of Cartagena—which in fact never happened.

Britain's target was Cartagena de Indias, the major port in Spanish-ruled New Grenada. Leading its defense was Admiral Bas de Lezo, one of Spain's most gallant naval commanders, who had lost a leg, an arm, and an eye in a distinguished fighting career. He had only six ships of the line to face the British armada, but had no intention of giving in. The British arrived off the city in mid-March and settled down to a bombardment of its walls. The entrance to the harbor was defended by shore batteries and the guns of de Lezo's six ships anchored inside. On April 15, the British attempted a sea and land assault on these defenses. After a sharp fight de Lezo scuttled his ships to keep them out of British hands and fell back on the port's inner fort. As time passed and tempers frayed, cooperation between Vernon and Wentworth broke down. Land assaults proved to be costly failures, while Vernon's ships bombarding the walls came under damaging fire from shore guns. Caribbean epidemic diseases raged, decimating naval crews and troops. After 67 fruitless days the British sailed away on May 20, burning some of their ships because they had no crews left to man them. De Lezo did not enjoy his triumph for long, dying of a wound sustained in the siege. The British government was embarrassed by this ignominious defeat because the operation had been prematurely hailed as a triumph and victory medals struck.

Spanish fortifications
The fort of Cartagena, where the British attack of 1741 was repulsed. As a result, Spain retained control of its highly lucrative colony.

WAR OF THE AUSTRIAN SUCCESSION

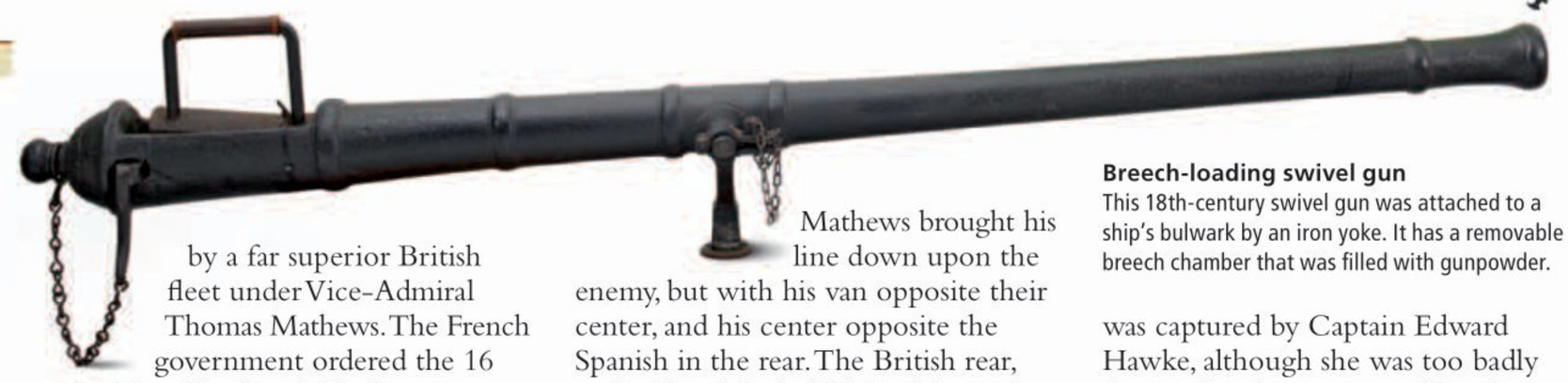
TOULON

Date February 22–23, 1744
Forces British: 30 ships of the line; French and Spanish: 28 ships of the line
Losses British: none; Spanish: 1 ship of the line burned

Location Off Cape Sicié, southern France

In February 1744 Britain was at war with Spain and Spain was an ally of France, but France was not at war with Britain. This complicated background prepared the way for a confused and unsatisfactory naval encounter. Twelve Spanish ships of the line commanded by Admiral Don José Navarro were trapped in the French port of Toulon by a far superior British fleet under Vice-Admiral Thomas Mathews. The French government ordered the 16 ships of its fleet in Toulon to escort the Spanish out of harbor, but not to seek a fight with the British. The French admiral entrusted with carrying out these difficult instructions was 78-year-old Admiral de Court la Bruyère.

The Allied fleet sailed out of Toulon with French ships making up the van and most of the center and the Spanish in the rear. Holding the weather gage, Mathews brought his line down upon the enemy, but with his van opposite their center, and his center opposite the Spanish in the rear. The British rear, under Vice Admiral Richard Lestock, totally failed to engage the enemy. The choleric Mathews, feeling his ships were holding off, took his flagship *Namur* out of the line to engage the Spanish more closely, but few of his captains followed his example. There was much damaging fire exchanged between *Namur* and Admiral Navarro's *Real Felipe*. One Spanish ship, *Poder*, was captured by Captain Edward Hawke, although she was too badly shattered to be a manageable prize and was later abandoned for the Spanish to scuttle. The battle ended inconclusively with an impression on both sides that it had been conducted incompetently. A score of British officers faced court-martials, including Mathews and Lestock. Remarkably, Lestock was acquitted on a technicality while Mathews was dismissed from service.



Breech-loading swivel gun
This 18th-century swivel gun was attached to a ship's bulwark by an iron yoke. It has a removable breech chamber that was filled with gunpowder.

THE BATTLE OF CAPE FINISTERRE

WAR OF THE AUSTRIAN SUCCESSION

BATTLE OF CAPE FINISTERRE

Date	May 23, 1747
Location	Off Cape Finisterre, Bay of Biscay
Result	British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	SPAIN

COMMANDERS

George Anson	Jacques-Pierre de la Jonquière

FORCES

Ships: 14 ships of the line, 1 frigate	**Ships:** 5 ships of the line, 2 frigates, 7 others

LOSSES

Men: 520 casualties **Ships:** c.50	**Men:** c.800 casualties **Ships:** 4 ships of the line, 2 frigates, 13 others captured

Recently appointed governor-general of French Canada, Admiral Jacques-Pierre de la Jonquière set sail from France with 24 transport ships and an escort of three ships of the line and two frigates. He was joined by a convoy sent out by the French East India Company with two ships of the line and a number of armed merchantmen. A strong British squadron commanded by Vice Admiral George Anson, sent out to intercept French shipping in the Bay of Biscay, spotted the French ships off northern Spain. De la Jonquière formed all his warships and some of the armed merchantmen into a line of battle, hoping to hold the British off for long enough to allow the slow-moving transports to escape. On his flagship *Prince George* Anson also signaled his ships to form a line, but, at the urging of Rear Admiral Sir Peter Warren, changed the order to a general chase.

> "I CAN WITHOUT VANITY SAY THAT OUR SHIPS WERE BETTER DISCIPLINED AND MADE A MUCH HOTTER FIRE ON THEM."
>
> **ADMIRAL GEORGE ANSON**, IN A LETTER TO THOMAS NEWCASTLE, SECRETARY OF STATE, 1747

The British thus came down upon the outnumbered French led by the 50-gun *Centurion*, which engaged the French rear while other ships came up.

Although hopelessly outgunned, the French fought valiantly in a battle that lasted five hours. La Jonquière's flagship *Sérieux* had every officer wounded. The 40-gun *Gloire* held out for three hours, until her captain was dead and most of her crew injured, before surrendering. But the weight of British broadsides battered the French into submission before nightfall. Through their brave resistance most of the transport ships escaped, only six being taken. The East Indiamen yielded £300,000 in booty for the victors.

A second, broadly similar, battle of Cape Finisterre was fought later in the same year. On October 25 a British squadron of 14 ships of the line under Admiral Edward Hawke intercepted a French convoy bound for the Caribbean with an escort of eight ships of the line under the Marquis Desherbiers de l'Etanduère. Again the British admiral ordered a general chase; once more the French fought against overwhelming odds; and again the convoy was saved at the expense of its escorts. Six French ships of the line were taken.

Overwhelming odds
British and French ships engage off Cape Finisterre. Lord Anson's flagship *Prince George* opens fire in the center.

SEVEN YEARS WAR

THE SEVEN YEARS WAR of 1756 to 1763 has been described as the first true "world war" because it was contested on three continents. The British fought colonial campaigns against the French in North America, the West Indies, and India, while a major land war took place in Europe. Britain's Royal Navy began the conflict in some disarray and suffered an initial setback at the battle of Minorca on May 20, 1756. With Admiral George Anson installed as First Lord of the Admiralty in 1757, however, British naval fortunes soon revived. A close blockade of French ports executed by superb admirals such as Edward Hawke and George Boscawen inhibited France from defending its colonies. British naval victories at Lagos Bay and Quiberon Bay in 1759 scotched French plans for an invasion of Britain and put the Royal Navy in such a dominant position that it was in no way disturbed by the entry of Spain into the war alongside France in 1761. The peace that was reached in 1763 left Britain as clearly Europe's leading colonial and commercial power, with the French effectively driven out of North America and India.

SEVEN YEARS WAR

MINORCA

Date May 20, 1756
Forces British: 13 ships of the line; French: 12 ships of the line
Losses none

Location Off Minorca, Balearic Islands

Minorca, a British possession from 1708, had a splendid harbor that was considered a key asset for the British navy in the Mediterranean. In spring 1756 French troops landed on the island, quickly overrunning all but Fort St. Philip in Port Mahon. The landings were covered by a French squadron under the Marquis de la Galissonière. Admiral John Byng sailed from Gibraltar with orders to relieve the fort. His squadron of 11 ships was numerically comparable to that of la Galissonière, but many of his ships were in poor repair and undermanned.

Execution of Admiral Byng
Admiral Byng is executed by firing squad aboard HMS *Monarch* in the Solent on March 14, 1757. He had been accused of "failing to do his utmost."

The opposing squadrons sighted one another on May 19. The French admiral aimed only to prevent the British interfering with the land operations, and thus adopted a purely defensive stance. Byng sought to attack and on May 20, having gained the weather gage, came down upon the French line. The British approached at an angle, a tactic known as "lasking," designed to reduce the time during which the attacking line was exposed to enemy fire it could not return. But the approach went disastrously wrong. While the five ships of Byng's van engaged the enemy closely, the rest of his line fell behind, its progress hampered by a ship dismasted by French fire. Byng, on board *Ramillies*, lacked the flexibility to revise his plan on the spot. The French came close to surrounding the isolated ships in the British van, but mindful of his defensive responsibilities la Galissonière exploited the British confusion to withdraw from contact. Demoralized, with heavy casualties and half his ships badly damaged, Byng headed for Gibraltar to refit. Fort St. Philip fell to the French and the need for a scapegoat led to the court-martial and execution of the hapless Byng the following year. His death prompted Voltaire's famous remark; "In this country, it is wise to kill an admiral from time to time to encourage the others."

Embarking for Minorca
French ships embark for Minorca in May 1756. When they arrived, the French took all the British bases except for Fort St. Philip in Port Mahon.

SEVEN YEARS WAR

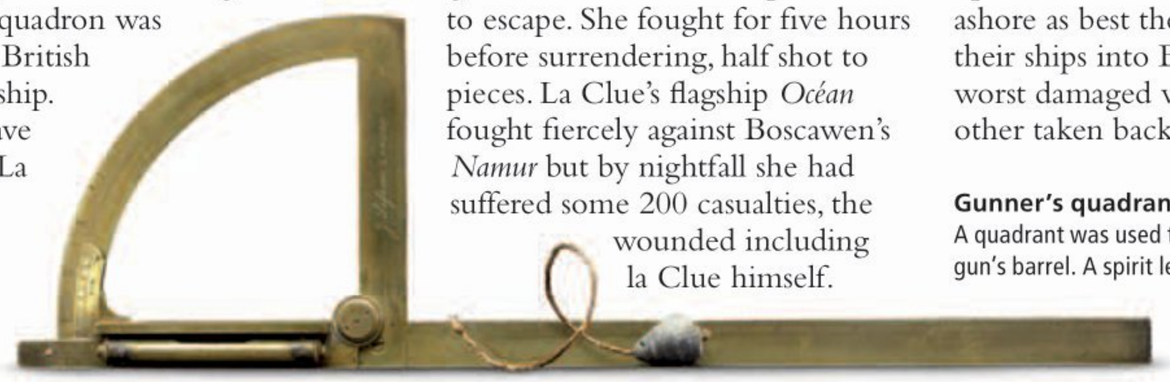
LAGOS BAY

Date August 18–19, 1759
Forces British: 14 ships of the line; French: 7 ships of the line
Losses British: none; French: 3 ships of the line destroyed, 2 ships of the line captured

Location Off the Algarve, Portugal

In the summer of 1759 France was preparing for an invasion of Britain. Admiral Jean-François de la Clue-Sabran was ordered to bring the French Mediterranean fleet from Toulon to join the Atlantic fleet at Brest. The combined force would then escort troops to landing places in Scotland and England. A British squadron under Admiral Edward Boscawen was maintaining a blockade of Toulon, but in late July Boscawen was forced to sail to Gibraltar to refit damaged ships and take on supplies. La Clue seized the opportunity to set sail with 12 ships of the line on August 5.

Reaching Gibraltar on August 17, the French squadron was spotted by a British observation ship. Boscawen gave chase while La Clue raced through the night into the Atlantic. Daybreak revealed that the French squadron had become divided, only seven ships remaining with their admiral while the others made for Cadiz. Boscawen had ordered a general pursuit and his ships engaged the enemy as they came up. The 74-gun *Centaure*, in the French rear, attempted to hold off the pursuit and give the other French ships a chance to escape. She fought for five hours before surrendering, half shot to pieces. La Clue's flagship *Océan* fought fiercely against Boscawen's *Namur* but by nightfall she had suffered some 200 casualties, the wounded including la Clue himself. During the night two French ships escaped, dawn revealing the remainder at Boscawen's mercy. La Clue sailed the remnant of his squadron into a bay to the west of Lagos in neutral Portugal, hoping that a shore battery might scare the British off. But Boscawen followed the French into the bay regardless and opened fire. The French crews got ashore as best they could, abandoning their ships into British hands. The three worst damaged were set ablaze and the other taken back to Gibraltar as a prize.



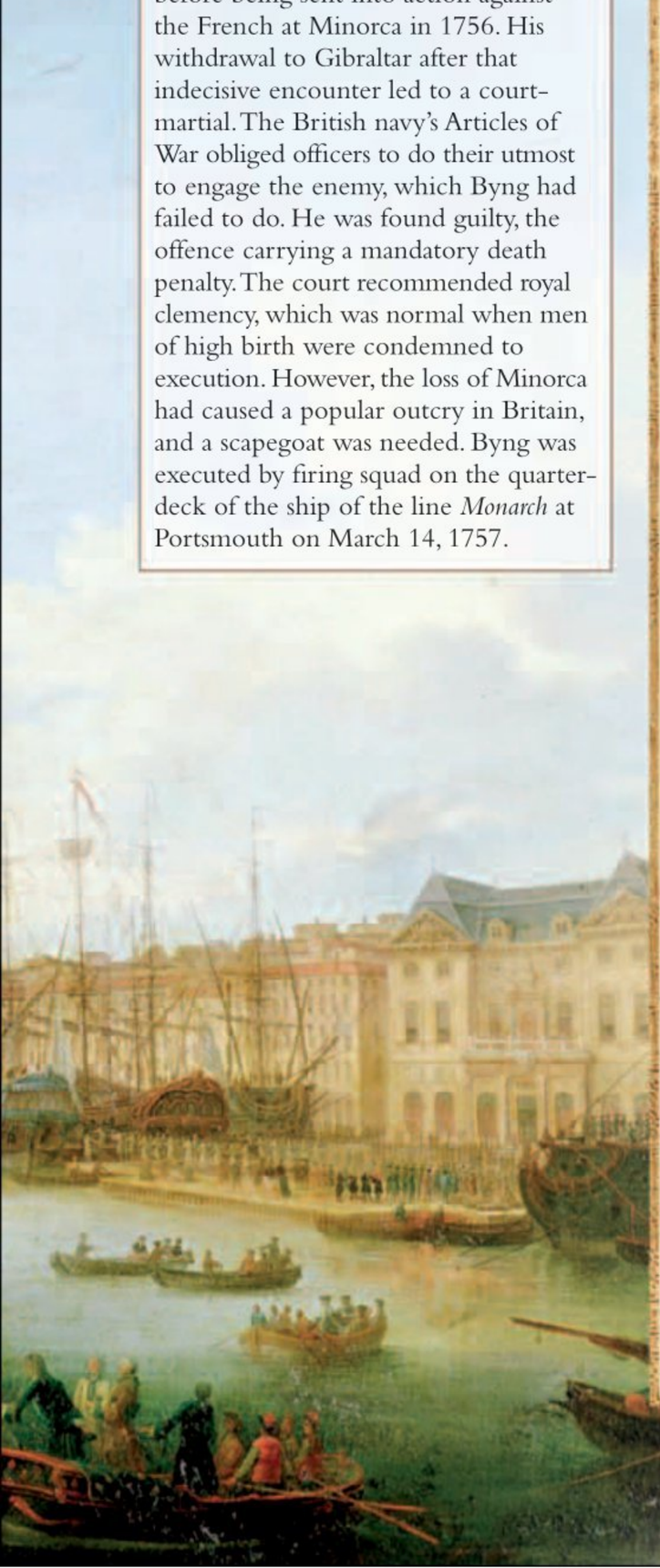
Gunner's quadrant
A quadrant was used to determine the elevation of a gun's barrel. A spirit level attached to the pivot arm marked the horizontal, while a plumb-bob measured the required angle.

1704–1759

JOHN BYNG

BRITISH ADMIRAL

John Byng was the son of a distinguished admiral, Viscount Torrington. He made comfortable peacetime progress in a naval career, progressing from lieutenant at age 19 to rear admiral in his 40s. Byng had never held command in battle before being sent into action against the French at Minorca in 1756. His withdrawal to Gibraltar after that indecisive encounter led to a court-martial. The British navy's Articles of War obliged officers to do their utmost to engage the enemy, which Byng had failed to do. He was found guilty, the offence carrying a mandatory death penalty. The court recommended royal clemency, which was normal when men of high birth were condemned to execution. However, the loss of Minorca had caused a popular outcry in Britain, and a scapegoat was needed. Byng was executed by firing squad on the quarter-deck of the ship of the line *Monarch* at Portsmouth on March 14, 1757.



CREW PROFILE

SHIP OF THE LINE

1700–1800

THE MAJORITY OF THE CREW of an 18th-century Royal Navy ship of the line were ordinary seamen and able seamen, the latter being trained up to skilled tasks such as working aloft or steering the ship. Sailors usually first went to sea as boys—it was believed that a grown man could never learn to work high above the deck without dying in the attempt. In peacetime naval vessels were manned largely by volunteers, but in wartime sailors had to be pressed into naval service from merchant vessels or other maritime occupations. Though subject to harsh discipline, seamen on a well-run ship would feel a bonded part of a skilled team, and, in battle, would enthusiastically man the guns or take up arms to repel boarders.

WARRANT OFFICERS

The master, although still a significant figure on the ship, had lost importance compared with a century earlier, because commissioned officers were now trained in seamanship and rivaled the master for knowledge of navigation and sailing. The purser and the surgeon were the other warrant officers of wardroom rank. Below them came the boatswain, carpenter, sailmaker, and gunner, solid characters of lower-class origin traditionally attached to a single ship in which they served for long periods. They were sometimes unofficially allowed their wives on board.

COMMISSIONED OFFICERS

Although in the Royal Navy progress from warrant officer or even able seaman to commissioned rank was not unknown, officers were usually gentlemen. The sons of socially respectable families were taken into naval service as boys, usually recommended to a captain by a relative or family friend. When old enough they became midshipmen, hoping to pass the examination required for appointment as lieutenant, probably after six years at sea. The next step was to be made post-captain, with command of their own ship, after which promotion to admiral was strictly by seniority. A captain's authority was absolute, although his own behavior was subject to the Articles of War.

Gun crew at battle stations
Each gun was manned by up to six sailors. A gunner was in charge of all cannons, while a quarter gunner was in charge of four.

SEVEN YEARS WAR

BATTLE OF QUIBERON BAY

Date	November 20, 1759
Location	Quiberon Bay, Brittany, France
Result	British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	FRANCE

COMMANDERS

Edward Hawke	Herbert de Brienne, Comte de Conflans

FORCES

Ships: 27	Ships: 21

LOSSES

Men: 300 Ships: 2	Men: 2,500 Ships: 7

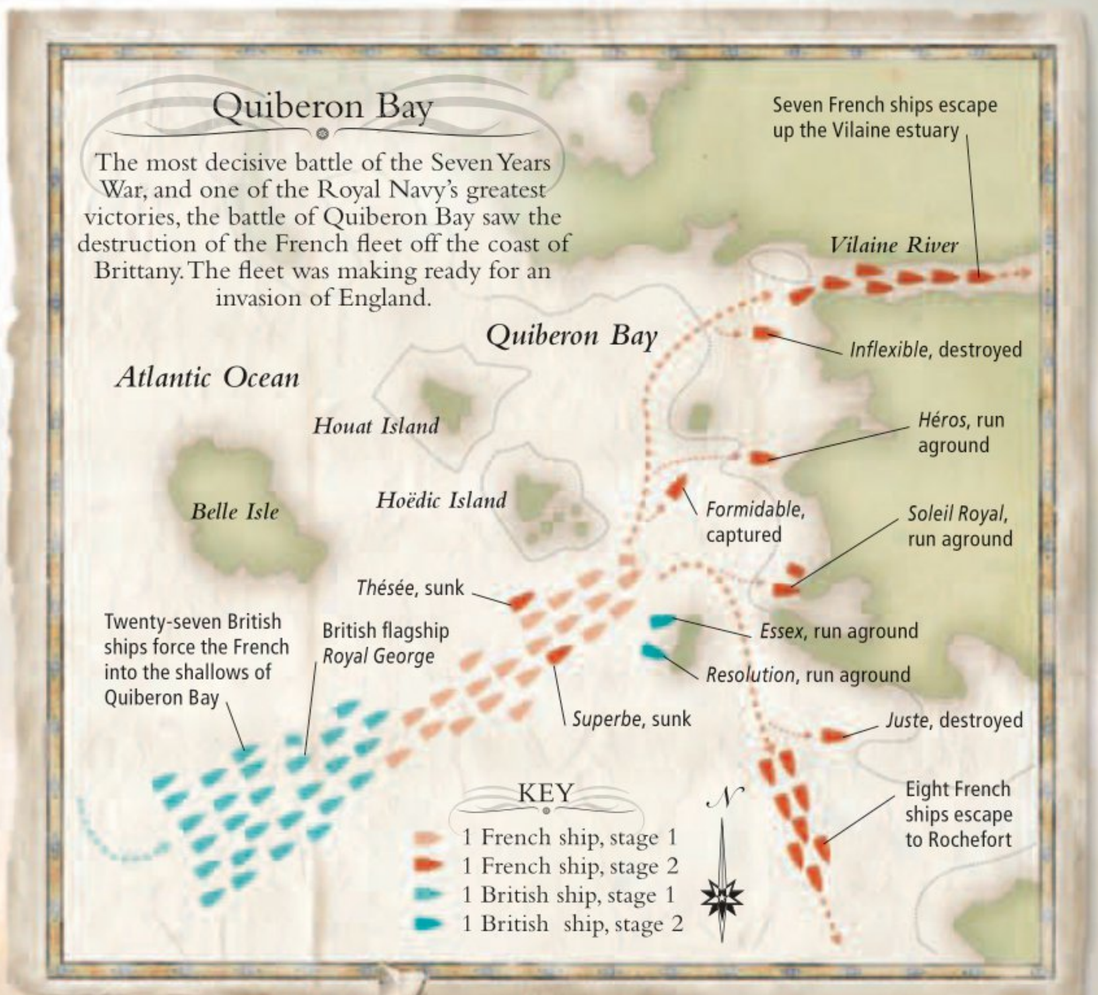
THE BATTLE OF QUIBERON BAY

In 1759 France hoped to reverse the course of the Seven Years War by launching an invasion of the British Isles. An army of 20,000 men and troop transports were assembled at Quiberon Bay. The Comte de Conflans, then the commander the French fleet in Brest, was to escort the army to Scotland. The Royal Navy was maintaining a close blockade of Brest, a feat of seamanship, organization, and endurance. But in November a westerly Atlantic gale forced Admiral Edward Hawke to withdraw his blockading squadron to shelter in Torbay. Conflans seized the opportunity to sail for Quiberon Bay.

Hawke returned to Brest as soon as the weather permitted and, finding Conflans gone, pursued him southward. Delayed by erratic winds, the French were approaching the bay when the British hove into view. Conflans was not greatly outnumbered—27 ships of the line to 21—but he knew his officers and crews were far inferior. His sole advantage was possession of local pilots with an intimate knowledge of the reefs and shoals of the treacherous coast. With a gale rising from the northwest, he formed a line and sailed for the shelter of the bay. Conflans assumed Hawke would not dare to follow him in. But the British admiral signaled a "general chase" and his ships, crowding on all the sail they could bear in the howling wind, tailed the French into the narrow mouth of the bay.

THWARTED INVASION

The risk Hawke took was astonishing. Caught in a gale off a lee shore, his ships could have been shattered on the jagged rocks, leaving Britain defenseless against invasion. Instead, it was the French squadron that met disaster. The British van, commanded by Viscount Howe aboard *Magnanime*, savaged the ships of the French rear before the rest of the squadron came up to join in a mêlée made even more chaotic by the heavy seas. The captain of the French 74 *Thésée* opened his lower gun ports to bring his heaviest battery into action, only for a sudden squall to plunge the ports under water, the ship sinking instantly under full sail. Another French ship, *Superbe*, also foundered, its hull shattered by a broadside from Hawke's flagship *Royal George*. *Formidable* and *Héros*, battered into submission, struck their colors, although the raging seas prevented the British getting a prize crew aboard the latter, which was later



run aground. The French fleet was only saved from destruction by the early nightfall on a dark November day. At around 5:00 p.m. firing ceased and ships anchored where they lay.

Dawn brought a renewal of the battle with the elements, but not between the fleets. Two British ships had been dragged onto a shoal and could not be saved. The French ship *Juste*, badly damaged in the fighting, was wrecked fleeing toward the Loire. Surrounded by the enemy, Conflans ran his flagship *Soleil Royal* aground and fired it to save it from falling into British hands. Seven other French ships exploited the effect of the high tide and an onshore gale to attempt to cross the usually impassable sandbar at the mouth of the Vilaine River. To do so, the sailors threw their cannon overboard to reduce their draft. Six ships made it to the shallow water beyond, thus escaping the British ships but trapping themselves in the estuary for the following year.

Hawke's victory shattered the French navy, ended the prospect of an invasion of the British Isles, and exposed French colonies and merchant shipping to the depredations of the Royal Navy for the rest of the war.

> "HAD WE BUT TWO HOURS MORE DAYLIGHT, THE WHOLE [ENEMY FLEET] HAD BEEN DESTROYED OR TAKEN."
>
> **ADMIRAL HAWKE**, DESCRIBING HIS VICTORY AT QUIBERON BAY, 1759

Decisive victory
Admiral Hawke's *Royal George* (left) is shown engaging with *Soleil Royal* (right). The latter is erroneously portrayed as a three-decker; she was in fact an 84-gun third-rater, with two decks.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

BOARDING WEAPONS

Despite the reign of the cannon in the age of sail, boarding was still an essential tactic, whether to seize a valuable prize or to end the resistance of a battered enemy. Either men crossed between two vessels side by side or boats were sent out with a boarding party to swarm up the hull of an enemy ship. Although musket-armed marines took part in boarding and repelling boarders, sailors bore the brunt of the action. They were issued with a range of weapons from pistols and blunderbusses to swords and axes. The cutlass was favored over longer-bladed, more refined swords, as a robust and compact weapon suitable for use by unpracticed swordsmen fighting in a confined space. The boarding ax, or tomahawk, could be driven into the hull of an enemy ship to provide a step for climbing up —as well as being used to smash skulls. Boarding pikes were especially handy for holding off boarders from a defensive position.

Tools of combat
In addition to edged weapons, sailors often wore boarding pistols, which usually came in pairs. This gave the sailor at least two shots at the enemy; there was rarely time to reload.

1705–1781

EDWARD HAWKE

BRITISH ADMIRAL

Joining the Royal Navy at the age of 15, Hawke took 27 years to reach the rank of rear admiral, his progress inhibited by a shortage of naval warfare. Establishing his reputation at Cape Finisterre in 1747, he was an advocate of individual initiative and the "general chase" in preference to formal line tactics. Victory at Quiberon Bay made him a national hero, and the taking of Spanish treasure ships made him rich. Retired from seagoing, he was First Lord of the Admiralty from 1766 to 1771.

THE AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

THE REVOLT OF 13 North American colonies in 1775 led to war with Britain and the founding of the United States. The American rebels created a Continental Navy that lacked the resources to challenge the might of the Royal Navy, but did found a naval tradition. Its most significant action was the lake battle at Valcour Island in 1776, which at heavy cost delayed a British advance from Canada. Raiding and harrying actions by enterprising captains such as John Paul Jones raised spirits but had limited effect. Major naval conflict developed only when France, Spain, and the Dutch Republic entered the war against Britain. Battles were then fought in the West Indies, in European waters, and in the Indian Ocean, as well as off the United States. In the end naval power was crucial, for the British army in North America was dependent on supply by sea. The French victory at Chesapeake Bay in 1781 caused the surrender of the British at Yorktown and hence American triumph in the war. Yet Admiral Rodney's tactically innovative victory at the battle of the Saints was a reminder that the era of British naval dominance was very far from over.

Engagement on Lake Champlain
British ships fire broadsides at the American line in a firefight lasting several hours. The American squadron was largely destroyed, but the battle did successfully delay the British advance.

THE AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

VALCOUR ISLAND

Date October 11–13, 1776
Forces British: 30 ships; Americans: 16 ships
Losses British: 3 gunboats; Americans: 11 ships

Location Lake Champlain, New York

By the summer of 1776 the British had repulsed an American invasion of Canada and planned to counterattack by taking troops across Lake Champlain to the Hudson. A naval race began, with the Americans under Benedict Arnold improvising a naval squadron on the southern shore of the lake while the British did the same in the north.

The two forces met on October 11. The British, commanded by Captain Thomas Pringle, had the three-masted 18-gun *Inflexible*, the schooners *Maria* and *Carleton*, plus an array of small gunboats and other craft. Arnold had a force of about half the size including three schooners and a sloop, plus row galleys and gondolas built on the spot. Hoping to avoid the need to maneuver with his inexperienced crews, Arnold anchored the American squadron in a line across the channel between Valcour Island and the shore.

The battle started badly for the Americans when their schooner *Royal Savage* ran onto rocks, but the *Carleton*, advancing to board the disabled ship, was itself battered by the concentrated fire of the American line. With half her crew and her captain killed, the *Carleton* made a fighting withdrawal under the command of 19-year-old midshipman Edward Pellew—a future admiral. The Royal Navy's small gunboats bore the brunt of the fighting. The Americans sank one and disabled two others, but themselves took heavy punishment.

By nightfall the gondola *Philadelphia* was sinking and the British expected to finish off the rest of the American ships the following day. During the night, however, the Americans slipped away undetected. The British gave chase and overhauled the more damaged American ships. One was sunk, one captured, and others deliberately run aground. Five vessels reached the fort at Crown Point, though these were eventually burned to keep them out of British hands.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

TURTLE SUBMERSIBLE

American patriot David Bushnell (1742–1824) of Saybrook, Connecticut, devised a submersible vessel to counter the Royal Navy's coastal blockade. His egg-shaped *Turtle* had ballast water tanks that were filled to make it dive, then emptied with a hand pump to return to the surface. It carried an underwater gunpowder charge to be attached to the hull of a ship at anchor and detonated by a time fuse. The *Turtle* went into action on September 7, 1776, with volunteer Sergeant Ezra Lee at the controls. It was launched into New York Harbor to attack the British flagship, HMS *Eagle*. Lee brought the *Turtle* up against the underside of *Eagle's* hull undetected, but failed to attach the explosive charge to the ship's copper-sheathed bottom. The *Turtle* made three attempts to sink British ships but never achieved a successful attack.

Revolutionary submersible
Seated in the cramped interior, the operator maneuvered the *Turtle* underwater using screw propellers, operated by foot pedals and a handle.

AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

USHANT

Date July 27, 1778
Forces British: 30 ships of the line; French: 27 ships of the line
Losses none

Location
Bay of Biscay

The Royal Navy's Western Squadron, commanded by Admiral Augustus Keppel aboard the newly commissioned first-rate *Victory*, met the French Atlantic fleet under the Comte d'Orvilliers about 100 miles (160 km) off Ushant. Keppel attacked against the wind and the two lines cannonaded each other on the same tack. The French began to draw ahead, so d'Orvilliers then wore to pass the British on the opposite tack. The British rear, under Admiral Sir Hugh Palliser, was hard hit by excellent French gunnery and lucky not to be doubled. Keppel wanted to turn to follow the French but Palliser was apparently in no state to perform the maneuver. The inconclusive engagement ended in bitter dispute between Keppel and Palliser, the Royal Navy having failed to fulfil Britain's high expectations.

AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

FLAMBOROUGH HEAD

Date September 23, 1779
Forces Americans: 5 ships; British: 2 ships
Losses Americans: 1 ship sunk; British: 2 ships captured

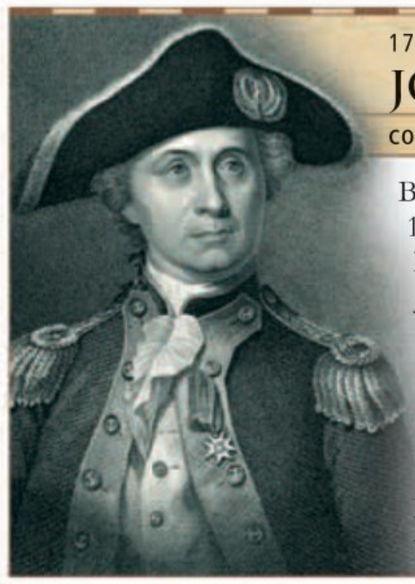
Location Off Flamborough Head, Yorkshire

In August 1779 American captain John Paul Jones led a small squadron to raid shipping around the British Isles. Jones was on board the 42-gun converted merchant ship *Bonhomme Richard*, accompanied by the frigates *Alliance* and *Pallas*, both under French captains, and two smaller vessels.

On September 23, Jones surprised a convoy of 50 merchant ships escorted by the 44-gun frigate *Serapis* and a 20-gun escort ship, *Countess of Scarborough*. The first broadside was fired at around 7:00 p.m., with *Serapis* and *Bonhomme Richard* within hailing distance. The British frigate's guns were more effective and it was the nimbler ship. Jones' only chance was to grapple *Serapis*.

Carnage ensued, *Bonhomme Richard* scouring *Serapis*'s deck with grapeshot and musket fire while the frigate's guns battered her hull. *Alliance* and *Pallas* forced the *Countess* to strike, but they could find no way to support Jones—when *Alliance* fired at *Serapis*, it caused equal damage to *Bonhomme Richard*. The fight continued by moonlight. *Bonhomme Richard* was on fire and sinking; *Serapis* was also ablaze after a grenade ignited powder below decks. As Jones refused to surrender—apparently saying "I may sink, but I'll be damned if I strike"—*Serapis*'s captain decided to give in and end the slaughter. Jones transferred his crew to the more seaworthy British frigate to return triumphantly to port.

French medallion
This commemorative bronze medal depicts the clash between *Serapis* and *Bonhomme Richard* off Flamborough Head.



1747–1792

JOHN PAUL JONES

COMMANDED THE AMERICAN CONTINENTAL NAVY AT FLAMBOROUGH

Born in Scotland, John Paul went to sea at the age of 13. Accused of murdering a sailor in Tobago in 1773, he took the name Jones and moved to Virginia. He joined the newly founded Continental Navy in 1775 as a lieutenant and made a reputation as a bold but quarrelsome officer. In 1778, based in France, he demoralized the British by raiding the coast of England and Scotland. After the victory at Flamborough Head his talents were neglected by the United States. He subsequently served in the Russian navy, fighting the Ottomans in the Black Sea as a rear admiral.

AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

CAPE ST. VINCENT

Date January 16–17, 1780
Forces British: 18 ships of the line, 9 frigates; Spanish: 9 ships of the line, 2 frigates
Losses British: none; Spanish: 1 ship sunk, 6 ships captured

Location Off the Algarve, southern Portugal

Spain's chief war aim in the American Revolutionary War was to regain Gibraltar from Britain. They placed the Rock under siege and naval blockade. In January 1780 British admiral Sir George Rodney was sent to relieve Gibraltar with a strong force of ships of the line and frigates. Commodore Don Juan de Lángara, a strikingly brave and competent Spanish officer, was at sea to the west of Gibraltar, hoping to intercept a merchant convoy bound for the West Indies. A winter storm blew two of his ships of the line off station, leaving him with a weakened squadron of nine ships of the line when he had the misfortune to encounter Rodney's superior British force. As the British bore down upon him, De Lángara had no choice but to run for Cadiz, the nearest safe port.

Rodney ordered a general chase and within two hours, at around 4:00 p.m., the fastest British ships had got among the fleeing Spanish. The 70-gun *Santo Domingo* exploded, killing all on board, but the rest of de Lángara's outclassed ships fought on with notable courage. The battle continued long after night fell. With a strong westerly blowing and a treacherous rocky coast to the lee, there was a serious risk of ships running ashore, but Rodney had no intention of allowing the Spanish to escape and stuck tenaciously to the pursuit. De Lángara's battered flagship *El Felix* was the last of six to be taken, striking its colors in the early hours of the morning. In the aftermath of the battle two of the prizes taken were lost, for in stormy weather off an unfamiliar coast the British could not sail them without using the captured Spanish crews, who eagerly seized back their ships and joined the other escapees in Cadiz.

> "HE NEVER LET SLIP AN OPPORTUNITY TO BRING OPPONENTS TO ACTION, OR BEING HIMSELF IN THE THICKEST OF THE FIGHT"
>
> **ADMIRAL RODNEY,** DESCRIBED BY JOHN KNOX LAUGHTON

The moonlight battle
The *Santo Domingo* explodes during the battle of Cape St. Vincent. The ship to the foreground is the HMS *Sandwich*, flagship of Admiral Rodney.

THE BATTLE OF THE SAINTS

Buoyed by their success at Chesapeake Bay, by 1782 the French were on the offensive in the West Indies, hoping to seize control of valuable British colonies. In early April the Comte de Grasse, with 33 ships of the line and two 50-gun ships, escorted a large convoy of merchant ships from Martinique. His mission was to deliver the merchantmen safely to Havana and join with the fleet of France's ally Spain to capture Jamaica. De Grasse was shadowed by the 36 ships of the line of the British fleet under Admiral Sir George Rodney.

On April 9 the two fleets clashed off Dominica. Straining ahead to snap at the heels of the French, the British van, commanded by Admiral Samuel Hood, found itself briefly exposed to attack by de Grasse's entire force. It was an opportunity the French failed to exploit and the exchange ended with one French ship badly shot up. De Grasse's misfortunes continued as he sailed between Dominica and the rocky islets known as the Saintes.

On the night of April 11 the 74-gun *Zélé* collided with de Grasse's flagship *Ville de Paris*. The next morning, seeing Hood launch in pursuit of the crippled *Zélé,* de Grasse came about and gave the order to clear for action.

BREAKING THE LINE

Since Hood needed time to recall his ships, Rodney formed a battle line with his rear division in the van and Hood's division in the rear. Despite this hasty reorganization, the British line was more compact than the straggling line formed by the French. At 7:45 a.m. the exchange of broadsides began, ships passing in opposite directions within musket range. The French came off worst, partly because many of the British guns had been newly equipped with flintlocks.

The decisive moment of the battle came at 9:00 a.m. As the wind shifted southerly, Rodney sailed his flagship, the 100-gun *Formidable*, through a gap in the French line, blasting two French ships as he went. As other British ships followed their admiral's example, de Grasse's center division was split into incoherent fragments. The French van, badly knocked about by British broadsides, had sailed clear of the battle and showed little inclination to return. This left Hood free to plunge into the mêlée in the center. The French rear under the Marquis de Vaudreuil made an effort to aid de Grasse, but in vain. The slaughter on the French admiral's flagship was extreme, with some 400 men dead by the time de Grasse struck at 6:00 p.m. His was the fifth French ship to be taken. As darkness fell one of the captured vessels, *César*, was destroyed by a massive explosion.

Rodney controversially failed to order a pursuit of the beaten enemy, although two more French ships of the line were taken in the following week. Still, the revenge for the British defeat at Chesapeake was sweet. French aspirations to control the Caribbean were crushed and Rodney's bold breaking of the line—which may not even have been intentional—initiated a new phase in naval tactics.

"The Glorious Action"
This gold badge, which belonged to a daughter of King George III, shows the captured French flagship *Ville de Paris* flying the British ensign above the French.

Commemorative gold ring
The gold and glass intaglio ring bears Rodney's name and the date of the battle of the Saints.

AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

THE BATTLE OF THE SAINTS

Date	April 12, 1782
Location	Between Dominica and Guadeloupe, Caribbean
Result	British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	FRANCE

COMMANDERS

George Rodney	François Joseph Paul de Grasse

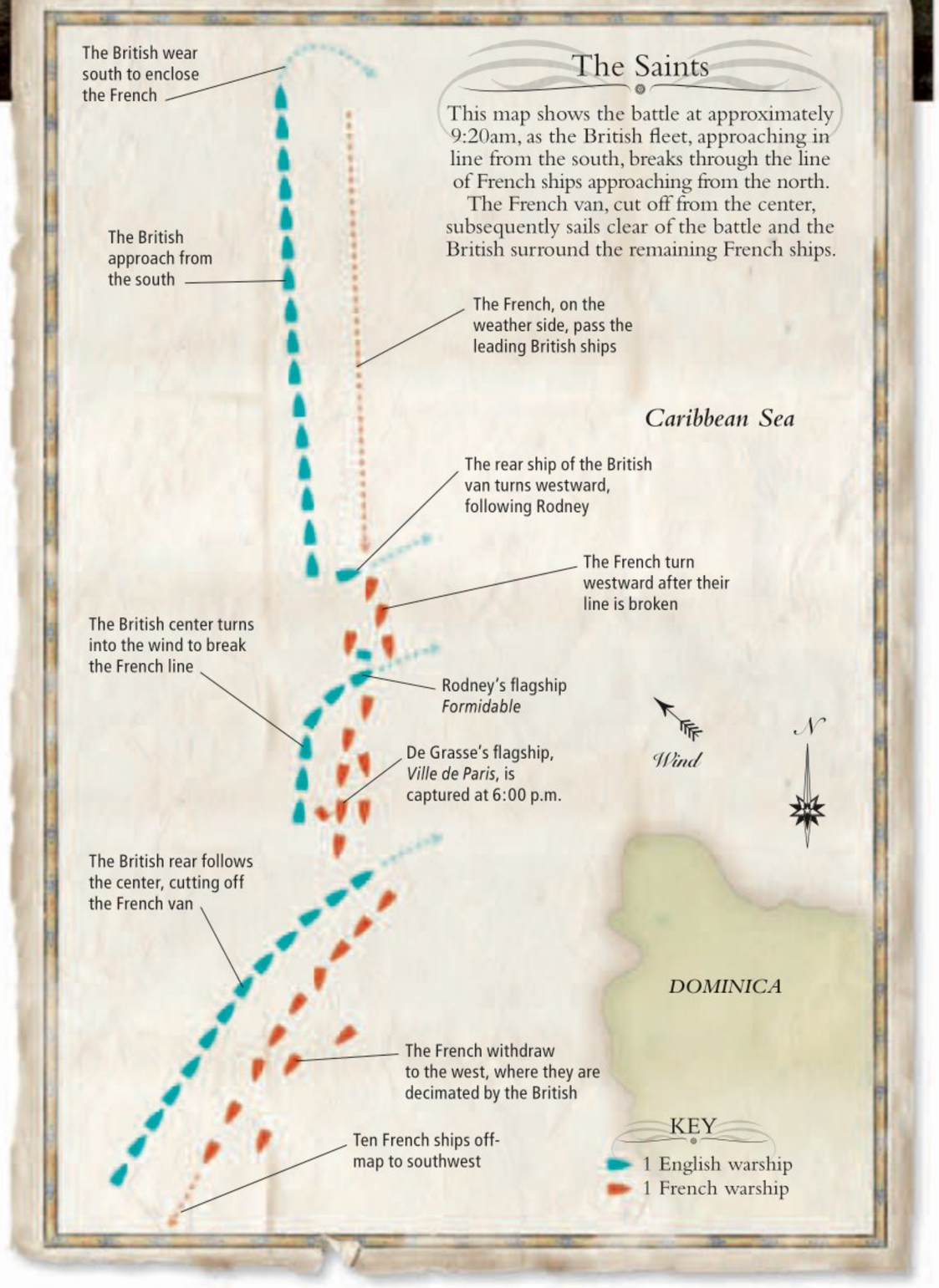
FORCES

Ships: 36 ships of the line	**Ships:** 33 ships of the line

LOSSES

Men: 243 killed, 816 wounded **Ships:** none	**Men:** c.2,000 killed or wounded **Ships:** 5 captured

Exchange of broadsides
Admiral Hood's 90-gun ship *Barfleur*, center, engages the 104-gun French flagship *Ville de Paris*, right. Badly damaged in the mêlée, the *Ville the Paris* surrendered shortly afterwards.



AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

PROVIDIEN

Date April 12, 1782
Forces French: 12 ships of the line; British: 11 ships of the line
Losses none

Location Off east coast of Sri Lanka

French admiral Pierre André de Suffren appeared off southeast India in February 1782 commanding a squadron of 12 ships. His mission was to contest the British takeover of French colonial outposts by cooperating with Indian Prince Hyder Ali. After an indecisive encounter with a British force under Vice Admiral Sir Edward Hughes at Sadras, Suffren sailed for Trincomalee in Ceylon (Sri Lanka), which he hoped to seize as a naval base. Vice Admiral Hughes intercepted him with 11 ships near the islet of Providien.

Suffren held the weather gage and pinned the British against a rocky coast. He closed with the British in line abreast, turning to line ahead to begin firing broadsides. But some of his captains, lacking stomach for a fight, hung back on the approach and only Suffren's flagship *Héros* and four other ships in the French center engaged at close range. In fierce fighting the British 64-gun *Monmouth* was disabled while *Héros* lost her foretopmast and the French 74-gun *Orient* caught fire. The onset of a violent rainstorm brought a general ceasefire as both sides strove to avoid running ashore or colliding in the crowded seas. The French ships withdrew the next day in serious need of repair, but after an improvised refit resumed operations.

1729–1788

PIERRE ANDRÉ DE SUFFREN

FRENCH ADMIRAL

Suffren de St Tropez took part in all France's wars against Britain from the 1740s to the 1780s, fighting at Toulon in 1744, Minorca in 1756, and Lagos Bay in 1759, as well as in many lesser actions. He was twice taken prisoner by the British. A fiery, impetuous character, he was critical of French naval tradition, believing lack of energy and initiative was responsible for repeated poor performances. Taking command in the Indian Ocean in 1782, he resolved to redeem his navy's honor with a display of fighting spirit. Although he won no outright victories, he kept his ships committed to combat under most difficult circumstances, earning the praise of friend and foe alike.

AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

TRINCOMALEE

Date September 3, 1782
Forces French: 14 ships of the line; British: 12 ships of the line
Losses none

Location Off east coast of Sri Lanka

In August 1782 Suffren captured the port of Trincomalee from the British. Hughes sailed his squadron offshore, inviting the French to come out. Reinforced, Suffren now had clearly superior numbers, so he gave battle hoping for a crushing victory. As at Providien, many of Suffren's captains did not share his enthusiasm. Only Suffren's flagship *Héros*, along with *Ajax* and *Illustre*, initially engaged at closest range. In three hours' savage combat these ships suffered heavy losses. At one point *Héros'* flag was shot away, but Suffren bellowed: "Flags, flags, hoist them all around the ship." More French ships belatedly joined the fighting and the British suffered enough damage to feel the need to disengage, leaving the French in possession of Trincomalee.

AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

CUDDALORE

Date June 20, 1783
Forces French: 15 ships of the line; British: 18 ships of the line
Losses none

Location Off Coromandel coast of India

In 1783 French army reinforcements arrived in India. The soldiers were soon trapped at Cuddalore, besieged by land and under naval blockade. Suffren sailed to contest the blockade, though his ships were in poor shape, undermanned, and outnumbered. He cleverly maneuvered to draw the British out of the Cuddalore roadstead and occupy it himself. Then, taking on board sepoys to help man his guns, he boldly went out to attack the superior British force. Both sides maintained a steady line through several hours' broadsides, ended by nightfall. The moral victory went to the French, still ready to take the offensive despite their patched sails and depleted crews. The news arrived shortly after that peace had already been declared.

Exchange of fire
The vans of the French (left) and British (right) fleets engage at Chesapeake Bay. The center and rear squadrons remain unengaged due to the angle at which the two lines approached.

1 THE BRITISH FLEET ARRIVES
After finding the Chesapeake unoccupied by the French, the British under Rear Admiral Hood set sail for New York to report to Admiral Graves. When they return, they find the French blockading the bay. De Grasse immediately attacks.

CHESAPEAKE BAY

French fleet blockading Chesapeake Bay

British form line ahead and bear down on French from the north

British miss opportunity of attacking isolated French van. Hood currently in British van

Wind

"Promiscuous" line of French ships sets sail to engage British fleet. Van pulls ahead of center and rear squadrons

ATLANTIC OCEAN

KEY

FRENCH FLEET

2 French ships of the line

BRITISH FLEET

2–3 British ships of the line

"SIR SAMUEL WOULD BE GLAD TO SEND AN OPINION, BUT KNOWS NOT WHAT TO SAY IN THE TRULY LAMENTABLE STATE WE HAVE BROUGHT OURSELVES."

REAR ADMIRAL SIR SAMUEL HOOD, IN A COMMUNICATION TO ADMIRAL GRAVES

THE BATTLE OF CHESAPEAKE BAY

In the summer of 1781 the heads of the French and American land forces fighting the British in North America appealed for support from the French fleet in the West Indies. The fleet's admiral, the Comte de Grasse, set off with 28 ships of the line for Chesapeake Bay, where a British army under Cornwallis was besieged at Yorktown. Part of the British West Indies fleet, 14 ships of the line commanded by Sir Samuel Hood, was sent in search of de Grasse, but arrived at Chesapeake Bay ahead of him. Finding no French ships, Hood continued north to report to Admiral Thomas Graves in New York. Hood's ships had barely disappeared over the horizon when, on August 29, de Grasse arrived and anchored inside Cape Henry, blockading Cornwallis from supply or evacuation by sea.

Underestimating the size of de Grasse's fleet, Graves added five ships of his own to Hood's 14 and sailed for the Chesapeake. On the morning of September 5 a lookout spotted the French fleet at anchor, revealing to Graves that he was outgunned and outnumbered. Nonetheless the British cleared for action and, in the words of a French officer "came down on us with … an assurance that made us think they did not know our strength." The French showed equal spirit. De Grasse had 24 of his ships available for battle, although he was short of some officers and crew who were currently ashore. Slipping their anchors, they emerged from behind the cape barely 45 minutes after sighting their enemy.

British surrender
British troops led by General Cornwallis surrender at Yorktown on 21 October 1871, after the failure of the British fleet to secure Chesapeake Bay. French ships fill the bay.

De Grasse ordered his captains to form a "promiscuous" line; whoever had his ship ready first would lead the van, the rest following when they could. Competing for the honor of leading the fleet, five of the fieriest captains had their ships well ahead of the rest. But Graves let slip the opportunity to attack this isolated van. He sought a formal battle in line. In order to sail in the same direction as the French (which was essential for a prolonged exchange of broadsides) Graves had to wear his ships together, a maneuver that reversed the sailing order. Hood, previously commanding the van, now found himself in the rear, while the former rear, composed of the least seaworthy ships, became the van.

It was around 4:00 p.m. before Graves signaled for close action, though he also maintained a signal to hold the line ahead. The British and French columns met at an angle, which meant that the ships in the van were fiercely engaged, while the center and rear stayed well apart. The boldest French commanders with the best trained crews duelled with British ships, some of which were having trouble staying afloat. In an hour of close fighting, the British suffered the worst of the damage. The captain of *Shrewsbury*, the lead ship, lost a leg, and *Intrepid*, the next ship in line, had 65 holes shot in her hull, as well as her rigging cut and masts shattered.

With Graves and Hood bickering over the way the battle had been fought, the British fleet went back to New York, missing a chance to intercept French transport ships bringing siege guns to the Chesapeake. By the time Graves returned with a relief expedition in October, the blockaded General Cornwallis had surrendered, ensuring the independence of the United States. Tactically indecisive, Chesapeake Bay was strategically one of the most decisive sea battles in history.

Boatswain's call
Whistles such as this are used for conveying orders aboard ship. The design has changed little from medieval times to the present day.

AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

BATTLE OF CHESAPEAKE BAY

Date	September 5, 1781
Location	Off Chesapeake Bay, Virginia
Result	French victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	FRANCE

COMMANDERS

Thomas Graves	Comte de Grasse

FORCES

Ships: 19 ships of the line	**Ships:** 24 ships of the line

LOSSES

Men: 207 **Ships:** none	**Men:** 209 **Ships:** none

2 FRENCH VICTORY
Staying in line ahead formation, the British fleet wears to engage the French. Due to the angle of the opposing lines, only the British van comes in close contact with the French. The latter maul the British, who withdraw to New York.

LIFE ON BOARD

LIVING CONDITIONS

LIFE ON BOARD a warship has at times been compared unfavorably with life in prison—both involving large numbers of men confined in a very restricted space with no privacy and primitive facilities, but prison offering better chances of escape and less risk of death. In the age of galley warfare, although living conditions could be appalling in terms of sanitation and overcrowding, the problem was mitigated by the shortness of voyages and frequent landfall. But in the age of sail men would live on board for months at a time. To man their guns and handle their sails, the ships required large crews relative to their size. Work was hard, food often poor (though also poor ashore), and comforts few—a naval tradition maintained into the 20th century.

DITTY BOX Wooden boxes, such as this one, were part of every sailor's gear during both World Wars. They used them to store their personal possessions, such as photographs, letters, and wash kit.

GUN-DECK ACCOMMODATION Space was at a premium in Napoleonic-era warships, so sailors slept in storable canvas hammocks among the cannon. Half worked while the others slept.

SLEEPING CONDITIONS

Through most of history ships had few or no special spaces for the crew to sleep. On an ancient galley the density of crew and soldiers made it impossible to sleep on board with any comfort, and men slept ashore if they could. By the early modern period, with longer voyages in sailing ships, men usually slept on the deck on rolled-up bedding. Hammocks were a Native American invention encountered by European sailors at the end of the 15th century, although they were still not widely adopted on ships until the 17th century. Their many advantages, including comfort and ease of stowage, were eventually appreciated. On an 18th-century ship of the line men slept in hammocks slung from the roof of the gun deck. The hammock hooks were around 15 in (38 cm) apart, so in harbor the men's bodies were in contact while sleeping. At sea the situation was improved by the watch system, which meant that only half the crew was sleeping at the same time. Still, the state of the air in such a crowded, unventilated space, especially when in the tropics, can easily be imagined.

TUB This wooden tub, situated in the sick berth of an 18th-century ship of the line, was large enough for a man to bathe in.

FIGHTING DIRT

The need for cleanliness and hygiene was appreciated by navies in the age of sail. Sailors were required to keep themselves and their clothes clean, but this was hard to achieve. The use of the heads, opening over the sea, as toilets was strictly enforced, yet men, whether wilfully or accidentally, failed to reach them on many occasion. The shingle ballast in the bilges at the bottom of the hull collected detritus from the decks above, turning over time into a cesspool that infected the ship with stinking fumes. The substitution of iron pigs for shingle as ballast in the early 19th century largely solved this problem. Humidity was a plague below deck on wooden ships, with no sunlight to dry out the water that seeped in. Dampness was often worsened by the pursuit of cleanliness which led to the decks being over-frequently washed down.

SUBMARINE TOILET Underwater toilets had to be designed differently to prevent the external water pressure from flinging the contents right back. A flooded airlock ejected the waste safely.

STEAM ERA

The era of steam and steel changed living conditions, not always for the better. With no gun ports there was even less air below deck than previously, and the heat, noise, and fumes from the engines could become intolerable. Artificial ventilation was only slowly introduced. Many men found the motion of a steamship cutting through the waves more upsetting than the subtler movement of an old sailing ship, with the result that seasickness became a worse problem. The introduction of bunks took a while. It was still common in World War II for hundreds of men to sleep in hammocks hanging in the mess halls and perform their morning ablutions, including cleaning teeth and shaving, in a single bucket of cold water.

BUNK BEDS The African American Corps of Engineers being transported in 1942 temporarily experience the same crowded conditions the average sailor endured, bunking "on the shelf" on canvas beds.

OFFICER'S ROOM This officer's room aboard the 910 ft (277 m) long WWII-era aircraft carrier, the USS *Lexington*, afforded some privacy and had its own sink.

"In the cockpit of a line of battle ship, where all the gentlemen mess, they never have any daylight ... dirty screens, cots and hammocks hanging in all directions ...

JAMES LOWRY, *Fiddlers and Whores* A surgeon in Nelson's fleet gives his first impressions of his living quarters

HUNG OUT TO DRY Away at sea for long periods, it was important for crewmen to maintain good hygiene. The French navy in the early 1900s used to allot Tuesdays and Fridays as laundry days, and hoist the wet clothing above the deck to dry.

UNDERWATER

Submarines always presented special problems, being by their nature claustrophobic and cramped. Some early World War I types had no toilet facilities except a bucket. German U-boat crews in World War II normally shared bunks, one man rising for his watch as the other occupant turned in. The boats spent most of their time on the surface, where they pitched and rolled mercilessly—diving often came as a sweet relief, both from seasickness and the clattering of the diesel engine. With only seawater available, most men did not bother to wash their clothes or themselves, and no one shaved. The smell of unwashed bodies and diesel fuel was masked by generous application of eau de cologne. On modern nuclear submarines showers are obligatory—although carried out with the minimum use of water—and bunks are individual, but with nine men sleeping in a room sometimes shared with a missile tube, the sailor's life remains short on the luxuries of space and privacy.

SLEEPING QUARTERS Launched in 1954, the *Nautilus* was the world's first nuclear-powered submarine. In contrast with the cramped crew's quarters on the lower deck, with their three-tiered bunks, the officers' quarters on the upper deck, has a single bed and a table.

THE AGE OF NELSON

Glorious First of June
The French flagship *Montagne* (right) and the British flagship *Queen Charlotte* (left) are locked in a fierce gunnery duel. The battle, fought far out in the Atlantic in 1794, ended in a notable British victory. A British boat is shown picking up survivors from French ships.

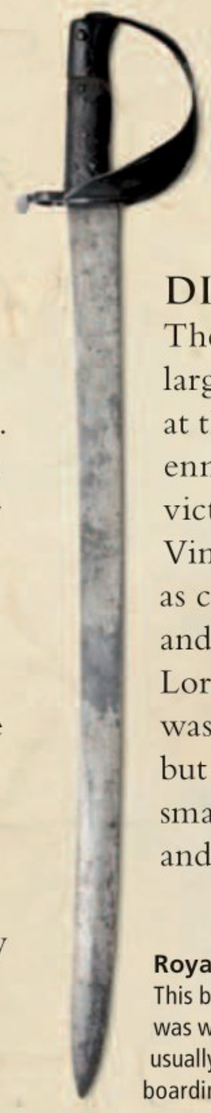
Britain's greatest national hero
Horatio Nelson's personal bravery and bold, innovative tactics had already made a him a legend in his lifetime. Death in his hour of victory at Trafalgar ensured the legend would never become tarnished.

THE FIGURE OF HORATIO NELSON, Britain's greatest admiral, dominates the period of the French Revolutionary and Napoleonic Wars. Nelson embodied the principles that had been instilled into the Royal Navy by its best admirals over previous generations: attack at all costs, seizing the initiative, and pursuing decisive victory. But he carried these principles to unsurpassed extremes. Building on the new tactics pioneered by Admiral Sir George Rodney at Les Saintes in 1782, Nelson set out to break the enemy line and create a "pell-mell" battle in which superior gunnery would carry the day and the enemy would be as far as possible annihilated. His two greatest victories, at the Nile and Trafalgar—the battle in which he died—not only contributed to the eventual defeat of France but ensured British domination of the world's oceans for the rest of the 19th century.

NAVIES UNDER STRAIN

Between 1793 and 1815 Britain's Royal Navy was almost continuously at war, fighting not only the French but, at various times, the Spanish, Dutch, Danes, and Americans as well. The triumph of British sea power in this long period of conflict was in no sense predictable or easily gained. The Royal Navy frequently fought against numerically equal or superior enemy forces. If the British were widely recognized as best at gunnery, the French generally had better ships, and the Spanish bigger ones.

The British were greatly aided by the impact of the French Revolution of 1789 upon their most dangerous opponent. The French navy never fully recovered from the chaos of the revolutionary period, when mutinies were commonplace and many experienced naval commanders were lost, either fleeing into exile or persecuted as counter-revolutionaries. Yet the British navy was also operating under great strain. The authorities' fear of revolution made issues of discipline on board ship acute. Simmering discontent spilled over into large-scale fleet mutinies at Spithead and the Nore in 1797. The lack of shore leave—denied for fear of desertion—the unfair allocation of prize money, poor food and pay, and excessive punishments were the mutineers' main grievances. To the relief of the British government the mutinies were suppressed through punishment and concessions, and never recurred on a similar scale. Yet the sheer extent and duration of the conflict threatened traditional systems of recruitment and discipline. Britain's policy of permanent blockade of French ports meant sailors remained at sea for unprecedented periods of time. The pressing of men into service, usually a workable system of conscription, became oppressive because of the massive demand for crew. Too many landsmen, including convicts, were recruited.



Royal Navy cutlass
This basic, utilitarian sword was what the British sailor usually had to rely on when boarding an enemy ship.

DISCIPLINE AND INITIATIVE

The Royal Navy overcame its problems, largely through finding the right leadership at the right time. Admiral Sir John Jervis—ennobled as Earl St. Vincent after his victory over the Spanish at Cape St Vincent in 1797—was a major influence as commander of the Mediterranean and Channel fleets, then First Lord of the Admiralty. Jervis was a severe disciplinarian, but his insistence on smartness, cleanliness, and daily gunnery

NAPOLEONIC EUROPE

While Napoleon's armies swept all before them in mainland Europe, the war at sea was a different matter. The Royal Navy blockaded the major ports such as Toulon and Brest, restricting trade and keeping the French from bringing their own naval forces out to do battle. On the few occasions they succeeded, they were defeated.

KEY

- French territory ruled directly from Paris 1812
- Dependent states 1812
- Britain and British occupied territories
- British naval blockade
- British victory
- British defeat
- Inconclusive battle
- Movement of British fleet
- Movement of French fleet

practice sharpened up the navy. He was most demanding of his officers, believing that captains should lead by example to form well-drilled, motivated crews.

Nelson was in a sense a product of the Jervis school of leadership, forming his officers into a "band of brothers" who could be trusted to take the initiative in battle. Nelson himself sometimes went further, acting directly counter to orders. This earned him official disapproval, but in general officers were rewarded for showing offensive spirit. Apart from victories in battle, the British blockade of French ports was an astonishing feat of seamanship and organization. The French often fought well, but they were up against a navy rising to an unprecedented dominance of the world's oceans.

Battle of Copenhagen
In 1801 a fleet under Admiral Sir Hyde Parker with Nelson as his second-in-command was sent to Copenhagen to deal with the threat posed to Britain by the Russian-led League of Armed Neutrality. Nelson disobeyed Parker's orders, opening fire on the Danish fleet, sinking three ships and capturing 12.

FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

REVOLUTION IN 1789 PLUNGED France into a political crisis that led to the abolition of the French monarchy and war with most of Europe. The French navy suffered grievously in this upheaval, with most of its officers either resigning or dismissed and indiscipline rampant. At war with France from 1793, the British at first comfortably had the upper hand at sea. When the Spanish and Dutch became France's allies, however, British complacency was shattered. The threat of a French invasion of England was averted in 1797 by the defeat of the Spanish at Cape St. Vincent, followed by the crushing of the Dutch at Camperdown. But in the same year as these triumphs, mutinies at Spithead and the Nore temporarily paralyzed the Royal Navy, exposing the strain on morale in a long drawn out conflict. Evading a slack British blockade, the French were able to make landings in Ireland and Wales. Britain found its savior in Admiral Horatio Nelson, whose stunning victory over a French fleet at the Nile in 1798 ruined General Napoleon Bonaparte's military expedition to Egypt and heralded a new era of British naval supremacy.

FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

THE FIRST OF JUNE

Date	June 1, 1794
Location	Atlantic Ocean, west of Ushant
Result	British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	FRANCE

COMMANDERS

Richard Howe	Louis Thomas Villaret de Joyeuse

FORCES

Ships: 25	Ships: 26

LOSSES

Men: 1,200 casualties Ships: none	Men: 4,000 casualties, 3,000 captured Ships: 7

THE FIRST OF JUNE

On May 17, 1794, the French Atlantic Fleet commanded by Louis Thomas Villaret de Joyeuse sailed from Brest. Its mission was to ensure the safe arrival in France of a food convoy from the United States, desperately awaited by a hungry people. The Royal Navy's Channel Fleet under Lord Howe had been sent to intercept the food convoy, but Howe was more concerned with seizing an opportunity to engage the French navy. He sighted Villaret's ships on May 25 and gave chase.

On May 28, Howe caught up with the French rear, which was defended by the 110-gun *Révolutionnaire*. The next day a more substantial skirmish ended with damage to ships on both sides. Thick fog then interrupted the engagement, but June 1 dawned clear. Villaret could no longer evade battle.

Howe, holding the weather gage, adopted a bold and unconventional plan that envisaged the annihilation of the enemy fleet. Each of his ships was to pass individually through the French line and come up in the lee of an opponent. The French ships would be raked as their line was crossed, and then blocked from escape to leeward. Superior British gunnery would do the rest. But Howe's attack did not go to smoothly, for he apparently failed to persuade his captains to follow his plan. Only seven of his ships in fact crossed the French line, some making no attempt to do so. This was sufficient, however, to break up the French formation and ensure a brutal pell-mell battle. Howe's flagship *Queen Charlotte* passed behind Villaret's *Montagne* and simultaneously engaged the French flagship and the 90-gun *Jacobin*. *Brunswick*, captained by John Harvey, collided with *Vengeur du Peuple* and the two ships became entangled, firing broadsides hull-to-hull. Harvey was mortally wounded amid the general

Blunderbuss pistol
With its bell mouth ensuring a wide spread of shot at close range, the blunderbuss pistol was a perfect boarding weapon. This example has a spring-loaded bayonet, operated by the rear trigger.

FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

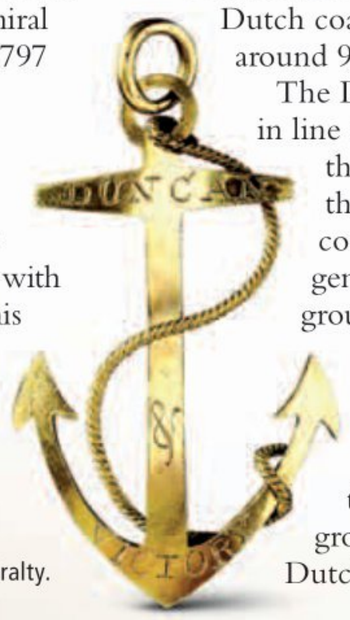
CAMPERDOWN

Date October 11, 1797
Forces British: 16 ships of the line, 8 others; Dutch: 16 ships of the line, 9 others
Losses British: none; Dutch: 11 ships captured

Location Off Kamperduin, Netherlands

The Dutch were driven into an alliance with revolutionary France in 1795. Britain responded by blockading the Dutch coast with a naval force under the command of Admiral Adam Duncan. In summer 1797 the difficult operation of maintaining a permanent close blockade was rendered almost impossible as mutinies spread through the Royal Navy, leaving Duncan with only two loyal ships under his command. Meanwhile the Dutch assembled a fleet off the island of Texel, intended to escort troops for an invasion of the British Isles.

Fortunately for the British nothing came of these plans. By October all thought of invasion had been abandoned for the year, but the Dutch government unwisely instructed Vice-Admiral Jan Willem de Winter to stage a sortie from Texel. By this time order had been restored in the British fleet. Most of Duncan's ships were taking on supplies in Yarmouth when news arrived that the Dutch had come out. Duncan immediately set sail for the Dutch coast. He found de Winter around 9:00 a.m. on October 11.



Fouled anchor
This badge honoring the battle of Camperdown features a "fouled anchor" (wrapped in its chain), the traditional symbol of the British Admiralty.

The Dutch sailed toward Texel in line ahead. Desperate to catch them before they reached the shallows off the Dutch coast, Duncan ordered a general pursuit. In two ragged groups, one led by Duncan in *Venerable* and the other by Vice-Admiral Richard Onslow in *Monarch*, the British bore down upon the Dutch line. Onslow's group engaged and broke the Dutch rear, but Duncan's had a far tougher fight with the center and van. *Venerable* was engaged by three Dutch ships and nearly overwhelmed. Duncan was saved by British ships sailing forward from the rear to help their hard-pressed colleagues—one captained by William Bligh, later to face mutiny on the *Bounty*.

Eventually, superior British gunnery prevailed. The Dutch were subdued after more than two hours' battering. De Winter was taken prisoner on his flagship *Vrijheid*, the surrender of his sword graciously refused by Duncan. The defeat ended Dutch pretensions to be a major naval power.

1775–1831

JACK CRAWFORD

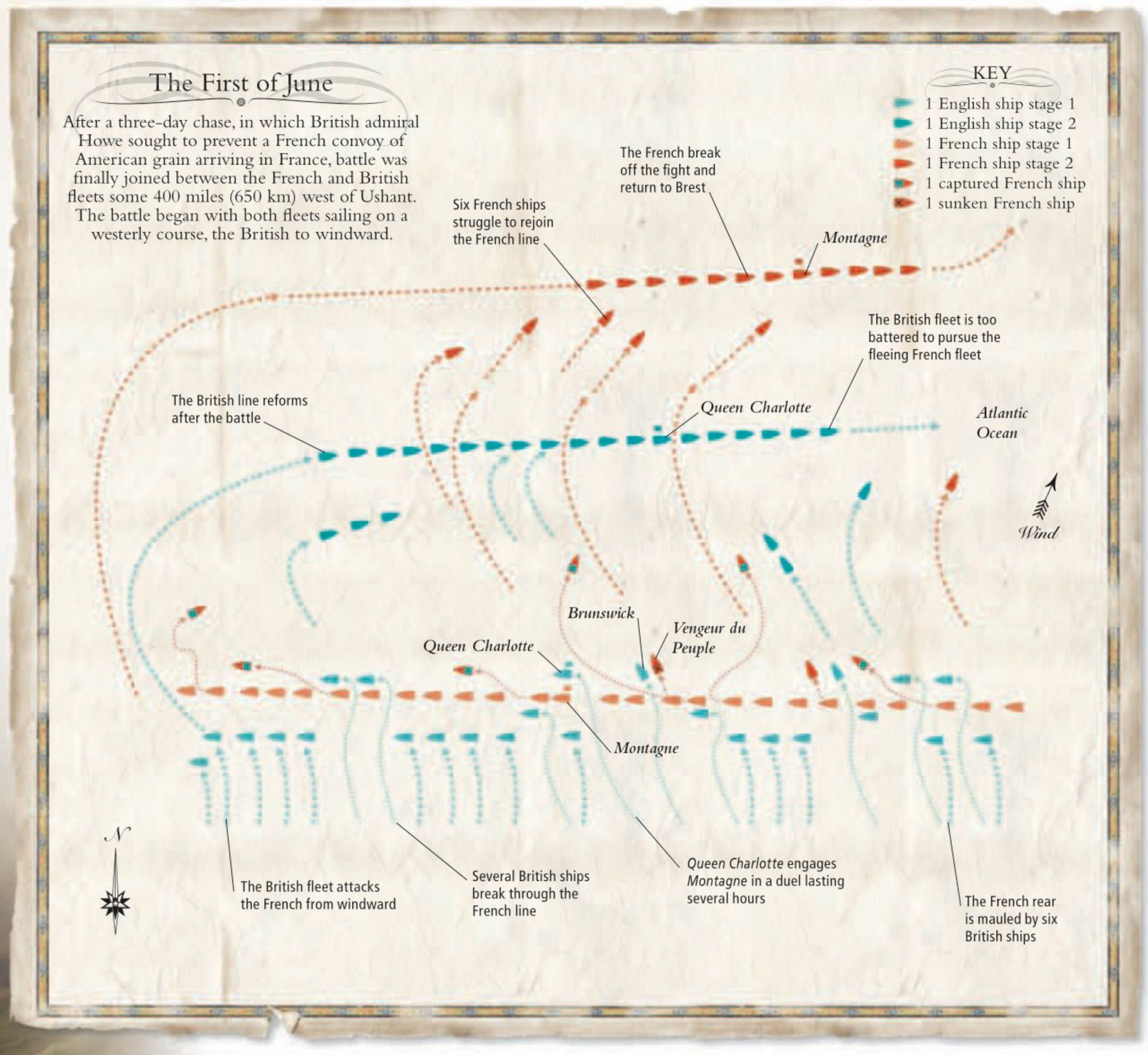
SAILOR HERO OF CAMPERDOWN

Born in Sunderland, northern England, Jack Crawford worked at sea from boyhood. In 1796 he was pressed into the Royal Navy to serve on board *Venerable*, the flagship of Admiral Adam Duncan. At Camperdown he distinguished himself when *Venerable* was surrounded by enemy ships, including the Dutch flagship *Vrijheid*, and the top of its main mast was shot off, bringing down the admiral's flag. It was imperative to restore the flag aloft, for a failure to do so would be taken as a signal of surrender. Under intense gunfire, at great risk to his life, Crawford climbed the broken mast under fire and nailed the flag to the top of the shattered stump. On his return home Crawford was awarded a silver medal by the people of Sunderland. He was later presented to King George III, who gave him a pension of £30 a year. He died of cholera in 1831.

carnage, but lived long enough to force *Vengeur* to strike. There were many other examples of furious close combat.

Villaret exhibited excellent coolness and judgement. Despite his flagship having by far the worse of the exchange with *Queen Charlotte*, the French admiral succeeded in disengaging and reforming a diminished line to leeward. With a number of the British ships disabled, the French were allowed to escape with a clutch of shattered ships under tow. Howe concentrated on securing the seven French ships that had struck. *Vengeur* proved too badly holed to be saved, sinking with several hundred of its crew still aboard.

When the convoy reached France safely on June 12, the revolutionary government hailed the naval operation as a triumph. Yet the British were surely justified in celebrating the First of June. Fighting an equal force, they had taken seven ships for the loss of none and inflicted three times the casualties they suffered.



Engagement off Ushant
The *Brunswick* (center) is seen in action with the *Vengeur du Peuple* (right) and the *Achille*, left). The *Achille* has lost her masts, and the *Vengeur* is soon to sink, having been holed beneath the waterline.

Boarding of San Nicolas
In this climactic moment during the battle of Cape St. Vincent, marines from Nelson's ship *Culloden* (left center foreground) board *San Nicolas*, preparatory to boarding *San José*.

THE BATTLE OF CAPE ST. VINCENT

In early 1797 the Spanish fleet sailed from its Mediterranean harbor at Cartagena, aiming to join the French fleet in Brest. This would create a combined naval force powerful enough to cover a French invasion of Ireland. British admiral Sir John Jervis was stationed off Cape St. Vincent to intercept the Spanish on their way north to France. Spanish admiral Don José de Córdoba intended to pause at Cadiz, but as he left the Mediterranean an easterly gale blew his fleet out into the Atlantic. When the wind permitted he turned back toward Cadiz on a course that brought him into sight of the British fleet early on the misty morning of February 14.

THE DIE IS CAST

Jervis had 15 ships of the line, and when the count of Spanish ships sighted rose to 27 he reportedly said: "Enough of that; the die is cast and if there are 50 sail I will go through them." The Spanish, despite their large numerical advantage, had no desire to fight. Their ships were large but their crews included few experienced sailors. Jervis had ensured that his men were superbly trained and led by able captains keen for action. The British ships formed a line ahead and astern of Jervis's flagship *Victory*. With Captain Thomas Troubridge's *Culloden* in the lead, they sailed into a gap between two columns of the approaching Spanish fleet, firing broadsides as they passed through the enemy formation. Once they were beyond the rearmost Spanish ship they tacked around in succession to pursue de Córdoba's fleet still keeping course for Cadiz. This maneuver was complicated by the intervention of ships from the Spanish column to leeward, which briefly attempted to break through the British line to join their colleagues to windward.

THE PATENT BRIDGE

Commodore Horatio Nelson had only joined Jervis's fleet the night before the battle, transferring from a frigate to Captain Ralph Miller's 74-gun *Captain*. He was near the rear of the British line. As his turn approached to tack in succession he instead ordered Miller to wear ship, reversing direction out of the line. This was contrary to orders, but a justifiable intiative, since Nelson could see that the Spanish were threatening to reassemble their split force and escape to Cadiz. *Captain* boldly engaged the center of the Spanish windward column, which included the 130-gun *Santisima Trinidad*, fighting alone until joined first by *Culloden* and then by Captain Cuthbert Collingwood's *Excellent*. At the climax of the battle the Spanish first-rate *San José* and the second-rate *San Nicolas*, both with shattered masts and corpse-strewn decks, became inextricably entangled. Although *Captain* was by this time uncontrollable, with its foretopmast over the side and wheel shot away, the ship's marines (and Nelson himself) boarded first *San Nicolas* and from there took *San José*—the dramatic double-boarding becoming known as "Nelson's patent bridge for boarding first rates." The slaughter ended with the ceremonious surrender of swords by Spanish officers.

Jervis's ships were in no fit shape to prevent the main part of the Spanish fleet reaching Cadiz. But four Spanish ships had been taken by a numerically inferior enemy and France's hopes of combining its naval forces with those of Spain were dashed. It was a fine victory that brought Jervis an earldom and Nelson a knighthood.

FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

BATTLE OF CAPE ST. VINCENT

Date	February 14, 1797
Location	Off the Algarve, southern Portugal
Result	British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	SPAIN

COMMANDERS

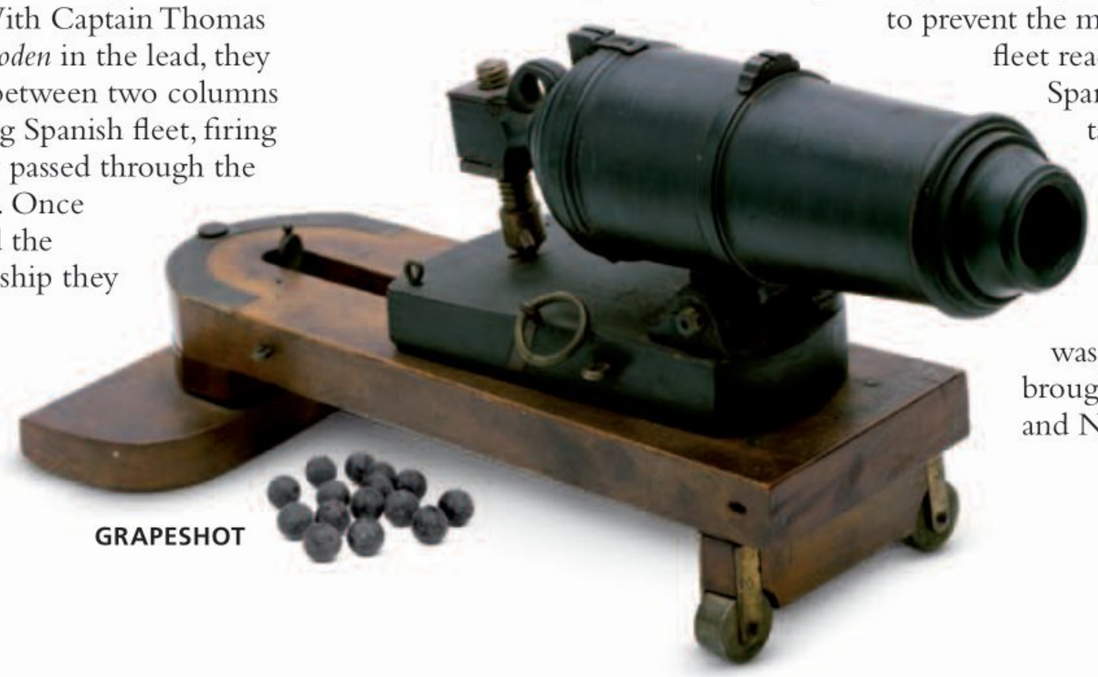
Sir John Jervis	Don José de Córdoba

FORCES

Ships: 15 ships of the line	**Ships:** 27 ships of the line

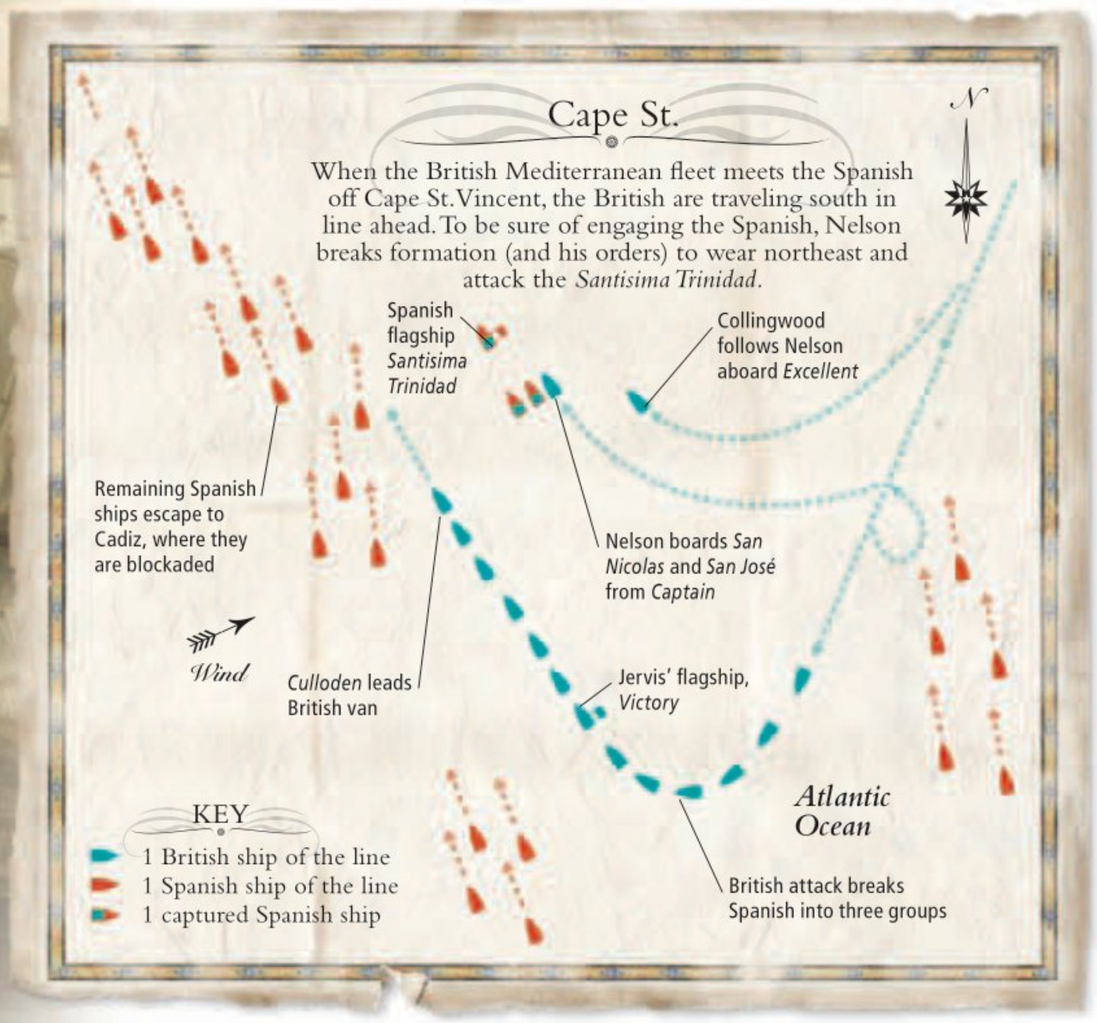
LOSSES

Men: 300 casualties **Ships:** none	**Men:** c.1,000 casualties **Ships:** 4 ships captured



Carronade
The carronade was a short smoothbore cannon used by the Royal Navy from the 1770s to the 1860s.

GRAPESHOT



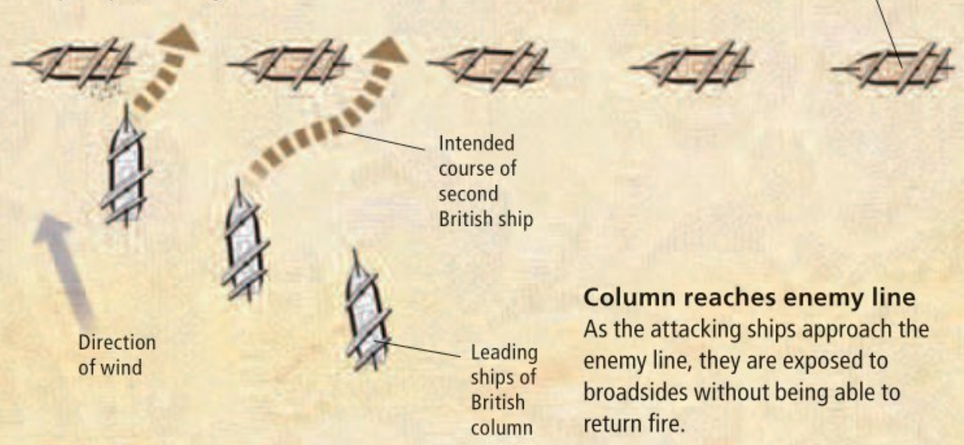
MAN-OF-WAR TACTICS

BREAKING THE LINE

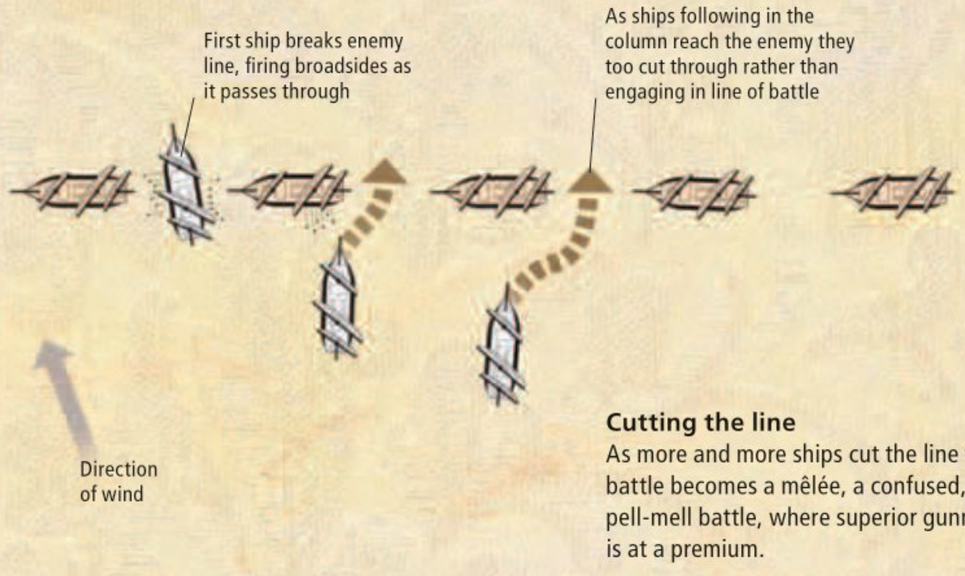
TACTICS IN THE AGE OF NELSON

The line of battle used by fleets in combat from the 17th century was intended to ensure that each ship came alongside an enemy for a broadside duel. By the late 18th century many British naval commanders had become convinced that breaking the enemy line offered better opportunities for a decisive victory. First used by Admiral George Rodney at the Saints in 1782, breaking the line was brought to perfection by Admiral Nelson at the battle of Trafalgar and Duncan at Camperdown. Although this tactic exposed the attacking ships to fire they could not return during the approach, they could rake enemy vessels from stem to stern as they passed through and also prevent enemy ships withdrawing by engaging them from the leeward side. The attacking fleet would hope to outnumber the ships in the sections of the enemy line that they attacked, while the rest of the enemy ships were left out of the fight. Nelson favored breaking the line above all as a way of precipitating a "pell-mell" battle in which captains could use individual initiative to take on and destroy their opponents.

Cutting through the line
The attacking fleet, holding the weather gage (the windward position), bears down upon the enemy in columns. One by one, as they reach the line, the ships attempt to pass through it to leeward.

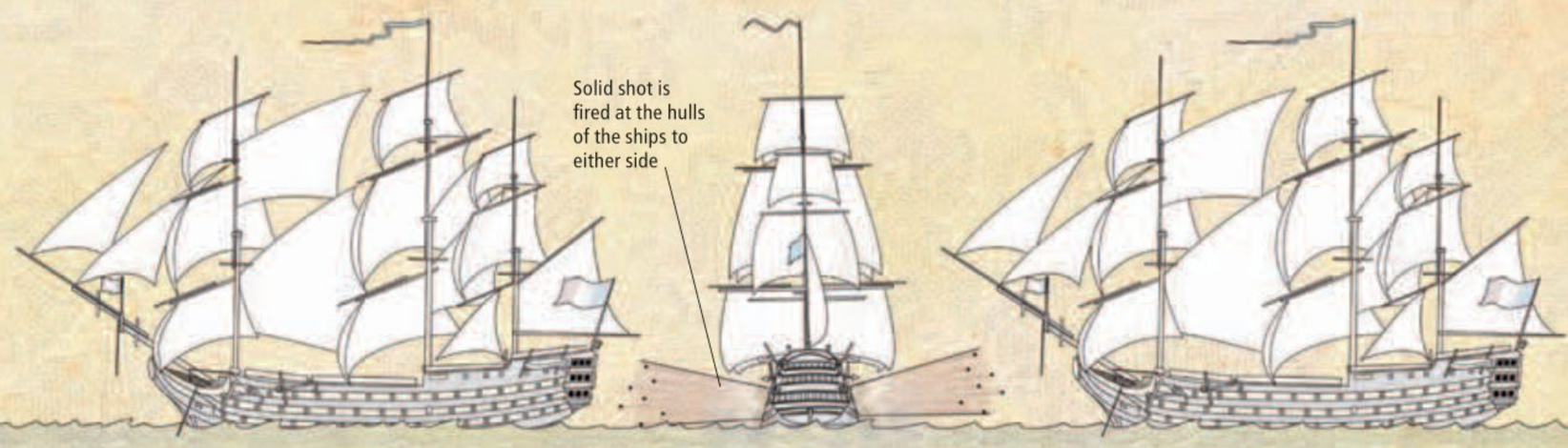


Column reaches enemy line
As the attacking ships approach the enemy line, they are exposed to broadsides without being able to return fire.



Cutting the line
As more and more ships cut the line the battle becomes a mêlée, a confused, pell-mell battle, where superior gunnery is at a premium.

Raking fire
As a ship cuts through the enemy line, it can unleash a broadside in either direction, while the enemy is unable to return fire. Raking fire sent shot and splinters through the entire length of a ship's decks, causing maximum casualties to the crew.



FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

THE BATTLE OF THE NILE

Date	August 1–2, 1798
Location	Near Alexandria, Egypt
Result	British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	FRANCE

COMMANDERS

Horatio Nelson	François-Paul Brueys

FORCES

Ships: 14 ships of the line	**Ships:** 13 ships of the line, 4 frigates

LOSSES

Men: 800 **Ships:** none	**Men:** 2,000–5,000 **Ships:** 11 ships of the line, 2 frigates

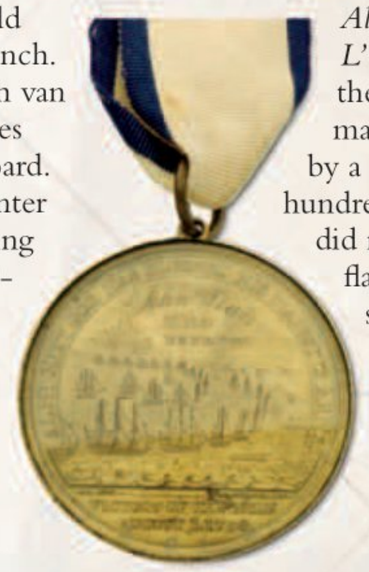
THE BATTLE OF THE NILE

On May 19, 1798, General Napoleon Bonaparte set sail from Toulon for Egypt, his army transports escorted by 13 ships of the line and four frigates commanded by Admiral François-Paul Brueys. Bonaparte was fortunate to avoid interception by a Royal Navy force under Admiral Horatio Nelson, which was vainly criss-crossing the Mediterranean in search of the French convoy. Bonaparte landed his army in Aboukir Bay at the start of July, and it was there, a month later, that Nelson at last came upon Brueys.

Nelson found the French ships anchored in line in the sandy bay with their port side to the shore. Although it was dusk he signaled an immediate attack. His captains were ordered to concentrate on the French van and center; because of the wind direction, the ships at the French rear would find it impossible to join the fight and could be rolled up later. The British ships, all 74s except the 50-gun *Leander*, entered the bay with *Goliath* leading. Probably on his own initiative, Captain Thomas Foley took *Goliath* around the head of the French line and into the shallow inshore water; four others followed him. This was a maneuver for which the French were wholly unprepared. The gun ports on their landward sides were closed and the decks uncleared.

As darkness fell a savage fight was joined. Thirteen British ships (one, *Culloden*, having run aground on a reef) anchored to hold position alongside the French. The five 74s of the French van were battered by broadsides from both port and starboard. The larger ships in the center of the French line, including Brueys's three-decker 120-gun flagship *L'Orient*, at first fared better. The *Bellerophon* took terrible punishment from the flagship's guns, drifting dismasted out of the fighting.

The horrors and heroism of that night were to become legendary. The captain of *Le Tonnant*, Dupetit-Thouars, with one arm and both legs shot away, had himself propped up in a barrel of bran to continue the fight. *Le Guerrier*, first in the French line, went on fighting with only one gun left firing, until the British sent a boat across to the shattered ship to persuade her captain to strike. Nelson, aboard his flagship *Vanguard*, had his forehead cut open by grapeshot and, temporarily blinded, thought he was dying. The climactic moment came at around 10 p.m.



Nile victory medal
Dedicated to John Lewes of HMS *Defence*, this medal shows the British fleet going into action and the French fleet at anchor.

Battered by broadsides from *Alexander* and *Swiftsure*, *L'Orient* caught fire. When the flame spread to her magazine, she was destroyed by a gigantic explosion. The hundred survivors from *L'Orient* did not include Brueys or his flag captain Casabianca, whose son, refusing to leave the doomed ship, would later be immortalized in verse as "the boy who stood on the burning deck."

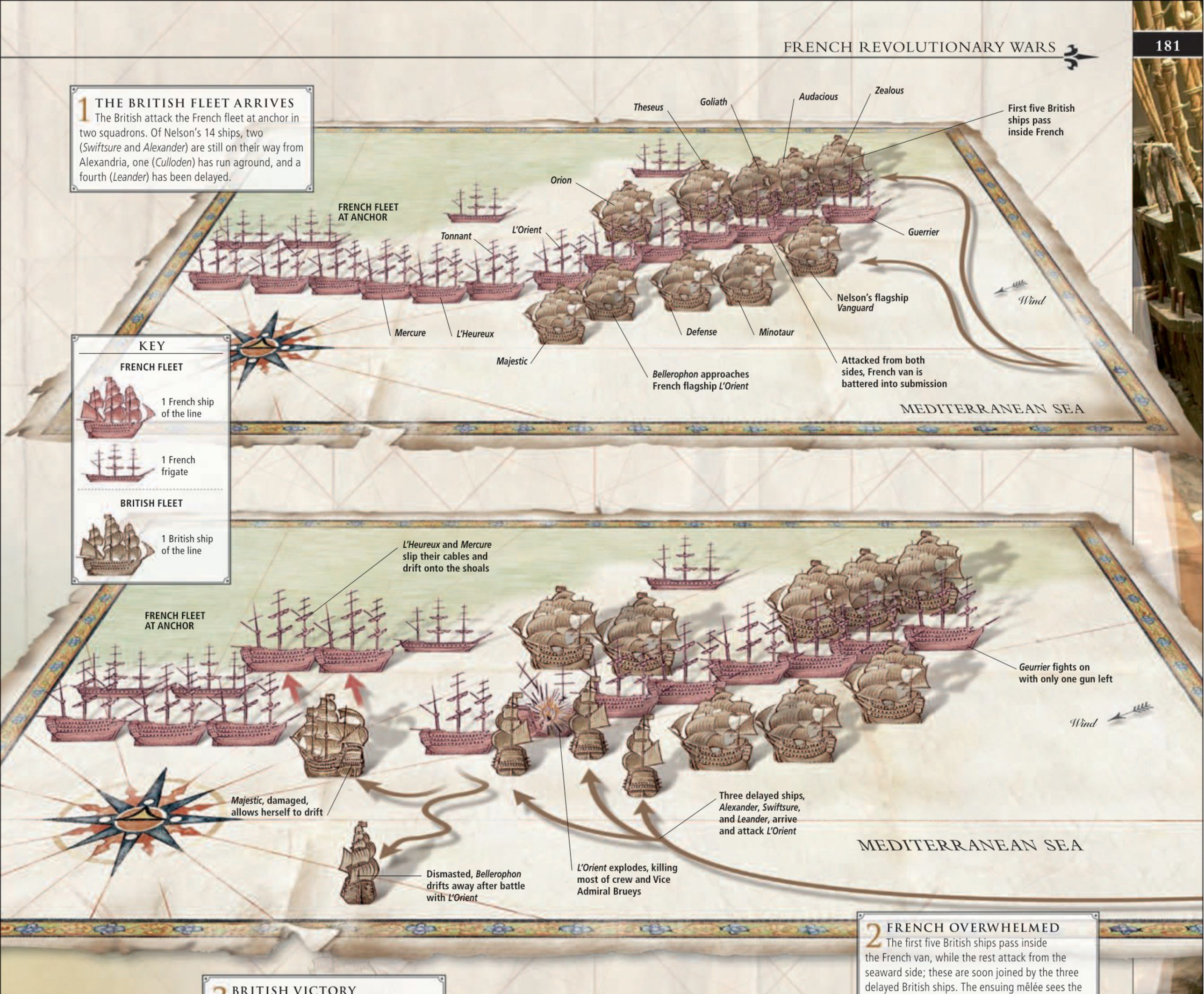
The ships in the rear of the French line, under Villeneuve, were impotent spectators of this immense carnage. When the sun rose on a bay floating with dead bodies and wreckage, the futility of continuing resistance by the French was apparent. Villeneuve seized a chance to slip away, thereby saving two ships of the line and a couple of frigates, only to face unfair accusations of cowardice that he would seek to efface seven years later at the battle of Trafalgar. Nelson's phenomenal victory (nine French ships of the line taken, two destroyed) made him a national hero.

The start of the action
The French fleet lies at anchor in Aboukir Bay at 6:30 p.m. The British fleet sails into position from right to left, *Goliath* rounding the head of the French line. Four French frigates lie to the left, with Aboukir Fort in the background.

> "THE WHOLE BAY WAS COVERED WITH DEAD BODIES, MANGLED, WOUNDED, AND SCORCHED, NOT A BIT OF CLOTHES ON THEM EXCEPT THEIR TROUSERS."
>
> **JOHN NICOL**, A SAILOR ABOARD HMS *GOLIATH*

1 THE BRITISH FLEET ARRIVES

The British attack the French fleet at anchor in two squadrons. Of Nelson's 14 ships, two (*Swiftsure* and *Alexander*) are still on their way from Alexandria, one (*Culloden*) has run aground, and a fourth (*Leander*) has been delayed.



2 FRENCH OVERWHELMED

The first five British ships pass inside the French van, while the rest attack from the seaward side; these are soon joined by the three delayed British ships. The ensuing mêlée sees the French van and center largely destroyed.

3 BRITISH VICTORY

After a pause, the British attack the French rear, which is now commanded by Rear Admiral Villeneuve. While the rest of his fleet is overpowered, Villeneuve escapes with two ships of the line (*Guillaume Tell* and *Généreux*) and two frigates.

DESTRUCTION OF L'ORIENT

The French warship *L'Orient* explodes during the Battle of the Nile, on May 19, 1798, killing Vice Admiral Brueys and most of his crew. Both sides were so shocked by the explosion that firing ceased for several minutes. In the center of the picture, British warship *Swiftsure* is rocked by a wave caused by the blast. In the foreground sailors cling to wreckage, while others are hauled from the water.

NAVAL CANNON

CANNON WERE FIRST USED at sea in the 14th century, and evolved through wrought iron, cast bronze, and cast iron production methods. The very earliest of these were breech-loaders, but muzzle-loaders quickly took over and held sway for four centuries until the advent of shell-firing breech-loaders in the 19th century. Naval cannon varied enormously in terms of caliber and size, the largest being the "cannon royal" that fired a 66 lb shot, down to smaller guns such as the culverin, which had a shot of around 17 lb.

ROPE WADDING Coils of old rope were beaten into shape to make wadding. These were then used to hold powder and ball firmly in place in the barrel of the cannon.

SALT BOX This held two ready powder charges stored side by side, and had leather straps and fittings to prevent sparks. Salt inside the box kept the charges dry.

CARTRIDGE Fabric sheets were sewn into cylinders as containers for powder charges, each bag being filled with a precise amount of powder to suit a particular gun.

Matches were lit at the start of battles and then placed in the match tub

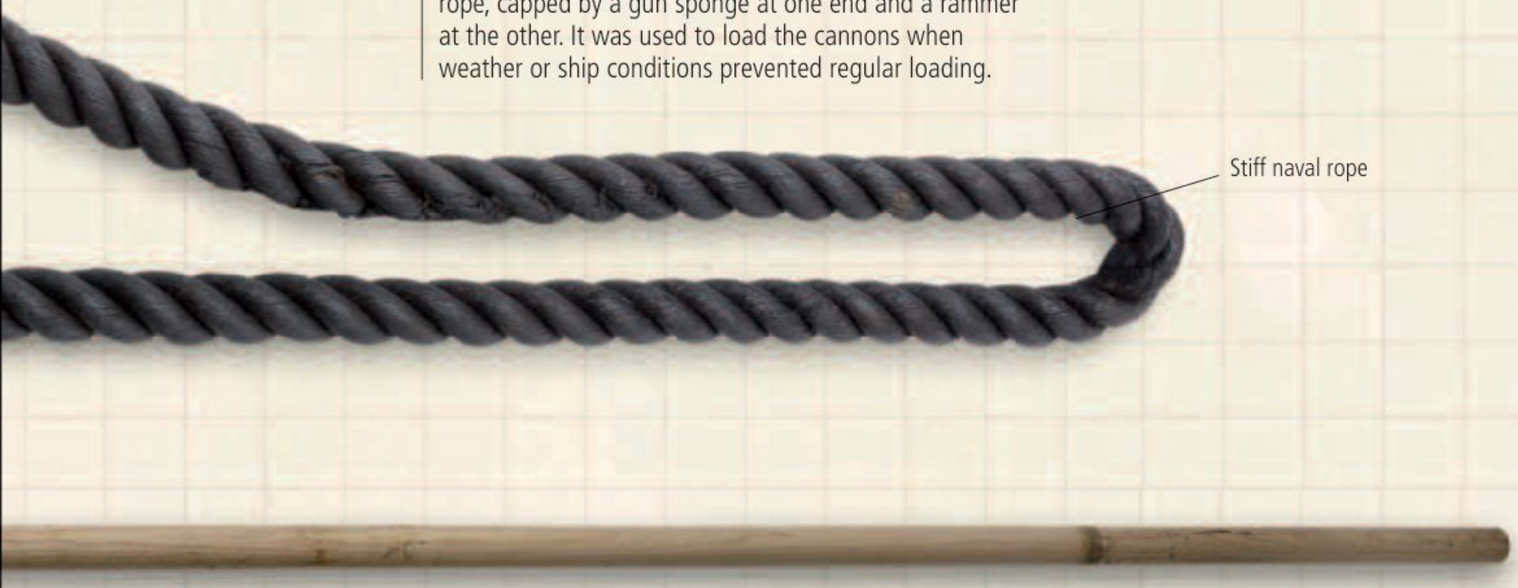
MATCH TUB This small wooden keg was used to hold slow matches, which were kept burning behind the gun, to ignite it if the gun lock failed in some way. Made from hemp, the matches were boiled in an alcohol and saltpeter solution, which caused the matches to burn slowly.

CASE OF WOOD These wooden cylinders were used for holding and carrying a single cartridge safely. As with gun carriages, elm was the preferred wood because of its anti-splinter properties.

GUN DRILL

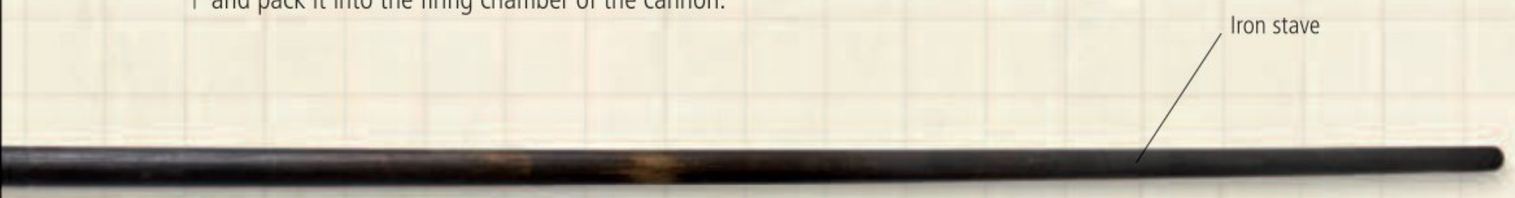
Naval cannon were usually mounted on wheeled wooden carriages, allowing them to run backward under recoil. The backward motion was controlled by restraining ropes running around the breech or the carriage. The ropes were critical—a 32-pounder gun could fly 50 ft (15 m) across a deck if allowed to freewheel. Carriages were often made of elm, which produced less splinters than other woods if struck by an enemy shell. Despite such precautions, being a gunner was an extremely dangerous job, with recoil and accidental explosions being just two of the hazards.

FLEXIBLE SPONGE AND RAMMER The flexible sponge and rammer consisted of a single piece of stiff naval rope, capped by a gun sponge at one end and a rammer at the other. It was used to load the cannons when weather or ship conditions prevented regular loading.

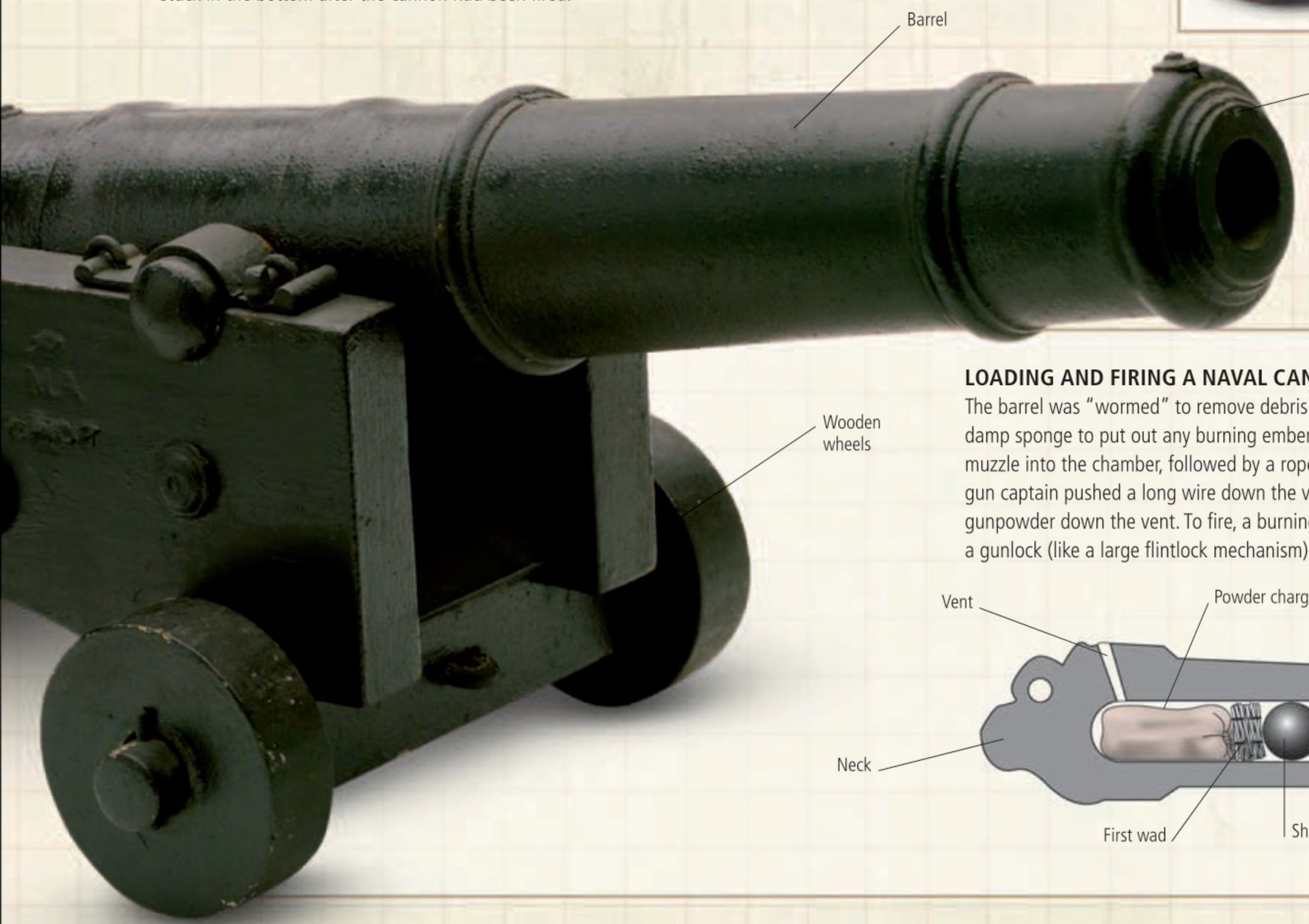


SPONGE This sheepskin sponge was kept damp and was pushed down the barrel of the cannon after every shot had been fired. This was to extinguish any residual burning embers, thereby preventing accidental discharges when the next cartridge was loaded.

RAMMER The rammer featured a wooden stave and concave ramming head, and was used to push the charge, wads, and shot down the full length of the bore and pack it into the firing chamber of the cannon.



WORM This double-piece iron corkscrew was used to extract wad and cartridge if a cannon had to be unloaded, or was used to remove flannel cartridge bases stuck in the bottom after the cannon had been fired.



SHELL TYPES

Naval ammunition generally had three purposes: punch holes in the sides of an enemy ship's hull; bring down the masts and sails; and kill enemy personnel. For these contrasting goals, various types of cannon shot were developed. Accuracy and range with anything other than round shot was generally poor, but these munitions were principally used when ships were in close quarters.

ROUND SHOT A single iron ball the size of the cannon's bore, used for its penetrating effect against the ship's thick wooden hull.

CHAIN SHOT Two or more cannon balls linked together—when fired, chain shot would scythe down enemy crew.

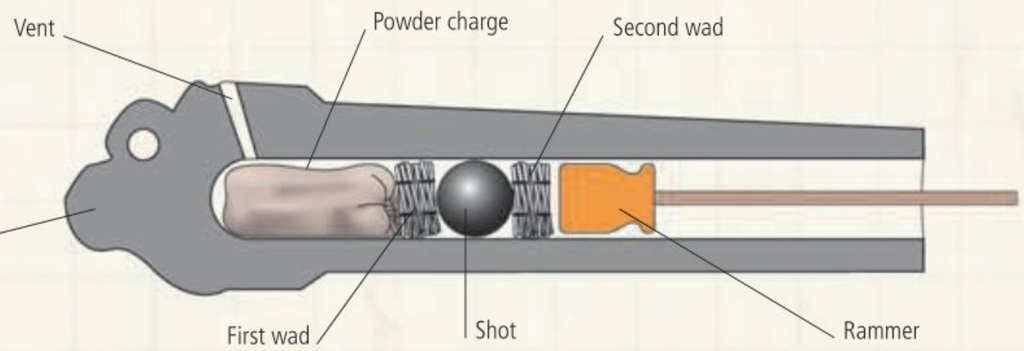
BAR SHOT Two or more pieces of shot linked by either a fixed bar or by extendable bar sections. Bar shot was designed to hack away at lines and rigging as it flew over the top of the ship's deck.

GRAPESHOT Balls of metal inside a tin or canvas bag. The container shattered when cannon were fired, producing a hideous shotgun-like effect against enemy crew.

24-POUNDER This 24-pounder cannon is from the famous ship HMS *Victory*. She also carried 32- and 12-pounder cannon.

LOADING AND FIRING A NAVAL CANNON

The barrel was "wormed" to remove debris from the previous shot, then "swabbed" with a damp sponge to put out any burning embers. A fabric powder charge was loaded down the muzzle into the chamber, followed by a rope wad, then the shot, and then another wad. The gun captain pushed a long wire down the vent hole to prick open the charge, and poured gunpowder down the vent. To fire, a burning slow match was applied to the vent hole, or a gunlock (like a large flintlock mechanism) was triggered.



NAPOLEONIC WARS

RETURNING FROM HIS ILL-FATED EXPEDITION to Egypt, Napoleon made himself ruler of France as First Consul in 1799, and declared himself Emperor in 1804. He continued France's Revolutionary Wars, but with megalomanic ambition replacing ideological aspirations. Britain had no hope of resisting Napoleon's armies, which dominated in Europe, and was thus utterly dependent upon its naval strength. The French could not hope to contest this on their own, but could challenge in alliance with other naval powers. In 1800 the formation of an anti-British League of Armed Neutrality by the Scandinavian countries under Russian leadership threatened to block Britain's access to essential naval supplies from the Baltic. Decisive action by Nelson at Copenhagen showed how seriously the British took this threat. A greater peril for Britain arose when Napoleon assembled an invasion force on the Channel coast in 1805. Nelson's famous victory at Trafalgar both scotched the invasion plans and ended the naval war as a contest of fleets. Through the last decade of the Napoleonic Wars there were many smaller actions fought, but the Royal Navy's command of the sea was unshakeable.

THE BATTLE OF COPENHAGEN

Hoping to detach Denmark from the Russian-led League of Armed Neutrality, Britain assembled a fleet at Yarmouth in eastern England under Admiral Sir Hyde Parker, with Vice Admiral Nelson as second-in-command. Parker's orders were to see if the Danes would agree to abandon the league and, if not, open hostilities. Once Denmark was overcome, he was to enter the Baltic and attack the Russians. Nelson was for speedy and decisive action; Parker prevaricated. Even he was aware, though, that the question of Denmark must be settled before the winter ice melted, releasing the Russian fleet from its ports.

On March 30, the British fleet sailed through the narrows between Sweden and Denmark to confront the Danish fleet in front of Copenhagen. The Danes took up a strong defensive position with a line of ships and floating batteries anchored in the King's Channel in front of Copenhagen. The attackers would have to sail through shallow waters and past treacherous shoals, and would also come under fire from the powerful Trekroner shore battery at the northern end of the channel. This mission was entrusted to Nelson with 12 ships of the line—those with the shallowest draft—supported by frigates, sloops, and bomb-ketches. Nelson's plan was simple. His ships would sail in line and each would anchor opposite an opponent to blast it with broadsides. When enough of the Danish guns were silenced, the bomb-ketches would move forward and threaten Copenhagen with mortars, obliging the Danes to cede.

"DOWNRIGHT FIGHTING"

The operation began on the morning of April 2. Initially it was a disaster. Captain Hardy had spent the previous night in a rowing boat taking soundings of the channel, but to no avail. One of Nelson's ships of the line ran aground immediately and two more were stuck on the shoal known as the Middle Ground. Nelson pressed on regardless. His flagship *Elephant* and the other ships duly anchored a cable's length from their

Pocket telescope
Legend relates that Nelson lifted his telescope to his blind eye at Copenhagen, allowing him to ignore Admiral Parker's signal to withdraw. The story is almost certainly apocryphal.

NAPOLEONIC WARS

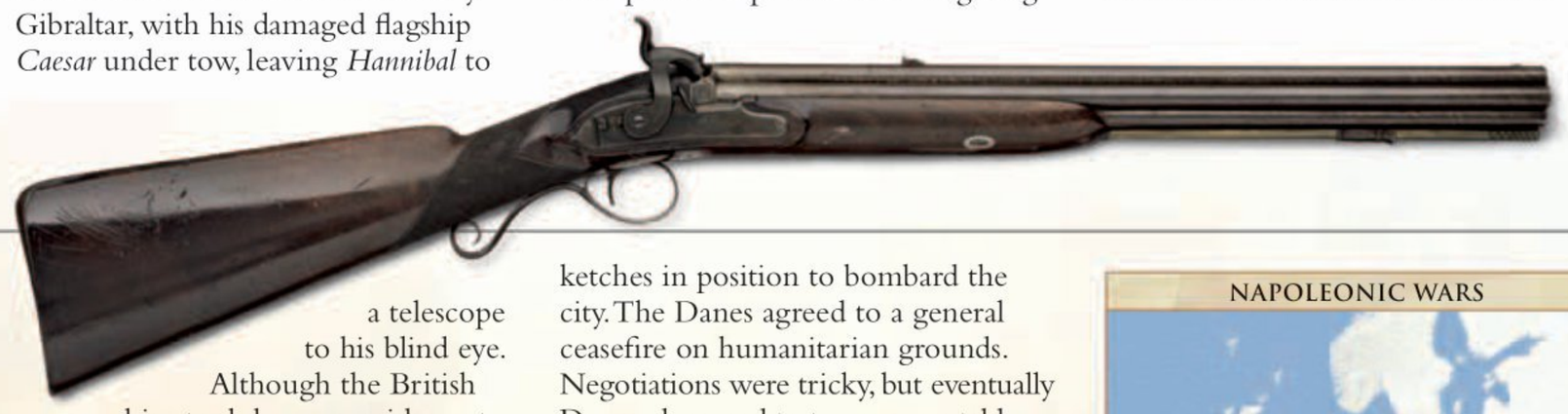
ALGECIRAS BAY

Date July 8-12, 1801
Forces British: 7 ships of the line; French and Spanish: 8 ships of the line
Losses British: 1 ship captured; French and Spanish: 2 ships sunk, 1 ship captured
Location Off southern Spain

Admiral Charles-Alexandre Durand-Linois, bound for Cadiz with three ships of the line and a frigate, found the port under blockade by a superior British force. He moored in Algeciras Bay, under the protection of shore batteries. On July 8, British rear admiral Sir James Saumarez led six third-rates to attack the French, but lack of wind and tricky shoals made it difficult to engage. The British suffered damage from the shore guns and Spanish gunboats as well as Linois' broadsides. The 74-gun *Hannibal* ran aground at the northern end of the bay and stuck. After five punishing hours Saumarez withdrew to nearby Gibraltar, with his damaged flagship *Caesar* under tow, leaving *Hannibal* to be captured. While Linois refitted, one French and four Spanish ships of the line arrived to help him escape from the bay.

On July 12, Linois headed for Cadiz with Saumarez in pursuit. The British admiral had been joined by the 74-gun *Superb*. Fresh and undamaged, *Superb* pulled ahead and, during the night, got between two Spanish first-rates, firing broadsides against both. In the darkness the Spanish ships went on firing long after *Superb* had gone, pouring shot into one another. Both sank with heavy loss of life. One French ship was also captured, but Captain Aimable Troude's *Formidable* distinguished itself by fighting off four British pursuers to reach Cadiz.

Volley gun
Multi-shot firearms such as this seven-barreled volley gun, produced for the Royal Navy in 1795, allowed marines to fire several bullets at once.



opponents and exchanged fire with the usual murderous results—"downright fighting" Nelson called it. The Danes fought courageously, reinforcing their ships from the shore as casualties rose.

Admiral Parker was meanwhile stationed to the north with eight ships of the line. Seeing Nelson's ships in trouble, he signaled for him to withdraw, apparently intending it as a permission rather than an order. Nelson chose to ignore the signal, though most likely without the theatrical gesture of placing a telescope to his blind eye.

Although the British ships took heavy punishment, their gunnery gradually overcame Danish resistance. By 2:30 p.m. the firing had ended, but the Danes had not surrendered. Nelson threatened to use fire ships; he also had his bomb-ketches in position to bombard the city. The Danes agreed to a general ceasefire on humanitarian grounds. Negotiations were tricky, but eventually Denmark agreed to terms acceptable to the British. Nelson was made a viscount and went on to lead a demonstration against the Russians in the Baltic, but the League of Armed Neutrality was already disintegrating.

> "IT IS WARM WORK, AND THIS DAY MAY BE THE LAST TO ANY OF US AT A MOMENT."
>
> **HORATIO NELSON**, AT THE BATTLE OF COPENHAGEN, 1801

Close action
Nelson's ships are depicted anchored and in action against the Danish line. Bomb vessels behind the lines fire shells over both fleets toward Copenhagen.

NAPOLEONIC WARS

THE BATTLE OF COPENHAGEN

Date	April 2, 1801
Location	Copenhagen, Denmark
Result	British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	DENMARK

COMMANDERS

Hyde Parker **Horatio Nelson**	**Olfert Fischer**

FORCES

Ships: 20 ships of the line, 5 frigates, 4 sloops, 7 bomb-ketches	**Ships:** 7 ships of the line, 28 other ships

LOSSES

Men: 264 **Ships:** none	**Men:** c.790 **Ships:** 2 sunk, 12 captured

NAPOLEONIC WARS

THE BATTLE OF TRAFALGAR

Date October 21, 1805
Location Off Cape Trafalgar, southern Spain
Result British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN

FRANCE AND SPAIN

COMMANDERS

Horatio Nelson

Pierre-Charles Villeneuve
Federico Gravina

FORCES

Ships: 27 ships of the line

Ships: 33 ships of the line

LOSSES

Men: 449 killed, 1,246 wounded
Ships: none

Men: 4,500 killed, 2,400 wounded, c.7,000 taken prisoner
Ships: 1 sunk, 17 captured

THE BATTLE OF TRAFALGAR

In summer 1805 Emperor Napoleon was encamped with his Grande Armée at Boulogne, ready to invade Britain. He required the French navy and its Spanish allies to guarantee the non-intervention of the Royal Navy for sufficient days to get his army across the Channel. The French Mediterranean squadron under Vice Admiral Pierre-Charles Villeneuve succeeded in joining up with the Spanish under Admiral Federico Gravina, but failed to help France's Atlantic squadron escape the British blockade at Brest. Pessimistic about his chances of victory against the Royal Navy, Villeneuve took refuge with the Spanish at Cadiz. Napoleon abandoned his invasion plan. Furious with Villeneuve, he ordered another admiral take over his command.

Through September the British assembled a fleet off Cadiz. Admiral Nelson arrived to take command of this blockade force on September 29. His frigates kept watch on the Spanish port while his ships of the line waited beyond sight of shore. Despite having an inferior force by any count of ships, guns, or men, Nelson planned a battle of annihilation. He intended to attack in two columns, cutting the French-Spanish line so the center and rear squadrons were isolated from the van. His captains would then use their initiative to win a "pell-mell" battle.

Meanwhile, Villeneuve decided to sail before his replacement arrived, hoping to redeem his honour. On October 19, with much delay and confusion, the 33 French and Spanish ships of the line began to leave Cadiz. The following day, they headed for Gibraltar with Nelson's ships in pursuit. After some confused maneuvering, daybreak on October 21 found the two fleets near Cape Trafalgar. At around 7:30 a.m. Villeneuve ordered his fleet to wear together and turn back for Cadiz. He did not in fact

> "I WAS AWAKENED BY THE CHEERS OF THE CREW AND THEIR RUSHING TO GET A GLIMPSE OF THE HOSTILE FLEET."
>
> **BRITISH OFFICER,** DESCRIBING THE JOY OF ARRIVING AT TRAFALGAR

intend to avoid a battle, but to fight closer to a friendly port. Nelson, however, was worried that his prey was going to escape him and urgently sought to engage the combined fleet.

Through the morning the British sorted themselves into two groups, one (to windward) led by Nelson on *Victory* and the other (to leeward) led by Vice Admiral Collingwood on the 100-gun *Royal Sovereign*. They bore down at a right-angle to the line of the combined fleet. It was a day of light wind and the British ships, painted with a yellow and black checker pattern to distinguish them from the enemy, made slow progress.

As the fleets closed Nelson hoisted a series of signals, including the famous "England expects that every man will do his duty." Once the fighting finally started, the terrifying risks involved in Nelson's battle plan became plainly evident. Aiming to cross the line behind Villeneuve's flagship *Bucentaure* in the French-Spanish center, *Victory* was under fire from enemy broadsides for 40 minutes during its agonizingly slow approach, able to reply only with its few forward guns. Collingwood's faster *Royal Sovereign* took less punishment approaching the enemy line but was then isolated, fighting five enemy ships at once while slower British ships came up to join her. Yet both flagships made excellent use of the opportunity presented by cutting the line. *Victory* raked *Bucentaure* with a devastating broadside through its stern that killed almost 200 men. *Royal Sovereign* did the same to *Santa Anna*, flagship of Spanish admiral Alava, causing some 400 casualties at a stroke.

As more British ships came up, the pell-mell battle Nelson had envisaged developed in the center and rear of the French-Spanish line. In a series of close engagements the British used superior gunnery to batter the French and Spanish ships, causing huge casualties and silencing their guns. The French and Spanish fired high to dismast British ships, which they then tried to board.

Santisima Trinidad surrenders
The Battle of Trafalgar at 3:00 p.m: on the left, with her masts destroyed, the Spanish flagship *Santisima Trinidad* (painted orange) surrenders to *Neptune*. At the time she was the largest warship in the world.

1758–1805

HORATIO NELSON

BRITISH ADMIRAL

Although Nelson's father was an undistinguished Norfolk clergyman, the family had excellent connections in British naval administration. At sea from the age of 12, Nelson became the youngest captain in the Royal Navy in 1779. He saw service in the Caribbean during the American Revolutionary War, but it was his performance during the French Revolutionary and Napoleonic Wars that brought him undying fame. Nelson was particularly recognized for employing the battle tactic of cutting through the enemy's lines, which although not entirely novel, had never been adopted to such successful effect. Always leading from the front, he lost the sight of his right eye in the siege of Calvi, Corsica, in 1793 and his right arm in a raid on Tenerife four years later.

BIRTH OF A LEGEND

He first won renown for his initiative at the battle of Cape St.Vincent in 1797, and his stunning victory at the battle of the Nile in 1798 made him a national hero. Nelson's tendency to obey orders only when it suited him, displayed most famously at Copenhagen in 1801, was not to everyone's taste, and his liaison with Lady Emma Hamilton damaged his reputation, but he won the devoted admiration of the captains who served under him. After his death at Trafalgar, he was accorded a state funeral of unparalleled splendor.

Death of Nelson
Nelson dies below decks aboard HMS *Victory*, three hours after being mortally wounded by a French sniper.

Men on both sides fought with the utmost courage amid the indescribable carnage of the battle.

In the attempt to cross the line, *Victory* became entangled with the 74-gun *Redoutable*, commanded by the able Captain Jean-Jacques Lucas. *Redoutable*'s rigging was swarming with infantry armed with muskets and grenades, intent on clearing *Victory*'s upper decks preparatory to boarding. At about 1:15 p.m. a musket ball struck Nelson, who was standing in full view on the quarterdeck, overseeing the battle. It passed down through his shoulder and lodged alongside his spine. He was carried below, where he would die more than three hours later. *Victory* was saved from being taken by the arrival of the 98-gun *Temeraire*, which hit *Redoutable* with a broadside that killed or wounded some 200 men. *Temeraire* then drifted into *Redoutable*, while disabling *Fougueux* with a broadside from its disengaged side. Both *Redoutable* and *Fougueux* struck their colors to *Temeraire*. A similar pattern of hard-

Spanish shot
This iron cannonball was found embedded in *Victory*'s bow. It was fired from a Spanish 40-pounder, the heaviest cannon used at Trafalgar.

fought combat and eventual surrender was being played out everywhere in the French-Spanish center and rear. Some of the first British ships to engage took severe punishment. *Belleisle*, which followed *Royal Sovereign*, was engaged at different times by seven French and Spanish ships and left as a dismasted hulk with 126 men dead or wounded. The captain of *Mars*, George Duff, had his head struck off by a cannonball, one of 300 casualties the ship suffered. But the French and Spanish were overwhelmed as fresh British ships came up. *Santa Anna* struck to *Royal Sovereign* after an engagement that also left Collingwood's flagship disabled. The Spanish giant *Santisima Trinidad* surrendered after losing all her masts. Although barely able to fight from the moment it was raked by *Victory*, *Bucentaure* held out for three hours before Villeneuve struck his colors. Amid the slaughter, the surrenders were conducted with dignity and exchange of compliments.

Meanwhile 10 ships in the French-Spanish van had been left out of the fight, as Nelson planned. By 2:30 p.m. they had with difficulty maneuvered back against the wind and were approaching the scene of combat. By then seven ships of the combined fleet had already surrendered, but the fighting had left many of the British ships in poor shape. If Dumanoir had led a determined counterattack it might have turned the battle around. But after a half-hearted exchange of fire the French admiral fled southward with four ships. Two other ships from the van were captured by the British, while the rest were among a small band of survivors led by Spanish admiral Gravina back to Cadiz.

Before Nelson died *Victory*'s captain was able to inform him that his final battle had been a triumphant success. Nelson's final words were: "Now I am satisfied. Thank God, I have done my duty." By the end of the day eight French and nine Spanish ships had been captured—more than half the entire fleet. One French ship, the *Achille*, had exploded. No British ships had been lost.

The victory won at the Battle of Trafalgar was a great one for the Royal Navy, establishing as it did a dominance over the world's oceans that would last virtually unchallenged for over a century.

Desperate fight
Marines and gun crews aboard *Victory* fight desperately as the ship is trapped between the French *Bucentaure* and *Redoutable* after crossing the Alied line. Shot by a French sniper on *Redoutable*, Nelson lies mortally wounded on the right.

> BLOOD RAN IN STREAMS ABOUT THE DECK ... AND THROUGH A THOUSAND HOLES AND CREVICES IN HER HULL THE SEA SPURTED IN AND BEGAN TO FLOOD THE HOLD.
>
> **SPANISH OFFICER**, DESCRIBING THE SCENE ABOARD THE STRICKEN *SANTISIMA TRINIDAD*

Africa, separated before battle, attacks the head of Franco–Spanish line

Allied van commanded by Dumanoir aboard *Formidable*

Santisima Trinidad

Villeneuve's flagship *Bucentaure*

Nelson is fatally wounded aboard *Victory* by marksman aboard *Redoutable*

Redoutable

Collingwood's flagship *Royal Sovereign*

FRANCO–SPANISH LINE

British lee division attempts to isolate the Franco–Spanish rear from the center

The British windward division attempts to isolate Franco–Spanish center from van

BRITISH WINDWARD DIVISION

Wind

BRITISH LEE DIVISION

ATLANTIC OCEAN

KEY

FRANCO–SPANISH FLEET

1 French ship of the line

1 Spanish ship of the line

BRITISH FLEET

1 British ship of the line

1 THE TWO FLEETS ENGAGE

At 11:00 a.m. Nelson orders the attack. The British advance in two columns. Collingwood, commander of the leeward division breaks the Allied line at noon. Nelson, commander the windward division in *Victory*, follows soon after.

Franco–Spanish ships try to escape to leeward

Spanish flagship *Principe de Asturias* wears to the east

Redoutable

Temeraire

Fougueux

Nelson dies over three hours after being shot

Dreadnought engages *Principe de Asturias*

Achille explodes after burning for some time

Santa Anna

Santisima Trinidad

Villeneuve captured aboard *Bucentaure*

Dismasted, *Belleisle* continues to resist opponents

Wind

Four English ships, *Royal Sovereign*, *Tonnant*, *Mars*, and *Bellerophon*, drift out of control, damaged

Franco–Spanish van turns to join battle, but is driven off

Admiral Dumanoir aboard *Formidable* breaks off the fight and withdraws to Cadiz

Weather division overwhelms Franco–Spanish center, focusing on *Bucentaure* and *Santisima Trinidad*

ATLANTIC OCEAN

2 PELL-MELL BATTLE

As the British break the Allied line a pell-mell battle ensues. By 5:30 p.m., in spite of superior numbers, the Allies have been destroyed. The British lose no ships, but half are badly damaged. They gain 17 Allied prizes.

NAPOLEONIC WARS

SANTO DOMINGO

Date February 6, 1806
Forces British: 7 ships of the line, 2 frigates; French: 5 ships of the line, 2 frigates
Losses British: none; French: 2 ships wrecked, 3 captured

Location Off Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic

On December 13, 1805, the best part of the French fleet at Brest profited from bad weather to slip past the British close blockade. One squadron, commanded by Rear Admiral Leissegues on board the magnificent 130-gun *Impérial*, had orders to sail to Santo Domingo in the West Indies. A month later, Vice Admiral Duckworth, commanding the British squadron blockading Cadiz, learned that the French ships had been sighted heading for the Caribbean. He promptly set off across the Atlantic in pursuit. On February 1, 1806, Duckworth's squadron was taking on water at St. Kitts when a sloop reported seeing French ships of the line at Santo Domingo.

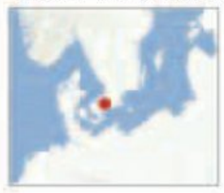
At daybreak on February 6 the British squadron surprised Leissegues's ships at anchor in the Santo Domingo roads. The French had been making preparations to sail, and although many men were ashore, including Admiral Leissegues, the crews on board were able swiftly to weigh anchor and make a dash for the open sea.

French marine's sword
Short swords, such as this French example, were used by marines in close combat when boarding enemy vessels. Pistols were also carried.

Duckworth formed his ships into windward and leeward divisions and raced to bar the French escape. The three ships in the van of the windward line (*Superb*, *Northumberland,* and *Spencer*) made far better speed than the rest and engaged the French in a running battle. *Northumberland* in particular took heavy punishment from *Impérial*'s thundering broadsides, before the rest of the British ships came up and overwhelmed the fierce and stubborn French resistance. Harried by *Superb* and *Canopus* (the latter captained by Francis Austen, the brother of the novelist Jane Austen), *Impérial* deliberately ran on to the shore, as did the 74-gun *Diomède*. The other three French ships of the line, *Alexandre*, *Jupiter,* and *Brave*, were all disabled and obliged to strike their colors. British casualties were 74 killed and 264 wounded; the French lost some 1,500 men. *Impérial* and *Diomède* were burned two days later to prevent them falling into British hands.

NAPOLEONIC WARS

COPENHAGEN



Date September 2–5, 1807
Forces British: 17 ships of the line, 21 frigates
Losses British: none; Danish: 18 ships of the line, 11 frigates surrendered

Location Copenhagen, Denmark

In July 1807 Britain feared that neutral Denmark was about to ally itself with Napoleon, giving France control of the Danish fleet and of the entrance to the Baltic Sea. Such a situation would be intolerable as it would prove ruinous to British trade and block the Royal Navy's access to two of its allies against France—Sweden and Russia. In response, on July 26, a British fleet sailed from Yarmouth for Copenhagen under Admiral James Gambier aboard the 98-gun *Prince of Wales*. After the Danes refused to hand over their fleet to Britain for the duration of the war, British troops landed and laid siege to Copenhagen, while the warships stayed out of range of shore batteries.

On the night of September 2, Gambier began a bombardment of the city to intimidate the population into surrender. Newly introduced Congreve rockets were among the weapons used to rain destruction upon the Danes. An eyewitness in the city described how "bombs, grenades, fireballs … rockets and shells flew about our ears." The bombing continued for three nights, flattening a third of Copenhagen and killing thousands of civilians. Powerless to resist, the Danes surrendered both the city and their fleet. Denmark became an ally of France but the British took the Danish ships and were able to maintain access to the Baltic.

Trekroner fort
Part of the formidable coastal defenses faced by Nelson in the Battle of Copenhagen in 1801, the Trekroner fort could do nothing to prevent the bombardment of 1807.

NAPOLEONIC WARS

BASQUE ROADS

Date April 11–13, 1809
Forces British: 11 ships of the line, 1 frigate; French: 11 ships of the line, 4 frigates
Losses British: none; French: 4 ships of the line, 1 frigate

Location Off Rochefort, Bay of Biscay

In February 1809 Admiral Jean-Baptiste Willaumez sailed from Brest with eight ships of the line, eluding the blockading squadron of Admiral James Gambier. Willaumez reached the Rochefort roads, where three more ships awaited him, but delays allowed Gambier to catch him up. Since the British admiral refused to risk his ships in the narrow channels of the roads, and Willaumez would not come out to fight, a stalemate ensued. The aggressive Captain Thomas Cochrane, agitating for more positive action, arranged for himself to be sent from Britain to join Gambier with a score of fireships—a move the admiral did not welcome. In the roads the French were prepared for a fireship attack, anchoring their ships in two lines between the islands of Aix and Oléron, behind a defensive boom of spars and chains. Cochrane launched his attack on the night of April 11. He packed four vessels with explosives and took them in first to blow holes in the boom. The explosions were so spectacular that they completely destroyed French morale. In panic the French captains cut their cables and fled for the safety of the Charente River. In the darkness and confusion many ships collided and all but two of them ran aground. The fireship attack itself proved to be a damp squib, but morning broke to reveal French ships grounded at the mercy of British guns. But Gambier was in no hurry to enter the roads and proceeded with great caution. As a result, seven of the French ships were refloated and escaped upriver. Two ships of the line were destroyed by the British and two were scuttled by their crews.

NAPOLEONIC WARS

GRAND PORT

Date August 23–24, 1810
Forces British: 4 frigates; French: 5 frigates
Losses British: 2 ships destroyed, 2 captured; French: none

Location Grand Port, Mauritius

French frigates based on Mauritius were preying upon British merchant ships crossing the Indian Ocean. In response, in the summer of 1810 British frigates launched an attack on the island's east coast, capturing the Ile de la Passe at the entrance to the lagoon off Grand Port. On August 20, the French frigates *Bellone*, *Minerve,* and *Victor*, under the command of Commodore Guy-Victor Duperré, arrived at Grand Port, unaware of the British presence, and broke through to the lagoon. Three days later, largely on the initiative of Nesbit Willoughby, captain of *Nereide*, the four British frigates sailed into the lagoon to engage the French at anchor. Two of the British ships, *Sirius* and *Magicienne*, quickly ran aground. *Nereide* was left exposed to the full force of the French broadsides. In a static encounter at close range the frigate was reduced to a shambles. Willoughby had an eye torn out of its socket by a splinter. More than 220 of *Nereide*'s 280 crew were killed or wounded before she struck the following morning. The immovable *Magicienne* and *Sirius* were scuttled and the surviving British frigate, *Iphigenia*, was trapped by the arrival of two more French frigates as she made to escape. It was the only defeat of a British squadron during the Napoleonic Wars.

Flintlock swivel gun
This bowsprit swivel gun was mounted on the front of the ship to guard against boarders. It was loaded and fired in the same way as a musket or pistol.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

NAVAL COMMUNICATION

BEFORE THE INTRODUCTION OF RADIO, visual signals were the prime means of fleet communication. Sailing-era navies chiefly relied upon flags, although these had many drawbacks. The admiral's flags could only be seen by ships close to him, and had to be passed on by others raising the same signal. Complex instructions could not be easily conveyed, and once in battle, smoke rendered flags invisible.

FLAG SYSTEMS

During the 17th-century Anglo-Dutch Wars, Britain's Royal Navy introduced a system using five large flags to convey 25 possible signals. The number of signals had grown to 45 by the 1690s, but there was no substantial progress until the mid-18th century, when the French introduced number flags. These allowed hundreds of different signals to be conveyed and were belatedly adopted by the Royal Navy in 1799, which was employing a telegraphic system of communication by the early 1800s. Flags representing letters, and also specific messages, permitted almost unlimited communication.

DISTRESS SIGNAL Flare pistols were developed in World War I to be used by ships in distress.

Nelson's signal Admiral Nelson signals "England expects every man to do his duty" aboard Victory before the battle of Trafalgar

CURRENT MERCANTILE CODES In the International Code of Signals each flag stands for a letter as well as a message.

MORSE CODE

The code invented by American Samuel Morse in the 1840s allowed any letter to be represented by two symbols, for example a dot and a dash, in different combinations. Morse was adopted by navies using flashing signal lights for communication and then for wireless telegraphy at the end of the 19th century. The most famous Morse code message is SOS, adopted as an agreed international distress signal in 1908.

A . –	J . – – –	S . . .
B – . . .	K – . –	T –
C – . – .	L . – . .	U . . –
D – . .	M – –	V . . . –
E .	N – .	W . – –
F . . – .	O – – –	X – . . –
G – – .	P . – – .	Y – . – –
H	Q – – . –	Z – – . .
I . .	R . – .	1 . – – –

Dots and dashes A "straight key" (below right) is used to transmit the code. The operator controls the timing of the dots and dashes.

1 . – – – –
2 . . – – –
3 . . . – –
4 . . . . –
5 . . . . .
6 – . . . .
7 – – . . .
8 – – – . .
9 – – – – .
0 – – – – –

PENNANTS The tapered type of flag known as a pennant is used primarily to indicate numbers.

STRAIGHT KEY When sending a message, the signal is "on" when the knob is pressed, and "off" when it is released.

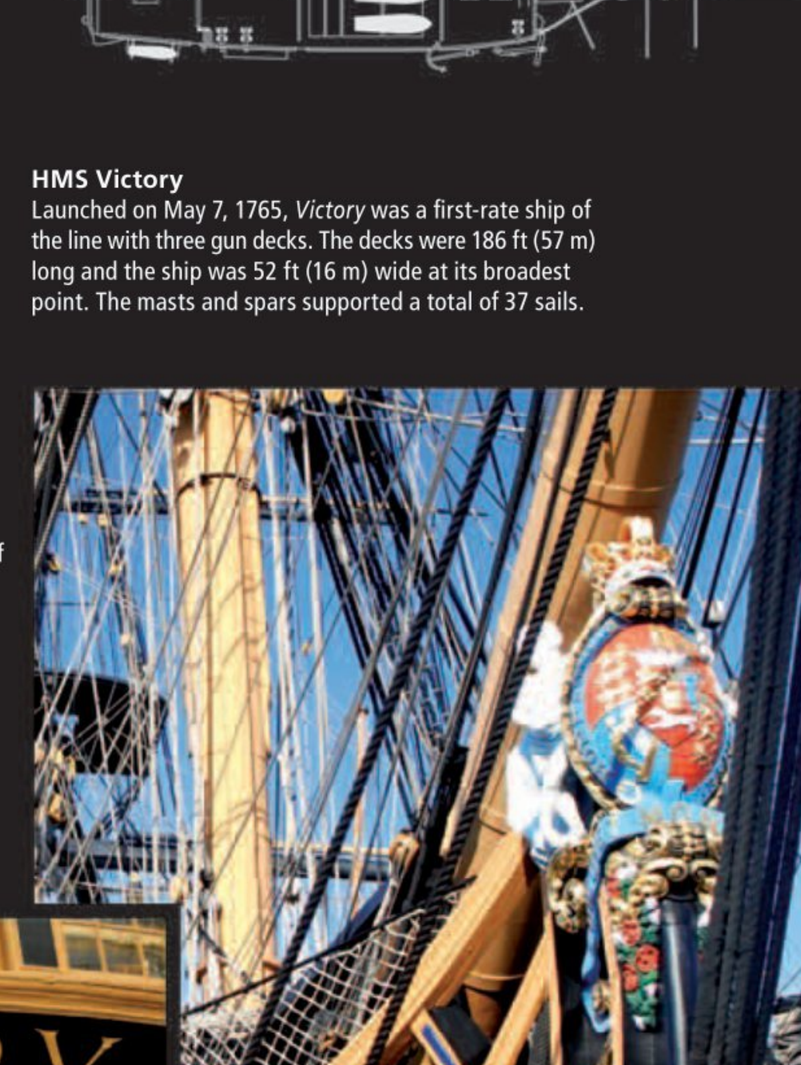
18TH-CENTURY BRITISH SHIP OF THE LINE

HMS VICTORY

HER ROLE AS HORATIO NELSON'S FLAGSHIP at the battle of Trafalgar in 1805 made *Victory* the world's most famous first-rate ship of the line. Preserved as a museum ship at Portsmouth, England, she is now also the oldest commissioned naval vessel. *Victory* was a typical warship of its time, although one of the largest in the Royal Navy.

MORE THAN 6,000 trees, mostly oak, were felled for *Victory*'s construction. She cost £63,175 to build, probably equivalent to US $100 million today. This expensive ship was launched in 1765, but was not commissioned until war with France broke out in 1778. She saw her first action as the flagship of Admiral Keppel at the battle of Ushant in that year and was notably Admiral John Jervis's flagship at the battle of Cape St. Vincent in 1797. By that time *Victory* was showing her age and was retired to serve as a hospital ship for prisoners of war. This decision was, however, soon reconsidered. After extensive repair and reconstruction, *Victory* was recommissioned as Nelson's flagship in 1803, remaining in active service until 1812.

Victory was operated by a crew of 850 men and mounted 104 smoothbore, muzzle-loading cannon (including four carronades). Even with solid shot, this was formidable firepower—for comparison, at the great battle of Austerlitz in the same year as Trafalgar, the entire French Army fielded 139 cannon.



HMS Victory
Launched on May 7, 1765, *Victory* was a first-rate ship of the line with three gun decks. The decks were 186 ft (57 m) long and the ship was 52 ft (16 m) wide at its broadest point. The masts and spars supported a total of 37 sails.

Sailing for the Downs
HMS *Victory* sails past Dover on her way to the Downs. Sailors can be seen high in the rigging lowering topgallant sails, while lower down a course sail is unfurled on the mainmast.

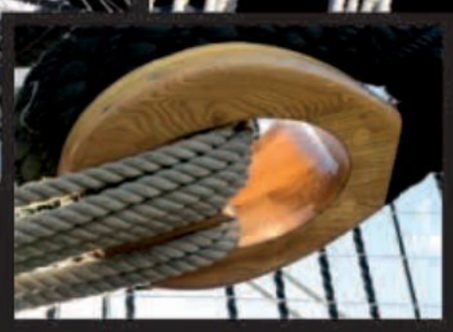
Stern galleries
The rear of the ship housed the cabins of the admiral, the captain, and other senior officers. The stern of *Victory* was less decorated than earlier ships of her kind.

Figurehead
Victory's figurehead shows two cupids supporting the royal coat of arms (then featuring the escutcheon of Hanover) surmounted by a crown. The arms are surrounded by the motto of the Order of the Garter, "Honi soit qui mal y pense" ("Shame on he who thinks evil of it").

Ship's name
Nelson's flagship at Trafalgar was the sixth Royal Navy ship to bear the name *Victory*. The first was a 42-gun ship originally called *Great Christopher* and purchased by the Royal Navy in 1569.

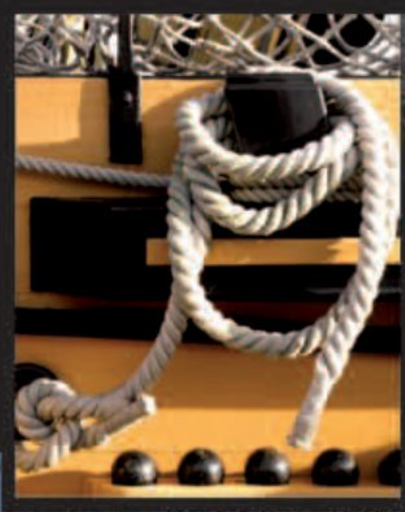
> "THE DEAD LAY ALONG THE DECKS IN HEAPS ... MORE THAN FOUR HUNDRED HAD BEEN KILLED AND WOUNDED ... AN EXTRAORDINARY PROPORTION HAD LOST THEIR HEADS."
>
> **CAPTAIN JAMES ATCHERLY**, DESCRIBING THE CARNAGE ABOARD *BUCENTAURE* AFTER HER ENGAGMENT WITH *VICTORY* AT TRAFALGAR

Main mast
Victory's main mast reaches 220 ft (67 m) above sea level. Halfway up is a platform; this was used by musketeers in battle, and by the crew when access to sails was needed.



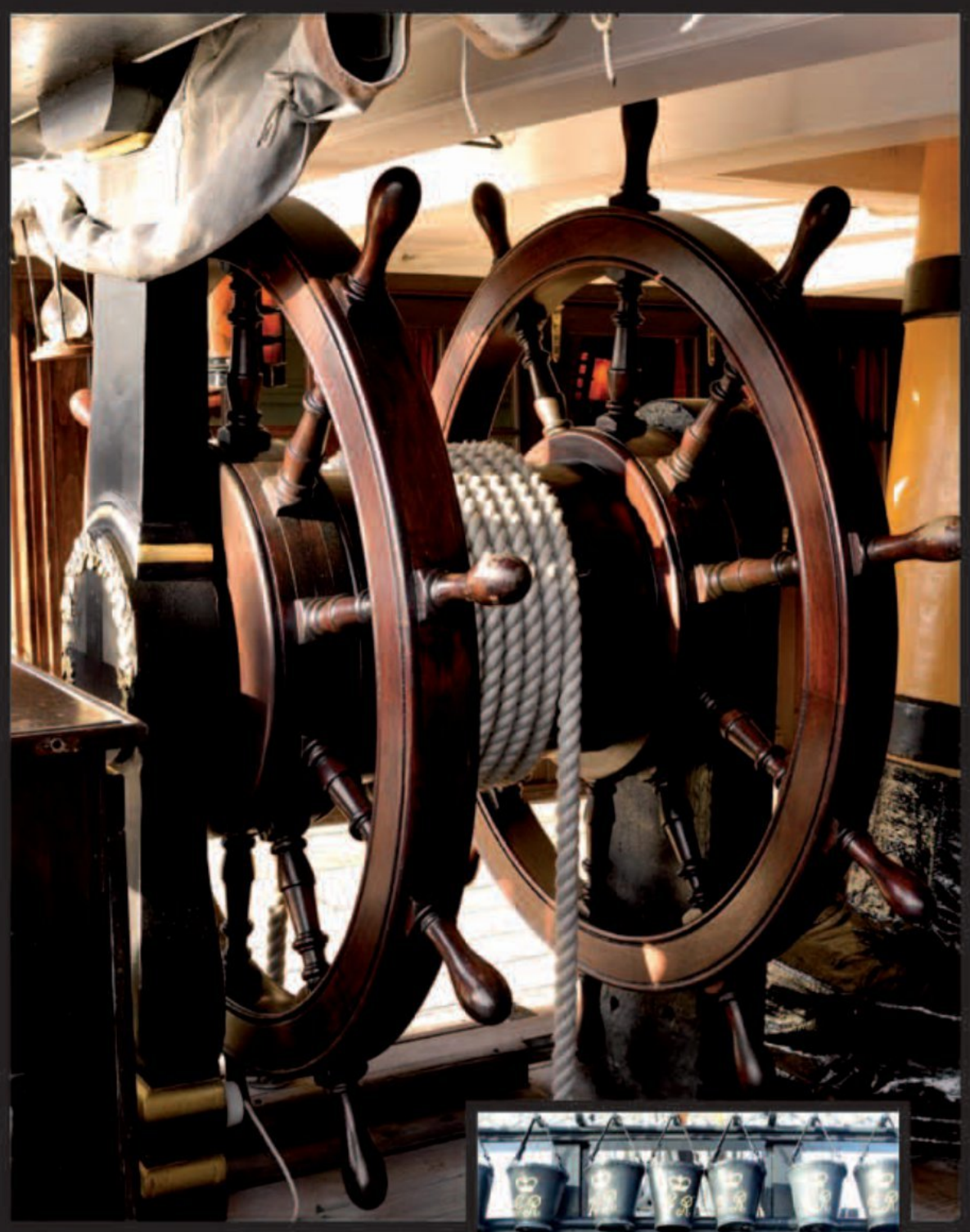
Running rigging
The ropes which raise, lower, and manipulate sails are known as running rigging.

Standing rigging
The ropes which hold the masts in place are known as standing rigging. Of these, "shrouds" are tied to the sides of the ship, forming a ladder up the masts.

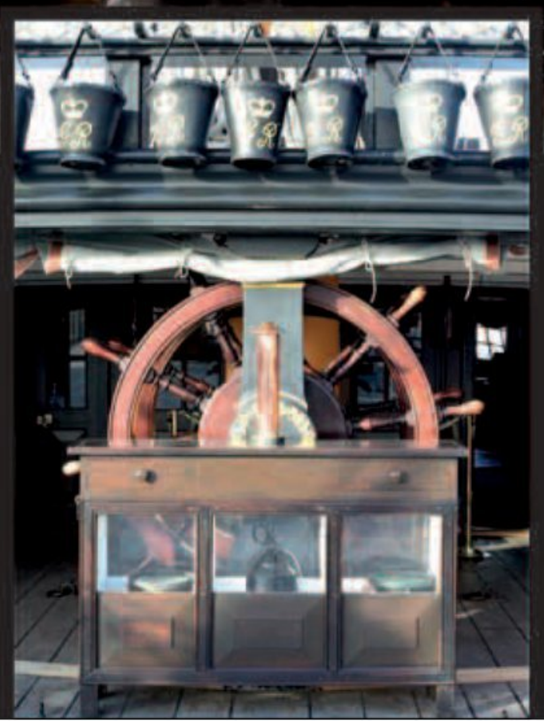


Rigging
A total of 26 miles (42 km) of rope (or "cordage") was used to rig *Victory*, along with 768 blocks, or pulleys. All sailors learned how to mend rope, which easily frayed at the ends.

Heavy anchor and gun ports
Victory had seven anchors, the heaviest weighing more than 4.5 tons. Raising the latter required the effort of 144 men turning two interlinked capstans. The anchor was hung above the upper gun deck.



Double wheel and binnacle
Located under the poop deck, the double wheel was operated by four men in calm weather, and up to eight men in a storm. The binnacle in front of the wheel contains two compasses and a lantern for taking readings at night. The copper flue on top of the binnacle allowed smoke from the lantern to escape, keeping the binnacle clean.



Skylight
A skylight (here covered) stood in the middle of the poop deck, allowing light to enter the great cabin below.

Carronade
Victory had two carronades mounted on her forecastle. They were lethal at close range, as shown by their contribution to the mauling of the French ship *Bucentaure* at Trafalgar.

Belfry
The bell in the belfry was rung every half hour. Two sandglasses kept the time, one lasting half an hour, one lasting four hours. Both were set at the beginning of each four-hour watch, at which the bell was rung eight times.

BELOW DECKS

AS WELL AS THREE GUN DECKS, *Victory* had, below the waterline, the orlop deck and the hold. To keep the ship stable, the heaviest guns were toward the bottom of the ship. There were 32-pounder guns on the lower gun deck, 24-pounders on the middle gun deck, and 12-pounders on the upper gun deck. The gun decks also provided living quarters for most of the crew, in airless, damp, and overcrowded conditions. The orlop deck was safe from enemy fire, and thus the chosen site for the powder magazines and the surgeon's operating room.

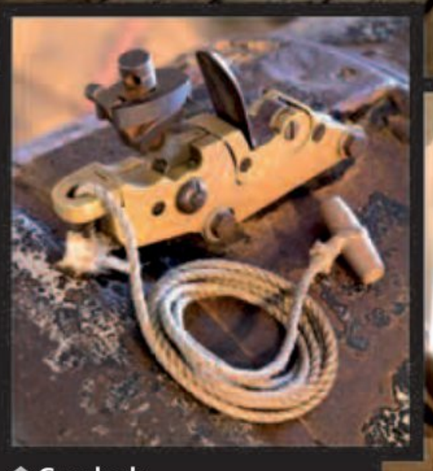
Great cabin
Situated at the rear of the upper gun deck, the great cabin served as the admiral's quarters. The most comfortable part of the ship, it was divided into a day cabin, a dining cabin, and a bed space.

Day cabin
The day cabin was the admiral's private study. It was here that he wrote letters and kept his most valuable personal effects.

Admiral's cot
The admiral and other high-ranking officers slept in box-like cots that hung from the ceiling. The cot also served as a coffin in the event of the officer's death.

Gun decks
The *Victory* had 88 guns arranged on its three gun decks, the lowest of which contained the heaviest Blomfield 32-pounder guns. Other lighter guns (including carronades) were arranged on the poop deck and the forecastle.

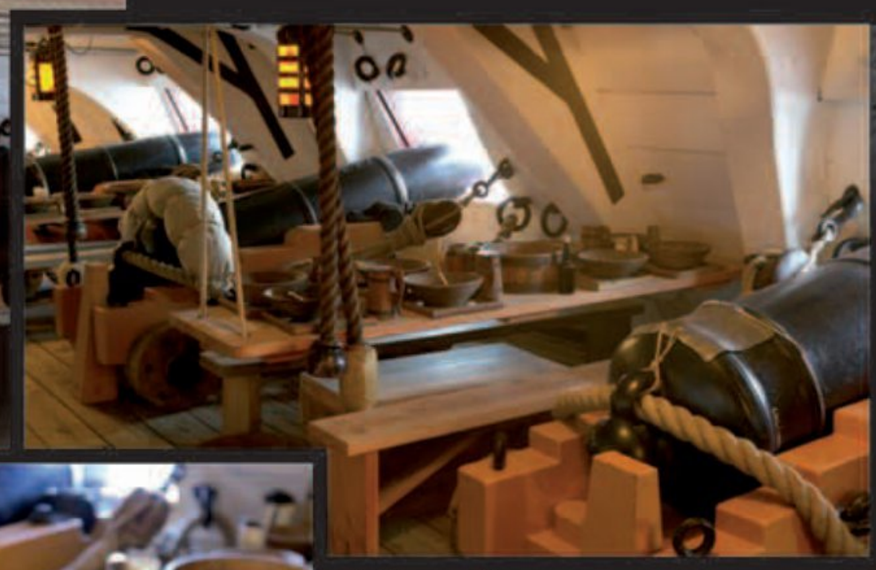
Capstan
Victory had two capstans, one for raising and lowering anchors, and another for lifting stores. Over a hundred men could be needed to haul in a cable, which wrapped around a drum on the deck beneath.



Gun lock
Victory's guns were fired with flintlock mechanisms. Pulling the lanyard (cord) made the flint spark, igniting the primer, which in turn ignited the main charge in the barrel.

Marines' quarters
The middle gun deck was home to *Victory*'s 146 Royal Marines, who, like the sailors who occupied the other decks, all ate and slept between the guns. They were the ships' soldiers, and were trusted to protect the ship's officers in the event of a mutiny.

Hammocks
While senior officers had cabins of their own, most of the crew slept in hammocks which were no more than 28 in (71 cm) in width. They were slung above the guns on all three gun decks.



Mess table
At mealtimes the crew were grouped into messes of either four or eight men, one of whom would collect and serve the food. Some messes ate at tables hung from the beams of the deck above.

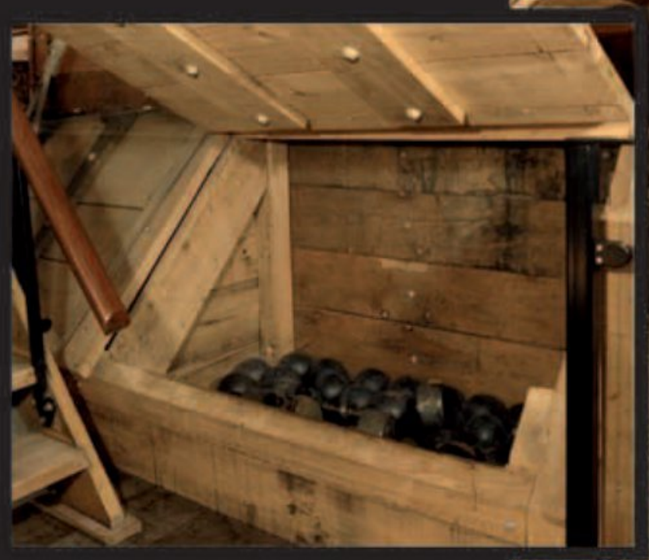
Hard tack
Since bread would not keep for long, seamen were supplied with biscuits called "hard tack." They were often home to maggots.

Elm tree pumps
Two elm pumps located by the mainmast drew water up from the sea when it was needed for fighting fires and for washing down the decks. Two or three men manned the pump handle, while another caught the water in a bucket.

Bosun's storeroom
The boatswain (or bosun) was a warrant officer in charge of the ship's anchors, cordage, rigging, colors, boats, and deck crew. His storeroom contained all the stores necessary for the repair and upkeep of the ship, including plenty of spare rope.

Galley
The ship's galley, on the middle gun deck, had a cast-iron Brodie stove and a copper distiller that could produce 2 gallons (9 liters) of water a day. Its two copper kettles could produce 250 gallons (1,135 liters) of stew.

Storage and ballast
The hold was the largest storage area of the ship and contained up to six months worth of food and drink. The floor was lined with 457 tons of ballast, which was needed to keep the ship level and upright. The ballast was made of iron ingots and shingle.



Shot lockers
There were four shot lockers in the hold, each containing 80 tons of shot; a further 40 tons were stored near the grand magazine, also in the hold. At the battle of Trafalgar, *Victory* fired 2,667 rounds of shot, weighing a total of 27 tons.

Hanging magazines
Two hanging magazines were situated on the orlop deck above the hold. The 24 lb gunpowder cartridges were kept towards the bow, the 12 lb cartridges towards the stern. They were located beneath the waterline to protect them from enemy fire, and were suspended from the deckhead to keep them from being damaged by water.

LIFE ON BOARD

DISEASE, MEDICINE, AND SURGERY

THROUGHOUT MOST OF the history of naval warfare, disease took a far heavier toll on sailors' lives than actual combat. Until the 18th century there was little any navy could do about it, because medical knowledge remained too primitive. Gradually, common-sense application of principles of hygiene and nutrition by good captains became systematized to good effect. Treatment of those injured in battle also remained a crude business until modern times.

SICKLY SAILING SHIPS

Although conditions on board galleys were often unhygenic and overcrowding chronic, galleys stayed at sea for only short periods at one time. They suffered epidemics like any accumulation of men in pre-modern times—the Venetians lost 20,000 crew in their fleet, probably to typhoid fever, in June 1570. But once sailing ships started going to sea for long periods death rates regularly soared. It was common for ships on oceanic voyages to lose a third to a half of their crew to disease. A lengthy operation such as a blockade was virtually impossible because disease inevitably decimated the crews after a time. Large numbers of men were cooped up together in overcrowded conditions, in humid, unventilated spaces between decks, with food supplies short on freshness and variety. Scurvy was a typical sailor's disease. Typhus—often brought on board by recruits from jails—and tuberculosis were great killers, as was yellow fever in the tropics.

LEMONS During the Napoleonic Wars the Royal Navy began to systematically carry citrus fruit on board ship to prevent scurvy, a disease caused by lack of vitamin C.

> *When a patient dies from a local injury, with the limb on, we are apt to blame ourselves . . . but it does not follow that the operation would have saved him.*
>
> **Lancelot Haire,** *Remarks on Mr Lucas's practical observations on amputations*, 1786

MEDICINE A supply of medicines, ointments, and instruments was to hand in the sick berth on board a British ship like HMS *Victory*. A larger lockable dispensary was situated on the orlop level where the surgeon, as a professional man, had his own cabin.

SHIPS' DOCTORS

Medical staff on ships were rarely properly trained. A barber surgeon on a sailing ship would be expected to deal in a rough-and-ready way with a steady stream of fractures and hernias gathered through the heavy and hazardous nature of the work on board, as well as venereal disease after a spell in port. His real challenge, of course, came in battle. Men who might survive mostly had limbs shattered by solid shot or gouge wounds caused by flying splinters of wood. Amputations were performed in two minutes, the limbs collected in a basket by the surgeon's assistant, the loblolly man. Speed was the most appreciated quality as there were no anaesthetics except alcohol. Surgery was performed below the waterline, if the ship was big enough to permit it, so as to be safe from shot. Wounds almost always became infected, but various primitive techniques ensured reasonable survival rates.

OPERATING TABLE The surgeon's operating room in HMS *Victory* was in the cockpit, an open area near his cabin, located on the orlop deck well below the waterline.

SURGEON'S TOURNIQUET The 19th-century Petit type of screw tourniquet (the strap is missing) was used to stem bleeding as patients waited for the surgeon to operate.

SURGEON'S SAW Tenon saws, such as this one, were used for amputation on British ships, since the stout blades were less likely to break. Amputation was a last resort, and speed and efficiency were required from a good surgeon.

MEDICAL PROFESSIONALS

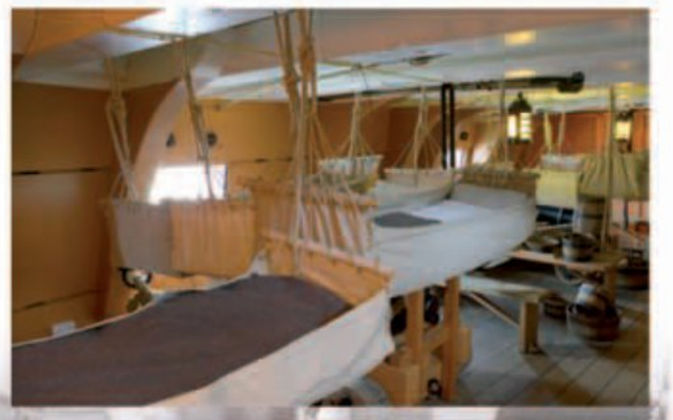
In the 18th century health at sea increasingly became a subject of systematic inquiry and naval medicine was slowly professionalized. Theories of disease were still woefully inadequate—the fumes from smelly cheese were thought a serious health risk by the Royal Navy. But systematic studies by ships' surgeons such as James Lind, whose *Treatise on Scurvy* was published in 1753, encouraged action by captains and administrators to improve cleanliness and nutrition. The role of citrus fruit and fresh vegetables in preventing scurvy was known from at least the early 17th century, but organizing a general policy to eradicate the disease was a slow business. Still, by 1800 the British fleet blockading Brest could keep 24 ships at sea all through a summer without crippling death rates.

SURGEON'S INSTRUMENTS A typical naval surgeon's chest contained instruments for amputation, trephination, draining, dentistry, probing wounds, and bleeding, as well as copious bandages and cloth for tourniquets.

SUNRAY TREATMENT Submarine crews back from patrol take sunray treatment in the depot ship to compensate for their lack of exposure to daylight when on active duty. The goggles are to protect their eyes.

> *I shall here only observe that the result of all my experiments was that oranges and lemons were the most effectual remedies for this distemper at sea.*
>
> **James Lind,** *A Treatise of the Scurvy,* 1753

SICK BERTH Located far away from living quarters to prevent the spread of disease, the sick berth on an 18th-century sailing ship was constructed out of canvas screens. During battle the screens were taken down and patients moved to the orlop level for safety.



HOSPITAL SHIP Wounded US marines lie in their bunks in close quarters aboard the USS *Bolivar* which transferred casualties in the course of its service during World War II.

CUTTING THE DEATH RATE

The introduction of steamships was a boon. They were healthier above all because they cut voyage times. Food on board improved sharply through the 19th century, and water quality was ameliorated by storage in iron tanks. The general progress of medicine and provision of properly qualified medical staff reduced deaths from disease and wounds radically by the 20th century. The nature of wounds in battle altered, with the treatment of flash burns an unexpected problem for ships' medical staff in World War I. But as in the wider body of society, epidemic disease became a radically diminishing threat.

ONBOARD OPERATION Cooperation between navies means that an injured American sailor can be taken 300 miles (480 km) to a British aircraft carrier where surgeons perform damage control surgery on his fractured ankle in an onboard operating room.

EARLY 19TH-CENTURY BATTLES

The Battle of Navarino
The destruction of the Turkish-Egyptian fleet at Navarino by the French, British, and Russian allies was the last battle under sail. Here, an exploding Turkish frigate illuminates the approaching allied vessels. The 84-gun French ship *Breslau* (left) fires a broadside into the Turks.

THE EARLY DECADES of the 19th century were the final years of the age of sail. Up to 1815 this was a time of major warfare—not only the Napoleonic Wars in Europe but also a stiff contest between the United States and Britain in the three-year War of 1812. After 1815, however, a period of comparative peace ensued, especially at sea. The position of superiority enjoyed by Britain's Royal Navy on the world's oceans was overwhelming and unchallenged. The French, still with the world's second largest navy, had neither the power nor the inclination to stop Britannia ruling the waves. The destruction of an Ottoman fleet at Navarino in 1827 was the last major fleet engagement of the 19th century, because a full-scale challenge to British hegemony was impossible.

FOUNDING A TRADITION

The United States founded a naval tradition by fits and starts in this period. Anti-militarist instincts, which had seen the Continental Navy disbanded after the Revolutionary War, were overcome in 1794 when Congress agreed to build six frigates, which were soon supported by more warships as threats to American merchant shipping mounted. The US Navy saw action against France in the undeclared Quasi-War of 1798 to 1800 (responding to French attacks on American merchant ships trading with France's enemy Britain) and against the Barbary pirates in the Mediterranean. War with Britain in 1812 presented a challenge on a quite different scale. It gave the American heavy frigates a chance to show their exceptional fighting qualities in a series of successful duels with British warships, while American victories in lake battles played an important role in inhibiting British military operations inland.

Inevitably the power of the Royal Navy predominated by the end of the conflict, but the United States emerged with a valuable stock of naval heroes, such as Stephen Decatur and Oliver Hazard Perry, and tales of derring-do to provide inspiration for the future. The US Navy remained a small force to the end of the age of sail—it never commissioned a ship of the line—but it had won acceptance as a necessary and respected institution.

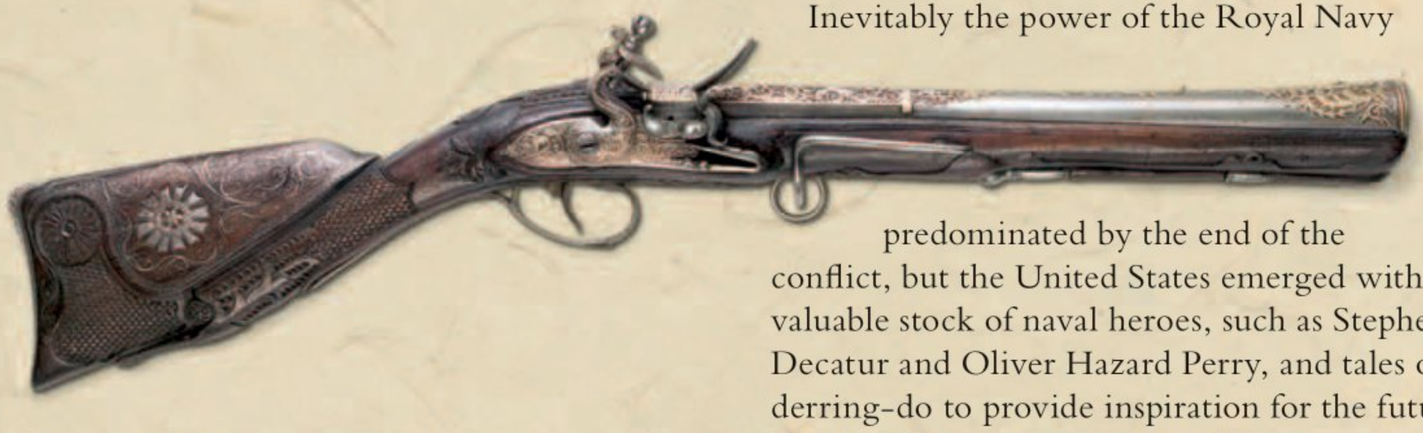
The Star-Spangled Banner
This is the flag seen by Francis Scott Key flying over Fort McHenry, Baltimore, during a British bombardment in 1814. It inspired him to write *The Star-Spangled Banner.*

ROYAL NAVY AT PEACE

The advent of peace with France and the United States in 1815 inevitably brought sharp cutbacks in Britain's war-swollen Royal Navy. By 1817 Royal Navy officers in active service stood at below a quarter of wartime numbers, and naval seamen at around a sixth of the full wartime complement. The number of British naval ships in commission fell from 713 in 1814 to 121 in 1818. This was still considered sufficient muscle for Britain to undertake the role of policeman of the oceans, in which capacity it attempted to impose a unilaterally declared ban on slave trading and took action to suppress piracy, most famously in the bombardment of Algiers, a nest of Barbary pirates, in 1816.

LIBERATION WARS

Much of the warfare in the aftermath of the Napoleonic Wars arose from the birth of national liberation movements that sought freedom from foreign rule. In South America, a series of wars was fought, firstly for independence from the colonial rule of Spain, and subsequently to define the frontiers of the new states. In Europe the Greeks fought a liberation war against the Ottoman Turks from 1821 to 1828. The independence movements could only assemble makeshift naval forces, placed under the command of imported officers such as the ubiquitous British admiral Thomas Cochrane, who served



Ottoman flintlock
Flintlock firearms had rendered the matchlock obsolete by 1700. By the early 19th century they had reached a pinnacle of sophistication, as shown by this silver-inlaid Ottoman example.

in Chile, Brazil, and Greece. The fact that such improvised forces performed with considerable success in the independence wars was powerful evidence of the decline of those once-great naval powers, Spain and the Ottoman Empire. The weakness of Ottoman sea power had been exposed by a series of defeats at the hands of Russia in the late 18th century. This process of humiliation was completed at the Battle of Navarino in 1827.

ON THE BRINK OF CHANGE

Navarino was still a battle from the age of sail. But the transition to a new era of naval warfare was already under way. The introduction of steam ships into warfare was slow because their usefulness was at first limited. In 1814 the United States built the first steam-powered warship, *Demologos*, designed by the prolific inventor Robert Fulton, but it was only suitable for use as a floating gun battery in harbor. The British adopted steamships as tugs, initially only to tow sailing ships in and out of harbor, but later as armed support vessels for use in combat. By 1829 the Royal Navy had built eight armed paddle steamers. The *Karteria*, built and manned by the British, saw action with the Greeks in their independence war.

Meanwhile, in 1824, French general Henri-Joseph Paixhans showed the effectiveness of a naval gun firing explosive shells. Between them, steam power and the exploding shell spelled the end of battle between wooden sailing ships. The latter would soon be replaced by ironclads.

Bombardment of Algiers
Dutch and British ships bombard Algiers in 1816, in an operation that broke the power of the Barbary pirates.

THE UNITED STATES AT WAR

DURING THE OPENING DECADES of the 19th century, the United States fought a major war against Britain and two lesser conflicts against the Barbary pirates. These wars had in common a concern to maintain the freedom of the seas. The Barbary pirates were the naval forces of rogue North African Muslim states that preyed upon shipping in the Mediterranean. The United States was one of the countries that paid protection money to these states until President Thomas Jefferson threw doubt upon the practice, provoking Tripoli to declare war on America in 1801. An American squadron fought Tripoli until a compromise was reached in 1805, but a second round in 1815 was required to finish off the pirate menace. The war with Britain was largely the result of the high-handed actions of the Royal Navy during the Napoleonic Wars. When the conflict began the United States had 17 warships to Britain's 719. The Americans distinguished themselves in battles on Lake Erie and Lake Champlain and in frigate actions at sea, although the Royal Navy was able to blockade the American coast, burn Washington, and bombard Baltimore.

FIRST BARBARY WAR

TRIPOLI HARBOR

Date August 3, 1804
Forces Americans: 1 frigate, 6 gunboats, 2 bomb-ketches; Libyans: 11 gunboats
Losses Americans: none; Libyans: 3 boats sunk, 3 captured

Location Tripoli harbor, Libya

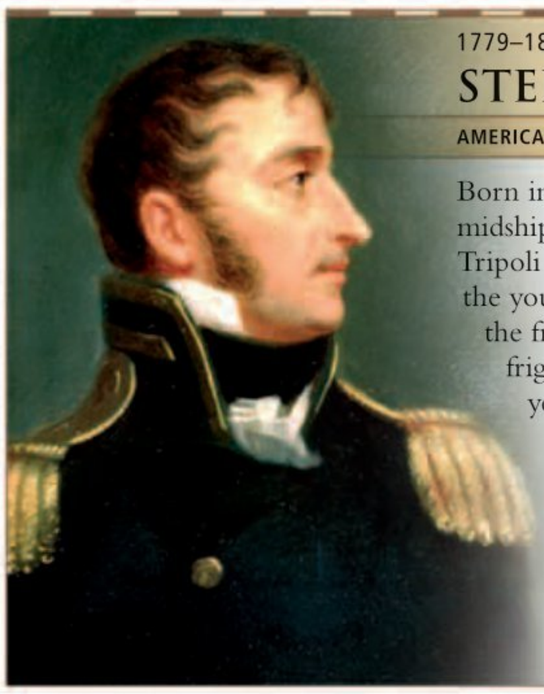
In June 1803, Commodore Edward Preble was put in command of the squadron of ships sent by the United States to the Mediterranean to deal with the problem of piracy promoted by North African Barbary states. Where previous US naval commanders had concentrated on protecting American ships, Preble was determined to take the fight to the most obdurate of the pirate cities, Tripoli, which had declared war on the United States.

In the fall an American frigate, *Philadelphia*, ran aground off Tripoli while in hot pursuit of two pirate ships. It was captured and taken into the harbor for use as a floating battery. On February 16, 1804, a young lieutenant, Stephen Decatur, took a raiding party into the harbor at night and stormed *Philadelphia*, setting it ablaze so that it could be of no further use to the enemy. This action, hailed by Lord Nelson as "the most bold and daring act of the age," made Decatur an American national hero.

On August 3, 1804, Preble launched his most determined assault on Tripoli. He sent Decatur, now a captain, with a small force of gunboats and bomb-ketches (borrowed from the Bourbon Kingdom of the Two Sicilies) to enter the shallow waters of the harbor, while the frigate *Constitution* bombarded Tripoli's shore batteries and castle at long range. In the event only three of Decatur's six gunboats succeeded in entering the harbor, where they were met by 11 Tripolitan gunboats. Fierce hand-to-hand fighting developed as boats were boarded. Decatur was fortunate to escape with his life. The Libyans suffered by far the heavier losses, but no decisive advantage was gained and the blockade and occasional bombardment of the port continued.

An end to the conflict came in 1805 after US Marines were put ashore to threaten Tripoli by land. A compromise agreement saw the United States pay $60,000 for the release of all hostages.

Close-quarters fight
During the fight in Tripoli harbor, Decatur shot a Libyan in the back with a pistol, the spent ball lodging in the American captain's clothes.



1779–1820

STEPHEN DECATUR

AMERICAN NAVAL COMMANDER

Born in Maryland, Decatur became a naval midshipman in 1798. After his bold action in Tripoli Harbor in 1804 he was made a captain, the youngest ever in the US Navy. Commanding the frigate *United States*, he captured the British frigate *Macedonian* in October 1812. Three years later, as commodore of a squadron in the West Indies, he was overcome by a British force and taken prisoner. After the war he commanded the American Mediterranean squadron and secured a final peace treaty with the Barbary pirates. He was killed in a duel with Commodore James Barron.

WAR OF 1812

CONSTITUTION VS GUERRIERE

Date August 19, 1812
Forces Americans: 1 frigate; British: 1 frigate
Losses Americans: none; British: 1 frigate

Location Off Halifax, Nova Scotia

Early in the War of 1812, on August 2, 1812, Captain Isaac Hull took the American heavy frigate *Constitution* out of Boston to harass British shipping around the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Seventeen days later, sailing back southward, he ran into the smaller 38-gun British frigate *Guerriere*. With full confidence in British naval superiority, *Guerriere*'s captain, James Dacres, was happy to fight, even though *Constitution* mounted 52 guns and had 476 men on board to the British frigate's 280.

The *Guerriere* opened fire first, but her solid shot bounced off *Constitution*'s live oak hull—earning the American frigate the nickname "Old Ironsides." When the two ships came to close action, *Guerriere*'s mizzen mast was quickly brought down, lying over the side of the ship. Partially out of control, the British frigate was raked by the American heavy guns and her deck swept by grapeshot. The *Guerriere*'s fallen mizzen mast snagged on *Constitution* and the two ships tangled together but, despite their greater numbers, the Americans failed to board, driven back by British musket fire. Casualties were heavier on *Guerriere*'s decks, however, with Dacres among those wounded by American musketry.

When the ships eventually broke apart, *Guerriere* lost its other two masts and lay a defenseless hulk. Dacres struck to avoid further loss of life. The ship was too badly damaged to be saved and the Americans scuttled it the following morning.

Victory medal
This medal, commemorating the battle, shows a starboard-quarter view of the *Guerriere* dismasted (left), and a port broadside view of the *Constitution* firing (right).

Perry's victory
Commander Perry leaves his battered flagship *Lawrence* and crosses over to the *Niagara*, on board which he led the Americans to a remarkable and courageous victory.

THE BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE

In March 1813, 27-year-old Master Commandant Oliver Hazard Perry arrived on the southern coast of Lake Erie, charged with creating a squadron of warships to win control of the lake from the British. Building ships and procuring guns and crews was a difficult task in such a remote region, but by the end of July Perry had two 20-gun square-rigged brigs, *Lawrence* and *Niagara*, supported by smaller vessels. The British, based at Amherstburg, experienced the same difficulties in building, equipping, and manning a lake fleet. Royal Navy commander Robert Barclay, a one-armed veteran of Trafalgar, had two ships that could take on Perry's brigs, the 19-gun *Detroit* and the 15-gun *Queen Charlotte*.

AMERICAN VICTORY

On the morning of September 10, the British came upon Perry's squadron in Put-in-Bay, in the lee of South Bass Island. Sailing out of the bay in line ahead, the Americans tacked for hours to gain the weather gage. Perry and Barclay both sought a conventional battle, in which each ship would place itself alongside an opponent of similar firepower and slug it out. However, for the Americans the approach went badly wrong. Perry placed his flagship *Lawrence* alongside Barclay's flagship *Detroit*, but Lieutenant Jesse Elliot on the *Niagara* failed to engage *Queen Charlotte*. Thus Perry soon found himself occupied with both of the largest British ships. The carnage on board *Lawrence* after two hours' close fighting was horrendous, although the American carronades visited similar punishment upon the British. With most of his gun carriages shattered and more than half his crew casualties, Perry decided to shift his flag. He had himself rowed across to the still unengaged *Niagara*, standing upright in the boat through heavy fire, while *Lawrence* struck its colors.

The British cheered the American flagship's surrender, but their joy was shortlived. Perry re-entered the fight with the fresh, undamaged *Niagara*. With most of his portside guns out of action, Barclay attempted to turn his ship to present the starboard broadside to the approaching American brig. For *Detroit* and *Queen Charlotte,* badly damaged and manned by mostly inexperienced crews now decimated by cannonfire, it was too complex a maneuver. The two ships ran into one another and became inextricably entangled. *Charlotte* had already lost her captain and first lieutenant; now Barclay was seriously wounded and his first lieutenant killed. Defenseless against *Niagara*'s broadsides, the two ships struck. The smaller British vessels either followed suit or were pursued and captured attempting to slip away.

The battle gave the Americans undisputed control of Lake Erie, and made a hero of Commander Perry.

Spyglass telescope
Retractable to a portable size, telescopes such as these were vital to the functioning of a warship. By 1813 they had impressive magnification.

WAR OF 1812

BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE

Date	September 10, 1813
Location	Lake Erie, Ohio
Result	American victory

COMBATANTS	
UNITED STATES	**BRITAIN**
COMMANDERS	
Oliver Hazard Perry	**Robert Barclay**
FORCES	
Ships: 2 20-gun brigs, 7 other vessels	**Ships:** 2 ships, 2 brigs, 2 other vessels
LOSSES	
Men: 27 dead, 96 wounded **Ships:** 1 brig damaged	**Men:** 41 killed, 306 captured, of which 93 wounded **Ships:** 6 captured

> THE DECK WAS IN A SHOCKING PREDICAMENT ... THE DEAD WERE STREWED IN EVERY DIRECTION ... IT WAS IMPOSSIBLE TO TAKE THE WOUNDED BELOW AS FAST AS THEY FELL.
>
> **DAVID BUNNELL**, AMERICAN SAILOR , DESCRIBING THE SCENE ABOARD *LAWRENCE* IN HIS MEMOIRS

THE BATTLE OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN

In summer 1814 Sir George Prevost led a British army from Canada south into New York. He halted outside Plattsburgh, waiting to be joined by a naval force under Commodore George Downie. The British naval squadron appeared off Plattsburgh on the morning of September 11, borne up the lake by a light northwesterly breeze. It was faced by a roughly comparable force of American vessels commanded by Master Commandant Thomas Macdonough. Macdonough had his four main ships—his flagship *Saratoga*, the brig *Eagle*, the schooner *Ticonderoga*, and the sloop *Preble*—anchored in a line across Cumberland Bay. They lay between a shoal and a headland, with gunboats in support. Downie advanced to attack aboard the newly built 39-gun frigate *Confiance*, the most powerful ship in the battle. With him were the brig *Linnet* and two sloops, the *Chub* and the *Finch*, plus a dozen gunboats.

Saratoga and *Ticonderoga* were soon engaged in a ferocious exchange of broadsides in the center of the line. Macdonough was temporarily disabled twice, once when a splintered boom struck him briefly unconscious, and a second time when the head of a decapitated sailor knocked him across the deck. Downie, less fortunate, was killed when struck by a long gun that had been blown off its carriage.

DESPERATE STRUGGLE

Meanwhile, at the south end of the line, *Finch* was crippled by broadsides from *Ticonderoga* and went aground on Crab Island, but on the American side *Preble* took a drubbing from British gunboats and drifted out of the battle. On the other flank fighting was no less fierce. The sloop *Chub* drifted dismasted into the American lines and was boarded, but in an encounter between the two brigs, *Eagle* and *Linnet*, the American *Eagle* came off worse. After two hours' fighting the fire began to slacken. Too many guns had been put out of action and too many men were dead or wounded. *Saratoga* was in poor shape, being raked by *Linnet* as well as facing what were left of *Confiance's* guns. But Macdonough would not accept defeat and summoned a last effort to gain the initiative. His starboard batteries, facing the British, were wrecked, but his port guns remained unused and largely intact. By hauling on cables his anchored frigate was turned around so its port broadside was brought to bear upon the *Confiance*. The British desperately strove to turn their own frigate but the exhausted remnants of the crew could not get the ship around. At the mercy of *Saratoga's* guns, *Confiance* struck, followed shortly by the battered *Linnet*.

The aftermath of the slaughter was handled with ceremonious dignity, the British officers handing their swords to Macdonough only to have them returned as a gesture of respect. As a result of the battle, Prevost abandoned his invasion of New York and the Americans were able to resist British claims to Lake Champlain and the Great Lakes in the peace negotiations.

WAR OF 1812

BATTLE OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN

Date	September 11, 1814
Location	Cumberland Bay, Plattsburgh
Result	United States victory

COMBATANTS

UNITED STATES	BRITAIN

COMMANDERS

Thomas Macdonough	George Downie

FORCES

Ships: 1 frigate, 1 brig, 1 schooner, 1 sloop, 10 gunboats	**Ships:** 1 frigate, 1 brig, 2 sloops, 12 gunboats

LOSSES

Men: 52 killed, 58 wounded **Ships:** none	**Men:** 84 killed, 110 wounded **Ships:** 1 frigate, 1 brig, 2 sloops captured

Thomas Macdonough
This bronze medal, one of a series commemorating the War of 1812, features a bust of Thomas Macdonough, hero of the battle of Lake Champlain.

Battle of attrition
Commandant Macdonough's flagship *Saratoga* exchanges broadsides with HMS *Confiance* during fierce fighting on Lake Champlain. The battle was decided when *Saratoga* managed to bring her fresh portside guns against her exhausted opponent.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

CONGREVE ROCKETS

The British discovered the effectiveness of rockets in war when the weapon was used against them by the army of Mysore in India in the late 18th century. Working at the Royal Arsenal at Woolwich, William Congreve developed the type that bears his name between 1801 and 1805. Propelled by black powder, Congreve rockets had a range of up to 2 miles (3 km), although accuracy was poor and the warhead frequently exploded prematurely. The rockets could be fitted with a variety of warheads, including shrapnel and incendiary, ranging in size from 3 to 24 pounds. They were used by the Royal Navy in the Napoleonic Wars, notably at Copenhagen in 1807, and in the bombardment of Baltimore during the 1812 war with the United States—as immortalized in the line of the US national anthem, "And the rockets' red glare, the bombs bursting in air." Congreve's rockets were employed as weapons during the First Opium War, fired by British gunboats to destroy Chinese junks.

Self-propelled missiles
The Congreve rocket was improved in 1815 with a guide stick fitted to the base of the rocket head, rather than along the side, reducing drag.

WAR OF 1812

BOMBARDMENT OF BALTIMORE

Date September 13–14, 1814
Forces British: 19 ships; Americans: none
Losses British: none; Americans: none

Location Baltimore, Maryland

After capturing and burning Washington in August 1814, the British chose Baltimore as their next target. The city was a shipbuilding center and the home port of privateers raiding British merchant shipping. The Americans had no naval force adequate to resist Vice-Admiral Sir Alexander Cochrane's North American Station fleet, but the entrance to the harbor was covered by the guns of Fort McHenry and blocked by a line of sunken merchant ships.

The British put soldiers ashore to attack the city by land, but this force halted in the face of stiff resistance. At 6:30 a.m. on September 13 Cochrane began the naval attack. Anchored out of range of the fort's guns, four bomb vessels firing mortars kept up a sustained bombardment, while the rocket ship *Erebus* fired its Congreve rockets through a porthole from below deck. In the afternoon the ships shifted closer inshore and came under heavy fire from Fort McHenry. Cochrane eventually had *Erebus* towed back out of range. In foul weather the bombardment continued through the night, creating a spectacular pyrotechnic display, but to little practical effect.

At dawn Lieutenant Colonel George Armistead had a large stars-and-stripes flag raised over the fort, inspiring the lawyer and poet Francis Scott Key to write the verses that would become the American national anthem. The British gave up the attempt to take Baltimore.

WITNESS TO WAR

LIEUTENANT COLONEL GEORGE ARMISTEAD

COMMANDER OF THE GARRISON AT FORT MCHENRY

BOMBARDMENT OF BALTIMORE

"One of the 24 pounders on the south-west bastion, under the immediate command of Capt. Nicholson, was dismounted by a shell, the ***explosion from which … wounded several of his men****; the bustle produced in removing the wounded and remounting the gun, probably induced the enemy to suspect we were in a* ***state of confusion****, as he* ***brought in three bomb-ships*** *to what I believed to be good striking distance. I immediately* ***ordered a fire to be opened*** *… within half an hour those intruders again sheltered themselves by* ***withdrawing beyond our reach****. We gave three cheers and again ceased firing."*

SECOND BARBARY WAR

ACTION OF 17 JUNE

Date June 17, 1815
Forces Americans: 3 frigates, 6 other ships; Algerians: 1 frigate
Losses Americans: none; Algerians: none

Location Western Mediterranean

In March 1815 the US Congress authorized the dispatch of a naval force to North Africa, where the Barbary pirates had resumed attacks on American shipping and the capture and ransom of American sailors. Commodore Stephan Decatur reached Gibraltar with a squadron of nine ships in mid-June. Hearing that Algerian raiders were at sea, he immediately set off and on June 17 had the good fortune to sight the *Meshuda*, the 46-gun flagship of the Algerian admiral Rais Hammidia. They gave chase as the Algerians raced for their home port, the 38-gun frigate USS *Constellation* leading the pursuit.

The *Constellation* succeeded in overhauling the *Meshuda* and her broadsides soon inflicted enough damage to convince Hammidia that Algiers was an impossibly distant refuge. The admiral turned his ship toward Spain, hoping to shelter in a neutral port. With the sloop *Ontario* joining the *Constitution*, however, Meshuda was soon closely engaged. Decatur then brought his flagship *Guerriere* alongside the Algerian ship and devastated it with point-blank broadsides. The Algerian admiral was killed but the crew fought on, inflicting casualties with musket fire from aloft. Finally the American sloop *Epervier* fired broadside after broadside into the Algerian ship, persuading the survivors to strike the colors.

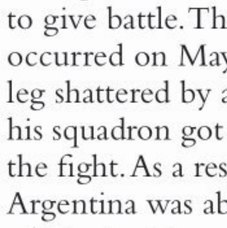
Decatur sailed on to Algiers, whose bey soon accepted American terms, as did the rulers of Tripoli and Tunis. The following year, after the bombardment of Algiers by an Anglo-Dutch fleet, the privateering of the Barbary states was definitively brought to an end.

WARS OF INDEPENDENCE

AT THE START of the 19th century, South America was under the rule of Spain and Portugal. Between 1810 and 1826 a series of wars was fought that resulted in independence for these colonies, which then fought wars among themselves to define their new borders. Although the land campaigns of Simón Bolívar and José de San Martín played the leading part in the wars of independence against Spain, naval warfare also had a significant impact. The makeshift forces of the republican rebels performed remarkably well against the Spanish navy, but imported expertise was essential to their success. Maverick British admiral Thomas Cochrane became a hero of the independence struggle in Chile and Peru, while a previously undistinguished Irish sea captain, William Brown, earned legendary status in Argentina for his exploits both before and after independence. The battle of Lake Maracaibo was the final decisive victory in the struggle for the independence of Colombia, which briefly comprised also Venezuela and Ecuador. The Argentinian defeat at Monte Santiago was a key step toward the foundation of Uruguay as a separate country.

URUGUAYAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

MONTEVIDEO



Date May 14–17, 1814
Forces Argentinians: 10 ships; Spanish: 13 ships
Losses Argentinians: 1 ship sunk; Spanish: 2 ships sunk, 5 captured

Location Off Montevideo, Uruguay

In 1814 the Argentinians, engaged in an independence war against Spain, decided they needed a naval force to contest Spanish dominance at sea. William Brown, an Irish-born seaman who had recently settled in Argentina, was placed in command of the fledgling navy. He assembled a force of seven ships, taking as his flagship the frigate *Hercules*. The Argentine navy was blooded on March 8 in an attack upon Isla Martin Garcia, a Spanish stronghold in the mouth of the River Uruguay. Brown then established a blockade of Montevideo, his naval force augmented by three armed merchant ships. A Spanish squadron was in the harbor, protected by shore batteries. In mid-May, Brown pretended to lift the blockade, luring the Spanish ships into setting to sea, where he forced them to give battle. The fiercest engagement occurred on May 16. Brown had his leg shattered by a cannonball, but his squadron got by far the better of the fight. As a result of this naval victory, Argentina was able to take control of Montevideo.

CHILEAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

VALDIVIA

Date February 3–4, 1820
Forces Chileans: 1 ship; Spanish: c.1600men
Losses Chileans: 7 killed; Spanish: 100 killed

Location Corral Bay, Chile

In Chile's War of Independence against Spain, British admiral Sir Thomas Cochrane commanded the Chilean fleet in dashing style. He was convinced that the Spanish forces would crumble if subjected to unremitting aggression. Valdivia was the best defended Spanish stronghold in Chile – it had been compared to Gibraltar. Corral Bay, the approach to Valdivia from the sea, was protected by forts and other strongpoints mounting some 120 guns and manned by around 1,600 soldiers. Cochrane, with little over 300 men under his command and a leaky frigate *O'Higgins* as his sole effective warship, decided to take Valdivia by a nighttime amphibious assault. Achieving complete surprise, the Chileans landed in the darkness and attacked Fort Ingles, which was swiftly abandoned by its garrison. In the confusion Cochrane's men mingled with Spanish soldiers, compounding the problems of Spanish officers attempting to organize resistance. By the end of the night the four forts on the south side of the bay were in Cochrane's hands. Utterly demoralized, Valdivia itself surrendered shortly afterward.

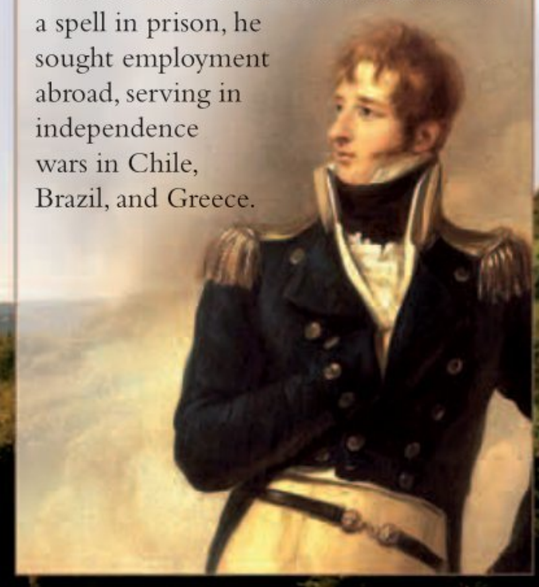
Valdivian fort system
These extensive fortifications protected a port used by ships crossing the Straits of Magellan.

1775–1860

THOMAS COCHRANE

BRITISH COMMANDER OF THE CHILEAN FLEET IN THE CHILEAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Serving in the Napoleonic Wars, Thomas Cochrane, Earl of Dundonald, made his name through bold exploits as a captain of sloops and frigates. His progress in his naval career was inhibited by his involvement in politics and criticism of corruption in high places. In 1814 he was disgraced for alleged involvement in stock market fraud. After a spell in prison, he sought employment abroad, serving in independence wars in Chile, Brazil, and Greece.



VENEZUELAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

LAKE MARACAIBO

Date July 24,1823
Forces Colombians: 22 ships; Spanish: 32 ships
Losses Unknown

Location Lake Maracaibo, Venezuela

Despite the victories of Simón Bolívar, in 1823 the independence of Colombia was still contested by Spain. Spanish forces were holding the key town of Maracaibo, by the eponymous salt-water lake. José Prudencio Padilla, commander of a Colombian naval force comprising a corvette, three brigantines, and a variety of small vessels, entered the lake from the Gulf of Venezuela to attack Maracaibo. Crossing the bar into the lake under the Spanish guns of Fort San Carlos, one of Padilla's ships was destroyed after running aground. The Spanish sent a squadron under Angel Laborde into the lake to pursue Padilla. On July 24, in a fierce close-quarters mêlée fought more with machetes than with cannon, the Spanish were defeated despite superior numbers. Maracaibo was recaptured and Spanish forces in Colombia laid down their arms.

ARGENTINA-BRAZIL WAR

MONTE SANTIAGO

Date April 7-8,1827
Forces Brazilians: c.14 ships; Argentinians: 4 ships
Losses Brazilians: none; Argentinians: 2 ships lost

Location Off coast of Argentina

In the war between Brazil and the United Provinces (Argentina and Uruguay) in 1825–28, the Argentinians had a naval squadron of small warships. Brazil had a far larger navy, but it was timidly led. Argentinian commander Admiral William Brown defeated a Brazilian river flotilla at Juncal in February 1827. The following April he took the brigs *Republic Argentina* and *Independencia*, plus a corvette and a schooner, out of his base at Los Pozos, evading a Brazilian blockade by hugging the coast (the Brazilian ships could not operate in the shallows). But Brown's two brigs ran aground. Captain James Norton, commanding the Brazilian blockade squadron, brought in four shallow-draft schooners and had a frigate towed into range to bombard the grounded ships. After a hard fight they were destroyed. Brown's other two ships escaped with heavy damage.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

NAUTICAL INSTRUMENTS

BY THE 19TH CENTURY navigation at sea had reached a high level of accuracy. Previously, seamen had mostly kept within sight of shore, depending upon observation of the sun and stars for orientation. The introduction of the compass and of instruments such as the astrolabe by Chinese and Arab mariners in medieval times were major advances on which European navigators systematically built.

Early astrolabe Thirteenth-century navigators use an astrolabe in the Indian Ocean

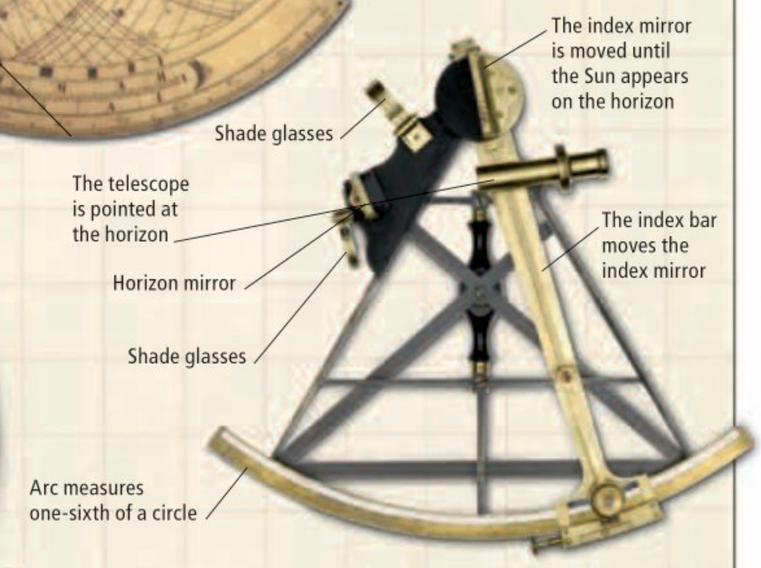
TYPES OF INSTRUMENT

The compass was a difficult instrument to use at sea because of subtle and complex variations between readings of magnetic and true north. European mariners had made great progress in adjusting compass readings to true north by the end of the 16th century. The navigator's other prime instruments were devices such as the astrolabe, or the more advanced sextant for measuring the altitude of heavenly bodies such as the Pole Star or the Sun at noon. With the aid of astronomical almanacs this allowed him to calculate his latitude—how far his ship was north or south of the equator. It took until the mid-18th century for longitude to be calculated accurately.

COMPASS The magnetic compass was in use in China from the 11th century. It needed skill and experience to use a compass accurately on oceanic voyages.

ASTROLABE The astrolabe was used by medieval astronomers to observe the stars. A simplified version was adopted by mariners.

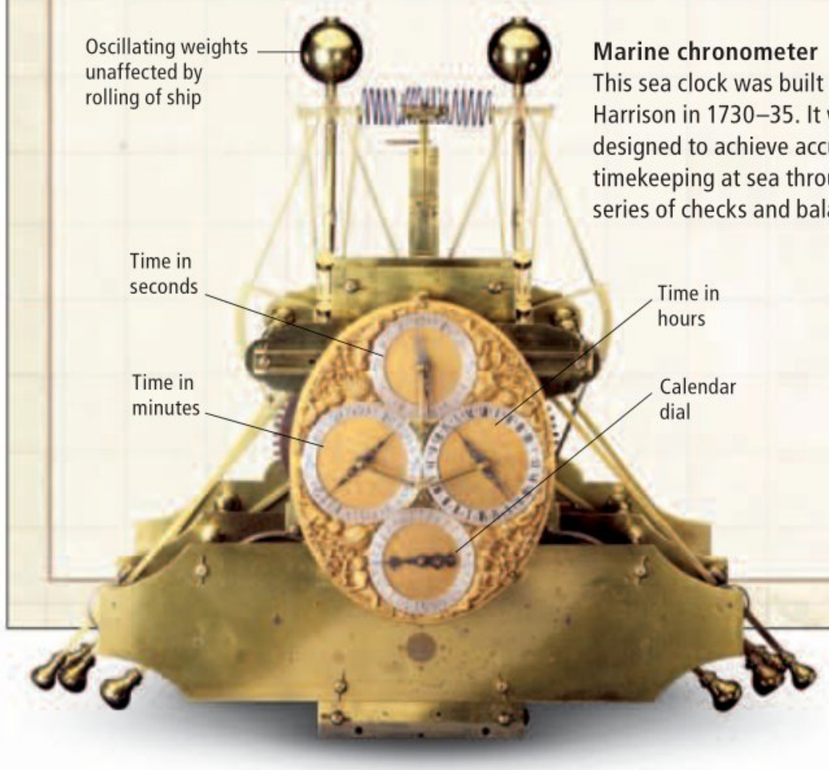
QUADRANT The quadrant was a primitive instrument for finding the altitude of stars, including the Sun. It was hard to use accurately on a rolling ship.



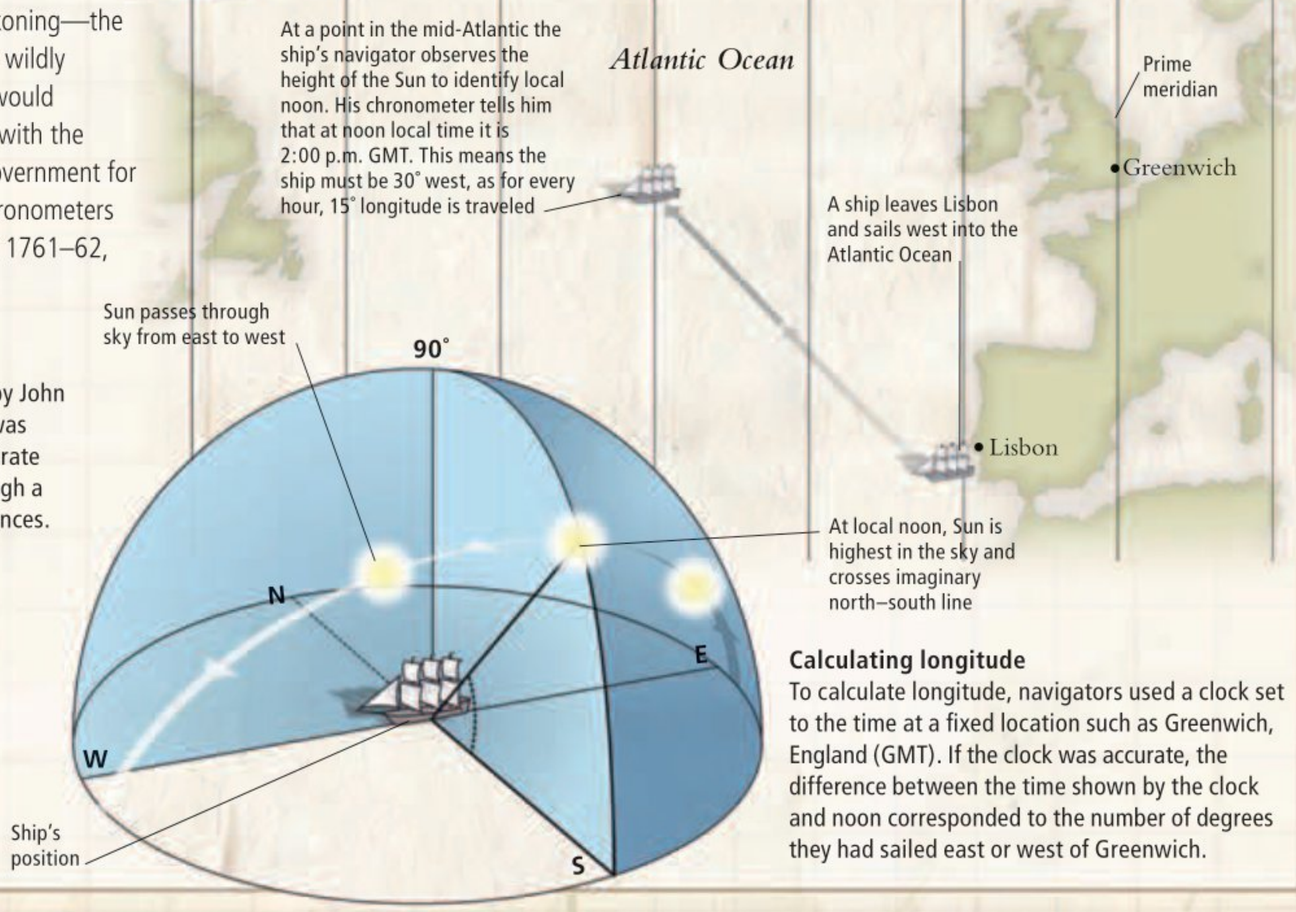
SEXTANT Invented in the mid-18th century, the sextant was a great improvement over the astrolabe for measuring the altitude of the Sun.

MEASURING LONGITUDE

Until the 18th century calculations of longitude depended on dead reckoning—the measurement of the ship's speed and direction of travel. This was often wildly inaccurate. A more precise calculation required the use of a clock that would keep accurate time at sea, but conventional timepieces could not cope with the movement of the ship. In response to a reward offered by the British government for solving this problem, clockmaker John Harrison produced a series of chronometers of increasing accuracy. His H4, tested on a voyage to the West Indies in 1761–62, allowed longitude to be calculated to within one nautical mile.



Marine chronometer
This sea clock was built by John Harrison in 1730–35. It was designed to achieve accurate timekeeping at sea through a series of checks and balances.



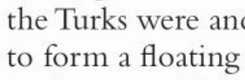
Calculating longitude
To calculate longitude, navigators used a clock set to the time at a fixed location such as Greenwich, England (GMT). If the clock was accurate, the difference between the time shown by the clock and noon corresponded to the number of degrees they had sailed east or west of Greenwich.

LATER OTTOMAN BATTLES

THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE declined during the 18th and 19th centuries as it found itself unable to match the technological and organizational progress made by the European powers. Although still capable of defeating the similarly stagnant Venetians in the Mediterranean, the Turkish Navy had its weaknesses exposed during the wars with the expanding Russian Empire in 1768-74 and 1787-91. With the aid of foreign naval advisers, the Russians achieved a level of fighting efficiency and tactical flair far superior to that of the timidly led Ottoman fleet. Russian warships entered the Mediterranean for the first time to defeat the Turks at Chesma in 1770, and got the better of a series of engagements in the Black Sea, culminating in the victory at Tendra in 1790—despite simultaneously fighting Sweden in the Baltic. The one-sided battle of Navarino in 1827, the last fleet engagement of the age of sail, completed the humiliation of the once proud Turkish navy. The Ottomans continued to spend heavily on warships—in 1875 they had the third largest navy in the world—but they never again fought a battle at sea.

RUSSO-TURKISH WAR

CHESMA



Date July 5–7, 1770
Forces Russians: 9 ships of the line; Ottomans: c.20 ships of the line
Losses Russians: 1 ship of the line; Ottomans: c.19 ships of the line
Location Near island of Chios, Aegean

After war broke out between Imperial Russia and Ottoman Turkey in 1768, two squadrons of Russian warships were sent from the Baltic Sea to the Mediterranean, under the command respectively of Admiral Grigory Spiridov and Rear Admiral John Elphinston, one of many British naval officers serving with the Russian navy. Count Alexsei Girgoryevich Orlov, an important figure at court, was given overall control of the naval force. His ultimate mission was to encourage a Greek revolt against Turkish rule.

On July 5, 1770, the two Russian squadrons found a Turkish fleet in Chesma Bay between the island of Chios and the Anatolian mainland. Lacking confidence in their seamanship, the Turks were anchored in two lines to form a floating battery, the ships in the second line positioned to fire through the gaps in the first. Although outnumbered, the Russian ships sailed in to attack. Spiridov's flagship *Yevstafy* closely engaged the Turkish flagship *Real Mustafa*, setting its mast on fire. Unfortunately for the Russians the blazing mast fell onto the *Yevstafy* and both ships were destroyed in the ensuing conflagration. Admiral Spiridov escaped, but more than 500 Russian sailors were killed.

After this engagement the Turkish fleet withdrew further into the bay, which was crowded with the ships of the line and a host of frigates, xebecs, galleys, and other smaller craft. The Russian and British officers decided to attempt a night attack. A force of four ships of the line, two frigates, a bomb boat, and four fireships was put under the command of Scottish-born commodore Samuel Greig. The force advanced into the bay at around midnight while other ships targeted shore batteries and gave supporting fire.

The mortars of the bomb boat and broadsides of the ships of the line soon took their toll and by the time the fireships were sent in, several Turkish ships of the line were destroyed or on fire. Soon the bay was a mass of blazing ships, many set alight by explosions on board their neighbors. The entire Ottoman fleet at Chesma was destroyed except for one 60-gun ship and five galleys captured by the Russians. The battle left the Russian navy in command of the Aegean Sea.

Destruction of the Ottoman fleet
Turkish sailors abandon their burning ships during the Russian attack on the Ottoman fleet at Chesma.

RUSSO-TURKISH WAR

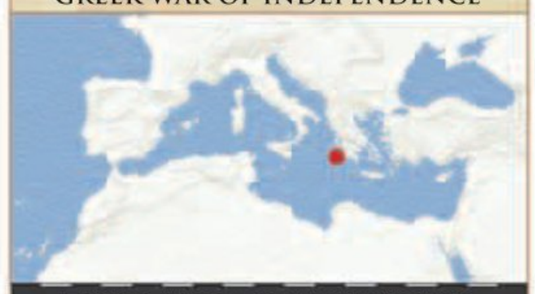
TENDRA

Date September 8–9, 1790
Forces Russians: 10 ships of the line, 6 frigates; Ottomans: 14 ships of the line, 8 frigates
Losses Russians: none; Ottomans: 2 ships of the line
Location Off Tendra Island, Black Sea

During the Russo-Turkish War of 1787-91, Russia found an inspired naval commander in Rear Admiral Fyodor Fyodorovich Ushakov, who distinguished himself in victories at Fidonisi in 1788 and the Kerch Strait in July 1790. In September 1790 Ushakov surprised the Turkish fleet at anchor off Tendra Island in the Black Sea. He immediately attacked their rear, seizing the tactical initiative. The Ottomans had a clear numerical advantage, which Ushakov countered by including three frigates in his line of battle and positioning three other frigates alongside his ships in the van, to block any Turkish effort to double the line. The Russians had the better of the exchange of broadsides and the Turks, whose ships were copper-bottomed, used their superior speed to disengage. Ushakov pursued vigorously, inflicting significant damage on a number of the departing Turkish ships.

The following day Ushakov caught up with two ships of the line. One was easily captured but the other ship, the flagship of Admiral Said Bey, held out for hours despite being surrounded by Russian guns. The ship eventually caught fire and exploded before most of the 800 crew could be taken off. This victory, costing the Ottomans 1,400 casualties and 733 prisoners, gave the Russians command of the Black Sea which was confirmed by a victory at Kaliakria the following year.

GREEK WAR OF INDEPENDENCE



THE BATTLE OF NAVARINO

Date	October 20, 1827
Location	Off west coast of the Peloponnese
Result	British, French, and Russian victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN, FRANCE, RUSSIA	OTTOMAN EMPIRE, EGYPT

COMMANDERS

Edward Codrington	Ibrahim Pasha

FORCES

Ships: 22 ships including 10 ships of the line	**Ships:** 78 ships including 3 ships of the line

LOSSES

Men: 181 **Ships:** none	**Men:** c.3,000 **Ships:** 70 ships

Victory for the Great Powers
British, French, and Russian ships attack the Ottoman-Egyptian fleet, anchored three-deep in a crescent formation at Navarino.

THE BATTLE OF NAVARINO

In July 1827 Britain, France, and Russia signed the Treaty of London, agreeing joint action to end the war in Greece, where Greek nationalists were fighting for independence from the Ottomans. The British commander-in-chief in the Mediterranean, Sir Edward Codrington, was ordered to demand that both sides observe an immediate armistice.

In September an Egyptian fleet from Alexandria anchored in Navarino Bay, the principal Ottoman naval base in the Peloponnese. Nominally part of the Ottoman Empire, Egypt had achieved a notable degree of modernization under French influence and its navy was now superior to the Turkish fleet. Admiral Codrington blockaded the harbor and sought assurances that the Egyptian ships would not be used against the Greeks. Nonetheless the ships twice sortied out of the bay and had to be shepherded back into port by Codrington.

In October Codrington was joined by the French admiral Henri de Rigny and the Russian admiral Login Heyden, creating an allied force of 10 ships of the line plus a 60-gun frigate, de Rigny's flagship *Sirène*. Hoping to avoid a prolonged winter blockade, the admirals agreed on a bold plan of action: they would sail into the bay and anchor opposite the Ottoman-Egyptian fleet, whose commanders would be forced either to implement an armistice or have their fleet destroyed.

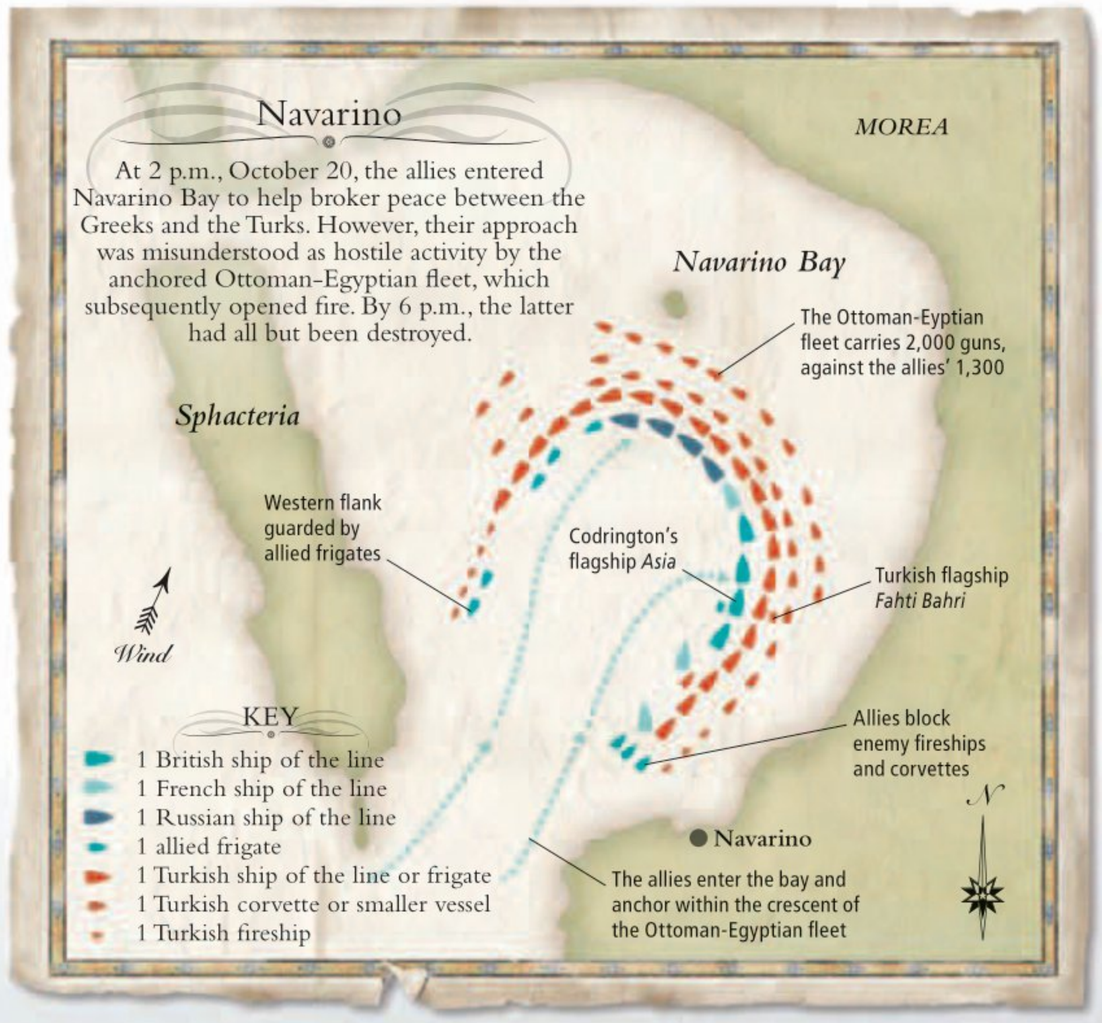
Smoothbore naval gun
Smoothbore naval guns remained in use until late in the 19th century. They were superseded by rifled breech-loaders.

NO WAY BACK

At 2 p.m. on October 20, Codrington's flagship *Asia* led two columns of British and French ships into the harbor, with the Russians following in the rear. It was on the face of it a desperately risky operation. The allied ships sailed between shore batteries to anchor in the middle of a horseshoe-shaped formation of Ottoman and Egyptian ships, with an onshore wind making any escape from the bay virtually impossible. But the allied commanders' faith in the superiority of their guns and gunnery was well founded.

Asia anchored with a band playing on deck, hoping the Ottomans and Egyptians would not put up resistance.

In fact the fighting started almost immediately. Conducted at close range in a crowded harbor, the cannonade of the allied ships proved fearsomely effective. The Turks and Egyptians fought with courage and determination, but they lacked both adequate guns and training. Codrington's *Asia* took on the Ottoman flagship and an Egyptian 60-gun frigate simultaneously and shattered both. It was the same story elsewhere: three-quarters of the Ottoman and Egyptian ships were sunk by enemy gunfire or by their own crews, who set them on fire or blew them up to avoid them falling into enemy hands.



The news of the Ottoman defeat at Navarino was greeted with joy by the Greeks and with defiance by the Ottoman sultan, who declared a jihad against the infidel. This precipitated a war with Russia, which the Ottomans lost, and Greece eventually gained its independence. The battle is above all remembered as the last major naval encounter of the sailing ship era.

3

1830 – 1918

STEAM AND STEEL

IF ADMIRAL HORATIO NELSON had returned from the grave to view the navies of 1914, he would have been confronted by a startling technological metamorphosis. During a period of only occasional naval warfare, fragile wooden sailing ships with cannon firing broadsides of solid shot had been replaced by warships built of steel, powered by steam, and armed with huge turret-mounted rifled guns firing explosive shells. It was a transformation that had cost vast sums of money, reflecting the importance accorded to navies in a world of competing imperial powers—valued as much for prestige as for use in war. The outbreak of World War I in 1914 belatedly gave steam-and-steel warships a chance to show their paces in a global conflict.

Funnels and masts
Until the 1870s steam warships were built with masts and sails because of concerns about the unreliability of steam engines. These warships of the Argentinian navy are in action on the River Paraguay during the bloody War of the Triple Alliance (1864–70).

NEW SHIPS

The usefulness of a steam engine for making a vessel independent of the wind was obvious in the early 19th century, but the first steam boats were only suitable for rivers, lakes, and coastal waters. Steam gunboats were in use by the 1820s, but it was not until the 1860s that the new face of naval warfare began to emerge. The introduction of the first ocean-going steam warships—although fitted with sails as a supplementary form of propulsion—more or less coincided with the development of naval guns firing explosive shells and the use of iron cladding to protect wooden hulls from this augmented firepower. This revolution in warship design, which threw up numerous strange configurations and combinations, eventually settled down with the Royal Navy's *Devastation* of 1873, a screw-driven steamship with an iron hull, armor, no masts or sails, and guns mounted in turrets instead of broadside. *Devastation* set the style for battleships, which replaced ships of the line as the fleet's capital ships. Frigates were supplanted by cruisers, designed for duties such as convoy escort and commerce raiding. The development of torpedoes led to the introduction of light torpedo boats and also of the torpedo-boat destroyer—soon shortened to "destroyer"—which defended larger ships against torpedo attack and served as a form of torpedo boat itself. When submarines emerged as submersible torpedo boats, the basic outline of a new kind of fleet was complete.

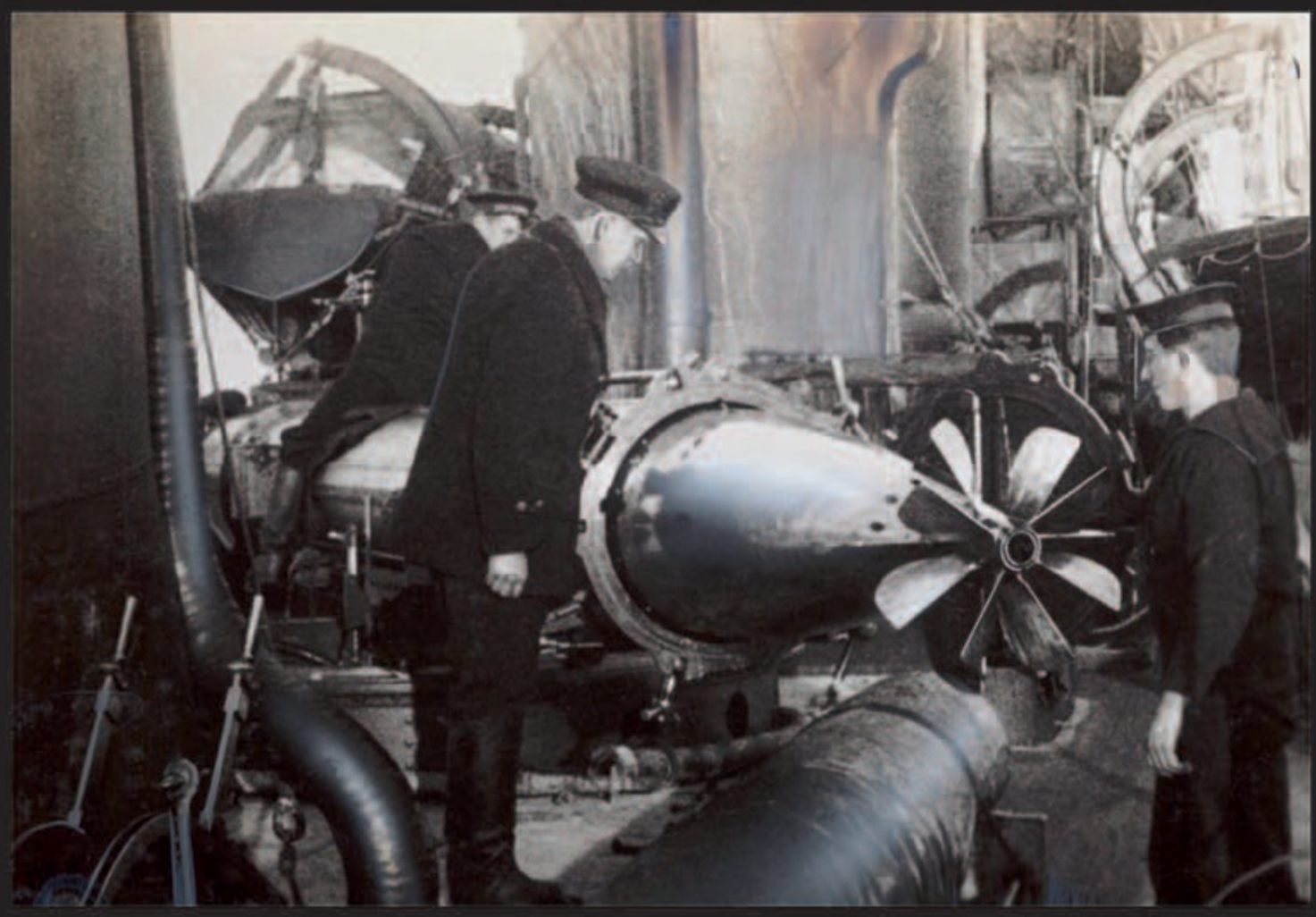
1850 British cannon
In the mid-19th century Royal Navy warships were still armed with muzzle-loading cannon firing solid shot and mounted on wooden carriages. Within 20 years such guns were obsolete.

SMARTENING UP

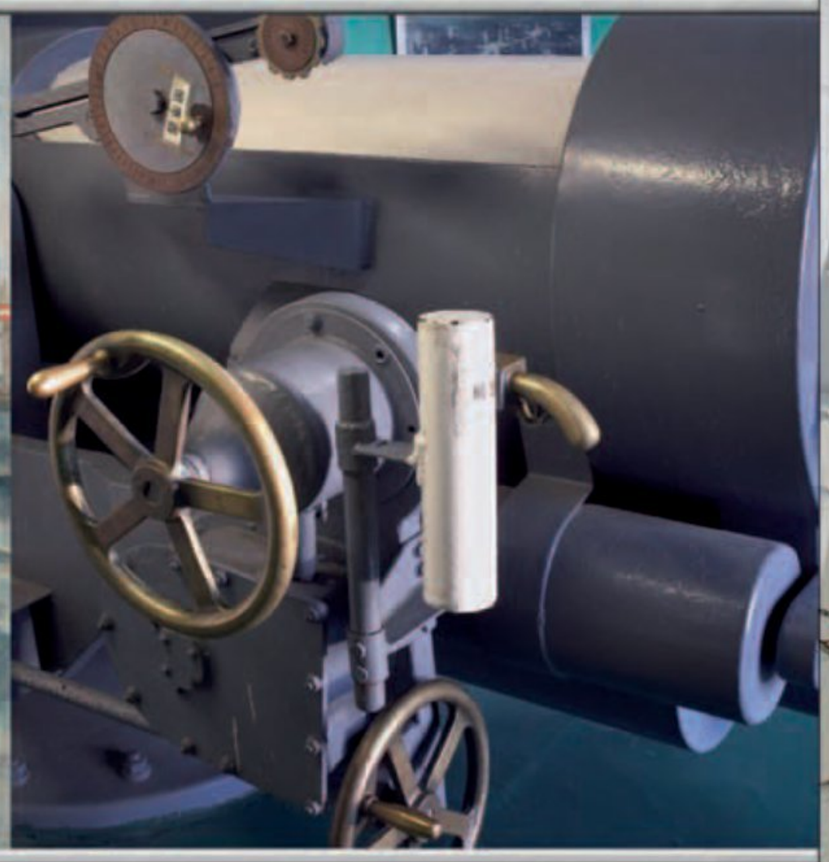
Crews changed as well as ships. The press-gang disappeared and was replaced either by the signing up of volunteers for long-term service, or short-term conscription as part of a wider system of universal military service. It became standard practice for navies to have uniforms for their men. The old idea of training officers and men through practical experience at sea from boyhood died out. The United States set up the Naval Academy at Annapolis in 1850; the Japanese established a cadet academy at Etajima; and even the tradition-bound British felt obliged to create a Royal Naval College at Dartmouth in the early 20th century. Special training ships came into use for ratings. Men were still taken on board at a young age and given a hard time, with lots of caning and flicking with ropes. In general, naval punishment remained harsh, although milder than in the 18th century. The German navy was atypical in still flogging its conscript ratings in 1914. But discipline in some ways became far more rigorous than before, with meticulous regard for details of personal appearance and the cleanliness and painting of ships. Harassment over such relatively minor matters, along with complaints over pay and conditions, caused occasional outbreaks of mutiny below decks. Officers in general tended to become more remote from the men than in Nelson's day. Victorian and Edwardian navies were acutely class-conscious and promotion from the ranks was virtually non-existent.

STEAMING TO WAR

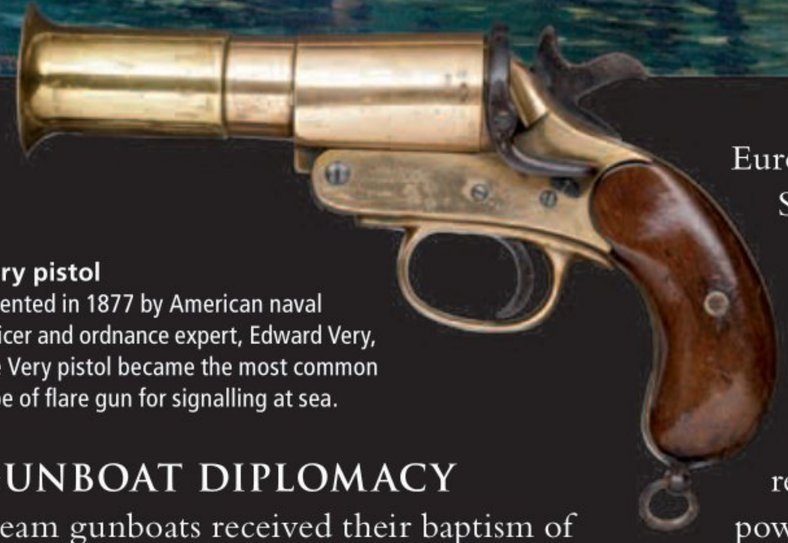
Coal-fired engines meant a new breed of engineers and stokers appeared on board, keeping the machinery going in often difficult and unpleasant conditions deep inside the ship. Armor plating left even less chance for air or natural light below decks than previously, although the introduction of electricity was a boon. Fire was less of a hazard than on wooden ships and there were no falls from rigging. But there were disturbing losses of warships to explosions, a consequence of problems with coal stocks or boilers, or with the new propellants and high explosives that sometimes proved unstable. Taking on coal was back-breaking manual labour, and the need for it limited ships' tactical flexibility, requiring breaks from action to replenish fuel stocks from coaling ships or to put in at coaling stations. In war, engagements were fought at ever increasing range but lost none of their savagery. New munitions produced new wounds, especially flash burns that proved a major source of casualties in World War I. Officers could no longer afford to stand exposed on an open deck swept by the blast of explosions and shards of steel. The old wooden ships had been hard to sink in battle, however much punishment they took, but a steel ship might go to the bottom in minutes, especially if a magazine was hit, taking most of the crew with her.



Inspecting a torpedo
These British sailors are inspecting a self-propelled torpedo. Whether deployed on small torpedo boats or submarines, self-propelled torpedoes challenged the dominance of big-gun battleships.



Civil war ironclads
The American Civil War was one of the first conflicts in which ironclad steamships went into battle. These Union gunboats and mortar boats are bombarding Confederate fortifications on the Mississippi.



Very pistol
Invented in 1877 by American naval officer and ordnance expert, Edward Very, the Very pistol became the most common type of flare gun for signalling at sea.

GUNBOAT DIPLOMACY

Steam gunboats received their baptism of fire in a scattering of conflicts around the world from the 1820s to the 1860s—from the Opium War through the Crimean War to the American Civil War, which exhibited the strengths and limitations of their varieties. A complex relationship developed between the evolution of these steam warships and the rampant imperialism of the 19th century. These new technologies increased the ability of the European powers, later joined by the United States and Japan, to bully less developed nations into submission. "Sending in the gunboat" became the answer to most popular assertions of anti-imperialism. But steamships also necessitated imperial conquest, as the ships' frequent need for refueling with coal required a global naval power to possess secure coaling stations around the world. Its later replacement with oil led Britain to put a high value upon controlling Iraqi oilfields during World War I.

RISING NAVAL POWERS

Growing rivalry between the imperialist powers gave the impetus to accelerating naval programs from the late 19th century. Up to that point Britain enjoyed unparalleled maritime dominance, not only through the Royal Navy but also through the overwhelming size of its merchant fleet and the output of its shipyards. By the 1890s, however, Britain's naval pre-eminence was being increasingly contested, even though world trade continued to be carried mostly in British ships. The influential writings of the American naval historian Alfred Mayer Mahan voiced a widespread view that a nation's global standing depended upon the strength of its navy. In an era of global competition, naval expansion became a popular cause promoted by jingoistic nationalists, even

1839
Start of First Opium War between Britain and China, an early instance of European "gunboat imperialism"

1843
Launch of *Great Britain*, first ocean-going screw-propelled ship

1855
French floating batteries bombard Kinburn; first ironclads used in battle

Case shot
This case or canister shot from the American Civil War, complete with small iron balls, was similar to grapeshot.

1871
Launch of first mastless turret ship, HMS *Devastation*

1830 1840 1850 1860 1870

Powder horn
This early 19th-century American powder horn was carried by marines and sailors for loading muskets and pistols.

1853
Start of Crimean War. First naval use of exploding shells at Sinope; race between shell and armor begins

1854
First strategic use of naval mines by Russians at Kronstadt

1859
France launches first seagoing ironclad warship *La Gloire*

1866
Battle of Lissa between Austria and Italy is first sea battle between armored ships

in countries with no tradition of maintaining large fleets, such as the United States and Germany. Thus a global naval arms race gathered momentum. America and Japan in particular embarked on major naval construction programs, followed by Germany. By 1914 the French had become the world's fifth-ranking naval power. The United States flexed the muscles of its new navy in a one-sided war with Spain in 1898, and then proudly sent the "Great White Fleet" around the world in 1907–09 in a pageant of American seapower. But it was the Russo-Japanese war of 1904–05 that provided the first thorough test of the new steam-and-steel navies. At the battle of Tsushima the Japanese were triumphant in a fleet encounter consciously inspired by Trafalgar, yet contested by ships capable of a speed of 16 knots with guns engaging effectively at a range of over 3 miles (5 km).

Super-dreadnought
The Royal Navy's *Queen Elizabeth* was an oil-fired batteship launched in 1913. With 15in guns and a top speed of 23 knots, she far surpassed the battleship *Dreadnought*, launched only seven years earlier.

BIG SHIPS AND SNEAKY DEVICES

Early 20th-century navies were involved in an arms race that led to every ship launched being bigger and more heavily armed than the last. The intense rivalry between Britain and Germany, in particular, triggered an astounding burst of naval construction, which proved one of the main causes for Britain entering World War I on the side of France.

The race started in 1906 when the Royal Navy's HMS *Dreadnought* set a new standard for battleships. However, the *Dreadnought* was soon surpassed by the oil-fired super-dreadnoughts, such as *Conqueror*, while cruisers put on weight to become battlecruisers, faster ships with more powerful guns. These mighty ships attracted huge public and press interest possibly in part because of the great expense involved in their production. The main threats to these great ships—that naval commanders were well aware of—were mines and torpedoes. These were relatively cheap weapon systems against which ships had little protection.

When the long-awaited Great War came in 1914, the mighty fleets disappointed naval enthusiasts, avid for a repeat of the Battle of Trafalgar. Just as in the land war on the Western front, the new maritime technology favored defensive tactics. The threatening presence of submarines and mines militated against the bold, aggressive use of large warships. Even when sailing with a defensive screen of destroyers, battleships and battlecruisers proved vulnerable to these devices. The Royal Navy's Grand Fleet spent much of the war out of U-boat range, only occasionally risking a foray into the North Sea. While the one full-scale encounter between the British and German fleets at Jutland in 1916 was indecisive, commerce raiding, in the form of U-boat attacks on merchant shipping, almost crippled Britain's war effort. By the end of World War I, with experiments in flying aircraft off ships becoming more successful and techniques of submarine and anti-submarine warfare becoming ever more sophisticated, a new profile of naval war was emerging that was no longer dependent on ships engaging with another at close quarters.

1889
Triple-expansion engines fitted in British battleships

1894
Battle of Yalu River; Japan defeats China in First Sino-Japanese War (1894–95)

1904
Japanese attack Russian fleet at Port Arthur

1914
Start of World War I: the first aircraft carrier laid down

1916
The battle of Jutland between Britain and Germany is the only battle fought between dreadnought battleships

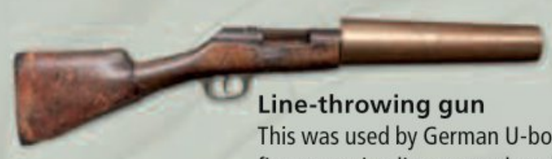
1918
Germany surrenders following military collapse and mutiny in the navy

1880 | 1890 | 1900 | 1910 | 1920

1880s
Following the example of Britain's Royal Navy, the use of rifled breech-loaders becomes widespread in modern navies

1898
Admiral von Tirpitz begins expansion of German navy, triggering arms race with Britain

1906
HMS *Dreadnought* is the first "all-big-gun" battleship with all-turbine propulsion



Line-throwing gun
This was used by German U-boats to fire a mooring line to another ship.

1915
Sinking of passenger ship SS *Lusitania* by German U-boat helps to bring the US into the war

NEW NAVIES OF EUROPE

Siege of Sevastopol
The largest naval operation in the early years of steam power was the Anglo-French expedition to the Black Sea in the Crimean War. Some 89 warships and 300 transports were sent to besiege the Russian naval base at Sevastopol.

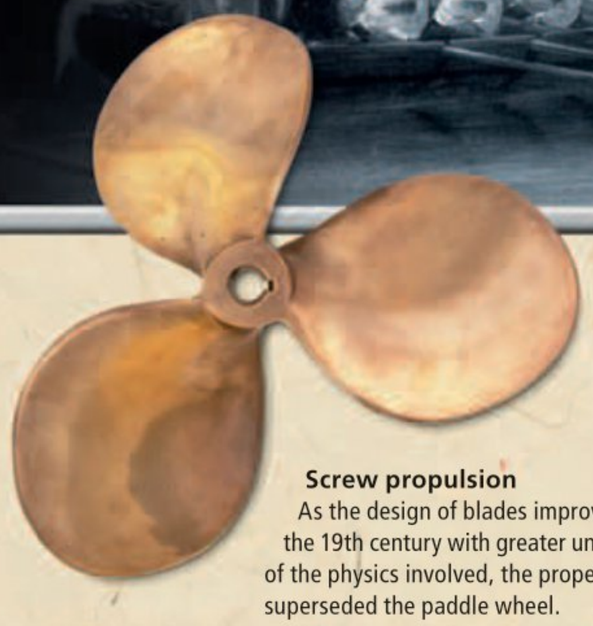
The power of naval guns
With their powerful long-range guns, warships were often used to bombard targets on shore. Here, the British paddle sloop *Bulldog* joins in the attack on the Russian fort at Bomarsund in the Baltic during the Crimean War.

NAVIES PLAYED A MARGINAL ROLE in European warfare for most of the 19th century, and sea battles were few. In the Crimean War of 1854–56 sea power was essential in enabling Britain and France to install armies in the Black Sea, but the Russian navy refused to come out and fight. The battle of Lissa in 1866 was fascinating as a ramming combat between ironclads, but irrelevant to the outcome of the war between Austria and Italy. In the Franco-Prussian War of 1870–71 French naval superiority was impotent to offset the dominance of the Prussian army. Yet navies were central to European states' view of themselves as great powers and competition between nations provided the impetus for rapid innovation in warship design and naval armament. When new countries wanted to assert their status—Italy, unified in the 1860s, and Imperial Germany after 1871—they inevitably built fleets.

BRITISH PREDOMINANCE

Britain's Royal Navy enjoyed an overwhelming dominance at sea, but the British nonetheless had to respond to developments in naval technology if they were to stay ahead. In the mid-19th century the transition from wood and sail to steam and steel brought a period of experimentation as designers and strategists juggled with the new technological possibilities. Emperor Napoleon III's France at first led the way with the construction of the battleship *Gloire* in 1859, the first ocean-going ironclad warship, sparking a brief naval race with the British—a race Britain's industrial superiority ensured she would easily win. The success of the *Monitor* in the American Civil War put European navies in a flurry in the 1860s and led to a brief fashion for ramming as a style of combat. Gunports and broadsides were gradually supplanted by turret guns, and sails were somewhat reluctantly abandoned—the Royal Navy battleship *Devastation* launched in 1871 was the first all-steam capital ship.

By the 1880s warship design was settling down, but an arms race between the major European powers was beginning. Fear of the



Screw propulsion
As the design of blades improved through the 19th century with greater understanding of the physics involved, the propeller totally superseded the paddle wheel.

combined naval strength of France and Russia led Britain to formally adopt the "two-power standard." The Naval Defence Act of 1889 decreed that the Royal Navy should always be strong enough to defeat any other two navies, and pledged vast sums of public money to the construction of new battleships and cruisers. But Germany was to provide the real challenge to British naval superiority from the 1890s, when it placed its expanding industrial power behind a massive shipbuilding programme under Admiral Alfred von Tirpitz.

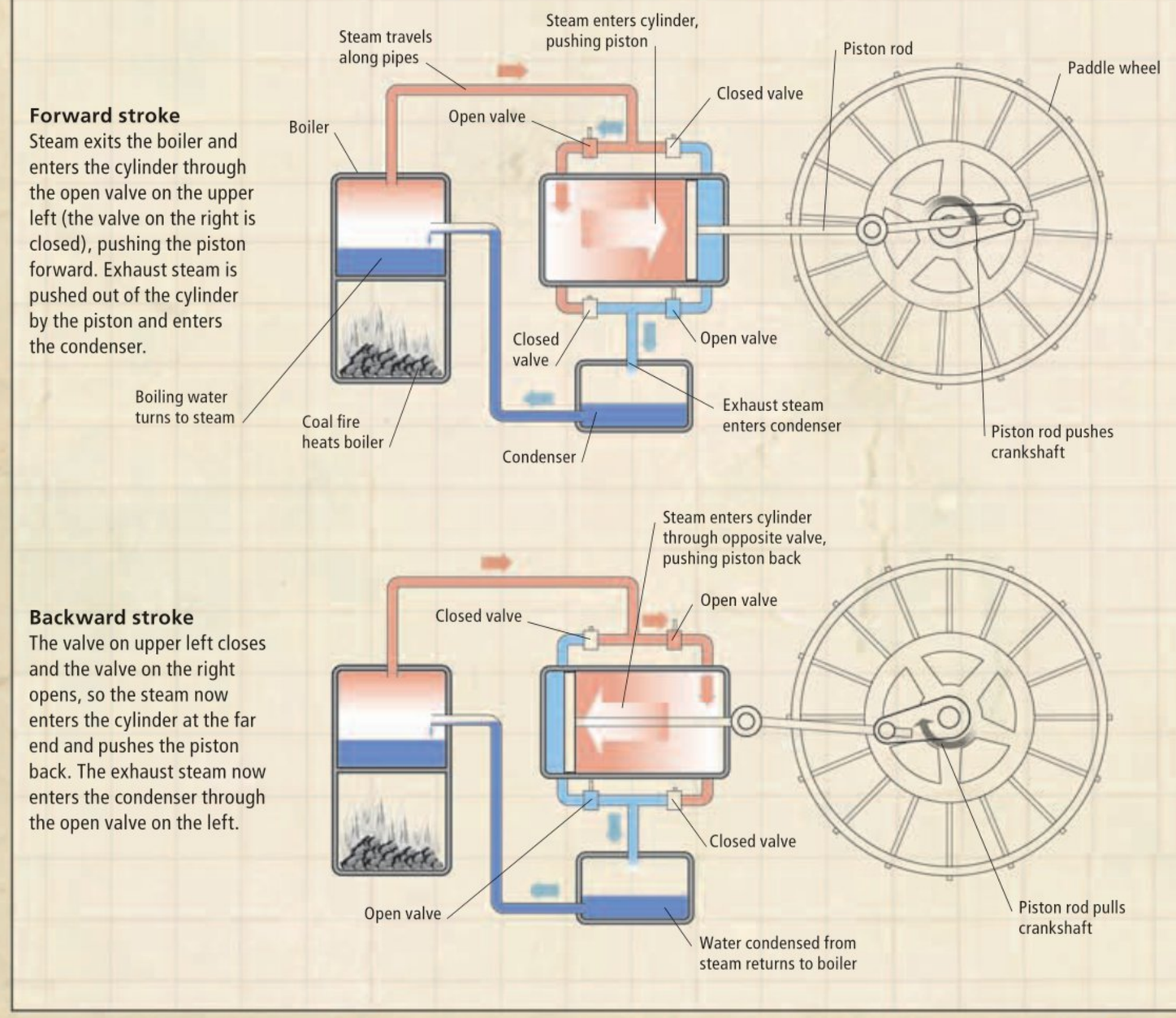
IMPERIAL ASSERTION

Sea travel became far more secure in the second half of the 19th century after the great powers formally renounced privateering and most piracy was quelled. As the arm of the world's dominant shipbuilding and commercial power, the Royal Navy took the lead in charting the seas—a major project that led to safer navigation for all—and the suppression of the slave trade. But European dominance of the oceans was most often experienced by the rest of the world as straightforward bullying. This was seen at its worst in the mistreatment of China by Britain and France from the 1840s to the 1880s. As long as European powers did not fight one another, however, there was little chance for the expensive steam fleets to show their worth in battle.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

EARLY NAVAL STEAM ENGINES

The standard propulsion system for early steamships was a paddle wheel driven by a double-acting steam engine (see below). Steam entered the cylinder alternately on the left and right, pushing the piston forward and back. The first ironclad battleships—the French *Gloire* of 1859 and British *Warrior* of 1861—combined double-acting engines with screw propellers. In the 1880s the introduction of triple-expansion engines, with three cylinders instead of one, led to a major improvement in efficiency. Whereas *Warrior*'s engine needed 5 lb (2.2 kg) of coal to generate one horsepower for an hour, the triple-expansion engine of the British pre-dreadnought *Canopus* in 1899 needed only 1.7 lb (0.75 kg). In the early 20th century Charles Parsons's steam turbine would take steam propulsion to its peak of efficiency.



Forward stroke
Steam exits the boiler and enters the cylinder through the open valve on the upper left (the valve on the right is closed), pushing the piston forward. Exhaust steam is pushed out of the cylinder by the piston and enters the condenser.

Backward stroke
The valve on upper left closes and the valve on the right opens, so the steam now enters the cylinder at the far end and pushes the piston back. The exhaust steam now enters the condenser through the open valve on the left.

EUROPEAN WARS: FROM SAIL TO STEAM

DURING THE PERIOD from 1850 to 1870, navies struggled to adapt their tactics as the switch was made to steam power, ironclad ships, and rifled guns firing explosive shells. There were few chances for the European powers to experiment with new technology in action. In 1854 Britain and France went to war against Russia in support of Ottoman Turkey. Although known as the Crimean War, this conflict was fought in the Baltic as well as the Black Sea. Confronted by the world's two leading naval powers, Russia refused to commit its fleet to battle. Anglo-French command of the sea was essential to their land operations, but the allies had less success than hoped with the naval bombardment of land fortifications. In the 1860s Prussian ambitions to rule Germany and Italian aspirations to nationhood provoked a series of wars in which sea power was marginal. Nonetheless there were a couple of intriguing naval battles. The encounter at Heligoland was the last significant conflict between wooden ships, and the battle between Austrian and Italian fleets at Lissa was a remarkable instance of the brief fashion for ramming as the prime means of attack.

CRIMEAN WAR

SINOPE

Date November 30, 1853
Forces Russians: 11 ships; Ottoman Turkish: 12 ships
Losses Russians: none; Ottoman Turkish: 11 ships sunk

Location Sinope, northern Turkey

A month after the Russian and Ottoman Empires had gone to war, a powerful Russian naval squadron under Admiral Pavel Nakhimov attacked an Ottoman force of seven frigates and five smaller ships in harbor at Sinope. Nakhimov's squadron included six battleships and mounted a total of 720 guns, some of them the new Paixhans guns that fired explosive shells. This overwhelming weight of firepower devastated the Turkish ships in an hour, in a battle fought at anchor. Only one Ottoman vessel escaped destruction, a steam-powered auxiliary under an English captain. British and French public opinion responded to the attack (a legitimate act of war) with outrage. The battle was denounced in the press as the "massacre at Sinope" and offered the pretext for Britain and France to enter the war against Russia.

Exploding shells
Nakhimov's warships open fire on the Turkish fleet in an action that, with its use of exploding shells, saw an end to the era of unarmored ships.

CRIMEAN WAR

SEVASTOPOL FORTS

Date October 17, 1854
Forces British and French: 27 ships
Losses British and French: 340 casualties; Russians: 1,100 casualties

Location Sevastopol, Crimea

The siege of the Russian naval base of Sevastopol was the gruesome centerpiece of the Crimean War. The British and French fleets landed some 50,000 troops in September 1854 to besiege the city on land. The sea approach to Sevastopol Harbor ran up a narrow creek, the mouth of which was guarded by forts Constantine and Alexander and blocked by five ships of the line and two frigates sunk there by the Russians. On October 17 a combined land and sea attack on Sevastopol was attempted. The task of the British and French fleets, under Vice Admiral James Dundas and Vice Admiral Ferdinand Hamelin, was to destroy the forts at the harbor mouth. They deployed a mix of steam and sailing ships of the line, the latter moved into position by small steamers used as tugs. In a long-range exchange of fire with the shore batteries, the unarmored wooden ships proved excessively vulnerable to the Russians' shells and red-hot shot, several being forced to leave the line. Fort Constantine suffered severe damage when a magazine exploded, but the shore batteries were still firing when the Allied fleet withdrew to lick its wounds. The long siege lasted until September 1855, when Sevastopol was finally taken by Allied land forces after heavy loss of life.

Sevastopol besieged
A map of the siege of Sevastopol as it was on June 18, 1855. The Allied fleet enters the harbor to the north, while Russians flee from ruined fortifications.

Russian naval sword
Though originally designed as a boarding weapon, by 1860 the naval sword was only used when going ashore or on ceremonial occasions.

SECOND SCHLESWIG WAR

HELIGOLAND

Date May 9, 1864
Forces Danish: 2 frigates, 1 corvette; Prussians and Austrians: 2 frigates, 3 gunboats
Losses Danish: none; Prussians and Austrians: 1 frigate badly damaged

Location Off Heligoland, North Sea

In 1864 Denmark fought Prussia and Austria over control of the duchies of Schleswig and Holstein. The Danes, who were superior to the Prussians at sea, blockaded ports in northern Germany with a squadron under Commodore Edouard Suenson. Captain Wilhelm von Tegetthoff took a small Austrian squadron to the North Sea to break the blockade. It encountered Suenson's force on May 9 off the island of Heligoland, then a British possession. Each side had two wooden-hulled steam-powered screw frigates: the Danish *Niels Juel* and *Jylland*, and the Austrian *Schwarzenberg* and *Radetzky*. The Danish steam corvette *Heimdall* also took part in the fighting. The hostile squadrons first steamed past one another on opposite tacks shelling furiously, then maneuvered to follow a parallel course, Suenson's *Niels Juel* taking on Tegetthoff's *Schwarzenberg* while *Jylland* and *Heimdall* engaged *Radetzky*. After more than two hours' fighting, *Schwarzenberg* burst into flames. Unable to continue fighting, Tegetthoff fled for neutral British territorial waters around Heligoland. The Danes had also suffered damage, especially to *Jylland*, and withdrew for repairs. Both sides claimed a victory, the Danes having inflicted heavier casualties but the Austrians having succeeded in lifting the blockade.

Ramming contest
The obsolete Austrian wooden battleship *Kaiser* rams the Italian ironclad steam frigate *Re di Portogallo* at Lissa. It was one of the last times a ram was used in combat.

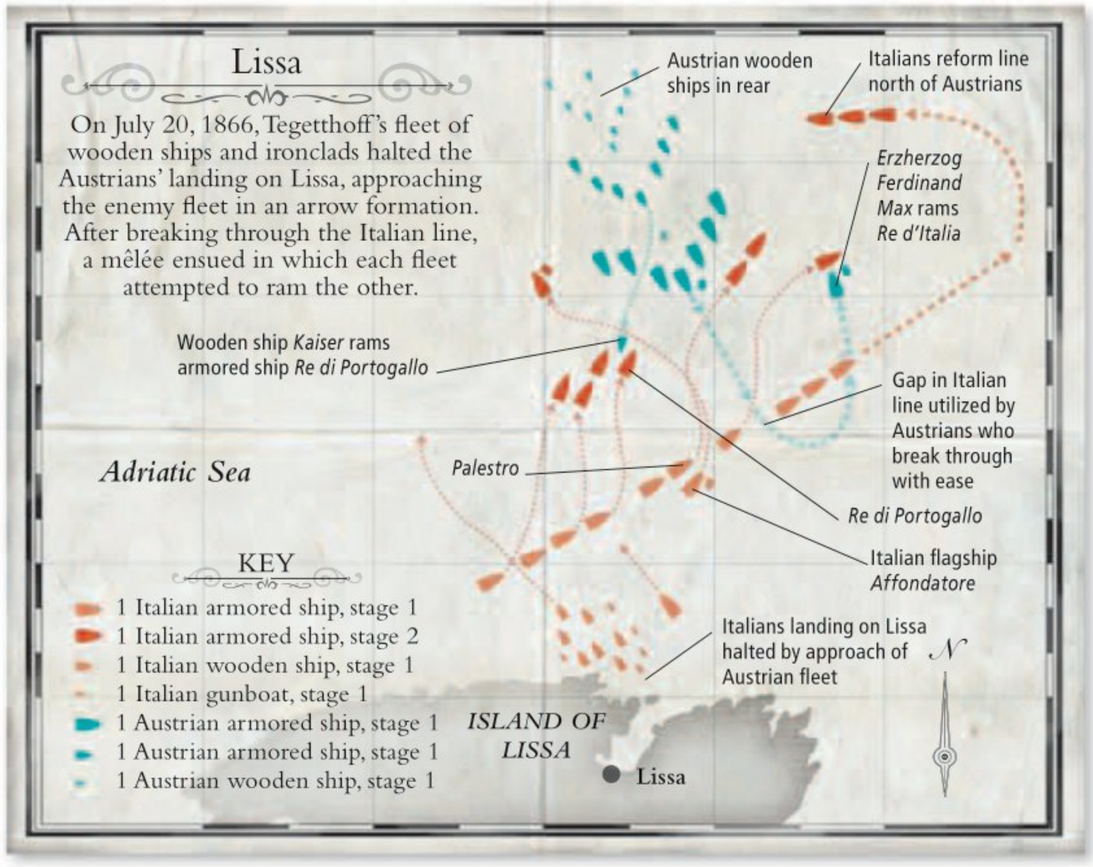
THE BATTLE OF LISSA

In 1866 Italy went to war with Austria in alliance with Prussia. From an Italian point of view the main aim of the war was to free Venice from Austrian rule. On July 20 an Italian fleet under Count Carlo di Persano was preparing to land troops on the island of Lissa, then part of the Austrian Empire. An Austrian fleet under Wilhelm von Tegetthoff was sent to prevent the landings.

Occurring at a transitional time in naval technology, the battle was fought by a mix of ironclads and wooden ships, all with both steam propulsion and sails, and most with guns in broadside.

Tegetthoff had the weaker force, but he hoped to compensate by breaking the battle into a mêlée in which his ships might win individual duels. He arranged his fleet in a V formation, advancing toward the Italians with the ironclads in the van. Due to a confusion of orders, the Italians ended up in a ragged line with ironclads and wooden ships interspersed and a large gap between the van and the center. Toward this gap Tegetthoff gratefully plunged, braving the Italian broadsides that decapitated one of his captains but otherwise caused only limited damage.

Once at close quarters the Austrians fought with outstanding skill. Tegetthof's ship *Erzherzog Ferdinand Max* rammed two ironclads, *Re d'Italia* (twice) and *Palestro*, as well as battering them with close-range gunfire. *Re d'Italia* was gouged open below the waterline by Tegethoff's second ramming attack and sank in two minutes. *Palestro* eventually exploded, killing most of its crew who had gallantly refused a chance to abandon ship. Meanwhile, the large Austrian wooden battleship *Kaiser*, under Captain Anton von Petz, engaged no less than four ironclads in the Italian rear. Von Petz lost his stem and bowsprit ramming the *Re di Portogallo* and had his smokestack and mainmast shot off, but successfully withdrew his crippled ship from the battle. For his victory, Tegetthoff justly became an Austrian national hero.



AUSTRO-ITALIAN WAR

THE BATTLE OF LISSA

Date	July 20, 1866
Location	Adriatic, off Croatia
Result	Austrian victory

COMBATANTS

ITALY	AUSTRIA

COMMANDERS

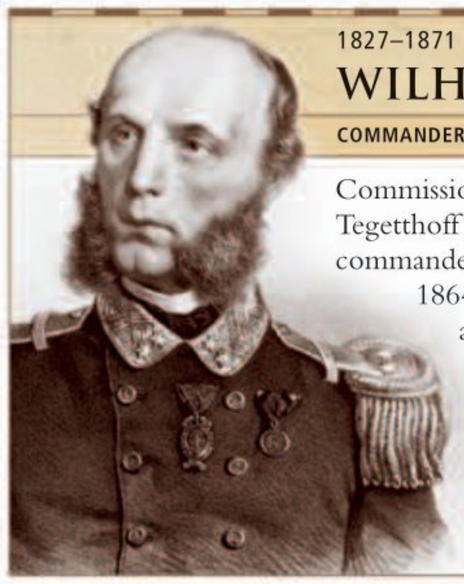
Carlo di Persano	Wilhelm von Tegetthoff

FORCES

Ships: 12 ironclads, 10 wooden steamships	**Ships:** 7 ironclads, 7 wooden steamships

LOSSES

Men: 660 casualties **Ships:** 2 ironclads	**Men:** 176 casualties **Ships:** none



1827–1871

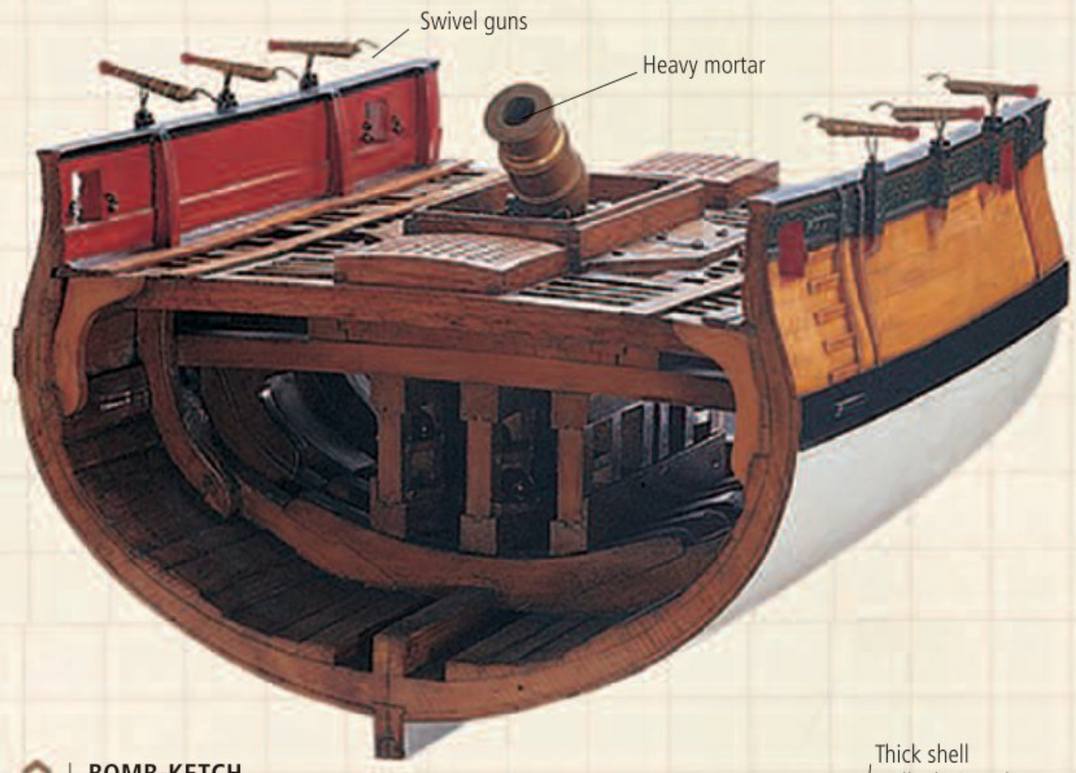
WILHELM VON TEGETTHOFF

COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF OF THE AUSTRIAN NAVY

Commissioned as an officer in the Austrian navy in 1849, Tegetthoff had no chance to show his talents as a naval commander in combat until the war with Denmark in 1864. His spirited engagement of a Danish squadron at Heligoland was hailed in Austria as an outstanding naval feat and he was raised from captain to rear admiral. As commander-in-chief of the Austrian navy in 1866, his bold attack upon the Italian fleet at Lissa contrasted vividly with the poor performance of Austrian land forces, which were crushed by Prussians.

SHOT TO SHELL

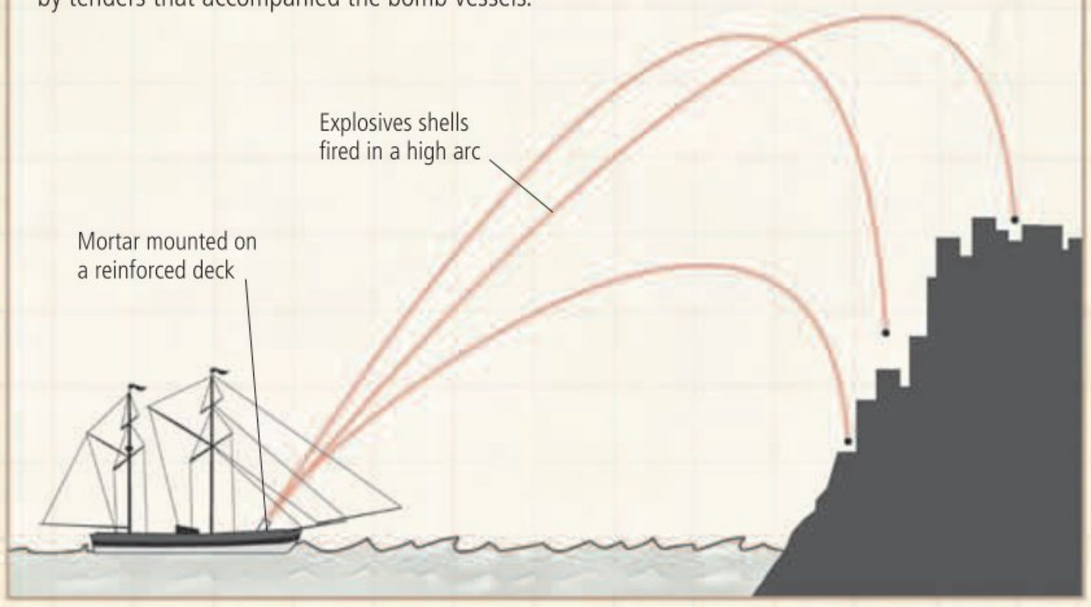
UNTIL THE 19TH CENTURY naval cannon fired varieties of solid shot. Explosive shells—hot shot filled with gunpowder—were employed in land warfare, but they were thought unsafe for use at sea. From the 1830s, navies adopted shells as part of their munitions. The introduction of iron armor on warships around 1850 made solid shot obselete—it simply bounced off the cladding. By the 1880s rifled breech loading guns firing high-exposive shells had become standard.



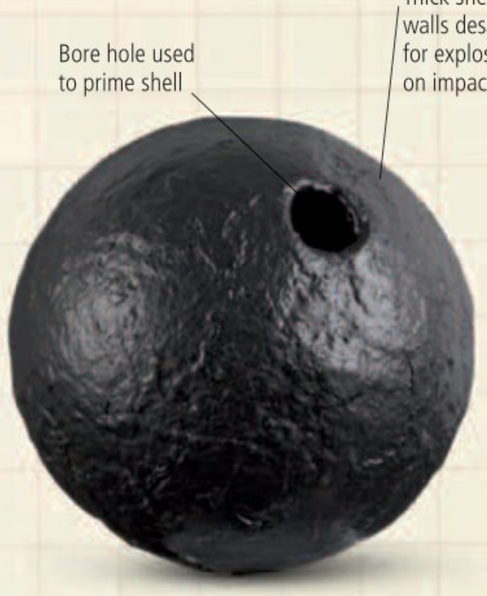
BOMB-KETCH
These were developed to carry heavy naval mortars. Here the mortar projects through a hatch in the deck to deliver its bombardment.

OFFSHORE BOMBARDMENT

Bombarding targets on shore has always been a major application of ships' guns. In land warfare, mortars and howitzers were developed for the bombardment of besieged towns and fortresses. These were guns firing in a high arc, using "bombs" or explosive shells as their munitions. The French navy was the first to develop vessels designed to mount mortars in the 1680s, and was soon imitated by other navies. These bomb galiots or bomb ketches were built with reinforced structures to cope with the forces released by the guns. To avoid the danger of keeping stores of explosive shells on a vessel that had guns firing, the shells were usually carried by tenders that accompanied the bomb vessels.



EXPLOSIVE SHELL
A bore hole was used to fill the shell with a small charge of gunpowder, which would then be detonated via a time-delay fuse.

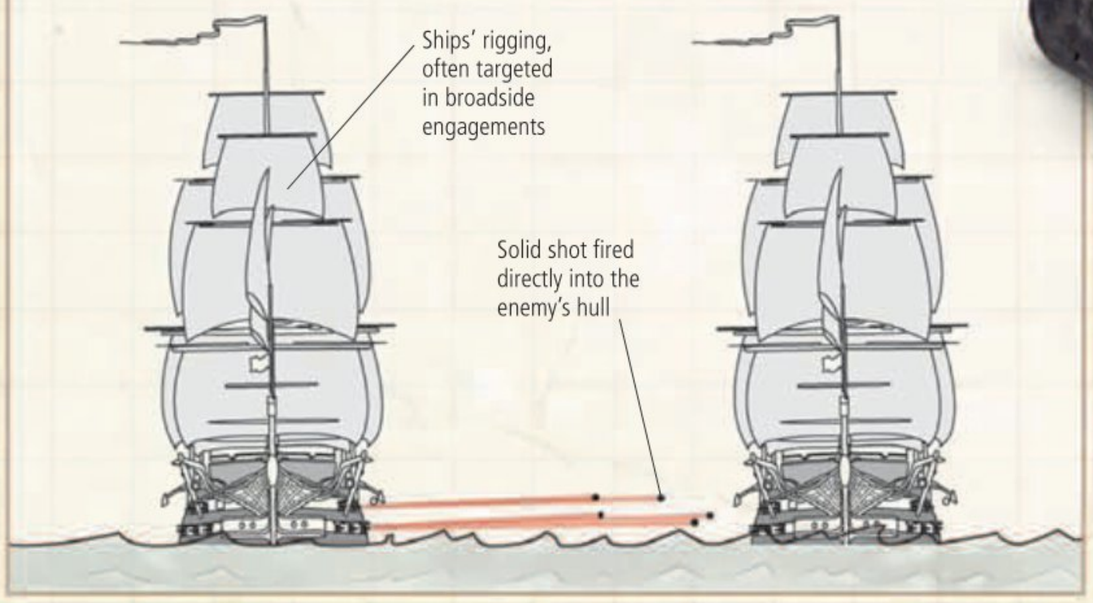


SHELL CUTAWAY
Firing the shell ignited a slow-burning fuse set into the bore hole, which then ignited the gunpowder. A wooden plug, or sabot, kept the fuse centered in the barrel during shell loading.

SOLID SHOT
Before shells, shot was mainly used for penetrating heavy structures, in set-piece engagements. It had a formidable effect on personnel, guns, and equipment.

SHIP VERSUS SHIP GUN DUELS

In the age of sail, guns on warships had a limited range. While an 18th century cannon could fire traditional solid shot up to 1 mile (1.6 km), its flat trajectory (the most accurate part of its flight) was about 656 ft (200 m). Just to be sure of the shot, however, vessels would frequently close to half that distance before opening up with huge broadsides. Different navies employed different tactics in gun engagements. The Royal Navy, for example, preferred to shoot into the enemy's hull to kill men or sink the craft, while the French Navy frequently concentrated on masts, sails, and rigging in an attempt to hinder a ship's maneuverability.



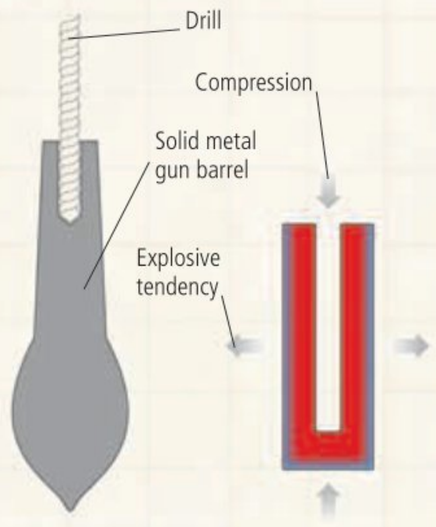
CANISTER
The metal canister here would rupture as it left the muzzle of the cannon, allowing the small shot inside to continue in a wide formation against enemy personnel.

GUN FOUNDING

As the power requirements of cannon increased over the centuries, guns required corresponding strengthening to cope with the greater pressures on the breech. The search for the best cannon-founding method produced two main variants during the 18th and 19th centuries—bore drilling and Rodman casting (here seen applied to a Dahlgren Gun).

BORE DRILLING

The bore-drilling method was pioneered during the mid-18th century, and was a major improvement over the earlier hollow-casting method (casting the gun around a solid core, which was then removed). In bore drilling, the barrel was cast in one solid piece. Then the bore of the gun was drilled out of the metal. The problem with bore drilling was that the gun cooled from the outside in, creating weaknesses in the gun's structure through an outer tension in the metal. This would then place limitations on the power and range of the gun.

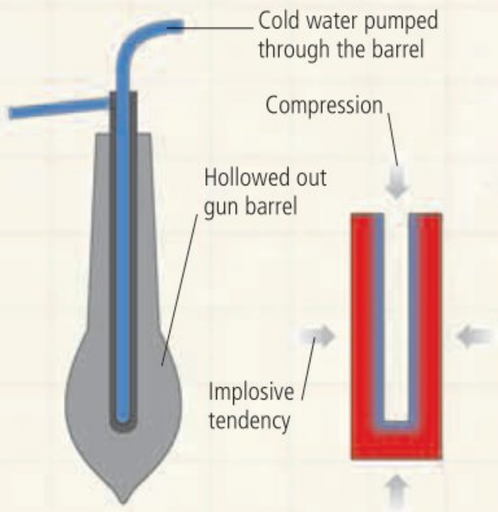


Bore drilling
The bore of the gun is drilled from one piece of solid metal.

Tension
Cooling from outside, compression causes an explosive force.

RODMAN CASTING

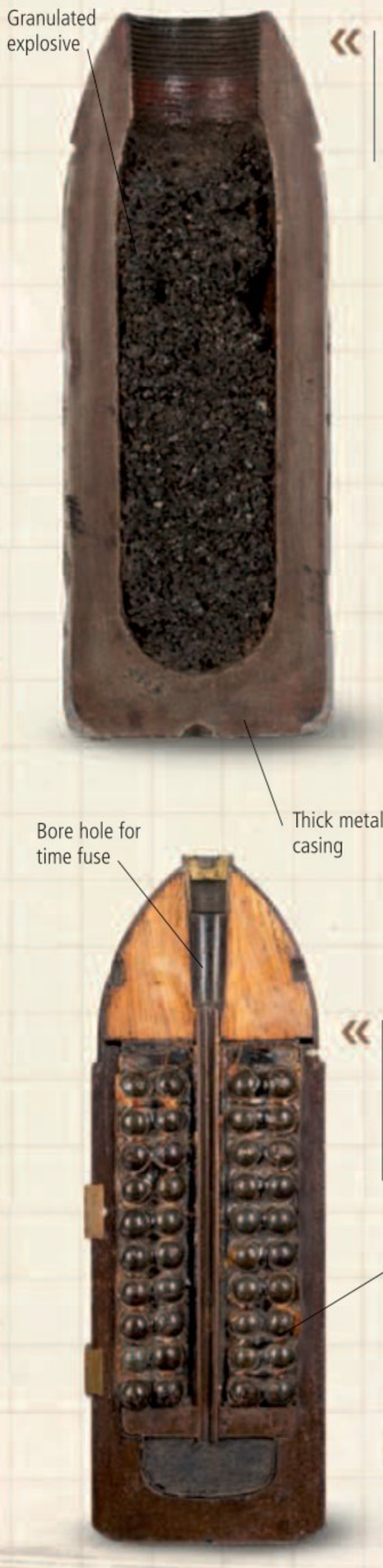
Rodman casting was designed by Thomas Jackson Rodman, an American artilleryman. Rodman overcame the problems of bore-drilled guns by casting the cannon over an inner cooling core. This consisted of a cast iron tube, closed at one end but with inflow/outflow valves at the other, a design that allowed the operator to pump a constant flow of cooling water through the tube. The result was that the gun cooled from the inside out, meaning that each successive layer of metal that cooled contracted onto the one beneath it. The subsequent barrel was held together by compression rather than tension, making the gun much stronger and capable of taking heavier charges.



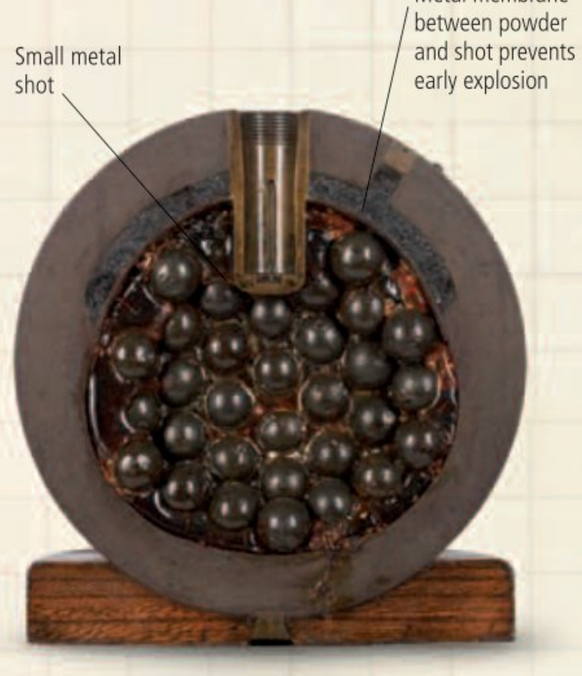
Rodman core
The water-filled core cools the gun from inside out.

Compression
Cooling from inside, compression causes an an implosive force.

DAHLGREN BATTERY
Designed by American naval officer John A. Dahlgren, the bulbous breech of the Dahlgren gun allowed shells to be fired at a higher velocity and, consequently, much farther.



EXPLOSIVE SHELL
This explosive shell from the mid-19th century was designed to be fired from a new generation of breech-loaders, in this case a 12-pounder with a rifled barrel.



SHRAPNEL SHOT
This early shrapnel shell featured a hollow cavity filled with small metal balls. The shell would explode in the air and throw out a lethal cloud of anti-personnel shot.

SHRAPNEL SHELL
A mid-19th-century shrapnel shell used in a rifled muzzle-loader. It worked on a time fuse and exploded in flight, creating an airburst effect over an enemy.

HIGH-EXPLOSIVE SHELL
A modern naval shell with a high-explosive filling made from a mixture of TNT and beeswax. The shell's red cone contains dye to help identify which ship had fired the shell.

GUNBOAT IMPERIALISM

THE TRADITION OF "sending in a gunboat" to intimidate a non-European state was established by Britain in its first Opium War with China from 1839 to 1842. The flat-hulled steam-powered iron boats became a symbol of European imperialism because of their unique effectiveness in penetrating Asian or African rivers and coastal waters that otherwise might have offered some shelter from European naval power. Yet it was the overall strength of their fleets, rather than any specific type of vessel, that allowed Britain and France in particular to project power on a global scale in the 19th century. By using their navies, these imperialist European states could often achieve their objectives by limited punitive actions, without the need for costly campaigns of conquest. Non-European countries sometimes courageously resisted intimidation—the reverse suffered by the British at the hands of the Chinese at the Dagu forts in 1859 was a reminder that the outcome of battle was never inevitable. But most encounters were one-sided, European fleets crushing technologically inferior opposition with arrogant and ruthless efficiency.

The Nemesis
The experimental gunboat *Nemesis* (far right) destroys a Chinese war junk with a Congreve rocket in Anson's Bay, 1841. Also armed with 32lb and 6lb guns, she played an outstanding part in the reduction of China's defenses during the First Opium War.

FIRST OPIUM WAR

FIRST OPIUM WAR

Date 1839–1842
Forces British: 16 sailing ships, 4 steam ships, 1 iron gunboat; Chinese: unknown.
Losses Unknown

Location
Southern China

In November 1839, tensions arose between the British East India Company and Chinese officials, who were attempting to stop the import of opium through Canton (Guangzhou). This led to open hostilities when Chinese war junks exchanged fire with the frigate *Volage* and sloop *Hyacinth*. The British government sent a force of warships and troop transports to blockade Canton and other Chinese ports. There were further clashes with junks, but the most decisive operations involved the experimental gunboat *Nemesis*. A flat iron-hulled steam-driven paddleboat, commanded by William Hall, *Nemesis* could negotiate the shallow waters of Chinese rivers, landing troops and bombarding strongpoints. Defeat in the war forced the Chinese to cede Hong Kong to Britain and open its ports to British traders.

HMS Nimrod
The 18-gun sixth-rate sloop *Nimrod*, launched in 1828, was commanded by Joseph Pearse during the First Opium War.

SECOND OPIUM WAR

ATTACK ON THE DAGU FORTS

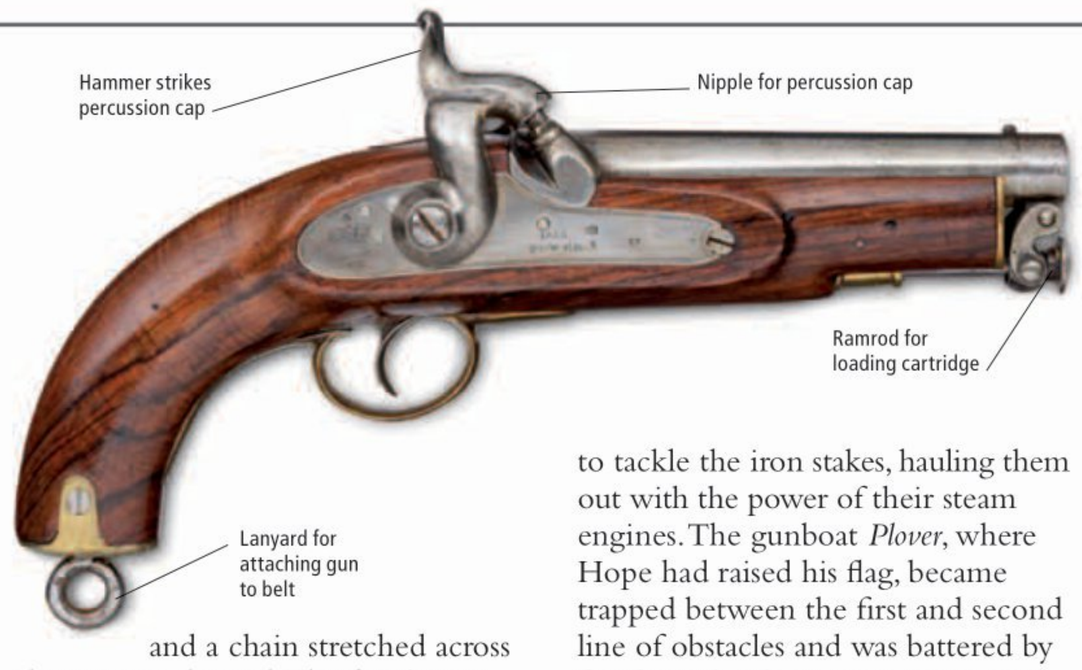
Date June 25, 1859
Forces British: 2 gun vessels, 9 gunboats; Chinese: shore batteries
Losses British: 4 ships; Chinese: unknown

Location Peiho River, northern China

On October 8, 1856, the Chinese authorities stopped and searched a merchant vessel, *Arrow*, that was later alleged to have been flying the British flag. On this flimsy pretext Britain launched a punitive action against China, soon abetted by France. On May 20, 1858, a dozen British and French gunboats bombarded the Dagu forts at the entrance to Peiho River, placing Tientsin and Beijing at their mercy. The Chinese were forced to sign another humiliating peace treaty.

But the Qing government did not implement the treaty in full. The next year, the British sent another naval force to Peiho River, under Rear Admiral James Hope. This time the Chinese were better prepared. They had blocked the river in front of the forts with three lines of obstacles, including iron stakes in the riverbed and a chain stretched across the narrow channel. The forts' guns were protected by thick earth ramparts.

The night before the assault on the forts, Hope sent a party to blow up the obstacles in the river, but it had little success. In the morning, the nine gunboats and two larger gun vessels headed into the river mouth on the flood tide. Under the guns of the forts only a few hundred yards away, they had to tackle the iron stakes, hauling them out with the power of their steam engines. The gunboat *Plover*, where Hope had raised his flag, became trapped between the first and second line of obstacles and was battered by fire from the shore guns. Hope was among the wounded as the boat became a slaughterhouse, only nine of her 40 crew still functioning. The gun vessel *Cormorant* and gunboats *Kestrel* and *Lee* were also sunk; an attempt by marines to storm the forts was a costly failure. The surviving boats withdrew in the evening. This was an unusual reverse for the Royal Navy which was avenged the following year when an Anglo-French force sacked Beijing.



Percussion pistol
Percussion pistols shared the same design as flintlocks, but had a different firing mechanism. The hammer struck a cap containg an explosive that lit the charge in the barrel.

Bombardment of Canton
In December 1857, during the Second Opium War, British and French warships bombarded, and then occupied, the port of Canton.

> "OCCUPATION WOULD GO FURTHER TO PROCLAIM OUR POWER AND ACCOMPLISH OUR ENDS."
>
> **LORD PALMERSTON**, AUTHORIZING THE OCCUPATION OF BEIJING

ANGLO-EGYPTIAN WAR

BOMBARDMENT OF ALEXANDRIA

Date July 11–13, 1882
Forces Britain: 15 ships; Egyptians: shore batteries
Losses None

Location
Alexandria, Egypt

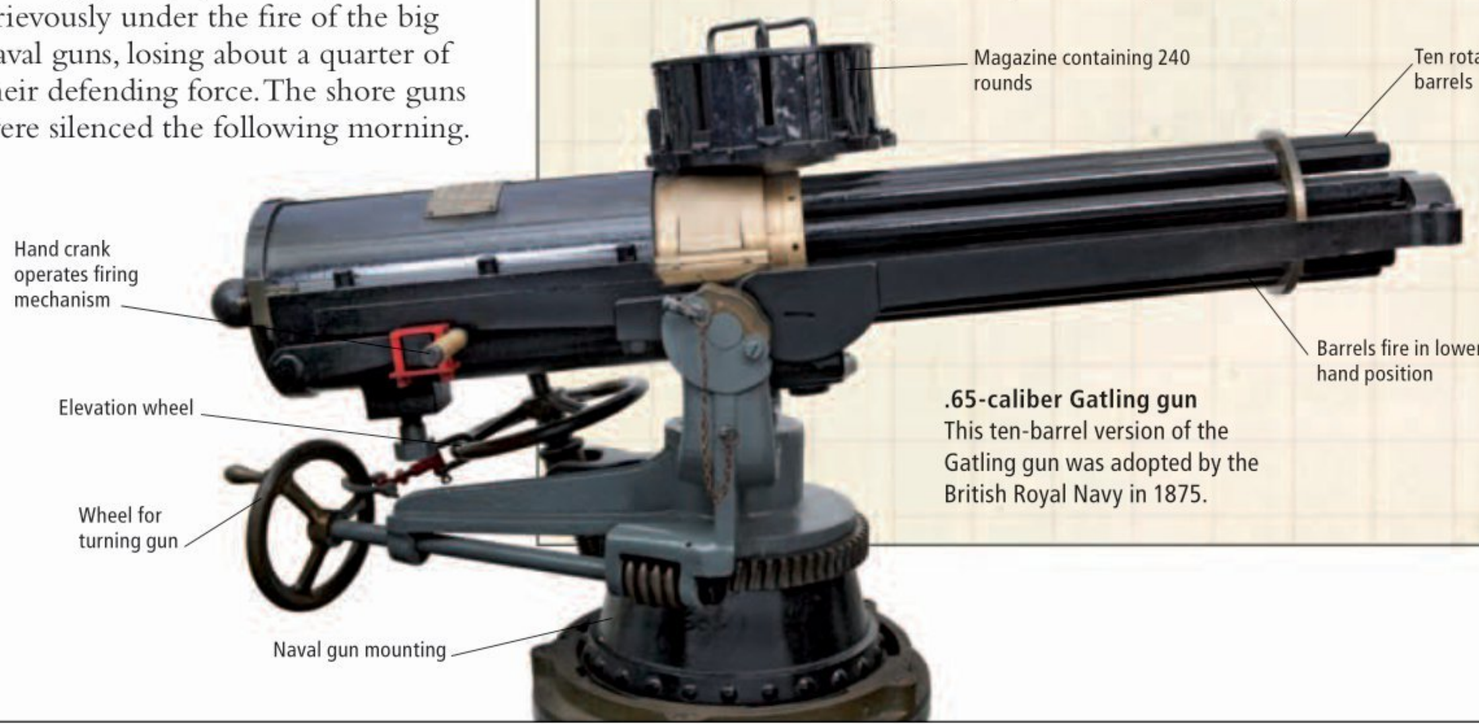
In 1882 a government took power in Egypt opposed to Anglo-French dominance of the country. In June there were riots in Alexandria and many foreign residents took refuge on British and French warships offshore. The Egyptians set about reinforcing the forts defending the port. British admiral Sir Frederick Seymour interpreted this as a hostile act and issued an ultimatum. The French dissociated themselves, leaving the Royal Navy to fight alone. The British had a varied force of ironclads, including the giant turret ship *Inflexible*, the most powerful warship afloat, whose captain was the future admiral of the fleet John Fisher. Seymour chose the center-battery ironclad *Invincible* as his flagship.

The British opened fire on the Egyptian forts at 7:00 a.m. on July 11. The shore guns returned fire and the action continued for the next ten and a half hours. *Invincible* and the corvette *Penelope*, which advanced into the harbor, both took hits, as did *Inflexible*, but the ships' armor provided good protection and casualties were light. The Egyptians, by contrast, suffered grievously under the fire of the big naval guns, losing about a quarter of their defending force. The shore guns were silenced the following morning.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

GATLING GUN

Patented by American inventor Richard Jordan Gatling in 1862, the Gatling gun was an early machine gun that found favor with the British Royal Navy. It had multiple barrels rotated by a hand-operated crank. As each barrel came round a cartridge automatically dropped into place and the gun fired. By this method the gun could achieve an effective rate of fire of 400 rounds a minute. The Royal Navy adopted the Gatling gun as an ideal weapon to repel boarders. It was never employed in this role, but Gatling guns were fired against Egyptian forts during the bombardment of Alexandria in 1882, and Naval Brigades used them on land in various colonial wars. They were superceded by Gardner guns in the late 1880s.



.65-caliber Gatling gun
This ten-barrel version of the Gatling gun was adopted by the British Royal Navy in 1875.

SINO-FRENCH WAR

THE BATTLE OF FOOCHOW

Date	August 23, 1884
Location	Fuzhou, southern China
Result	French victory

COMBATANTS

FRANCE	CHINA

COMMANDERS

Amédée Courbet	Zhang Peilun

FORCES

Ships: 8 ships, 2 torpedo boats	**Ships:** 11

LOSSES

Men: 5 killed **Ships:** none	**Men:** 521 killed **Ships:** 9 sunk

THE BATTLE OF FOOCHOW

In search of an Asian empire, France was extending its influence over Vietnam, traditionally regarded by the Chinese as under their suzerainty. In 1883 the French took control of Tonkin, the area of Vietnam closest to the Chinese border, after a French naval squadron commanded by Rear Admiral Amédée Courbet blockaded the Vietnamese capital, Hue. Although France and China officially remained at peace, Chinese troops were sent to fight the French in Vietnam.

In August 1884 Courbet, promoted to vice admiral, took his squadron of warships north to the Chinese port of Foochow (Fuzhou). Lying on the Min River, this was the base of the Fukien Fleet, one of China's four regional navies. After a series of humiliating defeats by European forces, the Chinese government had embarked on a policy of "self-strengthening," which aimed to modernize its army and navy with the help of European experts. The condition of the Fukien Fleet revealed how limited the progress had been. Most of its few steamships had unarmored wooden hulls. Its only large-caliber guns were carried by its two Rendel gunboats, "flatiron" coastal defense vessels which provided a platform for one 10in gun apiece. Antiquated sailing junks still made up a large part of the fleet.

IMPERIAL POWER

Because France and China were at peace, the French were permitted to anchor their warships in the Min River among the ships of the Chinese fleet and various other European vessels. Courbet kept two of his three armored cruisers (the most powerful ships in his squadron) at the mouth of the Min River, where they played no part in the subsequent battle. One armored cruiser, *Triomphante*, and three unprotected cruisers—*D'Estaing*, *Villars*, and *Dugay-Trouin*—anchored opposite the gunboat *Chen Wei* and two Chinese wooden warships. The smaller French ships moored further up river, where the rest of the Chinese fleet, including the flagship *Yang Wu* and the flatiron gunboats, were clustered.

At 1:56 p.m. on August 23 the French opened fire without warning. Together *Triomphante* and the three unprotected cruisers mounted over 40 guns, most of larger caliber than the Chinese guns. They made short work of *Chen Wei* and the two wooden ships. On the face of it, the French ships up

> HE WAS VERY CAREFUL NOT TO SHED FRENCH BLOOD. HIS BATTLES WERE HIGHLY ORGANIZED, WORKED OUT IN ADVANCE ... WITH SO RARE A PRECISION
>
> **PIERRE LOTI**, FRENCH SAILOR AND WRITER, DESCRIBING ADMIRAL COURBET

river faced a more difficult task. But the Chinese flagship was lost within minutes of the start of the action. The French had equipped two small steam launches with spar torpedoes (mines hung on long poles projecting from their bows). One of these exploded against *Yang Wu*'s hull, sinking the vessel. The flatiron gunboats were also sunk by the fire of French guns. Some Chinese ships ran aground attempting to flee up river. The sailing junks proved perfectly useless. In an hour every Chinese ship in Foochow had been sunk or disabled and the arsenal and docks were ablaze.

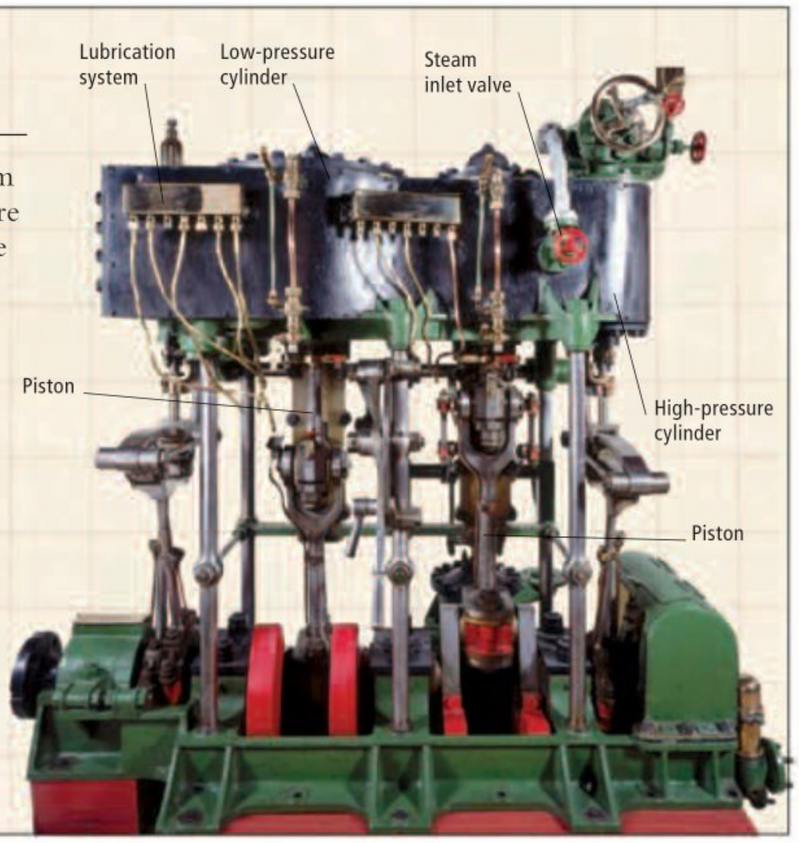
News of this display of imperial naval power was greeted with joy by a jingoistic French public. Vietnam was secured for France after some harder fighting on land. Courbet died the following year, ensuring his elevation to the status of a French national hero. France's first dreadnought, lanched in 1913, would bear his name.

Unequal contest
French armored cruisers rain destruction down upon the wooden Chinese vessels at Foochow. All of the Chinese ships were destroyed, while the French lost none.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

COMPOUND ENGINE

Early steam engines had a single cylinder. A simple compound steam engine is fitted with two cylinders, the first using the high-pressure steam from the boiler and the second exploiting the lower pressure steam emitted from the first cylinder as exhaust. Invention of the first truly practical two-cylinder compound steam engine is attributed to Scottish engineer William McNaught in 1845, but compound engines did not begin to be used at sea until the 1860s. "Compounding" greatly improved the efficiency of maritime engines. By increasing the distance ships could travel without refueling, compound engines made steam vessels effective for oceanic travel. By 1880 they were almost universal in new-built ships. Over the following decade triple-expansion engines (with three cylinders) began to come into use. During the 19th century innovations in steam-engine design were usually pioneered by merchant vessels, naval development following in their wake.



Engine with two cylinders
The second cylinder of a compound engine uses steam that escapes from the first. Each cylinder drives a piston.

THIRD ANGLO-BURMESE WAR

IRRAWADDY RIVER

Date November 16–28 ,1885
Forces British: c.50 river boats
Losses British: none; Burmese: unknown

Location Irrawaddy River, Burma

Britain fought three wars against the kingdom of Burma in the 19th century, the first in 1823–26, the second in 1852, and the third in 1885. The first two wars ended in compromise, but the third was followed by the annexation of Burma. The 1885 war was rooted in colonial rivalry between Britain and France. The British government suspected that Burmese King Thibaw Min was allowing his country to slip under French influence. To forestall the French they launched a military expedition to take over the country.

Major General Harry Prendergast was sent from Madras to the Burmese border with an army and naval force numbering some 9,000 men. They could not advance on land through the Burmese jungle, but the Irrawaddy River offered a clear highway from the Bay of Bengal to the royal capital of Mandalay. The British-owned Irrawaddy Flotilla Company provided river steam boats and pilots for the expeditionary force. Prendergast had brought with him 24 Maxim guns, the first ever appearance of these belt-fed machine guns in military service. They were mounted on steamers to provide formidable firepower.

King Thibaw was slow to organize his defenses. In principle the river was defended by shore batteries and forts. At Minhla, boats were to be sunk in the navigable channel as blockships, forcing the British to halt under the guns of a fort on the river bank. In practice there was little resistance. The blockships were never sunk and the shore positions were overrun by British-Indian troops and naval brigades with the support of devastating fire from the armed steamers. Wherever the guns of the steamships were trained upon the shore, the Burmese swiftly surrendered, their defeat completed by the fall of Mandalay on November 28.

Snider-Enfield rifle, 1860
This breech-loading precussion-cap rifle was adopted by the British forces in 1866 and was used during the Third Anglo-Burmese War.

ANGLO-ZANZIBAR WAR

ZANZIBAR

Date August 27, 1896
Forces British: 5 ships; Zanzibar rebels: 1 armed yacht
Losses British: none; Zanzibar rebels: 1 yacht sunk

Location Zanzibar, off east coast of Africa

The Anglo-Zanzibar conflict of 1896 was the shortest war in recorded history and the ultimate exercise of "gunboat diplomacy." The island of Zanzibar was a British protectorate, its sultan Hamad bin Thuwaini accepting the advice of a British resident. There was, however, tension over Zanzibar's persistence with slave trading, which the British wished to suppress. The political crisis that led to war came on August 25, 1896, when the sultan died. The succession to the sultanate of Britain's preferred candidate, Hamad bin Muhammed, was preempted by Hamid bin Thuwaini's nephew Khalid bin Bargash, who established himself in the royal palace with several thousand armed followers in what amounted to a coup d'état. The Royal Navy had two ships at Zanzibar, the third-class cruiser *Philomel* and the gunboat *Thrush*. These were joined by the sloop *Sparrow* and a body of Royal Marines was put ashore. Rear Admiral Harry Rawson then arrived on board the Cape Station flagship *St George*, a thoroughly modern first-class cruiser with 9.2in main armament, accompanied by the torpedo cruiser *Racoon*. The Zanzibar navy consisted of a single British-built armed yacht, *Glasgow*, which was anchored in front of the palace.

Rawson presented an ultimatum: if Bargash didn't surrender by 9:00 a.m. on August 27, the Royal Navy would open fire. The bombardment began at 9.02 a.m. The *Glasgow* was soon sunk and the royal palace and harem were pulverized. After some 40 minutes of destruction by the naval guns, Bargash fled to seek refuge at the German consulate and his followers raised the white flag. Around 500 people lay dead amid the ruins of the royal buildings. Hamud bin Muhammed became sultan and, out of gratitude to the British, abolished the slave trade. Zanzibar was also obliged to pay the cost of the war.

THE AMERICAS AT WAR

An easy victory
On April 25, 1898, the American Asiatic squadron under Admiral Dewey destroyed the Spanish squadron in Manila Bay, without losing a single man during the battle. Here Dewey delivers the order "You may fire when ready, Gridley," from the bridge of his flagship *Olympia*.

FROM A BROAD PERSPECTIVE of world naval history, the 19th century in the Americas is important as the period when the United States began its emergence as a major naval power. This development was slow to occur, however. Until the last decade of the century, naval operations in the Americas were on a relatively modest scale, whether involving the United States or not. Naval power played a significant role in the American Civil War of 1861 to 1865, and that conflict provided a test-bed for new technologies such as iron armor and turret guns. Yet naval encounters never involved more than a handful of ships. Some intriguing naval battles were also fought in the seas and rivers of Southern America. But it was the creation of the "New Navy" of the United States from the 1880s that was to give the continent its first world-class fleet.

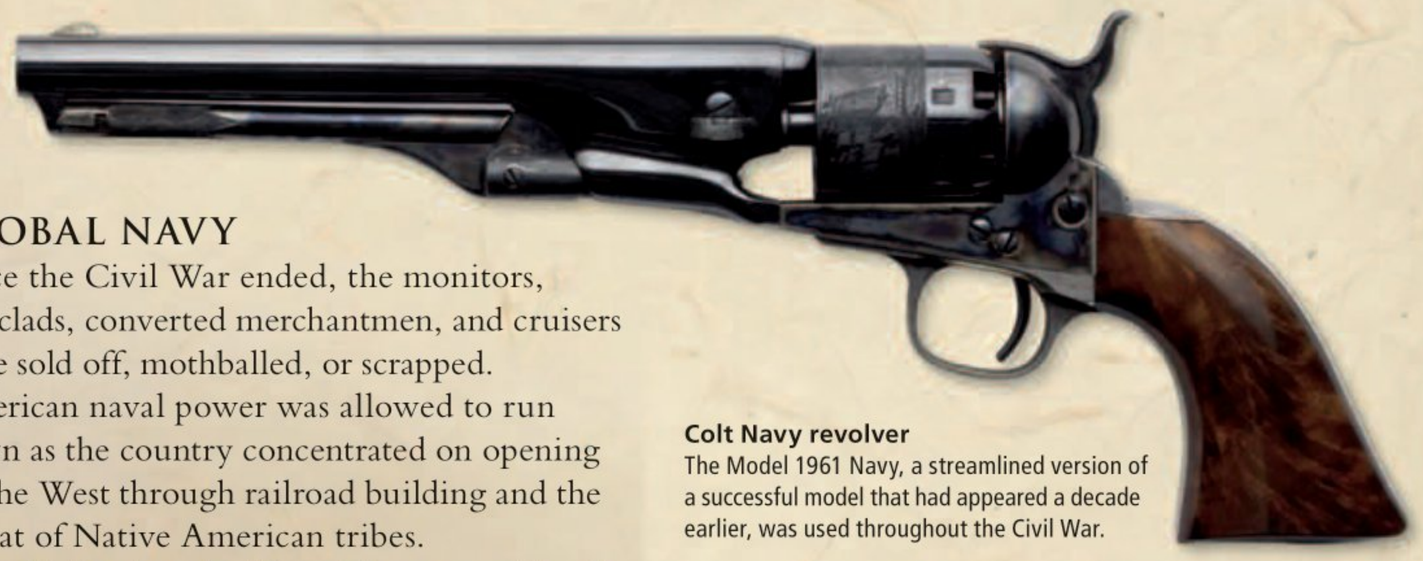
LIMITED FORCE

For much of the 19th century Americans simply saw no need for substantial naval forces. The United States was not seriously threatened by external enemies and Britain's dominant Royal Navy saw to it that the seas were safe for merchant shipping. The United States did make a gesture toward the imperialist use of naval power with the dispatch of a squadron under Commodore Matthew Perry to intimidate Japan in 1854, but Perry's four paddle steamers would not have impressed even one of the lesser European powers. At the outbreak of the Civil War in 1861 the US Navy comprised some 90 vessels, mostly of indifferent quality and condition. The conflict was the occasion for improvisation on both sides, the South showing particular ingenuity and boldness in taking on a naval struggle for which it could hardly have been worse prepared. The Union government converted a host of steam merchantmen to naval use and instituted a blockade of Southern ports.

Fighting far from home
The successful Confederate raider *Alabama* met her end on June 19, 1864, off Cherbourg, France, when she was tracked down by the USS *Kearsarge*. French and English spectators watched the uneven contest between the Confederate wooden cruiser and her armored foe.

Percussion caps
Loading a round into a handgun in the Civil War era still required a separate cartridge, ball, and percussion cap.

Armored ironclads, monitors, and river paddle steamers fought one another in coastal waters and along the Mississippi. The South bought cruisers from British shipyards to act as commerce raiders and used them to great effect. It deployed tethered mines, "torpedo boats" with explosive devices on long spars, and proto-submarines such as the *Hunley*, which sank the steam sloop *Housatonic* in Charleston Harbor in February 1864. But the naval dominance of the North was never seriously challenged.



Colt Navy revolver
The Model 1961 Navy, a streamlined version of a successful model that had appeared a decade earlier, was used throughout the Civil War.

GLOBAL NAVY

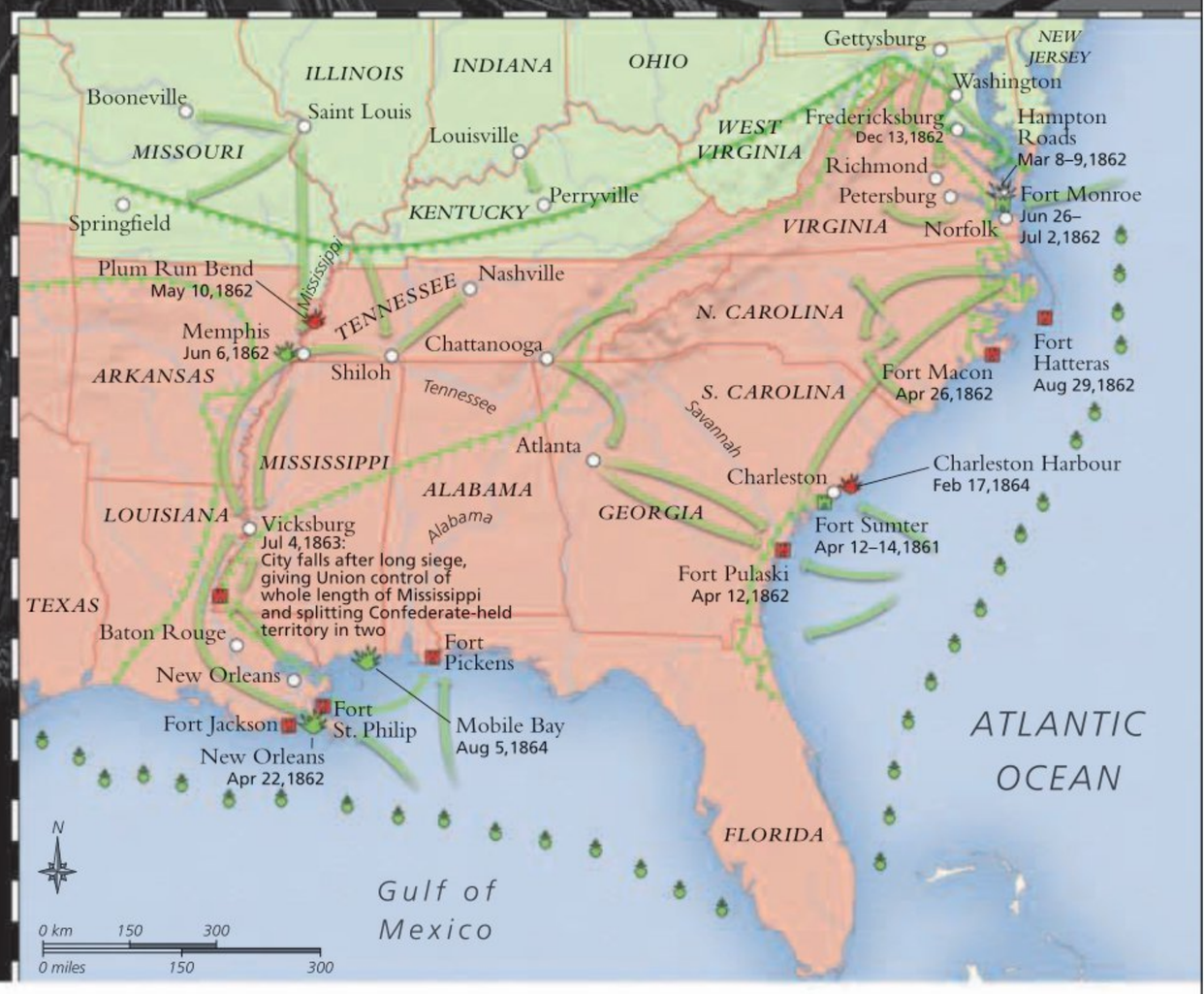
Once the Civil War ended, the monitors, ironclads, converted merchantmen, and cruisers were sold off, mothballed, or scrapped. American naval power was allowed to run down as the country concentrated on opening up the West through railroad building and the defeat of Native American tribes.

In 1879, when the United States considered intervening in the War of the Pacific between Chile and Peru, it was unable to do so because it had no warships to match Chile's British-supplied battleships. Yet the rapid growth of American industry was creating the technological and financial basis for a major fleet and for overseas imperial expansion. In 1883 Congress authorized the building of the United States' first three steel cruisers, the starting point for an accelerating program that would create the New Navy. An ideology for this modern force was supplied by historian Alfred Thayer Mahan, who argued that naval power was the key to global domination and thus essential for the United States if it was to take its rightful place among the world's great powers.

When the United States went to war with Spain in 1898, a conflict triggered by an accidental explosion on board the US battleship *Maine* in Havana Harbor, it gave the New Navy a chance to flex its muscles against distinctly inferior European opposition. After crushing victories at Manila Bay and off Cuba, the United States came out of the war with a permanent involvement in the Philippines and a string of island bases for its Pacific fleet, as well as assured dominance in the Caribbean. When President Teddy Roosevelt sent the "Great White Fleet" to show the Star and Stripes on a world tour in 1907, it included 16 battleships. The United States had arrived as a serious naval power.

THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

THE WAR FOUGHT in 1861–65 between the 11 Confederate secessionist states of the South and the Union forces of the United States government (the North) was fueled by their opposing views on slavery. Although largely decided on land, naval warfare also played a part. The Union, by far the stronger in naval terms, established a blockade of the Southern coast. The South used fast ships to run the blockade and commerce raiders to attack Northern shipping at sea. Small flotillas of paddle-wheel steamers fought for control of the major rivers. Occurring at a transitional point in naval technology, the war spawned a variety of experimental craft, from proto-submarines—used by the South to challenge the blockade—to ironclad "monitors." Overall, the Union had the better of the conflict at sea, as on land, because of superior resources of every kind.



THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR 1861–1865

The naval war began with the Confederates' bombardment of Fort Sumter in April 1861. From then on, the war centered on the Union blockade of the ports and its attempts to take the forts along the Mississippi. When the latter fell, the Confederate States were effectively cut in half.

KEY

- Union states 1861
- Confederate states 1861
- State border
- Union front line December 1861
- Union front line December 1863
- Union fort
- Confederate fort
- Union blockade
- Union attack/ landing
- Union victory
- Confederate victory
- Inconclusive battle

THE FORCING OF THE MISSISSIPPI FORTS

A major strategic objective of the Union in the early stages of the war was to wrest control of the lower Mississippi River from the Confederates. In February 1862 Flag Officer David Farragut was entrusted with the capture of New Orleans. He was to take a task force, the West Gulf Blockading Squadron, across the sandbars at the mouth of the Mississippi and up the river past the Confederate strongholds of Fort Jackson and Fort St. Philip. The Confederates had blocked the river at the line of the forts with sunken hulks linked by a chain. In principle Farragut's unarmored sloops would be stopped by this obstacle and pulverized by the forts' heavy guns.

RUNNING THE GAUNTLET

Farragut had 19 barges mounting mortars capable of firing shells of up to 200 lb. He also had transports carrying 15,000 troops to attack forts on land if needed. The mortars began their bombardment on the morning of April 18. More than a thousand shells a day raining down on the forts caused much damage, but showed no signs of silencing their guns. Farragut decided to force a passage regardless.

In the early hours of April 24, in total darkness, his 17 sloops and gunboats weighed anchor and steamed up river toward the barrier. Two gunboats had earlier succeeded in raiding the obstacle and opening a small navigable passage. Through this gap the Union ships began to pass in single file. At 3:40 a.m. the moon rose and more than a hundred guns opened up from the forts upon the sloops and gunboats revealed below. The Union mortars provided counter-fire upon the batteries; a rag-tag assemblage of Confederate gunboats behind the barrier joined in the firing; and rafts heaped with burning pitch and pine were released to float down on the Yankees' wooden ships. The ships in the center and rear of Farragut's file took a heavy battering from the forts' guns, but only one was disabled and two others forced to turn back.

CSS *Governor Moore* and CSS *Jackson*, cottonclads (gunboats with bales of cotton as armor) succeeded in ramming USS *Varuna*. The oddest vessel in the battle, CSS *Manassas*, a cigar-shaped ironclad ram, carried out a series of attacks before she ran aground and was destroyed by fire from the steamer USS *Mississippi*. On April 25 the Union squadron steamed into New Orleans. The fall of the city was a major blow to the Confederacy. Farragut was rewarded with the rank of rear-admiral—the first officer in the US Navy so designated.

AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

THE MISSISSIPPI FORTS

Date	April 18–24, 1862
Location	Mississippi River, near New Orleans
Result	Union victory

COMBATANTS

CONFEDERACY	UNION

COMMANDERS

John K Mitchell	David G Farragut

FORCES

Ships: 12 vessels including 2 ironclad rams	**Ships:** 8 steam sloops, 9 gunboats, 19 mortar schooners

LOSSES

Men: 782 dead and wounded **Ships:** 13	**Men:** 37 killed, 149 wounded **Ships:** 1

Pennant
This pennant belonged to the Confederate navy vessel CSS *McRae*, which fought Farragut's fleet at the Mississippi forts. Each star represents a Confederate state.

AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

PLUM RUN BEND

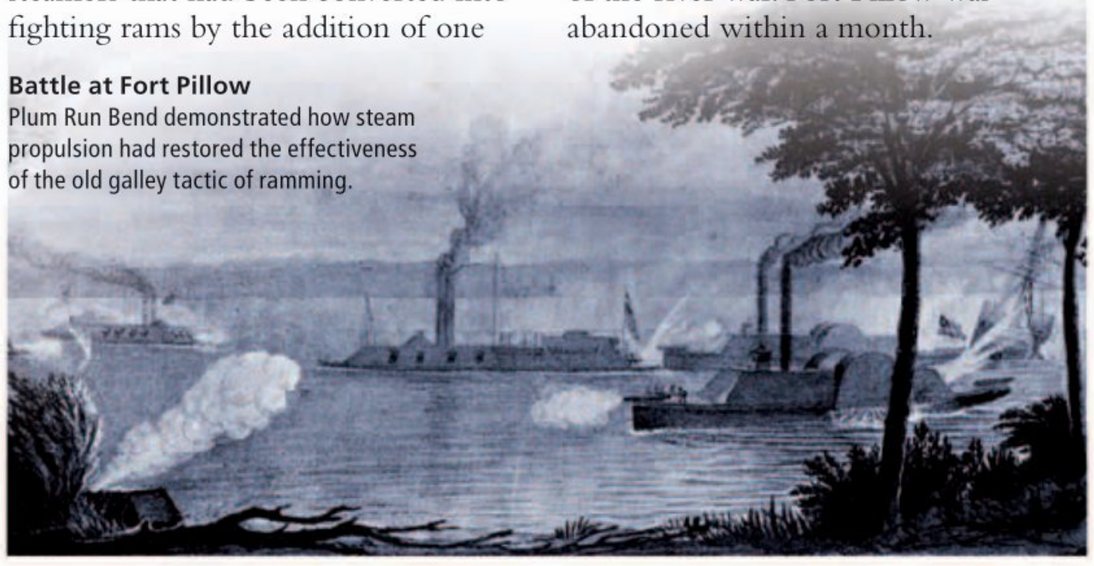
Date May 10, 1862
Forces Union: 7 ironclad gunboats, 1 wooden gunboat, 16 mortar boats; Confederacy: 8 cottonclad gunboats
Losses Union: 2 gunboats; Confederacy: none

Location Near Memphis, Tennessee

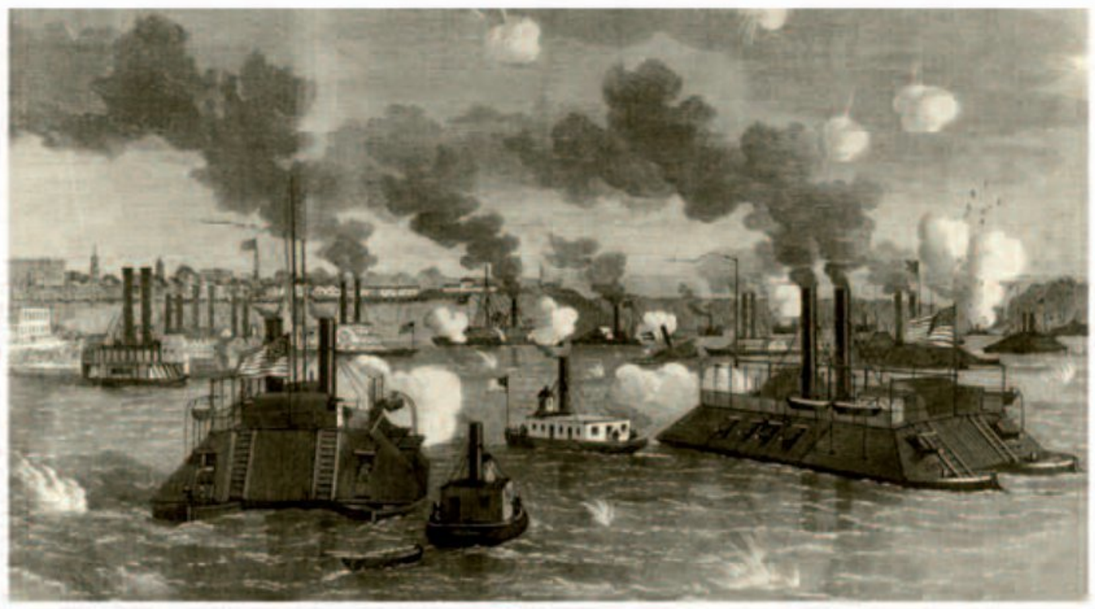
In May 1862 Union forces advancing down the Mississippi were threatening Memphis. In their path lay Fort Pillow. Union mortar boats, defended by ironclad gunboats, bombarded the fort. Captain James E. Montgomery of the Confederate River Defense Fleet commanded a small flotilla of paddle steamers that had been converted into fighting rams by the addition of one or two guns and an iron prow. They lacked iron cladding but had cotton bales functioning as light armor.

Steaming up river, Montgomery's cottonclads encountered the Union ironclad *Cincinatti*, one of the paddle-wheel gunboats known as "Pook's Turtles" after their designer Samuel Pook. Steaming through *Cincinatti*'s broadsides, three of the cottonclads rammed the gunboat, which sank in shallow water. Another ironclad, *Mound City*, was also sunk by ramming, settling half-submerged on a sandbar. As more Union gunboats rushed to the scene, the Confederates withdrew.

The skirmish at Plum Run Bend gave a welcome boost to Confederate morale but failed to affect the course of the river war. Fort Pillow was abandoned within a month.



Battle at Fort Pillow
Plum Run Bend demonstrated how steam propulsion had restored the effectiveness of the old galley tactic of ramming.



Battle of the ironclads
Union ironclad gunboats fire salvos into the Confederate fleet, bringing a swift end to the battle of Memphis.

AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

MEMPHIS

Date June 6, 1862
Forces Union: 5 ironclad gunboats, 4 rams; Confederacy: 8 cottonclads
Losses Union: none; Confederacy: 7 ships

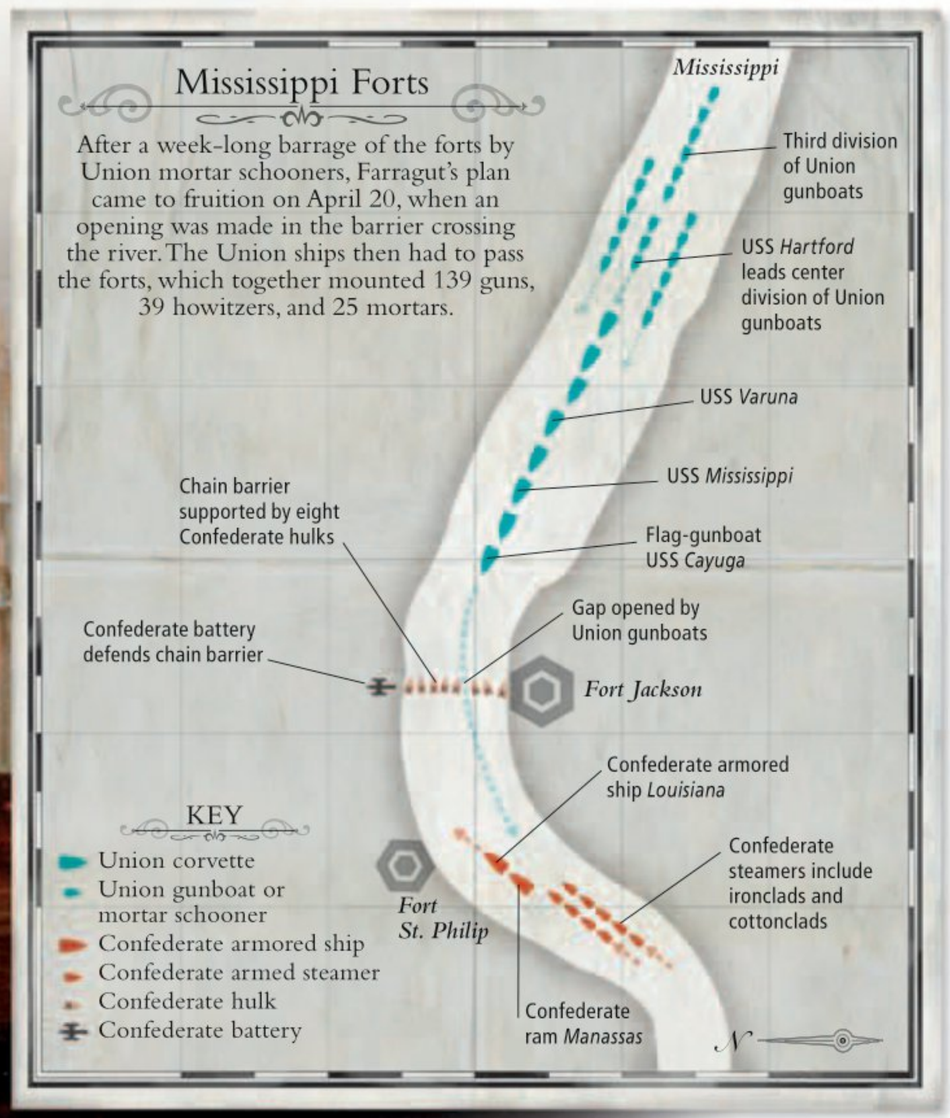
Location Memphis, Tennessee

After their losses at Plum Run Bend in May 1862, the Union was convinced of the need for rams in river warfare. Charles Ellet, a civil engineer, had been tasked with building a ram fleet. He strengthened nine river tug boats for ramming, crewed them with riverboat men, and put them under the command of himself and his relatives. Four of Ellet's rams, together with five ironclad "Pook's Turtles," steamed down the Mississippi toward Memphis, Tennessee, on June 6. There Captain James Montgomery's cottonclads, victors of Plum Run Bend, steamed out to meet them, watched by a crowd of Memphis residents ready to cheer a Confederate triumph. But it was not to be.

Union rams, captained by Charles Ellet and his brother Alfred, collided with the van of the Confederate force at 15 knots. Two cottonclads were holed and crippled. The Union ironclad gunboats followed, firing salvoes that sank one Confederate vessel and disabled three others. After two hours' fighting, the Confederate fleet had ceased to exist, losing 180 men and only one ship escaping down river. Charles Ellet was the only casualty on the Union side. Memphis was occupied and stars and stripes raised over the Confederate city.

> "THE PASSING OF FORTS JACKSON AND ST. PHILIP WAS ONE OF THE MOST AWFUL SIGHTS I EVER SAW ..."
>
> **DAVID FARRAGUT**, UNION FLAG OFFICER, WRITING IN HIS MEMOIRS

Moonlit battle
Farragut's flagship *Hartford* runs the gauntlet of Confederate incendiaries, forcing a passage up the Mississippi.



US CIVIL WAR

CHARLESTON HARBOR

Date April 7, 1863
Forces Union: 7 monitors, 2 ironclads; Confederacy: none
Losses Union: 1 ironclad sunk

Location Charleston, South Carolina

In preparation for an attack upon the Confederate port of Charleston, Rear Admiral Samuel Francis du Pont's South Atlantic Blockading Squadron attempted to overcome the defenses of Charleston harbor by naval bombardment. Seven monitors and the ironclads *New Ironsides* and *Keokok* crossed the harbor bar on April 6, 1863, but poor visibility delayed the attack until the following morning. The Confederate defenses were excellently prepared. The channel into the harbor was blocked with obstacles and "torpedoes" (mines), while the gunners in Fort Sumter and Fort Multrie had taken measures to ensure that their fire was accurate and deadly. The monitor *Weehawken* was first to open fire on the forts with her Dahlgren guns, but she was soon taking hits on her armor, as well as having a torpedo explode beneath her. The unfortunate *Keokuk* found herself swept into the van on the flood tide. Her experimental armor (she was dubbed a "tinclad") was quickly holed. In all, the shore batteries fired 2,200 shots, achieving 440 hits, while the ships only managed to fire 154 shots before retiring for the day. *Keokuk* sank the following morning and the assault on the forts was abandoned.

US CIVIL WAR

ALABAMA VS KEARSARGE

Date June 19, 1864
Forces Confederacy: 1 steam sloop; Union: 1 steam sloop
Losses Confederacy: 1 ship sunk; Union: none

Location Off Cherbourg, France

The Confederate steam sloop *Alabama* was a highly successful commerce raider. Commanded by Captain Raphael Semmes, she sank more than 60 merchant ships. On June 14, 1864 she was trapped in the French port of Cherbourg by the Union sloop *Kearsarge* under Captain John Winslow. Five days later Semmes boldly came out to fight. The engagement lasted 70 minutes. The two ships steamed in opposite directions in narrowing circles, pounding one another with shot and shell. *Kearsarge* was armored with iron chains; *Alabama* was not. Holed and taking water, *Alabama* struck shortly before sinking. Semmes was among the 38 men saved by a private yacht.

THE BATTLE OF MOBILE BAY

US CIVIL WAR

THE BATTLE OF MOBILE BAY

Date	August 5, 1864
Location	Mobile Bay, Gulf of Mexico
Result	Union victory

COMBATANTS

UNION	CONFEDERACY

COMMANDERS

David Farragut	Franklin Buchanan

FORCES

Ships: 4 monitors, 14 wooden steamships	**Ships:** 1 ironclad, 3 gunboats

LOSSES

Men: 315 **Ships:** 1 ironclad	**Men:** 35 casualties, 123 captured **Ships:** 1 ironclad and 2 gunboats captured

By the fourth year of the Civil War, Mobile, Alabama, was one of only two Confederate ports still successfully challenging the Union naval blockade (the other being Savannah, Georgia). In August 1864 Union forces under Admiral David Farragut sought to close this avenue for blockade-runners by taking control of Mobile Bay.

As the fog lifted around 6:00 a.m. on August 5, Farragut's squadron crossed the bar at the entrance to the bay on the flood tide. His four armored monitors led the way, steaming to starboard of his wooden ships to protect them from the fire of Fort Morgan's batteries. Meanwhile, Confederate admiral Franklin Buchanan brought *Tennessee* (an unwieldy ironclad ram) and three unarmored gunboats up to block the channel into the bay. The Union ironclads began a vigorous exchange of fire with Fort Morgan, creating such smoke that Farragut had to climb the mainmast of his flagship, the screw-sloop *Hartford*, to see what was happening.

The leading Union monitor was Commander Tunis Craven's *Tecumseh*. As Buchanan's ships opened fire from ahead, Craven maneuvered to engage *Tennessee*. Veering to port, *Tecumseh* struck a mine (or "torpedo"), triggering a massive explosion. The monitor capsized and sank, taking Craven and more than 90 of the crew to the bottom. For a moment the Union squadron came to a halt under the fire of the fort's guns, as captains hesitated to press forward for fear of mines. Farragut's resolve saved the day. With the famous cry "Damn the torpedoes! Full speed ahead!" the Union admiral ordered his flagship forward through the mined channel, followed without further loss by the rest of the squadron.

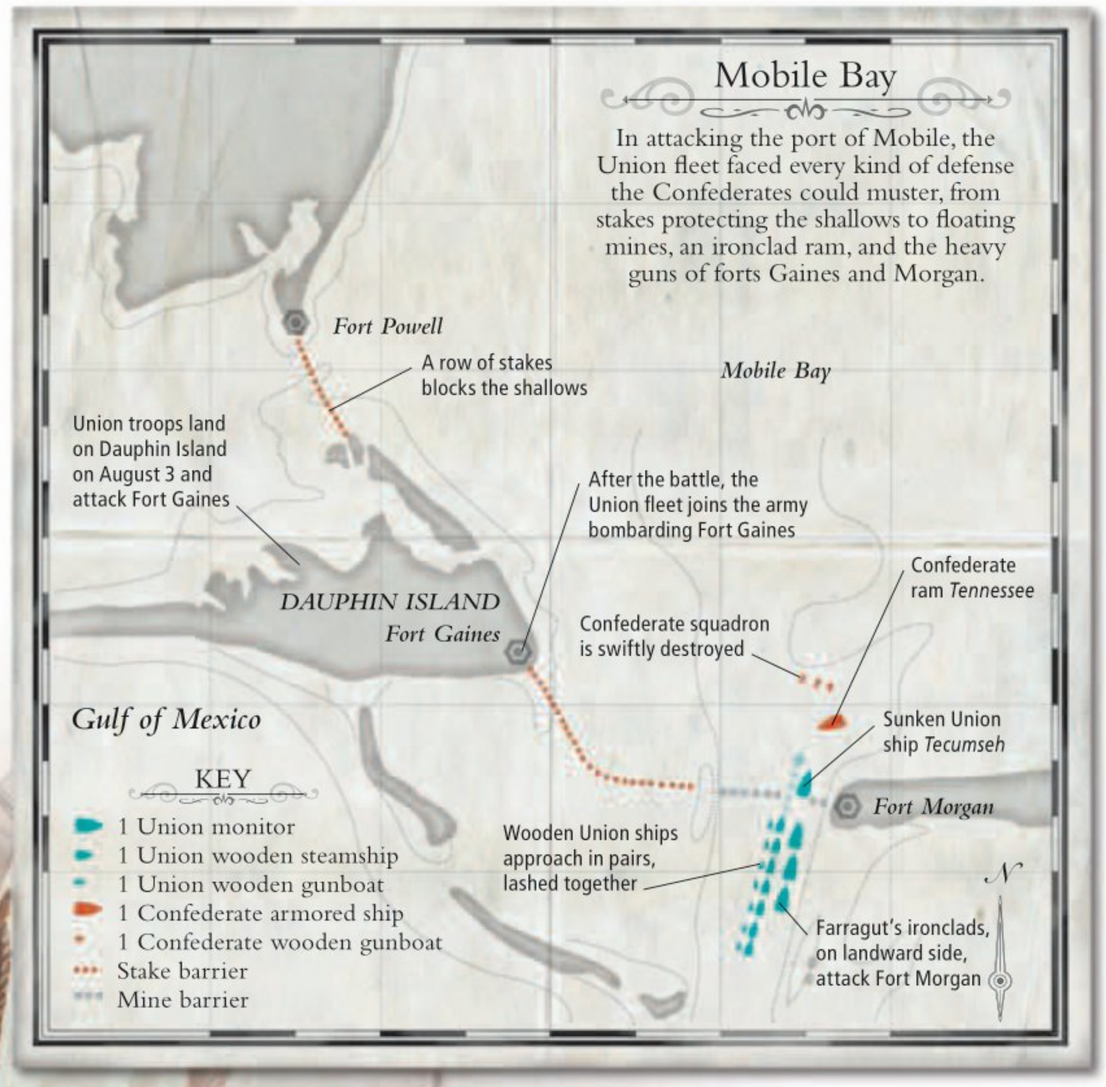
Although facing overwhelming odds, Buchanan gallantly refused to accept defeat. *Tennessee*'s guns did a great deal of damage to Union ships and

Battle of the ironclads
Commander David G. Farragut (far right) stands in the rigging of his sloop-of-war *Hartford*. In the foreground, a gun crew readies a Dahlgren gun to fire point-blank at a Confederate ironclad.

> SHOT AFTER SHOT WAS SEEN TO STRIKE, AND SHELLS TO EXPLODE ... BUT THEIR SIDES BEING HEAVILY PROTECTED ... NO VITAL BLOW COULD BE INFLICTED.
>
> **GENERAL RICHARD L PAGE**, COMMANDER OF FORT MORGAN

proved a tough opponent to overcome. Three of the Union screw-sloops, including Farragut's *Hartford*, rammed the Confederate leviathan, but suffered more damage than they caused. The monitors *Chickasaw* and *Manhattan* moved in to fire their heavy guns at point-blank range, finally succeeding in blowing a hole in *Tennessee*'s armor. Buchanan, himself wounded, at last ordered a white flag flown from the battered, disabled ironclad, bringing the battle of Mobile Bay to a close.

Over the following weeks, Union army and naval forces captured the forts at the mouth of the bay, completing the blockade of Mobile, which itself stayed in Confederate hands.



1801–1870

DAVID G. FARRAGUT

THE FIRST ADMIRAL OF THE US NAVY

Tennessee-born David Farragut was a midshipman in the US Navy aged nine, and, during the 1812 War with Britain, commanded a prize vessel at the age of 12. He saw further action in the Mexican War of 1846–48. Although born and bred a southerner, in the Civil War he opted for the Union and distinguished himself in the running of the forts to New Orleans in 1862. The assault on Mobile Bay, in 1864, was his finest hour. He was rewarded with the title of admiral in 1866, the first man to hold that rank in the US Navy.

FORCING OF THE MISSISSIPPI FORTS

On April 24, 1862, Commodore Farragut of the United States Navy sent his West Gulf Blockading Squadron of nine gunboats, eight steamboats, and several mortar vessels up the Mississippi to wrest New Orleans from Confederate control. The city fell peacefully, but Farragut's squadron endured a vicious bombardment from the Confederate strongholds, forts Jackson (left) and St. Philip.

FARRAGUT APRIL 24th 1862

Point-blank range
Monitor (right) opens fire with one of its Dahlgren guns at point-blank range. The *Virginia*'s barbette is riddled with damage, and its smokestack is shattered. It also takes fire from Union frigates.

Crew of USS Monitor
The *Monitor* had a crew of 59 officers and men, some of whom are gathered here on its deck. A gunner stands on the turret, which houses two 11in Dahlgren smoothbores.

THE BATTLE OF HAMPTON ROADS

Faced with overwhelming Union naval superiority and a blockade of its coasts, the Confederacy sought salvation in new technology: ironclad warships. Building upon the half-burned hull of the steam frigate USS *Merrimack*, captured at Gosport in the first days of the Civil War, the Confederates created a ship completely covered down to the waterline in 4in (102mm) thick iron plates. On March 8, 1862, this sinister, ungainly fighting machine, renamed CSS *Virginia*, steamed out from Norfolk Navy Yard to challenge the Union frigates blockading the Hampton Roads.

HISTORIC ENCOUNTER

Although it carried 12 assorted guns (four rifles, two howitzers, and six Dahlgren smoothbores), *Virginia*'s chief weapon was an iron ram, created in response to rumors that the Union, too, had an ironclad—one that might resist *Virginia*'s guns. *Virginia*'s captain, 61-year-old Franklin Buchanan, had orders to effect "prompt and successful action." Without hesitation he set his course directly for the wooden frigate USS *Cumberland*. Steaming inexorably forward, immune to *Cumberland*'s broadsides, *Virginia* smashed its ram into the frigate's hull. As *Cumberland* sank, the ironclad was almost dragged to the bottom, disengaging at the expense of snapping the ram. *Virginia*'s next victim was USS *Congress*. Deliberately run aground to escape ramming, the frigate provided target practice for *Virginia*'s gunners. *Congress* eventually struck its colors but *Virginia*'s acceptance of the surrender was interrupted by fire from Union soldiers on shore. Buchanan himself was shot in the leg—the limb was later amputated. Before handing over command, he angrily ordered his gunners to fire on *Congress* with heated iron shot, setting it aflame.

By the end of the day yet another Union frigate, *Minnesota*, was aground and at *Virginia*'s mercy. The ironclad, now under Lieutenant Catesby ap Roger Jones, retired to rest its crew, intending to finish the job the following day. This it would undoubtedly have done but for the timely arrival (for the Union) of an even stranger vessel. Aware of the Confederates' progress with *Virginia*, the Union had indeed rushed to complete its own revolutionary ironclad. USS *Monitor*, towed south from New York, with no time for sea trials and an inexperienced crew, reached the Hampton Roads on the

> DURING THE ACTION THEY CHEERED AND CHEERED AGAIN. THEIR COOLNESS AND SKILL WERE THE MORE REMARKABLE FROM THE FACT THAT THE GREAT MAJORITY OF THEM WERE UNDER FIRE FOR THE FIRST TIME.
>
> **LIEUTENANT CATESBY AP ROGER JONES,** WRITING OF HIS CREW ABOARD *VIRGINIA*

US CIVIL WAR

BATTLE OF HAMPTON ROADS

Date	March 8–9, 1862
Location	Off Sewell's Point, Virginia
Result	Inconclusive

COMBATANTS

UNION	CONFEDERACY

COMMANDERS

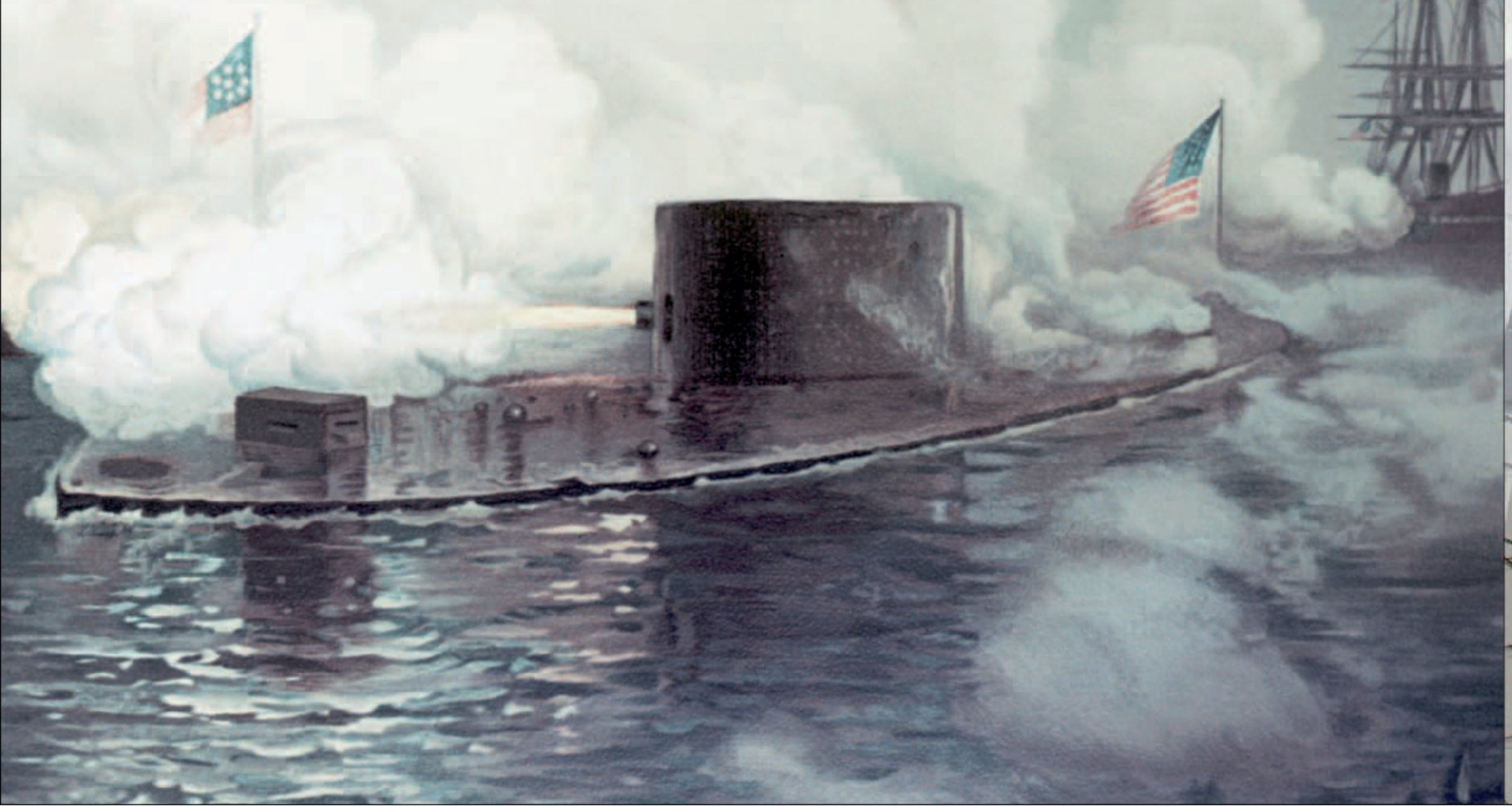
John L. Worden **Samuel D. Green**	**Franklin Buchanan,** **Catesby ap R. Jones**

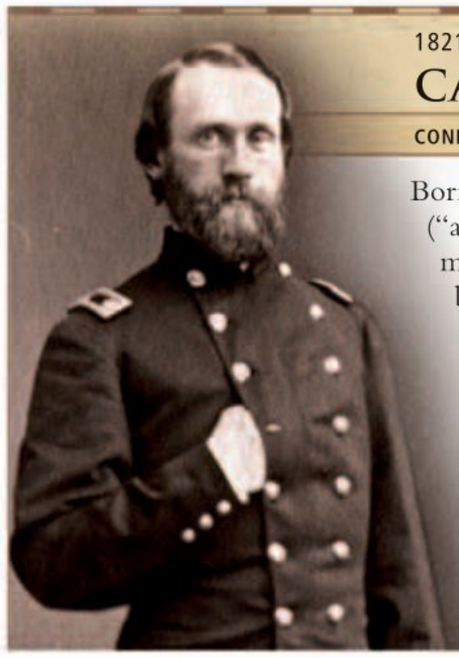
FORCES

Ships: 1 ironclad, 5 wooden frigates	**Ships:** 1 ironclad, 2 wooden warships, 1 gunboat

LOSSES

Men: 261 killed, 108 wounded **Ships:** 2 frigates	**Men:** 7 killed, 17 wounded **Ships:** none





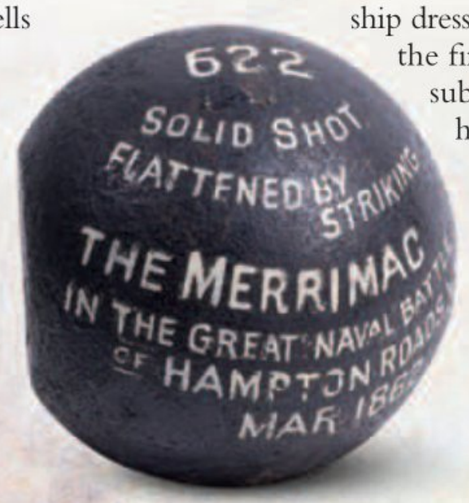
1821–1877

CATESBY AP JONES

CONFEDERATE NAVY LIEUTENANT

Born in Fairfield, Virginia, Catesby ap Roger Jones ("ap" meaning "son of" in Welsh) was appointed midshipman in 1836 and served extensively at sea, becoming a lieutenant in 1849. In the 1850s he was involved in the development of naval weapons, and served as an ordnance officer aboard *Merrimack* when she began service in 1856. He became a Confederate Navy Lieutenant in 1861, and converted *Merrimack* into the ironclad *Virginia*, taking temporary command of her at the battle of Hampton Roads. He was killed in 1877 in a feud between his and another man's children.

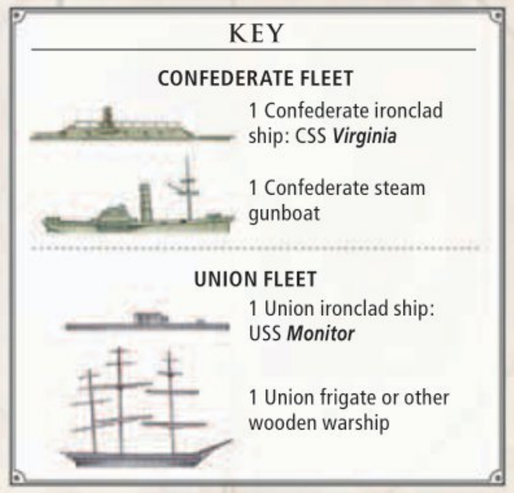
night of March 8–9. She was a semi-submerged armored raft designed by Swedish engineer John Ericsson, driven by Ericsson's novel marine screw, and topped by a revolving iron gun turret containing two 11 in smoothbore Dahlgren guns. The latter had reinforcing muzzle swells that permitted large amounts of explosives to be used without fear of the guns exploding (and gave them a soda-bottle shape), the pair aboard *Monitor* being of a higher caliber than the two aboard *Virginia*. Unlike her opponent, which was simply a wooden ship dressed in iron, *Monitor* was the first truly semi-submersible warship, having all of her features underwater save for the turret and a tiny pilothouse up front.



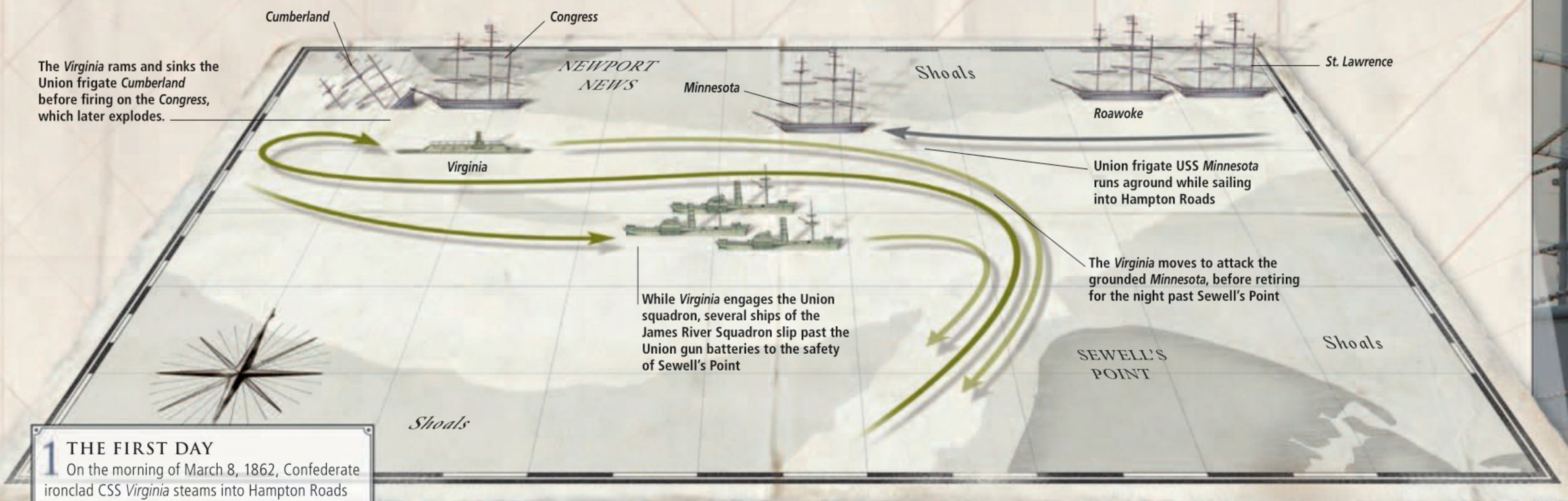
Flattened shot
One of the shots fired at *Virginia* by *Monitor* flattened on impact with the former's thick armor—*Merrimac* being the Union name for the *Virginia*.

The duel that followed the next day, when *Virginia* steamed out and found *Monitor* defending *Minnesota*, may rank as the oddest in naval history. For four hours the two ships blasted at one another at close range, producing little more than dents in their iron armor. Visibility was poor for commanders and gunners on both ships. *Monitor* suffered problems with its turret, which had to be kept permanently rotating, firing as it turned. *Virginia* had the disadvantage of a V-shaped hull (*Monitor* was flat-bottomed) and at one point ran aground, refloating with a supreme effort of her overstretched engines. Ramming proved as ineffectual as gunfire. A shell exploded on the eye-slit of *Monitor*'s cramped pilothouse, and its captain, John L. Worden, was burned in the face and blinded. But his first officer, Samuel D. Green, continued the fight, and in the afternoon *Virginia* withdrew to port.

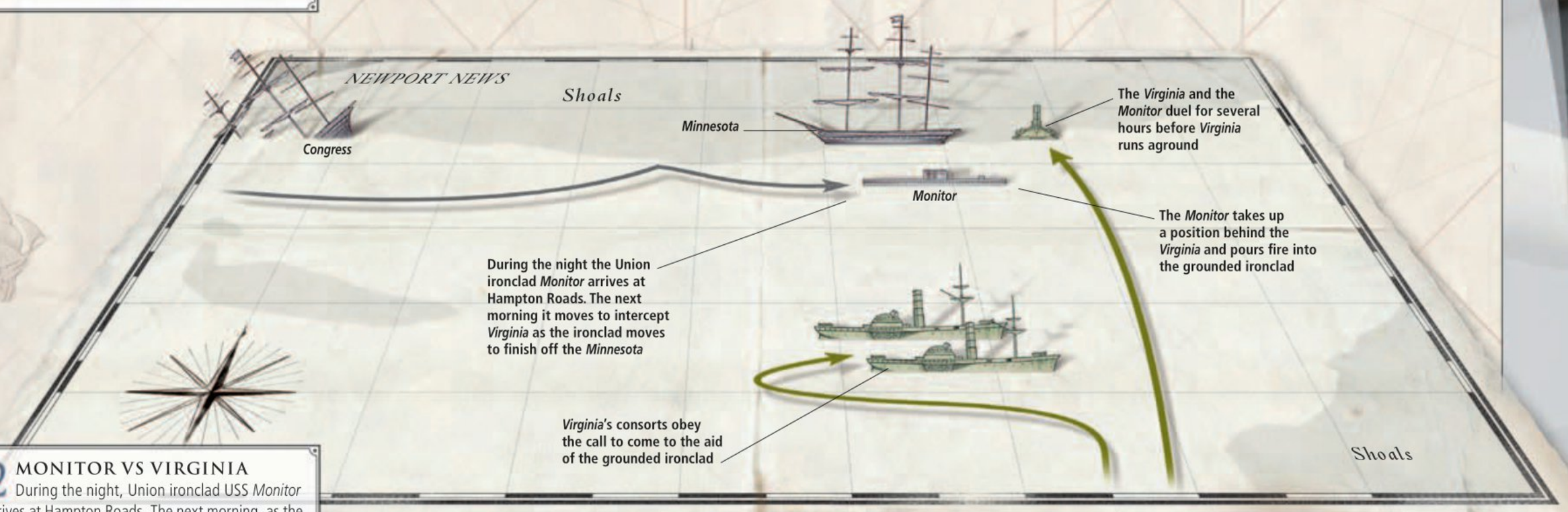
Over the following two months *Virginia* made occasional sorties into Hampton Roads, but the epic duel was not repeated. Both sides claimed victory, but with the blockade still intact, the strategic balance remained in the Union's favor. When he heard of the engagement, *Monitor*'s designer John Ericsson criticized the crew for firing only solid shot at *Virginia*'s upper works, claiming that firing explosive shells beneath the waterline would have sunk the Confederate ship. Nevertheless, neither ironclad survived the year. *Virginia* was scuttled by her commander in May 1861 when the course of the land battle forced the Confederates to abandon Portsmouth. *Monitor*, which was never truly seaworthy, sank on December 31 while under tow in an Atlantic gale.



Duel in Hampton Roads
Virginia (right) fires its 7 in stern and casement guns, while *Monitor* fires its 11-in turret equivalents. *Virginia*'s use of molten shot enhanced the need for ships to be made of iron.

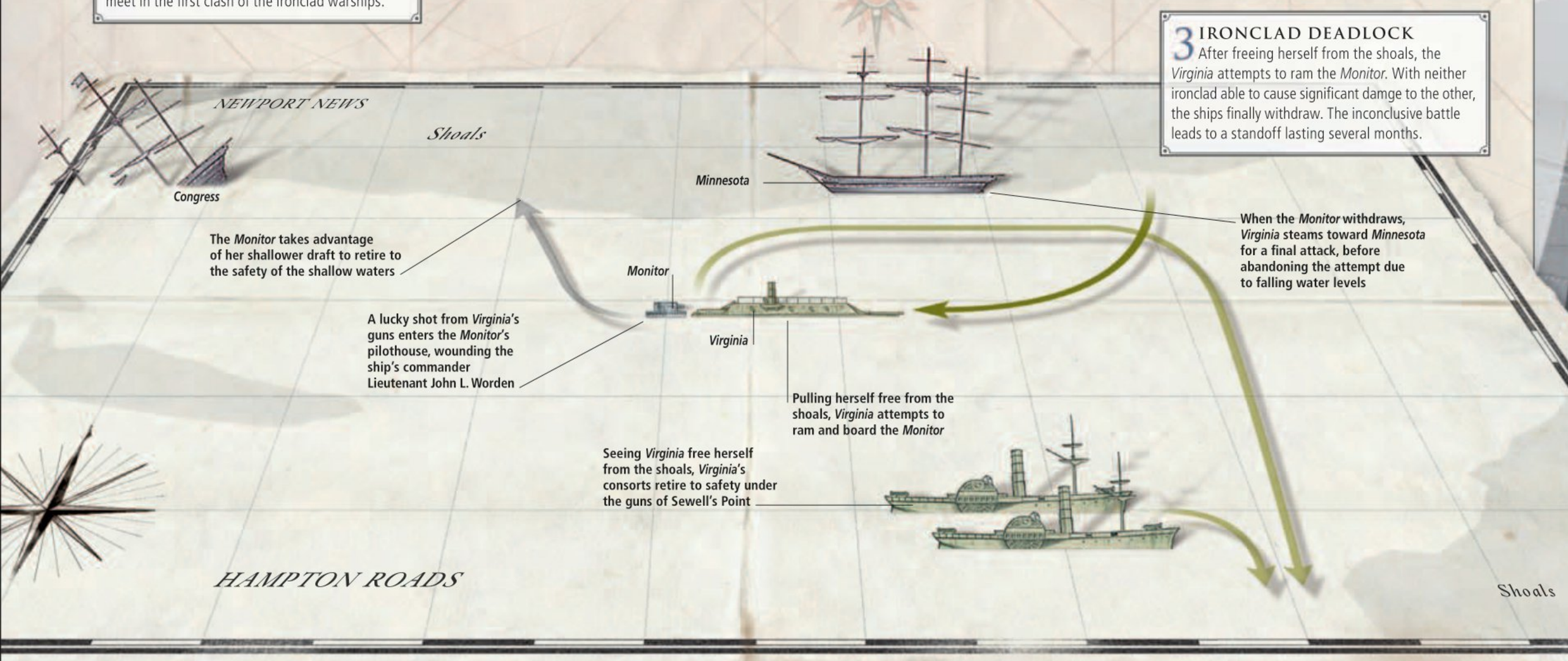


1 THE FIRST DAY
On the morning of March 8, 1862, Confederate ironclad CSS *Virginia* steams into Hampton Roads in an attempt to break the Union blockade. The *Virginia* sinks two Union frigates before retiring under the protection of the guns at Sewell's Point.



2 MONITOR VS VIRGINIA
During the night, Union ironclad USS *Monitor* arrives at Hampton Roads. The next morning, as the *Virginia* steams out to finish off the damaged Union frigate *Minnesota*, the *Monitor* and the *Virginia* meet in the first clash of the ironclad warships.

3 IRONCLAD DEADLOCK
After freeing herself from the shoals, the *Virginia* attempts to ram the *Monitor*. With neither ironclad able to cause significant damge to the other, the ships finally withdraw. The inconclusive battle leads to a standoff lasting several months.



SPANISH AND LATIN-AMERICAN CONFLICTS

FROM THE 1840s to the 1890s the countries of Central and South America fought a number of wars that involved naval action. None of the naval conflicts was contested on a large scale, but some were of technical interest, providing a testing ground for the latest naval technology—as when the first sinking of a warship by a torpedo took place during the Chilean Civil War of 1891. The war that broke out between Spain and the United States in 1898, however, marked a major historical transition. The war was precipitated by the explosion of the battleship *Maine* in Havana Harbor—an event that was almost certainly an accident, but which was blamed by the Americans on the Spanish authorities, thus providing the former with a pretext for war. Two one-sided naval battles, at Santiago de Cuba and Manila Bay, to a large degree determined the war's outcome. As a result of the conflict the United States effectively replaced Spain as the imperial power in Cuba and the Philippines. At the same time, the naval battles confirmed the terminal decline of the Spanish navy and the emergence of the United States as a potentially major naval power.

Texan sailing ships
Sailing ships of the Texan navy head for the Yucatán Peninsula, where they engage and defeat the steam ships of Mexico at Campeche.

TEXAS-MEXICAN WARS

CAMPECHE

Date April 30 and May 16, 1843
Forces Texans, Yucatáns: 4 sailing ships; Mexicans: 2 ironclads, 4 sailing ships
Losses none

Location Bay of Campeche, Mexico

In 1843 Texas was a self-declared republic whose independence was not recognized by Mexico. The Texan navy was in poor shape, its crews unpaid and mutinous. Its commander, Commodore Edwin Ward Moore, sought to fund the navy by selling its services to Yucatán, also fighting for independence from Mexico. In April 1843 Moore sailed from New Orleans for the Yucatán port of Campeche, under blockade by the Mexican navy.

Mexico had recently bought the British-built, iron-hulled, paddle-wheel frigate *Guadalupe*, the largest iron ship in the world. *Guadalupe* was supported by the ironclad steamer *Moctezuma*. Commanded by Commodore Thomas Marin, the Mexican ironclads were mostly manned by British officers and crews. The Texans had only wooden sailing ships, including Moore's flagship, the sloop-of-war *Austin*, and the brig *Wharton*. Joined by two schooners of the Yucatán navy, Moore met the Mexican steamships off Campeche on April 30. The two-hour running battle was indecisive, but the Texans broke through the blockade and entered Campeche for rest and repairs.

Over the next two weeks the Texan sailing ships had long-range guns added to their armament, for they had had difficulty closing with the steam-driven ships. On May 16 Moore led his ships out of Campeche to renew battle. This time the fighting lasted three hours. *Austin* was badly damaged, but the Texan broadsides caused far heavier casualties. The Texans had the better of the two encounters, justifying the description of Campeche as the only battle in which sail defeated steam.

CHINCHA ISLANDS WAR

CALLAO

Date May 2, 1866
Forces Spanish: 14 warships; Peruvians: 5 warships, c.60 shore guns
Losses Spanish: none; Peruvians: unknown

Location
Callao, Peru

In the 1860s relations between Spain and its former colonies Peru and Chile deteriorated into open warfare after the Spanish seized Peru's guano-rich Chincha Islands. Admiral Casto Mendez Nuñez steamed from Spain on board the newly built ironclad *Numancia* to take command of a Spanish squadron off the coast of Chile. He bombarded the port of Valparaiso in February 1866, then moved north to Peru, choosing the fortified naval base at Callao as his target. The Spanish fleet had 245 guns on board, arranged in broadside. The Peruvian armament totaled around 90 guns, including some very heavy shore guns in armored emplacements. On the morning of May 2, the Spanish ships advanced within range and a ferocious gun duel began; it lasted six hours. The Spanish vessels received many hits, especially *Numancia*, deliberately positioned by Mendez Nuñez in the place of greatest danger. More than 40 Spanish officers and men were killed and a further 160 were wounded, including the admiral. But the Spanish had the better of the duel, silencing almost all the shore guns with their more skilful shooting. There were some 600 Peruvian casualties, including the minister of war Juan Galvez, killed in the destruction of an armored strongpoint. The Spanish squadron subsequently left for the Philippines, leaving the bombardment without consequence. Returning home to Spain, *Numancia* became the first ironclad to circumnavigate the globe.

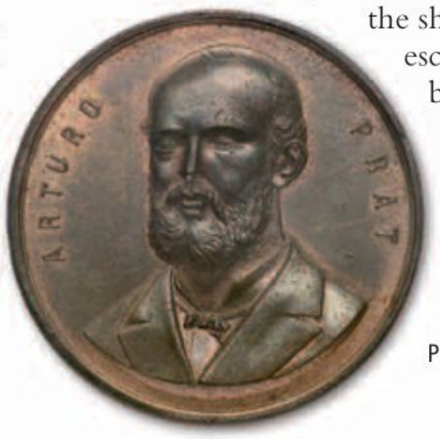
WAR OF THE PACIFIC

IQUIQUE

Date May 21, 1879
Forces Chilians: 1 corvette, 1 schooner; Peruvians: 1 armored frigate, 1 monitor
Losses Chilians: 1 corvette; Peruvians: 1 armored frigate

Location
Iquique, Peru

During the war between Chile and Peru in 1879, the Chilean navy left two obsolescent wooden steamships, the corvette *Esmeralda* and the schooner *Covadonga*, blockading the Peruvian port of Iquique. There they were surprised by two Peruvian ironclads, the armored frigate *Independencia* and the monitor *Huascar*. *Esmeralda* became trapped between the Peruvian shore batteries and *Huascar*, and although most of her crew were killed or wounded, her captain, Arturo Prat, refused to surrender. When *Huascar* rammed the corvette, Prat led his surviving crew in an attempt to board the monitor. He was killed on its deck with a blow from an ax. Meanwhile, *Covadonga* fought a skilful running battle with *Independencia*, exploiting its shallow draft to lure the Peruvian ship into going aground. *Covadonga* was then able to batter *Independencia* with her guns. The Peruvians scuttled the ship while *Covadonga* escaped southward. On balance, the battle was a victory for Chile.



Battle hero
This medal commemorates the death of Chilean captain Arturo Prat, who died boarding the Peruvian monitor *Huascar*.

THE BATTLE OF SANTIAGO DE CUBA

When war broke out between the United States and Spain in April 1898, Spanish admiral Pascual Cervera was ordered to protect his country's West Indian colonies from American attack. This was a poor decision, for the forces at Cervera's disposal were inadequate to confront the battleships of the US "New Navy"—deficiencies ranging from faulty boilers to missing guns and dud ammunition. Nevertheless, Cervera anchored his squadron of armored cruisers and destroyers at Santiago de Cuba, where it was swiftly blockaded by the Americans.

The commander of the American Atlantic Squadron, Admiral William T. Sampson, had no intention of attacking the Spanish in harbor, where they were defended by shore batteries and mines, leaving Cervera with the slim hope that bad weather might interrupt the blockade. By July, however, American land forces were also threatening Santiago, so the Spanish admiral made the decision to attempt a breakout.

Cervera chose the morning of July 3 for the attempt. He had the good fortune of selecting the morning when Admiral Sampson, aboard the armored cruiser *New York*, was heading off to meet with US Army commanders. *New York* was far from its blockade station when, at around 9:30 a.m., the Spanish were spotted steaming out of harbor, with Cervera's flagship, the cruiser *Infanta Maria Teresa*, leading the line.

Cervera's only hope lay in speed. In principle, the Spanish ships had a fair chance of outrunning the blockade force once they were clear. In Sampson's absence, command of the American squadron devolved to Commodore Winfield Scott Schley aboard the armored cruiser *Brooklyn*. As the Spanish steamed southward close to the shore, Schley maneuvered so radically that he nearly collided with the battleship *Texas*. But *Brooklyn* was soon engaging *Maria Teresa*, which sought to hold off the enemy as the other ships slipped away.

American medal
Commemorating the destruction of the Spanish fleet at Santiago de Cuba, this medal shows a broadside view of USS *Brooklyn* under steam.

The battle quickly degenerated into a debacle for the Spanish. Cervera's flagship was battered by *Brooklyn*'s guns and ran aground. Another armored cruiser, *Vizcaya*, valiantly dueled with *Brooklyn* and the battleship *Texas* for over an hour, until it too was grounded. *Oquendo* was disabled and scuttled. The Spanish destroyers succumbed to the battleships *Iowa* and *Indiana*, and of *New York* hurrying to join the action. Only the cruiser *Cristóbal Colón* broke the blockade, but was overhauled by *Oregon* after a 50-mile (80km) chase.

SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

BATTLE OF SANTIAGO DE CUBA

Date	July 3, 1898
Location	Off Santiago de Cuba
Result	American victory

COMBATANTS

UNITED STATES	SPAIN

COMMANDERS

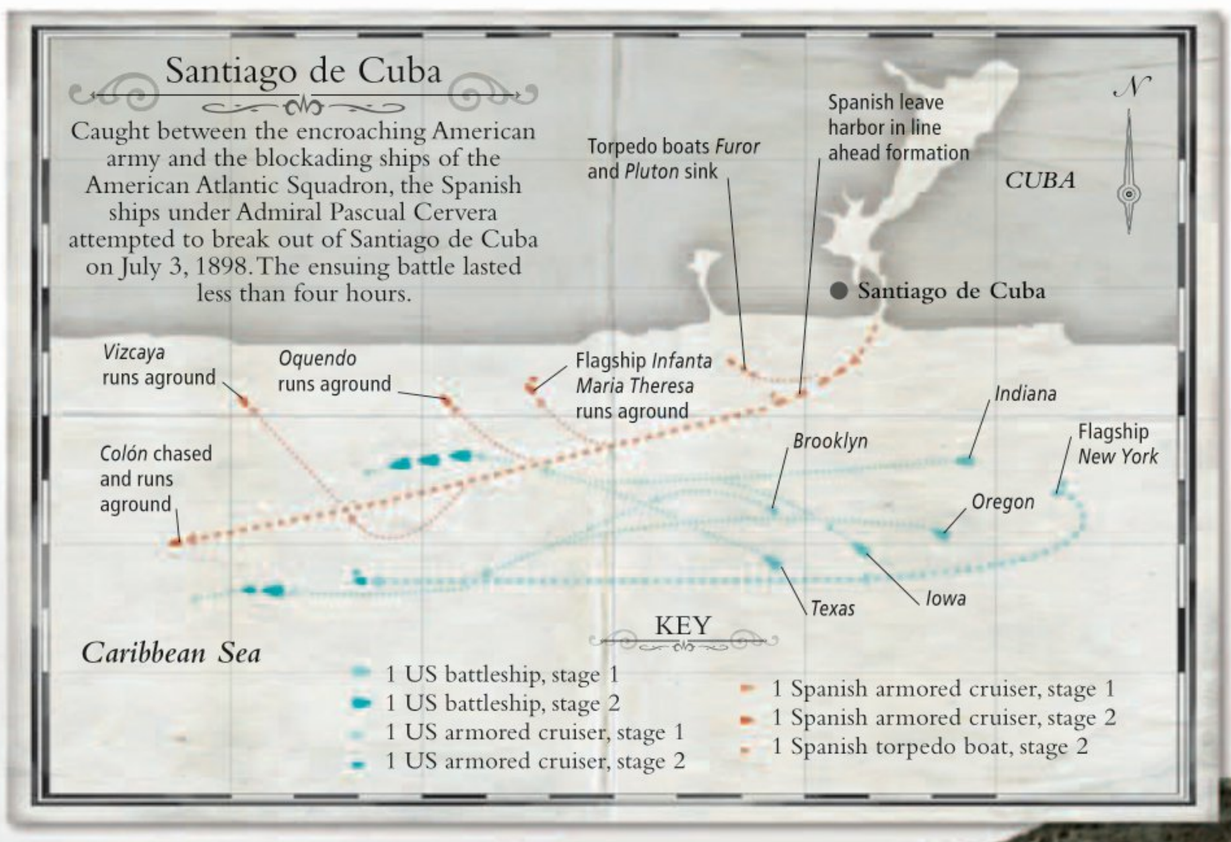
William T. Sampson **Winfield Scott Schley**	**Pascual Cervera y Topete**

FORCES

Ships: 4 battleships, 2 armored cruisers, 2 torpedo boats	**Ships:** 4 armored cruisers, 2 destroyers

LOSSES

Men: 1 dead, 1 wounded **Ships:** none	**Men:** 474 casualties, 1,800 taken prisoner **Ships:** 6



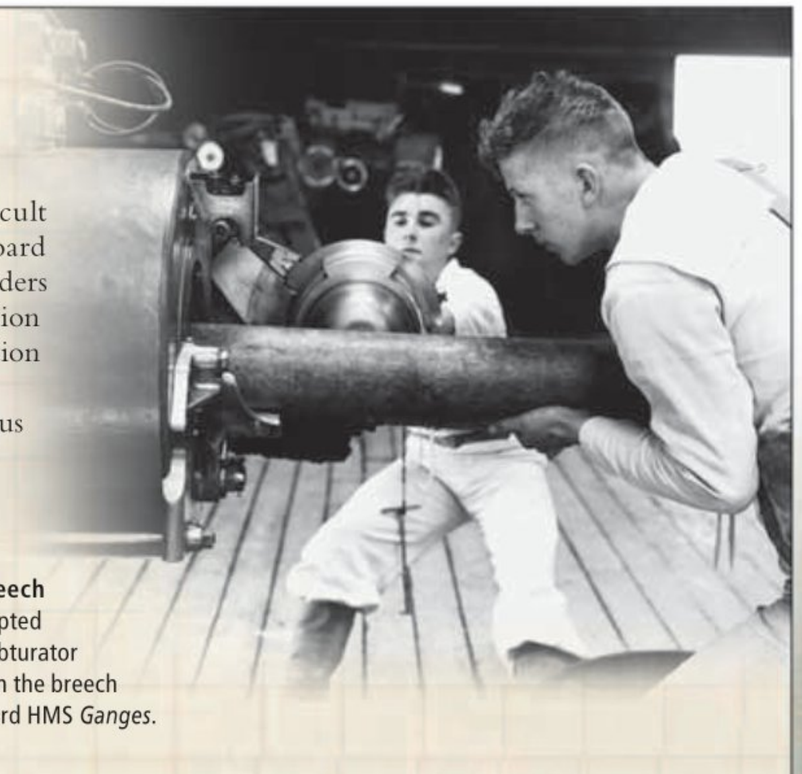
> NOTHING CAN BE EXPECTED OF THIS EXPEDITION EXCEPT THE TOTAL DESTRUCTION OF THE FLEET OR ITS HASTY AND DEMORALIZED RETURN.
>
> **SPANISH ADMIRAL PASCUAL CERVERA**, BEFORE THE BATTLE OF SANTIAGO DE CUBA

Spanish wreck
The Spanish unprotected cruiser *Reina Mercedes* was one of the ships trapped by the American blockading force in Santiago de Cuba. It was sunk during a bombardment on 6 June 1898.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

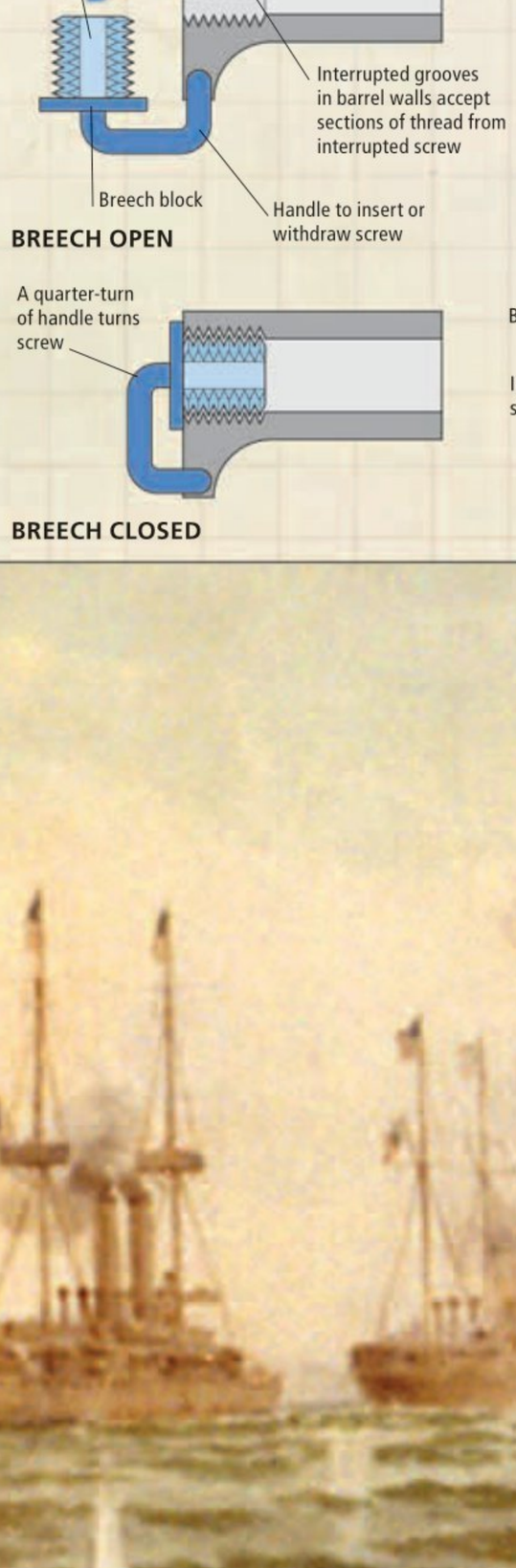
BREECH-LOADING GUNS

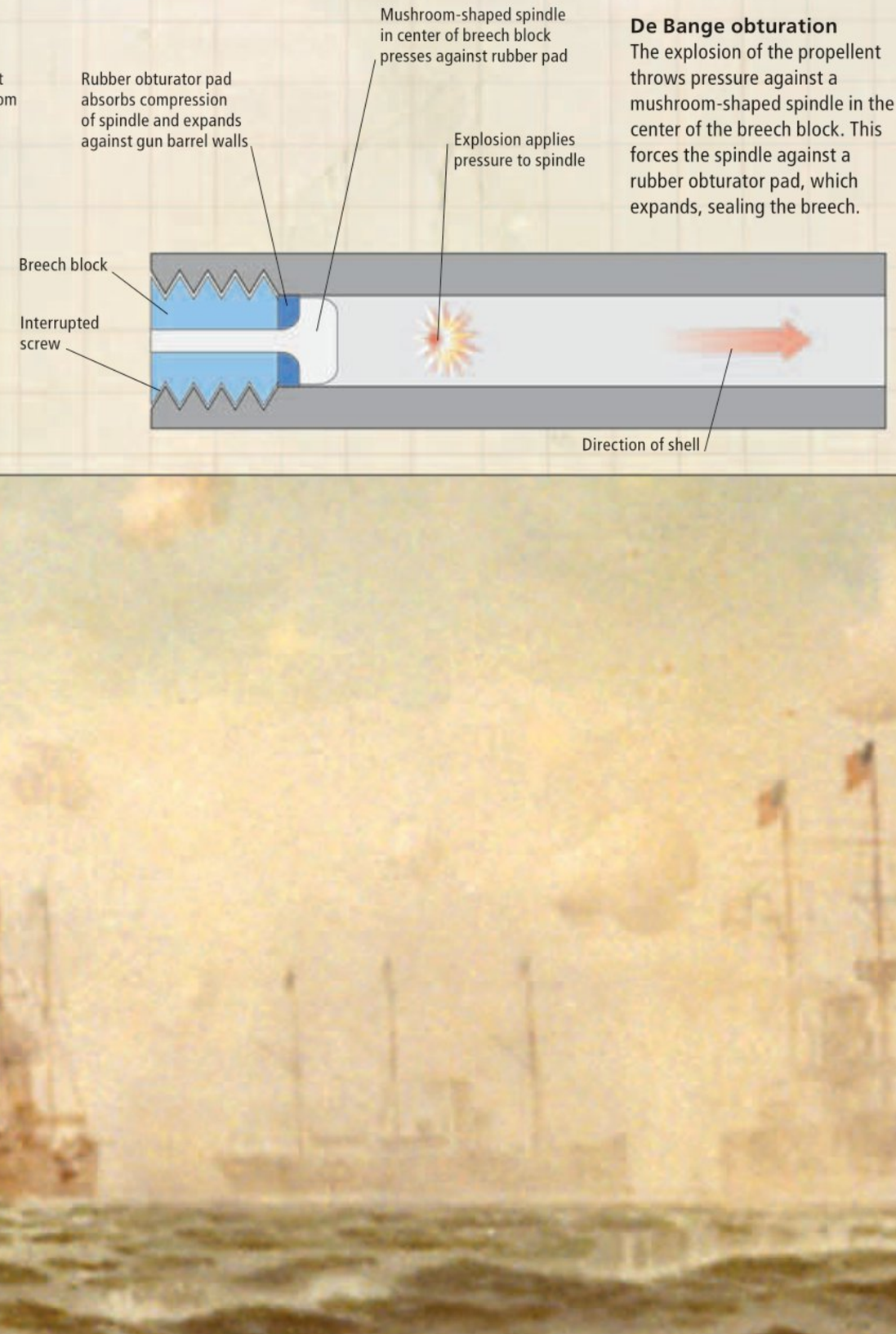
In the mid-19th century the breech-loading rifled cannon began to replace the muzzle-loader, which took longer to load, was difficult to clean, and could mistakenly be double-loaded, as happened aboard HMS *Thunderer* in 1879, causing terrible loss of life. But breech-loaders had dangers of their own, and only became reliable with the invention of the interrupted screw and the French-designed De Bange obturation system. The former allowed the breech to be opened and closed quickly, while the latter created an airtight seal, preventing dangerous propellent gasses escaping through the breech when firing.



Sealing the breech
Both the interrupted screw and the obturator pad are visible in the breech of this gun aboard HMS *Ganges*.

Interrupted screw
This features a screw thread that has sections cut away lengthwise. This allows the breech block to be fully inserted into the barrel before being quarter-turned shut.





De Bange obturation
The explosion of the propellent throws pressure against a mushroom-shaped spindle in the center of the breech block. This forces the spindle against a rubber obturator pad, which expands, sealing the breech.

SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

THE BATTLE OF MANILA BAY

Date May 1, 1898
Location Off Cavite, Philippines
Result American victory

COMBATANTS

UNITED STATES

SPAIN

COMMANDERS

George Dewey

Patricio Montojo y Pasaron

FORCES

Ships: 6 warships, 3 support vessels

Ships: 7 warships

LOSSES

Men: 9 minor casualties
Ships: none

Men: 381 men killed or wounded
Ships: 7 ships lost

THE BATTLE OF MANILA BAY

On April 27, 1898, Commodore George Dewey, commanding the US Asiatic Squadron anchored in Mirs Bay, China, received a cable from Navy Secretary John D Long: "War has commenced between the United States and Spain. Proceed at once to Philippine islands." Dewey had been expecting this order, but his preparations had been hampered by logistical problems. The nearest US base was in California, and his cruisers had only 60 percent of their optimum ammunition supply—even less than the standard peacetime allotment. Dewey's mission was to attack Spain's fleet in the Philippines, which, it was correctly assumed, would stay inshore, depending on land batteries, for defence against the better-armored, heavier-gunned American ships. Spanish admiral Patricio Montojo originally planned to anchor in Subic Bay, north of Manila, but as shore batteries had negligently not been mounted there, he instead awaited the Americans in Manila Bay. Humane and defeatist, Montojo chose not to fight in front of Manila, where a battle would have caused many civilian casualties. Instead, he anchored off Cavite Naval Yard, in shallow water so that his sailors would have a better chance of survival when their ships sank. Defeating the Americans was not an objective; for Montojo the fight was for the honor of the Spanish Empire.

On the night of April 30, on board the protected cruiser *Olympia*, Commodore Dewey led his squadron into Boca Grande channel, steaming in column with all but stern lights extinguished. Tension was high, for there had been reports that the channel was mined and defended by shore batteries. Their presence was revealed when a support vessel's smokestack flared with fire, but this brought only a brief exchange with guns on El Fraile island. By 1:00 a.m. Dewey's squadron was safely inside Manila Bay.

The battle between the two ill-matched naval squadrons began after dawn. After finding only merchant ships at Manila, Dewey led his cruisers toward Cavite in line ahead, a leadsman calling the depth at *Olympia*'s bow.

> "THE STORM OF SHOT AND SHELL LAUNCHED AGAINST THE SPANIARD WAS DESTRUCTIVE BEYOND ALL DESCRIPTION."
>
> **J.L. STICKNEY**, LIEUTENANT ABOARD *OLYMPIA*, IN A NEWSPAPER ARTICLE, 1898

Flagship Olympia
The protected cruiser USS *Olympia*, Commodore George Dewey's flagship, leads the US battle line in a turn under fire in Manila Bay. American gunnery hammered Spanish ships and shore batteries.

The Spanish battery on Sangley Point and Montojo's ships opened fire while still well out of range. Aware of his shortage of shells, Dewey waited half an hour before giving the laconic order to *Olympia*'s captain "You may fire when ready, Gridley." The American cruisers steamed back and forth on a course parallel to the static Spanish line, battering the enemy ships successively with port and starboard guns. By the fifth pass, just after 7:00 a.m., the Americans, peering through dense smoke, saw little sign that their guns were having any great effect. And indeed their fire was woefully inaccurate, 99 out of 100 shots missing their target, the increased range of contemporary guns having outstripped techniques for aiming. Nonetheless, Montojo's ships had taken appalling punishment.

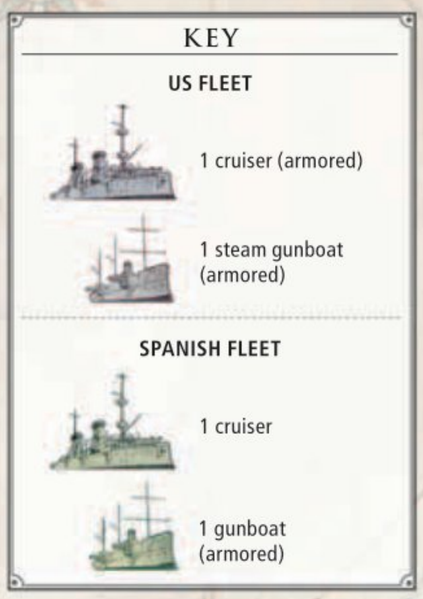
At 7:35 a.m. Dewey received the startling news that his 5in guns were running short of ammunition. He signaled for a withdrawal to the center of the bay. His surprised crew were told this was a halt for breakfast, and took the chance to rest and eat.

FINAL PHASE

During the break, the smoke cleared, and the dire condition of the Spanish ships was revealed; most had been fatally mauled. And to make matters worse, the Americans' ammunition turned out to be plentiful; only 15 rounds per 5in gun had been fired, while the report had suggested only 15 rounds per 5in gun remained. American casualties were also minimal; nine men had been injured, and one, Chief Engineer Randall, had died of heart failure when the fleet had entered the bay.

At 11:15 a.m., led by the cruiser *Baltimore*, Dewey's squadron returned to finish the job. With little resistance they pummeled the ships and shore batteries into surrender. In the afternoon, the Americans anchored off Manila and entertained Spanish sightseers gathered on the waterfront with the music of their bands.

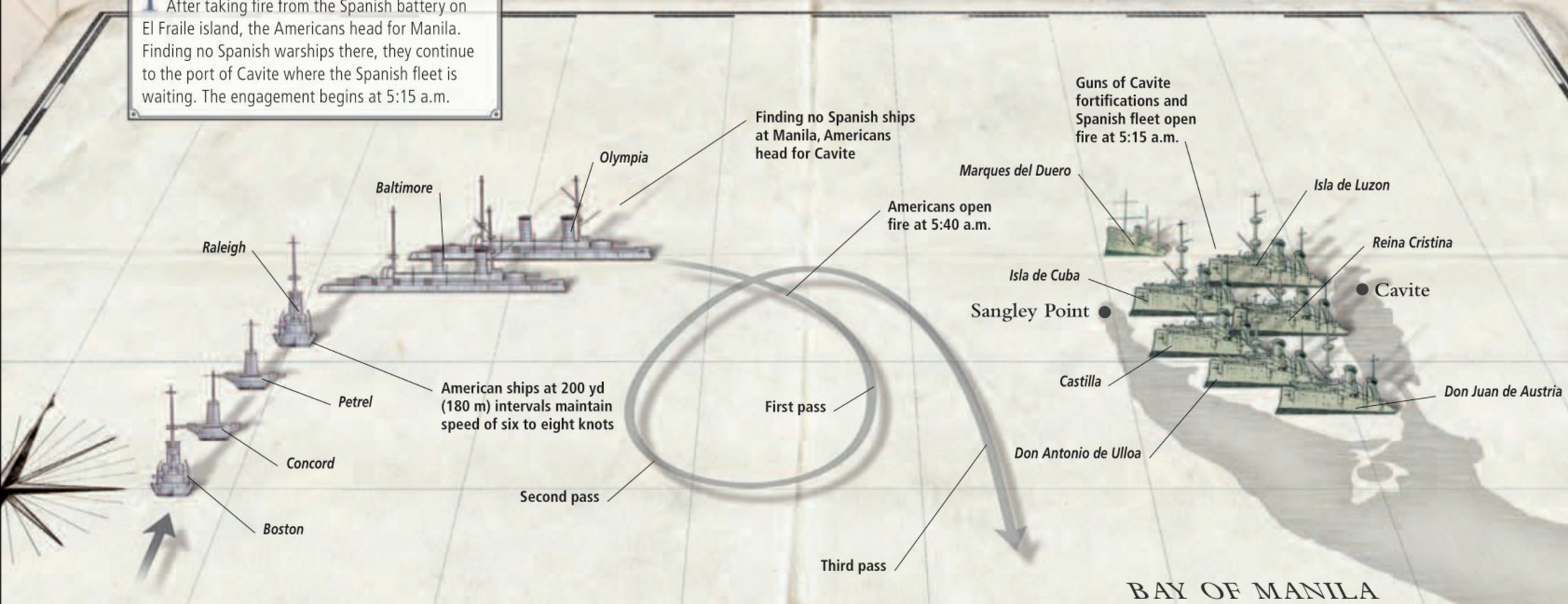
Anniversary medal
This commemmorative medal shows a port-bow view of Dewey's flagship *Olympia*. Battle-ready, she has flags flying from her mainmast.



America in the ascendant
The second American assault on the Spanish fleet, made after the "breakfast break," saw the end of Spanish imperial power in the Pacific. The battle also marked the birth of America as a global power.

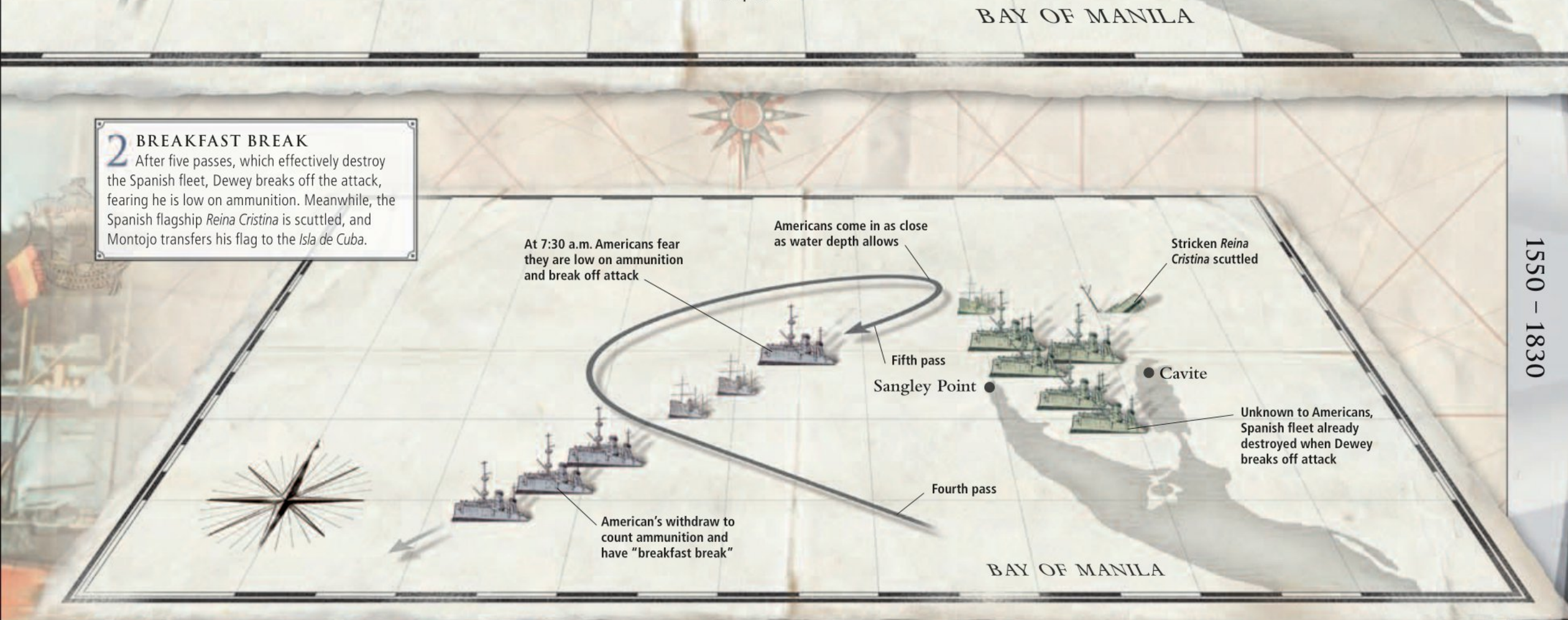
1 THE AMERICANS ARRIVE

After taking fire from the Spanish battery on El Fraile island, the Americans head for Manila. Finding no Spanish warships there, they continue to the port of Cavite where the Spanish fleet is waiting. The engagement begins at 5:15 a.m.



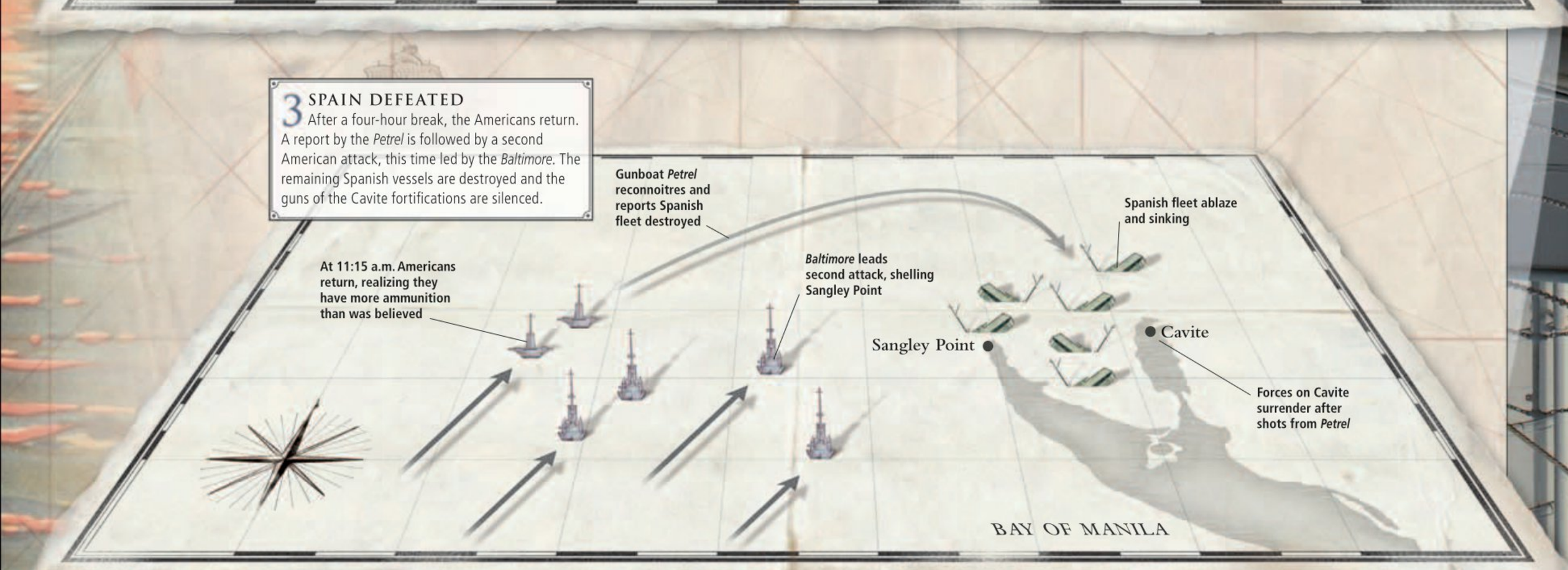
2 BREAKFAST BREAK

After five passes, which effectively destroy the Spanish fleet, Dewey breaks off the attack, fearing he is low on ammunition. Meanwhile, the Spanish flagship *Reina Cristina* is scuttled, and Montojo transfers his flag to the *Isla de Cuba*.



3 SPAIN DEFEATED

After a four-hour break, the Americans return. A report by the *Petrel* is followed by a second American attack, this time led by the *Baltimore*. The remaining Spanish vessels are destroyed and the guns of the Cavite fortifications are silenced.



RISE OF THE IMPERIAL JAPANESE NAVY

An archetypal hero in a modern setting
Japanese artists were quick to commemorate the navy's exploits in the Sino-Japanese War. Here, Lieutenant Commander Sakamoto of the *Akagi*, a gunboat that fought at Yalu River, gestures defiantly at the Chinese.

JAPAN'S IMPERIAL NAVY had an extraordinarily brief lifespan. Created in the late 1860s and first blooded in battle against China in 1894, it grew to be the world's third greatest naval force before abruptly ceasing to exist after the total defeat of Japan in 1945. The Imperial Navy was conceived as part of a wider project to modernize Japan and challenge the supremacy of the European powers and the United States. Its great victory over the Russian navy at Tsushima in 1905 was a stunning rebuff to prevailing assumptions of white racial superiority. The Imperial Navy embodied both Japan's impressive ability to adopt Western technology and its own warrior tradition, which gave Japanese forces their particular spirit of disciplined, sometimes fatalistic self-sacrifice.

BORN OF HUMILIATION

When Commodore Matthew Perry anchored four American steam warships off Edo—modern-day Tokyo—in July 1853, Japan had no national navy with which to repel this foreign intrusion. Its defenselessness was soon exploited, as the United States was joined by Britain, France, and the Netherlands in bullying a country for whose traditions they had no respect. In 1863 the British Royal Navy bombarded the Japanese city of Kagoshima, and the following year an international force shelled rebels opposed to foreign influence at Shimonoseki. These humiliations set in train a process of upheaval in Japan that resulted in the restoration of a strong central government under Emperor Meiji and the crushing of the samurai clans who opposed this. Japan then embarked on a breakneck rush to modernization in order to take on the West on its own terms.

During the civil strife surrounding the Meiji Restoration, an ad-hoc Imperial Navy was created from assorted ships of samurai clans

Triumph of the new navy
The first serious test for the Imperial Japanese Navy came when it took on a Chinese fleet at the battle of Yalu River in 1894. The Japanese cruisers sank five enemy ships, without suffering the loss of a single vessel.

Officer's dirk
This ceremonial dagger combines aspects of Western and Japanese weapons. Dirks of this kind were worn by officers from the time of the Russo–Japanese War.

supporting the emperor. The foundations for a modern navy were laid after the establishment of a Navy Department in 1872, which set about creating Western-style naval dockyards, a naval academy, and an arsenal. At first Japan was totally dependent upon a transfer of technology and skills from the West. Britain's Royal Navy provided cadet training and British shipyards supplied most of Japan's early warships. The Japanese proved supremely good learners in naval as in other matters and the scope of their ambitions was soon apparent. In 1885 Japan took delivery of two steel cruisers that were the largest and most advanced vessels of their type in the world. By the 1890s Japanese shipyards had begun delivering home-built armored warships.

NAVAL POWER

The ethos of the new Imperial Japanese Navy was formed through a mix British influence—Japan's greatest admiral Togo Heihachiro consciously modeled himself upon Nelson—and of the samurai tradition of loyalty to the death. Japan was historically inclined to value its army far above its navy; only the Satsuma samurai clan had a naval tradition. But the defeat of China at sea in the Sino-Japanese war of 1894-95 raised the reputation of the Imperial Navy at home and abroad. Naval strength became the key to the acceptance of Japan as a major power on the world stage, in defiance of Western racial prejudice. The British, worried by the Royal Navy's inability to match combined French and Russian sea power in the Pacific, concluded a defensive alliance with Japan in January 1902. From Britain's point of view this was a practical solution to the problem of finding a Pacific naval ally. To the Japanese it was above all about achieving the right to respect as equals of the West.

Bolstered by the alliance with Britain, in 1904-05 Japan took on and beat the Russian Empire both on land and at sea—beginning the conflict with a surprise attack on Port Arthur without a declaration of war, an ominous prefigurement of Pearl Harbor in 1941. The Russo-Japanese War was a triumph for Japan and a proving ground for cutting-edge naval technology, at least on the Japanese side. The war showed the importance of wireless communications, possessed by the Japanese but not by the Russians. It showed the frightful potential of mines, which sunk battleships on both sides, and the possible uses of torpedo-firing destroyers. Above all, it showed the devastating effect of the latest naval guns with advanced fire control, delivering concentrated fire at long range with explosive shells.

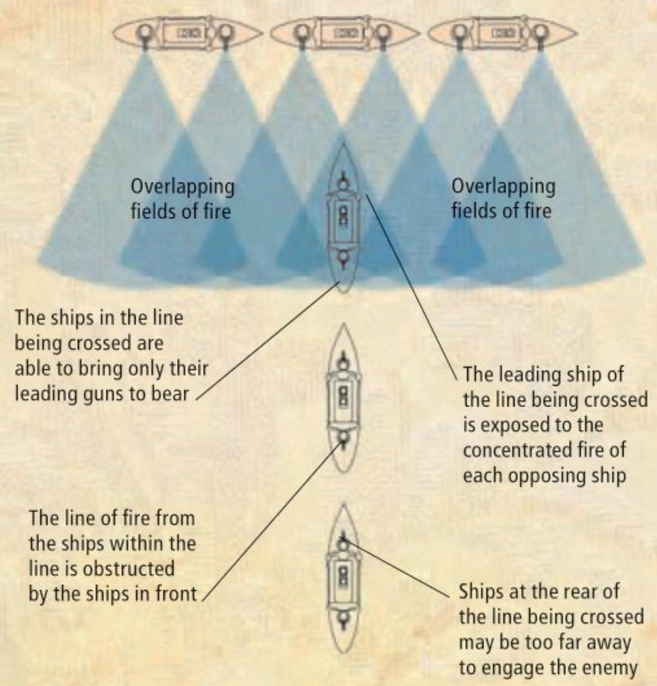
The period of peace in Japan after 1905 saw cutbacks in naval spending, but even so the first Japanese-built dreadnought was launched in 1910 and bigger and better warships followed. The startling reversal of Japan's naval weakness of only half a century before was illustrated in World War I, when Japan was able to help out its overstretched ally Britain by sending destroyers to carry out anti-submarine duties in the Mediterranean. By then, however, potential conflicts of interest with Britain and the United States in the Pacific were already brewing.

WARSHIP TACTICS

CROSSING THE T

CONCENTRATING FIRE

The naval battles of the 1904-05 Russo-Japanese War demonstrated the new naval tactics of fleet encounters between steam-powered warships with their guns mounted in rotating turrets. As in the age of sail, ships entered battle in line astern and they might steam parallel to each other exchanging salvoes. However, the fleet with the faster warships could potentially maneuver to cross in front of the enemy line, bringing to bear enfilading fire (directed along the enemy line) from all the guns of its line simultaneously, while the enemy could only reply with its forward guns. The range of effective fire at this period was over 3 miles (5 km). The tactic, known in English as "crossing the T" and in Japanese as *tei sempo*, was a textbook ideal aspired to by naval commanders the world over, but it was rarely put into practice with complete success.



JAPANESE NAVAL MIGHT

THE JAPANESE IMPERIAL NAVY started its life as an ad-hoc force of mostly wooden steam warships assembled to fight the civil conflict known as the Boshin War, in which Emperor Meiji triumphed over Tokugawa loyalists in 1868-69. Over the next two decades Japan founded a modern navy complete with organizational structures copied from the British and the latest styles of warship from European shipyards. The Chinese had also been modernizing their navy and, although European observers were sceptical about the ability of either force, they were inclined to see China as the stronger naval power. In July 1894 a small-scale naval clash at Asan brought China and Japan to open war—as well as causing a diplomatic row with Britain over the Japanese sinking of a British-crewed ship carrying Chinese troops. The subsequent Japanese naval victories at the Yalu River and Weihaiwei revealed the gulf between an Asian power that was successfully modernizing and one that was not. At the end of the war Russia refused to allow Japan to take the Liaodung Peninsula and Port Arthur, which China had agreed to cede, sowing the seeds for the Russo-Japanese War of 1904-05.

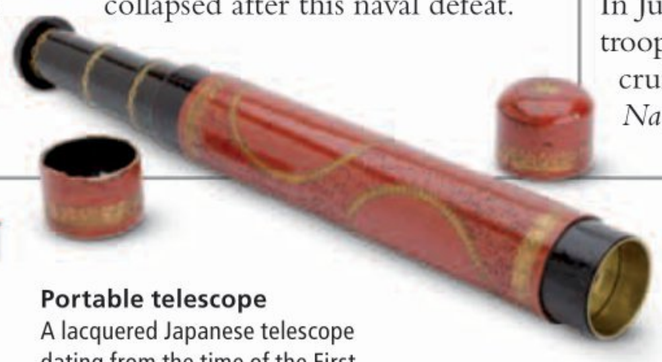
BOSHIN WAR

HAKODATE BAY

Date May 4–10, 1869
Forces Meiji: 8 ships; Tokugawa: 5 ships
Losses Meiji: 1 ship; Tokugawa: 2 ships destroyed, 3 captured

Location Hakodate Bay, Hokkaido, Japan

In 1868–69 forces loyal to the Tokugawa shogunate fought to resist the transfer of power to supporters of the Emperor Meiji. An Imperial Japanese Navy was hastily assembled, centered on the French-built ironclad *Kotetsu*. When Imperial forces attacked the last Tokugawa stronghold at Hakodate, the Tokugawa warships failed to prevent troops from landingand were worsted in a series of actions. The Tokugawa schooner *Banryu* succeded in sinking the Imperial ship *Choyo*, but later herself sank. Their steamer *Kaiten* was also disabled. The Tokugawa rebellion collapsed after this naval defeat.



Portable telescope
A lacquered Japanese telescope dating from the time of the First Sino-Japanese War.

FIRST SINO-JAPANESE WAR

YALU RIVER

Date September 17, 1894
Forces Japanese: 10 protected cruisers, 2 other ships; Chinese: 2 battleships, 10 cruisers, 2 other ships
Losses Japanese: none; Chinese: 5 ships

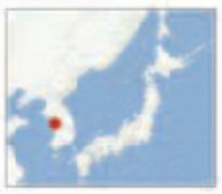
Location Off mouth of Yalu River, Yellow Sea

The first major battle fought by the Imperial Japanese Navy occurred when Admiral Sukeyuki Ito led a fleet on a sweep through Korea Bay, hoping to interrupt Chinese troop landings at the Yalu River, which marks the border between Korea and China. The troop landings were being covered by the Chinese Beiyang Fleet under Admiral Ting Ju ch'ang. The two fleets sighted each other at 11:40 a.m. on the morning of September 17, 1894. They were of roughly equal strength. The Chinese had the most powerful vessels present, two German-built armored turret ships *Ting Yuen* and *Chen Yuen*, which carried 12-in Krupp guns. But the Japanese cruisers were on average larger and faster than their Chinese opposite numbers. The two fleets steamed toward one another through the morning, the Japanese in line-ahead formation and the Chinese in two lines abreast.

Japanese naval firepower
Exotically attired Chinese sailors come under fire from Japanese warships in this fanciful French print showing the Japanese victory at Yalu River.

FIRST SINO-JAPANESE WAR

ASAN



Date July 25, 1894
Forces Japanese: 3 cruisers; Chinese: 1 cruiser, 2 gunboats
Losses Japanese: none; Chinese: 1 gunboat and 1 transport sunk, 1 gunboat captured

Location Off Asan, Korea

In July 1894 Japan and China both had troops in Korea. The Japanese protected cruisers *Yoshino*, *Akitsushima*, and *Naniwa* were blockading Chinese forces at Asan, south of Seoul. At 7:00 a.m. on July 25 the Chinese cruiser *Kwang-yi* and the gunboat *Tsi-yuen* steamed out of Asan Bay toward the Japanese ships. The Japanese opened fire: *Kwang-yi* was damaged and forced back into the bay; the gunboat ran onto rocks and exploded. *Kowshing*, a Chinese troop transport flying the British flag, arrived, accompanied by a gunboat. The gunboat surrendered, but the Chinese soldiers refused to allow *Kowshing*'s British captain to follow suit. The cruiser *Naniwa* sank the troop transport with heavy loss of life.

JAPANESE TRIUMPH

The battle that followed was confused and brutal. The Japanese steamed down both sides of the Chinese formation, pumping shells into the enemy ships. The Chinese armored cruiser *Ting Yuen* rolled over and sank; several other Chinese ships were ravaged by fire, apparently rendered vulnerable by decorative woodwork and layers of flammable paint. Chinese gunnery proved inferior, as did the quality of their munitions, although they had their successes—Admiral Ito's flagship *Matsushima*, for example, was damaged by an explosion when a shell ignited ammunition on board. In five hours' fighting, some ships were hit several hundred times. With five ships sunk, by nightfall the Chinese lay at the mercy of their enemies. But, exhausted and running out of ammunition, Admiral Ito withdrew his fleet short of total victory. The Chinese suffered some 850 men killed and had 500 wounded; Japanese losses numbered 90 killed, about 200 wounded, and not a single Japanese ship was destroyed.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

TORPEDOES

The torpedo began life as a static mine. In the second half of the 19th century navies were seeking methods of moving a mine to strike a ship's hull. This led to the spar torpedo, a mine on a long pole projecting from the front of an attack craft, and the Brennan torpedo, a mine controlled by wires from shore. The first effective self-propelled torpedo was invented in the 1860s by Robert Whitehead, a British engineer working on a commission for the Austrian navy. The Whitehead torpedo had a propeller driven by compressed air and used a pressure gauge attached to horizontal rudders to keep a constant depth. Self-propelled torpedoes were unreliable for many decades—most of those fired in the Russo-Japanese war of 1904–05, for example, failed for one reason or another—but their potential was quickly recognized, leading to the development of purpose-built torpedo boats and of torpedo-boat destroyers to counter them.

Whitehead torpedo
The first effective self-propelled torpedo, the Whitehead had a range of over 980 ft (300 m).

Fierce sea battle at Weihaiwei
A heroic sword-wielding officer of the Imperial Japanese Navy spurs forward his men as they fire on a Chinese warship at Weihaiwei.

CREW PROFILE

JAPANESE IMPERIAL WARSHIP

1870s TO EARLY 1900s

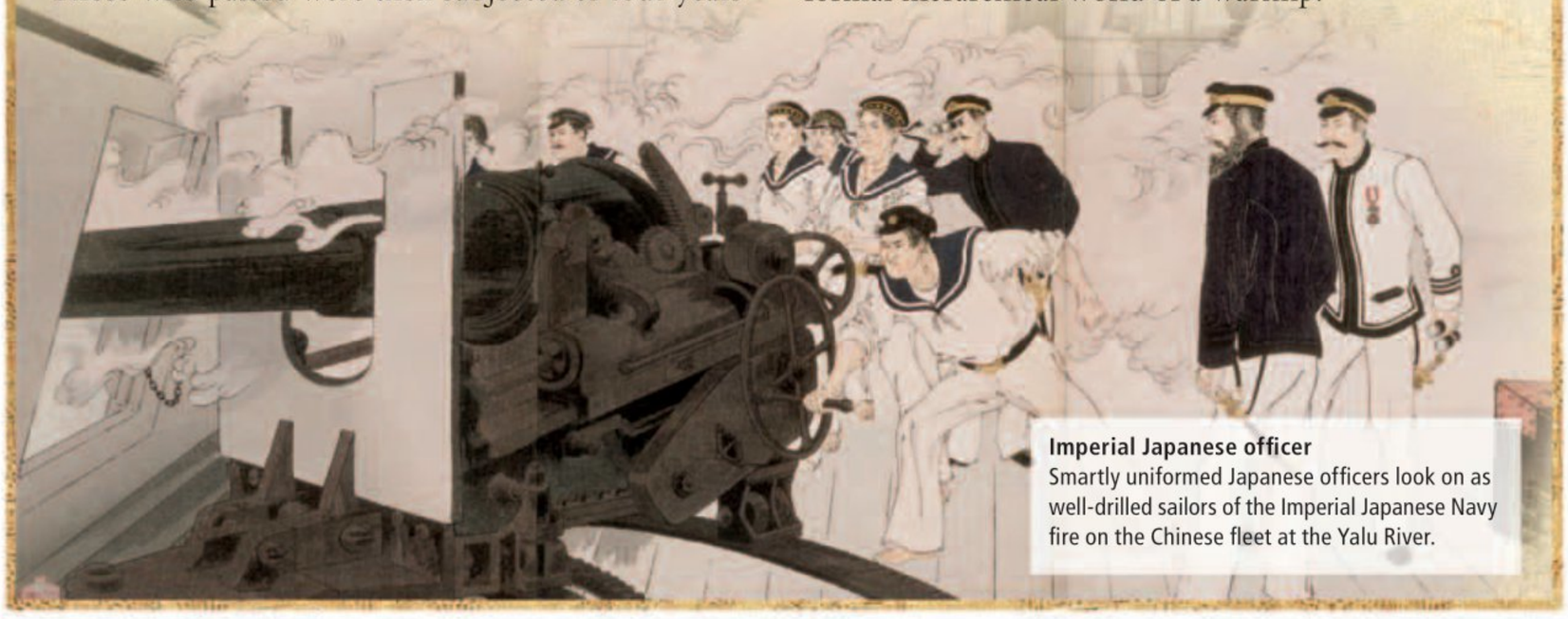
WHEN THE JAPANESE SET OUT to create the Imperial Navy almost from scratch in the 1870s, they received most of their training and ships from Britain. The result was a service in most ways similar to Western navies of the time. All ranks were uniformed and formal discipline such as saluting of officers was strictly enforced. The navy was in the forefront of the headlong modernization of Japan, well ahead of most of civil society, so it was on board ship that many Japanese recruits first got to grips with technologies such as steam engines and electricity. Discipline was often enforced with slaps or punches, but this was apparently acceptable to the average Japanese sailor, brought up in an ordered and disciplined society.

OFFICER CLASS

Commissioned officers were more numerous in the steam era than in the age of sail, and more diverse. Many were given responsibility for specialist areas, such as gunnery, engines, or torpedoes. The first wave of Japanese officers was mostly recruited from the Satsuma samurai clan, and the founding ethos of the Imperial Navy mingled the samurai tradition with attitudes and practices learned from Britain's Royal Navy. The Etajima Naval Academy soon became the route into the Japanese naval officer corps. Entrants were picked by rigorous nationwide examinations, with many more applicants than places available. Those who passed were then subjected to four years intensive training, with an emphasis on physical fitness as well as academic education. Graduates from Etajima entered the navy as a self-conscious elite.

DISCIPLINE AND AUSTERITY

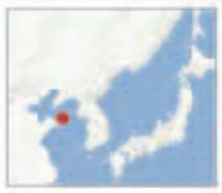
Despite holding a high sense of status and personal honor, Japanese officers tended to be frugal and spartan, sleeping on rush mats on the deck. When the men had to clean decks barefoot in freezing weather, Admiral Togo would reportedly come on deck barefoot himself. Obedience and loyalty were highly valued qualities society and transferred well to the formal hierarchical world of a warship.



Imperial Japanese officer
Smartly uniformed Japanese officers look on as well-drilled sailors of the Imperial Japanese Navy fire on the Chinese fleet at the Yalu River.

FIRST SINO-JAPANESE WAR

WEIHAIWEI



Location Shantung Peninsula, China

Date January 30–February 12,1895
Forces Japanese: 41 vessels including 16 torpedo boats; Chinese: 2 battleships, 5 cruisers, 13 torpedo boats
Losses Japanese: none; Chinese: 1 battleship, 2 cruisers, 6 torpedo boats sunk, all others captured

After the punishing battle at the Yalu River, Chinese admiral Ting Ju ch'ang withdrew his fleet to the fortified harbor at Weihaiwei. Here his turret ships, cruisers, and torpedo boats were protected by shore guns and a barrier of tethered mines and steel hawsers across the harbor mouth. The Japanese fleet arrived at the end of January 1895 to blockade the harbor while troops attacked Weihaiwei by land. The weather was appalling with prolonged blizzards and on several occasions sailors froze to death at their posts. The Japanese ships engaged in gun duels with the Chinese shore batteries and warships day and night, with no decisive results.

Seeing that they would have to enter the harbor, the Japanese carried out risky minesweeping operations and cut one of the steel hawsers. They then sent torpedo boats into the harbor several times at night, sinking the armored turret ship *Ting Yuen* and the cruisers *Ching Yuen* and *Lai Yuen*. In a desperate gesture, Admiral Ting sent all his torpedo boats out of the harbor in a daylight sortie that resulted in all of the boats being sunk or captured. By February 12 the Chinese had had enough of the extreme cold, continual bombardment, and terrifying night raids. Admiral Ting sent a surrender note to the Japanese admiral. Before the Japanese could take possession of the enemy fleet, the Chinese admiral committed suicide. Shortly after, China sought peace negotiations with Japan.

THE RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR

THE RUSSIAN AND JAPANESE EMPIRES went to war in 1904 over their rival ambitions in northern China and Korea. In the naval war, the Japanese were from the outset more aggressively led and better trained and motivated than their opponents. The Russians also suffered from the dispersal of their naval forces—the squadrons in Port Arthur and Vladivostok never succeeded in joining up, and when the Baltic fleet was sent on an epic voyage around the world to the Pacific in 1905, it was crushingly defeated at Tsushima. The victory for an Asiatic over a European power upset assumptions of white racial superiority. Japan gained control of Port Arthur and soon took over Korea. The Japanese were confirmed as valuable allies for Britain in the Pacific, while defeat plunged Russia into the 1905 revolution that the tsarist regime barely survived.

THE RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR 1904–1905

The main areas of operations during the Russo-Japanese War were the Korean and Liaodong peninsulas, southern Manchuria, and the seas around Japan and Korea. The Russians were particularly keen to control the warm-water Pacific port of Port Arthur—the other main Russian port on the Pacific, Vladivostok, was inaccessible during winter months.

KEY
- Japan
- Russia
- To Russia 1897, to Japan 1905
- Area leased to Japan 1895
- Japanese advance/ landing
- Route of Russian Baltic fleet 1905
- Japanese victory

THE BATTLE OF PORT ARTHUR

The Russian First Pacific Squadron in harbor at Port Arthur was a potential threat that Japan decided to eliminate at the outset of hostilities. Admiral Togo planned to launch a night attack that would enjoy total surprise since it would precede a declaration of war.

An attack squadron of 10 Japanese destroyers armed with Whitehead torpedoes reached Port Arthur shortly after midnight on February 8. Most of the Russian fleet was lit up, as was the town behind it. Confusion and terror followed as torpedoes exploded against the hulls of the American-built pre-dreadnought *Retvizan* and the protected cruiser *Pallada*. The battleship *Tsesarevich* was also hit. But the operation was less effective than Togo had hoped. Many torpedoes were caught in Russian torpedo nets and failed to explode. Once Russian searchlights and guns were manned the destroyers found it hard to press home further attacks. The action was broken off at around 2:00 a.m. No Russian ships had been sunk.

THE DAYLIGHT ACTION

The following morning, believing the Russian ships were more damaged than they were, Togo led his fleet toward Port Arthur to complete the destruction of the Russian fleet. He was to be disappointed. The Russians remained in harbor, drawing the Japanese within range of shore guns. A brisk exchange of long-range fire brought further damage to a number of Russian ships, but Togo's flagship *Mikasa* was also hit. After an hour the Japanese turned away.

The inconclusive result to the naval attack forced the Japanese to mount a prolonged siege of Port Arthur by both sea and land. However, the arrival of the vigorous Russian admiral Stepan Makarov to take over command in Port Arthur put fresh heart into the Russian fleet. Maintaining a blockade over succeeding months the Japanese lost a number of ships to mines. Stepan Makarov was also a victim of a mine, going down on board his flagship *Petropavlovsk* during a rare sortie outside Port Arthur on April 13.

Assault on Port Arthur
A line of Japanese battleships steams toward Port Arthur, the bombardment from the Russian shore defenses sending up plumes of water around them.

1848–1934
TOGO HEIHACHIRO
FLEET-ADMIRAL OF THE IMPERIAL JAPANESE NAVY

Born into the Satsuma samurai clan, as a boy Togo Heihachiro witnessed the bullying of Japan by foreign naval forces, a humiliation he never forgot. Enrolled in the fledgling Imperial Navy, he went to Britain for training in 1871 and brought back an enduring respect for the traditions of the Royal Navy. Togo first attracted attention as captain of the cruiser *Naniwa* in the action at Asan that opened the war with China in 1894. A calm and confident commander during the Russo-Japanese War, victories at the Yellow Sea and Tsushima made him one of the world's most respected admirals.

RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR

YELLOW SEA

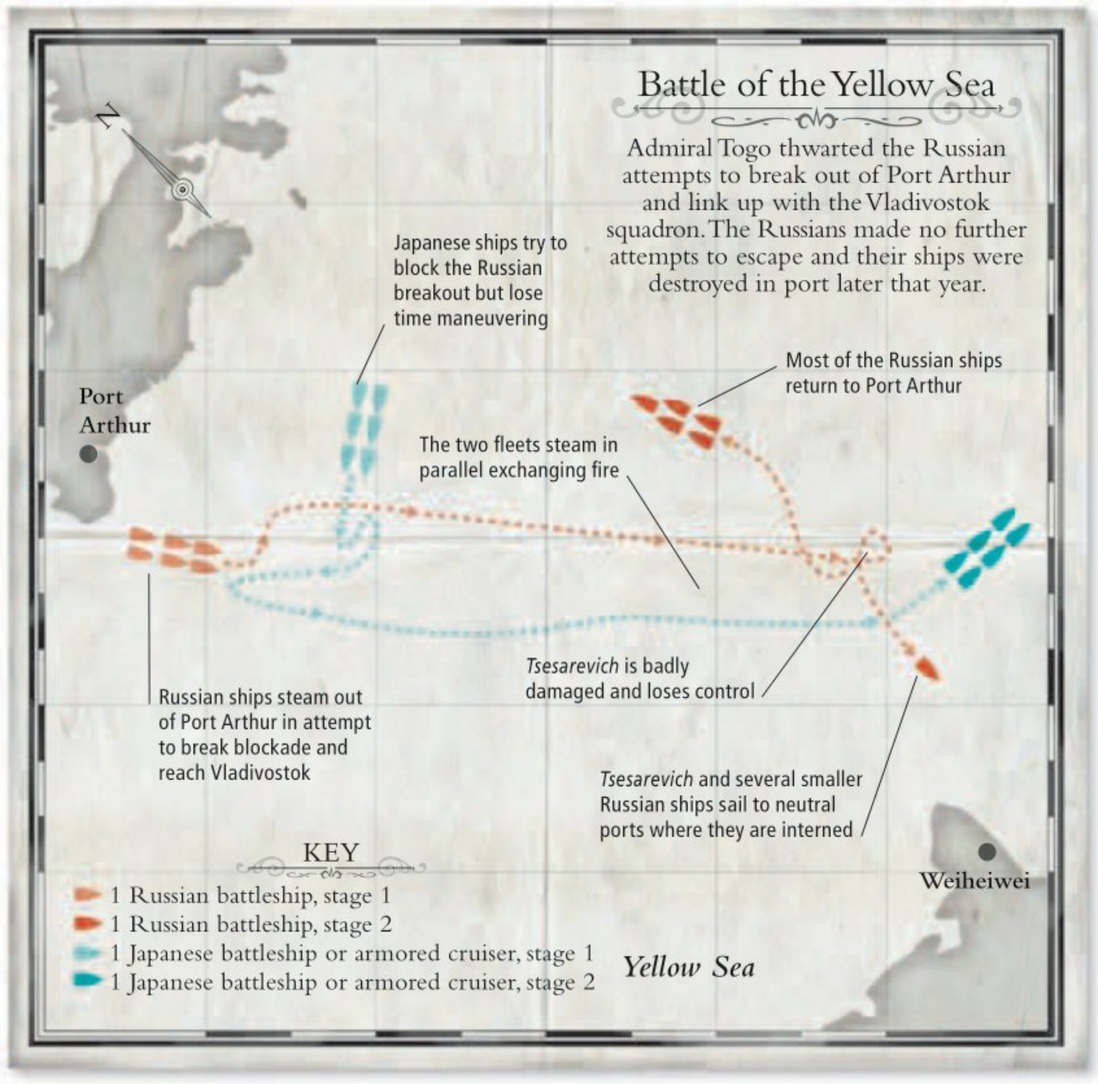
Location Off Shantung Peninsula, China

Date August 10, 1904
Forces Japanese: 4 battleships, 2 armored cruisers, 8 other cruisers, 18 destroyers, 30 torpedo boats; Russians: 6 battleships, 4 cruisers, 8 destroyers
Losses Japanese: none; Russians: 1 battleship, 2 cruisers, 4 destroyers interned in neutral ports

After being blockaded in harbor for six months, on August 10, 1904, the Russian First Pacific Squadron steamed out into the Yellow Sea. Its commander, Rear Admiral Vilgelm Karlovich Vitgeft, was obeying a personal order from Tsar Nicholas II to join the rest of the Russian Pacific fleet in Vladivostok. Vitgeft personally considered the breakout attempt doomed to failure.

Admiral Togo, commanding the Japanese blockade from the battleship *Mikasa*, prepared to engage the Russians as they came out, but surprisingly missed them. Executing maneuvers designed primarily to keep his own flagship in the van, he found himself pursuing the Russians from a good distance behind. Fortunately for Togo the Russian ships were slow and by 5:00 p.m. his four battleships and two armored cruisers were in position to engage the six Russian battleships. Steaming in line ahead on a parallel course, the ships bombarded one another ferociously. Eyewitnesses described the gigantic columns of water thrown up by the shells, the noise of explosions, clouds of foul smoke, and decks streaming with blood. *Mikasa* was hit repeatedly but it was Vitgeft's flagship *Tsesarevich* that suffered worst. The key moment in the battle occurred when two shells struck *Tsesarevich*'s bridge. Vitgeft and all his senior officers were killed. Out of control, the battleship was stuck in a turn to port that many other Russian ships blindly followed, looping pointlessly.

As night fell most of the Russian fleet headed back to Port Arthur. *Tsesarevich* and some other ships sought refuge in neutral ports, where they were interned. The First Pacific Squadron would play no further part in the war.



> "THE ATTACK MUST BE DELIVERED WITH THE GREATEST ENERGY POSSIBLE BECAUSE, GENTLEMEN ... ONLY HE WHO ACTS FEARLESSLY CAN HOPE FOR SUCCESS."
>
> **TOGO HEIHACHIRO**, ADDRESS BEFORE PORT ARTHUR, 1904

RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR

THE BATTLE OF PORT ARTHUR

Date February 8–9, 1904
Location Liaodong peninsula
Result Inconclusive

COMBATANTS

JAPAN | **RUSSIA**

COMMANDERS

Heihachiro Togo | **Oscar Stark**

FORCES

Ships: Japan: 6 battleships, 5 cruisers, 35 destroyers and torpedo boats
Ships: Russia: 7 battleships, 5 cruisers, various smaller vessels

LOSSES

Men: 132 casualties
Ships: none
Men: 150 casualties
Ships: none

RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR

THE JAPANESE SEA

Date August 14, 1904
Forces Japanese: 4 armored cruisers; 2 protected cruisers
Russians: 3 armored cruisers
Losses Japanese: none; Russians: 1 cruiser

Location Off Ulsan, Korea

Russian rear admiral Karl Jessen was sent out of Vladivostok with armored cruisers *Rossia*, *Gromoboi*, and *Rurik* to meet the First Pacific Squadron coming from Port Arthur. Jessen was unaware of the defeat at the Yellow Sea, but turned for home when the squadron failed to appear. Unfortunately he ran into a stronger force of Japanese cruisers under Vice Admiral Kamimura. *Rurik*, the rearmost Russian ship, came under heavy bombardment. Disabled and with most of her officers dead, the cruiser gallantly maintained defensive fire until scuttled by the few survivors. *Rossia* and *Gromoboi*, at Kamimura's mercy, were inexplicably allowed to escape.

WITNESS TO WAR

LIEUTENANT ANDREI PETROVICH STEER

SINKING OF THE RUSSIAN FLAGSHIP PETROPAVLOVSK OUTSIDE PORT ARTHUR

RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR

In quick succession, ***a series of perfectly deafening explosions****, and the big ship literally broken into several parts,* ***began to go down fast, head foremost****. We saw by degrees the propellers, still revolving, appear out of the water, then her bottom, painted bright green,* ***while positive sheets of flame ran along the upper deck*** *... she finally disappeared in a veritable geyser of steam and columns of water.*

THE BATTLE OF TSUSHIMA

In October 1904 five divisions of the Russian Baltic Fleet, renamed Second Pacific Squadron, set off on a journey of 18,000 nautical miles (30,000 km) to join the defense of Port Arthur against the Japanese. Commanded by Admiral Zinovi Rozhdestvenski, the squadron showed its inexperience by firing on British trawlers in the North Sea, taking them for Japanese torpedo boats. Slow and grueling, the long and difficult voyage took a heavy toll on the laboring ships' engines and on crew morale. Rozhdestvenski was joined by Admiral Nikolai Nebogatov with more Baltic warships, designated Third Pacific Squadron, to create a fleet of impressive size, but dubious quality.

Port Arthur had fallen by the time this Russian armada reached East Asia, so Vladivostok became its substitute goal. Short of coal, Rozhdestvenski chose the shortest route past Japan, through the Tsushima Strait. Admiral Heihachiro Togo, commanding the Japanese Combined Fleet, had anticipated this choice. But on the night of May 26-27, in fog and mist, the Russians might have slipped past had not the Japanese auxiliary cruiser *Shinano Maru* spotted a Russian hospital ship with its navigation lights lit. On board his flagship *Mikasa* in Chinae Bay, Admiral Togo was immediately informed by radio—then still a novel technology. Togo in turn informed his government: "The Russian fleet has been sighted. I will attack it and annihilate it." The admiral's confidence, shared by his officers and men, contrasted markedly with the state of mind of the Russians after their arduous journey. Togo's only fear was that the enemy fleet might escape in the mist and gloom. Once visual contact was made in the early afternoon, the Russians were doomed.

RELENTLESS PURSUIT

Togo was a great admirer of Nelson and, recognizing this as his Trafalgar, announced the start of the battle by hoisting the "Z" flag, conveying the signal: "The Empire's fate depends on the outcome of this battle, let every man do his utmost duty." Where the Russians had difficulty holding a line of battle in a chaos of confused orders and poor seamanship, the Japanese maneuvered with precision and daring, exploiting to the full their speed advantage over the Russian ships. In the gunnery duel between battleships the Japanese proved far superior, due to better training and range-finding technology. Their high-explosive shells devastated the superstructure of Russian ships, scattering deadly steel splinters, starting fires, and ripping open armor. A Russian officer described how "iron ladders were crumpled into rings and guns hurled from their mountings."

By nightfall four Russian battleships had been sunk, with appalling loss of life. Rozhdestvenski was wounded by a shell fragment in the skull, leaving the inexperienced Nebogatov in command. Through the night attacks by Japanese destroyers and torpedo boats took a further toll, and morning found scattered remnants of the Russian fleet struggling for survival. At 10:30 a.m. Nebogatov abjectly surrendered the ships under his immediate command. Other Russian warships were hunted down through the day. Only three made it through to Vladivostok.

The battle forced Russia to accept defeat in the war with Japan and led to the 1905 revolutionary uprising against the tsarist regime.

RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR

BATTLE OF TSUSHIMA

Date	May 27–28, 1905
Location	Tsushima Strait, between Japan and Korea
Result	Japanese victory

COMBATANTS

JAPAN	RUSSIA

COMMANDERS

Heihachiro Togo	**Zinovi Rozhdestvenski** **Nikolai Nebogatov**

FORCES

Ships: 4 battleships, 24 cruisers, 20 destroyers, 16 torpedo boats	**Ships:** 8 battleships, 8 cruisers, 3 coastal monitors, 9 destroyers

LOSSES

Men: 117 **Ships**: 3 torpedo boats sunk	**Men:** 4,380 killed, 5,917 captured **Ships:** 17 ships sunk, 5 captured

Prizes of war
Captured Russian warships, with the Japanese Rising Sun flying proudly over the Russian naval ensign, are towed back to Japan after the crushing Russian defeat at Tsushima.

KEY

JAPANESE FLEET

2 Japanese battleships

2 Japanese armored cruisers

RUSSIAN FLEET

2 Russian battleships

2 Russian armored cruisers

> IT IS ABSURD TO THINK OF STEAMING VICTORIOUSLY INTO VLADIVOSTOK, OR OF GETTING COMMAND OF THE SEA! THE ONLY POSSIBLE CHANCE IS A DASH THROUGH ... AFTER TWO, THREE, OR AT THE MOST FOUR SALLIES, WE SHALL HAVE BURNED ALL OUR SUPPLIES OF COAL ...
>
> **FLAG LIEUTENANT FILIPPOVSKY** ABOARD *KNYAZ SUVOROV*, ON THE RUSSIAN FLEET'S PROSPECTS ON REACHING THE FAR EAST

The Japanese ships use their superior speed to cross the T of the Russian line and head off their escape

Togo brings his ships onto a parallel course with the Russians. The fire is heavy on both sides, but the Japanese fire proves more effective

The Russian fleet turns north in an attempt to escape toward Vladivostok

Admiral Rozhdestvenski finds it difficult to organize the disordered Russian ships into a line of battle against the Japanese

Togo orders his ships to turn in sequence. Despite being slower than a parallel turn and placing his ships in greater danger, the turn in sequence keeps his flagship *Mikasa* and his other battleships at the front of the Japanese line

TSUSHIMA STRAIT

1 FIRST ENGAGEMENT
After sighting the Russian fleet, Admiral Togo performs a risky but successful turn in sequence to bring his fleet parallel with the enemy and engage them using with superior Japanese gunnery. Togo then uses his fleet's speed and organization to keep the Russian ships from escaping to Vladivostok.

The Japanese chase the disordered Russian fleet throughout the night

TSUSHIMA STRAIT

2 JAPANESE PURSUIT
Heavy Japanese fire throws the Russian fleet into confusion. Japanese organization and daring enable them to head off Russian attempts to escape. The Japanese pursuit continues through the night, destroying almost the entire Russian fleet.

Togo performs a second parallel turn, bringing his flagship the *Mikasa* back to the front of his line

The Russians turn to port. Togo responds with a parallel turn to avoid torpedoes and stay ahead of the Russians

The Russian battleship *Oslyabya* is sunk and Admiral Rozhdestvenski's flagship *Knyaz Suvorov* loses control. Rozhdestvenski is badly injured

Togo's Second Division breaks away to keep the Russians from escaping south

JAPANESE PRE-DREADNOUGHT BATTLESHIP

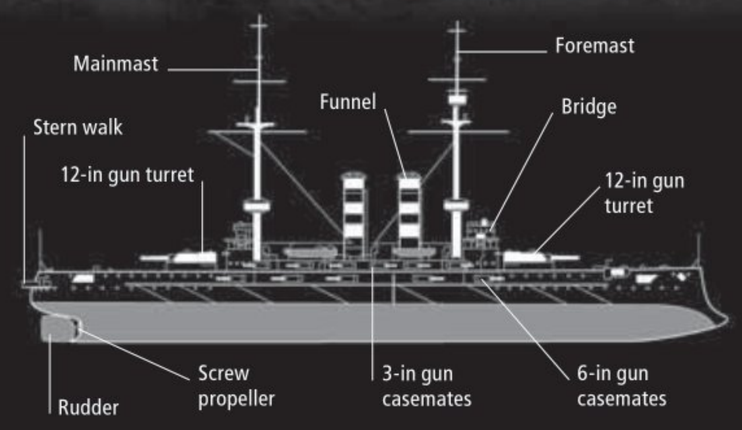
HIJMS MIKASA

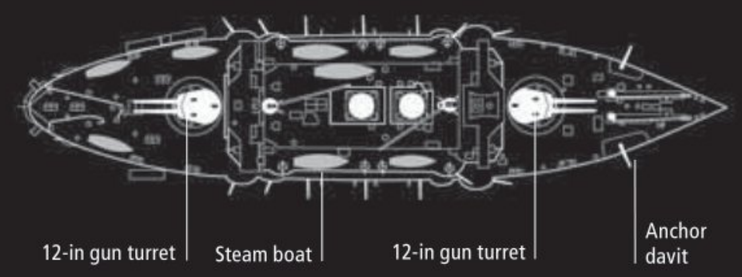
THE JAPANESE BATTLESHIP MIKASA was Admiral Togo's flagship at the decisive battle of Tsushima in 1905. She has survived to be preserved as a museum ship at Yokosuka in Japan, the only pre-dreadnought battleship still in existence. When delivered by English shipbuilders Vickers in 1902, *Mikasa* was the most advanced warship in the world.

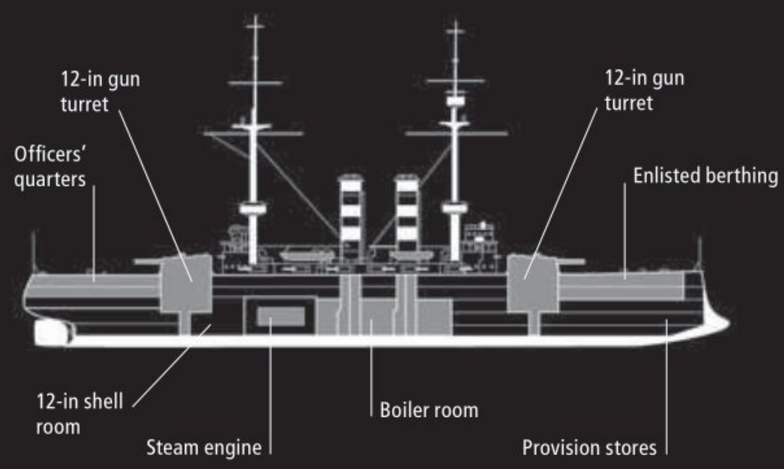
MIKASA'S MAIN ARMAMENT consisted of four impressive 12-in guns mounted in pairs in centerline turrets. There were also 14 smaller 6-in guns arranged in broadside and 20 Quick Firing (QF) 3-in guns distributed around the ship, intended for defense against torpedo boats. The battleship also had four submerged torpedo tubes. She was heavily armored with Krupp steel plates, especially in a belt around the hull above the waterline and around the gun turrets. *Mikasa* proved capable of taking a lot of punishment. Some 30 hits from Russian guns at Tsushima failed to put her out of action. Ironically she was sunk in harbor shortly after the war with Russia ended, through an accidental explosion in a magazine. Although refloated, *Mikasa* was soon rendered obsolete as a new generation of dreadnought battleships took center stage. She was decommissioned in 1923.

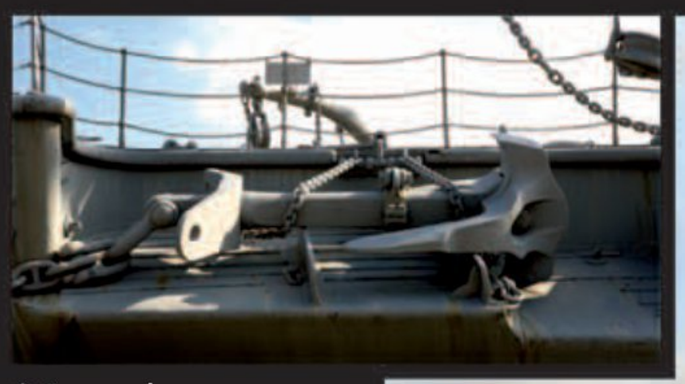
Victor of Tsushima
Admiral Togo's flagship *Mikasa* pictured around 1905, the year of the Japanese victory against the Russian fleet at Tsushima. The smoke from her powerful coal-powered engines billows through the ship's funnels.

Pre-dreadnought leviathan
Constructed for the Imperial Japanese Navy at Vickers shipyard in Britain and displacing more than 15,000 tons, *Mikasa* comfortably matched the size and firepower of the Royal Navy's own leading battleships.





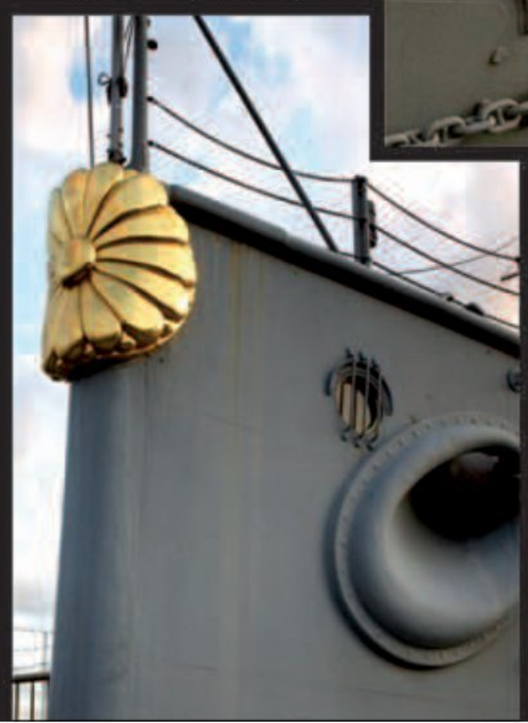




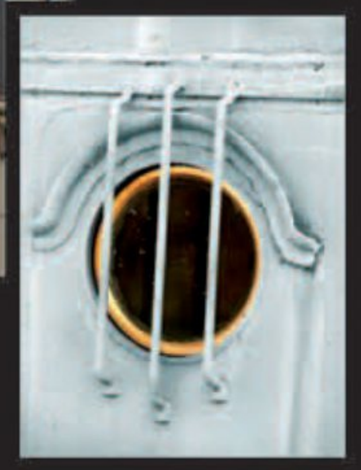
Fore anchor
The anchor rests on an indented area of the foredeck with a davit above to lift and drop it overboard. A chain runs through a hole in the bows to a capstan on the deck.

« 12-in gun turret
Mikasa's four main 12-in guns are grouped in pairs in two armored turrets, fore and aft, and could fire around three shells every two minutes. The power and range of *Mikasa*'s modern guns were a crucial factor at the battle of Tsushima.

Imperial crest
The gold chrysanthemum on the *Mikasa*'s bow, the emblem used on all Imperial battleships, was the seal of the emperor of Japan.



> "JAPAN BLOSSOMED FORTH LIKE HER OWN CHRYSANTHEMUM ... HER BATTLESHIPS ARE PERHAPS THE FINEST IN THE WORLD."
>
> **NAVY AND ARMY ILLUSTRATED**, BRITISH MAGAZINE, 1902



Porthole
Small portholes run along the *Mikasa*'s hull, allowing a little natural light through the thick steel of the Krupp armor plating into the decks below.

« Mainmast
Mikasa's fore- and aft- masts were used primarily as a mounting point for signals, lookouts, and radio apparatus. Fortified "fighting tops" on the masts were armed with light guns for raking fire.

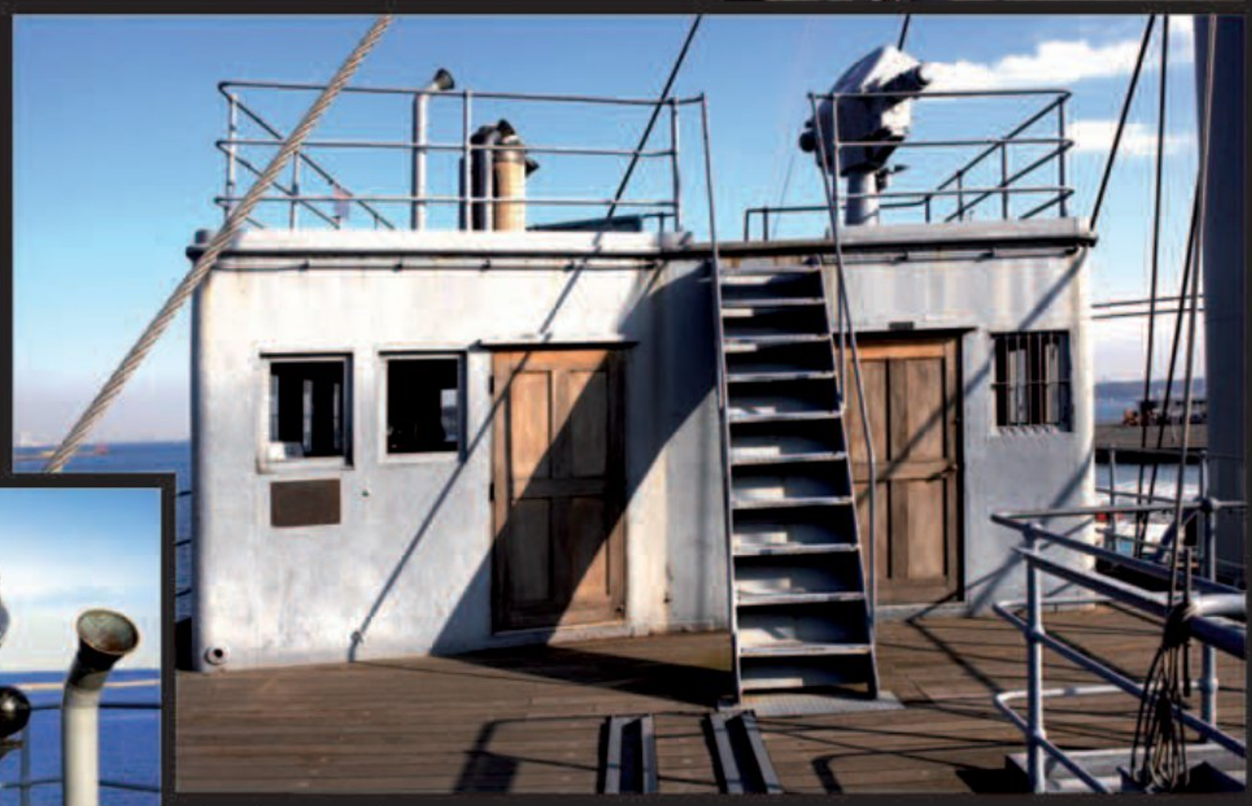
» Broadside guns
Mikasa's armored sides bristle with two rows of 3-in and 6-in broadside guns for use against smaller ships or to target the lightly armored superstructure of larger warships.

« Funnels and ventilators
The smoke produced by *Mikasa*'s 25 coal-fired Belleville boilers exited the ship through two large funnels in the center of the deck. Several smaller ventilation shafts brought fresh air below deck.

» Stern walkway
The admiral's cabin enjoyed direct access onto a narrow walkway around the stern end of the ship. The Japanese characters on the metal plate spell out the name of the battleship *Mikasa*.

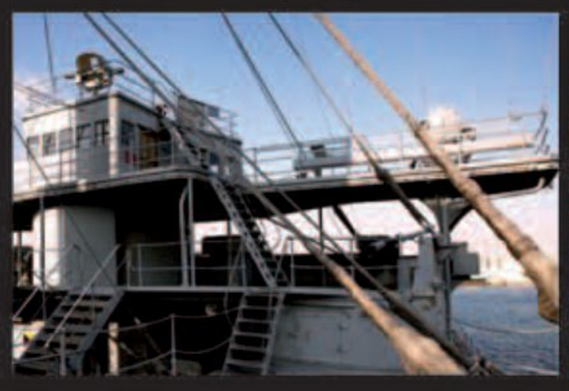
» Rangefinder
A Barr & Stroud FA3 rangefinder is mounted on the deck of the topgallant forecastle, behind the compass. A number of Russian ships at Tsushima were fitted with similar models, but better training meant the Japanese rangefinding proved far superior during battle.

« Electric searchlight
A pair of long "wings" of decking extend on either side of the forecastle, down which the two large 35 in (90 cm) searchlights can be rolled. Powerful searchlights were essential at night and in fog to locate and target enemy ships and to prevent collisions.



» Togo's command post
Admiral Togo commanded the fleet at Tsushima standing on the deck of the topgallant forecastle in front of this compass. Speaking tubes allowed him to send orders to the bridge below.

» Forecastle
Underneath the foremast, looking toward the prow of the ship, are the main navigation and command areas: the pilothouse and bridge, the topgallant forecastle on the deck above, and two long "wings" on either side.

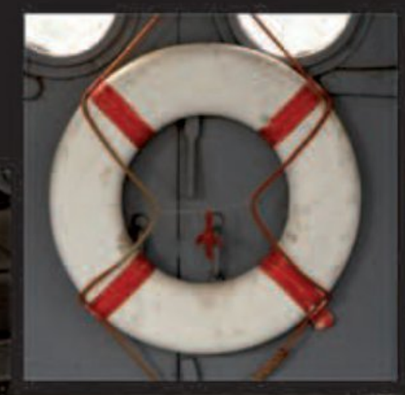


« Bridge and chart room
This portside view of the forecastle shows the door to the pilot-house on the left and the chart room on the right. Steps lead up the topgallant forecastle with the compass and rangefinder. On the deck in front of the steps, the rails allowing the searchlights to be moved up and down the "wings" are just visible.

BELOW DECKS

THE ACCOMMODATIONS FOR *Mikasa*'s 840 officers and men was quite austere. Even the admiral's living space was simple, if comfortable. The other ranks slept in hammocks among the guns, as in Nelson's day. The ship could carry 2,000 tons of coal to fuel the triple expansion steam engines, which gave a maximum speed of 18 knots. Working conditions in the depths of the ship, amid the heat and noise of the engine rooms, were harsh. In battle men were acutely aware that a ship of this kind could be an iron coffin, sinking in minutes if badly holed. The upper deck where Admiral Togo stood in battle was protected only by sandbags from enemy fire. The ship was equipped with the newly invented wireless (radio) giving the Japanese fleet an advantage over the Russians in communications.

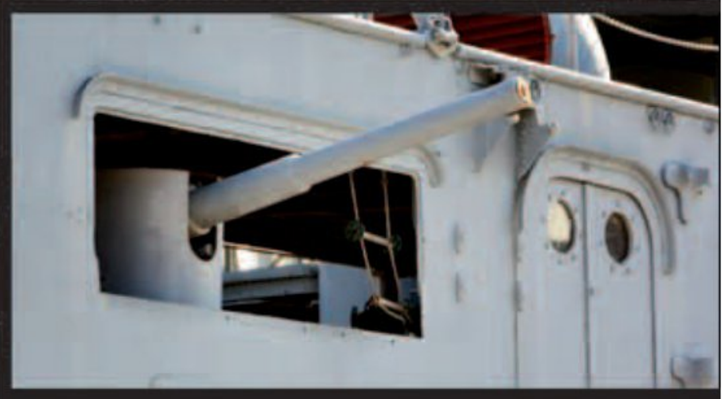
» Life ring
Mikasa carried several cork life rings in case of man overboard, as well as 14 lifeboats and launches of various sizes.



» 3-in gun casemate
Eight 3-in Quick Firing (QF) guns are mounted along the sides of the ship in armored casemates. Too light to penetrate the armor of opposing battleships, the guns provided a defense against fast torpedo boats and destroyers.

» Ship's wheel
The polished wood and brass wheel from *Mikasa*'s pilothouse. A second wheel was located in an armored conning tower for the helmsman to use during battle.

» Pilothouse
The ship was steered from the pilothouse using the wheel and engine order telegraphs. A compass is mounted inside a large brass binnacle case.

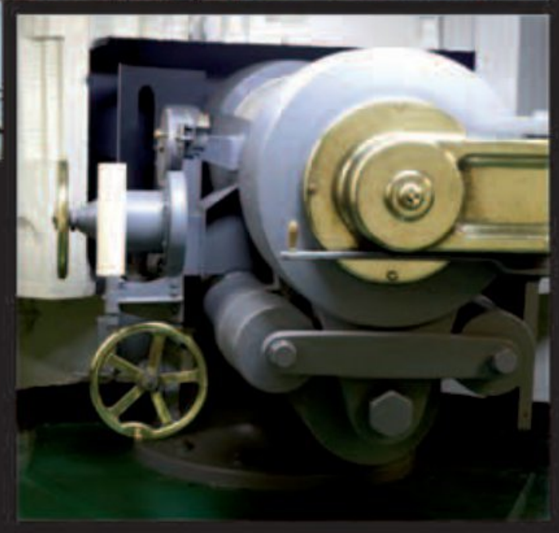


« » Entrance to 3-in casemate
After the battle of Tsushima, the Russian Rear Admiral Nikolai Nebogatov entered the *Mikasa* through this door in the armored casemate to present his sword and the surrender of his five remaining ships to Admiral Togo.

» Morse key
Messages were tapped in using this Morse key and transmitted using *Mikasa*'s new wireless telegraphy equipment —a novel technology at the time *Mikasa* was launched in 1900.

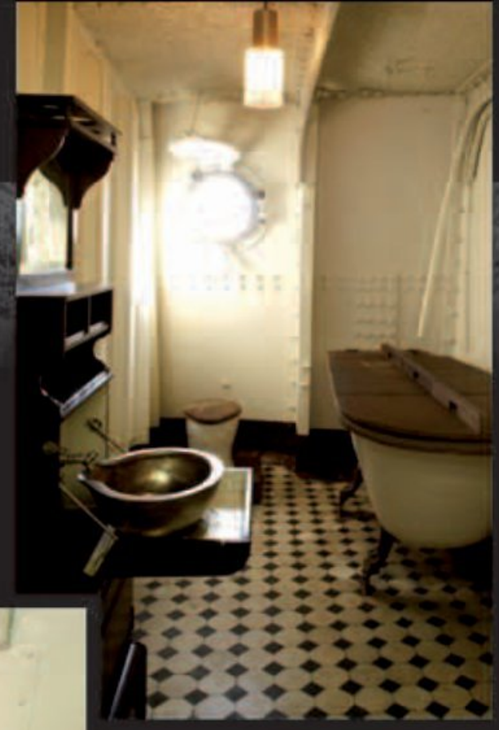
» 6-in broadside gun
Underneath each of the 3-in gun casemates, fixed in place behind 6-in (15-cm) of steel plating, was a line of three 6-in Quick Firing (QF) guns. Several more were fitted on the corners of the gun decks, bringing the total number to 14.

» 6-in Quick Firing gun breech
The Quick Firing (QF) guns on *Mikasa* used a breech-loading mechanism and single-piece ammunition containing both the shell and propellant to enable more rapid loading.



Pantry
The petty officers' pantry was where the officers' food was prepared. Enlisted crewmen ate their meals in berthing areas in the bows of the ship.

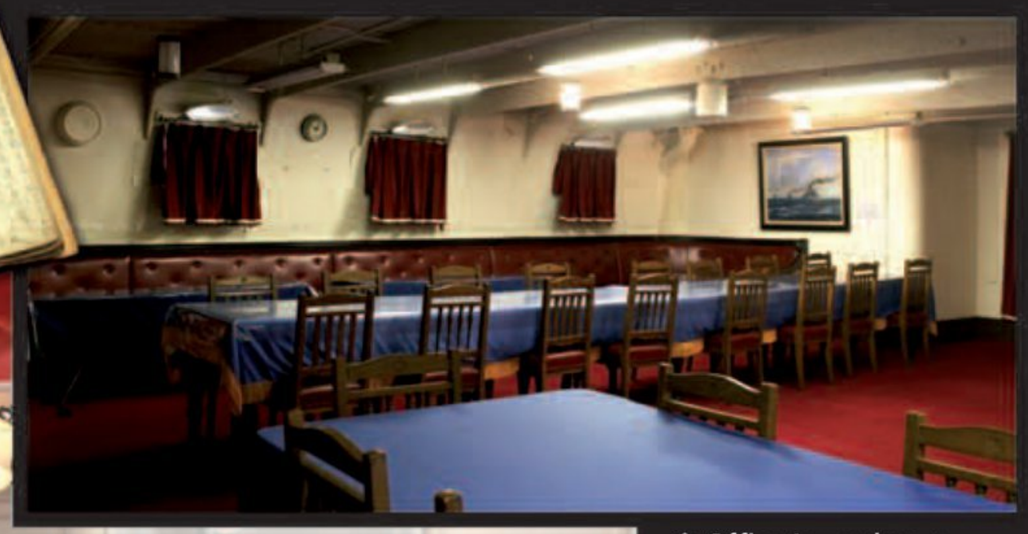
Admiral's desk
The portrait of Admiral Togo on the desk in his cabin is inscribed with the only known example of his signature in English.



Admiral's bathroom
The washing facilities for the admiral and officers were simple but adequate—and more comfortable than those for the sailors.

Admiral's cabin
Admiral Togo's personal quarters are located on the second deck toward the stern of the ship. The admiral's cabin is austerely furnished with a desk and a high bed and drawers below for storage.

Togo's pocketbook
Admiral Togo's handwritten notebooks provide an intriguing window into the mind of the man who oversaw Japan's greatest naval victory.



Officer's wardroom
The large wardroom was used for meetings and as a dining area and recreation room for officers.

Admiral's saloon
The saloon is simply but comfortably furnished with carpets, cabinets, and a fireplace. Two Hotchkiss 3-pounder gun mounts on either side of the cabin provide the only reminder that the saloon is part of a ship of war.

Skylight over officers' quarters
Deck skylights connect directly to the admiral's cabin and captain's saloon below, allowing in light and fresh air. The skylights could be fixed shut during battle or in stormy weather.

Hotchkiss gun in admiral's saloon
Four Hotchkiss QF 3-pounder guns protrude from the rooms at the fore and stern of *Mikasa*—the admiral's saloon and the enlisted berthing—turning living areas into makeshift gun emplacements.

TRIUMPH OF THE JAPANESE NAVY

The French-built protected cruiser *Matsushima*, flagship of the Imperial Japanese Navy during the first Sino-Japanese War, fires a devastating broadside against a Chinese warship. Naval scenes such as this were a popular subject for Japanese artists of the period who reveled in the big ships and the imposing new technology of the rapidly modernizing Japanese Navy.

操江號
降
降

WORLD WAR I

German battleship
Prinzregent Luitpold was a German Kaiser-class battleship, launched in 1912 as part of Germany's rapid naval expansion in the run-up to World War I. She fought at Jutland in 1916—the only occasion opposing battleships dueled in the war—and was scuttled with the rest of the High Seas Fleet at Scapa Flow in 1919.

PUBLIC INTEREST IN NAVAL AFFAIRS has never been greater than in the lead-up to World War I. German naval expansion, perceived as a threat to British security, triggered an expensive arms race in which the two countries competed to build bigger and better battleships. This growing hostility led to an agreement between Britain and France to split responsibility for naval defense in case of war, Britain taking on the English Channel and North Sea while France looked after the Mediterranean. Given this build-up, World War I undoubtedly proved a disappointment to naval enthusiasts. Although major engagements between surface warships did occur, a decisive Trafalgar-style battle simply did not come off. Instead the British and German battle fleets sparred and shadow-boxed indecisively while struggling to come to terms with the deadly threat posed by unglamorous submarines and mines.

DISTANT BLOCKADE

Britain entered World War I with clear naval superiority over Germany. The Royal Navy had 52 dreadnoughts, pre-dreadnoughts, and battlecruisers, as against 34 comparable German warships. Inevitably the German High Seas Fleet was unwilling to steam out and engage in a full-scale battle in the face of such unfavorable odds. Yet the Royal Navy could not bottle up the German navy with a close blockade of enemy ports as it had in the Napoleonic Wars, because of the extreme vulnerability of its large surface warships to submarines, mines, and torpedo boats. British naval dominance of the entrances to the English Channel and the North Sea was enough to close Germany off from world trade, but this blockade was so distant that squadrons of German warships were able to sortie from harbor and shell the east coast of England.

German strategy was to weaken the Royal Navy by piecemeal sinkings until numbers were even enough for a showdown. The caution of Admiral Sir John Jellicoe, commander of the Grand Fleet, ensured that this never happened. His determination to keep the British fleet intact was matched by Kaiser Wilhelm's concern to preserve his prized warships. The German High Seas Fleet was more aggressively led for a time after Admiral Reinhard Scheer took command in January 1916, and the British succeeded in luring Scheer into a fleet battle at Jutland the following May. The battle revealed defects in the Royal Navy—for instance, much of its gunnery was inferior to that of the Germans—and was claimed as a German victory in terms of ships lost and damaged. Yet it was fought as a defensive battle by a German fleet running for home and German surface warships hardly left port again for the rest of the war.

U-BOAT MENACE

The ease with which capital ships could be sunk by mines and submarines had been predicted before the war, yet navies were slow to develop countermeasures. They had continued to create ever bigger, faster, and more heavily gunned battleships, which over

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

DREADNOUGHTS AND SUPER-DREADNOUGHTS

The launch of the British battleship *Dreadnought* in December 1906 ignited an international naval arms race. With ten 12-in guns and steam turbine engines giving a maximum speed of 21 knots, *Dreadnought* outclassed every other warship afloat. Its name became the general term for the new generation of battleships that started to appear around the world, including the South Carolina class in the United States, Germany's Nassau class, and France's Courbet class. The Royal Navy was determined to stay ahead of the competition and introduced even more powerful battleships dubbed "super-dreadnoughts." The first of these, *Orion*, launched in 1910, had 13.5-in guns, but the much admired Queen Elizabeth class, built between 1912 and 1915, mounted astonishing 15-in guns. Combined with heavy armor and oil-fired engines generating a maximum speed of 24 knots, this made for a truly formidable fighting machine.

Top of her class
Dreadnought may have represented the new kind of battleship that every navy hoped to acquire, but she had her faults. The arrangement of the main guns with three turrets in line and two at the sides was not a success, and with the mainmast just behind the front funnel, life was not easy for men in the spotting top.

Super-dreadnought
Conqueror was an Orion-class battleship launched in 1911, the next generation after *Dreadnought*.

WORLD WAR I IN NORTHWEST EUROPE

The world's two most powerful and expensive navies spent most of World War I facing each other across the North Sea, too cautious to go out and do battle. Both sides went out on patrol and laid mines as close as they could to the enemy's coast, but neither was prepared to risk its fleet. Two cruiser squadrons clashed briefly at Dogger Bank in 1915, but it was not until May the following year that the two sides finally met at Jutland for the only large-scale fleet action of the war. What became clear at the battle was that the British fleet was still much more powerful than the German one. Realizing this, the Germans tried to win the war by means of a U-boat campaign against Allied and neutral shipping, aimed at starving Britain into submission, a plan in which they very nearly succeeded. After Jutland the German High Seas Fleet never again ventured out into the North Sea.

KEY

- Allied Powers
- Central Powers
- Neutral states
- Western Front 1916
- British naval base
- German naval base
- British port bombarded by Germans 1914–16
- British raid on German base 1918
- British mine barrage 1914–15
- British minefield
- German minefield
- British naval blockade
- British victory
- Inconclusive action

time would become irrelevant. Allied losses of warships to mines were grievous, for example at the Dardanelles in 1915, and German U-boats continued to be a threat even after the adoption of destroyer screens to protect battleships and cruisers.

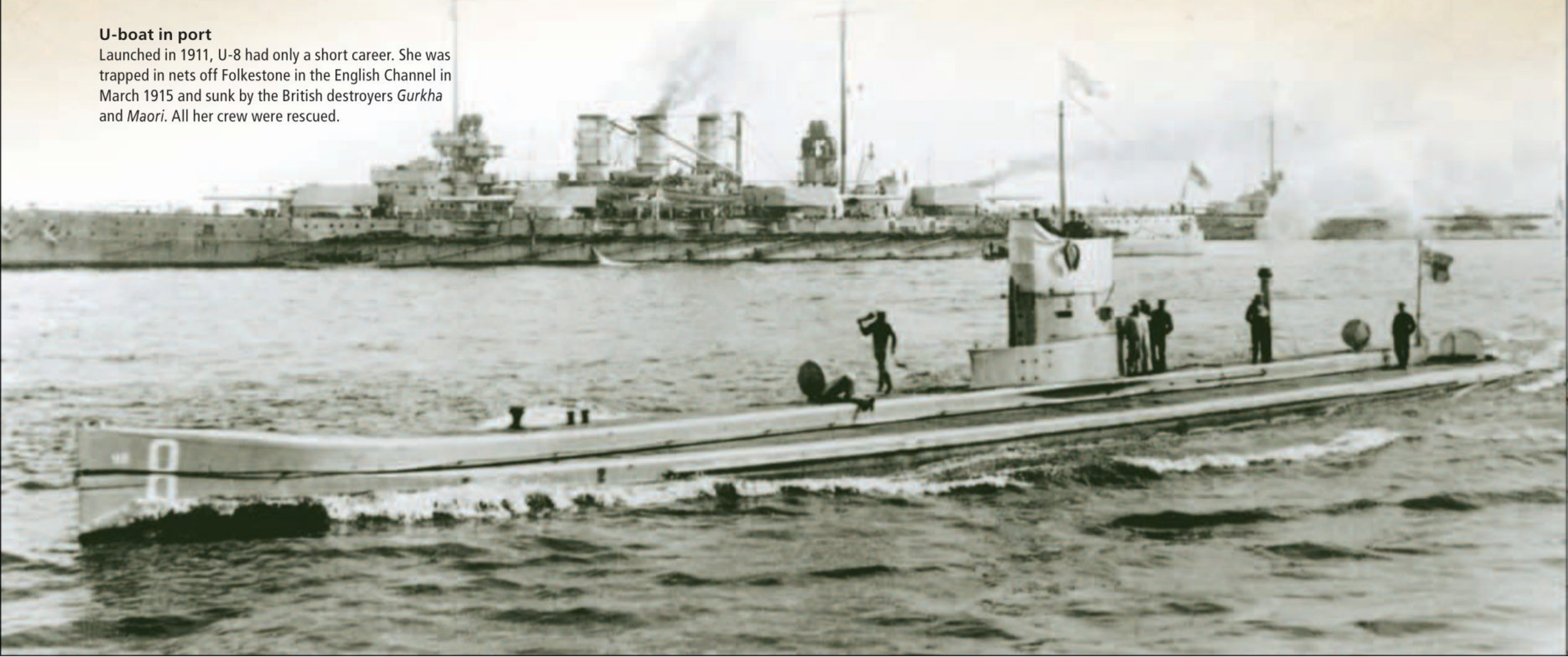
It was when U-boats were deployed as commerce raiders, first in 1915 and then on a larger scale in 1917, that they threatened to change the course of the war. At the start of the war U-boat attacks on merchant shipping were conducted for the most part according to prize regulations, the traditional rules for cruisers attacking unarmed civilian shipping. In February 1915, however, Germany declared the waters around Britain a war zone and authorized U-boat captains to attack merchant vessels, including neutrals, without warning. The

Relic of the Lusitania
Of the 1,201 passengers drowned when the *Lusitania* was sunk by a torpedo, 128 were US citizens.

sinking of the liner *Lusitania* in May 1915 and the cross-Channel ferry *Sussex* in March 1916 both resulted in the deaths of many US citizens. So incensed were the Americans that the Germans were forced to call off the campaign. But, when the idea of a full-scale surface battle was abandoned after Jutland, Germany resumed unrestricted submarine warfare on February 1, 1917. The reluctance of the British to adopt a convoy system led to a period of unsustainable losses of merchant ships to U-boat attack. This continued up until May 1917, when the phasing in of convoys reversed the trend. But indiscriminate sinkings by U-boats brought America into the war against Germany, ensuring the eventual victory of the Allies.

Morale in the German High Seas Fleet suffered from its years of inactivity in port. When the German commanders planned a sortie to engage the Grand Fleet in a death-or-glory final battle in October 1918, the sailors mutinied. Interned at Scapa Flow, the German fleet was scuttled by its crews in protest against the Versailles peace treaty in June 1919.

U-boat in port
Launched in 1911, U-8 had only a short career. She was trapped in nets off Folkestone in the English Channel in March 1915 and sunk by the British destroyers *Gurkha* and *Maori*. All her crew were rescued.



WARSHIP BATTLES 1914–18

MUCH OF THE NAVAL ACTION early in World War I concerned the Royal Navy's efforts to track down German surface raiders, which posed a serious threat to Allied shipping. After the British victory over Admiral Graf von Spee's squadron at the Falklands in December 1914, German commerce raiding was restricted to submarines, the U-boats proving a fearful menace for merchant shipping and warships alike (see pp 268-269). An attempt to use Allied naval power to decisive effect against Germany's ally Turkey in the Dardanelles was a painful failure. Meanwhile, for almost two years the Royal Navy's Grand Fleet and the German High Seas Fleet, stationed at opposite ends of the North Sea, did not meet. After an early reverse at the Heligoland Bight, the Kaiser forbade his fleet to venture into the North Sea, although this prohibition was not absolutely respected. Probing raids by German squadrons met with some success, despite a serious setback at the Dogger Bank, before the British at last trapped their opponents into a full-scale fleet engagement at Jutland in May 1916—without, however, achieving the victory which Britain craved.

> "POOR DEVILS! THEY FOUGHT THEIR SHIPS LIKE MEN AND WENT DOWN WITH COLOURS FLYING LIKE SEAMEN AGAINST OVERWHELMING ODDS ..."
>
> **VICE-ADMIRAL DAVID BEATTY** DESCRIBING THE GERMAN SAILORS AT HELIGOLAND BIGHT IN A LETTER TO HIS WIFE, 1914

Battlecruisers in line ahead
A column of Royal Navy warships is led by *Queen Mary* and *Princess Royal* of the First Battlecruiser Squadron, victorious at Heligoland Bight.

WORLD WAR I

HELIGOLAND BIGHT

Date August 28, 1914
Forces British: 5 battlecruisers, 8 light cruisers, 31 destroyers, 3 submarines; Germans: 6 light cruisers, 19 torpedo boats
Losses British: none; Germans: 3 light cruisers, 1 torpedo boat
Location Heligoland Bight, northern Germany

Commodore Roger Keyes, in command of British submarines based at Harwich, conceived a plan for an impudent raid on German ships on patrol near their naval base at Heligoland. The raid was to be carried out by the light cruisers and destroyers of Commodore Reginald Tyrwhitt's Harwich Force, along with Keyes' submarines. It was decided at the last minute to provide back-up for the raid from Vice-Admiral David Beatty's 1st Battlecruiser Squadron and the 1st Light Cruiser Squadron of Commodore William Goodenough.

As Keyes had planned, early on the morning of August 28, the presence of British submarines off Heligoland was detected by the Germans, who promptly sent out a flotilla of torpedo boats. These were then engaged by Tyrwhitt's destroyers and two light cruisers, *Arethusa* and *Fearless*. Fought in mist, the ensuing battle was characterized by confusion on both sides. The German light cruisers *Stettin* and *Frauenlob* arrived on the scene and duelled with *Fearless* and *Arethusa* respectively. *Arethusa*, with Tyrwhitt on board, suffered heavy damage and withdrew to attempt repairs. Four more German light cruisers turned up, attacking in an uncoordinated fashion as Tyrrwhitt's destroyers screened *Arethusa*.

Fortunately for the British, the arrival of Goodenough's light cruisers, followed by Beatty's battlecruisers, swung the balance of forces decisively in their favour. Rear-Admiral Leberecht Maass's *Mainz* was sunk after being caught between the Harwich Force destroyers and Goodenough's cruisers. The light cruisers *Köln* and *Ariadne* were destroyed by the heavy guns of Beatty's *Lion*, looming unexpectedly upon them out of the mist. The British withdrew across the North Sea, *Arethusa* reaching home under tow.

Despite "friendly fire" incidents resulting from poor communication and worrying malfunctions of guns and fire-control systems, the British had scored an unquestionable victory, achieved with great boldness in German home waters.

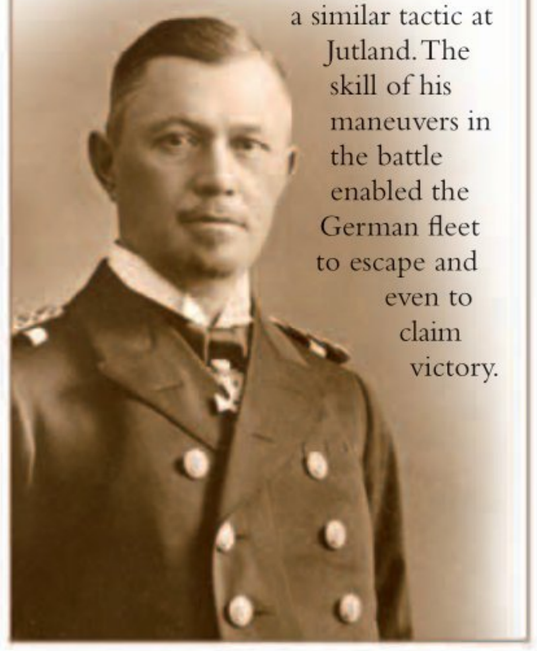
QF 3-pounder Hotchkiss
Pedestal-mounted Quick Firing (QF) 3-pounders were common anti-torpedo boat guns on British cruisers at the start of the war, but were soon found to be too light to be very effective.

1863–1928

REINHARD SCHEER

GERMAN ADMIRAL

Born in Obernkirchen, Hanover, Scheer joined the Imperial German Navy in 1879. By 1907 he had risen to be chief of staff of the High Seas Fleet. On the outbreak of World War I he advocated the use of surface ships to lure British warships into the path of submarines lying in ambush. On being promoted to Admiral of the Fleet in 1916, he used a similar tactic at Jutland. The skill of his maneuvers in the battle enabled the German fleet to escape and even to claim victory.



WORLD WAR I

SINKING OF SMS EMDEN

Date November 9, 1914
Forces Australians: 1 light cruiser; Germans: 1 light cruiser
Losses Australians: none; Germans: 1 light cruiser

Location Cocos Islands, Indian Ocean

The light cruiser *Emden*, commanded by Karl von Müller, was one of Germany's most successful commerce raiders, paralyzing trade in the Indian Ocean and destroying oil tanks at Madras. Müller earned a reputation for the chivalrous treatment of the passengers and crews of ships he sank. *Emden* evaded or defeated all her pursuers for three months until she met the Australian light cruiser *Sydney*, whose 6-in guns had a greater range than *Emden*'s. Captain John Glossop was able to bombard the ship almost with impunity. Müller beached the battered *Emden* on an island to avoid sinking and reluctantly ran up the white flag.

WORLD WAR I

CORONEL

Date November 1, 1914
Forces Germans: 2 armored cruisers, 3 light cruisers; British: 2 armored cruisers, 1 light cruiser, 1 armed liner
Losses Germans: none; British: 2 armored cruisers

Location Off Coronel, Chile

From the start of the war Vice-Admiral Graf Maximilian von Spee was at large in the Pacific with a powerful squadron that included two impressive armored cruisers, *Scharnhorst* and *Gneisenau*. Rear Admiral Sir Christopher Cradock, based in the Falklands, was tasked with seeking out and destroying Spee's squadron, despite having far inferior ships and crews. His armored cruisers *Good Hope* and *Monmouth* were slower than their German equivalents, had obsolescent guns, and were crewed by recalled reservists and half-trained boys. His light cruiser *Glasgow* was at least a fully modern ship, but his armed liner *Otranto* was effectively useless.

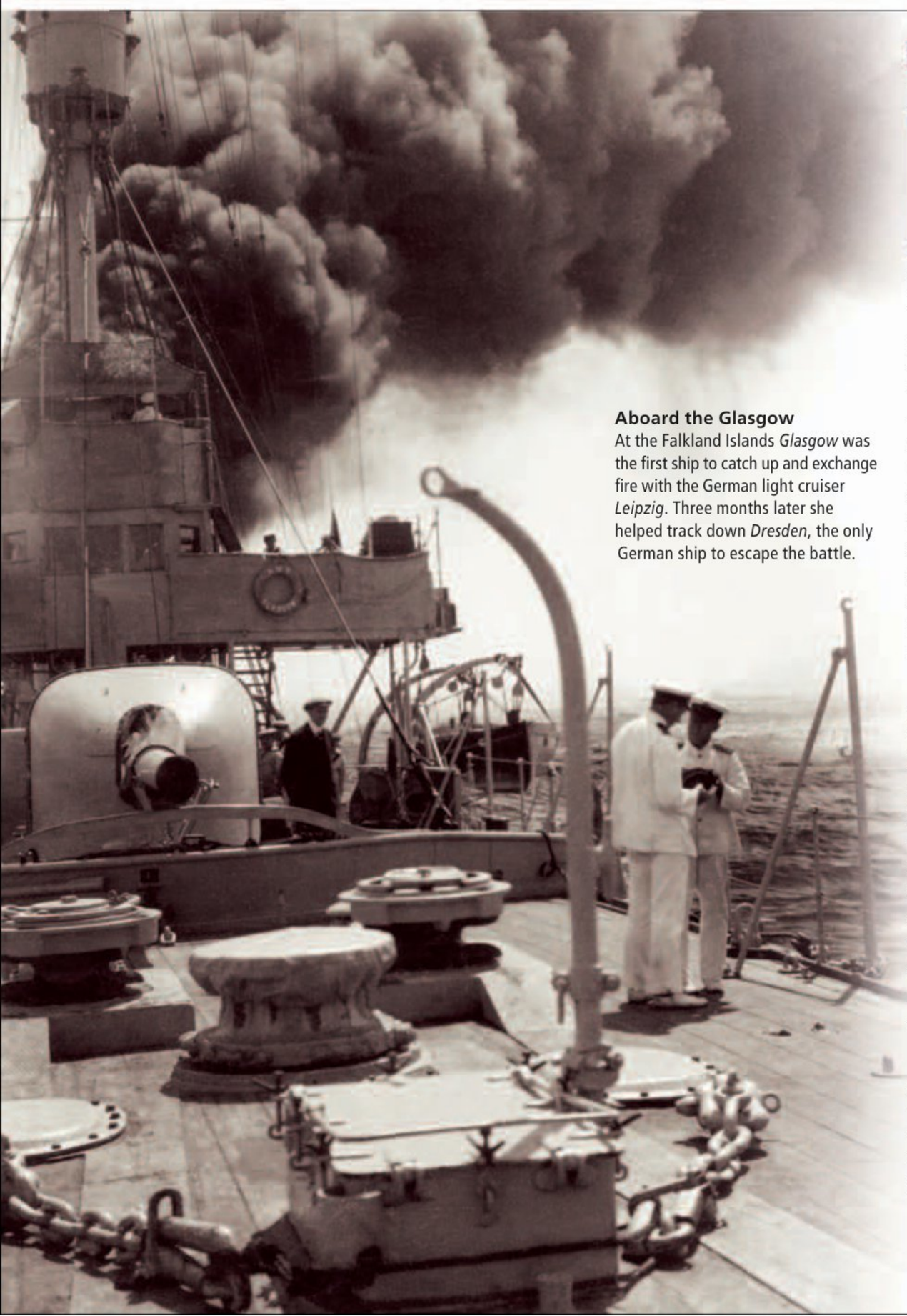
The German and British squadrons met in heavy seas off the coast of Chile in the late afternoon of November 1. Steaming to the east of the British, Spee exploited the superior speed of his ships to stay out of range until the sun had set. With Cradock's ships silhouetted against the afterglow, the German ships opened an accurate fire to which the British were barely able to reply. *Good Hope* and *Monmouth*, battered by salvo after salvo in the gathering darkness, sank with all hands, including Cradock. *Otranto* had been sent away at the start of the battle and the badly damaged *Glasgow* escaped into the night. It was a humiliating defeat that the Royal Navy was determined to avenge.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

SEA MINES

Contact mines were chained to the seabed and exploded when a ship's hull struck one of the protruding spikes. They were used to great effect by Germany, sinking a greater tonnage of British warships than any other weapon. The Royal Navy entered the war without minelayers or purpose-built minesweepers and did not use mines effectively until 1917.

Contact mine
The length of chain was adjusted so that the mine floated at the desired depth below the surface.



Aboard the Glasgow
At the Falkland Islands *Glasgow* was the first ship to catch up and exchange fire with the German light cruiser *Leipzig*. Three months later she helped track down *Dresden*, the only German ship to escape the battle.

WORLD WAR I

FALKLAND ISLANDS

Date December 8, 1914
Forces British: 2 battlecruisers, 3 armored cruisers, 2 light cruisers, 1 pre-dreadnought battleship; Germans: 2 armored cruisers, 3 light cruisers
Losses British: none: Germans: 2 armored cruisers, 2 light cruisers

Location Falkland Islands, South Atlantic

After the defeat at Coronel, Vice Admiral Frederick Sturdee was sent from Britain with two battlecruisers, *Invincible* and *Inflexible*, to destroy Spee's victorious armored cruisers *Scharnhorst* and *Gneisenau*. Sturdee joined up with the five cruisers of Rear-Admiral Archibald Stoddart's South Atlantic Squadron and steamed to the Falkland Islands, arriving at Port Stanley on December 7. The next day, unaware of the British ships, Spee's squadron appeared, having rounded Cape Horn from the Pacific.

As *Gneisenau* and the light cruiser *Nürnberg* approached Port Stanley they were fired on by the antiquated pre-dreadnought battleship *Canopus*, grounded at the harbor mouth as a shore battery. The British warships, caught in harbor and some in the middle of coaling, were vulnerable to attack, but the Germans fled at the sight of the unexpected battlecruisers. The British had time to get up steam and set to sea in pursuit. Spee realized he had no chance of outrunning the battlecruisers. He decided to engage them with *Scharnhorst* and *Gneisenau*, hoping to buy time for the light cruisers at least to escape.

THE SQUADRON DESTROYED

The German admiral fought a cunning delaying action against an enemy with superior guns and armor, but the end was inevitable. On fire and listing heavily, Spee's flagship *Scharnhorst* sank with her admiral and all hands just after 4:00 p.m. *Gneisenau* lasted longer. She went down at around 6:00 p.m. after taking more than 50 hits. Some 200 of her crew were rescued from the icy waters. The light cruisers *Nürnberg* and *Leipzig* were pursued, engaged, and sunk by the armored cruisers *Kent* and *Cornwall* and the light cruiser *Glasgow*. The only German ship to escape was the light cruiser *Dresden*, but she too was eventually hunted down. It was a crushing British victory, achieved by the application of overwhelming force.

HMS Canopus
The opening shots at the Falkland Islands were fired by the pre-dreadnought *Canopus*.

WORLD WAR I

BOMBARDMENT OF THE ENGLISH COAST

Location Coast of northeast England

Date December 16, 1914
Forces Germans: 3 battlecruisers, 1 armored cruiser, 4 light cruisers, 18 torpedo boats; British: 6 battleships, 4 battlecruisers, 8 cruisers, 8 destroyers
Losses Germans: none; British: none

Vice Admiral Franz von Hipper, commanding the German 1st Scouting Group, planned a raid across the North Sea against English coastal towns. If the Royal Navy responded by coming out in force, Hipper hoped to draw them onto mines laid in the area, or toward the guns of the High Seas Fleet advancing behind him. The British were forewarned of the raid by codebreakers in the Admiralty's Room 40, but unaware the High Seas Fleet was involved. For over an hour on the morning of December 16, Hipper's battlecruisers and light cruisers bombarded Hartlepool, West Hartlepool, Scarborough, and Whitby, causing much damage and killing more than 100 civilians. Shore batteries at Hartlepool hit three of the ships.

A much larger naval engagement was narrowly avoided. British forces sent to intercept Hipper blundered into sight of the High Seas Fleet, but Admiral Frederich von Ingenohl, fearing this was the Royal Navy's Grand Fleet, fled for home. This left Hipper exposed, surrounded by British battleships and battlecruisers, yet he was allowed to slip past and escape to safety. Outrage in Britain was directed equally at the Germans for shelling civilian targets and at the Royal Navy for failing in its duty to protect the country from attack.

German pistol
A Roth-Steyr M1907 taken from a German naval officer at the surrender of the High Seas Fleet at Scapa Flow in 1918.

WORLD WAR I

CUXHAVEN RAID

Location Cuxhaven, northern Germany

Date 25 December 1914
Forces British: 7 seaplanes, 3 seaplane tenders, 2 light cruisers, 2 destroyers, 10 submarines
Losses British: 4 seaplanes

On Christmas Day 1914 the Royal Naval Air Service executed the first air raid launched from the sea. Three converted cross-Channel steamers carried nine Short seaplanes to within flying range of Cuxhaven, escorted by Commodore Reginald Tyrwhitt's Harwich Force. The seaplanes were lowered onto the sea by cranes. Seven succeeded in taking off. Their objective was to bomb Zeppelin airship sheds, but they missed their target in low cloud. They caused some panic in Wilhelmshaven, where a battlecruiser and cruiser collided taking evasive action. Three of the seaplanes found their way back to their tenders. The pilots of the others were all rescued, three by British submarines and one by a Dutch trawler.

WORLD WAR I

BATTLE OF THE DARDANELLES

Date March 18, 1915
Location Dardanelles, Turkey
Result Ottoman Turkish victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN AND FRANCE

OTTOMAN TURKEY

COMMANDERS

Sir Sackville Carden
John de Robeck
Emile Guépratte

Mustafa Kemal

FORCES

Ships: 15 battleships (mostly pre-dreadnought), 1 battlecruiser, various cruisers, destroyers, and minesweepers

Ships: Shore guns and mines

LOSSES

Men: 700
Ships: 3 battleships

Men: 40

Naval bombardment
The pre-dreadnought battleship HMS *Cornwallis* uses her 12-in guns to bombard Turkish gun positions on the Gallipoli Peninsula. *Cornwallis* fired the first shell of the first naval bombardment of the Turkish forts on February 19, 1915.

Sinking of the Blücher
German sailors scramble onto the hull of the stricken German cruiser *Blücher* as she rolls over following heavy British fire at Dogger Bank.

WORLD WAR I

DOGGER BANK

Location Dogger Bank, North Sea

Date January 24, 1915
Forces British: 5 battlecruisers, 9 light cruisers, 31 destroyers; Germans: 3 battlecruisers, 1 armored cruiser, 4 light cruisers, 18 torpedo boats
Losses British: none; Germans: 1 armored cruiser

On January 23, 1915, Admiral Franz von Hipper took the German 1st and 2nd Scouting Groups into the North Sea to attack British trawlers and patrol boats on the Dogger Bank. Intercepts by Royal Navy signals intelligence revealed the plans and Admiral David Beatty was sent out with the 1st and 2nd Battlecruiser Squadrons to surprise Hipper, joined by the light cruisers and destroyers of the Harwich Force.

Contact was made shortly after 7:00 a.m. on January 24. Once Hipper realized that heavy British ships were present, he turned for home. Beatty's flagship *Lion* led the chase and opened fire at extreme range around 9:00 a.m. Hipper was leading the German line on the battlecruiser *Seydlitz*, with the armored cruiser *Blücher* struggling to keep up. *Lion* drew first blood, blowing up *Seydlitz's* aft turrets with an armor-penetrating shell. A devastating explosion was averted through the heroism of German sailor Wilhelm Heidkamp who flooded *Seydlitz*'s magazines despite suffering severe burns. *Blücher* also took a battering and fell further behind the rest of the German force. However, as the range shortened, *Lion* came under accurate fire from all three battlecruisers. By 10:45 a.m. *Lion* was so badly damaged she slowed to a halt.

From this point the British effort lost all tactical coherence. Four British battlecruisers poured shells into the crippled *Blücher* until she capsized and sank, while Hipper led his battlecruisers home to safety. *Lion* was towed back to the Forth, to a hero's welcome. But an opportunity to inflict a crushing defeat on the German navy had slipped through Beatty's fingers.

> IT WAS ONE CONTINUOUS EXPLOSION ... THE WOUNDED BLÜCHER SETTLED DOWN, TURNED WEARILY OVER AND DISAPPEARED IN A SWIRL OF WATER.
>
> **GERMAN SURVIVOR** FROM SMS *BLÜCHER*, 1915

THE BATTLE OF THE DARDANELLES

In January 1915 the Royal Navy drew up plans for an ambitious operation designed to drive Ottoman Turkey out of the war. British and French warships would force a passage through the Dardanelles into the Sea of Marmara. There they would menace the Ottoman capital Constantinople with their guns, obliging the Turks to surrender.

The passage through the Dardanelles was blocked by minefields covered by the batteries of a series of forts and mobile howitzers. Admiral Sackville Carden began the naval attack on these defenses on February 19. He had a substantial force of British and French battleships at his disposal, although most of these were aging pre-dreadnoughts whose heavy guns proved far less effective against shore batteries than had been anticipated. However, the greatest weakness of the Allied forces was a lack of efficient minesweepers.

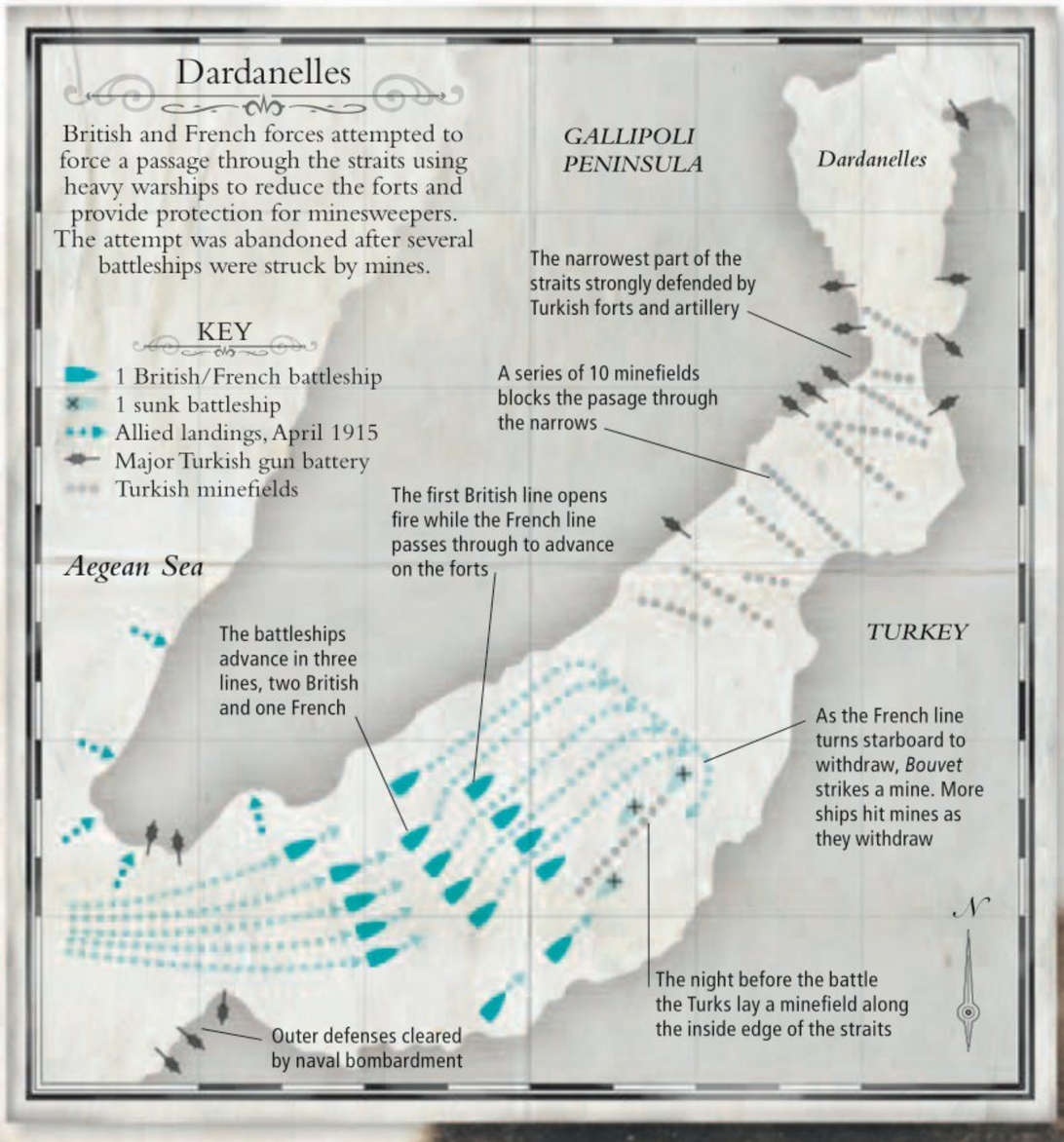
On February 25 the Turks abandoned the forts at the entrance to the strait, but Carden made no further progress. Through the first two weeks of March the inner forts were shelled almost daily, but the minefields remained uncleared and the navy began taking casualties.

FORCING THE STRAIT

With Carden in poor health, it was Admiral John de Robeck who assumed command for the decisive bid to force the straits on March 18. Almost the entire force of heavy warships advanced in three lines, one of them consisting of four French pre-dreadnoughts under Rear Admiral Emile Guépratte.

Opening around 11:00 a.m. the exchange of fire between sea and shore was intense. Ordered forward to engage the forts at close range, the French ships took heavy punishment, especially *Gaulois,* which ran aground to avoid sinking. At 2:00 p.m. de Robeck ordered the French to withdraw so he could bring other ships forward to cover the mineclearing. As the French wheeled right, *Bouvet* struck a mine and quickly sank. Only 35 of the 674 crew were saved. One disaster followed another. The battlecruiser *Inflexible* was next to hit a mine, withdrawing with a heavy list. Then it was the turn of *Irresistible* and *Ocean*; both were immobilized by mines and abandoned. With night approaching, de Robeck signaled for all the ships to retire. There was no further attempt to force a passage through the straits. Instead it was decided to land troops at Gallipoli—an operation that was to prove an even more costly failure.

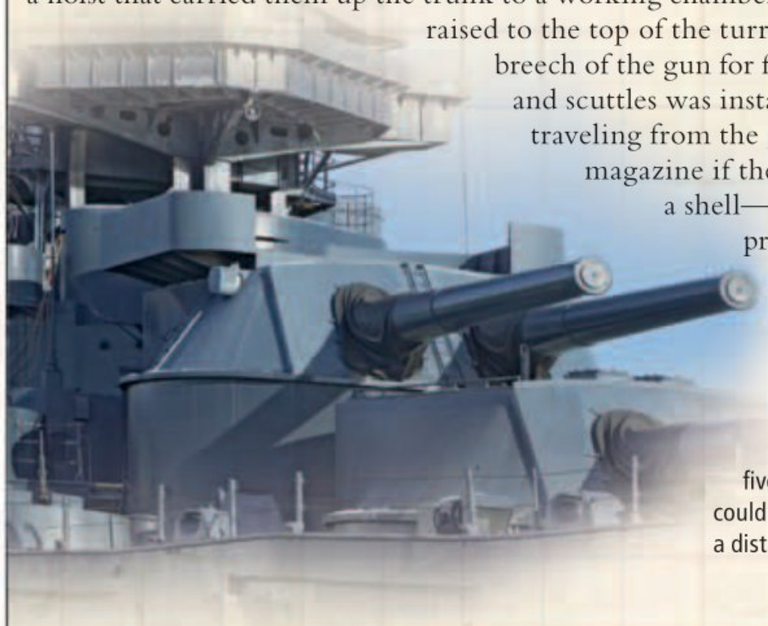
Amphora from HMS Implacable
The *Implacable* supported the troop landings at Gallipoli—part of the failed attempt to open the straits to British and French warships.



WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

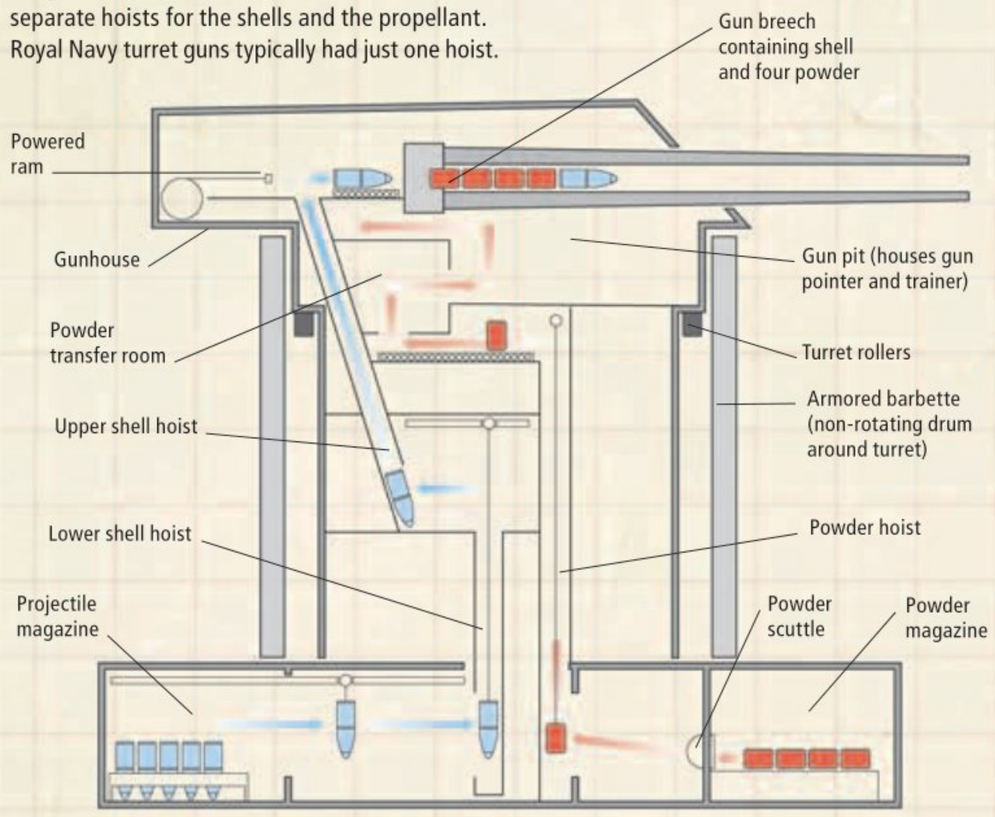
WWI TURRET GUNS

The large caliber naval guns on World War I capital ships were mounted in turrets protected by armored barbettes and supported on a bed of rollers to allow the guns to rotate. A gunhouse above deck was linked by a tube, known as the main trunk, to the magazine and shell room deep inside the ship. The shells were too heavy to lift by hand, so to load the gun the shells and propellant charges were placed on a hoist that carried them up the trunk to a working chamber. From there they were raised to the top of the turret and rammed into the breech of the gun for firing. A series of doors and scuttles was installed to prevent flash traveling from the gunhouse down to the magazine if the gunhouse was hit by a shell—although Royal Navy procedures at Jutland were defective in this regard.



Battleship Texas
The battleship's ten 14-in guns, mounted in five turrets along her centerline, could fire 1,500-lb (680-kg) shells a distance of 13 miles (21 km).

US battleship turret gun
The turret guns on most American battleships of the period were divided into two sections with separate hoists for the shells and the propellant. Royal Navy turret guns typically had just one hoist.



WITNESS TO WAR

COMMANDER HUMPHREY WALWYN

EXECUTIVE OFFICER ON HMS WARSPITE

BATTLE OF JUTLAND

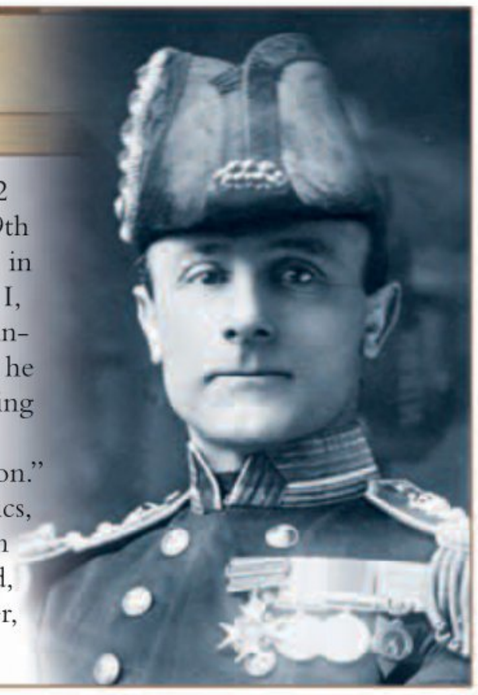
Very soon after the turn, could see leading ships of High Seas Fleet, hardly discernible but I counted six or eight. ***Long lines of orange flame seemed to ripple along continuously, and I realised they were firing at us****. Felt heavy shakes but didn't think much of it … Crossed Cook's lobby to port side and was just going forward to the fo'c'sle deck, when a 12-inch shell came in through the starboard side and burst with a* ***terrific sheet of flame, impenetrable dust, smoke, stink****, and everything seemed to fall from everywhere at once. Called for number two fire brigade and several rushed out and we got the fire out fairly easily, but* ***place was full of smoke and several men were sick—awful stench****."*

1859–1935

SIR JOHN JELLICOE

ADMIRAL OF THE BRITISH FLEET

Jellicoe joined the Royal Navy as a cadet in 1872 and saw action in the colonial wars of the late 19th century. As a senior administrator he participated in the reform of the Royal Navy before World War I, specializing in gunnery. Appointed commander-in-chief of the Grand Fleet at the outset of the war, he pursued a cautious strategy, ever-conscious of being in Winston Churchill's words, "the only man on either side who could lose the war in an afternoon." No politician, he was outmaneuvered by his critics, who were numerous after the battle of Jutland. In November 1916 he was appointed First Sea Lord, only to be precipitately dismissed 13 months later, a scapegoat for Admiralty failings.



The Jellicoe Touch
Admiral John Jellicoe's image is borrowed to add a patriotic touch to this collection of "Naval Fantasia" sheet music.

Battlecruisers at Jutland
Ships of the First Battlecruiser Squadron fire on the High Seas Fleet at Jutland while German shells splash into the water around them.

THE BATTLE OF JUTLAND

At 2:00 a.m. on May 31, 1916, a scouting force of five battlecruisers under Admiral Franz von Hipper headed into the North Sea. An hour and a half behind him, Admiral Reinhard Scheer followed with 16 battleships of the German High Seas Fleet. With light cruisers and torpedo boats in support, almost a hundred German ships were at sea. Scheer's plan was for Hipper's scouting group to draw out part of the British Grand Fleet, which would then be surprised and destroyed by the German battleships.

Unbeknownst to the Germans, the Grand Fleet was already at sea. Royal Navy signals intelligence had detected that the High Seas Fleet was preparing to come out. With Admiral John Jellicoe in command, the Main Battle Fleet had set out from Scapa Flow after dark on May 30. Jellicoe intended to rendezvous with Sir David Beatty's Battlecruiser Force and destroy the High Seas Fleet. Instead of surprising an inferior Royal Navy force, Scheer would himself be surprised by an overwhelmingly superior British force of 151 warships, including 28 modern battleships.

Into the early afternoon of May 31, Jellicoe and Beatty's ships proceeded in quite leisurely fashion toward their rendezvous off Jutland, misled by a message from the Admiralty indicating that the High Seas Fleet had not yet left port. German commanders were equally ignorant of the movement of the Grand Fleet. U-boats in the North Sea had missed the British ships entirely while bad weather prevented the use of zeppelins for aerial reconnaissance. It was a surprise to both sides when, at around 2:20 p.m., two of Beatty's light cruisers sighted and engaged two of Hipper's torpedo boats.

> SUDDENLY MY PERISCOPE REVEALED SOME BIG SHIPS, BLACK MONSTERS; SIX TALL, BROAD-BEAMED GIANTS STEAMING IN TWO COLUMNS.
>
> **COMMANDER GEORG VON HASE**, GUNNERY OFFICER OF BATTLECRUISER *DERFFLINGER*, 1916

BATTLECRUISER ACTION

As the first shots were fired, Beatty was steaming the wrong way, having just turned north to meet up with Jellicoe. He hastily turned south, a maneuver his 5th Battle Squadron was slow to follow. This was unfortunate, for the squadron's four Queen Elizabeth-class battleships would have given Beatty a clear superiority over Hipper. The five German and six British battlecruisers steamed on converging courses and sighted one another about an hour later. Hipper turned southeast to draw Beatty toward the High Seas Fleet. But since Scheer had inexplicably brought with him six slow-moving Deutschland-class pre-dreadnoughts his progress was not fast and there was time for Beatty to take on the German battlecruisers.

WORLD WAR I

THE BATTLE OF JUTLAND

Date	May 31–June 1, 1916
Location	North Sea off the coast of Denmark
Result	Inconclusive

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	GERMANY

COMMANDERS

John Jellicoe	Reinhard Scheer

FORCES

Ships: 28 battleships, 9 battlecruisers, 8 armored cruisers, 106 other ships	**Ships:** 16 battleships, 5 battlecruisers, 6 pre-dreadnoughts, 72 other ships

LOSSES

Men: 6,094 **Ships:** 3 battlecruisers, 3 armored cruisers, 8 destroyers	**Men:** 2,551 **Ships:** 1 battlecruiser, 1 pre-dreadnought, 4 light cruisers, 5 destroyers

Webley Mark VI revolver
The Mark VI was a standard sidearm issued to British officers and boarding parties during WWI. The owner of this example served at Jutland on the *Temeraire*.

The battlecruisers were soon engaged in bitter earnest. Beatty closed with the German force at speed, neglecting to exploit the superior range of his guns. Hipper's ships opened fire first, with a clear view of their targets silhouetted against the westering sun. With good range-finding equipment and armor-piercing shells, the Germans recorded hit after hit on the Royal Navy ships. First *Indefatigable* and then *Queen Mary* exploded and sank, each taking almost her entire crew to the bottom. Beatty's flagship *Lion* and the other battlecruisers all took hits. It was some relief when the battleships of 5th Battle Squadron tardily arrived, but before they could have any decisive impact the High Seas Fleet loomed into view.

Still unaware of Jellicoe's Grand Fleet drawing ever closer, Scheer believed a major victory was in his grasp. Beatty's battlecruisers turned northward, both to flee Scheer's battleships and lead him to Jellicoe, but the balance of losses continued to tip heavily against the Royal Navy. As elements of the Grand Fleet caught up with the battle, the battlecruiser *Invincible* and the armored cruiser *Defence* were sunk as they charged heroically into the thick of the action. Meanwhile Jellicoe, still unsure of the exact location of the German ships in worsening visibility, deployed the Grand Fleet in line of battle behind the battleship *King George V*.

THE MAIN FLEETS ENGAGE

Scheer emerged from the murk to be confronted by the capital ships of the Grand Fleet spread out across his bow in a line 6 miles (10 km) long. From the moment the guns of the British battleships opened up on his leading ships, the German admiral had only one objective: to escape back to harbor. The High Seas Fleet turned 180 degrees behind a smokescreen to disengage. As Jellicoe maneuvered to cut off their retreat to the south, the German battleships ran into the Grand Fleet again, then dodged to the west, deploying a screen of torpedo boats and cruisers to deter pursuit.

Controversially, Jellicoe turned away to avoid the torpedoes, letting Scheer's fleet disappear in fog and smoke. As night fell, Jellicoe was confident that he could force a decisive battle the following morning. But in the darkness Scheer drove his fleet full tilt through the rear of the Grand Fleet's line. The night was sporadically lit by searchlights, star shells, gunfire, and burning ships as confused clashes occurred here and there. There were more losses on both sides. However, Jellicoe failed to grasp that Scheer was escaping and remained on the wrong course until the following morning, when he received the disappointing news that the German fleet was all but home.

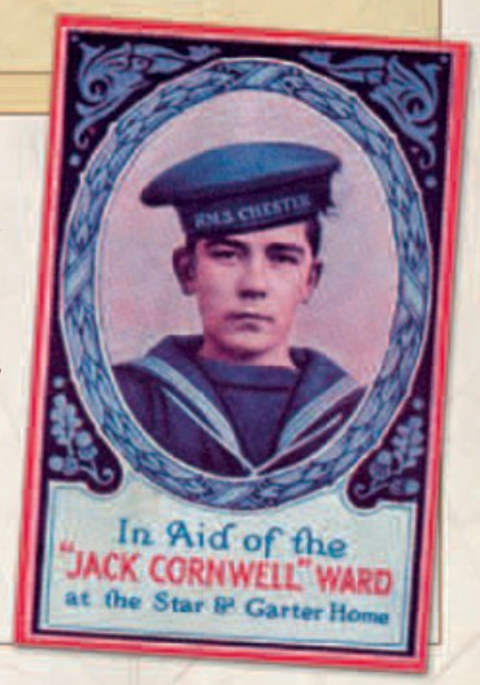
In the immediate aftermath of the battle, the Germans were jubilant, and the British bitterly disappointed. The performance of the Grand Fleet drew howls of rage from the jingoistic British press. While the Germans had materially the better of the encounter, however, the Royal Navy remained in command of the North Sea.

1900–1916

"JACK" CORNWELL

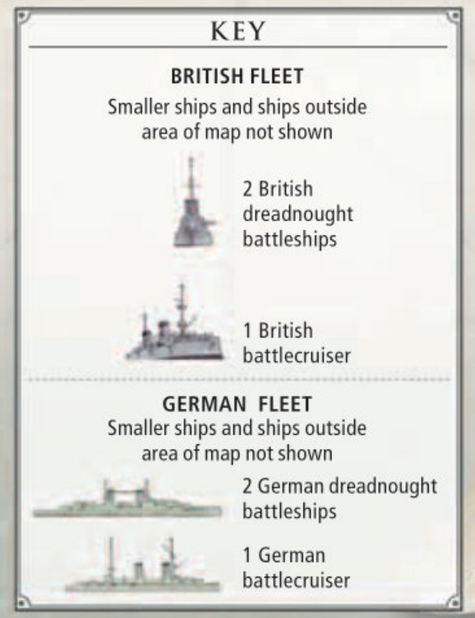
HERO OF JUTLAND

A working-class boy from the East End of London, John Travers Cornwell volunteered for the Royal Navy at the age of 15. He qualified as a Boy Seaman First Class and was assigned to the light cruiser *Chester*. At Jutland on May 31, 1916, he was a sight setter on one of the ship's 5.5-in guns. *Chester* came under heavy fire from four German warships, reducing her deck to a shambles. By the time the cruiser withdrew from the action, Cornwell was one of only two survivors of his gun crew. Although badly wounded by shell splinters, he was still at his post awaiting orders. Cornwell died two days later, aged just 16. He was posthumously awarded the Victoria Cross and celebrated as a British war hero.



Jutland medal
The Victoria Cross—Britain's highest award for valor—bestowed posthumously on Jack Cornwell after Jutland.

> "THERE'S SOMETHING WRONG WITH OUR BLOODY SHIPS TODAY."
>
> **SIR DAVID BEATTY**, COMMANDER OF THE BRITISH BATTECRUISER SQUADRON



First Battlecruiser Squadron
Beatty's flagship *Lion* and battlecruisers *Princess Royal* and *Queen Mary* steam through the waters off Jutland shortly before the sinking of the *Queen Mary*.

1 THE BATTLECRUISER ACTION

The battle of Jutland begins at about 3:45 p.m. on May 31 when the German and British scouting forces clash. The Germans have the better of the exchange and succeed in leading the British toward the bigger guns of the main German fleet.

The battleships of the German High Seas Fleet follow about an hour and a half behind the scouting force

4:45 p.m. Beatty becomes aware of German main fleet and gives the order to turn back–for the safety of his own ships and to lure the enemy toward Jellicoe

4:05 p.m. *Indefatigable* explodes after being hit in gun turret and sinks

British ships turn to engage the Germans, unaware of the approach of the main German fleet from the south

4:25 p.m. *Queen Mary* suffers an explosion in a gun turret and sinks

Hipper's battlecruiser squadron turns south to lure British into the path of the High Seas Fleet

German battlecruisers open fire at 3:42 p.m.

The German gunnery is superior to the British. They score many more hits and sink two battlecruisers

NORTH SEA

Hipper's flagship *Lützow*

2 MAIN ENGAGEMENT

Hipper's pursuit of Beatty's battlecruisers draws the German fleet into the path of the main British fleet under Jellicoe. Realizing he is heading into a trap, Scheer disengages, turning away from the British fleet under cover of a smokescreen.

Indefatigable and *Queen Mary* both sunk, each with the loss of over 1,000 men

6:10 p.m. British Grand Fleet reaches the scene. Jellicoe orders his dreadnoughts to deploy to port and form a single battle line

The Dreadnought *King George V* leads the line

Remaining British battlecruisers remain in the action and continue to fire on their German counterparts

6:33 p.m. Mist and smokescreen allows the German fleet to turn away from Jellicoe's guns

NORTH SEA

The German battlecruisers advance and then turn with the main fleet. Hipper's flagship *Lützow* is badly damaged and leaves the battle line

3 GERMAN ESCAPE

Briefly Scheer turns back toward the British Grand Fleet, but then turns away a second time, disappearing in the fog and smoke. There is no further significant action, and the Germans slip through the British lines at night and escape.

Scheer turns fleet back toward the British. He explains later that he does not want to give the British a chance to chase him while there is daylight

8:15 p.m. Scheer once more gives the order to turn away. This time he orders torpedo boats and cruisers to cover his retreat

Battlecruiser *Lützow* sinks the following day

9:00 p.m. Jellicoe orders fleet south to keep Germans from their home ports, but the Germans manage to pass through the British lines in the dark

7:15pm British battleships are in position to deliver a devastating broadside, but the sun is setting, visibility poor, and Jellicoe is concerned about a torpedo attack

NORTH SEA

THE U-BOAT WAR 1914–18

BRITAIN'S ROYAL NAVY was made inescapably aware of the threat posed by German U-boats on September 5, 1914, when U-21 sank the cruiser *Pathfinder* off eastern Scotland—the first warship ever sunk by a submarine-fired torpedo. Allied naval commanders were slow to face up to the full implications of this event, sometimes disastrously failing to provide large warships with protective destroyer screens. Laxness was eventually replaced by paranoia, with fear of submarines severely inhibiting the operation of surface fleets. The most effective role for U-boats, however, was as commerce raiders. In February 1915 Germany began sinking, without warning, merchant ships in the waters around the British Isles, a practice halted in the face of American protests, but resumed with a vengeance in 1917. U-boats based at Austrian ports in the Adriatic played havoc with Allied merchant shipping in the Mediterranean. The Allies tried various responses from creating anti-submarine barriers across the entrance to the Channel and the exit from the Adriatic to raids on U-boat bases in Belgium. They were inexplicably slow to adopt the best solution: a system of merchant convoys.

WORLD WAR I

SINKING OF ABOUKIR, CRESSY, AND HOGUE

Date September 22, 1914
Forces British: 3 armored cruisers; Germans: 1 submarine
Losses British: 3 armored cruisers; Germans: none

Location Southern North Sea

In September 1914, in the area known as the Broad Fourteens, between the Netherlands and Dogger Bank, a force of British submarines, destroyers, and armored cruisers was on permanent patrol. Their role was to block any attempt by German surface warships to interfere with communications between Britain and continental Europe across the Narrow Seas. The cruisers were obsolescent ships manned mostly by reservists and cadets fresh out of naval college. Their position in the southern North Sea was so obviously exposed that they had been sardonically dubbed the "Live Bait Squadron." By the third week of September heavy seas had led to the withdrawal of their destroyer screen, while the need of one of the cruisers for coaling left only three on patrol: *Aboukir*, *Cressy,* and *Hogue*.

Engine room bell from U-9
Following her surrender in 1918, the bell from the submarine U-9 was engraved with the names of the sunken British cruisers *Aboukir, Cressy,* and *Hogue*.

THREE BEFORE BREAKFAST

Around 6:00 a.m. on September 22, Lieutenant Commander Otto Weddigen, commanding the submarine U-9, sighted the cruisers steaming in line ahead. He dived to close for attack and fired a single torpedo at *Aboukir*. This struck home to such effect that the ship sank within 20 minutes. The captains of the other cruisers, assuming that *Aboukir* had run into a mine, stopped and sent out boats to pick up survivors. At 6:45 a.m. the submarine unleashed more torpedoes against *Hogue*, now a sitting target. The cruiser was struck amidships twice in quick succession, almost breaking her in half. The captain of *Cressy* belatedly attempted to flee, steaming away from the scene of disaster where his ship's boats were still collecting survivors. It was too late, however, for the U-boat immobilized *Cressy* with one torpedo, then sent it to the bottom with a second. There were men rescued from *Aboukir* by *Hogue*, then from *Hogue* by *Cressy*, who were sunk three times.

Weddigen was awarded the Iron Cross for his exploit. He was killed in March 1915 when his submarine U-29 was rammed by the battleship *Dreadnought* in Pentland Firth.

Weddigen medallion
This commemorative German medallion shows a sinking British cruiser, with a portrait of Otto Weddigen on the obverse.

> SUBMARINES ARE UNDERHAND. UNFAIR. AND DAMNED UN-ENGLISH. THE CREWS OF ALL SUBMARINES CAPTURED SHOULD BE TREATED AS PIRATES AND HANGED.
>
> **SIR ARTHUR WILSON**, CONTROLLER OF THE ROYAL NAVY, 1901

Ready for patrol
Otto Weddigen and his crew pictured on board the submarine U-9. A month after sinking the *Aboukir, Cressy,* and *Hogue*, U-9 also sank the British cruiser *Hawke*.

WORLD WAR I

ATTACK ON THE JEAN BART

Date December 21, 1914
Forces French: 1 dreadnought; Austrians: 1 submarine
Losses French: none; Austrians: none

Location Otranto Strait, off southern Italy

Admiral de Lapeyrère, commanding the French Mediterranean fleet at the outset of World War I, was noted for his scorn of submarine warfare and conviction that battleships would be the key to victory. In December 1914 Lapeyrère's flagship, the dreadnought *Jean Bart,* was leading a sweep of the southern Adriatic when an Austrian submarine, U-12, hit the battleship with a single torpedo. The explosion missed the forward magazine and the ship's compartmentalized hull served to keep her afloat. Lapeyrère reached Malta safely, but the damage to one of its most modern warships was a severe shock to the French Navy.

WORLD WAR I

SINKING OF THE LUSITANIA

Date May 7,1915
Forces British: 1 passenger liner; Germans: 1 submarine
Losses British: 1 passenger liner; Germans: none

Location Off Old Head of Kinsale, Ireland

The luxury passenger ship *Lusitania* left New York for Liverpool on May. 1 She had more than 1,900 passengers and crew on board and a very small quantity of ammunition in her cargo hold. On the afternoon of May 7, *Lusitania* was sighted off southern Ireland by Walther Schwieger, commander of the submarine U-20. A single torpedo struck the liner amidships. The ship sank in 18 minutes, killing 1,198 people including 128 Americans and almost 100 children. The sinking was a propaganda disaster for Germany, contributing greatly to the eventual entry of the United States into the war on the Allied side.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

Q-SHIPS

Special Service Vessels, code-named Q-ships by the British Admiralty, were created in response to U-boat attacks on merchant shipping. The Royal Navy took old tramp steamers and other vessels and fitted them with concealed guns. A U-boat coming upon such a vessel would not waste a torpedo on it, but instead closed with it on the surface. Once the U-boat approached, the Q-ship would unveil its guns and open fire. Manned by volunteers, the Q-ships achieved their first success in July 1915. In the course of the war they sank 14 U-boats. One of their unintended effects, however, was to encourage U-boats to sink any merchant vessel without warning.

U-boat trap
Volunteers man a hidden gun on board a Special Service Vessel or Q-ship.

WORLD WAR I

OTRANTO STRAIT

Date May 15, 1917
Forces Austrians: 3 light cruisers, 2 destroyers, 3 U-boats; Allies: 2 light cruisers, 8 destroyers
Losses Austrians: none: Allies: 2 destroyers, 14 trawlers, 1 supply ship

Location Otranto Strait, off southern Italy

The Allies attempted to block U-boats in the Adriatic by establishing a barrier from Otranto in Italy across to the Dalmatian coast. Consisting of trawlers with steel "indicator nets" to detect and entangle submarines and of minefields, the Otranto Barrage was not especially successful, but the anti-submarine trawlers did present a tempting target for raids by Austrian destroyers. In May 1917 Austrian Captain Miklos Horthy planned a heavier raid using three light cruisers, *Novara*, *Helgoland*, and *Saida*. Leaving the port of Cattaro at nightfall on May, 14 the cruisers reached the barrage around 3:30 a.m. and steamed along blowing hapless Allied trawlers out of the water. Two accompanying destroyers sank an Italian munitions ship and its destroyer escort. Heading for home, the Austrians were pursued by an Allied force including the cruisers *Dartmouth* and *Bristol*. *Dartmouth* and two destroyers succeeded in pounding *Novara* to a standstill and Horthy was badly injured. But reports of the approach of a stronger Austrian force led the Allies to break off the action. On the way back to Brindisi, *Dartmouth* was badly damaged by the lurking submarine U-25 and a destroyer was sunk by a mine. *Saida* towed the crippled *Novara* back to Cattaro. The Allies subsequently abandoned night patrols by trawlers on the barrage. Horthy survived to become an admiral and, eventually, dictator of Hungary.

WORLD WAR I

RAIDS ON ZEEBRUGGE AND OSTENDE

Date April 23, 1918
Forces British: 75 ships; Germans: unknown
Losses British: 5 cruisers, 1 submarine; Germans: unknown

Location Ostende and Zeebrugge, northern Belgium

A bold but over-optimistic operation was planned by Commodore Sir Roger Keyes to block the exits from German submarine pens in occupied Belgium. The main effort was focused on Zeebrugge. The plan was to scuttle three blockships loaded with concrete in the mouth of the Bruges Canal, linking the U-boat pens to the sea. The approach to the canal was protected by batteries on Zeebrugge mole, a stone breakwater. These were to be disabled by a party of seamen and Marines landed on the mole by the cruiser *Vindictive* and two modified ferries. The raid was executed on the night of April 22–23. The attack went badly from the start. *Vindictive* was battered by gunfire and ran against the mole in the wrong place. The landing party could not take the batteries, making it hard for the blockships—the aged cruisers *Iphigenia*, *Intrepid*, and *Thetis*— to reach the canal entrance. With heroic effort two of the them were scuttled as planned, but one sank short of its target. The raid on Ostende was less successful, the blockships failing to reach the harbor entrance. The raids were immensely popular in Britain. Keyes was knighted and 11 Victoria crosses were awarded. But it cost 214 lives and failed significantly to inhibit U-boat operations.

German Imperial naval ensign
Taken from the submarine U-155 when she surrendered at Harwich in 1918 after a career in which she sank 42 ships.

Zeebrugge blockships
Although the Zeebrugge raid did briefly block the route of the U-boats down the Bruges Canal, the Germans simply created a channel to move the U-boats around the sunken blockships at high tide.

4

1918 – PRESENT

CARRIERS, SUBMARINES, AND MISSILES

THE LONG-ESTABLISHED TRADITION of naval warfare fought between ships armed with guns was rendered increasingly obsolete in the 20th century by a series of technological innovations. Fleets found a new focus in the form of the aircraft carrier, which replaced the battleship as the capital ship. The introduction of missiles made guns largely redundant and missile-armed submarines became a crucial element in the awesomely destructive nuclear forces of the major powers. The successive transformations of naval warfare in the course of the century brought sea battles to an unprecedented climax in World War II—viewed as a whole, by far the greatest naval conflict in history—then appeared more or less to have abolished them, at least as large-scale engagements between opposing naval forces.

LIMITATION AND EXPANSION

After World War I, defeated Germany was temporarily banned from possessing a navy by the terms of the Versailles Treaty. In an attempt to avoid an expensive arms race between the remaining naval powers, an international agreement on fleet sizes was negotiated at the Washington Conference in 1922. Britain and the United States were accorded parity, with a fleet tonnage of 535,000 tons each, Japan was allowed 315,000 tons, and France and Italy 175,000 tons each. The British Royal Navy's acceptance of equality with America was a stark acknowledgement of Britain's waning power.

Nothing of this worthy attempt at arms limitation survived the rise of aggressive nationalist regimes in Japan, Germany, and Italy in the 1930s. The Japanese became increasingly restive at their restriction to third place in the pecking order and, after trying in vain to overturn this at the London Conference of 1930,

Amphibious landing
US troops disembark from a landing ship onto the Normandy beaches in June 1944. Amphibious operations, often conducted on a vast scale, made a crucial contribution to the Allied victory in WWII.

Hit 'em where it hurts
Naval commanders at the start of World War II were generally complacent about the threat from submarines. By the time this US Submarine Service poster was designed in 1943, however, submarines had more than proved their worth.

abandoned adherence to the Washington Treaty. The rise to power of Adolf Hitler in Germany in 1933 was inevitably followed by German naval rearmament, which Britain tried to control by agreeing to accept construction of a German fleet a third of the size of its own.

DESCENT INTO WAR

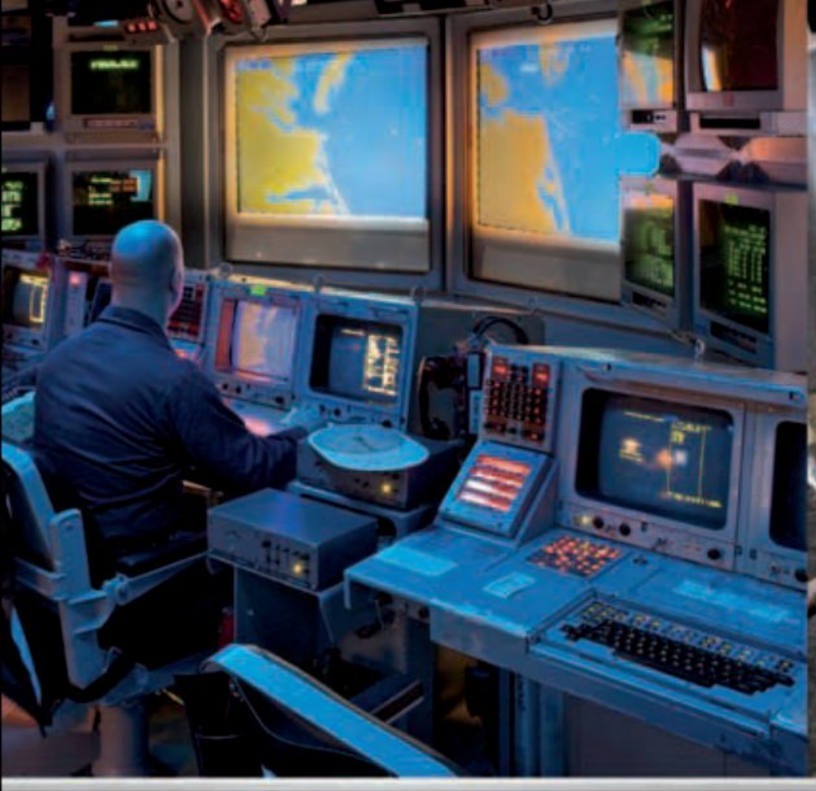
Facing the possibility of having to take on Germany, Japan, and Italy simultaneously, with only France as an ally, Britain was acutely aware that the Royal Navy was no longer adequate to the challenge it might confront. Fortunately for the British, Nazi Germany was only in the early stages of naval expansion when war broke out in 1939. The United States, which had become accustomed to view Japan as its major potential rival at sea, committed itself in 1940 to the creation of a "Two Ocean Navy" —capable of fighting simultaneously against the Japanese in the Pacific and Nazi Germany in the Atlantic. But the expansion of the US Navy was barely under way when the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbor brought America fully into the war at the end of 1941, its destroyers having already begun contributing to Atlantic convoy defense.

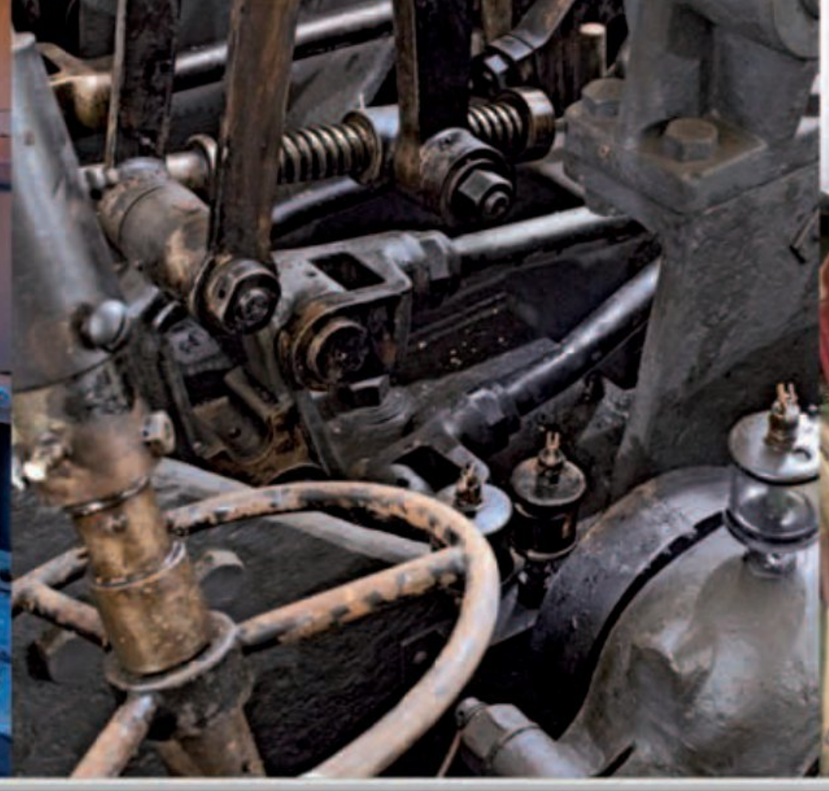
TRANSITIONAL TECHNOLOGY

World War II started at an uncertain transitional moment in the evolution of naval technology and tactics. Submarines had proved their effectiveness in World War I, yet they remained in practice only "submersibles"—craft that could dive but had to spend most of their time on the surface. Even in Germany, there was a reluctance to accord the U-boats top priority, and naval commanders used to focusing on surface warships were often complacent about their ability to cope with the underwater threat. Aircraft meanwhile, although appreciated, were underrated. The United States and Japan had experimented in exercises with the aggressive use of aircraft carriers as a prime strike force capable of crippling an enemy fleet at long range. But there was still a tendency even in those air-conscious fleets to revert to regarding carriers as ancillary to the battleships and cruisers, simply providing reconnaissance or air defence for the big-gun battlewagons. Japanese naval aviation was the most advanced in the world, yet at the end of the 1930s Japan devoted vast resources to building the largest battleships ever seen, the ill-fated Yamato class. A vision of decisive battles between surface fleets with their great guns continued to dominate naval thinking.

In the event, World War II did involve a good number of battles in which exchange of gunfire between large surface warships was crucial, or even the sole action, and in most engagements it played at least a part. But the overwhelming importance of naval air power was clear from start to finish of the conflict.

Sweetheart of the Marianas
Naval air power proved decisive in World War II—the F-4U Corsair fighter-bomber was nicknamed the "sweetheart of the Marianas" by US ground forces for its role in the conquest of the Pacific Islands.





DECLINE OF THE GUNS

It was the Japanese strike on Pearl Harbor that first fully realized the potential of the aircraft carrier. Soon Japan and the United States were fighting naval battles conducted by shipborne aircraft at ranges of several hundred miles. In the Carrier Task Force, surface ships became escort screens for carriers, providing anti-aircraft and anti-submarine defense. Meanwhile submarines, as well as sinking a lot of warships, proved again their effectiveness as commerce raiders, especially for Germany in the Atlantic and the United States in the Pacific—although even submarines proved vulnerable to air power.

Whether under, on, or over the ocean surface, there was no doubting the importance of sea power in World War II. The Allies established dominance over the Atlantic, Mediterranean, and Pacific only after epic struggles. Amphibious operations, both landings and evacuations, were carried out on an unprecedented scale—the big guns of the battleships and cruisers proved above all important for shore bombardment in support of landings. The Allies won the race for technological development, with crucial progress in the use of radar, plus increasingly sophisticated systems of command and control, and superior naval intelligence. But the key to Allied success, in the end, was the astonishing productive power of American shipyards. By the end of the war the US Navy had not only crushed its enemies, but established an overwhelming superiority over its Allies.

COLD WAR AND AFTER

The context for the development of navies in the 40 years after World War II was the Cold War confrontation between the United States and the Soviet Union. The US Navy had to prepare for a possible nuclear war with the Soviets and to counter what America regarded as communist expansionism around the globe. The navy enjoyed the resources made available by American economic dominance, always the ultimate basis for naval power. But the USSR was prepared to devote a large percentage of its lesser national wealth to military development and thus over time created the world's second largest navy, a massive force especially strong in nuclear submarines. However, as a war between the two superpowers was ruled out by nuclear weapons, which made an all-out armed struggle between them in practice unwinnable, the Soviet Navy never fired a shot in anger. The US Navy by contrast saw plenty of action during the Cold War, notably in support of land operations in "limited" wars in Korea and Vietnam. Britain became America's subordinate ally, the Royal Navy still the third-largest naval force in the

Hunter-killer submarine
The Los Angeles-class nuclear-powered submarine *Salt Lake City* on exercises in 2005. The class was introduced during the Cold War as hunter-killers to track, and if necessary destroy, Soviet ballistic missile submarines.

Soviet submariner's uniform
The focus of the Soviet Navy during the Cold War was on matching the nuclear submarine and missile capacity of the United States.

Night vision goggles
A pair of World War II night vision goggles for use on board submarines during secret missions.

1922
Washington Naval Treaty places strict limits on tonnages of warships for major naval powers after World War I

1934
Japan announces intention to withdraw from the Naval Treaties

1935
Anglo-German naval agreement allows Germany to strengthen its fleet

1939
Britain and France declare war on Germany. Within hours, German U-boat sinks British cruise ship, marking the start of U-boat warfare in the Atlantic

1941
Attack by Japanese carrier aircraft on US fleet at Pearl Harbor brings US into WWII

1942
Battle of the Coral Sea is the first battle between fleets of carriers in which neither side's ships exchange direct fire or have visual contact with opposing fleet

1944
First kamikaze suicide attacks by Japanese aviators against Allied shipping

1950
The largest amphibious landing since WWII takes place at Inchon in Korea, supported by a United Nations backed force of 230 ships

1954
First nuclear powered submarine launched, USS *Nautilus*

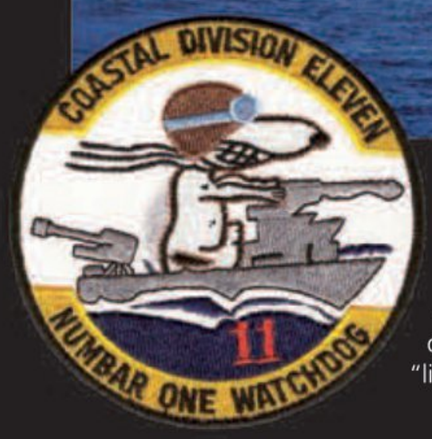
1955
Soviet Union fires first submarine-launched ballistic missile

1960
Nuclear-powered submarine USS *Triton* completes first submerged circumnavigation of the globe

1964
US Congress approves war in Vietnam

1920 1930 1940 1950 1960

Missile warfare
The Nimitz-class aircraft carrier USS *Abraham Lincoln* fires a RIM-7 Sea Sparrow surface-to-air missile. Missiles have largely superseded guns as the primary air and surface defense on board modern warships.



Vietnam patch
America's war in Vietnam saw an increasing focus on coastal and riverine warfare—and the formation of naval units dedicated to fighting in these "littoral" environments.

world but only just capable of independent action—as it showed in the Falklands War in 1981. The end of the Cold War in the late 1980s left the US Navy with an absolute predominance over any potential enemies, though with plenty of work for its aircraft and missiles to perform in support of global interventions, especially in the troubled Middle East.

CHANGING NAVIES

Battleships for many years continued to function in a shore bombardment role, but the capital ships of the postwar era were unquestionably carriers and submarines. Carriers grew in size to accommodate jet aircraft—although jump jets and helicopters enabled all kinds of smaller warships to mount their own aircraft—and were equipped with nuclear engines that gave them almost unlimited operational range.

Genuine submarines, in the sense of a vessel capable of sustained operations underwater, were brought into service by Germany at the end of World War II, but it was nuclear power that really made submarines come into their own. Nuclear submarines, much bigger than their predecessors, could travel under the sea almost indefinitely. They diverged into two types: those armed with ballistic missiles that formed part of the "nuclear deterrent" and hunter-killer submarines, chiefly to be used to hunt an enemy's submarine forces.

The demise of the big guns did not mean that the only valid surface warships were carriers. Frigates, reintroduced during World War II, and destroyers continued to fulfill a vital role as platforms for anti-submarine, anti-ship, and anti-aircraft missiles, as well as mounting nuclear and non-nuclear land attack missiles. The predominance of missiles was such that by the 1970s some warships were being built with no guns at all—but this proved a momentary aberration. The use of missiles, with their guidance systems and the countermeasures they required, was necessarily linked to massively sophisticated systems of communications and control. Combat was in the hands of men or women sitting in front of computer screens in control rooms who would never see the enemy they fought. By the 1991 Gulf War, shore bombardment was being conducted at ranges of hundreds of miles not only by naval aircraft but also by Tomahawk cruise missiles.

THE 21ST-CENTURY NAVY

By the 21st century it was fair to say that, in terms of world power, the US Navy was the only force that really counted. The navy that took part in attacks on Afghanistan and Iraq was a refined instrument of global power-projection. Its crews, ratings as well as officers, consisted mostly of educated people—women as well as men from 1993—exercising some special skill. Many were operating electronic gadgetry related to sensors and guidance systems, control and communications. Manual labor formed only a relatively small part of life on board any warship. Even on submarines, crew experienced conditions—in terms of food, comfort, and medical care—far more civilized than any of their historical predecessors. What role this superbly trained and equipped navy would find to play in the context of the "War on Terror" remained open to question.

Missile keys
The set of keys used to arm the Polaris nuclear missile on board the ballistic missile submarine HMS *Repulse*.

1973
US troops complete withdrawl from Vietnam

1973
Israeli missile boats sink several Syrian ships near Latakia in first engagement between boats using surface-to-surface missiles and electronic countermeasures

1982
Falklands War between Argentina and UK: sinking of a British destroyer by Exocet missile illustrates the vulnerability of surface craft to anti-ship missiles

1988
US Navy attacks Iranian oil platforms in the Gulf in retaliation for Iranian minelaying

1990
Iraqi invasion of Kuwait sparks the First Gulf War

1991
Collapse of Soviet Union leaves USA as the world's only naval superpower

2001
Muslim extremists destroy World Trade Center in New York

2001
US invasion of Afghanistan begins, supported by carrier groups in the Gulf

2003
US invasion of Iraq opens the Second Gulf War

2006
USS *Freedom* launched, the first ship in US Navy's next generation of Littoral Combat Ships

1970 | 1980 | 1990 | 2000 | 2010

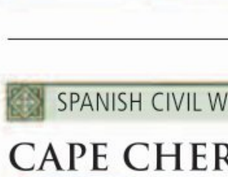
Soviet submarine
An Akula-class nuclear-powered attack submarine, deployed by the Soviet Navy in 1986.

EUROPE BETWEEN THE WARS

AFTER THE END of hostilities with Germany in 1918, the British and French toyed with intervention in Russia against the Bolshevik regime, then engaged in conflicts on its western borders. The commitment of naval forces in the Baltic and the Black Sea brought little positive result besides a demonstration of British fighting spirit in a raid on Kronstadt. A mutiny aboard the French battleships *Jean Bart* and *France* in the Black Sea in April 1919 hastened disillusionment with interventionism and pressure to demobilize. No further naval conflict occurred in Europe until 1936, when right-wing Nationalist officers in Spain rebelled against the left-wing government of the Republic. Nazi Germany and Fascist Italy gave the Nationalists military support while the Soviet Union backed the Republic, and Britain and France operated a "non-intervention" policy. The Spanish navy split like the rest of the country and elements of it fought one another. Aided by Germany and Italy, which deployed submarines to attack Republican convoys, the Nationalists had the better of the naval war, although this was marginal to their eventual victory in 1939.

RUSSIAN CIVIL WAR

RAID ON KRONSTADT



Date August 18, 1919
Forces British: 1 carrier, 8 coastal motor boats; Russians: 1 dreadnought, 1 pre-dreadnought, and many other vessels
Losses: British: 3 coastal motor boats; Russians: 1 dreadnought, 1 pre-dreadnought, 1 depot ship

Location Kronstadt, Baltic

The British navy developed Coastal Motor Boats (CMBs) during World War I, small torpedo craft designed to attack warships in harbor. After the war Lieutenant Augustus Agar was sent to the Baltic with two CMBs to help the British secret service destabilize the revolutionary Bolshevik government in Russia. Agar made a night raid on the Russian naval base at Kronstadt on June 17, 1919, sinking the cruiser *Oleg*.

Rear Admiral Sir Walter Cowan was commanding a Royal Navy force in the Baltic blockading the Russian navy in Kronstadt. Inspired by Agar's example, he had a flotilla of CMBs brought from Britain. Led by Commander Claude Dobson, they attacked Kronstadt on the night of August 18-19, supported by aircraft from the carrier *Vindictive*. Dobson led the first wave of four boats into the harbor. His CMB 31 torpedoed the pre-dreadnought *Andrei Pervozvanny*. CMB 88 had her captain killed but Sub-Lieutenant Gordon Steele, taking control under heavy fire, torpedoed the dreadnought battleship *Petropavlovsk*. A second wave of CMBs faced intensifying Russian resistance. Two boats collided in the dark and another was cut in two by a shell. Both Steele and Dobson were awarded Victoria Crosses for their part in the raid.

Depot ship sunk
The British motor boats attacking Kronstadt sank the submarine depot ship *Pamyat Azova* as well as dreadnought and pre-dreadnought battleships.

SPANISH CIVIL WAR

CAPE ESPARTEL

Date September 29, 1936
Forces Republicans: 3 destroyers; Nationalists: 2 cruisers
Losses Republicans: 1 destroyer; Nationalists: none

Location Straits of Gibraltar

At the start of the Spanish Civil War Republican sailors took control of many naval vessels and blocked the movement of Nationalist troops by sea from Spanish Morocco to southern Spain. At the Atlantic port of El Ferrol Nationalists won control of warships including the light cruiser *Almirante Cervera* and heavy cruiser *Canarias*. Under Captain Francisco Moreno, the two ships sailed to the Straits of Gibraltar and attacked a Republican flotilla. *Almirante Ferrandiz* was sunk and another destroyer, *Gravina*, severely damaged. The rest fled for safety, leaving the sea route between North Africa and Spain open for Nationalist forces.

SPANISH CIVIL WAR

CAPE CHERCHELL

Date September 7, 1937
Forces Republicans: 2 light cruisers, 4 destroyers; Nationalists: 1 heavy cruiser
Losses Republicans: none; Nationalists: none

Location Off Cape Cherchell, Algeria

The Nationalist heavy cruiser *Baleares* intercepted a Republican convoy of four supply ships escorted by the light cruisers *Libertad* and *Mendez Nuñez* and four destroyers. Although outnumbered, *Baleares* engaged the Republican cruisers. *Libertad* scored a hit that damaged *Baleares*'s electronics, temporarily disabling her guns. The Republican cruisers took the opportunity to steam after the convoy, but they were later caught again by *Baleares*, pursuing with her electronics repaired. Suffering further damage, the Nationalist cruiser broke off the engagement and, joined by the cruiser *Canarias*, sailed back to port at Malaga.

SPANISH CIVIL WAR

CAPE PALOS

Date March 5–6, 1938
Forces Republicans: 2 light cruisers, 5 destroyers; Nationalists: 2 heavy cruisers, 1 light cruiser
Losses Republicans: none: Nationalists: 2 heavy cruisers, 1 light cruiser

Location Off Cartagena, Spain

On the night of March 5-6, 1938, the cruisers *Baleares*, *Canarias*, and *Almirante Cervera*, under the command of Rear Admiral Manuel de Vierna, were escorting two Italian freighters to Nationalist Spain. At the same time a Republican force of cruisers and destroyers under Vice Admiral Luis de Ubieta left the port of Cartagena, intending to raid the Nationalist harbor at Palma on Mallorca.

Just after midnight the two naval forces ran into one another. The Republicans fruitlessly fired a number of torpedoes before the Nationalist cruisers disappeared into the darkness. Around 2:15 a.m. the two forces met again. Neither side was capable of effective gun-aiming at night but the Nationalist cruiser *Baleares* made the mistake of opening fire and the gun flashes provided a target for the Republican destroyers to aim for. Three destroyers fired a total of 12 torpedoes, two of which struck *Baleares*, blowing up the forward magazine and the bridge. Admiral Manuel de Vierna was among those killed.

Blazing from stem to stern, *Baleares* was almost run into by her fellow cruiser *Canarias*, following directly behind. *Canarias* and *Almirante Cervera* quit the scene, leaving *Baleares* to her fate. Fortunately there were two British destroyers in the area that rescued more than half of the sinking cruiser's 765 crew. The Republican ships meanwhile returned to port at Cartagena, allowing *Canarias* and *Almirante Cervera* to return at dawn to collect the survivors, transferring them to the Nationalist cruisers under Republican air attack. The battle of Cape Palos was a Republican success but had no strategic consequences.

Attack on Cartagena
Spanish Nationalists bomb the Republican naval base at Cartagena near Cape Palos. The battle of Cape Palos in 1938 was the last Republican victory in a war that the Republic was losing.

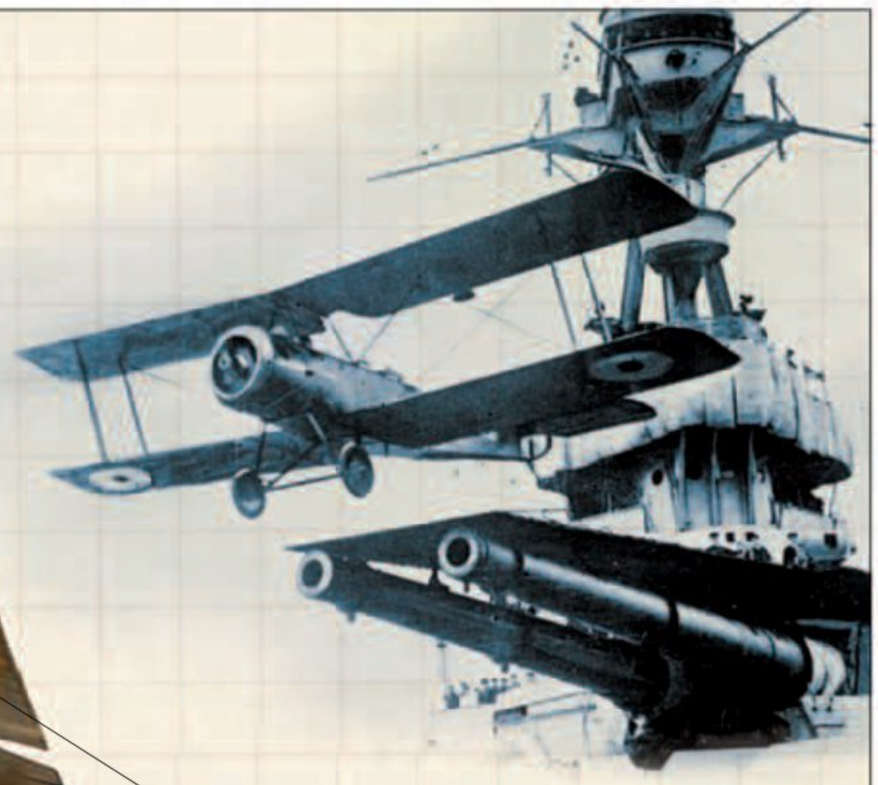
WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

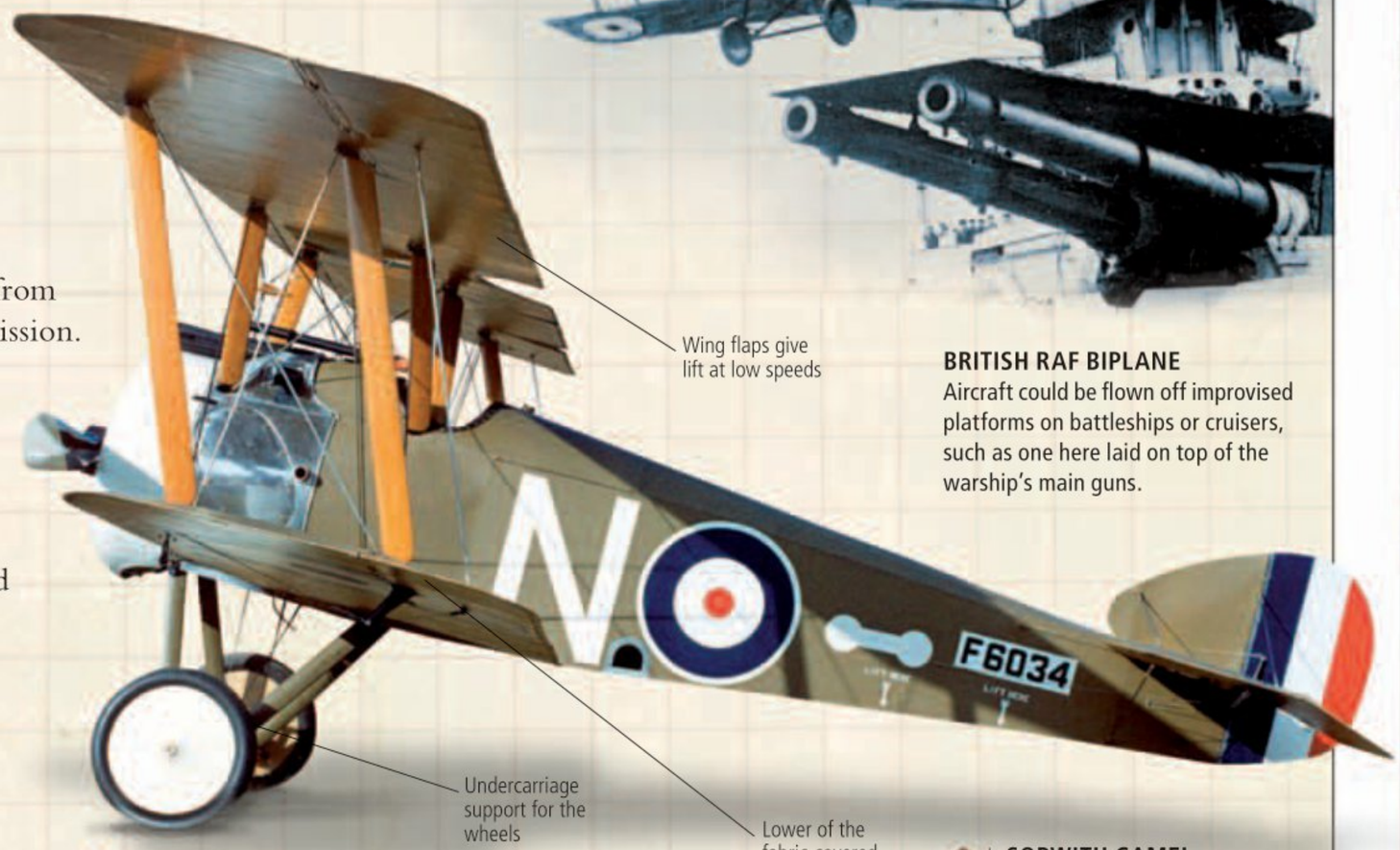
EARLY NAVAL AVIATION

AMERICAN FLIER EUGENE ELY demonstrated in 1910–11 that it was possible to take off from and land on the deck of a ship. Navies were quick to see the usefulness of aircraft, especially for reconnaissance, and adopted both airships and heavier-than-air machines. In 1911 the French navy introduced the first ship to carry float planes and in 1914 Britain's Royal Naval Air Service was founded.

EARLY NAVAL AIRCRAFT

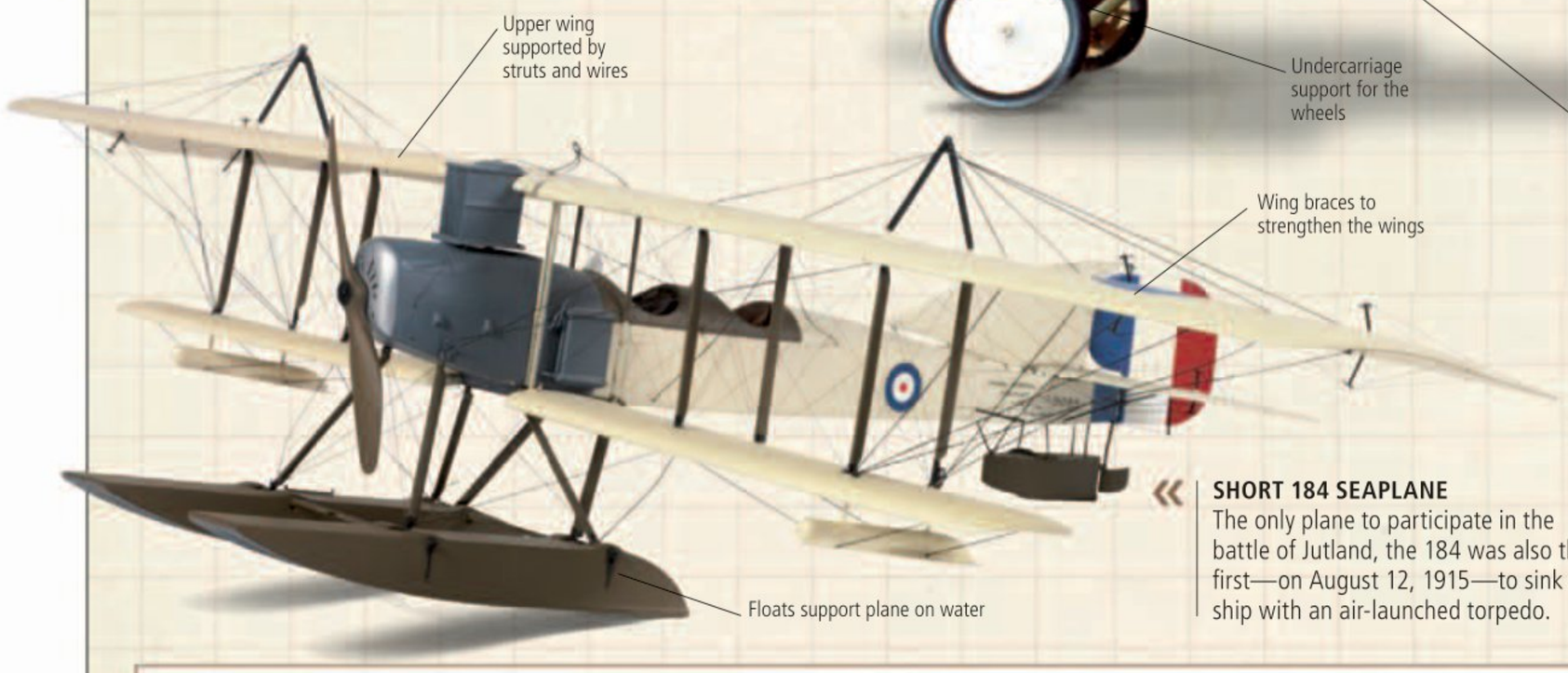
Float planes were used from the start of World War I. Lowered over the side of a seaplane tender to take off from the water, they were lifted back on board after their mission. Unfortunately, the float planes could only operate in optimum weather conditions. A heavy swell made landing and take-off impossible. The lightweight wood-and-canvas aircraft of the period were relatively easy to launch from an improvised platform on a ship, but safe landing was only just being mastered as the war ended. Thus even ship-launched machines had to be retrieved from the sea after a mission.





BRITISH RAF BIPLANE
Aircraft could be flown off improvised platforms on battleships or cruisers, such as one here laid on top of the warship's main guns.

SOPWITH CAMEL
The Sopwith 2F.1 could be split in two just behind the cockpit so it could be more easily moved and stored on the carriers of the period.

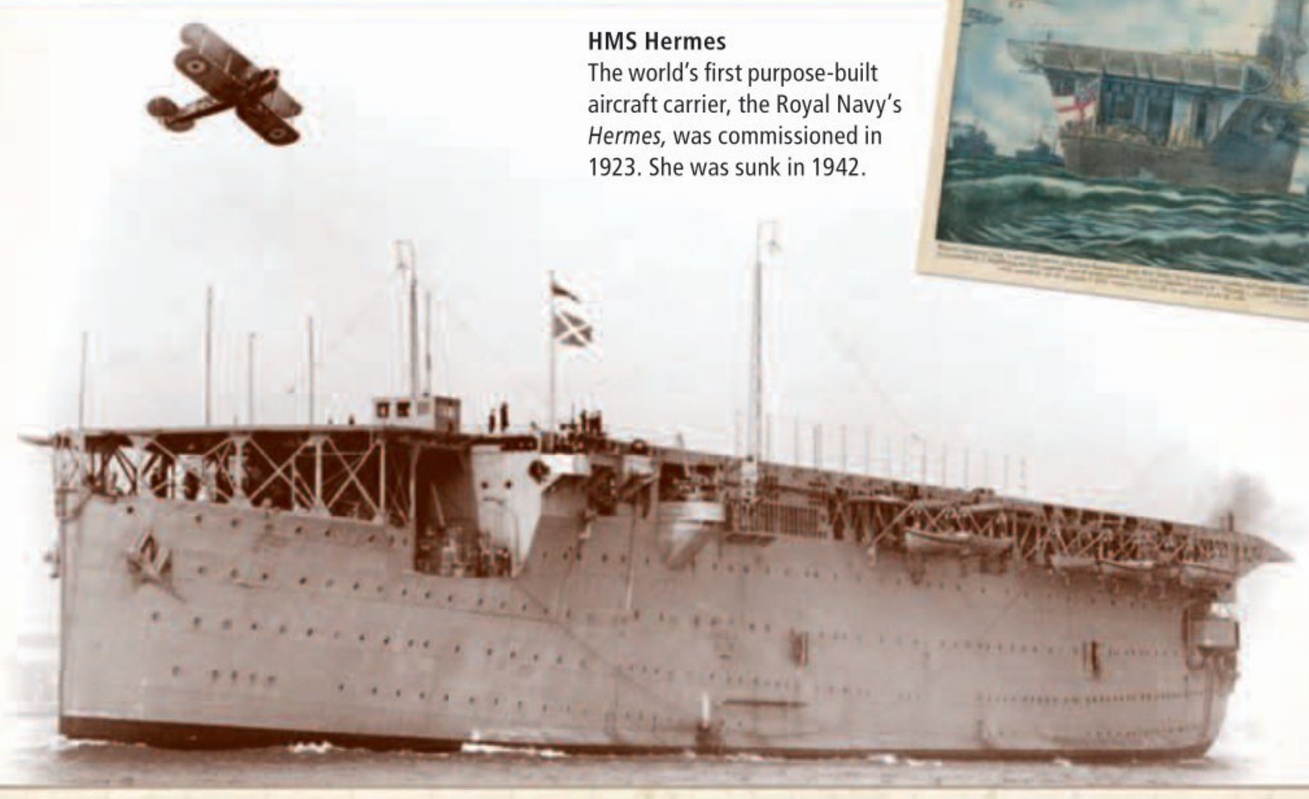


SHORT 184 SEAPLANE
The only plane to participate in the battle of Jutland, the 184 was also the first—on August 12, 1915—to sink a ship with an air-launched torpedo.

CARRIER CONVERSIONS

The first carriers evolved from experiments by the Royal Navy Air Service in 1916. The decks of the battlecruiser *Furious* were cleared to make a platform for take-off and landing, but it was found that the funnel and central superstructure created insuperable problems for pilots. In 1918 the British converted an Italian liner into the carrier *Argus*, with a funnel tucked away at the end of a long unobstructed deck. The US Navy followed this example with the converted collier *Langley*—dubbed the "covered wagon"—in 1922. A superstructure offset to starboard was generally adopted in the 1920s, but most carriers continued to be conversions— the US Navy's *Lexington* and *Saratoga*, for example, started life as battlecruisers.

HMS Argus
Built in 1916, the British aircraft carrier *Argus* was the first carrrier to have a flush deck that let wheeled planes take off and land safely.



HMS Hermes
The world's first purpose-built aircraft carrier, the Royal Navy's *Hermes*, was commissioned in 1923. She was sunk in 1942.

WORLD WAR II: THE WEST

Coming up for air
German U-boats were used mainly for economic warfare against Allied merchant shipping. With U-boat war patrols lasting between three weeks and six months, any opportunities to get outside for fresh air were welcomed.

British binnacle compass
Nicknamed "Faithful Freddie," this submarine compass has a binnacle cover and two iron correcting spheres to protect it from magnetic distortion caused by the submarine's iron hull.

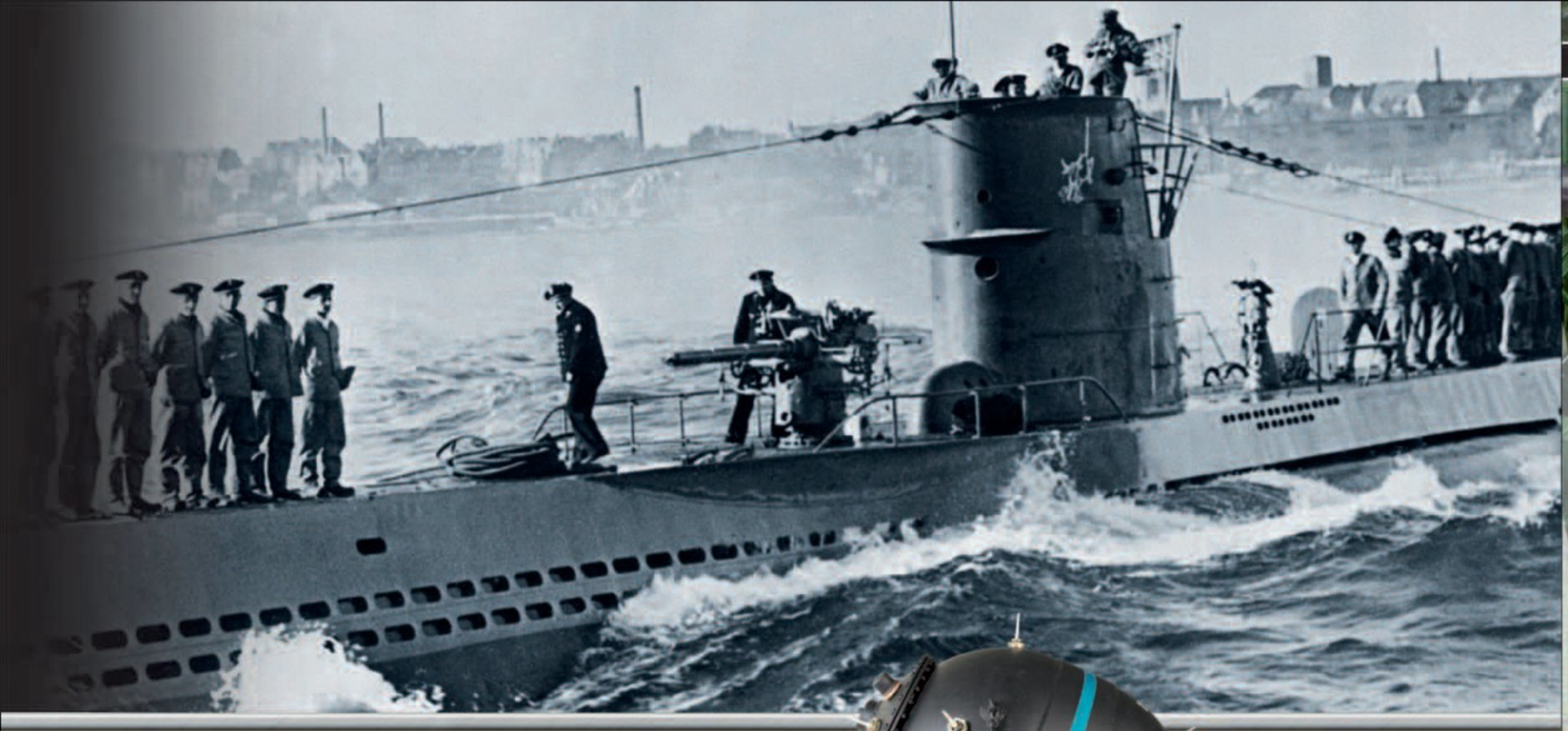
THE OUTBREAK OF World War II in 1939 came too early for the German navy, which was looking forward to completing a large-scale expansion program by the mid-1940s. Yet Britain's Royal Navy found itself fighting a defensive war on increasingly difficult terms. Germany's military successes in 1940 gave it control of the Norwegian side of the North Sea, France's Atlantic ports, and the southern Channel coast, and deprived the Royal Navy of the support of the French fleet. With Italy also entering the war, British naval forces were desperately stretched. German U-boats came close to severing Britain's lifeline across the Atlantic through the savaging of merchant convoys. Yet while in World War I the Royal Navy had performed disappointingly, despite its superiority, in World War II it showed endurance and aggression under the most demanding circumstances.

WEAKNESSES AT SEA

The Royal Navy entered the war with some serious drawbacks. Failing to learn from the experience of World War I, the British had inadequate numbers of smaller ships for convoy escort duties to combat U-boats. Too much faith had been put in sonar underwater detection equipment and depth charges as a miracle cure for submarine attack. Corvettes and then frigates were rushed into service to fill this gap, while Canada made an invaluable contribution to convoy defense, followed by the United States from 1941. British inter-war neglect of carrier aircraft—a result of putting them under RAF rather than navy control up to 1937—resulted in the Fleet Air Arm entering the war with some excellent carriers but obsolescent aircraft. On the other side, Germany was slow to put sufficient resources into U-boats, and the Italian navy suffered from technical deficiencies including absence of radar and inadequate intelligence as well as poor command at the highest levels.

COURAGE AND AGGRESSION

Germany's surface fleet was never powerful enough to challenge the Royal Navy in the way its World War I predecessor had at Jutland. After heavy losses of destroyers in the 1940 Norwegian campaign the German navy was in no position to engage in fleet actions or cover a seaborne invasion of Britain. Its fast modern warships, used as surface raiders, were a serious threat to vital shipping lanes early in the war but they



Moored contact mine
Contact mines such as this were triggered by passing vessels brushing against the protruding horns. Other types of mine were set off by the magnetic field of a ship's hull.

were gradually hunted down and destroyed, if at considerable cost. The Royal Navy also inflicted heavy losses on Italian warships in a number of bold actions. But the use of submarines and air power denied the British command of the sea. Although the Germans had no carriers, land-based Luftwaffe aircraft proved their deadly effectiveness against the Royal Navy in the Norwegian campaign, at Dunkirk, and in the Mediterranean, especially during the evacuation of Crete in 1941 in which 24 British warships were sunk or badly damaged by air attack. Mines were rendered less effective than in World War I through the adoption of effective countermeasures by 1940, but Axis submarines took their toll of warships as well as merchant shipping—Royal Navy ships lost to U-boat attack included the battleships *Royal Oak* and *Barham* and the carriers *Courageous* and *Ark Royal*. Convoys had to be escorted through the Mediterranean, across the Atlantic, and into the Arctic under both submarine and air attack, grueling and costly operations to keep lifelines open. It was not until 1943, more than a year after America's entry into the war, that the Allies established effective command of the Atlantic and Mediterranean. Even then much was owed to air power—the battle of the Atlantic was not won until escort carriers and long-range aircraft brought the whole ocean under cover of air patrol. The landings at Normandy in June 1944 were a staggering demonstration of naval power, but the operation depended on command of the air. The impressive productivity of Allied shipyards, especially those of the United States, meant that the odds mounted overwhelmingly against Germany as time passed. The U-boats never ceased to operate, with superior design even giving them a fresh lease of life in 1945, but it was far too little and too late.

Atlantic convoy
Allied survival during the war relied on a steady flow of supplies across the Atlantic. To defend merchant vessels from U-boat attack they were organized into convoys under the protection of warship escorts.

WARSHIP BATTLES 1939–45

THE GERMAN NAVY was not capable of a fleet battle with the British Royal Navy in World War II. Germany possessed only a handful of large warships, no carriers, and an inadequate number of destroyers. But the best German ships were modern, fast, and heavily armed for their size. Despite the loss of *Graf Spee* at the River Plate in December 1939, commerce raiding by German warships such as *Scharnhorst* and *Gneisenau* was frighteningly effective in the first 18 months of the war. The hunting down and sinking of the battleship *Bismarck* in May 1941 was a turning point. Although substantial Royal Navy forces were tied down by the need to neutralize the threat posed by the presence of warships such as *Scharnhorst* and *Tirpitz* in the Norwegian fjords, Hitler lost all faith in his surface ships. Admiral Erich Raeder, who had masterminded the creation of the German fleet, was replaced as commander-in-chief by U-boat advocate Admiral Karl Dönitz in January 1943. From then onward the German warships were the hunted rather than the hunters. The mighty *Tirpitz* was eventually sunk without ever having fired its guns against an enemy ship.

THE BATTLE OF THE RIVER PLATE

WORLD WAR II

BATTLE OF THE RIVER PLATE

Date	December 13, 1939
Location	South Atlantic off Uruguay and Argentina
Result	British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	GERMANY

COMMANDERS

Henry Harwood	Hans Langsdorff

FORCES

Ships: 1 heavy cruiser, 2 light cruisers	**Ships:** 1 pocket battleship

LOSSES

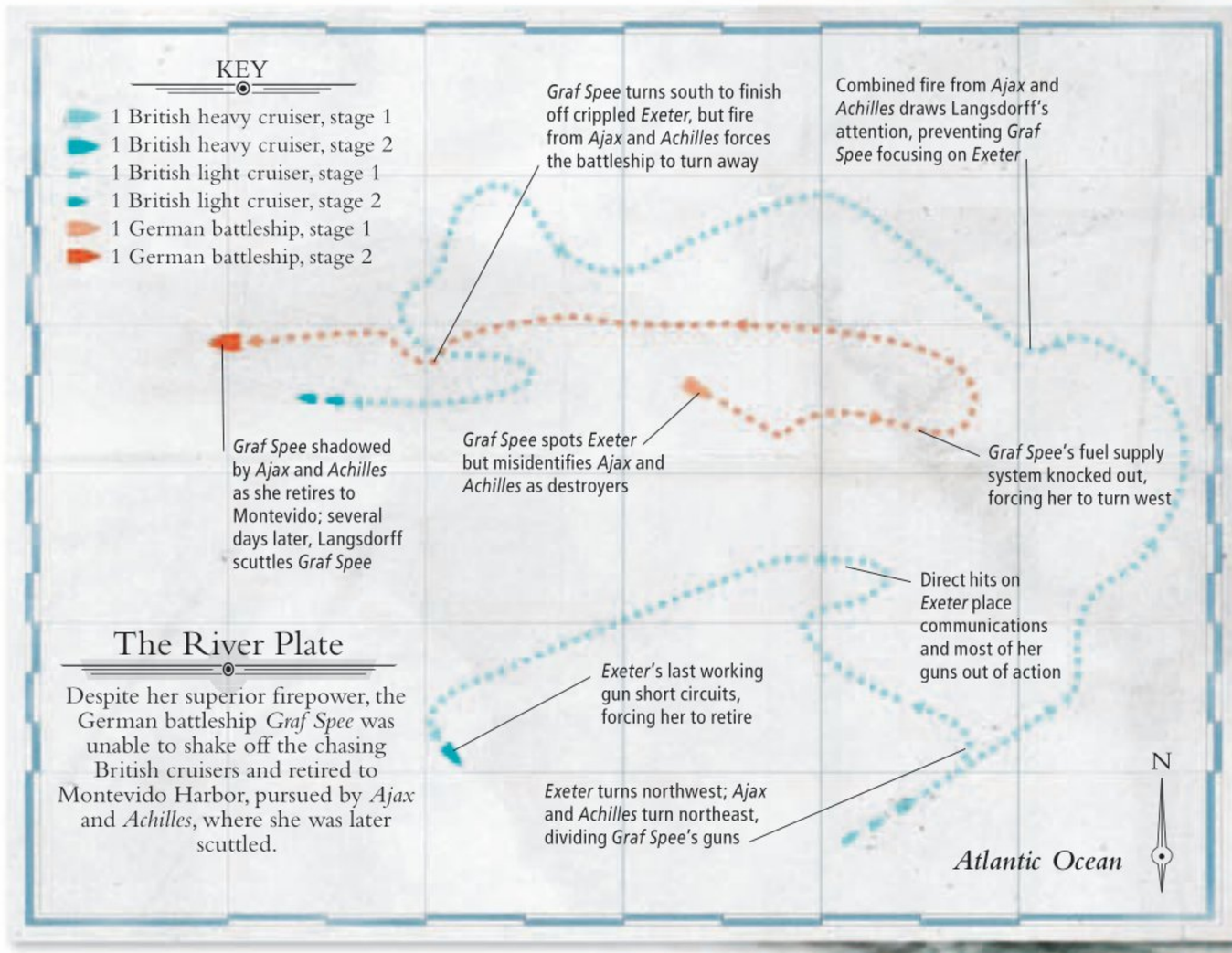
Men: 100 casualties	**Men:** 96 casualties **Ships:** 1 pocket battleship later scuttled

In the early months of World War II, the Deutschland-class pocket battleship *Admiral Graf Spee* was engaged in commerce raiding in the Indian Ocean and the South Atlantic. Under the command of Captain Hans Langsdorff, the German warship sank nine merchant ships, while chivalrously ensuring that there was no loss of life.

At around 6:15 a.m. on the morning of December 13, 1939, a lookout on *Graf Spee* sighted a cruiser and, it was initially believed, two destroyers. The ships were in fact the Royal Navy's Force G, consisting of the heavy cruiser *Exeter* and the light cruisers *Ajax* and *Achilles*, the latter belonging to the New Zealand Division. Led by Commodore Henry Harwood on board *Ajax*, the cruiser squadron had been hunting for the German commerce raider and correctly guessed it might be lurking off the estuary of the River Plate between Argentina and Uruguay. The Royal Navy ships were outgunned by *Graf Spee*: the pocket battleship had 11-in main guns, compared with *Exeter*'s 8-in and the 6-in armament of the two light cruisers. In the true tradition of the Royal Navy, however, Harwood unhesitatingly attacked. He split his force, with *Exeter* steaming to the south of *Graf Spee* and the cruisers *Ajax* and *Achilles* maneuvering to the north.

Glory of the Navy
The sinking of the *Graf Spee* was a huge boost for British morale. This commemorative magazine celebrates "How we beat the *Graf Spee*."

Fire opened within minutes as the range closed, *Graf Spee* initially focusing upon *Exeter* as the greater threat. The heavy cruiser was soon in trouble. Its bridge was swept by shrapnel, leaving the ship's captain, F. S. Bell, as one of the few survivors. Guns were put out of action, communications destroyed, and fires started. *Ajax* and *Achilles* forced Langsdorff to divide his fire, depending on their speed to survive as salvoes fell around them. By around 7:40 a.m. *Exeter* could no longer fight and limped away from the battle. But without knowing it, *Exeter*'s gunners had succeeded in scoring a crucial hit on *Graf Spee*, destroying her fuel processing system. Langsdorff knew he could not long remain at sea without repairs and headed west for the River Plate. Damaged and short of



The River Plate

Despite her superior firepower, the German battleship *Graf Spee* was unable to shake off the chasing British cruisers and retired to Montevido Harbor, pursued by *Ajax* and *Achilles*, where she was later scuttled.

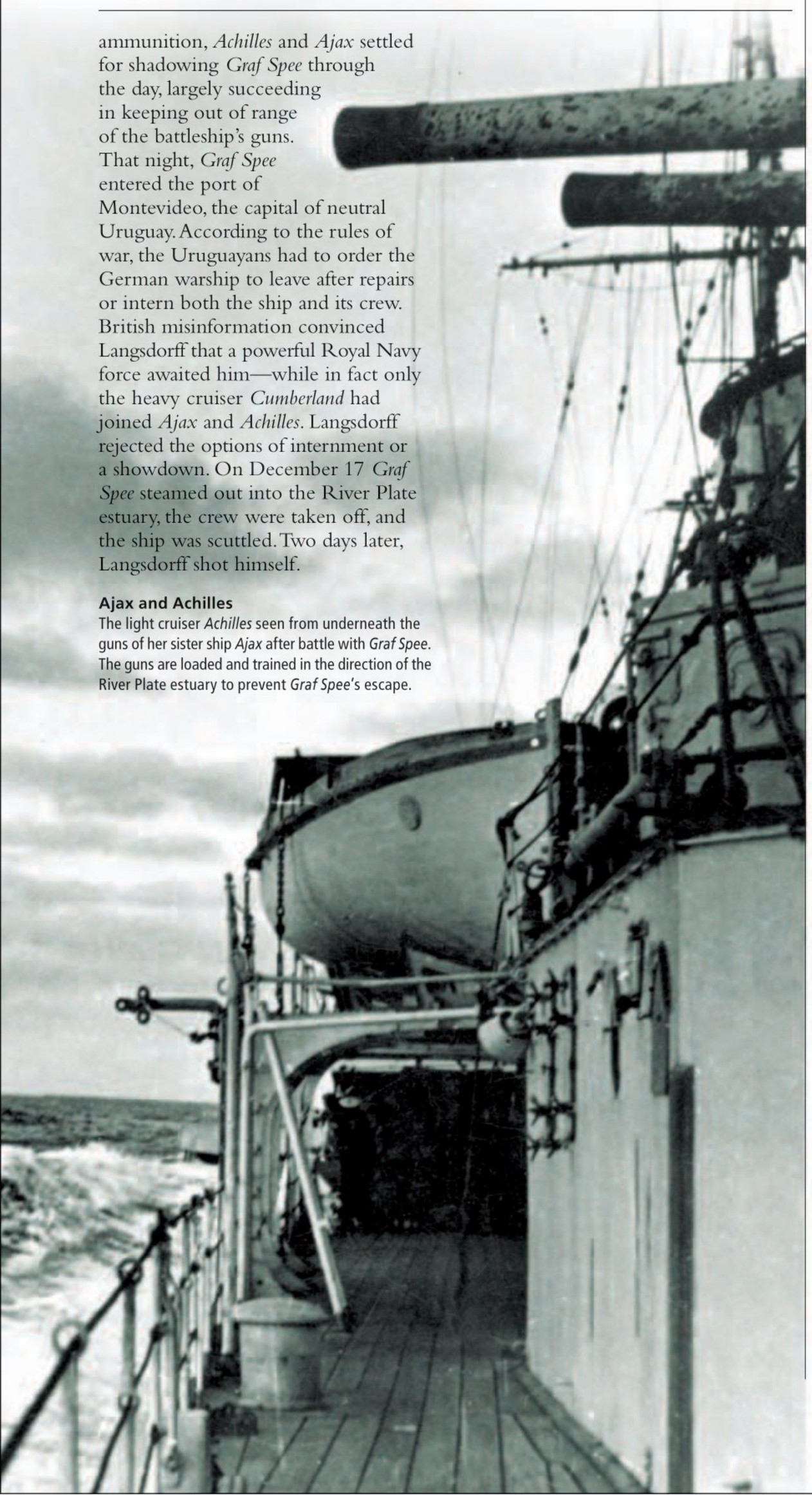
WORLD WAR II

CHANNEL DASH 1942

Location The English Channel

Date February 11–13, 1942
Forces Germans: 2 battlecruisers, 1 heavy cruiser, 6 destroyers, 40 other vessels; British: 9 destroyers, 32 motor torpedo boats
Losses Germans: 17 aircraft; British: 42 aircraft

The German battlecruisers *Scharnhorst* and *Gneisenau* and the heavy cruiser *Prinz Eugen* were ordered to return to Germany from Brest through the Channel. Under Vice Admiral Otto Ciliax, they left port late on the night of February 11-12 and sailed 300 miles (480 km) down the Channel before they were detected, even though the British had been expecting their move. They dodged fire from shore guns and brushed off destroyers and torpedo boats. A gallant attack by six Fairey Swordfish biplanes led by Lieutenant Commander Eugene Esmond also failed and all the aircraft were shot down. Despite hitting a number of mines, the ships successfully reached home, to the great embarrassment of the Royal Navy.



Ajax and Achilles
The light cruiser *Achilles* seen from underneath the guns of her sister ship *Ajax* after battle with *Graf Spee*. The guns are loaded and trained in the direction of the River Plate estuary to prevent *Graf Spee*'s escape.

ammunition, *Achilles* and *Ajax* settled for shadowing *Graf Spee* through the day, largely succeeding in keeping out of range of the battleship's guns. That night, *Graf Spee* entered the port of Montevideo, the capital of neutral Uruguay. According to the rules of war, the Uruguayans had to order the German warship to leave after repairs or intern both the ship and its crew. British misinformation convinced Langsdorff that a powerful Royal Navy force awaited him—while in fact only the heavy cruiser *Cumberland* had joined *Ajax* and *Achilles*. Langsdorff rejected the options of internment or a showdown. On December 17 *Graf Spee* steamed out into the River Plate estuary, the crew were taken off, and the ship was scuttled. Two days later, Langsdorff shot himself.

WORLD WAR II

ATTACKS ON TIRPITZ

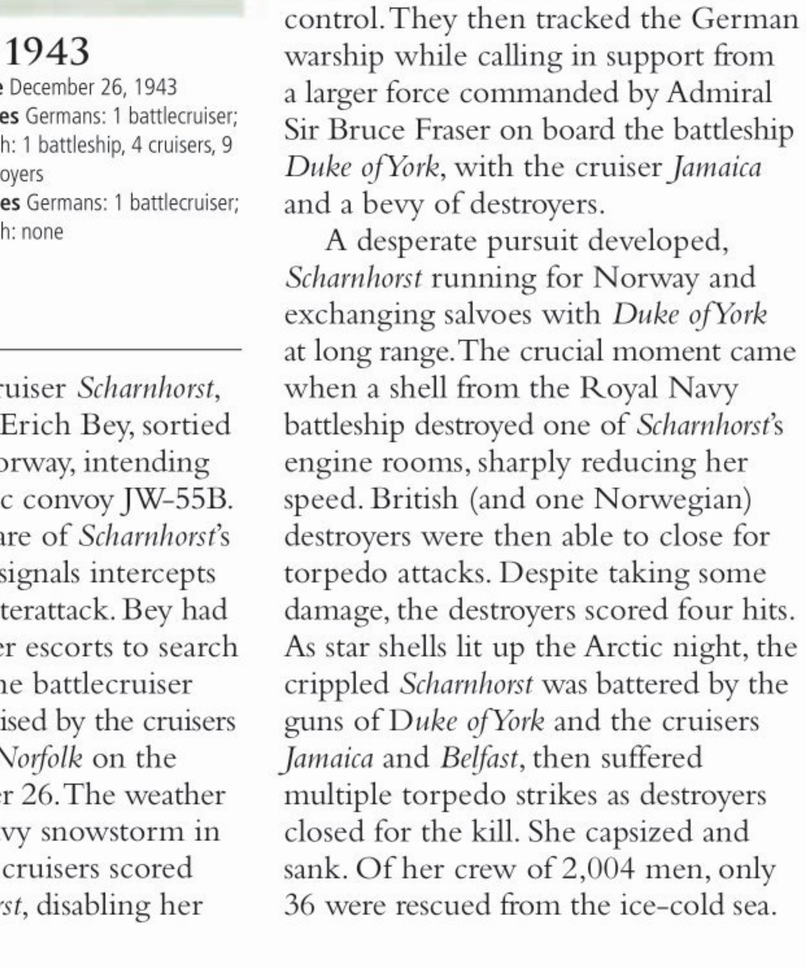
Location Kafjord and Altenfjord, Norway

Date September 22, 1943; April 3,1944
Forces Germans: 1 pocket battleship; British: 6 submarines, 6 midget submarines, 6 fleet and escort carriers, 2 battleships, 2 cruisers, 16 destroyers
Losses Germans: none; British: 5 midget submarines, 3 aircraft

From early 1942 the German pocket battleship *Tirpitz* was stationed in northern Norway, posing a threat to British Arctic convoys. The Royal Navy tried to sink *Tirpitz* in the fjords, twice inflicting serious damage. In September 1943 six X-craft—midget submarines with a three-man crew—were towed across the North Sea by conventional submarines. Two X-craft were lost en route but the rest made their run into Kafjord, steering a hazardous course through a minefield and past listening posts. One of the X-craft was sunk by gunfire and another failed to locate a target, but X-6 and X-7, commanded by Lieutenant Donald Cameron and Lieutenant Basil Place, succeeded in laying their explosive charges beneath *Tirpitz*'s hull. These exploded, causing substantial damage that put the ship out of action for six months. The crews of the X-craft survived but were captured. Cameron and Place received the Victoria Cross.

OPERATION TUNGSTEN

Another attack on *Tirpitz* was carried out by the Fleet Air Arm in April 1944. The fleet carriers *Victorious* and *Furious*, supported by a powerful force including two battleships, launched 40 Fairey Barracuda dive-bombers with fighter escorts in two waves. The fighters strafed *Tirpitz* and the Barracudas dropped both general-purpose and armor-piercing bombs, the latter disappointingly failing to penetrate the battleship's deck. *Tirpitz* suffered more than 400 casualties and was put out of action for a further month. She was finally sunk by the Royal Air Force on November 12, 1944.



Hidden menace
The huge Bismarck-class battleship *Tirpitz* spent much of the war in the fjords of German-occupied Norway, where her mere presence was a threat to the Allied Arctic convoys.

WORLD WAR II

NORTH CAPE 1943

Location Off northern Norway

Date December 26, 1943
Forces Germans: 1 battlecruiser; British: 1 battleship, 4 cruisers, 9 destroyers
Losses Germans: 1 battlecruiser; British: none

The German battlecruiser *Scharnhorst*, under Rear Admiral Erich Bey, sortied from its harbor in Norway, intending to attack British Arctic convoy JW-55B. The British were aware of *Scharnhorst*'s movements through signals intercepts and prepared to counterattack. Bey had dispersed his destroyer escorts to search for the convoy and the battlecruiser was alone when surprised by the cruisers *Sheffield*, *Belfast*, and *Norfolk* on the morning of December 26. The weather was bleak, with a heavy snowstorm in progress. The British cruisers scored two hits on *Scharnhorst*, disabling her forward radar and radar-assisted fire control. They then tracked the German warship while calling in support from a larger force commanded by Admiral Sir Bruce Fraser on board the battleship *Duke of York*, with the cruiser *Jamaica* and a bevy of destroyers.

A desperate pursuit developed, *Scharnhorst* running for Norway and exchanging salvoes with *Duke of York* at long range. The crucial moment came when a shell from the Royal Navy battleship destroyed one of *Scharnhorst*'s engine rooms, sharply reducing her speed. British (and one Norwegian) destroyers were then able to close for torpedo attacks. Despite taking some damage, the destroyers scored four hits. As star shells lit up the Arctic night, the crippled *Scharnhorst* was battered by the guns of *Duke of York* and the cruisers *Jamaica* and *Belfast*, then suffered multiple torpedo strikes as destroyers closed for the kill. She capsized and sank. Of her crew of 2,004 men, only 36 were rescued from the ice-cold sea.

THE HUNT FOR THE BISMARCK

On May 18, 1941, the battleship *Bismarck*, accompanied by the cruiser *Prinz Eugen* sailed from the Baltic port of Gdynia. Admiral Lütjens' mission was to break out into the Atlantic and raid Allied merchant convoys. The Royal Navy tracked the ships as far as the Norwegian coast, after which they disappeared. On the evening of May 23, however, the pair were detected by the radar-equipped cruisers *Norfolk* and *Suffolk,* on patrol in the Denmark Strait.

SINKING OF THE HOOD

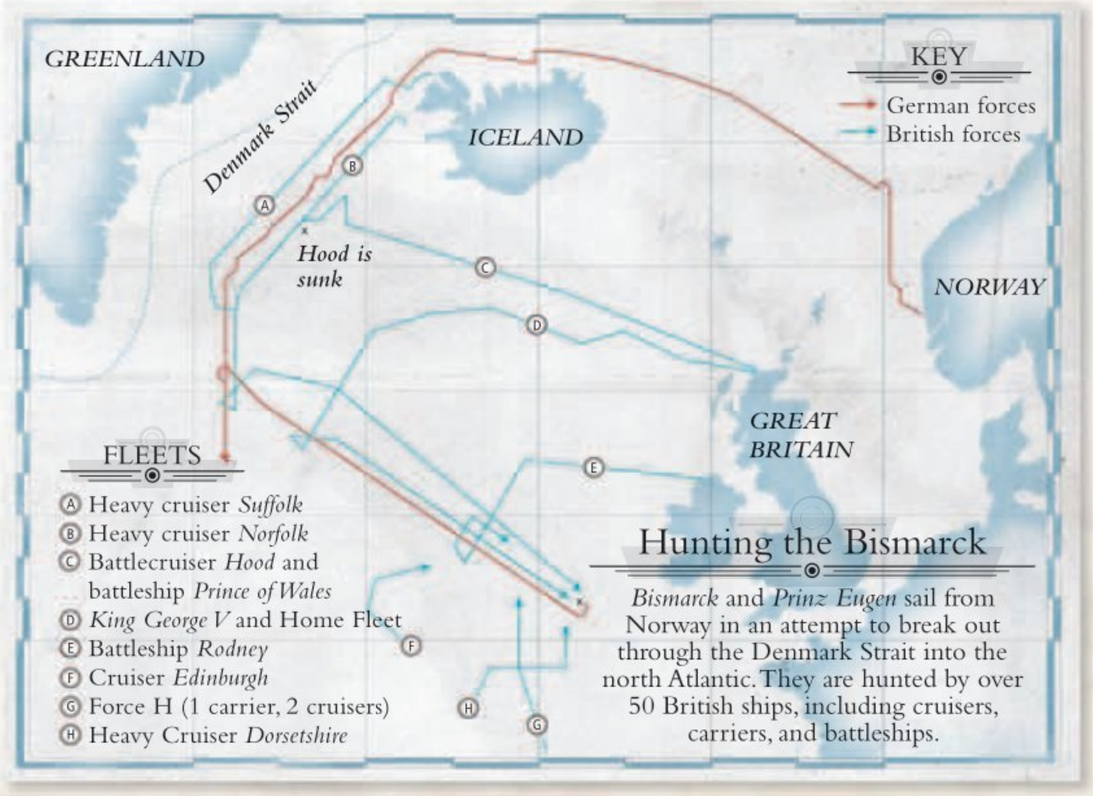
The new battleship *Prince of Wales* and the large but aging battlecruiser *Hood* arrived in visual range at 5:35 a.m. the next morning. On paper the two sides looked well matched, but *Prince of Wales* had been rushed into action without proper preparation, while *Hood* lacked adequate armor. *Bismarck,* while not without flaw, was the largest warship commissioned at the time. The firing began at range, with the Royal Navy ships closing rapidly. At 6:00 a.m. a shell penetrated one of *Hood*'s magazines and the battlecruiser was split in two by a huge explosion. It sank in three minutes. Only three men from a crew of over 1,400 survived. The *Prince of Wales* prudently broke off the fight. The sinking of *Hood* was a severe shock to the Royal Navy, but *Bismarck* had not emerged unscathed. A shell had damaged its fuel tanks, forcing Lütjens to alter his plans. *Prinz Eugen* was despatched to fulfil the commerce raiding mission, while *Bismarck* made a dash for Brittany.

The Royal Navy devoted every available resource to hunting down the German battleship, but Admiral John Tovey, leading the pursuit on board *King George V,* found the enemy elusive. A torpedo attack by Swordfish aircraft from the carrier *Victorious* on the night of May 24 was ineffectual and the following day Lütjens gave his pursuers the slip. Tovey mistakenly suspected he was heading back to the Denmark Strait and sailed too far north.

THE END OF THE BISMARCK

On the morning of May 26 *Bismarck*'s luck changed, when she was spotted by a Catalina flying boat of RAF Coastal Command. Tovey was too far off to catch *Bismarck* before she came within the protective shelter of land-based Luftwaffe aircraft. But Force H, including the carrier *Ark Royal*, sailing north from Gibraltar, was well placed to intercept. The Force's commander, Admiral James Sommerville, sent the cruiser *Sheffield* to shadow *Bismarck* and Swordfish from *Ark Royal* to attack with torpedoes. The first Swordfish sortie was a fiasco—they attacked *Sheffield* by mistake. But a second sortie late in the day proved decisive. Flying unscathed through a barrage of anti-aircraft fire in the murky dusk, the flimsy biplanes managed two hits on *Bismarck*, one of which jammed the rudders. The ship was stuck in a circle to port. Realizing that he was now doomed, Lütjens sent a last message to headquarters: "We will fight to the last shell. Long live the Führer!"

British destroyers kept up the pressure on *Bismarck* through the night with torpedo attacks. The following morning the battleships *King George V* and *Rodney* arrived to batter Lütjens' crippled ship. *Bismarck* was a burning hulk by the time the cruiser *Dorsetshire* closed to finish her off with torpedoes. Only 110 of the crew were saved.



WORLD WAR II

HUNT FOR THE BISMARCK

Date	May 18–27, 1941
Location	North Atlantic
Result	British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	GERMANY

COMMANDERS

John Tovey	Günther Lütjens

FORCES

Ships: 2 carriers, 7 battleships, more than 50 other ships	**Ships:** 1 battleship, 1 cruiser

LOSSES

Men: 1,500 **Ships:** 1 battlecruiser	**Men:** 2,100 **Ships:** 1 battleship

FINAL PURSUIT AND SINKING

1 THE BRITISH LOSE CONTACT

Following the sinking of the HMS *Hood* in the Denmark Strait, the British commit every available unit to hunting down the now limping *Bismarck*. However the British ships lose contact with their quarry and for a time it seems likely that the *Bismarck* may escape.

Bismarck's last battle
Raked by gunfire from the British battleships, the crippled *Bismarck* puts up a desperate last fight.

KEY

GERMAN FORCES

1 German battleship: SMS *Bismarck*

1 German battlecruiser

German U-boat screen

BRITISH FORCES DURING FINAL PURSUIT
Destroyers and other small ships not shown.

1 British aircraft carrier

1 British battleship

1 British cruiser or battlecruiser

1 wave of British torpedo bombers

1 British reconnaissance plane

A reconnaissance plane from Northern Ireland spots the *Bismarck*, letting the British units renew their pursuit

A second bombing raid by *Ark Royal*'s Swordfish torpedo bombers damages the *Bismarck*'s steering

Admiral Tovey leads the pursuit of the *Bismarck* on board the battleship *King George V*. He is joined by the battleship *Rodney* and heavy cruiser *Norfolk*

Force H, including aircraft carrier *Ark Royal*, heads north from Gibraltar to block the *Bismarck*'s escape

Cruiser *Sheffield*, shadowing the *Bismarck*, is mistakenly attacked by *Ark Royal*'s aircraft, but escapes damage

ATLANTIC OCEAN

2 THE BISMARCK IS SPOTTED

After a break of over 30 hours, a Catalina flying boat from Loch Erne in Northern Ireland spots the *Bismarck*. Carrier *Ark Royal*, approaching from the south, launches Swordfish torpedo bombers against the battleship, damaging her steering.

3 THE END OF THE BISMARCK

Her rudders jammed, the *Bismarck* steams in large circles into the path of the approaching British battleships. Mortally damaged by torpedo attacks from the cruisers and destroyers and heavy fire from the battleships, the *Bismarck* finally succumbs.

Heavy cruiser *Dorsetshire* arrives from the south to join the attack. With *Bismarck*'s crew already scuttling the battleship, *Dorsetshire*'s torpedoes finally finish her off

Rodney and *King George V* close in on the incapacitated *Bismarck*. Despite heavy fire causing great damage, *Bismarck* does not surrender. Running low on fuel, the battleships head home

Her steering irretrievably damaged, *Bismarck* steams in circles. Pounded by guns and torpedoes, the *Bismarck* sinks at last with heavy loss of life

ATLANTIC OCEAN

WORLD WAR II US BATTLESHIP

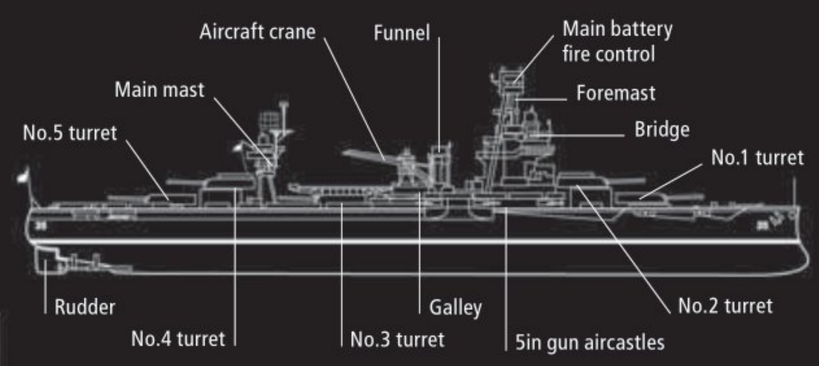
USS TEXAS

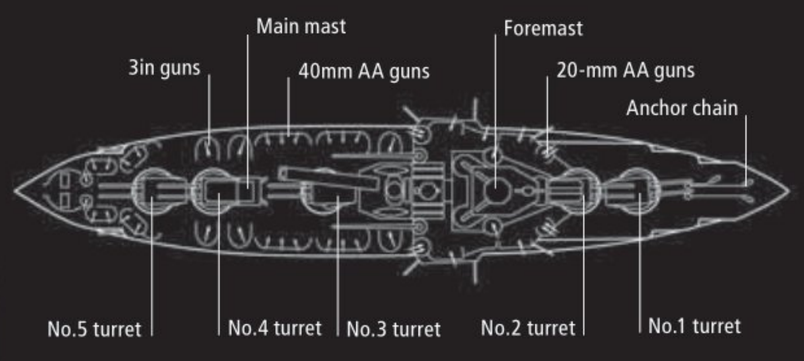
THE NEW YORK-CLASS battleship *Texas*, commissioned in March 1914, was a "super-dreadnought," a product of the naval arms race that preceded World War I. She was especially prominent in World War II in a shore bombardment role, her big guns providing fire support for landings in North Africa, Normandy, Iwo Jima, and Okinawa.

THE USS *Texas* was built at Newport News, Virginia, for a cost of around $6 million. Her main armament of ten 14-in guns made her the most powerful warship in the world in 1914, but in some respects she was behind the times, especially in depending upon coal-fired reciprocating engines instead of oil-fired steam turbines. An extensive modernization in 1927 replaced coal-fired boilers with oil-firing, improved the ship's armor, and upgraded her fire-control systems. Subsequent modifications included the addition of anti-aircraft guns and the installation of radar on board in 1939.

By the outbreak of World War II *Texas* was too slow to hold her own as a warship in battle with more modern capital ships, but her guns still packed a powerful punch and the battleship earned five battle stars during the war. The only combat fatality ever suffered by *Texas* occurred in a duel between the ship and German shore batteries at Cherbourg in June 1944, when a shell struck her armored conning tower. *Texas* was decommissioned in 1946. Now a museum ship at San Jacinto, Texas, she is the last surviving dreadnought-era battleship.

American patriot
The USS *Texas* is adorned with flags for Navy Day in October 1940. During the early part of World War II, before America's entry into the war, *Texas* escorted merchant convoys crossing the Atlantic.





USS Texas
The basis of *Texas*'s influence in both world wars lay with her ten huge 14-in guns, which could fire a 1,500 lb (680 kg) shell a distance of over 13 miles (20 km). The battleship had an active career of over 30 years.

> "SHE WAS A SHIP—THE SMARTEST MAN O' WAR AFLOAT, AND THE BEST. A HARD, TOUGH, SALTY, SHOOTIN' STEAMIN' FOOL. A TROPHY GRABBER, A FIGHTER, AND A HE-MAN BATTLE WAGON."
>
> **LIEUTENANT PAUL SCHUBERT,** CREWMAN ON USS *TEXAS*, 1919–1923

Ship superstructure
On the top of the foremast at the highest point of the ship sits the battery control and the radio and radar antennas. Below this are other areas of the ship that need a high, clear line of sight such as the pilothouse and lookout platforms.

Paravane
Texas carried two torpedo-shaped paravanes which could be towed from the bow to snag the lines of floating naval mines. A sharp blade on the side would cut the mine loose so that it would float to the surface where it could be sunk or destroyed by gunfire.

Ship's bell
A large brass bell, located in the center of the main deck was used to mark the time of day for the crew and regulate the duty watches. The bell is engraved with the name of the battleship.

« Tampion gun cap
When not in use, the ship's huge 14-in guns were covered by metal caps designed to prevent water from entering the barrels.

« Anti-aircraft barbettes
Most of the 20-mm, 40-mm, and 3-in anti-aircraft guns down side of the battleship are protected by circular, armored barbettes. The boxes on top of this 40-mm mount are covers for the ammunition loading slots.

» Inside view of 14-in turret
Shells would be brought from the magazine up into the gunhouse through the upper shell hoist and rolled onto the loading tray. The shell and charge bags were then rammed into the open breech and the breech door shut. A trained gun crew could load and fire a round every 45 seconds.

» Anchor capstan
Underneath the large guns at the bows of the ship, two large electric anchor capstans could rotate to raise or lower the ship's anchors. Capstans at the stern were used for towing.

» Oven door
Texas was the first US battleship to use electric ovens, though these were later replaced with oil-fired ovens to reduce electricity consumption.

» Crew galley
Located on the main deck with three sides that could be opened up for ventilation while cooking, the ship's galley handled three meals a day for a crew of almost 1,800 men. A dumbwaiter carried food down to a second serving area below deck.

« 20mm cannon
44 Oerlikon automatic cannon were fitted as a secondary anti-aircraft defense. The gunner was strapped against the shoulder rests and aimed using the sight.

» Bofors anti-aircraft guns
The ship was fitted with ten sets of four Bofors 40-mm guns to provide defense against enemy aircraft. Each of the four quad mounts was powered and controlled remotely using a Mk51 gun director located close to the mount.

» Bakery
The bakery was located near to the galley on the port side of the main deck where the ovens could be cooled by fresh air.

SUPERSTRUCTURE AND BELOW DECK

WITH A COMPLEMENT of around 1800 officers and men by 1945, the battleship *Texas* was in some ways like a small town, with its own post office, barber shop, and dentist—although no liquor store, alcohol consumption being officially banned on all US Navy ships, in sharp contrast to the practice of Britain's Royal Navy. This was certainly a large ship, 573 ft (175 m) long and 106 ft (32 m) across the beam, yet there was little room for privacy and precious few frills. Toilet and bathing facilities in particular were quite primitive and most men ate where they slept. It was, however, a well-organized world in which each individual knew his place and his function, and in which the basic needs of health and nutrition were properly addressed.

» Chart House
Located close to the pilothouse and the Captain's sea cabin, this room was used for chart navigation. The devices attached to the wall above the chart table are depth and speed indicators. The bulkheads surrounding the room are made of brass to avoid magnetic interference with compass readings.

» Speaker system
Internal phones and speakers fitted around the *Texas* enabled effective communications between different areas on board the ship.

» Navigation dials
The equipment in the auxilliary CIC includes this speed indicator dial and chronometer—a precise timekeeper used to assist in navigation.

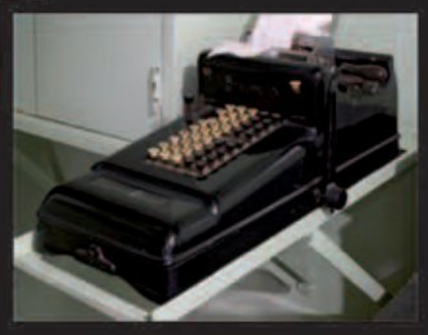
» Combat information center
The CIC provided the electronic eyes and ears of the ship, collecting and evaluating information from a variety of sources such as the ship's radar, and coordinating the fire control systems.

» Pilothouse
The ship was steered from the helmsman's station where the ship's wheel, tiller, rudder angle indicator, compass, and engine order telegraph were all located.

« Auxilliary Combat Information Center (CIC)
Located in the heart of the ship to provide back-up in case the main CIC was damaged, the auxilliary CIC contained a range of crucial information-gathering equipment such as the surface SG radar unit seen against the wall on the right. The large circular device in the foreground is an illuminated plotting table.

« Executive Officer's Office
The Executive Officer was the second-in-command of the ship. The staff in his office handled much of the ship's day-to-day administration, approved work assignments, and created the daily routine sheet—the orders and schedule for the ship's daily activities.

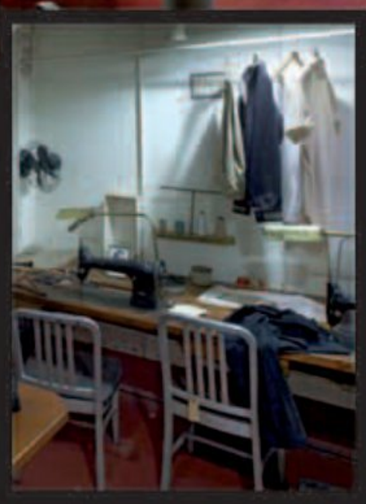
» Adding machine
The Burroughs machine was an early calculator used to help the officers with their bookkeeping.



« Barber shop
Regulations specified that a sailor's hair should be no longer than 1.5 in (38 mm) on top and clipped short on the sides. This barber looked after the enlisted men—officers had their own barber shop further forward.

« Post office
Letters and news from loved ones back home reached the sailors through the ship's post office, providing an important boost to crew morale.

» Ship's laundry
The large laundry was equipped with a washer, wringers, and clothes pressing machines. Laundry workers received additional pay because of the unpleasantly hot and humid working conditions.



« Tailor's shop
Alongside the ship's post office in the general service area was a busy tailor's shop where crew members could pay to have their uniforms mended or altered, and pressed.

» Sick bay
Texas had a large sick bay and extensive medical facilities, and the battleship often provided medical services to smaller ships in the fleet. The ship also contained an isolation ward next to the main sick bay to prevent the spread of infectious diseases.

» Operating room
The ship's medical facilities included a surgery to deal with injuries sustained in battle and other emergencies. Instruments were sterilized using a pressurized device known as an autoclave, in the next room.

» Cafeteria
Food came down from the galley on the deck above in a dumbwaiter and was put into heated containers for serving. Most enlisted men took their food back to their berthing areas to eat off stowaway wooden tables.

« Prophylactic room
Condoms were made readily available to US sailors during World War II to prevent sexually transmitted diseases—one government educational film urged the sailors to "put it on before you put it in".

» Dispensary drawers
The ship's doctor treated minor injuries and ailments in the dispensary, next door to the surgery and sick bay.

« Dentist's room
Texas had her own dentist on board, as well as a well-equipped dental surgery. The dentist was also able to perform other types of surgery when required, something which could prove essential if the ship had to deal with large numbers of wounded.

BELOW DECK

» Junior officer's racks
Accommodation for junior officers was in shared staterooms often only slightly less cramped than the areas for the enlisted men. Bunks in the passageway of the officers' quarters provided an overflow berthing space.

» Officer's washroom
Junior officers shared their own washing facilities and toilets in a small area on the second deck in the bows of the ship.

» Crew locker
Privacy and personal space were at a premium on board a crowded battleship, but each crewman had a locker for his clothes and possessions, including a small lockable compartment for his valuables.

» Marine berths
The ship's complement of marines, like the enlisted sailors, slept in bunks hung three or four levels high. Berthing areas were dotted around the ship where there was space, mostly on the second deck.

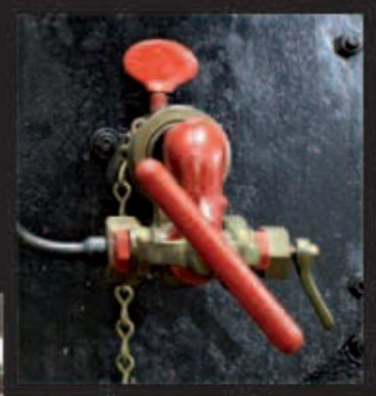
« Lieutenant's cabin
Only relatively senior officers would have enjoyed the luxury of a private room. This cabin belonged to Lieutenant Fred Winter, the officer in command of Turret No.2's gun crew.

» Crew heads
Crew toilets consisted of nothing more than boards over a trough with seawater pumped down to carry waste matter into the sea.

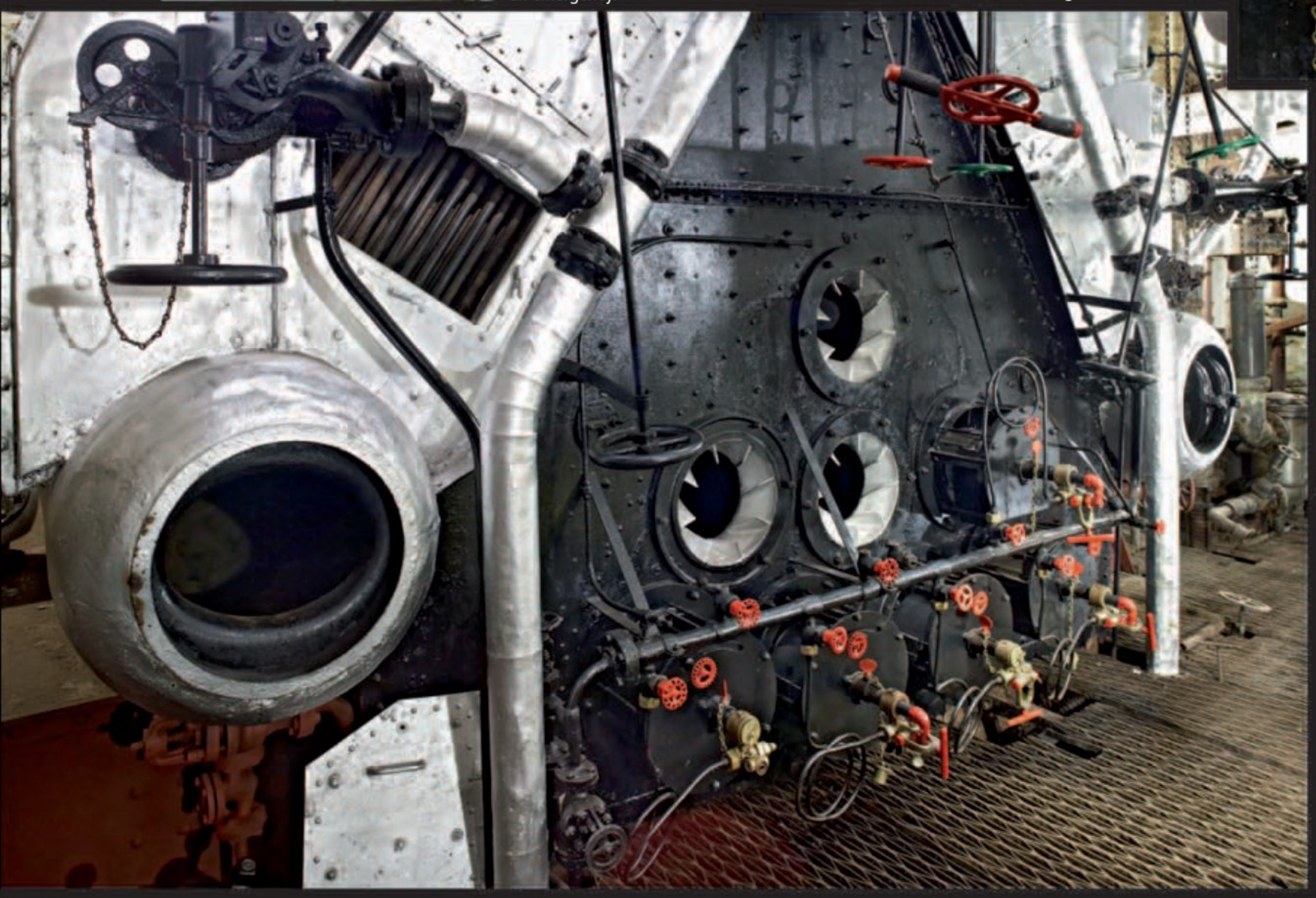
» Ventilation holes
Small vents in the partition walls helped air circulate between the berthing areas. Nonetheless the crowded bunkrooms must have felt oppressive during hot summer weather.

« Battle lantern
Although *Texas* was fitted with a regular electric lighting system, there were also a number of portable relay-operated lamps known as battle lanterns located around the ship for use in an emergency.

» Bureau Express oil-fired boiler
The propellors and electrical generators were powered by steam engines driven by six oil-fired boilers. This boiler's triangular firebox has nine burners mounted on the front (three are removed to show the openings) and two large cylinders for water on either side. The steam drum above the firebox which fed the engine is out of shot.

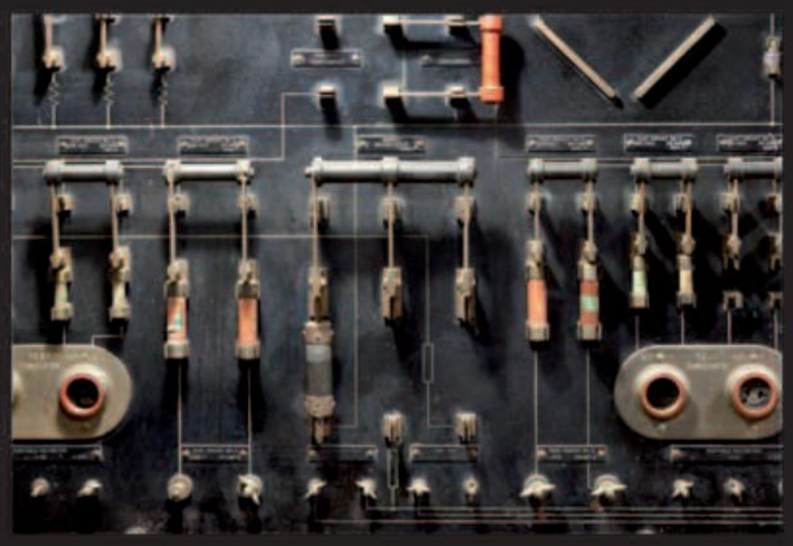


« Nozzle detail
The nine burners forced oil through atomizers to create a spray mist that was burned to heat the water. The red T-bar handles held the adjustable atomizer rods in place to control the volume and fineness of the spray.



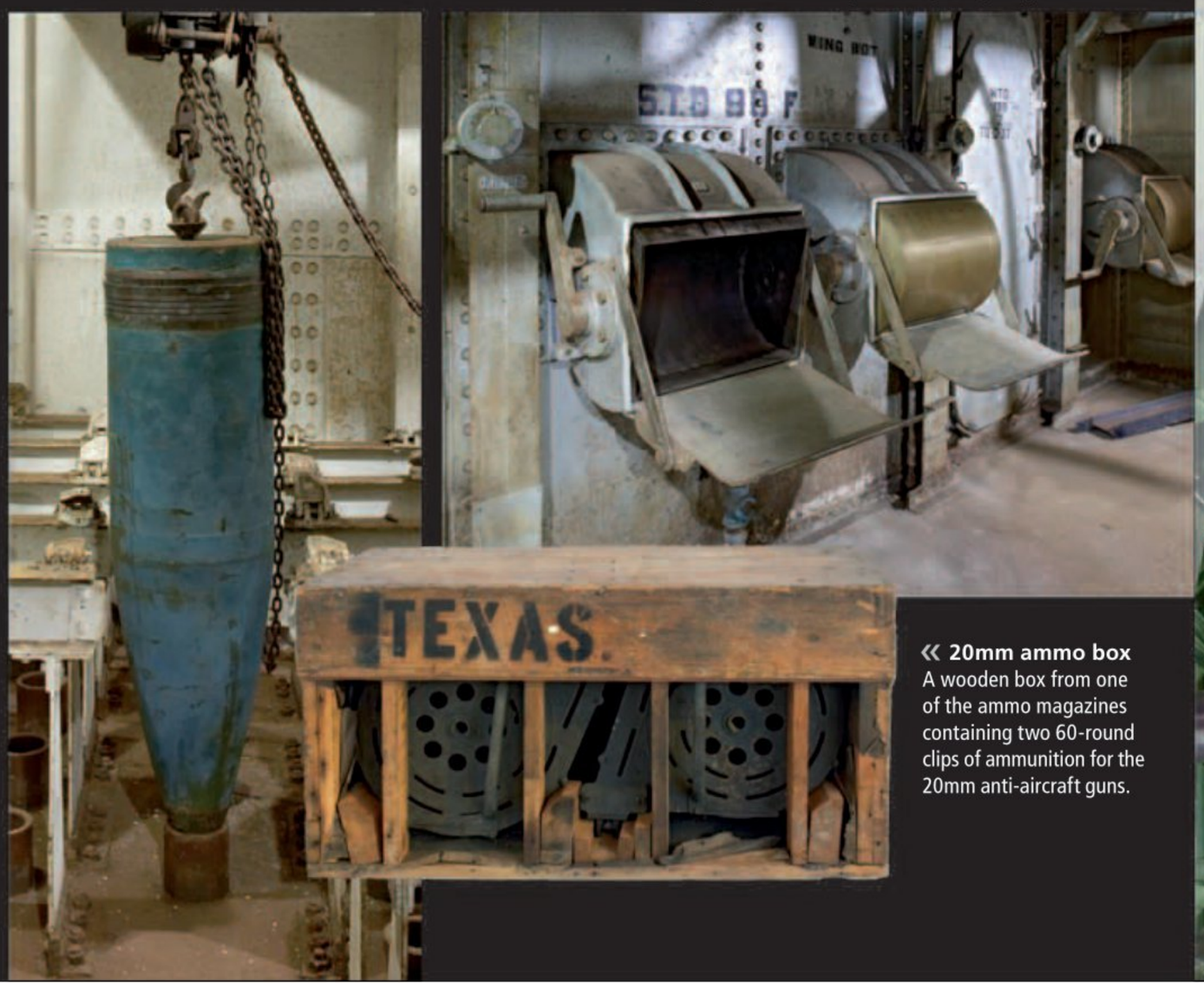
» Steering room
The rudder was normally turned using an electric motor, but if the battleship's steam and electric power systems were knocked out, it was possible to steer the ship manually using four large wheels along the main rudder shaft. It took 16 men to turn the rudder very slowly.

» Powder scuttles
Propellent powder was stored in the powder magazines, well away from the shells. The powder bags were passed from the powder magazine to the turret handling room through flash-proof scuttles to prevent explosive flash travelling down from the gun and igniting the powder.



» Power shop test unit
The workshop used for the repair of electrical items and the maintenance of the ship's electrical power systems was known as the power shop. This test unit allowed the engineers to check different parts of the ship's electrics.

» 14in shell magazine and hoist
Several decks below each of the five main gun turrets lay magazines for storing the 14in shells. The shells were lifted using a block and tackle and carried on ceiling mounted pulleys to the lower handing room, where they were hoisted to the gun turret for loading.



« 20mm ammo box
A wooden box from one of the ammo magazines containing two 60-round clips of ammunition for the 20mm anti-aircraft guns.

THE U-BOAT WAR 1939–45

FROM SUMMER 1940 TO SPRING 1943 German U-boats, led by Admiral Karl Dönitz, attempted to blockade Britain into submission by sinking convoys of merchant ships carrying much needed supplies across the Atlantic. Operating from bases in occupied Brittany, the U-boats attacked escorted convoys in groups known as "wolf packs." The period up to February 1941 became known as the "Happy Time" for U-boat crews, as British convoy escorts were inadequate in numbers, equipment, and training, and the U-boats sank many ships. Successful U-boat captains became celebrated in Germany as "aces." A second surge of U-boat success followed the entry of the United States into the war in December 1941, which allowed them to prey on ships on convoy routes up and down the US east coast. The climax of the U-boat war came in spring 1943. Just as Dönitz looked like winning the war, a combination of superior industrial production, improved technology and tactics, air cover, and intelligence allowed the Allies to turn the tide decisively against the U-boats. Overall, the U-boat war was exceptionally tough for Allied merchant and naval seamen, whether crossing the Atlantic or on the harsh Arctic route to Russia. However, it was the U-boat crews that suffered the heaviest losses, with 60 percent of all crew dying during the war.

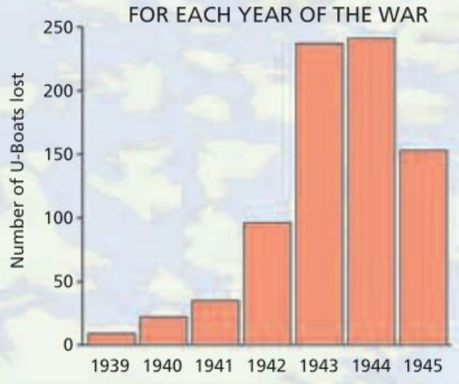
THE U-BOAT WAR 1940–1943

The main areas of engagement between German and Allied forces during the U-boat war were in the North Atlantic along the major convoy routes connecting the US east coast with the UK, and along the convoys routes running around the US east coast. German U-boat wolfpacks also targeted Allied merchant shipping on routes running through the Arctic between the UK and northern Russia, and on convoys running between West Africa and the UK and from the Americas through the Straits of Gibraltar into the Mediterranean.

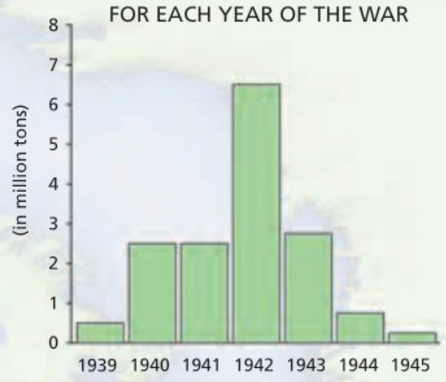
KEY

- Allied territory 1942
- Axis territory 1942
- Major convoy route 1943
- Maximum extent of air cover 1940
- Maximum extent of air cover 1943
- U-boat base
- 1 Main areas of U-boat success Jun 1940–Mar 1941
- 2 Main areas of U-boat success Jan 1942–Feb 1943
- 3 Main areas of U-boat success Mar–Sep 1943

GERMAN U-BOAT LOSSES FOR EACH YEAR OF THE WAR



ALLIED MERCHANT SHIPPING LOSSES FOR EACH YEAR OF THE WAR



May 1943: Convoy ONS-5 attacked by over 40 U-boats. Despite loss of 12 merchantmen, escorts sink six U-boats and inflict serious damage on seven others

Jun 1941: Britain starts providing escorts for full length of North Atlantic convoy crossings. Royal Canadian Navy assumes responsibility for western zone from base at St John's, Newfoundland

May 1943: "Black May" Germans lose 41 U-boats. Dönitz recalls wolf packs from North Atlantic. They return in Sep 1943, but can never repeat their earlier success

16–20 Mar,1943: Convoys SC-122 and HX-229 attacked by three wolf packs (41 U-boats), which sink 22 ships (146,000 tons)

Mar 15–17,1941: Inbound convoy HX-112 attacked by five U-boats. Five ships (50,000 tons) lost, but U-boats of two of Germany's leading aces, Joachim Schepke and Otto Kretschmer, sunk

July 19,1942: U-boats withdrawn from US east coast. Operations switched to mid-Atlantic.

Jan 13,1942: Start of Operation *Paukenschlag* (Drumbeat). Following American entry into the war, Germans redirect U-boat operations to unescorted convoys off US east coast. Start of second "Happy Time"

May 1940: British troops occupy Iceland. Replaced by US troops in Jul 1941

Oct 1940: Convoy SC-7 from Nova Scotia to Liverpool attacked by pack of seven U-boats. Only 12 out of 34 ships make it to port

Jun 1940: New U-boat bases on France's Atlantic coast become operational. Start of first "Happy Time" for U-boat crews

Azores

August 1943: Allies acquire use of the Azores as airbase

Jul 2–13,1942: North Sea convoy PQ-17 suffers severe losses to U-boats and Luftwaffe after convoy is ordered to disperse

Summer route to USSR

Winter route to USSR

Oct 9,1939: Günther Prien, in U-47, penetrates British naval base at Scapa Flow and sinks battleship *Royal Oak*

GREENLAND
ICELAND
CANADA
NEWFOUNDLAND
St John's
Sydney
Halifax
UNITED STATES
New York
Houston
New Orleans
Miami
Gulf of Mexico
MEXICO
CUBA
Caribbean Sea
NICARAGUA
VENEZUELA
COLOMBIA
BRITISH GUIANA
FRENCH GUIANA
DUTCH GUIANA
ECUADOR
PERU
BRAZIL
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Spitzbergen
to Arkhangelsk
Tromso
Narvik
SWEDEN
Trondheim
FINLAND
NORWAY
Bergen
Scapa Flow
North Sea
Londonderry
UNITED KINGDOM
Liverpool
London
DENMARK
Bremen
Kiel
Berlin
GERMANY
Moscow
USSR
Brest
Lorient
St Nazaire
La Rochelle
Paris
FRANCE
SWITZ.
ROMANIA
ITALY
YUGOSLAVIA
BULGARIA
Rome
PORT.
SPAIN
GREECE
TURKEY
SPANISH MOROCCO
Gibraltar
FRENCH MOROCCO
ALGERIA
LIBYA
EGYPT
Alexandria
Cairo
FRENCH WEST AFRICA
SUDAN
Freetown
SIERRA LEONE
LIBERIA
GOLD COAST
NIGERIA
Lagos
CAMEROON
FRENCH EQUATORIAL AFRICA
BELGIAN CONGO
N
0 km 1000
0 miles 1000

CARRIERS, SUBMARINES AND, MISSILES

THE U-BOAT WAR

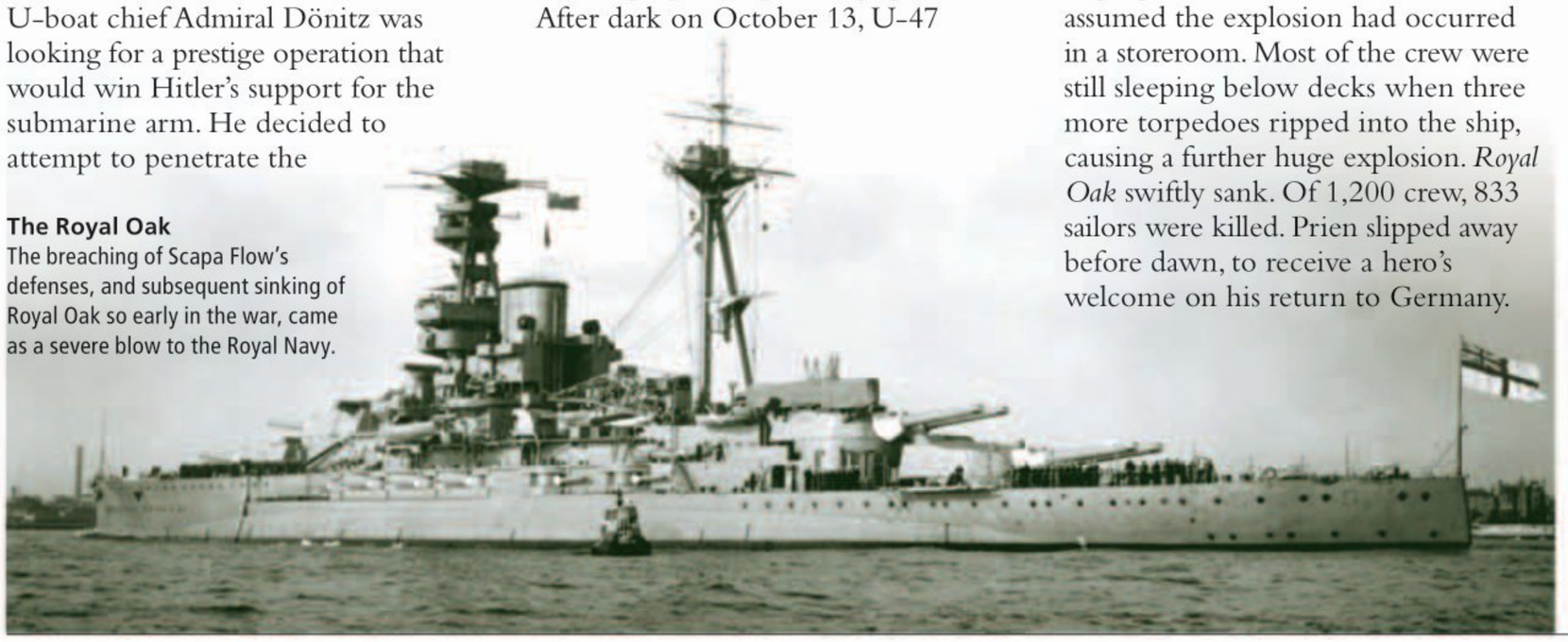
SINKING OF ROYAL OAK

Date October 14, 1939
Forces British: 1 battleship; Germans: 1 submarine
Losses British: 1 battleship; Germans: none

Location Scapa Flow, Orkney Islands

At the start of World War II German U-boat chief Admiral Dönitz was looking for a prestige operation that would win Hitler's support for the submarine arm. He decided to attempt to penetrate the British deep-water anchorage at Scapa Flow. Although Scapa was well defended against submarine attack, German reconnaissance had shown narrow channels between the sunken blockships at the eastern end and Dönitz believed these were navigable by a U-boat on the surface. Lieutenant Günther Prien sailed U-47 out of Kiel on October 8 and proceeded across the North Sea, traveling on the surface by night and submerging during the daylight hours. After dark on October 13, U-47 squeezed between the blockships, carried forward by a strong current. Prien emerged into the harbor after midnight to find it largely deserted. Most of the British fleet had left for fear of air attack and ageing battleship *Royal Oak* had been left behind, moored next to a seaplane carrier.

With his first volley of torpedoes Prien hit *Royal Oak* near the bows. The Royal Navy believed Scapa Flow impregnable to U-boats, so it was assumed the explosion had occurred in a storeroom. Most of the crew were still sleeping below decks when three more torpedoes ripped into the ship, causing a further huge explosion. *Royal Oak* swiftly sank. Of 1,200 crew, 833 sailors were killed. Prien slipped away before dawn, to receive a hero's welcome on his return to Germany.



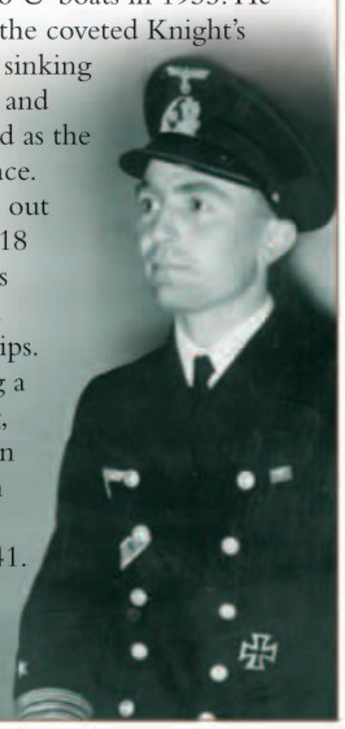
The Royal Oak
The breaching of Scapa Flow's defenses, and subsequent sinking of Royal Oak so early in the war, came as a severe blow to the Royal Navy.

1908–1941

GÜNTHER PRIEN

COMMANDER OF GERMAN SUBMARINE U-47

U-boat commander Günther Prien originally trained as a merchant seamen. He joined the Reichsmarine and the Nazi Party in the early 1930s, transferring to U-boats in 1935. He was awarded the coveted Knight's Cross for the sinking of *Royal Oak* and was celebrated as the first U-boat ace. Prien carried out 12 patrols in 18 months and is credited with sinking 30 ships. After refusing a shore posting, he went down with U-47 in the Atlantic in March 1941.



THE U-BOAT WAR

CONVOY SC-7

Date October 16–19, 1940
Forces British: 5 escort ships, 35 merchant ships; Germans: 7 U-boats
Losses British: 20 merchant ships; Germans: none

Location Western Approaches, Atlantic

SC-7 was a convoy of slow merchant ships that set out from Nova Scotia for Britain on October 5, 1940, with a single sloop as escort. Although another two sloops and two corvettes met the convoy as it entered the Western Approaches, none of them had any idea how to cope with multiple attacks by submarines operating on the surface at night. The convoy itself was undisciplined, with too many ships out of formation. Four merchant ships were sunk by U-boats on October 16 and 17, before the main attack commenced on the night of October 18-19. This involved five U-boats, including Otto Kretschmer's U-99, Joachim Schepke's U-100, and Engelbert Endrass's U-46. They sank 16 ships in six hours, while the escorts were reduced to picking up survivors.

THE U-BOAT WAR

CONVOY HX-79

Date October 19–20, 1940
Forces British: 11 escort ships, 49 merchant ships; Germans: 5 U-boats
Losses British: 12 merchant ships; Germans: none

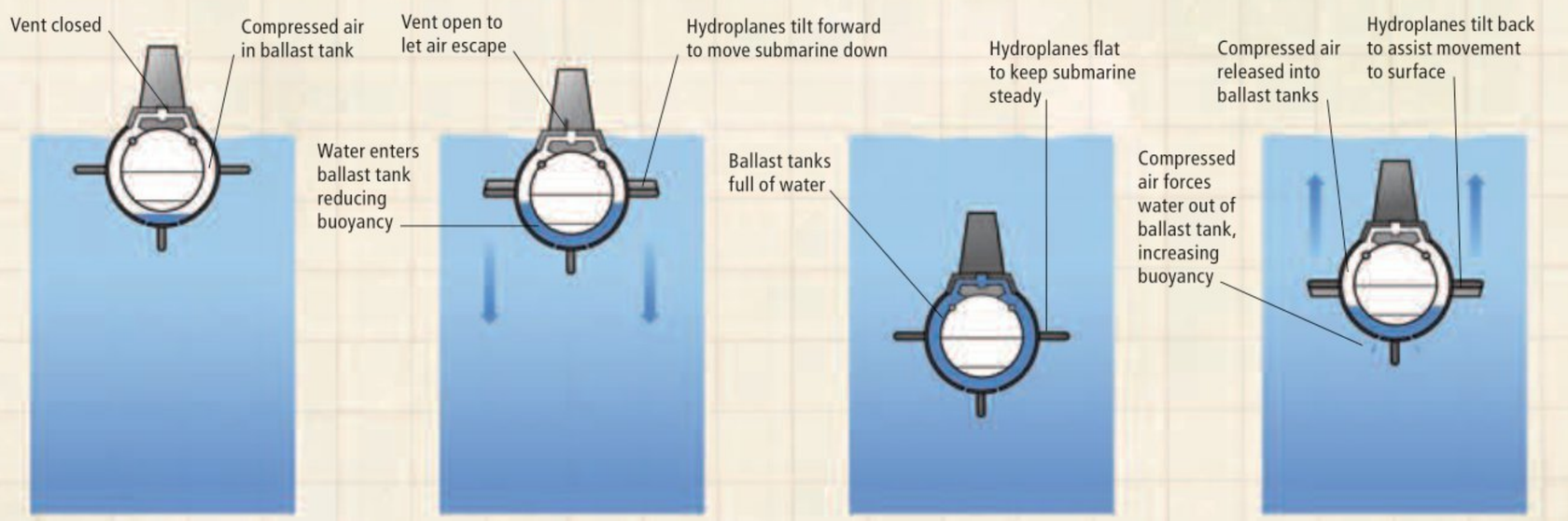
Location Western Approaches, Atlantic

Shocked by the savaging of Convoy SC-7 on October 19, 1940, the British Admiralty rushed out 11 warships to escort another convoy, HX-79, then approaching Britain. The escorts included two destroyers and four corvettes. Meanwhile, HX-79 was being shadowed by Gunther Prien's U-47. Four U-boats that had participated in the attack on SC-7, including Joachim Schepke's U-100 and Engelbert Endrass's U-46, joined Prien. That night the U-boats slipped through the escort screen on the surface and attacked the merchant vessels. Ten ships sank in the darkness, four of them claimed by Prien. Two more ships sank the next day, bringing total British losses over five days in the Atlantic to 32 ships totaling 150,000 tons. No U-boats were damaged.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

HOW SUBMARINES WORK

Depending on its density, an object will either float or sink in water. When a submarine is about to dive, vents at the top of the hull are opened, air escapes, and the reduced pressure allows water in through vents in the bottom. The density of the submarine increases and it sinks. With the aid of hydroplanes, the engine powers the submarine forward and down until the ballast tanks are completely full and a state of neutral buoyancy has been achieved. At this point the upper vents are closed. To reverse the process, compressed air is forced into the ballast tanks, forcing water out of the lower vents and increasing buoyancy, while the engine propels the submarine back to the surface.



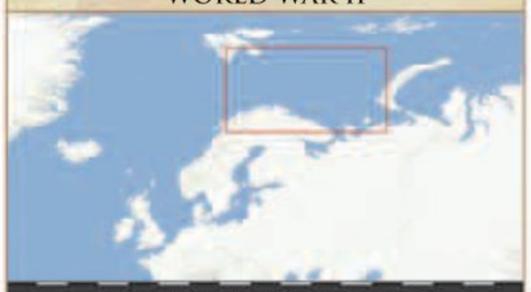
Partially submerged
Ballast tanks filled with compressed air allow the submarine to float just below the surface of the water.

Submerging
As air is released the ballast tanks fill with water and the submarine starts to submerge.

Fully submerged
The submarine continues to sink until the ballast tanks are completely filled with water.

Surfacing
Compressed air released into the ballast tanks forces water out and the submarine surfaces.

WORLD WAR II



ARCTIC CONVOY PQ-17

Date	July 2-10, 1942
Location	North of Norway
Result	German victory

COMBATANTS

ALLIES	GERMANY

COMMANDERS

John Dowding **Jack Broome**	**Various commanders**

FORCES

Ships: 2 battleships, 1 carrier, 6 cruisers, 30 escorts, 35 merchant ships	**Ships:** unknown

LOSSES

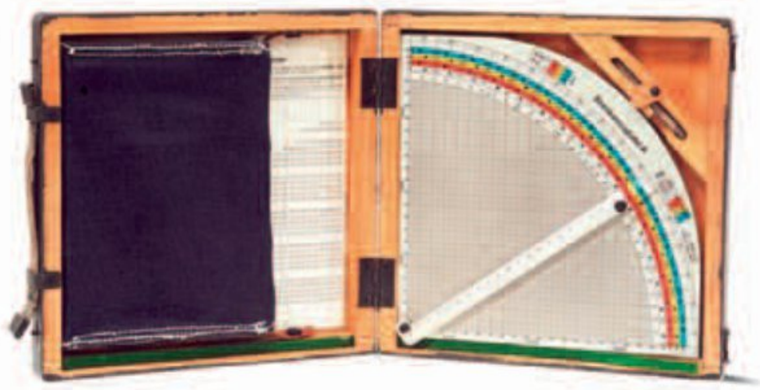
Ships: 22 merchant ships	**Ships:** none

ARCTIC CONVOY PQ-17

Following the entry of the Soviet Union into the war in summer 1941, Britain and the United States began supplying Soviet forces with military equipment to fight the Germans. Some of these supplies were carried by convoys to the northern Russian ports of Arkhangelsk and Murmansk. Even without enemy action, Arctic convoys were a grueling struggle against freezing cold, gales, fog, and ice. The convoys were exposed to attack by land-based Luftwaffe aircraft in occupied Norway as well as from U-boats, and they were constantly threatened by the presence of German warships in the Norwegian fjords.

PQ-17 SETS SAIL

In June 1942 the largest Arctic convoy yet to sail, consisting of 35 merchant ships, assembled at Iceland. It was given three levels of naval defense: a close escort force of destroyers, corvettes, minesweepers, armed trawlers, and anti-aircraft auxiliaries. In support was a covering squadron of heavy cruisers and destroyers. Yet further off lurked a powerful force centered around the carrier *Victorious* and two battleships, *Duke of York* and *Washington*, hoping that the German big-gun ships *Tirpitz*, *Admiral Hipper*, and *Admiral Scheer* might come out. The Germans had in fact decided to launch a major operation against the convoy, which therefore became the unfortunate focus of a trial of strength between the two sides. Leaving Iceland on June 27, the convoy started to run into air attacks from July 2. The swarms of Luftwaffe aircraft met fierce resistance from the ships of the close escort and from guns on the merchant ships. Although two American merchantmen were lost on July 4, the situation seemed broadly under control. At this point, however, the British Admiralty made an



U-boat gunnery traverse table
German U-boats often surfaced to attack unescorted merchant ships with their guns, saving torpedoes for better defended targets.

Arctic hunter
A German U-boat cruises on the surface of the ocean. Arctic convoys were at constant risk from both U-boats and Luftwaffe aircraft.

assessment—not supported by any intelligence—that *Tirpitz*, *Hipper*, and *Scheer* were moving to intercept the convoy. The First Sea Lord Sir Dudley Pound ordered the convoy to scatter, concentrating all the escort and covering warships to meet the German sortie. It was an appalling error. The German warships never appeared, having returned to harbor after the briefest of forays. Meanwhile, the scattered convoy, escorted only by a handful of corvettes, minesweepers, and armed trawlers, was defenseless against the remorseless attacks of the Luftwaffe and the U-boats.

SITTING TARGETS

On July 5 12 merchant ships were sunk, seven of them American. Six of the sinkings were claimed by U-boats and six by the Luftwaffe. Over the next two days five more ships went to the bottom, three of them victims of a single U-boat, Captain Reinhardt Reche's U-255. A final two sinkings occurred on July 10, after which the remnants of the convoy crawled into Arkhangelsk or Murmansk. Out of the original 35 vessels, 22 had been sunk, among the worst losses of any convoy in the war. Along with 430 tanks, 200 aircraft, and almost 100,000 tons of cargo, the lives of 153 seamen had been lost. Many survivors endured days in open lifeboats in Arctic conditions before being rescued.

Freezing conditions
The icebound deck of a British cruiser sailing the convoy route between Britain and Russia in 1943 gives an idea of the risks and hardships facing sailors on the Arctic convoys.

WORLD WAR II

CONVOY HX-229 AND CONVOY SC-122

Date March 16–19, 1943
Forces Germans: 38 U-boats; Allies: 17 escort ships, 100 merchant vessels
Losses Germans: 1 U-boat; Allies: 22 merchant ships

Location North Atlantic Ocean

In early March 1943 two convoys left New York bound for Liverpool: HX-229 with 40 merchant ships and the 60 slower vessels of SC-122. Admiral Karl Dönitz knew of these convoys because B-Dienst intelligence department had cracked British naval codes. Three U-boat wolf packs, codenamed Raubgraf, Stürmer, and Dränger, were positioned in the mid-Atlantic across the convoys' route. Raubgraf made contact with HX-229 on March 16. The merchant ships had a weak escort of three destroyers and two corvettes, insufficient to prevent the eight-boat wolf pack from harrying the convoy mercilessly. Meanwhile, on their way to join the attack on HX-229, the other wolf packs stumbled upon SC-122. This had a stronger escort, but the wolf packs totaled 30 U-boats and simply swamped its defenses. By 19 March, when the arrival of more escorts halted the attacks, HX-229 had lost 13 ships and SC-122 had lost nine. Some 300 merchant seamen were killed. The Germans lost a single U-boat to an air patrol. A Royal Navy report later stated that "there seemed real danger the enemy would achieve his aim of severing the route which united Great Britain with the North American continent."

U-boat computer
This German HR2 slide computer helped U-boats to navigate using the stars.

CREW PROFILE

U-BOAT CREW

WORLD WAR II

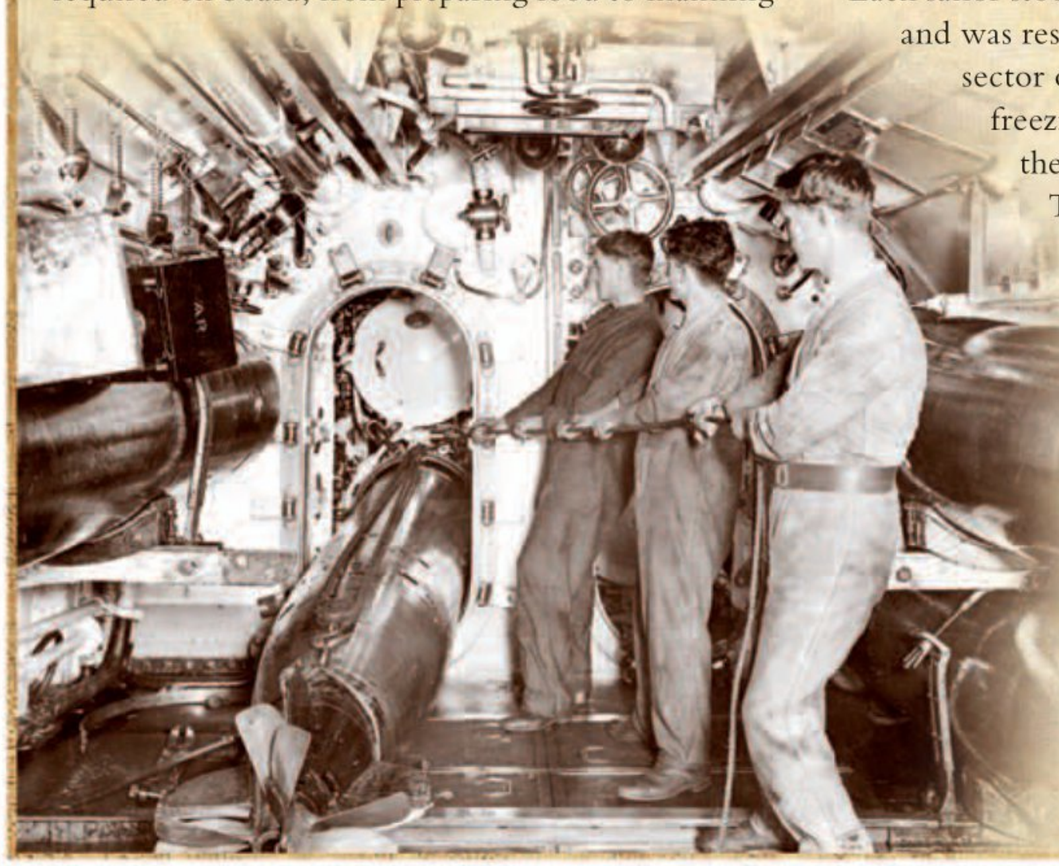
A TYPE VII, the standard U-boat of World War II, typically had a crew of four officers—the captain, his two lieutenants or "watch officers", and an engineering officer—and some 40 petty officers and seamen. The petty officers were responsible for various specialized areas such as crew discipline, the torpedoes, the diesel and electric engines, the radio, navigation, and steering. At least in the early period of the war, U-boat crews were a self-conscious elite, with five years' intensive training before going operational. They needed to be exceptionally fit and well balanced to endure the rigors of a submariner's life. Most of the men were in their early 20s, and their captains were usually not much older.

U-BOAT SEAMAN

The seamen were housed in the bows of the boat, a space they shared with the forward torpedoes. There was usually one bunk for every two men, occupied on a shift system as one was on duty while the other rested. There was no privacy and little opportunity to wash or get a change of clothes while on patrol. The seamen performed the whole range of tasks required on board, from preparing food to manning the guns and loading the torpedoes in their tubes. Their most onerous task was keeping watch. When the U-boat was on the surface there had to be four seamen on watch 24 hours a day, searching the horizon for a convoy to attack or a hostile warship or aircraft.

UNITY IN ADVERSITY

Each sailor stood at each corner of the conning tower and was responsible for observing a 90-degree sector of the sea. A four-hour watch, often in freezing cold and with waves sweeping over the bridge, could be a feat of endurance. To avoid being swept overboard in rough weather seamen on watch wore safety belts that tied them to the column in the middle of the conning tower, as well as special waterproof suits. In the claustrophobic, cramped conditions on a U-boat, most crews became like a family for the seamen – one U-boat man wrote that "you felt engulfed by comradeship."



Torpedo ratings
Crew members load a torpedo into one of the tubes on board a German U-boat. Seamen usually had to share their sleeping quarters with spare torpedoes.

THE U-BOAT WAR

CONVOY ONS-5

Date April 28–May 6, 1943
Location North Atlantic
Result Allied victory

COMBATANTS

UK AND ALLIES
GERMANY

COMMANDERS

Peter Gretton, Robert Sherwood
Admiral Karl Dönitz

FORCES

Ships: 12 escort ships
Ships: 58 U-boats

LOSSES

Ships: 13 merchant ships sunk
Ships: 6 U-boats sunk

CONVOY ONS-5

In spring 1943 a convoy of 43 merchant ships left Liverpool bound for Halifax, Nova Scotia. It was escorted by Group B-7, consisting of two destroyers, a frigate, and four corvettes under the command of Commander Peter Gretton. Convoy ONS-5 was always a sitting target for Admiral Dönitz's U-boat "wolf packs" swarming in the North Atlantic, the more so because the Allied codebreakers were temporarily unable to decipher German messages.

On April 28, ONS-5 was spotted by U-650, one of 16 boats strung out in a line between Greenland and Iceland. Tracking the convoy, U-650 called in the other U-boats for a group attack. Aware of the U-boats' presence through "huff-duff" (HF/DF) radio detection equipment, Gretton organized his defense well—the convoy suffered small losses, while two U-boats were severely damaged. Bad weather then led to an intermission. Reinforcements arrived for the convoy escort, but Gretton's destroyer *Duncan* was forced to leave, unable to refuel in the heavy seas.

THE SECOND ENGAGEMENT

Command passed to Lieutenant Commander Robert Sherwood on the frigate *Tay*. By the time the storm abated on May 4, the main convoy had been reduced to 30 merchant ships with the rest detached stragglers.

The U-boats reformed a line of 29 vessels into which the convoy now blundered. Behind this lay a further line of 24 U-boats. Taken together it was the largest concentration of force Dönitz had ever achieved. He told his U-boat commanders to "fight with everything you've got." On the night of May 4–5 the onslaught on ONS-5 began. It lasted more than 30 hours. U-boats preyed upon the stragglers and worked their way into the middle of the main convoy, sending a number of ships to the bottom with torpedoes. But the escorts fought back tirelessly with a well-rehearsed sweep, using radar and ASDIC (sonar) to locate targets and depth-charges or ramming to attack them. On the night of May 5–6 fog set in. The convoy escorts could see the U-boats on their radar screens, while the U-boat commanders could see neither their targets nor their pursuers.

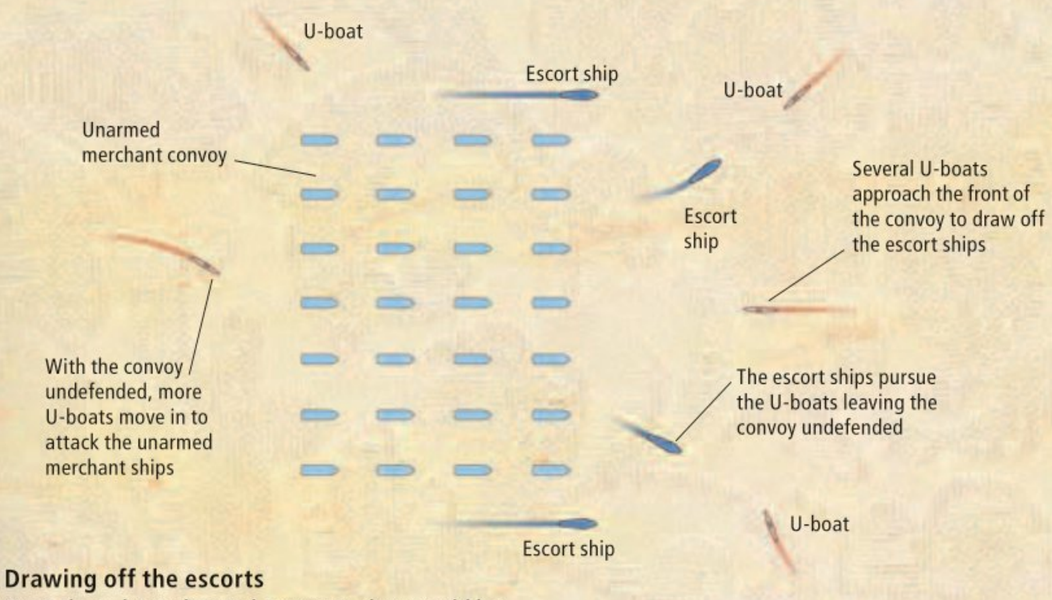
By daybreak on May 6, ONS-5 had lost 13 merchant ships, but the cost to the U-boats had been high—six boats sunk and at least four severely damaged.

U-BOAT TACTICS

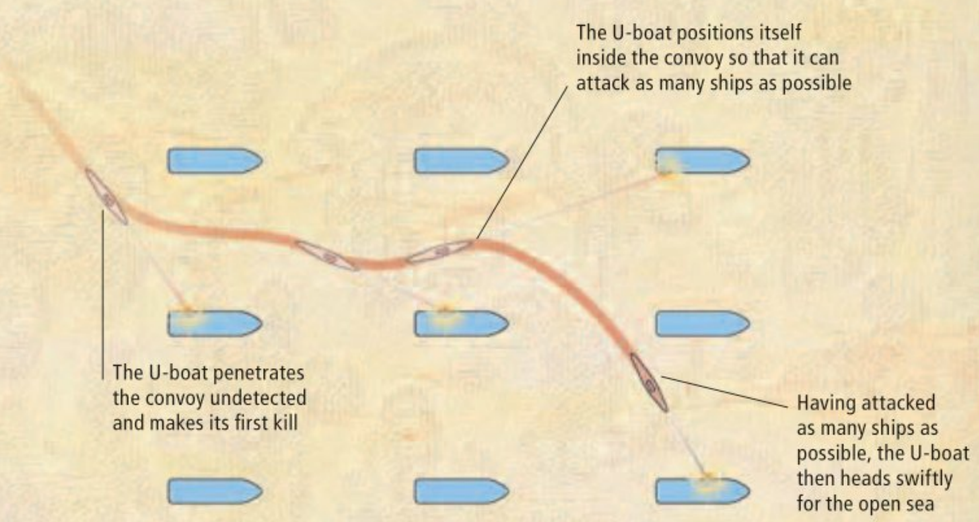
WOLF PACKS

WORKING TOGETHER TO LOCATE AND ATTACK CONVOYS

The "wolf pack" was a group of U-boats hunting together to locate and attack convoys. Typically the U-boats formed a line spread out across an Atlantic convoy route. When one of them spotted a convoy it tracked it, radioing the location to headquarters, which directed other U-boats to join in the hunt. When the pack had assembled around a convoy, the U-boats waited for nightfall and then surfaced to attack. The boldest of them would penetrate the escort screen into the heart of the convoy, picking targets to torpedo at will. The rest fired their torpedoes from outside the convoy. Escort ships were frequently overwhelmed by the number of attackers and, at first, had little chance of spotting low-lying U-boats on the water's surface at night. However, wolf-pack tactics required much use of radio, which allowed the U-boats to be located by escort ships' "huff-duff" (HF/DF) radio direction finders. The subsequent introduction of shipborne radar transformed the ability of escort ships to cope with night surface attacks.



Drawing off the escorts
Once the U-boats located a convoy, they would be directed to assemble around it. The first wave of U-boats was often able to draw off the escort ships, leaving the convoy undefended against attack by other U-boats.



Surfacing inside the convoy
Once a convoy was exposed, the most effective strategy involved the U-boat surfacing inside the convoy before torpedoing individual ships. Accompanying U-boats might fire a spread of torpedoes from outside the convoy.

> WE WERE ALMOST RAMMED BY A DESTROYER THAT SUDDENLY APPEARED BEHIND US, LIGHTING UP THE STERN OF OUR U-BOAT WITH A BIG SEARCHLIGHT ... I DIVED IMMEDIATELY.
>
> **CAPTAIN-LIEUTENANT HARTWIG LOOKS,** COMMANDER OF U-264

Atlantic convoy
A merchant convoy traveled at the speed of its slowest ship, so was an easy target for U-boat or air attack and difficult for escort ships to defend.

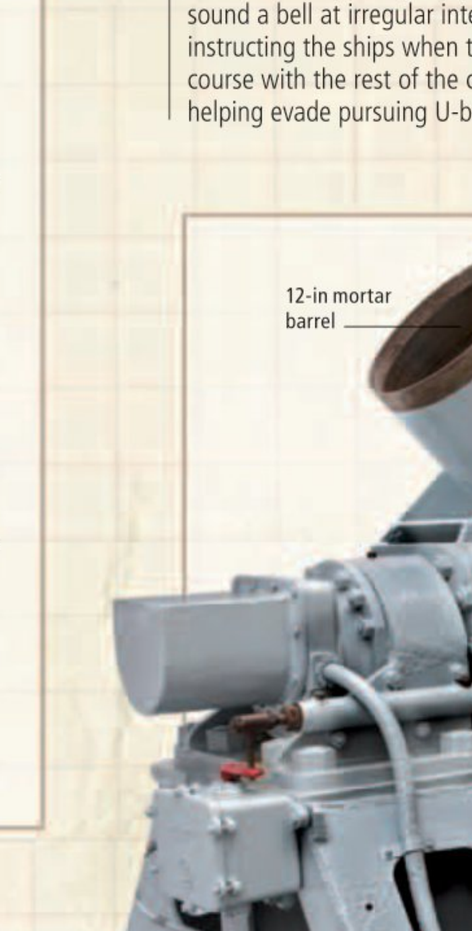
ANTI-SUBMARINE WARFARE

DURING THE BATTLE of the Atlantic from 1939 to 1945, German U-boats sent around 2,000 Allied merchant vessels to the bottom of the ocean. The U-boat war was the critical threat against Britain once the immediate danger of a German invasion had passed in 1940—Winston Churchill once commented that "the only thing that ever really frightened me during the war was the U-boat peril." Yet over the next six years, the Allies steadily gained the tactical and technological advantage, and by war's end nearly 80 percent of operational U-boats were destroyed, giving the U-boat crews the highest percentage of fatalities of any German armed service.

AIR ATTACK U-boats were acutely vulnerable to surprise air attack when they surfaced. Here a U-boat is strafed by an Allied aircraft, receiving multiple hits to the conning tower.

AVOIDING U-BOATS

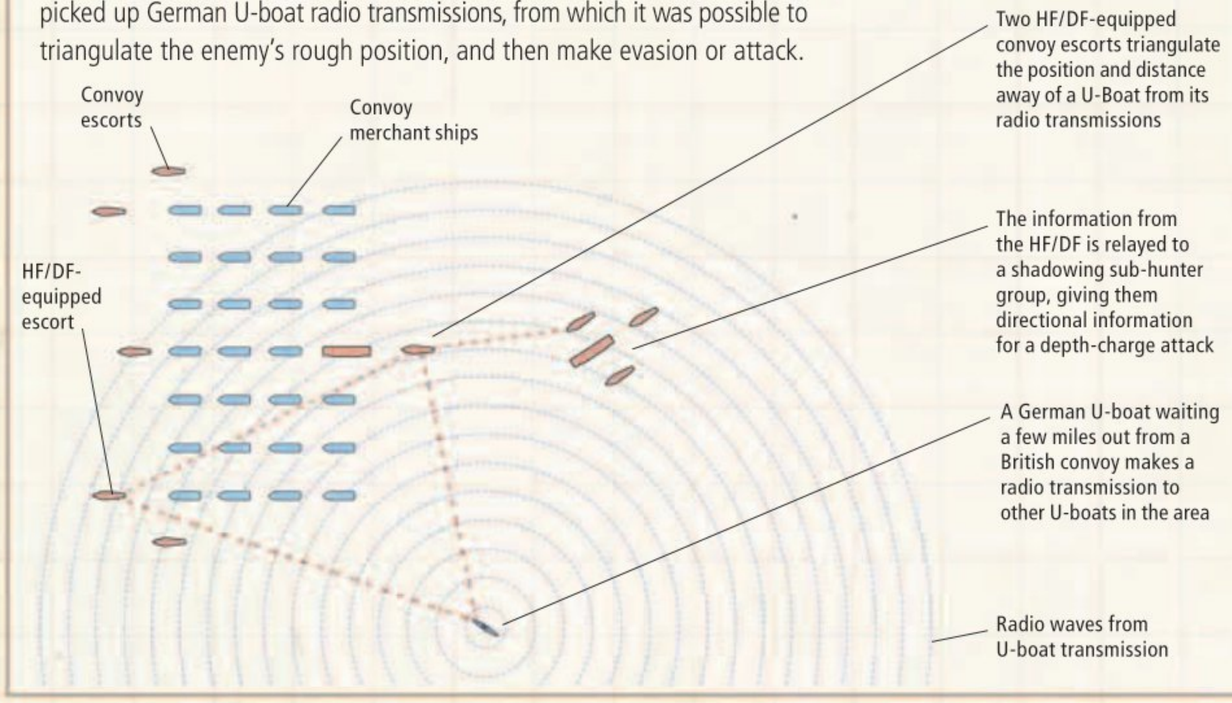
The primary measure adopted to avoid U-boats was the convoy system. Sending supplies in large convoys rather than single, independent vessels worked on probability. If a U-boat failed to detect a single ship, or failed in an attack, then probability assured that another target would be along soon. However, if the U-boat failed to detect or attack a convoy, then it would lose a mass of opportunities in one instance. Convoying certainly reduced causalities, but the convoys themselves took further evasive measures to throw off the U-boats. They adopted zigzag movements across the Atlantic, with slow convoys making shifts at angles of 20–40 degrees every few minutes. Convoy evasion did not always work, but on many occasions convoys of almost 200 vessels crossed the Atlantic perfectly safely without being spotted by U-boats.



ZIGZAG CLOCK Each convoy ship would have a clock synchronized to sound a bell at irregular intervals, instructing the ships when to change course with the rest of the convoy, helping evade pursuing U-boats.

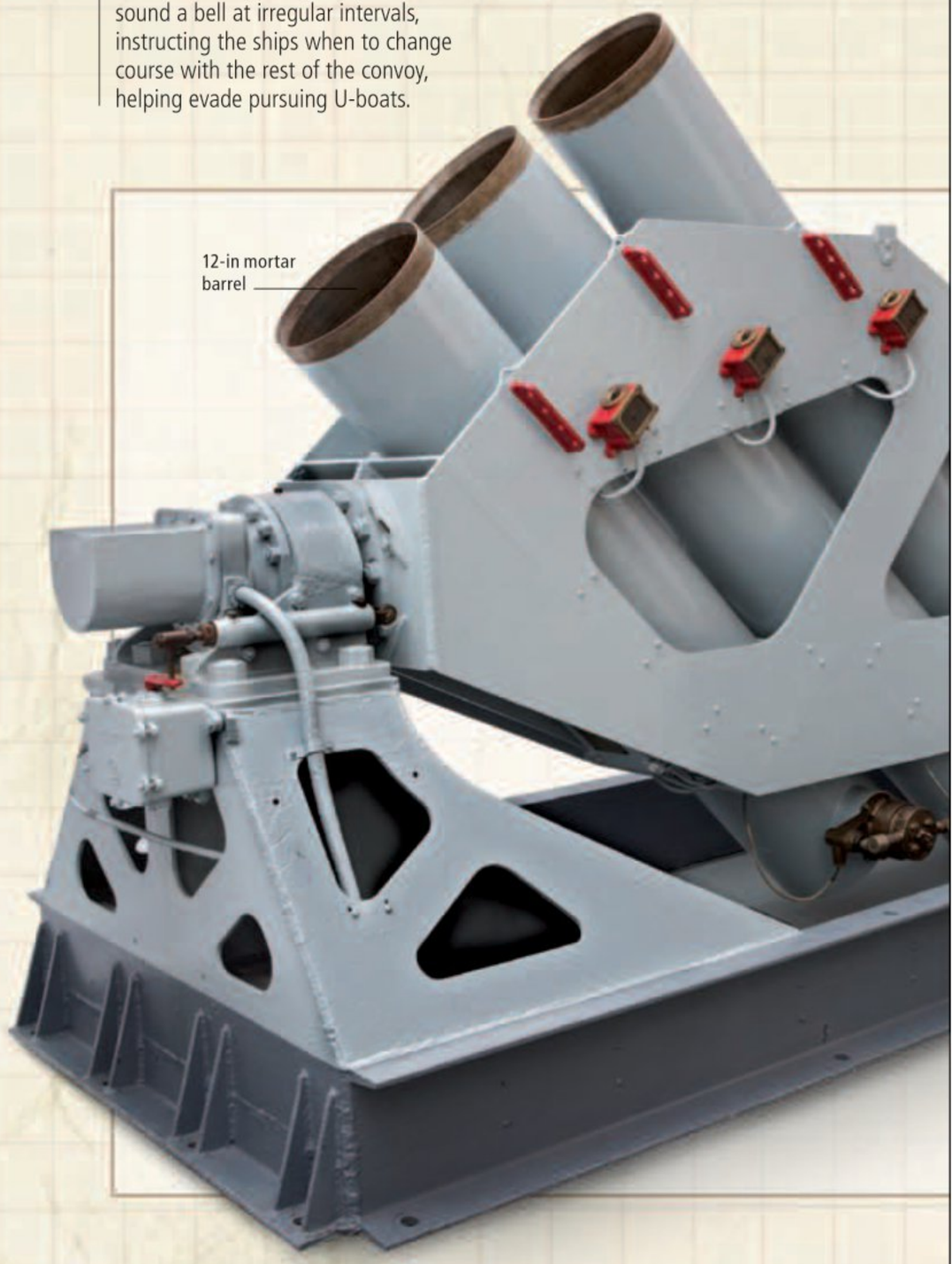
HUFF-DUFF

High-Frequency Direction-Finding (HF/DF), abbreviated to "huff-duff," became one of the crucial technological resources in the battle against the U-boats. It consisted of either shore-based or ship-mounted antennas that picked up German U-boat radio transmissions, from which it was possible to triangulate the enemy's rough position, and then make evasion or attack.



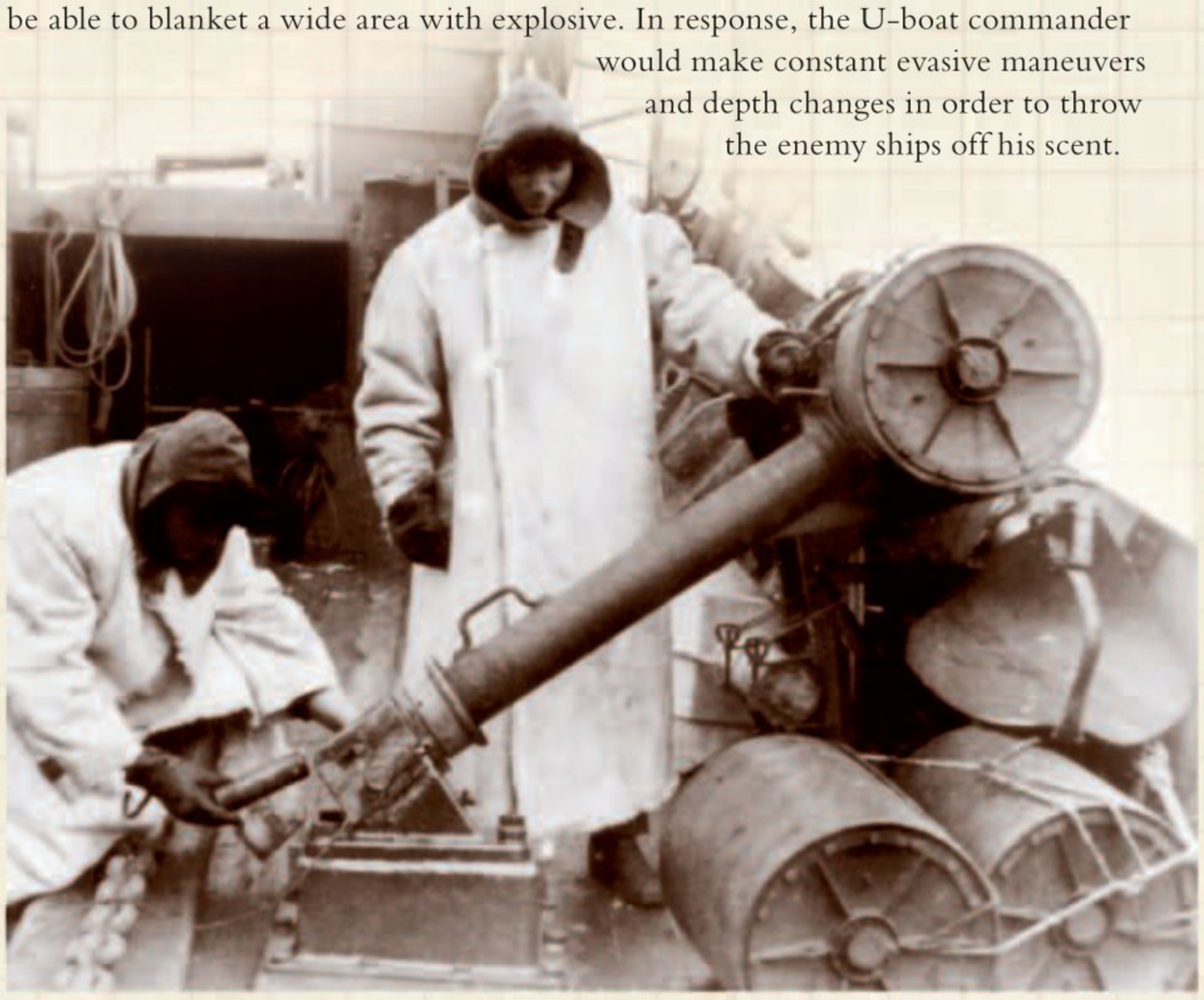
LOCATING U-BOATS

Even more than "huff-duff" (see above), radar systems were the critical U-boat locating tool. The first ship-mounted sets were crude and often ineffective, but by 1942 the British Type 271 centimetric radar was in operation, with enough sensitivity to detect a surfaced submarine at a distance of several miles. Once similar radar was fitted to long-range patrol aircraft, U-boats found it more difficult to hide. When the submarine was submerged, ASDIC (sonar) came into play. ASDIC used a sonar pulse that, if it hit and rebounded off a submarine's hull, would give depth and direction data. The Allies also used hydrophone sets, powerful underwater microphones that "listened" for propeller or other noises. The Americans had the Magnetic Anomaly Device (MAD) fitted to patrol aircraft, which searched for magnetic disturbances in the water.



DESTROYING U-BOATS

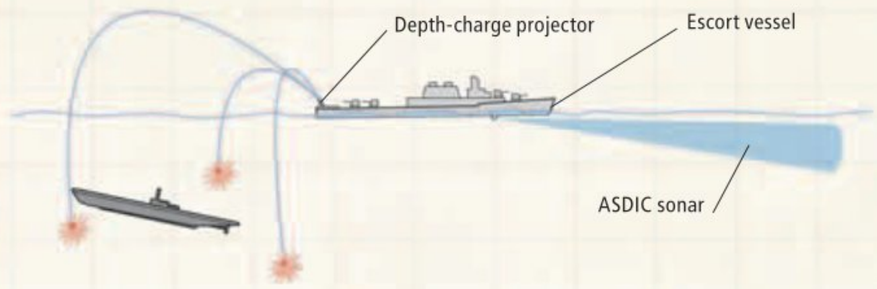
Once a convoy escort group had located a U-boat they had several means of engaging it. If the U-boat was on the surface, it was attacked with gunfire or torpedoes, or sometimes even rammed (maritime patrol aircraft would make strafing or depth-charge runs). In most cases, however, the U-boat would submerge. In this case, the primary weapon was the depth charge, a cylinder of explosive with a hydrostatic fuze that was set to detonate the weapon at a particular depth. Escort vessels would circle the known or predicted U-boat position and "bracket" the area with depth charges. Typically, an escort would drop three depth charges from the stern and fire one from each side in every attack, varying the depth settings of each depth charge to maximize the possibilities of a kill. Several ships working in tandem would be able to blanket a wide area with explosive. In response, the U-boat commander would make constant evasive maneuvers and depth changes in order to throw the enemy ships off his scent.



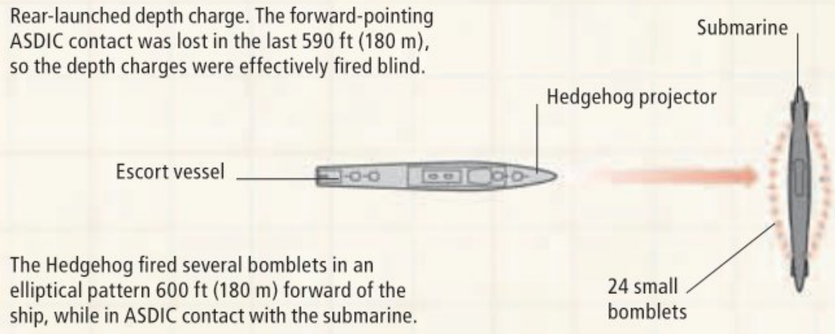
READY FOR LAUNCH A British naval crew prepare a depth charge for launch from a thrower. Depth charges may have been the crudest anti-submarine weapon in the Allied arsenal, but they were also extremely effective, accounting for 43 percent of all U-boats sunk.

DEPTH-CHARGE LAUNCH PATTERNS

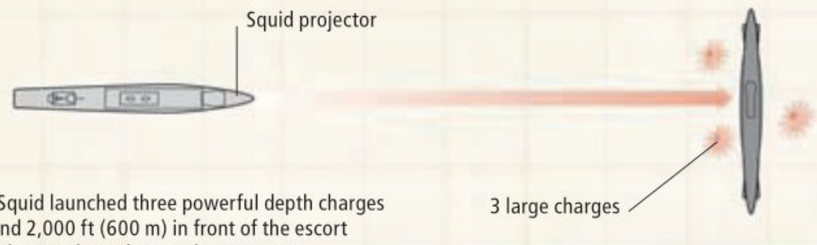
As the war progressed, two main forward-firing variations on the depth charge emerged. The Squid three-barreled mortar fired three fast-sinking depth charges that produced triangular explosive patterns beneath the water, increasing the chances of a successful kill. The Hedgehog, by contrast, fired 24 small contact-detonated bomblets over a wide circular area.



Rear-launched depth charge. The forward-pointing ASDIC contact was lost in the last 590 ft (180 m), so the depth charges were effectively fired blind.



The Hedgehog fired several bomblets in an elliptical pattern 600 ft (180 m) forward of the ship, while in ASDIC contact with the submarine.



The Squid launched three powerful depth charges around 2,000 ft (600 m) in front of the escort vessel, spread evenly over the target area.

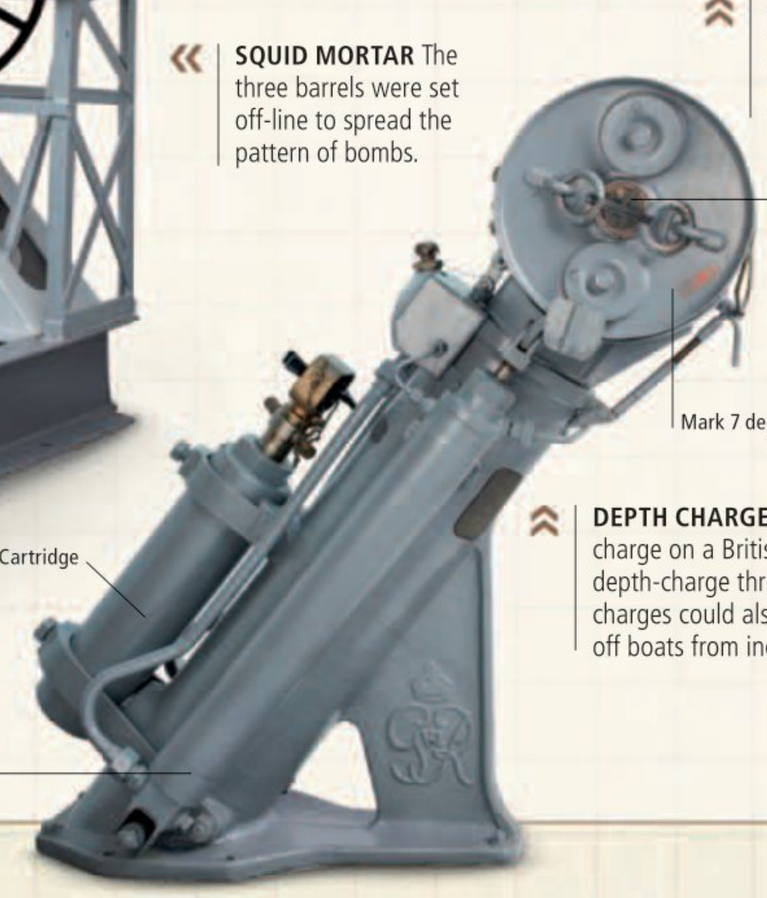
ANTI-SUBMARINE DEPTH CHARGES AND MORTARS

The limitations of British sonar (ASDIC) were critical in the development of new anti-submarine weaponry during World War II. ASDIC was forward pointing, and therefore lost contact with a U-boat if it was within 600 ft (180 m) of the front of the ship. New types of anti-submarine weapon such as the Hedgehog and Squid mortars, introduced in 1942–43, fired forward and far enough ahead to engage the U-boat while still within ASDIC contact.

The shape of their bombs also meant that they sank faster than depth charges, so escort vessels could put their explosives on target more quickly if a contact was made.

SQUID MORTAR The three barrels were set off-line to spread the pattern of bombs.

SQUID BOMB Each Squid bomb held 200 lb (91 kg) of Minol II explosive.



DEPTH CHARGE A depth charge on a British Mark 4 depth-charge thrower. Depth charges could also be rolled off boats from inclined racks.

HEDGEHOG BOMBLET Four rows of six spigots launched a salvo of 24 spigot-mortar bomblets.

FORMIDABLE FIREPOWER

Huge shockwaves spread across the water as the battleship USS *Iowa* fires a full broadside from her nine 16-in guns. One of the most heavily armed warships ever built, the *Iowa* entered US service in 1943 and participated in many of the key Pacific battles of World War II. Iowa-class battleships have since served in every major US conflict of the second half of the 20th century.

EVACUATIONS AND LANDINGS

OPERATIONS IN SUPPORT of land forces constituted a major part of the naval war in the European theater. In April 1940 the Germans landed troops in Norway, primarily by sea, precipitating an intensive air-sea battle as Britain and France attempted first to interrupt the landings and then to put their own soldiers ashore. Both sides suffered naval losses in the Norway campaign, which ended in victory for Germany in June. By then the Germans had invaded France and the Low Countries, forcing a mass evacuation of Allied troops from Dunkirk, carried off by Royal Navy warships with the assistance of a flotilla of small craft under intensive air attack. From 1942, however, with the United States in the war and the tide of victory flowing in the opposite direction, Allied naval forces developed expertise in troop landings rather than evacuations. After British and American warships had successfully escorted troops to North Africa in late 1942, they went on to cover the landings in Sicily and southern Italy in the following year, and finally played a crucial role in achieving the vast-scale invasion of Normandy in June 1944.

WORLD WAR II

NARVIK

Date April 10–13, 1940
Forces British: 1 carrier, 1 battleship, 14 destroyers; Germans: 10 destroyers
Losses British: 2 destroyers, 2 aircraft; Germans: 10 destroyers, 1 U-boat

Location Narvik, Ofotfjord, Norway

Early in the Norway campaign, Captain Bernard Warburton-Lee, in command of a destroyer flotilla, decided to attack a German naval force in port at Narvik, which was outside the range of Luftwaffe air cover. He took his five H-class destroyers—*Hardy*, *Hotspur*, *Havock*, *Hunter*, and *Hostile*—stealthily up the Ofotfjord in a heavy snowstorm, approaching Narvik at dawn. The Germans had taken a picket ship off station and were caught by surprise. Two German destroyers were sunk and three others damaged. Having sunk some cargo ships and exchanged fire with German forces on shore, Warburton-Lee then set to leave, but on the way out he was surprised by five more German destroyers that had been concealed around the fjord. *Hardy* and *Hunter* were lost and *Hotspur* severely damaged. Killed on board *Hardy*, Warburton-Lee was awarded a posthumous Victoria Cross.

Three days later the Royal Navy sent the battleship *Warspite*, escorted by destroyers and supported by the carrier *Furious*, to Narvik. The eight German destroyers still in the fjord, several damaged and all short of fuel and ammunition, were annihilated by this overwhelming force. Troops were then landed at Narvik, but had to be evacuated two months later as Norway became indefensible.

WORLD WAR II

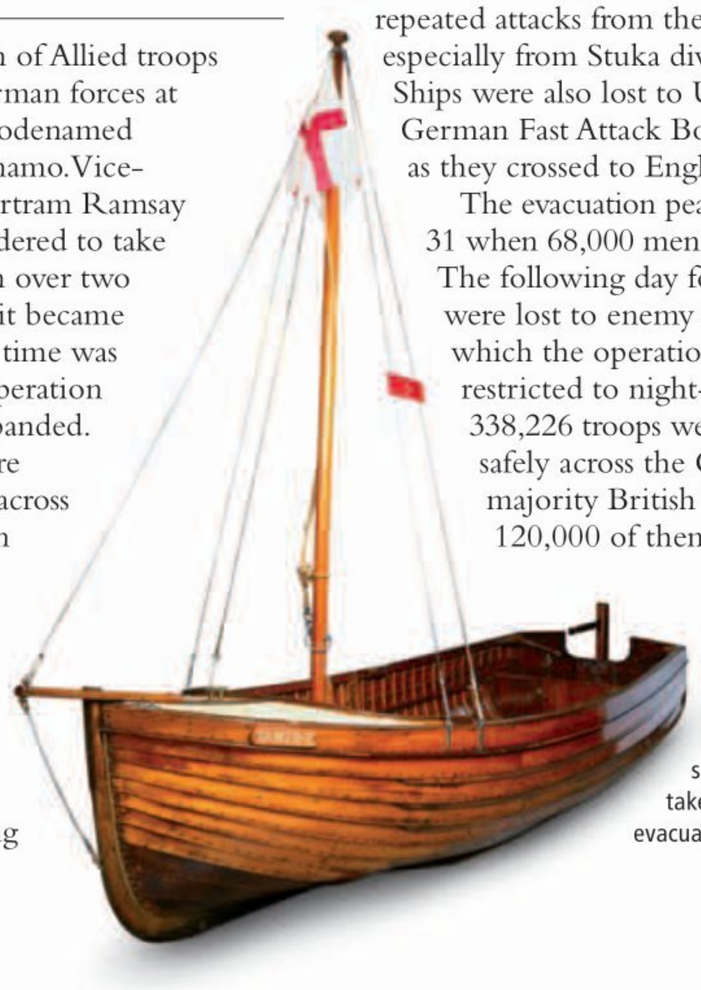
DUNKIRK

Date May 4-June 26, 1940
Forces Allies: 222 naval vessels, 665 civilian craft
Losses British: 6 destroyers, 24 other naval vessels, c.200 small craft; French: 3 destroyers

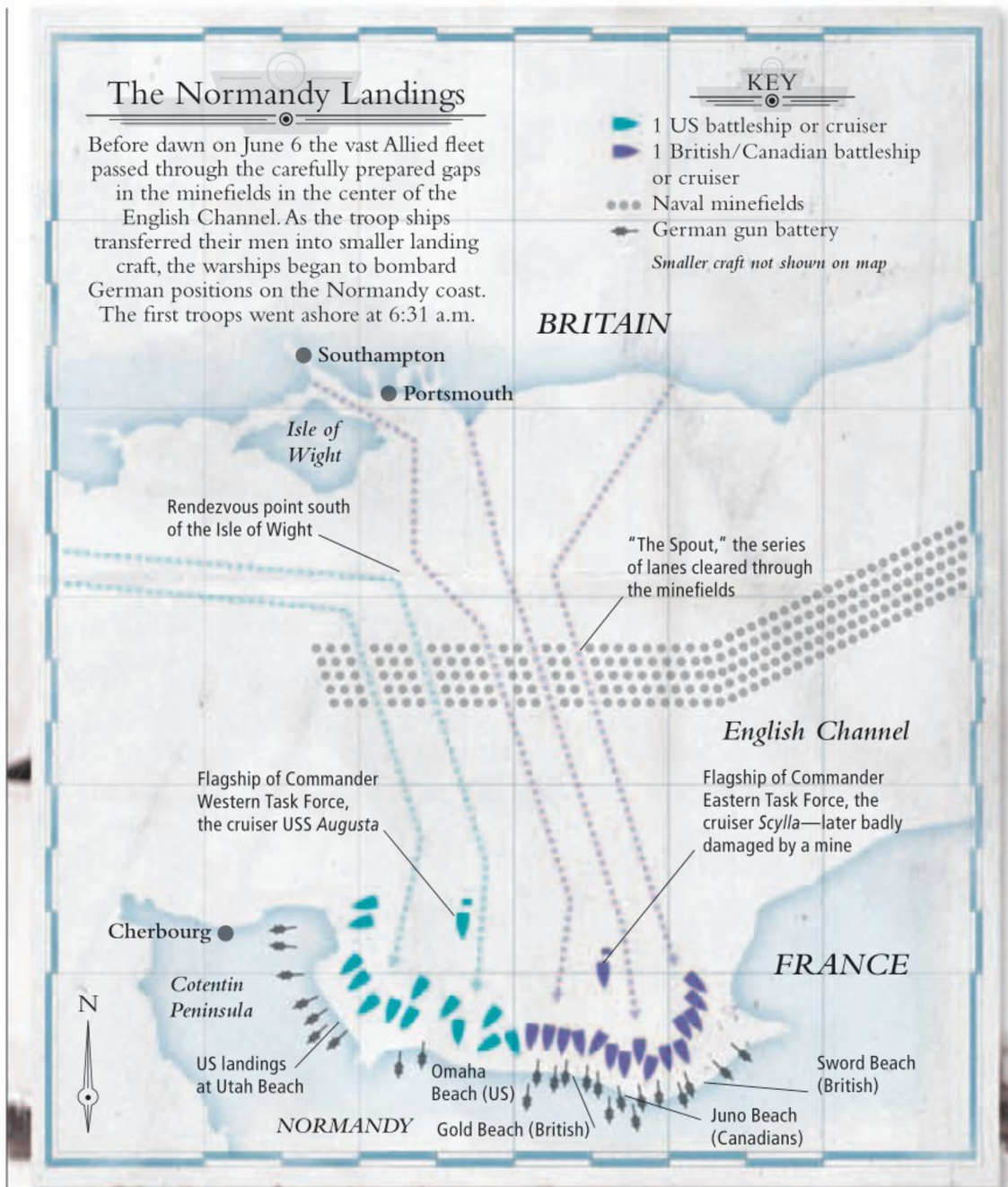
Location Dunkirk, northern France

The evacuation of Allied troops trapped by German forces at Dunkirk was codenamed Operation Dynamo. Vice-Admiral Sir Bertram Ramsay was initially ordered to take off 45,000 men over two days, but once it became apparent more time was available, the operation was greatly expanded. The troops were mostly carried across the Channel on destroyers and minesweepers, but Ramsay also called for the aid of hundreds of small civilian vessels including paddle steamers, trawlers, tugboats, and lifeboats. This was not a pure improvisation—most of the boats belonged to the Royal Navy's "small vessels pool." The function of the little boats was to ferry soldiers from the Dunkirk beaches through the shallows to naval ships waiting off shore, since Dunkirk port had become unusable. The evacuation was carried out under repeated attacks from the Luftwaffe, especially from Stuka dive-bombers. Ships were also lost to U-boats and German Fast Attack Boats (E-boats) as they crossed to England.

The evacuation peaked on May 31 when 68,000 men were rescued. The following day four destroyers were lost to enemy attack, after which the operation was restricted to night-time. In all 338,226 troops were brought safely across the Channel, the majority British but some 120,000 of them French.



Dunkirk little ship
At only 15 ft (4.5 m) long, *Tamzine* was the smallest vessel to take part in the evacuation of Dunkirk.



THE NORMANDY LANDINGS

The invasion of Normandy by Allied forces on June 6, 1944, was the largest amphibious operation in military history. The naval aspect of the landings was known as Operation Neptune. The naval forces had three major functions: to transport troops and equipment across the English Channel; to protect the invasion force against attack by German surface warships or submarines; and to bombard the German land defenses. That the operation succeeded should not hide the fact that it involved considerable risks.

From a naval point of view, bad weather was probably the most serious hazard, for heavy seas would have prevented the landings entirely. Weather did in fact force a postponement from the original planned D-Day of June 5, and conditions on June 6 were far from perfect. This resulted in most troops arriving at the beaches seasick, but put the German defenders off their guard,

Midget submarine helmet
The first craft off the shore of Normandy on D-Day were midget submarines that guided the invasion force toward the beaches with navigation beacons.

since they considered an invasion in such weather unlikely.

Intervention by German naval forces also had to be taken seriously. During a rehearsal for D-Day at Slapton Sands in southern England in April 1944, a group of German Fast Attack Boats (E-boats) struck a convoy of landing craft and killed more than 600 American servicemen. If E-boats, U-boats, or even large surface warships had got among the landing craft during the actual landings the death toll could have been serious. In the event, the threat of the German navy was nullified. Air patrols kept U-boats out of the English Channel, while minefields and screening destroyers blocked the possibility of surface attacks.

The massive invasion fleet put to sea on the night of June 5-6, the American Western Task Force under Rear Admiral Alan G. Kirk and the British and Canadian Eastern Task Force under Rear Admiral Sir Philip Vian. The convoys formed up south of the Isle of Wight and crossed the English Channel through "the Spout," a series of lanes swept clear of mines. Midget submarines laid navigation beacons approaching the Normandy coast. The naval bombardment of the coastal defenses behind the five landing beaches was formidable. Kirk's force consisted of three battleships—*Nevada*, *Texas*, and *Arkansas*—nine cruisers, and 20 destroyers. Vian had the battleships *Warspite* and *Ramillies*, along with 12 cruisers and 37 destroyers.

The operation did not end with the landings. Naval forces had to maintain the supply lifeline across the English Channel, using the famous Mulberry artificial harbors towed across to Normandy. Naval guns continued to bombard German land forces as the fighting moved inland. There were losses to mines and air attacks, duels with coastal artillery, and occasional fights with German destroyers. But taken as a whole the Normandy invasion was a remarkable demonstration of the command of the sea and the importance of logistics.

WORLD WAR II

THE NORMANDY LANDINGS

Date	June 6–30, 1944
Location	Normandy, northern France
Result	Allied victory

COMBATANTS

ALLIES	GERMANY

COMMANDERS

Sir Bertram Ramsay	**Gerd von Rundstedt** **Erwin Rommel**

FORCES

Ships: 1,213 warships (including 6 battleships and 25 cruisers), 4,126 landing craft, 1,600 support vessels	**Ships:** unknown

LOSSES

Ships: 59	**Ships:** unknown

D-Day landing craft
A British Landing Craft Assault (LCA) ferries US troops to shore during the rehearsals for the Normandy landings.

Normandy beachhead
Fleets of US transport and landing craft disgorge their cargoes onto the beaches at Normandy. Barrage balloons overhead protect against German strafing aircraft.

WAR IN THE MEDITERRANEAN

ITALY'S ENTRY INTO THE WAR in June 1940 initiated a three-year naval struggle for control of the Mediterranean. The Italian navy, the Regia Marina, fought bravely, although its effectiveness was limited by lack of radar. When the Italians were joined by the land-based aircraft of the German Luftwaffe, Britain's Royal Navy came under severe pressure. Running convoys from Alexandria and Gibraltar to Malta, a key British base less than 62 miles (100 km) from Sicily, was always difficult and sometimes impossible. Although British victories at Taranto and Cape Matapan weakened the Italian fleet, the Royal Navy's losses were grievous, mostly to air attack but also to German and Italian submarines. By the start of 1942 the Axis was winning control of the Mediterranean. The progress of Allied ground forces in North Africa, facilitated by naval attacks on Axis supply ships, eventually relieved the pressure on sea communications. Italy was defeated in September 1943.

THE MEDITERRANEAN THEATER 1940–1943

By 1942 the Mediterranean was in danger of becoming an Axis lake. The Germans had invaded Greece in 1941, and by October 1942 British land forces had been driven back almost to Alexandria. Yet the Royal Navy continued to operate, escorting convoys to isolated Malta. The situation changed in November 1942 with the Allied victory in Egypt and US landings in Algeria.

KEY
- Under Allied control Jul 1940
- Under Axis control Jul 1940
- Vichy French possessions
- Axis airbase
- Main British convoy routes
- Main Axis convoy routes
- Allied victory
- Axis victory
- Inconclusive action

WORLD WAR II

MERS-EL-KEBIR

Date July 3, 1940
Forces British: 1 carrier, 2 battleships, 1 battlecruiser, 2 light cruisers, 11 destroyers; French: 4 battleships, 6 destroyers, 5 submarines
Losses British: none; French: 3 battleships sunk or disabled
Location West of Oran, French Algeria

As German forces overran France in June 1940, the French Navy made vigorous efforts to keep its warships out of Nazi hands. Ships dispersed to British ports and the French overseas empire, including Mers-el-Kebir in French Algeria. The armistice terms agreed on June 24 specified that the French Navy would not be handed over to the Germans. The British, however, did not trust Germany or France to stick to the agreement. The addition of the French fleet to the Axis naval forces would have dangerously altered the balance of power at sea. Britain decided to ensure this could never happen. A force consisting of the battlecruiser *Hood*, the battleships *Valiant* and *Resolution*, and the carrier *Ark Royal* was sent to Mers-el-Kebir. Its commander, Admiral Sir James Somerville, had orders to demand that the French either join the British war effort, surrender their ships into British hands, or sail to internment in the Americas. If they refused these options they had to scuttle their ships or be fired upon. The French commander in Mers-el-Kebir, Admiral Marcel Gensoul, preferred to fight. He cleared his four battleships—*Dunkerque*, *Strasbourg*, *Bretagne*, and *Provence*—for action and attempted to get under way. The British gunnery was accurate and destruction swift. *Bretagne* was hit by 15-inch salvoes, exploded and capsized, *Dunkerque* was immobilized, and *Provence* set on fire and forced to beach. Only *Strasbourg* escaped to Toulon, but she was scuttled along with the rest of the Vichy fleet in 1942 to prevent her falling into Germans hands. Almost 1,300 French sailors died at Mers-el-Kebir, an action regretted by the Royal Navy and bitterly resented in France.

French fleet at Mers-el-Kebir
A French soldier stands guard next to the battleships *Dunkerque* and *Strasbourg*. The sister ships were of an unusual design with all their main guns mounted forward.

WORLD WAR II

CALABRIA

Date July 9, 1940
Forces British: 1 carrier, 3 battleships, 5 cruisers, 16 destroyers; Italians: 2 battleships, 14 cruisers, 16 destroyers
Losses none
Location East of Punta Stilo, Calabria

One month after Italy had entered the war, a British naval force under Admiral Sir Andrew Cunningham escorting convoys from Alexandria to Malta was intercepted by Italian warships under Admiral Inigo Campioni. The British had suffered damage in attacks by Italian land-based aircraft, leading the Italians to believe they were in worse shape than was actually the case. After a clash between opposing cruisers, Cunningham's flagship *Warspite* dueled at maximum range with the Italian battleships *Giulio Cesare* and *Conte di Cavour*. *Warspite* hit *Giulio Cesare* with a 15-in shell from a distance of 15 miles (24 km), causing considerable damage. As the other British battleships, *Malaya* and *Royal Sovereign*, came up the Italians turned for home. The Italian air force concluded the engagement by bombing both fleets indiscriminately.

THE BATTLE OF TARANTO

Admiral Sir Andrew Cunningham approved a bold plan for a night attack by the Fleet Air Arm upon the Italian naval base at Taranto. For the first time in history a naval attack would use only planes, launching them from offshore aircraft carriers. The raid was originally scheduled for Trafalgar Day, October 21, and was to involve the carriers *Eagle* and *Illustrious*. However, fire damage to one ship and structural damage to the other delayed the action. Eventually it was decided to go ahead with *Illustrious* only, bolstered by the transfer of five aircraft from *Eagle*.

Fairey Swordfish
British Fairey Swordfish torpedo-bombers used modified torpedoes dropped from a low height to attack the Italian fleet at Taranto.

THE AIRCRAFT

It was a peculiarity of the Fleet Air Arm that its carriers were superb but its aircraft were obsolescent. The raid was carried out by slow-moving Fairey Swordfish, two-seater biplanes that had first entered service in 1936 and were affectionately known as "Stringbags." Escorted by cruisers and destroyers, *Illustrious* approached within striking range of Taranto on the evening of November 11, flying off two waves of 12 and nine Swordfish an hour apart. Half the aircraft were armed with torpedoes and the rest with bombs. The torpedoes were used against the six battleships and three cruisers moored in Taranto's outer harbor, while the bombs were dropped on the smaller ships in the inner harbor.

THE OUTCOME

The Italians were well prepared for an aerial attack. The Swordfish flew into an inferno of anti-aircraft fire, some keeping so low their wheels touched the sea. Their torpedoes had been skillfully adapted to run in the shallow harbor waters and explode beneath the torpedo nets protecting the capital ships. Five struck home, hitting the battleships *Vittorio Veneto*, *Caio Duilio*, and *Conte di Cavour*. A cruiser in the inner harbor was badly damaged by bombs. Remarkably only two Swordfish were shot down during the conflict. For this trivial cost, the Fleet Air Arm succeeded in halving the Italian battleship strength in a single night. *Vittorio Veneto* and *Caio Duilio* were recommissioned the following year, but *Cavour* was never salvaged.

WORLD WAR II

THE BATTLE OF TARANTO

Date	November 11–12, 1940
Location	Taranto, southern Italy
Result	British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	ITALY

COMMANDERS

Sir Andrew Cunnngham	**Inigo Campioni**

FORCES

Ships: 1 carrier, 4 cruisers, 4 destroyers	**Ships:** 6 battleships, 9 cruisers, 17 destroyers

LOSSES

Men: 2 **Ships:** none **Aircraft:** 2	**Men:** 59 **Ships:** 1 battleship sunk, 2 battleships and 1 cruiser disabled

The victory tilted the balance of power in the Mediterranean in favor of the Allies. Any Italian ships that survived the attack were moved further north to Naples and La Spezia.

Italian firepower
Italian battleship *Vittorio Veneto* fires a salvo from her nine 15-inch guns. The *Vittorio Veneto* was the most powerful warship to survive the attack on Taranto.

1883–1963

ANDREW B. CUNNINGHAM

BRITISH ADMIRAL OF THE FLEET

Admiral Andrew B Cunningham, known as "ABC," was commander-in-chief of the Royal Navy's Mediterranean Fleet from the outbreak of World War II to the Italian surrender in September 1943. A forthright man of action, Cunningham best showed his nerve and aggression in the night-time pursuit and destruction of the Italian fleet at Cape Matapan. His iron will helped keep his fleet going through the savage losses of the Malta convoy battles and the Crete campaign. In October 1943 he was appointed First Sea Lord and was responsible for British naval strategy through the rest of the war.

WORLD WAR II

OPERATION EXCESS

Date January 10–11, 1941
Forces British: 1 carrier, 2 battleships, 3 cruisers, 7 destroyers; Axis: 2 destroyers, land-based aircraft
Losses British: 1 cruiser and 1 destroyer; Italians: 1 destroyer
Location Off southern Sicily

The Luftwaffe's Fliegerkorps X moved to bases in Sicily in January 1941. The British mounted a complex convoy operation, Operation Excess, in which merchant ships from Gibraltar were escorted to the south of Sicily by a force, including the carrier *Illustrious*, and passed to cruiser escorts from Alexandria to continue eastward. *Illustrious* was attacked by Stuka dive-bombers on January 10. Hit by eight bombs and partially disabled, she limped to Malta, where air attacks continued. The next day the cruiser *Southampton*, heading for Alexandria, was so damaged by dive-bombing that she had to be scuttled.

THE BATTLE OF CAPE MATAPAN

On March 27, 1941, a substantial force of Italian warships assembled off southern Italy, commanded by Admiral Angelo Iachino on the Littorio-class battleship *Vittorio Veneto*. Iachino had been misled by intelligence reports suggesting the Royal Navy had only one battleship and no aircraft carriers in the sea around Crete. In reality, Admiral Sir Andrew Cunningham had the battleships *Warspite*, *Barham*, and *Valiant*, and the carrier *Formidable*. Once the Italian fleet was at sea, Cunningham set out from Alexandria to intercept, calling on Vice Admiral Henry Pridham-Wippell to join him with a destroyer flotilla and light cruiser squadron from Piraeus.

On March 28 an Italian aircraft spotted Pridham-Wippell's light cruisers and destroyers and Iachino headed to intercept. Shortly after 8:00 a.m. Pridham-Wippell came under fire from Italian heavy cruisers. Iachino executed a pincer movement that threatened to trap Pridham-Wippell's force between the heavy cruisers and *Vittorio Veneto*, but at around 11:00 a.m. torpedo bombers from Andrew Cunningham's carrier *Formidable* arrived on the scene. While the Italian warships were preoccupied with evading air attack, Pridham-Wippell slipped away.

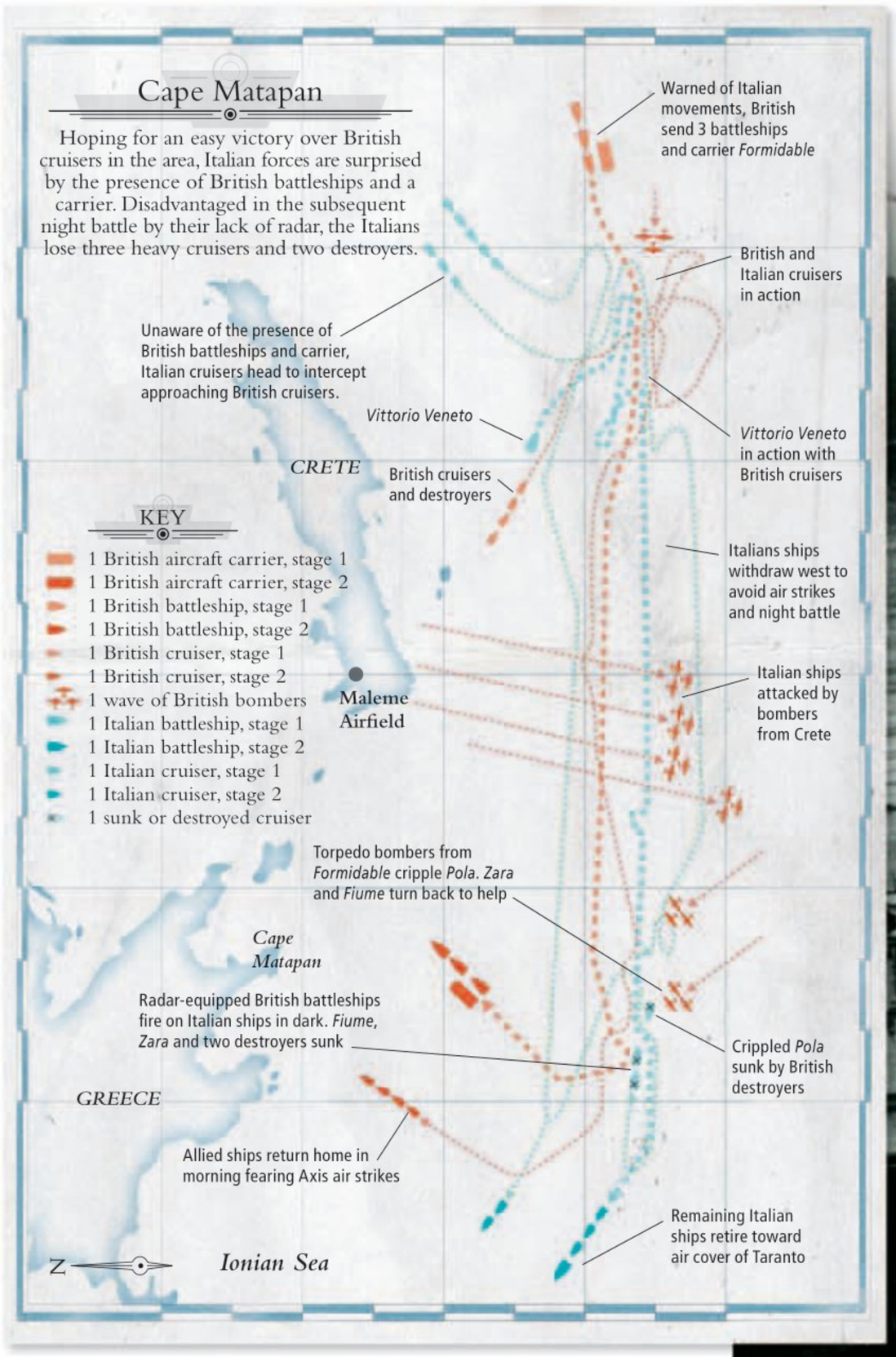
Cape Matapan medallion
Two warships on a parallel course with aircraft overhead adorn this unofficial Italian medal commemorating the defeat at Cape Matapan.

THE ITALIAN RETREAT

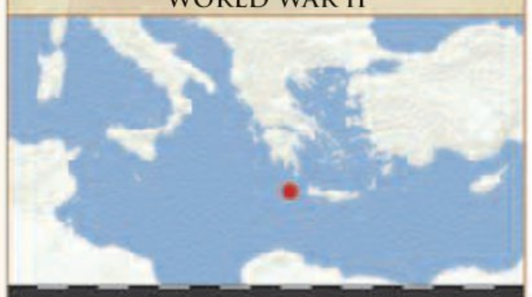
Without air cover, Iachino wisely decided to withdraw. Meanwhile Cunningham ordered further air attacks during which *Formidable*'s airmen succeeded in scoring hits on *Vittorio Veneto* and the heavy cruiser *Pola,* slowing down the former and immobilizing the latter. Still unaware that heavier Royal Navy forces were in the vicinity, Iachino ordered Admiral Carlo Cattaneo's heavy cruisers *Fiume* and *Zara* plus three destroyers, to stay behind to rescue *Pola*.

By this time night had fallen. The Italians had no radar and no training in night fighting. Totally undetected by the Italians in the pitch darkness, Cunningham's battleships, which had radar, advanced to around 3,800 yards (3,500 m) of the ships clustered around *Pola* before opening fire. Struck repeatedly by heavy armor-piercing shells from *Valiant* and *Barham's* 15-in guns, *Fiume* and *Zara* were disabled in minutes, on fire, and listing heavily. British destroyers sank two Italian destroyers; only the destroyer *Gioberti* escaped. *Fiume* sank around 11:00 p.m. *Zara* and *Pola* were finished off by torpedoes in the early hours of the following morning.

The battle ended Italian hopes to control the Mediterranean. Mussolini's once proud fleet would not emerge in force again until it surrendered in 1943.



WORLD WAR II



THE BATTLE OF CAPE MATAPAN

Date March 28–29, 1941
Location Off coast of Greece
Result Allied victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN

ITALY

COMMANDERS

Sir Andrew Cunningham

Angelo Iachino

FORCES

Ships: 1 carrier, 3 battleships, 24 other ships

Ships: 1 battleship, 6 heavy cruisers, 19 other ships

LOSSES

Men: 3
Ships: none

Men: c.2,300
Ships: 3 heavy cruisers, 2 destroyers

Ambush at Cape Matapan
HMS *Valiant*, together with her fellow Queen Elizabeth-class battleships *Barham* and *Warspite*, fires her 15-in guns. The three British battleships destroyed two Italian cruisers and two destroyers at Cape Matapan.

WORLD WAR II

CRETE

Date May 21–June 1, 1941
Forces British: 1 carrier, 4 battleships, 12 cruisers, 32 destroyers; Axis: unknown
Losses British: 3 cruisers and 6 destroyers sunk; Axis: unknown

Location Crete, eastern Mediterranean

On May 20, 1941, German paratroops launched an assault upon Crete, held by British Commonwealth troops. British naval commander Admiral Cunningham was determined to prevent German troop reinforcements arriving by sea from Greece. His principle throughout was that "the Navy must not let the Army down." Since his ships were operating without air cover within range of German land-based aircraft, losses were inevitably heavy. On May 21 a first flotilla of German troop transports was forced to turn back. The next day a larger invasion force was attacked and scattered, but this time Luftwaffe air attacks took their toll—the cruiser *Gloucester* sunk and 723 lives were lost.

From May 28, with the land battle on Crete lost, the Royal Navy's task was to evacuate as many troops as possible to Egypt. This was a perilous task. The destroyers *Hereward* and *Imperial* were sunk evacuating troops from Heraklion on May 29. Most troops were taken off from Sphakia in southern Crete. In all some 16,000 soldiers were evacuated. The last Royal Navy ship sunk was the cruiser *Calcutta*, sent from Alexandria to cover the withdrawal, on June 1. The British had lost nine ships, all to aerial attack, and had 15 others damaged. Some 2,000 sailors lost their lives.

WORLD WAR II

RAID ON ALEXANDRIA

Date December 17–18, 1941
Forces British: unknown; Italians: 1 submarine, 3 midget submarines
Losses Italians: 3 midget submarines; British: 2 battleships, 1 destroyer severely damaged, 1 tanker sunk

Location Alexandria, Egypt

The Italian Regia Marina developed midget submarines known as *Maiali*, for underwater raids on British harbors. On the night of December 17-18, 1941, three *Maiali* were carried to the entrance of Alexandria harbor, home of the British Mediterranean Fleet, by the submarine *Scire*. Released under water, they penetrated the harbor's defenses undetected by following behind a British cruiser, the entry of which required the anti-submarine barrier to be opened. Two of the crews attached their charges to the hulls of the battleships *Valiant* and *Queen Elizabeth*—Admiral Andrew Cunningham's flagship. The third was destined for the absent aircraft carrier *Eagle*, so a large tanker, *Sagona* was targeted instead. The time-delayed charges exploded the next morning. The two battleships were severely damaged, *Queen Elizabeth* settling on the bottom of the shallow harbor. The explosion under the tanker also damaged the destroyer *Jervis*. All of the Italian commandos were taken prisoner. Both of the battleships were eventually returned to action, but the short-term loss to British naval strength in the Mediterranean was serious.

Italian manned torpedo
Nicknamed *maiali* (pigs) by their crews because of their poor handling, the manned torpedo carried a detachable warhead of up to 660 lb (300 kg).

WORLD WAR II

SECOND SIRTE

Date March 22, 1942
Forces British: 5 cruisers, 18 destroyers, 1 submarine; Italians: 1 battleship, 3 cruisers, 8 destroyers, 1 submarine
Losses British: none; Italians: none

Location Gulf of Sirte, Mediterranean

The First Battle of Sirte, on December 17, 1941, was an inconclusive fight between Italian and British convoy escort forces under Admiral Angelo Iachino and Rear-Admiral Philip Vian. The same commanders clashed at the same location three months later. Vian was escorting four supply ships from Alexandria to Malta, with four light cruisers, an anti-aircraft cruiser, and a bevy of destroyers. The Italian Regia Marina intercepted with a squadron that included the heavy cruisers *Gorizia* and *Trento*, and the battleship *Littorio*. The weather was stormy, with heavy seas. Vian sighted the heavy cruisers and, leaving five destroyers to escort the supply ships, turned the rest of his escort force to confront the enemy. The Italians maneuvered to draw the British toward their battleship, which loomed into sight around 4 p.m. Heavily outgunned, the British laid down a thick smoke screen, from behind which they dodged out intermittently to engage the Italians with their guns and torpedoes. The destroyer *Kingston* was almost torn apart by a hit from *Littorio*'s 15-in armament and *Havock* was so badly damaged she was for a time dead in the water. Most of the British cruisers also took hits. Toward nightfall Admiral Iachino withdrew, and all the British ships were able to escape. The aftermath of the battle was painful for both sides. Two Italian destroyers foundered in a storm returning home; all the British supply ships were sunk by air attack on arrival at Malta.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

ENIGMA INTERCEPTS

The Enigma machines used by the German Navy for encoding communications used three (later four) rotors to scramble the messages. They were considered utterly secure because the receiver needed to know the exact settings of the rotors, which changed daily. British codebreakers, however, intermittently managed to decipher these messages, providing advance warning of the movements of Axis warships, supply convoys, and submarines. The Enigma intelligence is credited, among other things, with contributing to victory at Cape Matapan and the defeat of German U-boats in the Atlantic.

Enigma machine
By rotating the cylinders at the rear of the machine, code settings could be changed daily. Viewing windows on the lid showed the encoded letters.

LIFE ON BOARD

FOOD AND DRINK

AN AGE-OLD PROBLEM of naval warfare is how to keep ships supplied with food and drink at sea. In the ancient world galleys carried only enough supplies for a few days of sailing. Hugging the coastlines, they beached to buy food and usually ate on shore, although when the galley was in a hurry the oarsmen might snack while they rowed. As sailing ships ventured far from land, however, they had to carry their own supplies with them for long periods of time. This led to health problems because of the lack of fresh food available and inadequate methods of food preservation.

STORAGE Provisions in the hold of a reconstructed Spanish royal galley from 1570. Typical daily fare issued to the oarsmen would have included a 26 oz (720 g) biscuit, made by baking bread and legumes without oil. Pork and wine was added to the volunteers' rations.

A SAILOR'S DIET

Sailors basically consumed the food and drink typical of their society. In the 16th century Spanish sailors ate squid, tuna, sardines, oil, rice, and wine, while the English ships carried beef, butter, and beer. The distinguishing feature of shipboard food was that it needed to last. So freshly baked bread was replaced by biscuit, provided for Venetian galley crews as "biscotti" and the Royal Navy as "hard tack." Although liable to infestation by weevils and other pests, it provided a good basic foodstuff. Salted meat and fish ("stockfish") were also near universal staples, along with cheese and peas or lentils. That these lacked essential vitamins found in fresh food was recognized long before any scientific explanation was available. Navies in the 18th century tried to provide fresh fruit and vegetables when possible and carried live animals for slaughter. Sailors were on the whole not badly fed by the standards of their day. Scurvy, a disease formed by a deficiency of vitamin C, was found on land as well as at sea.

FRESH FOOD Live animals were brought on board when space permitted in order to overcome the problem of meat spoiling in storage. This meant that men and livestock shared the confines of the lower gun deck, lending additional odor and noise to already overcrowded conditions.

> *The crew made haste that they (did not stop for meals but) pulled and ate at the same time, barley bread mixed with wine and olive oil.*
>
> **THUCYDIDES** (c.400 BCE), on the exceptional circumstances when a trireme crew did not go ashore to take their meal.

COOKING AND MESSING

Arrangements for messing (eating) and cooking on a packed wooden sailing ship were always unsatisfactory. Men messed on the gun deck where they slept, letting down tables that hung from the deckhead. There were typically eight men to a mess. One man from each mess prepared the rations and brought them to the ship's cook—a petty officer, often a disabled man unfit for other service. For safety reasons the cooking fire was small and in the safest place that could be found. All food was typically cooked in a single large pot. Until the mid-19th century men provided their own table utensils. Naturally, life for officers was very different and quite luxurious by comparison. They could pay for their own more refined food and drink, and were waited on by servants, sometimes eating from silver plates.

HARD TACK "Ship's biscuits" were so hard that sailors would dunk them in liquid to soften them up.

BEER TANKARD Beer was standard in Nelson's navy since water soon went stagnant in the storage barrels.

CLOSE QUARTERS The crew on a 19th-century warship would have eaten elbow to elbow amid guns and hammocks. Eight adults and one boy would have sat around this table.

WATER AND ALCOHOL

Keeping water fresh at sea was beyond the technological capacity of the age of sail. It corrupted in the barrels, a problem only solved by the use of iron storage tanks in the 19th century. Instead, sailors mostly drank beer or wine. A sailor in Nelson's Royal Navy was allowed a gallon (4.5 liters) of beer a day. There was also a daily rum ration of half a pint (280 ml) per man, drunk mixed with water as "grog." However, punishments for men drunk on duty were severe. Concern about alcohol led to the reduction of the Royal Navy rum ration to an eighth of a pint (70 ml) by the 1850s. The US Navy stopped alcohol rations in 1862 and banned all alcohol on board warships in 1914.

ISSUING THE GROG Men gather aboard the *Royal Sovereign* in 1895. Teetotallers could claim the money value of the rum, or its equivalent in cocoa and sugar.

RUM BARRELS The red line on the top of the barrel indicated its contents of rum. Rum gradually replaced brandy as the Royal Navy's official daily ration after the British capture of Jamaica in 1655.

COMPACT KITCHEN With room for only two to three people, this is one of several cooking areas on board the Greek armored cruiser *Georgios Averof*, active from 1910 to 1952.

CRAMPED CONFINES The unchanging problem of limited space calls for multi-purpose areas. Here 1950s sailors bunk and mess in the same room.

> *The stench of 51 sweating seamen, diesel oil, rotting food, and moldy bread mingled with the noisome odors that emanated from the galley and the two tiny washrooms.*
>
> **HERBERT A. WERNER** *Iron Coffins*, describing the unappetizing conditions in a U-Boat in World War II

MASS PRODUCTION The bakery on board the US aircraft carrier *George Washington* provides bread for 6,000 crew members. A far remove from early days of unvarying fare, there are specially catered meals and even an ice-cream stand available on board.

MODERN INNOVATIONS

The introduction of canned foods, followed later by refrigeration, improved nutrition on board through the 19th century. Also the increase in the speed of steamships shortened times at sea, making use of fresh ingredients more feasible. In Britain's Royal Navy in 1914, potatoes, powdered soup, smoked salmon, and milky tea were on the menu, although men still ate in messes eight to a bench with a table that probably doubled as a bed. During World War II self-service cafeterias became common on larger ships, though this brought no end to seamen's grumbling about food.

WORLD WAR II: THE PACIFIC

Kamikaze suicide attack
Smoke billows from US carrier *Belleau Wood* after an attack by a kamikaze pilot in October 1944. The battle of Leyte Gulf saw the first organized attacks by Japanese suicide planes—a tactic that became increasingly widespread in the closing stages of the Pacific War.

LAUNCHING A WAR in the Pacific was a desperate gamble by the Japanese. The temporary weakness of Britain, France, and the Netherlands—the colonial powers in southeast Asia—created an irresistible opportunity for Japan to seize control of the oil and other natural resources of British-ruled Malaya and the Dutch East Indies. But Japanese military leaders knew they would also have to fight the United States, with its vastly superior long-term warmaking potential. Admiral Isoroku Yamamoto, commander-in-chief of the Imperial Navy, proposed a surprise attack on the US naval base at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii. By crippling the US Pacific fleet, the Japanese would buy enough time to establish a defensive perimeter across the Pacific, ready to resist an eventual US counterattack. The raid on Pearl Harbor on December 7, 1941, initiated the most intensive large-scale naval conflict ever seen.

EARLY SUCCESSES

At the start of the Pacific War the Japanese and US fleets were quite evenly balanced, except in terms of carriers. Japan had more, and its carrier aircraft were the best in the world. For the first six months of the war Japanese forces ran amok. The Pearl Harbor raid subdued the US Navy briefly, and Britain's Royal Navy, committed to the war against Hitler's Germany, could offer little resistance. In early 1942 the formidable British base at Singapore fell to an attack from the land. Part of the Japanese fleet entered the Indian Ocean and there was nothing to stop it sailing up the Red Sea to the Suez Canal or attacking Iraq, a vital source of British oil supplies. But the Japanese never went further west than Sri Lanka. By May 1942 they were thoroughly occupied in the South Pacific, as the Americans fought back sooner than expected. US carrier aircraft checked Japanese carriers at the Coral Sea and then dealt them a severe blow at Midway—one from which the Imperial Japanese Navy never fully recovered.

Neither the Americans nor the Japanese shied away from a fight. Particularly fierce sea battles were fought around the island of Guadalcanal in the Solomon Islands, with heavy losses on both sides. The Americans benefited from superior naval intelligence—having broken the Japanese naval codes—but the Japanese proved

Next! Japan
A poster advertising bonds to help the US government finance the war in the Pacific and the drive on the Japanese home islands.

Desperate fighting
USS *Bunker Hill* burns after being hit by two kamikaze planes in the space of 30 seconds near Okinawa in 1945. Around 1,500 kamikaze planes were crashed into US ships or shot down during the Japanese defense of the island.

THE JAPANESE ADVANCE

The Pacific War began with Japan's invasion of China and Manchuria in 1937–39 before moving into a second more intensive phase after Japan's attack on Pearl Harbor in December 1941. This was followed by the invasion of the Philippines, Burma, Malaya, and the Dutch East Indies (Indonesia) and the seizure of their economic resources.

KEY

- Under Japanese control Dec 1941
- Under Japanese control Jun 1942
- Japanese invasion/landing
- Route of Pearl Harbor carrier fleet
- Doolittle Raid on Tokyo Apr 18, 1942
- Japanese victory
- US/Allied victory
- Inconclusive battle
- Japanese bombing raid
- US/Allied bombing raid

Submarine binoculars
A pair of Japanese conning tower binoculars. Despite the vulnerable Allied supply line in the Pacific, Japanese submarines generally focused on sinking warships rather than merchant vessels.

better at night-fighting and had more effective torpedoes. At the end of 1942, the Imperial Japanese Navy was still holding its own, but against the huge industrial potential of the United States Japan's long-term prospects looked more grim.

INDUSTRIAL MIGHT

The United States embarked on the largest shipbuilding program in history. From 1943 onward the US Navy expanded its resources in the Pacific until it had achieved an overwhelming superiority over the Japanese. New heavy carriers, light carriers, and escort "jeep" carriers were organized into Carrier Task Forces, each with a protective screen of escort vessels. They soon surpassed their target of 27,500 naval aircraft to equip the new carriers. Landing craft were produced on a massive scale for assaults on the Pacific islands, for which the big guns of their ships, plus carrier aircraft, provided fire support. Meanwhile US submarines overcame problems with non-functioning torpedoes to take a mounting toll on Japanese merchant shipping and warships. The US Navy handled its rapid expansion remarkably well, achieving a high level of training for fresh pilots and sailors and the provision of an efficient supply line to keep the massive new fleets at sea. New tactics were developed, turning amphibious landings into precisely coordinated operations, and evolving robust systems of fleet defense against air attack such as the use of destroyer "pickets" to identify incoming enemy aircraft and the coordination of ship anti-aircraft fire with air combat patrols.

Acutely aware of their growing material inferiority, the Japanese fell back upon their fighting spirit. Naval commanders remained committed to seeking a decisive fleet encounter in which they would destroy the enemy against all the odds. The result in 1944 was a series of epic battles as the Japanese Imperial Navy attacked US ships supporting landings on the Marianas and the Philippines. The absolute superiority of US naval aviation, with improved aircraft and better-trained pilots, achieved the destruction of Japanese carrier-borne air power at the battle of the Philippine Sea. At Leyte Gulf the Japanese fleet made its last serious bid for a decisive victory and lost.

DESPERATE OFFENSIVES

Japan's adoption of kamikaze suicide tactics in the final phase of the war was in part a practical response to the problem of how to inflict damage on the well-defended US fleet. What the Japanese really needed was guided missiles, but a suicide pilot could perform a similar function. For the final battles, as the war approached Japan itself, the Japanese had no usable warships and no time or fuel to train naval pilots operating from land bases. A vast fleet of US, British, and Australian ships was the object of mass suicide attacks by pilots who could barely fly. The kamikazes inflicted much damage, but by this stage the Allies could replace ships faster than they lost them. By the end of the war Japan was under total naval blockade. In September 1945 Japan's formal surrender took place on board USS *Missouri* in Tokyo Bay.

1884–1943

ISORUKU YAMAMOTO

COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF OF JAPANESE COMBINED FLEET

Born Isoroku Takana, the future admiral entered the Etajima Naval Academy aged 16 and fought as an ensign at the battle of Tsushima in 1904, losing two fingers on his left hand. He became part of the Yamamoto samurai family by adoption in 1914. As an admiral in the 1930s he was an advocate of naval air power, deploring Japan's obsession with outsize battleships. He was deeply pessimistic about Japanese chances of success in a war against the US, and he opposed Japan's alignment with Nazi Germany. On being appointed commander-in-chief of the Japanese Combined Fleet in 1939, he pushed through the plan for a preemptive attack on Pearl Harbor. On April 18,1943, pinpointed by American intelligence, the aircraft in which he was traveling was shot down over Bougainville.

THE JAPANESE OFFENSIVE

THE SURPRISE ATTACK by Japanese naval aircraft on the American naval base at Pearl Harbor on December 7, 1941, was the first of a series of bold aggressive moves that within six months gave Japan control of all of southeast Asia and much of the Pacific. The navies of Britain and the Netherlands were able to put up little more than token resistance to an enemy overwhelmingly superior both in heavy-gun warships and in land- and carrier-based aviation. It fell to the US Navy to contest the dominance of the Japanese at sea. The Americans faced an opponent not only superior in numbers but also highly motivated, well trained, and in some departments, better equipped. Yet at the decisive battle of Midway in June 1942 the Japanese carrier force that had humiliated the United States at Pearl Harbor was itself crushingly defeated. The fierce battles fought around the island of Guadalcanal during the second half of 1942 showed that the Japanese Imperial Navy was still confident and aggressive, but Japan had ultimately failed to achieve a decisive naval victory while the balance of power at sea was most in its favor.

PEARL HARBOR

Date	December 7, 1941
Location	Pearl Harbor, Oahu, Hawaii
Result	Japanese victory

COMBATANTS

JAPAN	UNITED STATES

COMMANDERS

Isoroku Yamamoto **Chuichi Nagumoe**	**Husband E. Kimmel**

FORCES

Ships: 2 battleships, 6 carriers, 28 submarines, 23 other ships, 432 aircraft (353 on raid)	**Ships:** 90 ships including 8 battleships, 300 aircraft

LOSSES

Men: 55 **Ships:** 1 submarine, 5 midget submarines	**Men:** 2,403 **Ships:** 18 ships sunk or seriously damaged

PEARL HARBOR

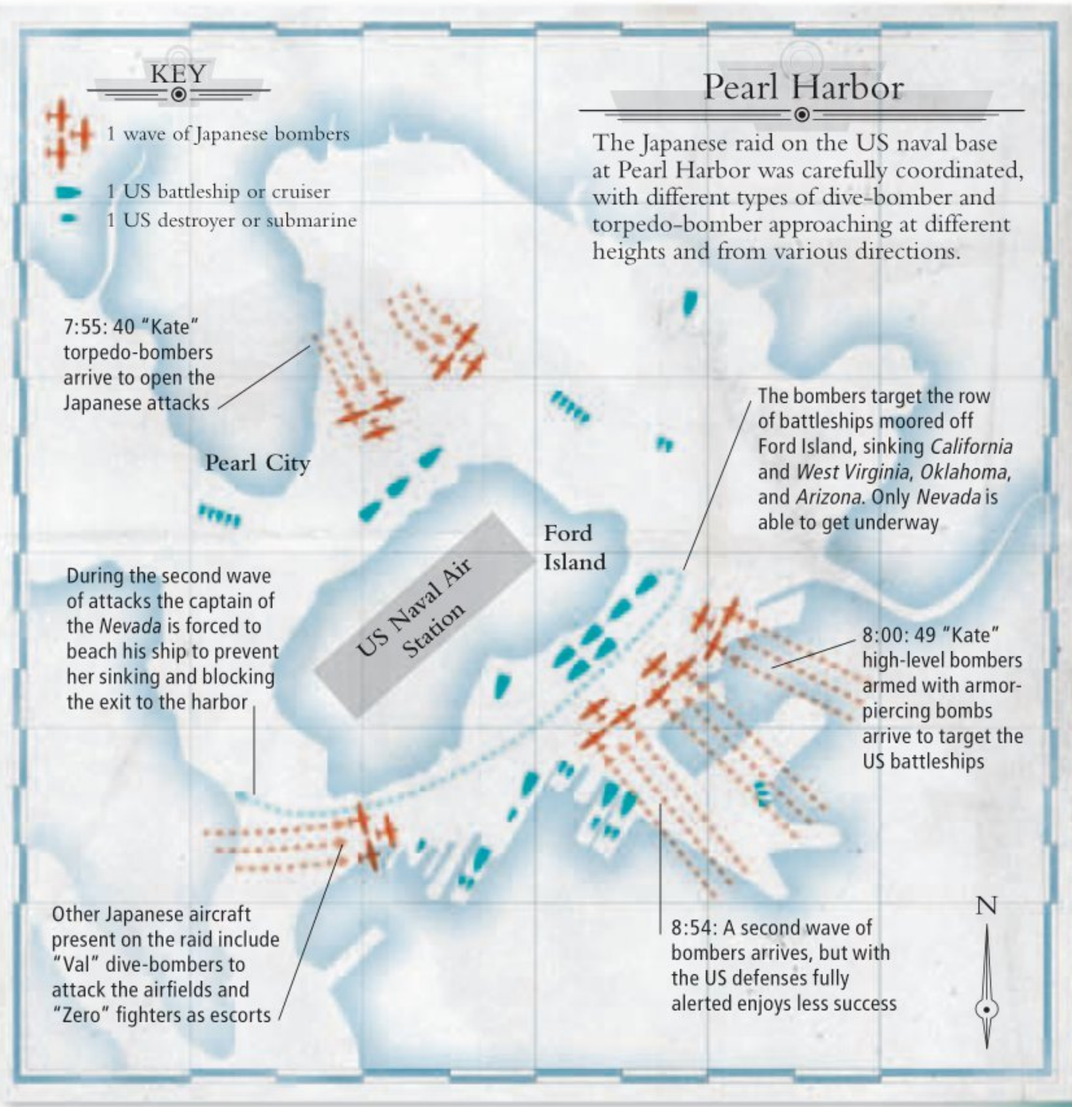
On November 26, 1941, a Japanese naval task force commanded by Vice Admiral Chuichi Nagumo slipped out of Hitokapu Bay in the Kurile Islands bound for Hawaii. The force included six aircraft carriers: *Akagi*, *Kaga*, *Zuikaku*, *Shaokaku*, *Hiryu*, and *Soryu*. Its goal was to attack and destroy the US Pacific Fleet in its base at Pearl Harbor. The key figure behind the Pearl Harbor raid was Admiral Isoroku Yamamoto: Japan had decided to seize Malaya and the Dutch East Indies and, convinced this must mean war with the United States, Yamamoto planned a preemptive strike against the US fleet, to coincide with, rather than follow, a declaration of war.

The operation depended on total surprise. Observing strict radio silence, Nagumo's force would cross thousands of miles of ocean undetected, refuelling from tankers en route. A separate force of Japanese submarines also proceeded to Pearl Harbor, full-size boats carrying midget submarines to penetrate the American defenses. At dawn on December 7, 250 miles (400 km) north of Hawaii, the first wave of 183 Japanese aircraft took off from their carriers—Nakajima "Kate" torpedo-bombers, Mitsubishi "Zero" fighters, and Aichi "Val" dive-bombers.

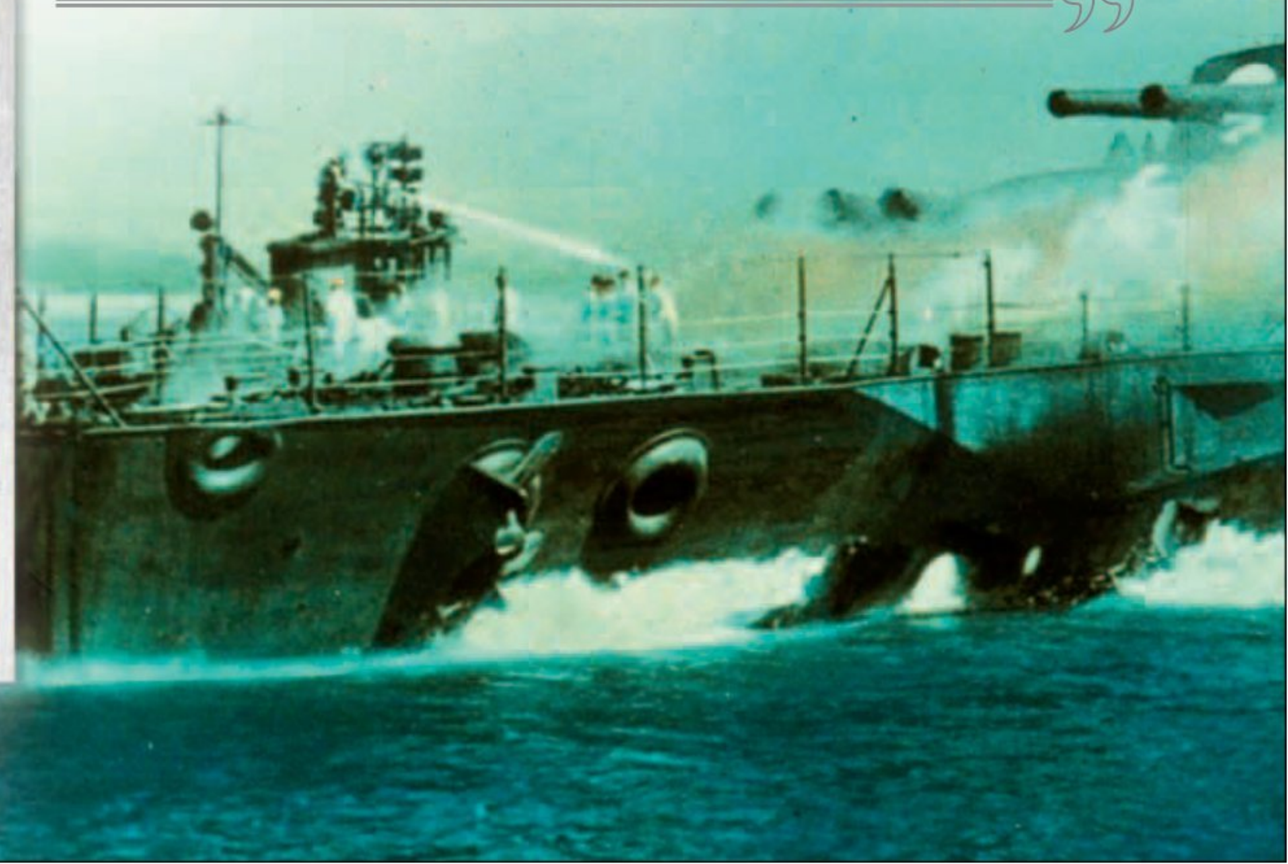
Binoculars from USS *Arizona*
The first ship to be sunk at Pearl Harbor, the battleship *Arizona* was ripped apart by an explosion in its forward magazine.

Although Japan and the US were not at war, diplomatic relations had reached a breaking point and American forces should have been on full alert. But Pearl Harbor was enjoying a sleepy peacetime Sunday morning. The incoming aircraft were picked up on radar and one midget submarine was spotted, but none of this disturbed the Americans. The ship's band was playing on the deck of the battleship *Nevada* as the bombs began to fall. The aircraft that should have defended the base were destroyed as they sat on the ground.

Japan's naval pilots were a highly trained elite flying the world's best carrier aircraft. It is believed that 90 percent of the torpedoes at Pearl Harbor found their target, as did around 60 percent of the bombs dropped by dive-bombers. Within 20 minutes of the start of the attack the battleship *Oklahoma* had capsized after hits by five torpedoes, while *Arizona* had suffered



> YESTERDAY, DECEMBER 7, 1941—A DATE WHICH WILL LIVE IN INFAMY—THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA WAS SUDDENLY AND DELIBERATELY ATTACKED.
>
> **PRESIDENT FRANKLIN D. ROOSEVELT**, SPEECH TO CONGRESS ON DECEMBER 8, 1941



1919–1943

DORIS "DORIE" MILLER

COOK THIRD CLASS, USS WEST VIRGINIA

Like most black sailors in the US Navy in 1941, Doris Miller was a mess attendant. When the Japanese struck Pearl Harbor he was on board the battleship *West Virginia*. Amid the inferno of the burning ship, Miller first attempted to save his wounded captain and then manned an anti-aircraft gun. He is credited with shooting down at least one Japanese aircraft, despite having no training. Miller was awarded the Navy Cross for "distinguished devotion to duty, extraordinary courage, and disregard for his own personal safety." He died in 1943 when the ship on which he was serving was sunk by a Japanese submarine.

an even worse fate: an armor-piercing bomb penetrated its forward magazine, setting off an explosion that ripped the battleship in two, killing more than a thousand of its crew.

A second wave of 170 aircraft arrived later in the morning to add to the mayhem. By the time it was all over, 18 American ships were sunk or disabled, including all the battleships. There were a few glimmers of light in an otherwise grim scene. The attempted attack by Japanese midget submarines was a total failure. The Japanese also failed to destroy the oil tanks at the base. And most important of all, the US Navy's four aircraft carriers were absent when the raid took place. But for the time being, the Japanese navy had established dominance in the Pacific.

USS Nevada on fire
Despite being damaged in the first wave of attacks, *Nevada* was the only battleship to get underway during the raid. The battleship was struck again and beached during the second wave of attacks.

WORLD WAR II

SINKING OF PRINCE OF WALES AND REPULSE

Date December 10, 1941
Forces British: 1 battleship, 1 battlecruiser, 4 destroyers; Japanese: 84 aircraft
Losses British: 1 battleship, 1 battlecruiser; Japanese: 6 aircraft
Location South China Sea

On December 2, 1941, the battleship *Prince of Wales* and the battlecruiser *Repulse* arrived at the British base at Singapore, along with four destroyers. They had been sent in the vain hope of deterring the Japanese from going to war. The ships should have been accompanied by a carrier, but a mishap en route left this under repair in the US.

On the same day as Pearl Harbor, the Japanese began landing troops in Malaya. Admiral Sir Tom Phillips sailed north from Singapore to intercept the landings. His ships, designated Force Z, were spotted by Japanese submarines and cruiser-carried reconnaissance aircraft. Aware that he had lost the advantage of surprise, Phillips turned back on the night of December 9–10.

Japanese naval aircraft of the 22nd Air Flotilla, based at airfields around Saigon in Japanese-occupied Indochina, failed to find Force Z that night, but the following morning they located the ships off Kuantan. Force Z was not unprepared for air defense—*Prince of Wales* alone mounted 175 anti-aircraft guns—but waves of attacks by conventional bombers and, in particular, torpedo-bombers were devastatingly effective. The air attacks began shortly after 11:00 a.m; *Repulse* sank at 12:30 p.m. and *Prince of Wales* at 1:20 p.m. Some 2,000 men were rescued by the destroyers, although Admiral Phillips was among those lost. This disaster left the Japanese in command of the seas and Malaya and Singapore exposed to Japanese conquest.

Air raid on Tokyo
A US Army Air Force B-25 takes off from the deck of the USS *Hornet* on its way to take part in the first US air raid on Japan – an important propaganda coup for the United States military.

WORLD WAR II

DOOLITTLE RAID

Date April 18, 1942
Forces Americans: 2 carriers, 4 cruisers, 8 destroyers, 16 aircraft
Losses Americans: 16 aircraft; Japanese c.50 civilians
Location Pacific Ocean and Tokyo, Japan

With Americans in desperate need of a morale boost, a plan was devised for a carrier raid on the Japanese homeland. The US Navy believed it could advance a carrier task force to within 400 miles (650 km) of Tokyo. As no naval airplane had sufficient range, the US Army Air Force agreed to supply B-25 Mitchell bombers, although no B-25 had ever flown from a flight deck. Lieutenant Colonel James Doolittle led the air side of the mission.

The carrier *Hornet* set to sea on April 2, 1942 with 16 B-25s tethered on the flight deck—they were too large to be stowed below. North of Hawaii *Hornet* rendezvoused with the carrier *Enterprise* and its escort of cruisers and destroyers. Maintaining strict radio silence, they had advanced to 650 miles (1,000 km) from Tokyo when, on the morning of April 18, they were spotted by a Japanese patrol boat. The decision was taken to launch the planes immediately, though the extra distance meant they would be unlikely to reach the airfield in a friendly area of China where they planned to land.

Doolittle had exhaustively practised short take-offs with his volunteer crews, but no one actually knew if the aircraft, laden with fuel and bombs, would launch from a pitching deck in a heavy sea. Remarkably, they took off without mishap and, four hours later, bombed Tokyo and other cities. All the aircraft were subsequently lost but most of the crews found their way back to the US. The raid was a severe embarrassment to Japanese military leaders and partly motivated their fateful decision to attack Midway the following June.

Heavy cruiser Nachi
The Japanese cruiser *Nachi* and her sister ship *Haguro* outclassed their opponents at the battle of the Java Sea. *Nachi*'s longlance torpedoes, more reliable than the Allied torpedoes, sunk the Dutch light cruiser *Java*.

WORLD WAR II

JAVA SEA

Date February 27–March 1,1942
Forces Allies: 5 cruisers, 9 destroyers; Japanese: 4 cruisers; 14 destroyers
Losses Allies: 5 cruisers; 5 destroyers; Japanese: 4 troop transports

Location
Java Sea

An American-British-Dutch-Australian (ABDA) force under Dutch admiral Karel Doorman was created to prevent the Japanese landing troops on Java. On February 27, 1942, an invasion force was spotted and Doorman sailed from Surabaya to intercept it. His force consisted of two heavy cruisers—the Royal Navy's *Exeter* and the US Navy's *Houston*—one Australian and two Dutch light cruisers, and nine destroyers, four of them American. They found the Japanese troop transports defended by Admiral Shoji Nishimura with the heavy cruisers *Nachi* and *Haguro* supported by light cruisers and destroyers.

Although on paper the two forces were comparable, the Japanese were superior in guns, torpedoes, organization, and morale. After two hours' gunfire *Exeter* withdrew from battle after a hit on her boiler room and two ABDA destroyers were sunk. At around 6:00 p.m.

Dutch medallion
Admiral Doorman's flagship *De Ruyter* appears below his reputed last words at the battle of the Java Sea: "I'm attacking, follow me."

WORLD WAR II

CORAL SEA

Date May 4–8, 1942
Forces US and Australians: 2 carriers, 8 cruisers, 13 destroyers; Japanese: 2 carriers, 1 light carrier, 6 cruisers, 6 destroyers
Losses US and Australians: 1 carrier, 1 destroyer, 74 aircraft; Japanese; 1 light carrier, 1 destroyer, 70 aircraft

Location
Coral Sea

In April 1942 the Japanese, pushing south toward Australia, sent a force to occupy Tulagi in the Solomon Islands and Port Moresby in New Guinea, supported by the carriers *Shokaku* and *Zuikaku*. The US Navy was well informed of Japanese plans through radio intercepts and Rear Admiral Frank Fletcher was ordered to seek out and attack the Japanese forces. He assembled the carriers *Lexington* and *Yorktown* and a number of cruisers and destroyers in the Coral Sea, including a contingent from the Royal Australian Navy under Rear Admiral John Crace.

The Americans struck the first blow on May 4 when aircraft from *Yorktown* attacked the Japanese at Tulagi, sinking a destroyer and several merchant vessels. For the next two days the rival carrier forces, concealed by cloud cover, failed to find one another. Fletcher was, however, informed of the course of the invasion force bound for Port Moresby, which was located by the US Army Air Force. On May 7 carrier aircraft attacked the Japanese troop convoy escorts. US fliers piled in to sink the light carrier *Shohu* with a plethora of torpedoes and bombs. But the overkill on a single ship meant other available targets were neglected. Meanwhile, Japanese carrier aircraft attacked and sank an American destroyer and oil tanker that had been mistakenly identified as a carrier and a cruiser. As night fell six Japanese planes tried to land on *Yorktown*, believing it was one of their own ships.

The following morning both sides flew off their aircraft to attack. Many of the American pilots had trouble finding the Japanese carriers, which were sailing through a tropical rainstorm. *Zuikaku* escaped in the poor visibility but *Shokaku* was left ablaze and incapable of operating aircraft. Meanwhile, Japanese bombers, enjoying better conditions, attacked with excellent coordination. *Yorktown* was hit by a bomb that exploded below decks, killing or seriously injuring 66.

the US destroyers covered a tactical withdrawal by laying a smokescreen, Doorman intending to maneuver around the Japanese escorts and get among the troop ships at night. However, the destroyers then left for Surabaya and by the time Doorman encountered the Japanese again he had only his four remaining cruisers. In the darkness, a devastating Japanese torpedo attack sank two light cruisers including Doorman's flagship. The admiral was not among the few survivors.

Two days later the *Exeter*, with two destroyers, encountered *Nachi* and *Haguro* as she headed for Sri Lanka. All three ships were sunk. Also on March 1, *Houston* and the Australian light cruiser *Perth* were sunk in night action in the Sunda Strait. This completed a naval disaster for the Allies, who had lost more than 2,000 men and 10 warships.

Lexington took the worst of the damage, struck by at least two torpedoes and two bombs, and had to be scuttled.

Overall the US Navy came off the worse in the world's first battle fought exclusively between carriers. But the Japanese were forced to abandon their intended invasion of Port Moresby, an important strategic setback.

Preparing for launch
SBS Dauntless dive-bombers stand on the flght deck of the US carrier *Yorktown*. Coral Sea was the first battle fought as a duel between between carrier aircraft, without opposing ships sighting one another.

CREW PROFILE

US AIRCRAFT CARRIER

WORLD WAR II

WITH A CREW NUMBERING OVER 2,000 men, a World War II American fleet aircraft carrier was a complex social world, in which divisions of function were often as important as differences of rank. Some officers and men executed tasks required on all warships, while others did jobs specific to the business of operating warplanes from carriers. These included the aviation machinists and electricians who serviced the aircraft in the hangars, the aviation ordnance teams responsible for arming the planes, the aviation boatswain's mates whose tasks included supervising the catapults and arresting gear on the flight deck, and the landing signal officer—usually a trained aviator—who stood prominently on deck using colored paddles to guide pilots attempting to land. Until 1943 the navy accepted no draftees, so all crew members were volunteers, many going to sea to avoid being drafted into the army.

NAVAL AVIATOR

American naval pilots were a gung-ho body of men, eager to fight and justly proud of their skills. Between 1942 and 1944 more than 50,000 were trained, most passing through Naval Air Station Pensacola in Florida. Officers became Naval Aviators while enlisted men were designated Naval Aviation Pilots (NAPs). On flying operations rank was disregarded, the most experienced fliers taking command even if this meant non-commissioned men giving orders to officers. As in all aerial warfare, a few pilots proved exceptionally gifted and these men led from the front. In fighter squadrons pilots flew in divisions of four aircraft. The leader of the division was the man expected to shoot down enemy aircraft, the other three were there primarily to cover his back. A carrier pilot's task was exceptionally demanding because of the need to launch from and land on a small pitching flight deck crowded with aircraft. Taking off even with the aid of a catapult was only possible if the carrier was making speed into the wind. Landing posed even more complex problems. Once the pilot got "into the groove" to land, he was in the hands of the landing officer who would give him "the cut" to authorize landing or the "wave off" if all was not well. Pilots tended to be competitive individualists by nature, but they acknowledged that they needed the help and support of many other crew members to stay operational.

Navy cadet
A US Navy pilot climbs into the cockpit of a gleaming T-6 Texan trainer aircraft during flight training at Naval Air Station Corpus Christi in Texas in 1942.

Pilot briefing
The commanding officer of Fighting Squadron 16 briefs his pilots in front of an F6F-3 Hellcat fighter on board the USS *Lexington* in 1943.

THE BATTLE OF MIDWAY

In June 1942 Japan embarked upon an invasion of the American-held Midway atoll. One of the objectives was to draw the US Pacific Fleet into a decisive battle that Japanese commanders were confident they would win. Admiral Yamamoto dispersed his forces in a complex plan to distract and envelop his adversaries. Since the Americans had broken Japanese naval codes they were aware of Yamamoto's intentions and, ignoring a diversionary attack on the Aleutians, concentrated their efforts against Vice-Admiral Nagumo's force of four carriers. US Admiral Chester Nimitz sent two carrier task forces to defend Midway. Rear Admiral Fletcher commanded Task Force 16 with the carriers *Enterprise* and *Hornet*, while Rear Admiral Raymond Spruance led Task Force 17 with *Yorktown*, repaired at Pearl Harbor in a mere three days after its battering at the Coral Sea.

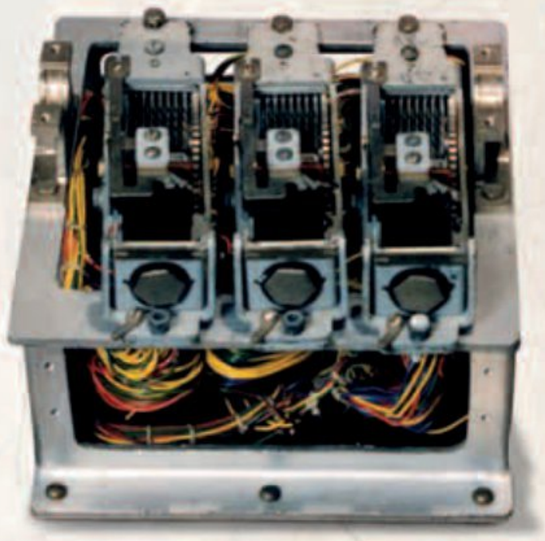
DECISIVE AIR STRIKES

Battle was joined on June 4. Unaware of the proximity of the US carriers, Nagumo launched an early morning air strike on Midway. He was planning a follow-up when a reconnaissance aircraft reported sighting enemy ships, tardily identified as including carriers. By then the Americans had already flown off their aircraft. Launched in haste and some confusion, the Wildcat fighters, Dauntless dive-bombers, and Devastator torpedo-bombers from *Hornet* and *Enterprise* searched for the enemy in uncoordinated groups. Unfortunately the slow-moving torpedo-bombers were first to locate Nagumo's carriers. Without fighter cover, they were pounced upon by Zero fighters. Not one of *Hornet's* 15 Devastators survived.

Aircraft from *Yorktown*, launched later than those from the other two carriers, arrived together at around 10:20 a.m. By chance, two squadrons of dive-bombers from *Enterprise* found Nagumo's force at the same moment. While *Yorktown's* Wildcats took on the Zeros, dive-bombers from *Yorktown* and *Enterprise* were left free to attack the carriers. Bomb after bomb struck the decks of Japanese carriers packed with aircraft, munitions, and fuel lines. In five minutes *Akagi*, *Kaga,* and *Soryu* were all burning wrecks.

The Japanese still had one carrier intact. *Hiryu* flew waves of bombers to deliver a counter-strike against *Yorktown*. Showing great determination in the face of American fighters and anti-aircraft fire, the Japanese pilots inflicted crippling damage upon the carrier. It was small compensation for a day of disaster for the Imperial Japanese Navy, capped late on when *Hiryu* was destroyed by dive-bombers from *Enterprise*.

Over the following days American aircraft and submarines harassed the withdrawing Japanese fleet, sinking the cruiser *Mikuma*. Meanwhile, efforts were made to salvage *Yorktown*, until a Japanese submarine hit the carrier with two torpedoes, also sinking a destroyer alongside. But nothing could detract from the scale of the American victory. That the invasion of Midway had been defeated was a minor point compared with the blow inflicted upon Japan's naval aviation. The loss of four carriers and many of their best naval pilots was a setback from which the Imperial Navy never recovered.



Purple encoding machine
The Americans never captured the Japanese "Purple" encoding machine, but Japanese naval code was understood well enough to warn the US Navy of the attack on Midway.

WORLD WAR II

BATTLE OF MIDWAY

Date	June 4–7, 1942
Location	Pacific Ocean near Midway Island
Result	American victory

COMBATANTS

UNITED STATES	JAPAN

COMMANDERS

Chester Nimitz, Frank Fletcher, Raymond Spruance	**Isoroku Yamamoto, Chuichi Nagumo**

FORCES

Ships: 3 carriers, 8 cruisers, 15 destroyers **Aircraft:** 233 carrier-based, 127 land-based	**Ships**: 4 carriers, 9 battleships, 6 cruisers, 25 destroyers **Aircraft:** 248

LOSSES

Men: 307 **Ships**: 1 carrier, 1 destroyer **Aircraft**: 98	**Men**: 3,057 **Ships**: 4 carriers, 1 cruiser **Aircraft**: 228

KEY

US FLEET
Cruisers, destroyers, and smaller ships in US carrier task forces not shown.

1 US aircraft carrier

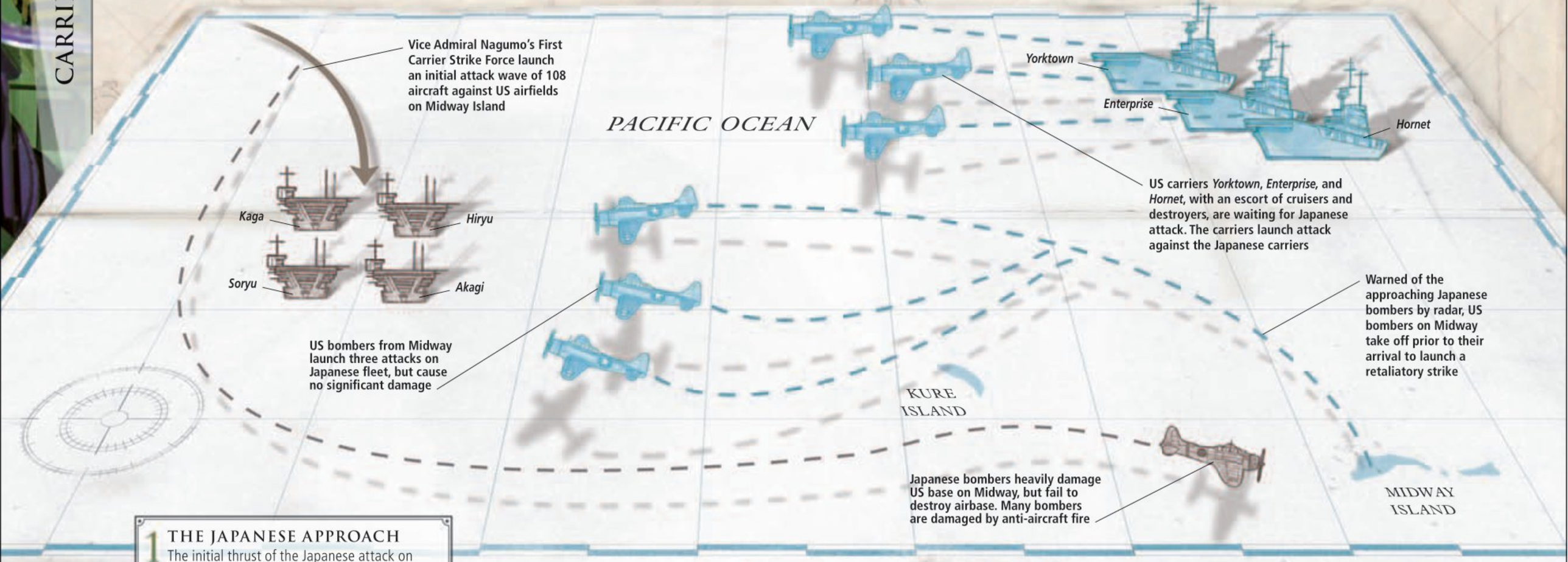
Wave of US bomber aircraft

JAPANESE FLEET
Cruisers, destroyers, and smaller ships in Nagumo's carrier strike force not shown. Main Japanese invasion force is off area of map.

1 Japanese aircraft carrier

Wave of Japanese bomber aircraft

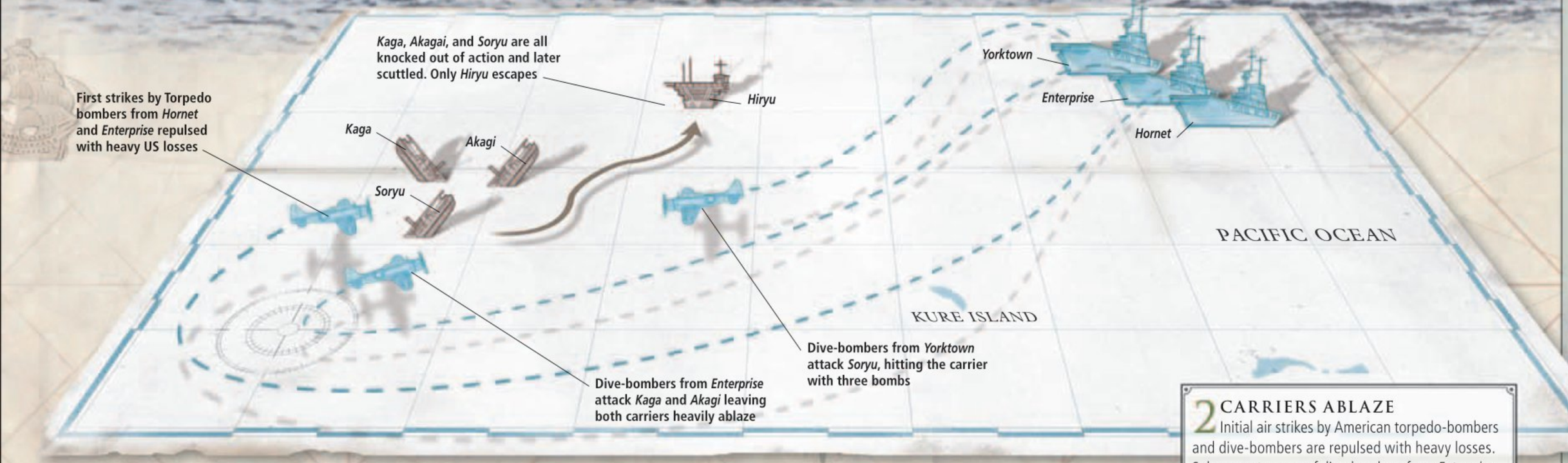
1 Japanese cruiser



1 THE JAPANESE APPROACH
The initial thrust of the Japanese attack on Midway comes from Vice Admiral Nagumo's carrier strike force. Warned of the Japanese approach, two US carrier task forces are laying in wait and launch retaliatory air strikes against the Japanese carriers.

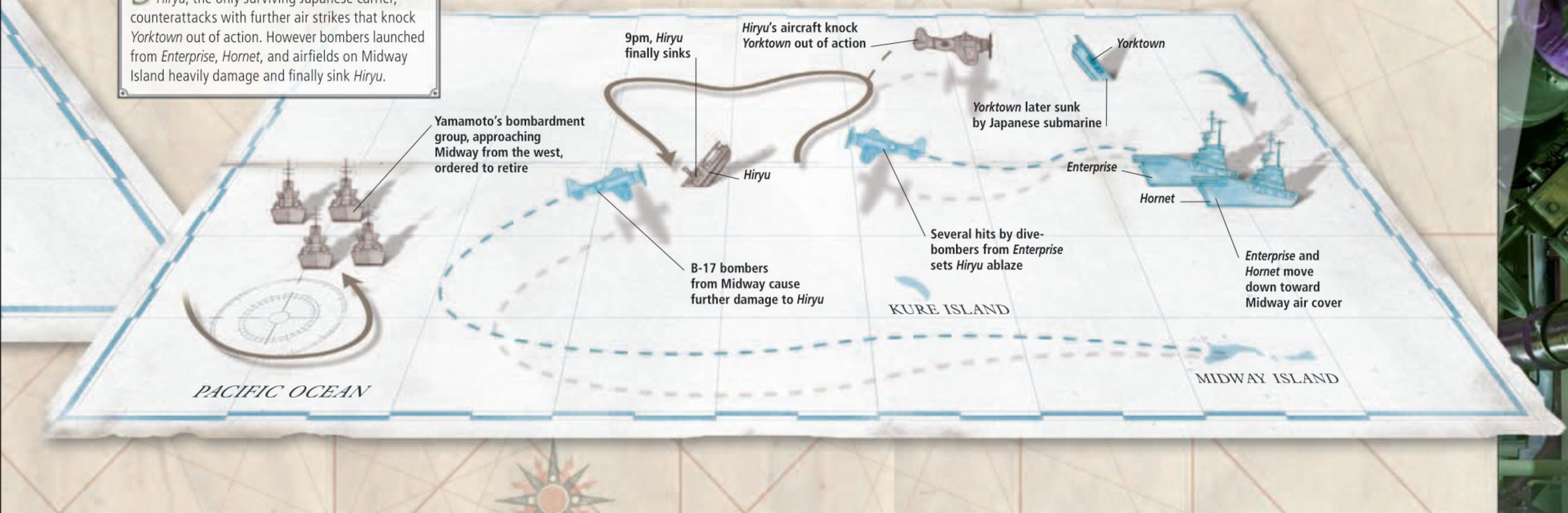
Crippled carrier at Midway
USS *Yorktown* lists heavily after being attacked by bombers from the Japanese carrier *Hiryu*. *Yorktown* was sunk the following day by a Japanese submarine.

> I SAW THIS GLINT IN THE SUN AND IT LOOKED JUST LIKE A BEAUTIFUL, SILVER WATERFALL, THESE DIVE-BOMBERS COMING DOWN. I'D NEVER SEEN SUCH SUPERB DIVE-BOMBING.
>
> **US PILOT JIMMY THATCH**, RECALLING THE BATTLE OF MIDWAY, 1942



2 CARRIERS ABLAZE
Initial air strikes by American torpedo-bombers and dive-bombers are repulsed with heavy losses. Subsequent waves of dive-bombers from *Enterprise* and *Yorktown* leave three of Nagumo's four aircraft carriers as blazing wrecks. Only *Hiryu* escapes.

3 SINKING OF HIRYU
Hiryu, the only surviving Japanese carrier, counterattacks with further air strikes that knock *Yorktown* out of action. However bombers launched from *Enterprise*, *Hornet*, and airfields on Midway Island heavily damage and finally sink *Hiryu*.



THE BATTLE FOR GUADALCANAL

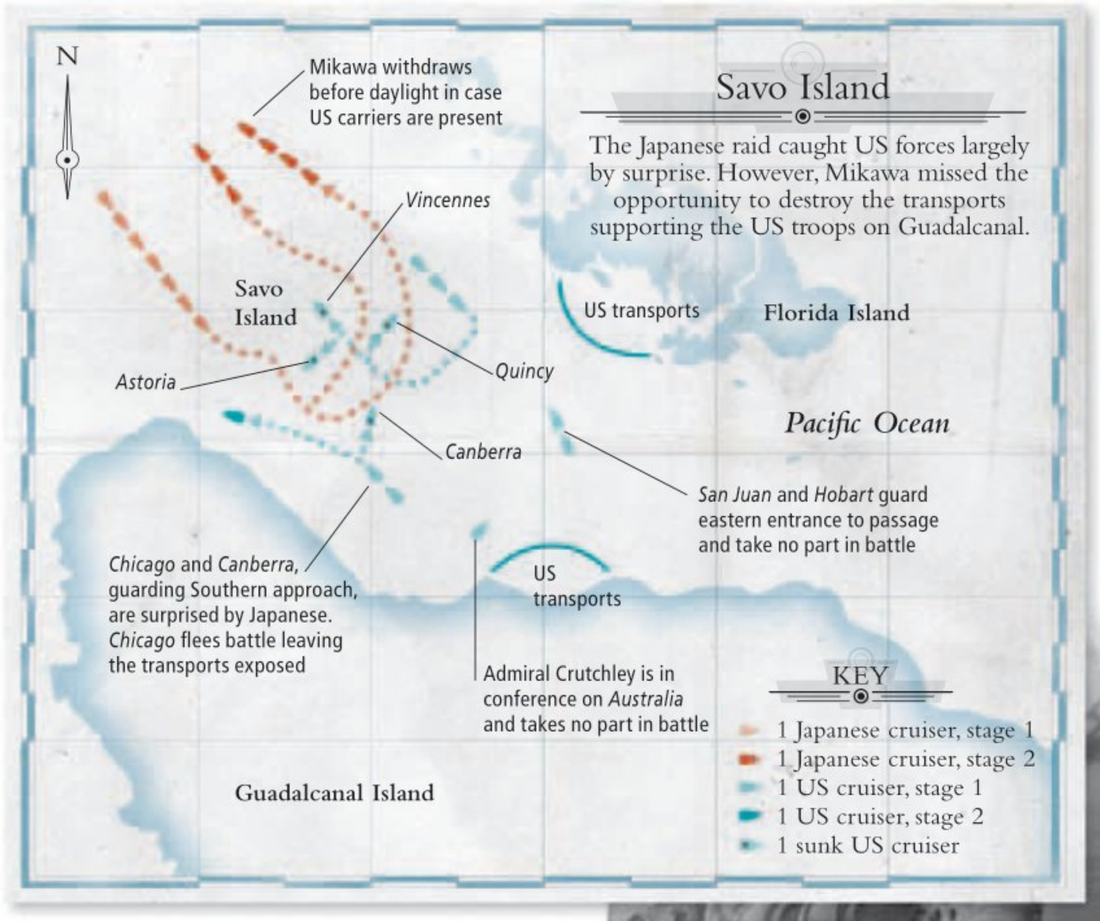
AMERICAN FORCES LANDED on Guadalcanal and other islands in the Eastern Solomons on August 7, 1942. As the Japanese were determined to retake Guadalcanal and the Americans equally determined to hold it, the island became the focus for intense naval warfare. The Japanese Navy was at first supremely confident, viewing the fighting as a chance to draw American forces into battle and destroy them. After a stunning initial victory at Savo Island, however, the Japanese failed to crush the Americans in fleet encounters at the Eastern Solomons and the Santa Cruz Islands. The US Navy equally failed to prevent the Japanese running the convoy ships of the "Tokyo Express" down New Georgia Sound at night to land reinforcements on Guadalcanal and shell the airbase at Henderson Field. The climax of the campaign came in two major night encounters in mid-November, known as the naval battle of Guadalcanal, during which the Japanese lost two battleships. Their attempt to retake the island was eventually abandoned. The Japanese Navy successfully evacuated troops from Guadalcanal in February 1943, but it had been unable to achieve decisive naval superiority.

THE BATTLE OF SAVO ISLAND

Japanese vice admiral Gunichi Mikawa, based at Rabaul, organized a rapid naval response to the initial American landings on Guadalcanal. With no air cover, Mikawa planned to attack under cover of darkness, as his cruisers were well trained in night-fighting. On the evening of August 8, the Allied naval forces covering the landings were far from alert. Admiral Frank Fletcher had withdrawn his carriers and British admiral Victor Crutchley, commanding the warships screening the landings, had departed from his station with his flagship *Australia* to discuss this move with the overall commander, Admiral Turner.

On the ships of the screening force it was hot and crews were tired. Captain Howard Bode, left in command on Crutchley's departure, slept soundly on board his cruiser *Chicago*. The approach of Mikawa's force was undetected until far too late. The destroyer *Patterson* raised the alarm at almost the same moment that Japanese floatplanes dropped flares to illuminate *Chicago* and the Australian cruiser *Canberra*. Hit by gunfire and torpedoes from four Japanese cruisers, *Canberra* was wrecked in minutes. Bode, rudely torn from his sleep, succeeded in extracting *Chicago* from the action with relatively little damage, but his flight left the rest of the ships exposed. Other Allied warships fatally hesitated to open fire on Japanese searchlights, unsure whether they would be hitting friendly vessels. The cruisers *Astoria*, *Quincy,* and *Vincennes* were all sunk after multiple hits from shells and torpedoes.

Mikawa could have gone on to destroy the Allied transport ships, but he was unaware that the US carrier aircraft were no longer there and wanted to get away before daylight. The Japanese cruiser *Kako* was sunk by a submarine on its way back from the action, a small consolation for the battered Allies.



Torpedo damage
Crewmen on the heavy cruiser USS *Chicago* cut away torpedo-damaged plating on the day after the battle of Savo Island.

WORLD WAR II

THE BATTLE OF SAVO ISLAND

Date	August 8-9, 1942
Location	Solomon Islands
Result	Japanese victory

COMBATANTS

UNITED STATES AND AUSTRALIA	JAPAN

COMMANDERS

Richmond K Turner Victor Crutchley	Gunichi Mikawa

FORCES

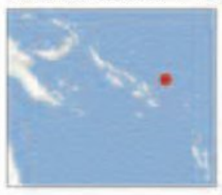
Ships: 5 heavy cruisers, 6 destroyers	**Ships:** 5 heavy cruisers, 2 light cruisers, 1 destroyer

LOSSES

Men: 1,077 **Ships:** 4 heavy cruisers	**Men:** 58 **Ships:** none

WORLD WAR II

EASTERN SOLOMONS



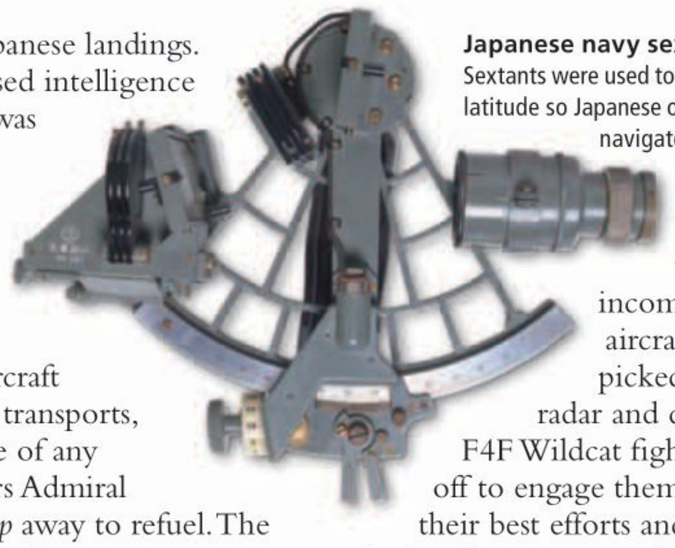
Location Off Solomon Islands

Date August 24,1942
Forces Americans: 2 carriers, 1 battleship, 4 cruisers, 11 destroyers; Japanese: 2 carriers, 1 light carrier, 2 battleships, 16 cruisers, 25 destroyers
Losses Americans: 25 aircraft; Japanese: 1 escort carrier, 75 aircraft

Encouraged by their victory at Savo Island, the Japanese devised Operation Ka, a counteroffensive whose twin objectives were to retake Guadalcanal from the US Marines and to establish naval dominance in the South Pacific by the destruction of American fleet carriers. On August 20, 1942, 3,000 soldiers embarked on transport ships at the Japanese base of Rabaul and headed for Guadalcanal to reinforce a first wave of troops already ashore. Admiral Yamamoto, commander-in-chief of the Japanese Combined Fleet, hoped this troop convoy would lure the American carriers into a trap. His fleet carriers *Shokaku* and *Zuikako*, under Admiral Chuichi Nagumo, would surprise and destroy them, allowing a powerful force of battleships and cruisers to mop up the remaining American ships and support the retaking of Guadalcanal.

In the event, the American carriers *Enterprise*, *Saratoga,* and *Wasp*, under Admiral Frank Fletcher, were already heading toward Guadalcanal in response to the original Japanese landings. Because of confused intelligence reports, Fletcher was unsure whether the Japanese Combined Fleet was in the area. On August 23, an American reconnaissance aircraft spotted the troop transports, but in the absence of any sighting of carriers Admiral Fletcher sent *Wasp* away to refuel. The following morning there were more sightings of Japanese ships, including the light carrier *Ryujo*.

> "BEFORE GUADALCANAL THE ENEMY ADVANCED AT HIS PLEASURE—AFTER GUADALCANAL HE RETREATED AT OURS."
>
> **ADMIRAL WILLIAM HALSEY**, DESCRIBING THE SIGNIFICANCE OF THE CAMPAIGN FOR GUADALCANAL



Japanese navy sextant
Sextants were used to calculate latitude so Japanese officers could navigate around the Pacific Ocean.

BOMBER ATTACKS

In the early afternoon, still unaware of the approaching Japanese fleet carriers, Fletcher ordered a strike by aircraft from *Saratoga* against *Ryujo*, which was duly sunk. Meanwhile, Admiral Nagumo, having located the American carriers, launched waves of torpedo-bombers and dive-bombers to attack them. The incoming Japanese aircraft were picked up on US radar and carrier-based F4F Wildcat fighters flown off to engage them, but despite their best efforts and those of anti-aircraft gunners on the ships, some of the Japanese bombers got through. *Enterprise* received the brunt of the aerial onslaught. Hit by three bombs in rapid succession, the carrier was on fire, listing, and for a time without steering control, yet she survived.

After this the battle petered out, the Japanese battleships and cruisers giving up efforts to locate the US carriers soon after nightfall. The attempt to land einforcements was abandoned the following day.

WORLD WAR II

CAPE ESPERANCE

Location Off Cape Esperance, Guadalcanal

Date October 11-12, 1942
Forces Americans: 4 cruisers, 5 destroyers; Japanese: 3 cruisers, 2 destroyers
Losses Americans: 1 destroyer; Japanese: 1 cruiser, 1 destroyer

Both sides reinforced their troops on Guadalcanal as the ground fighting intensified. On the night of October 11-12 a group of Japanese destroyers was ferrying in soldiers and equipment while another force under Rear Admiral Goto was sent to bombard the airbase at Henderson Field. A US Navy task force of cruisers and destroyers, commanded by Rear Admiral Norman Scott aboard *San Francisco*, had orders to stop Japanese ships entering Ironbottom Sound. Goto's force of three cruisers and a destroyer, detected by radar, was surprised off Savo Island around midnight. Goto's flagship *Aoba* was immediately hit and the admiral fatally wounded. Two other Japanese ships were sunk by gunfire and torpedoes, but the Americans also suffered losses. The light cruiser *Boise*'s magazine exploded killing almost 100 men, and the destroyer *Duncan* was sunk, shelled by both sides in the confusion. Although on balance an American victory, the battle failed to stop the Japanese continuing to land troops.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

ANTI-AIRCRAFT DEFENSE

American naval defense against air attack improved steadily in the course of the Pacific War. Carrier task forces adopted a circular formation, with carriers in the center surrounded first by a circle of battleships and cruisers and then by an outer ring of destroyers. These ships between them threw up an impressive weight of anti-aircraft fire. The carriers also provided aerial defense, their fighter aircraft guided onto incoming aircraft by radar controllers on the ships. Naval anti-aircraft guns ranged from 5-in guns for long-range fire to 40-mm Bofors for medium-range and .50-caliber machine guns or 20-mm Oerlikons for close-range fire. Improving fire-control systems increased the chances of hitting a rapidly moving target, but probably the most important development in the war was the adoption of radar proximity fuses. These made shells explode when close to an enemy aircraft, rather than at a pre-set time after firing. The sheer number of guns on ships vastly increased as well as their quality. By 1945 the American battleship *South Dakota*, for example, mounted 16 5-in, 68 40-mm and 76 20-mm guns.

Anti-aircraft gun crew
Sailors man an Oerlikon 20-mm anti-aircraft gun during training on board the USS *Iowa* in 1943.

Anti-aircraft gun
The Swiss-designed 20-mm Oerlikon was one of the most widely used anti-aircraft guns of World War II.

WORLD WAR II

SANTA CRUZ

Date October 26,1942
Forces Americans: 2 carriers, 1 battleship, 6 cruisers, 14 destroyers; Japanese: 4 carriers, 2 battleships, 10 cruisers, 22 destroyers
Losses Americans: 1 carrier, 1 destroyer, c.80 aircraft; Japanese: c.200 aircraft
Location Off Santa Cruz Islands, Solomon Islands

In October 1942 the United States had only two carriers, *Hornet* and *Enterprise*, operational in the Pacific. Rear Admiral Thomas Kinkaid, on board *Enterprise*, led them on a sweep north of the Santa Cruz Islands, searching for a Japanese naval force bound for Guadalcanal. The Japanese, under Vice Admiral Kondo, had the carriers *Shokaku*, *Zuikaku*, *Zuiho*, and *Junyo*, as well as a powerful force of battleships and cruisers.

On the morning of October 26, the opposing carriers located one another and launched air strikes. The first American and Japanese attack waves crossed in flight. The American attack put the carriers *Zuiho* and *Shokaku* out of action, along with the cruiser *Chikuma*. But the Japanese strike was more deadly. Combat air patrols failed to stop the Japanese dive-bombers and torpedo-bombers and the US carriers took a pounding. *Hornet* was hit first and worst. The Japanese struck her with bombs and torpedoes, and with two aircraft that, deliberately or not, crashed into the ship. *Hornet* was left dead in the water and on fire. *Enterprise*, initially hidden by a rain shower, soon came in for her own share of attention and suffered serious bomb damage. Many US aircraft were forced to ditch in the sea for lack of a deck to land on. Japanese losses of aircraft were, however, far heavier, for they pursued their attacks with relentless courage through a storm of anti-aircraft fire.

An attempt to take *Hornet* under tow failed as further waves of Japanese aircraft attacked. The carrier was eventually abandoned and finally sunk by a torpedo. For a short period after the battle, until *Enterprise* had been repaired, the United States had no aircraft carriers in the Pacific. Yet the Japanese had suffered such heavy losses of experienced pilots—148 aircrew killed—that they were in no position to exploit this temporary advantage.

Dive-bomber attack
A Japanese "Val" bomber dives on the USS *Hornet* during the battle of Santa Cruz. Seconds later the plane crashed into the *Hornet*'s signal bridge.

THE NAVAL BATTLE OF GUADALCANAL

In November 1942 the Japanese planned to turn the battle for Guadalcanal decisively in their favor by mounting a naval bombardment on the US airstrip at Henderson Field and landing thousands of reinforcements on the island. The operation would take place by night to avoid attack by aircraft from the airfield and the carrier *Enterprise*.

WORLD WAR II

GUADALCANAL

Date November 12–15, 1942
Location Off Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands
Result American strategic victory

COMBATANTS

UNITED STATES | **JAPAN**

COMMANDERS

Daniel J Callaghan, **Willis A Lee** | **Hiroaki Abe**, **Nobutake Kondo**

FORCES

Ships: 1 carrier, 2 battleships, 5 cruisers, 12 destroyers | **Ships:** 2 battleships, 8 cruisers, 16 destroyers

LOSSES

Men: 1,732
Ships: 2 cruisers, 7 destroyers | **Men:** 1,900
Ships: 2 battleships, 1 cruiser, 3 destroyers

On the night of November 12–13 Vice Admiral Hiroaki Abe led a force of two Japanese battleships and 12 smaller warships into "Ironbottom Sound" off northern Guadalcanal—so named for the number of ships sunk there. As usual, the Americans had forewarning of the Japanese movements and sent a force of five cruisers and eight destroyers to meet them. The Japanese and American ships blundered into one another in the dark and a brutal, disorganized fight broke out at close quarters—memorably described by one US officer as like "a bar-room brawl after the lights had been shot out." In the confused mêlée both Admiral Callaghan and his second-in-command were killed—the latter probably by "friendly fire." The Japanese battleship *Hiei* took significant damage, but the Americans suffered worse. By the time the Japanese disengaged only two US ships were still in a condition to fight. The next day the limping *Hiei* was attacked by American land-based and carrier aircraft and eventually scuttled.

ROUND TWO

Nothing could be done to stop the Japanese bombarding Henderson Field the following night, but by November 14–15 the Americans had brought a new force into play, consisting of the battleships *Washington* and *South Dakota* and four destroyers. This force encountered the advancing Japanese battleship *Kirishima* and 13 other ships shortly before midnight. The destroyers screening the American battleships performed their role courageously, but two were quickly sunk, a third so badly damaged it sank the following day, and the fourth disabled. Meanwhile *South Dakota* suffered electrical failures that left her exposed to a pounding from the Japanese guns. *Washington*, however, succeeded in stealing up on the Japanese unnoticed and hit *Kirishima* with a sudden devastating salvo that set the Japanese battleship ablaze. The night ended with the Japanese scuttling *Kirishima*. The battle doomed the Japanese plans to reinforce Guadalcanal. By November 15, seven transport ships had been sunk by air attack. The four remaining transports beached that morning and were quickly destroyed by American bombardment from air, land, and sea. The ultimate outcome was that the Americans could strengthen and supply their forces on Guadalcanal while the Japanese could not.

Japanese Naval Landing Forces helmet
Japanese attempts to land troop reinforcements on Guadalcanal were repulsed after two nights of naval fighting.

WITNESS TO WAR

COMMANDER CHIHAYA MASATAKA

OFFICER ON BOARD JAPANESE BATTLESHIP HIEI, NIGHT OF NOVEMBER 12–13, 1942

BATTLE OF GUADALCANAL

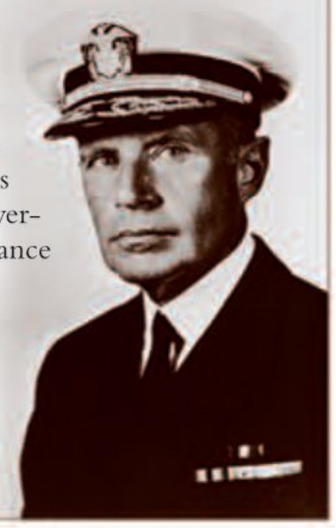
*"I think it was **about a minute** before I was due to give the order to **start bombarding** [Henderson Field] when, all of a sudden, the look-out on the bridge shouted out: "**Enemy ships starboard ahead" . . . I can still remember it**. There was no time to get permission from my commanding officer. I shouted: "**Change target! New target!** Enemy ships starboard ahead! Start bombardment with searchlights on!"… **The ships fought at close quarters**, almost falling aboard each other. We missed our antiquated rams very badly."*

1886–1969

RAYMOND A SPRUANCE

US ADMIRAL AND COMMANDER OF US FORCES AT MIDWAY AND THE PHILIPPINE SEA

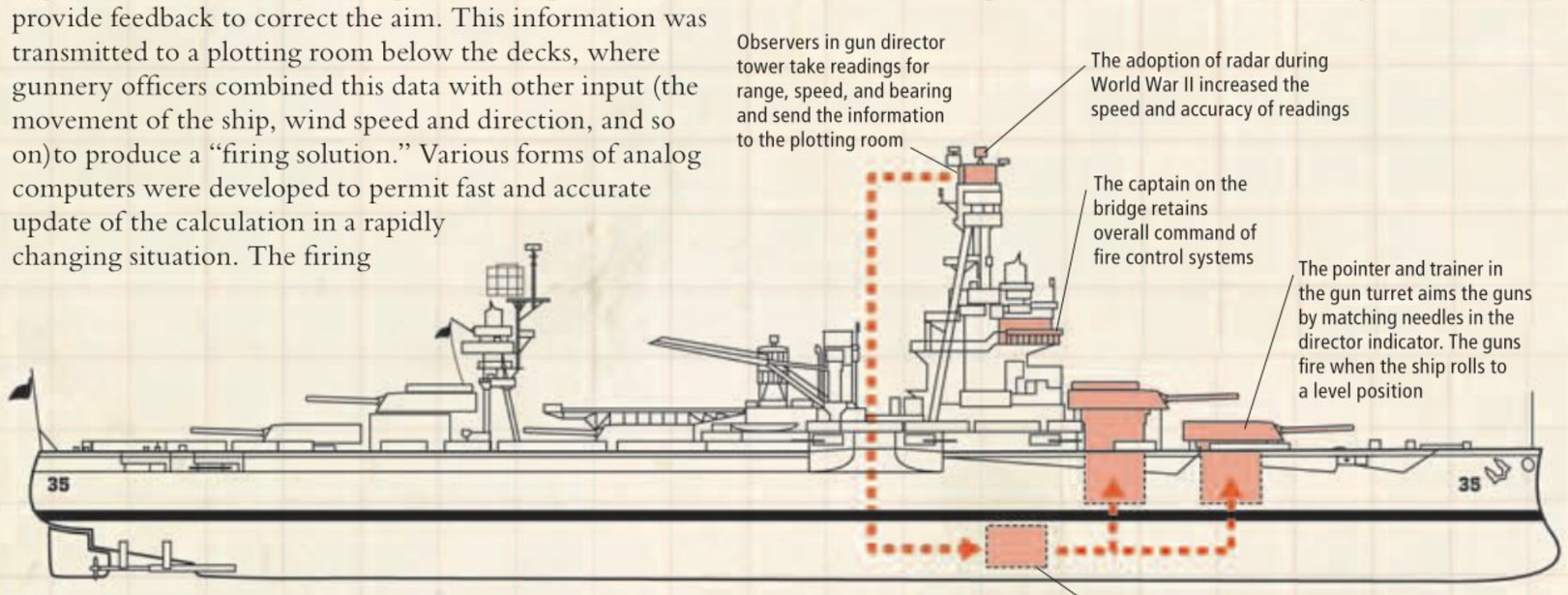
A career naval officer, Raymond Spruance commanded a cruiser division in the early stages of the Pacific War. Despite having no previous experience of carriers, he was given command of Task Force 16 in time to play a vital part in the crucial battle of Midway in June 1942. As commander of the US 5th Fleet from 1943 he spearheaded the drive through the central Pacific, presiding over the destruction of Japanese naval aviation at the battle of the Philippine Sea. Sometimes criticized as over-cautious, Spruance enjoyed an exceptional record of success in major naval engagements.



WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

FIRE CONTROL SYSTEMS

The increasing range of naval guns and speed of warships from the late 19th century onward led to the introduction of fire control systems to replace gunners sighting by eye. Personnel aloft in the director tower were equipped with optical instruments to gauge the bearing and range of a target to a fine degree of accuracy. They also "spotted" the splash of shells to provide feedback to correct the aim. This information was transmitted to a plotting room below the decks, where gunnery officers combined this data with other input (the movement of the ship, wind speed and direction, and so on) to produce a "firing solution." Various forms of analog computers were developed to permit fast and accurate update of the calculation in a rapidly changing situation. The firing solution was transmitted electronically to the gun turrets, appearing as a visual pointer indicating the correct elevation and bearing. The gunner matched the pointer on his gun to the desired position and the guns were ready to fire. The use of radar and increasingly complex computers allowed large strides to be made in speed and accuracy of fire during World War II.



Director firing
Most of the guns on a large warship were directed—the person firing the gun relied on a series of readings and calculations taken elsewhere on the ship.

Wrecked Japanese transport
Japanese cargo ship *Kinugawa Maru* lies beached and gutted on the Guadalcanal coast, destroyed by US aircraft after the naval battle of Guadalcanal.

WORLD WAR II

TASSAFARONGA

Date November 30, 1942
Forces Americans: 5 cruisers, 4 destroyers; Japanese 8 destroyers
Losses Americans: 5 cruisers, 4 destroyers; Japanese: 8 destroyers
Location Off Guadalcanal, Solomon Islands

In response to a shortage of supplies, Japanese destroyers under Rear Admiral Raizo were delivering drums of food by night to troops based on Guadalcanal when they were intercepted by Task Force 67 commanded by Rear Admiral Wright. The five cruisers in Wright's force had an overwhelming superiority in firepower and possessed radar, which the Japanese did not. On detecting the Japanese ships there was a brief delay before permission to commence firing was granted. However, once the word was given, the Americans concentrated their fire on a single ship, *Takanami*. She was quickly incapacitated, but in the interim the other Japanese destroyers had converged. None of the torpedoes fired by the American force found their mark. Guided onto target by the flashes of the American guns, the Japanese destroyers delivered a series of devastating torpedo attacks that left *Minneapolis*, *New Orleans*, and *Pensacola* holed and on fire. *Northampton* was the last cruiser hit; struck by two torpedoes, she sank in the course of the night. All of the Japanese destroyers except *Takanami* escaped unscathed, but did not succeed in delivering the supplies.

DRIVE TO VICTORY

THE AMERICAN WAR EFFORT in the Pacific began inexorably to gather momentum after 1943. At first naval action was confined to relatively small-scale engagements around the Solomons and in the North Pacific, but from November 1943 the United States began a drive through the Central Pacific to the Marshall and Mariana Islands, and from New Guinea to the Philippines. Attempting to resist this advance, the Japanese navy committed its forces to major battles at the Philippine Sea and Leyte Gulf. These epic engagements revealed the overwhelming naval superiority the Americans had achieved by this stage in the war. After Leyte Gulf the Japanese navy could only put up meaningful resistance by operating naval aircraft from land bases. Using kamikaze tactics they inflicted heavy losses on the Allied fleet at Okinawa in 1945, but by then Japan had already lost the naval war.

THE WAR IN THE PACIFIC 1943–1945

By late 1943 the tide of the Pacific War had turned and the US Navy began its long, inexorable advance through the Pacific toward Japan, one island to the next. The destruction of the Japanese Navy and naval aviation at Leyte Gulf and the Philippine Sea opened the way to the Japanese home islands.

KEY

- Area under Japanese control Jan 1943
- US/Allied landing/advance
- US/Allied victory
- Inconclusive battle

WORLD WAR II

BISMARCK SEA

Date March 2–3, 1943
Forces Americans: 168 aircraft; Japanese: 8 destroyers, 8 transports
Losses Americans: 5 aircraft; Japanese: 4 destroyers, 8 transports
Location Off Papua New Guinea, Bismarck Sea

In 1943 the Allies installed elements of the US 5th Army Air Force and the Royal Australian Air Force at bases on New Guinea to intercept Japanese convoys ferrying troops from their base at Rabaul across the Bismarck Sea. On March 1, 1943, a convoy of eight Japanese troop transports with destroyer escorts, under Rear Admiral Masatomi Kimura, was spotted heading for Lae in New Guinea. One transport was sunk by B-17 bombers on March 2, but the main air strike was delivered on the morning of March 3. American B-25 Mitchell bombers and Australian Bristol Beaufighters attacked at low altitude with torpedoes, "skip" bombs—released onto the water to bounce into their target—and strafing guns.

The destroyers *Shirayuki*, *Arashio*, *Tokitsukaze*, and *Asashio* were sunk, along with all the troop transports. On the day after the battle Allied aircraft and torpedo boats systematically machine-gunned Japanese survivors in the water. Almost 2,900 Japanese soldiers and sailors were killed in what General Douglas MacArthur described as "one of the most complete and annihilating combats of all time."

WORLD WAR II

KOMANDORSKI ISLANDS

Date March 27, 1943
Forces Americans: 2 cruisers, 4 destroyers; Japanese; 4 cruisers, 4 destroyers
Losses Americans: none; Japanese: none
Location South of Komandorski Islands, North Pacific

The heavy cruiser *Salt Lake City*, the light cruiser *Richmond*, and four American destroyers, all commanded by Rear Admiral Charles McMorris, were sent into the North Pacific to block the path of a Japanese convoy bound for the Aleutian Islands. McMorris encountered the convoy on March 27, only to find it escorted by a stronger force of warships than his own. Vice Admiral Boshiro Hosogaya had the heavy cruisers *Nachi* and *Maya*, plus light cruisers and destroyers.

The Americans first steamed toward the convoy, but soon judged it wiser to stage a fighting withdrawal. *Nachi* was the first ship hit, but *Salt Lake City* ran into serious difficulties as the shelling intensified, losing steering and power. As she sat dead in the water, the US destroyers laid a protective smokescreen in front of her and launched torpedo attacks against the Japanese cruisers while under heavy fire. *Salt Lake City* fortunately got her engines restarted and the Japanese turned away, short of ammunition and fuel. This inconclusive encounter was one of the last in naval history in which large ships battled almost exclusively with gunnery.

WORLD WAR II

KULA GULF

Date July 6, 1943
Forces Americans: 3 cruisers, 4 destroyers; Japanese: 10 destroyers
Losses Americans: 1 cruiser; Japanese: 2 destroyers
Location Solomon Islands, South Pacific

In summer 1943 the Americans were fighting for control of the Solomons. On the night of July 5-6 10 Japanese destroyers commanded by Rear Admiral Teruo Akiyama on board *Niizuki*, were carrying reinforcements to Kolombangara Island. This "Tokyo Express" was intercepted by Rear Admiral Walden Ainsworth's force of light cruisers and destroyers. The Japanese, newly equipped with search radar, spotted the Americans first and three destroyers turned for a torpedo run. *Niizuki* was hit by radar-directed fire from the US cruisers and sank, with Admiral Akiyama among those killed. But the two other destroyers fired longlance torpedoes before turning away. The cruiser *Helena* was struck by several torpedoes and sank. Another Japanese destroyer ran aground and was demolished by American aircraft after daylight, leaving honours roughly even.

WORLD WAR II

EMPRESS AUGUSTA BAY

Date November 2, 1943
Forces Americans: 4 cruisers, 8 destroyers; Japanese: 4 cruisers, 6 destroyers
Losses Americans: none; Japanese: 1 cruiser, 1 destroyer
Location Off Bougainville Island, South Pacific

On November 1, 1943, 14,000 US Marines were landed on Bougainville in the Solomon Islands. In response the Japanese sent a hastily assembled naval force from Rabaul under Admiral Sentaro Omori. American light cruisers and destroyers commanded by Rear Admiral Aaron "Tip" Merrill took up position to defend the landings. In principle the Japanese force was much the stronger, as it included the heavy cruisers *Myoko* and *Haguro*. Both sides engaged in complex maneuvers in the dark, creating considerable confusion.

The US destroyer *Foote* lost touch with its formation and was hit by a stray torpedo that blew off the back of the ship, although she was eventually towed to safety. Various Japanese ships careered just past or into one another, *Myoko* slicing through the destroyer *Hatsukaze*—she carried the destroyer's bow back to port with her. The light cruiser *Sendai* was disabled by multiple hits from American guns, but in general both sides expended shells to little effect. *Omori* broke off the engagement before daybreak, convinced he had inflicted far more damage than was actually the case. *Sendai* and *Hatsukaze* were left behind to be finished off by the Americans. Several hundred Japanese were killed in the engagement; 19 American lives were lost.

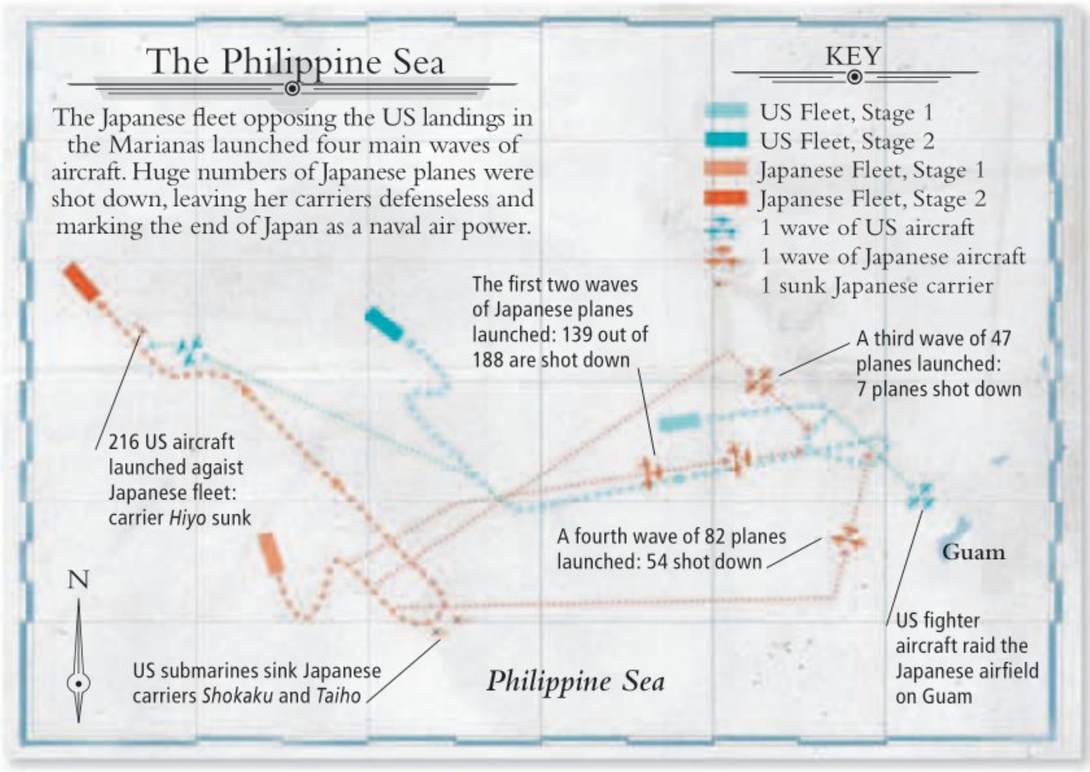
THE BATTLE OF THE PHILIPPINE SEA

By the summer of 1944 the Americans held the strategic initiative in the Pacific War. Without any source of intelligence on US planning, the Japanese were reduced to guessing where the next blow might fall. The target chosen by the Americans in June 1944 was the Mariana Islands, which would provide bases for bomber aircraft within range of Japan. Admiral Raymond Spruance sent Task Force 58 under Vice Admiral Marc Mitscher to support landings on Saipan with bombardment by carrier aircraft and naval guns. Japanese Vice Admiral Osawa Jisaburo, with a force of carriers and battleships, was 2,000 miles (3,000 km) to the south when the Japanese realized the Marianas would be the next battleground. He steamed north at speed, hoping to catch the Americans between his carriers and airbases on the islands.

The battle began on the morning of June 19. For the Japanese it was an unmitigated disaster. The waves of aircraft sent to attack the American fleet met a sophisticated defense system. Incoming aircraft were detected by radar, allowing the carrier Combat Information Centers to scramble fighters and vector them onto the intruders. The Japanese pilots were less experienced than the Americans and had no aircraft to match the Grumman Hellcats. The few who survived being pounced on by the fighters were shot down by anti-aircraft fire. In total the Japanese lost over 300 aircraft in what became known as the "Marianas Turkey Shoot." Meanwhile, American submarines preyed on the Japanese carrier force with first *Taiho* and then *Shokaku* struck by torpedoes.

The following day Mitscher sought to complete the victory with an air strike on the Japanese fleet. The Americans did not locate the enemy naval force until late in the afternoon. Mitscher decided to launch his aircraft although they would be operating at extreme range and would have to return after nightfall. The attack was largely successful, sinking the carrier *Hiyo* for the loss of a handful of aircraft, but the return journey proved to be a nightmare for the naval aircrews. Some 80 aircraft ran out of fuel before reaching the US carriers and were forced to ditch in the ocean, although the majority of the aircrews were rescued.

The battle of the Philippine Sea destroyed the Japanese carriers as a fighting force. The losses of aircraft and pilots were even more crippling than the losses of ships. Another step had been taken toward the total dominance of the US Navy in the Pacific.



WORLD WAR II

THE PHILIPPINE SEA

Date	June 19–20, 1944
Location	Philippine Sea, Western Pacific
Result	United States Victory

COMBATANTS

UNITED STATES	JAPAN

COMMANDERS

Raymond Spruance **Marc Mitscher**	**Osawa Jisaburo**

FORCES

Ships: 15 carriers, 7 battleships, 21 cruisers, 69 destroyers	**Ships:** 9 carriers, 5 battleships, 13 cruisers, 28 destroyers

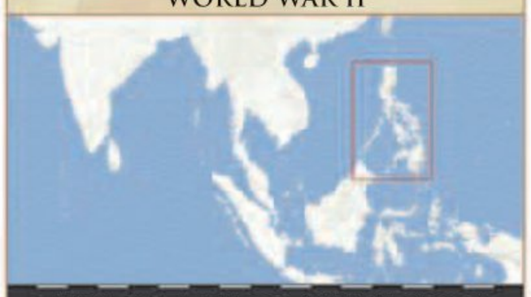
LOSSES

Ships: none **Aircraft:** 123	**Ships:** 3 carriers **Aircraft:** 600

Turkey Shoot
Part of the propeller from a Japanese plane that crashed into the carrier *Essex* during the one-sided air battle American aviators and sailors nicknamed the "Marianas Turkey Shoot."

Battleship Iowa
USS *Iowa*'s huge 16-in guns were used to bombard Japanese positions on Saipan and Tinian during the Marianas campaign, and helped to protect the US carriers at the battle of the Philippine Sea.

WORLD WAR II



THE BATTLE OF LEYTE GULF

Date	October 23–26, 1944
Location	The Philippines
Result	Allied victory

COMBATANTS

US AND AUSTRALIA	JAPAN

COMMANDERS

William Halsey **Thomas Kinkaid**	**Takeo Kurita, Jisaburo Ozawa, Shoji Nishimura**

FORCES

Ships: 35 carriers, 12 battleships, 24 cruisers, 141 other ships	**Ships:** 4 carriers, 9 battleships, 19 cruisers, 34 other ships

LOSSES

Ships: 3 carriers, 4 other ships	**Ships:** 4 carriers, 3 battleships, 8 cruisers, 10 destroyers

THE BATTLE OF LEYTE GULF

On October 20, 1944, US forces began landing on Leyte island as the first stage in the invasion of the Philippines. Admiral Thomas Kinkaid's 7th Fleet was responsible for the amphibious operation, while Admiral William Halsey's 3rd Fleet was on hand to help resist any effort by the Japanese navy to disrupt the invasion. Japan had in fact drawn up plans to meet this contingency and these were swiftly implemented. Virtually all available Japanese naval forces were to be thrown into a death-or-glory battle on an awesome scale.

By this stage in the war, after the disaster of the battle of the Philippine Sea, Japan had few carriers and barely any carrier aircraft, but still possessed a formidable tonnage of large battleships and cruisers. These would have to rely on land-based aircraft from the Philippines for air cover. The Japanese plan, Operation Sho-Go, envisaged simultaneous thrusts by Admiral Takeo Kurita's Center Force through the Sibuyan Sea and Admiral Shoji Nishimura's Southern Force through the Sula Sea, emerging to the east of the Philippines to catch Kinkaid's ships in a pincer from north and south. Admiral Ozawa's force of four impotent aircraft-less carriers was to provide a suicidal decoy for the Americans, drawing some of their fleet away to the north. The plan was ambitious, complex, and very unlikely to succeed.

THE BATTLES BEGIN

Admiral Kurita's Center Force, with five battleships including the giants *Yamato* and *Musashi*, set out for the Philippines on October 22. It suffered its first losses within 24 hours when two of its heavy cruisers, including Kurita's flagship *Atago,* were sunk by American submarines. When he had been picked up out of the sea, the admiral shifted his flag to *Yamoto* and pressed on, entering the Sibuyan Sea on October 24. There his ships were spotted by Halsey's carrier aircraft and an air-sea battle commenced. Japanese aircraft based on Luzon succeeded in destroying the light carrier *Princeton* at great cost to themselves in aircraft and pilots lost, but they could not prevent waves of American carrier aircraft striking the Japanese fleet, putting 19 bombs and 17 torpedoes into *Musashi* before the leviathan finally sunk.

At this point the Americans made an error that could have cost them dearly. Believing that Kurita had turned back to escape air attack, Halsey departed

> WOULD IT NOT BE A SHAME TO HAVE THE FLEET REMAIN INTACT WHILE OUR NATION PERISHES? ... YOU MUST ALL OF YOU REMEMBER THAT THERE ARE SUCH THINGS AS MIRACLES.
>
> **ADMIRAL TAKEO KURITA** BRIEFING HIS OFFICERS BEFORE THE BATTLE OF LEYTE GULF

northward, accepting the bait offered by Ozawa's carrier force. Communication between the two American commanders was poor and Kinkaid mistakenly thought Halsey had left part of his fleet covering the northern flank of the invasion force. He had not. Meanwhile, Kinkaid sent most of his warships south to meet Admiral Shoji Nishimura's two battleships, cruiser, and four destroyers coming through the Surigao Strait.

Emerging from the strait in the early hours of October 25, the Japanese ships were ambushed by US destroyers firing a total of 27 torpedoes and sinking the battleship *Fuso* and three destroyers.

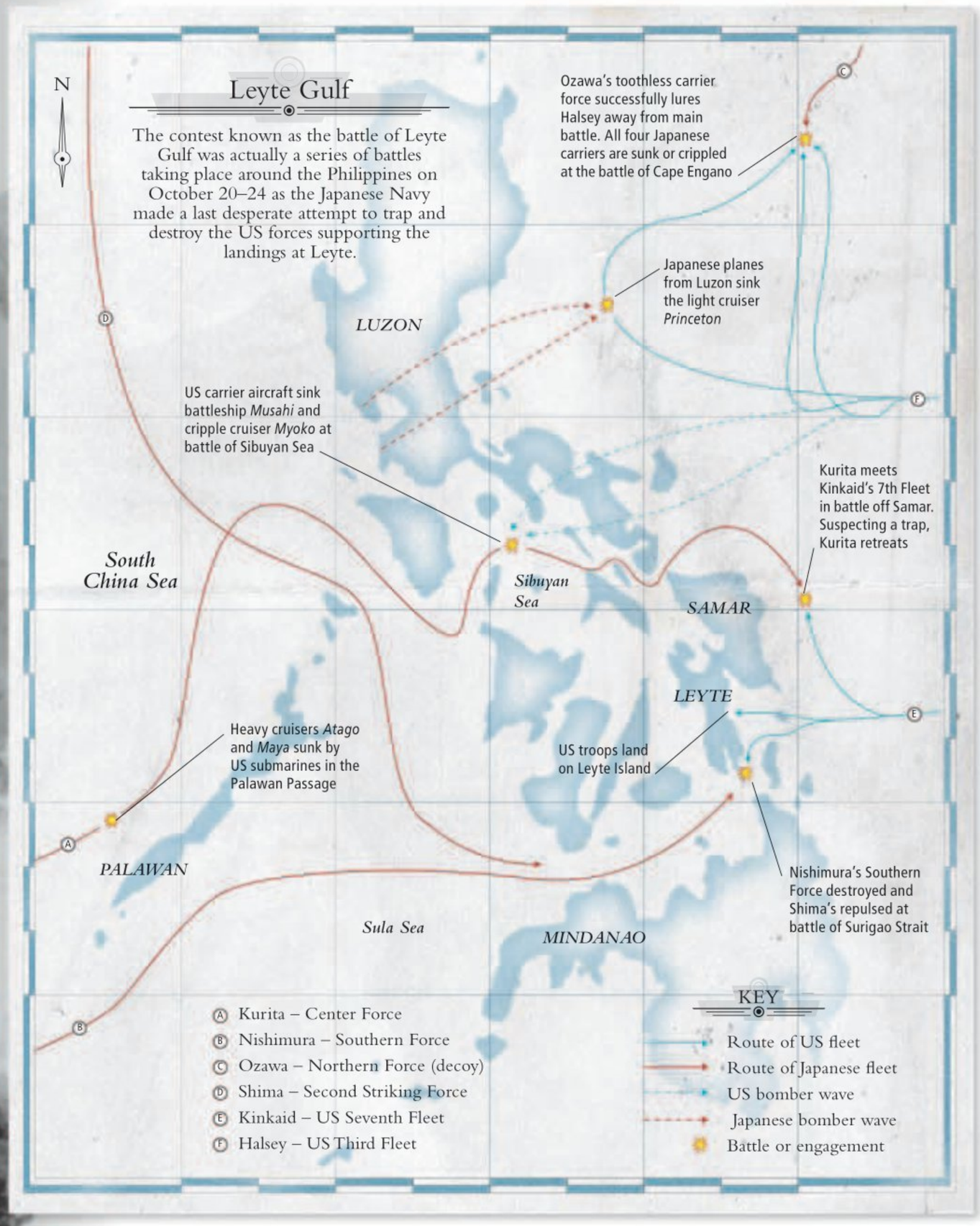
1885–1966

CHESTER NIMITZ

COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF OF PACIFIC NAVAL FORCES

Born in Texas into a family of German origin, Chester Nimitz graduated from the US Naval Academy in 1905. After earning a reprimand as a young ensign for running a destroyer aground, he transferred to submarines and during World War I acted as chief of staff of the US Atlantic Submarine Force. Promoted to rear admiral in 1938, he was chief of the Bureau of Navigation when the Japanese attacked Pearl Harbor. Ten days later he was appointed commander-in-chief of the Pacific Fleet. During a period of Japanese naval superiority, Nimitz followed an aggressive strategy based on calculated risk. This bore fruit in the crucial victory at Midway in 1942. He masterminded the subsequent "island-hopping" drive through the Central Pacific toward Japan. Nimitz was appointed a fleet admiral in 1944 and was a signatory at the Japanese surrender ceremony in Tokyo Bay in October 1945.

Landings at Leyte Gulf
Two Coast Guard-manned LSTs (Landing Ships Tank) open their jaws onto Leyte Beach. While the landings themselves were not strongly opposed, the Japanese Navy later threw all the forces they had left against the invading forces.



Exhausted survivors
An American patrol torpedo boat hoists Japanese survivors out of the water after the destruction of the Japanese forces at Leyte Gulf.

Nishimura's flagship *Yamashiro* was hit but pressed on. At 3:52 a.m. the darkness ahead suddenly erupted as a semicircle of waiting American warships opened fire. The most modern of them had radar fire control that left the Japanese no chance. Nishimura was already dead by the time *Yamashiro* sank.

Approaching this scene of carnage, some way behind Nishimura, a second group of warships under Admiral Shima added an element of farce to the tragedy by colliding with the crippled cruiser *Mogami* and then torpedoing an island misidentified as an enemy ship, before fleeing back down the strait.

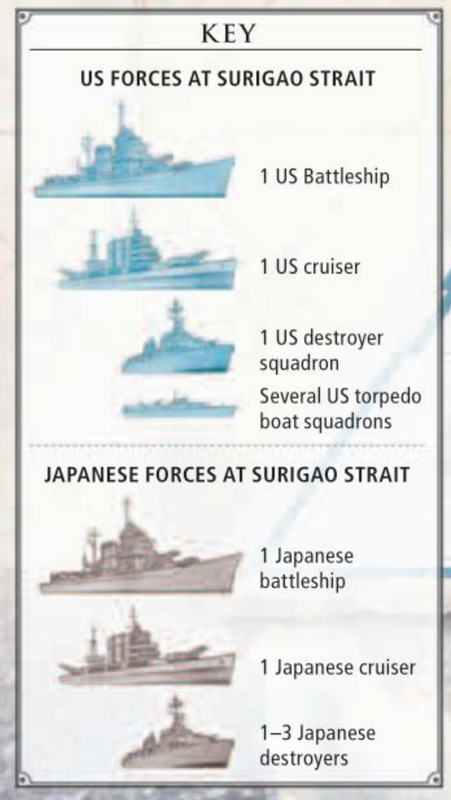
To the north, meanwhile, Kurita led his ships undetected through the San Bernadino Strait and on the morning of October 25 sailed south down the coast of Samar island toward Leyte. First light revealed a force of 16 American escort carriers and seven destroyers and destroyer escorts lying in his path. As the Japanese ships opened fire, Rear Admiral Sprague radioed desperately for help, believing his carriers would be destroyed in minutes. With outstanding bravery the destroyers attacked the Japanese capital ships, winning the carriers a breathing space. All but one were eventually sunk by Japanese guns and many of the carriers took hits. But the destroyers and carrier aircraft between them sank three of Kurita's heavy cruisers and badly damaged three more. Although Sprague's carriers were still theoretically at his mercy, Kurita had had enough and turned back, safely withdrawing the remainder of his ships from the battle.

DESPERATE LAST GAMBLE

Admiral Ozawa's carriers and cruisers had performed their function bravely by drawing Halsey's 3rd Fleet away from Leyte, though all to no avail. Their destruction, which took place off Cape Engano, at the northern tip of Luzon, was inevitable—indeed, it formed part of the Japanese plan. The only use that remained for the once proud Japanese carrier force was as sacrificial victims.

It was as a response to his pilots' inability to damage enemy ships with conventional tactics that Admiral Ohnishi, commander of the 1st Air Fleet on the Philippines, called for volunteers to carry out suicide attacks. On October 21, off Leyte, a pilot flew his aircraft into the cruiser *Australia*. Four days later Ohnishi's Special Attack Unit, formally dedicated to kamikaze tactics, began systematic suicide attacks. On October 25-26 they crashed onto 47 US ships, including seven carriers. The first to be sunk by a kamikaze attack was the escort carrier *St Lô*.

The suicide attacks were a disturbing conclusion to an important American victory. By any measure it had been one of the largest sea battles in history, and the Japanese had lost. Their surface warships would take no further active part in the war, beyond a suicidal gesture at the very end.

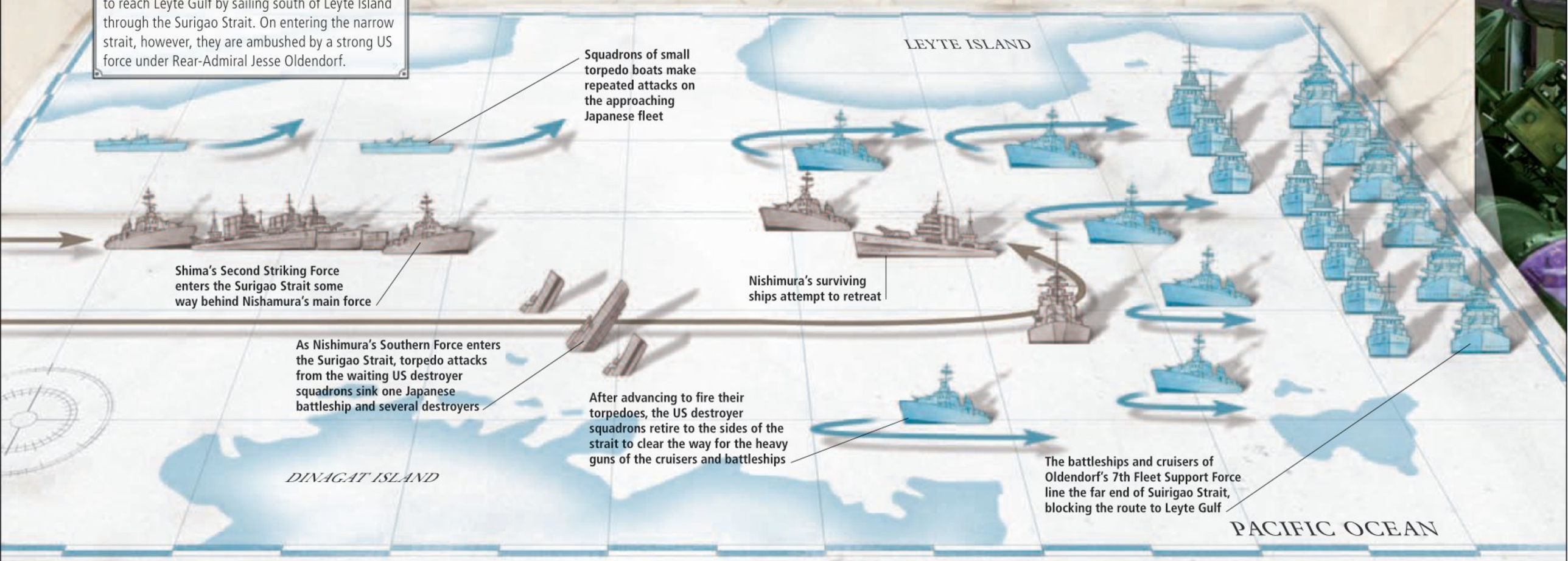


No chance of escape
A Japanese heavy cruiser desperately maneuvers while US bombers send up plumes of water around it. The raid on Manila Bay was part of the American campaign to reconquer the Philippines after Leyte Gulf.

BATTLE OF SURIGAO STRAIT

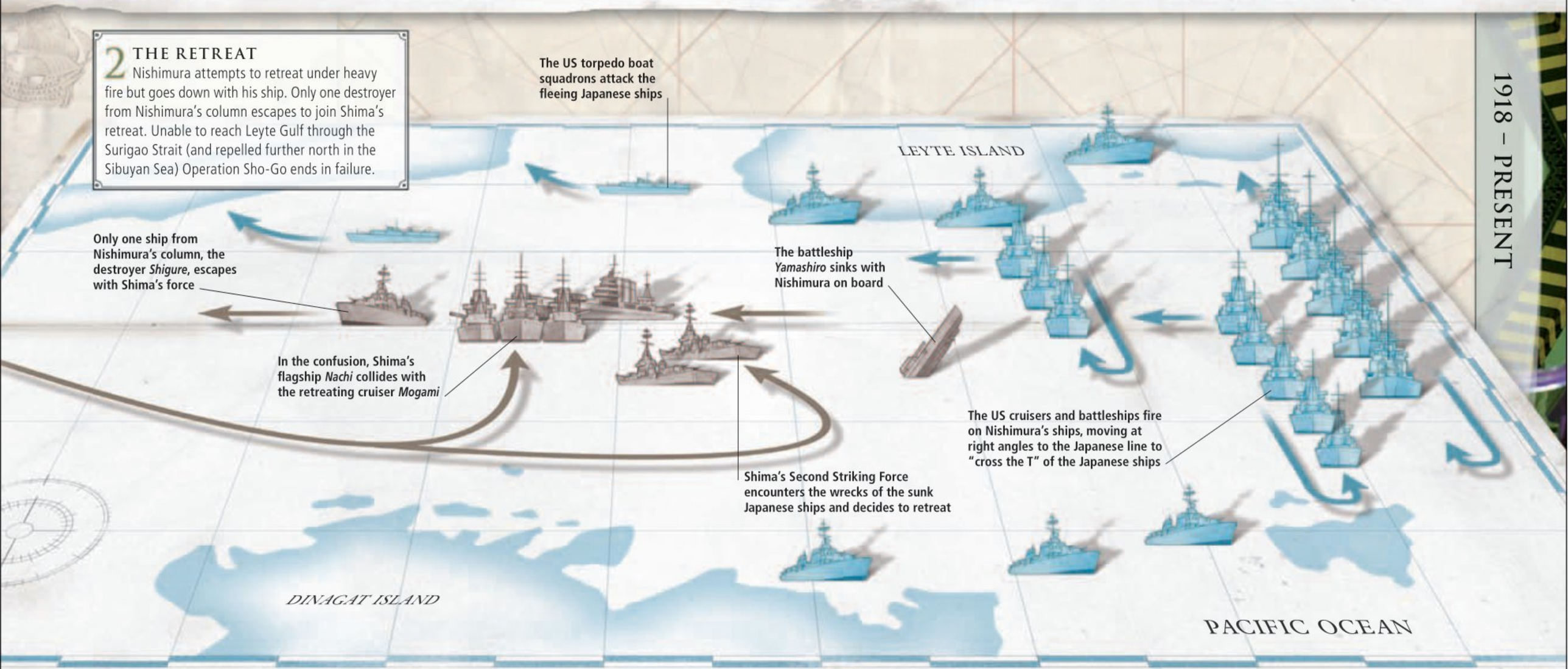
1 THE AMBUSH

Vice Admiral Nishimura's Southern Force tries to reach Leyte Gulf by sailing south of Leyte Island through the Surigao Strait. On entering the narrow strait, however, they are ambushed by a strong US force under Rear-Admiral Jesse Oldendorf.



2 THE RETREAT

Nishimura attempts to retreat under heavy fire but goes down with his ship. Only one destroyer from Nishimura's column escapes to join Shima's retreat. Unable to reach Leyte Gulf through the Surigao Strait (and repelled further north in the Sibuyan Sea) Operation Sho-Go ends in failure.

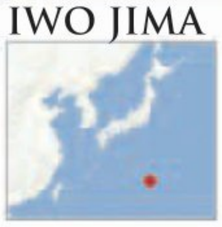


"I HEARD ONE OF THE SIGNALMEN YELL: "GODDAMIT, BOYS, THEY'RE GETTING AWAY!" I COULD NOT BELIEVE MY EYES, BUT IT LOOKED AS IF THE WHOLE JAPANESE FLEET WAS INDEED RETIRING ... AT BEST I HAD EXPECTED TO BE SWIMMING BY THIS TIME."

VICE ADMIRAL CLIFTON SPRAGUE DESCRIBING THE BATTLE OFF SAMAR

WORLD WAR II

IWO JIMA



Date February 19–March 26, 1945
Forces Americans: Over 800 ships, 74,000 Marines; Japanese: 23,000 soldiers
Losses Americans: 1 escort carrier, 1 tank landing craft, 1 infantry landing craft
Location Iwo Jima, Ogasawara Islands

Lying halfway between the Marianas and the Japanese mainland, the small volcanic island of Iwo Jima was of limited military value. But the Americans decided to take the island as a stepping stone across the Pacific, and the Japanese defended it to the death.

The Iwo Jima landings were an amphibious operation on an awesome scale. Almost 500 ships were dedicated to transporting and landing more than 70,000 men of the 3rd, 4th, and 5th Marine Divisions. Hundreds of other ships were deployed in support, including battleships, cruisers, and escort carriers. The US Navy was not expecting interference from the Imperial Japanese Navy, which was no longer a viable fighting force, and Iwo Jima was far distant from Japanese air bases. The function of the US armada was to bombard the island and land Marines. The naval bombardment of Iwo Jima began three days before the landings—a much shorter softening-up than the Marines would have liked. Battleships and cruisers fired a total of 22,000 shells into the island. The effect of this onslaught and the accompanying aerial bombardment was slight. Under Lieutenant General Tadamichi Kuribayashi, the 22,000 soldiers on the island had created a network of strongpoints and bunkers linked by tunnels deep inside the cave-riddled volcanic rock. When the first wave of Marines came ashore at 8:59 a.m. on the morning of February 19, the Japanese were ready to receive them.

MARINE ASSAULT

The initial landing was not contested. The Japanese only opened fire when a log-jam of Marines and equipment had built up on the beaches, trapped by the volcanic terrain. Sailors bringing landing craft into shore had to contend not only with enemy fire but also with waves that dashed boats onto the beach. Close support for the Marines from naval guns and carrier aircraft was inhibited by worsening weather. On February 21 the attack carrier *Saratoga* and escort carrier *Bismarck Sea* were hit by attacks from Japanese kamikaze aircraft. *Saratoga* limped away for repairs after fires and explosions caused over 300 casualties on board; *Bismarck Sea* was blown apart and sank with the loss of 318 men.

The outcome of the battle was never in doubt, but the human cost was appalling. By the time the island was finally secured the Marines had suffered over 23,000 casualties and the US Navy around 2,000. Almost all the Japanese soldiers on the island died.

WITNESS TO WAR

US SEAMAN WILLIAM P. CAMPBELL

CREWMAN ON AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE DURING LANDINGS AT IWO JIMA

BATTLE OF IWO JIMA

"We made it in all right carrying in troops off the ship. ***My trouble started when I went back*** *and picked up a load of medical supplies a little after dark.* ***I went onto the beach and couldn't get off.*** *They'd shoot flares and it would* ***light the whole island up, just like it was daylight*** *… I was at the back of the boat when a shell or mortar hit the front of the boat.* ***It blew the bow door off it.*** *We got off that thing and dug a foxhole …"*

The beaches of Iwo Jima
US Marines make their way up the volcanic beaches on Iwo Jima. The Japanese waited until the beaches were full of men and equipment before opening fire.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

AMPHIBIOUS WARFARE

The Americans deployed an impressive range of amphibious vehicles during the Pacific War. The most basic was the LCVP (Landing Craft Vehicle Personnel) or Higgins Boat. Men climbed down netting from transports into these shallow-draft wooden boats to be ferried ashore. More than 23,000 LCVPs were built in World War II, along with 11,000 LCMs (Landing Craft Mechanized) designed to carry tanks and other vehicles. The larger LCI (Landing Craft Infantry) was an oceangoing vessel capable of carrying 200 soldiers. Alongside these landing craft a number of inventive types of amphibious vehicle were used. These included the DUKW, an amphibious wheeled truck, and various forms of LVT (Landing Vehicle Tracked). LVTs were basically designed to carry men ashore, but they developed in the course of the war into armored vehicles, some equipped with turret guns so that they could function as amphibious tanks.

DUKW amphibious truck
This US Navy six-wheel drive truck carried 25 soldiers and could maintain a speed of 5 knots in the water.

Shore bombardment
USS *Idaho*'s big 14-in guns bombard Okinawa shortly before the first amphibious assault on April 1, 1945.

THE BATTLE OF OKINAWA

The assault on Okinawa was the largest amphibious operation of the Pacific war. More than half a million Allied personnel were involved in the battle for control of an island regarded by the Japanese as part of their homeland. In many ways the operation resembled the struggle for Iwo Jima, only on a larger scale. The preliminary naval bombardment to soften up the defenses, begun on March 21, was so intensive that Okinawans called it the "Typhoon of Steel." As at Iwo Jima, the initial landings on April 1 were unopposed. The Japanese soldiers on Okinawa, numbering over 100,000, were hidden in well-prepared defensive positions from which they could only be removed by months of hard infantry fighting.

OPERATION TEN-GO

The Allied naval forces at Okinawa consisted of the American Fifth Fleet —which included an astonishing 40 carriers and 18 battleships—and Vice Admiral Sir Bernard Rawlings's Royal Navy Task Force, under American operational control. The fleet was in an exposed position, within range of Japanese air bases on Kyushu island in southern Japan. It was also close enough to tempt the remnants of the Japanese navy into a final sortie, Operation Ten-go. On April 6, Admiral Seiichi Ito sailed out of the Inland Sea on board *Yamato*, the largest battleship in the world, accompanied by the cruiser *Yahagi* and a handful of destroyers—at that point the entire naval force that Japan could muster. His mission was to attack the Allied fleet off Okinawa. None of the ships was expected to return; they had only been supplied with fuel for a one-way trip.

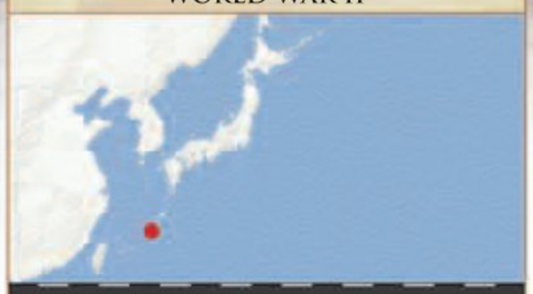
On April 7 the 11 carriers of Vice Admiral Marc Mitscher's Task Force 58 launched three waves of aircraft. Swarming around the *Yamato*, they struck it time and again with bombs and torpedoes until the battleship turned turtle and exploded, sending up a plume of smoke that could be seen 125 miles (200 km) away. The cruiser and four destroyers were also sunk and the operation abandoned.

FINAL SACRIFICE

The Allied fleet did not find it so easy to cope with air attack. On April 6, Japanese aircraft under launched the first mass kamikaze attack with over 300 aircraft. By crashing their aircraft onto warships, young half-trained pilots caused fearsome damage, even though few of them penetrated the combat air patrols and massed fire of the Allied fleet. In raids that continued through to the third week of June, the kamikazes sank more than 40 Allied ships, damaged some 200 others, and killed over 5,000 sailors. The fall of Okinawa came as a relief to battered and exhausted naval personnel.

Kamikaze attack
A Japanese suicide pilot about to crash his plane into the starboard side of the battleship *Missouri* during the battle for Okinawa.

WORLD WAR II



THE BATTLE OF OKINAWA

Date	March 21–June 23 1945
Location	Okinawa, Ryukyu Islands, Japan
Result	Allied victory

COMBATANTS

UNITED STATES BRITISH COMMONWEALTH	**JAPAN**

COMMANDERS

Raymond Spruance	**Seiichi Ito**

FORCES

Ships: c.1,300	**Ships:** unknown

LOSSES

Men: 4,028 **Ships:** 79	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** 16

> WE WATCHED EACH PLUNGING KAMIKAZE WITH THE DETACHED HORROR OF ONE WITNESSING A TERRIBLE SPECTACLE RATHER THAN AS THE INTENDED VICTIM.
>
> **VICE ADMIRAL C. R. BROWN**, DESCRIBING JAPANESE KAMIKAZE ATTACKS

POSTWAR CONFLICTS

Global reach
Fast Combat Support Ship USS *Bridge* leads a flotilla of vessels in support of Operation Enduring Freedom in 2001. Auxiliary vessels such as the *Bridge* enable the US Navy to refuel, rearm, and restock warships wherever they are in the world, extending US naval power across the globe.

IN THE SECOND HALF of the 20th century, the developments in naval tactics and technology evident during World War II continued apace. Big-gun naval vessels were reduced to a shore bombardment role, before virtually disappearing as ever larger aircraft carriers and submarines took center stage. By the 1960s carriers were operating missile-armed jet aircraft from their decks and nuclear-powered, nuclear-armed submarines had become a central part of the Cold War "nuclear deterrent." Surface warships gained a new lease of life through the introduction of shipborne missiles, which not only equipped escort ships for fleet defense but also provided powerful offensive weapons. The days of pitched battles between fleets seemed over, but the relevance of maritime strength to military power projection remained essential, in particular to the global role of the United States, from the Korean War through to modern Middle East conflicts.

NO BIG BATTLES

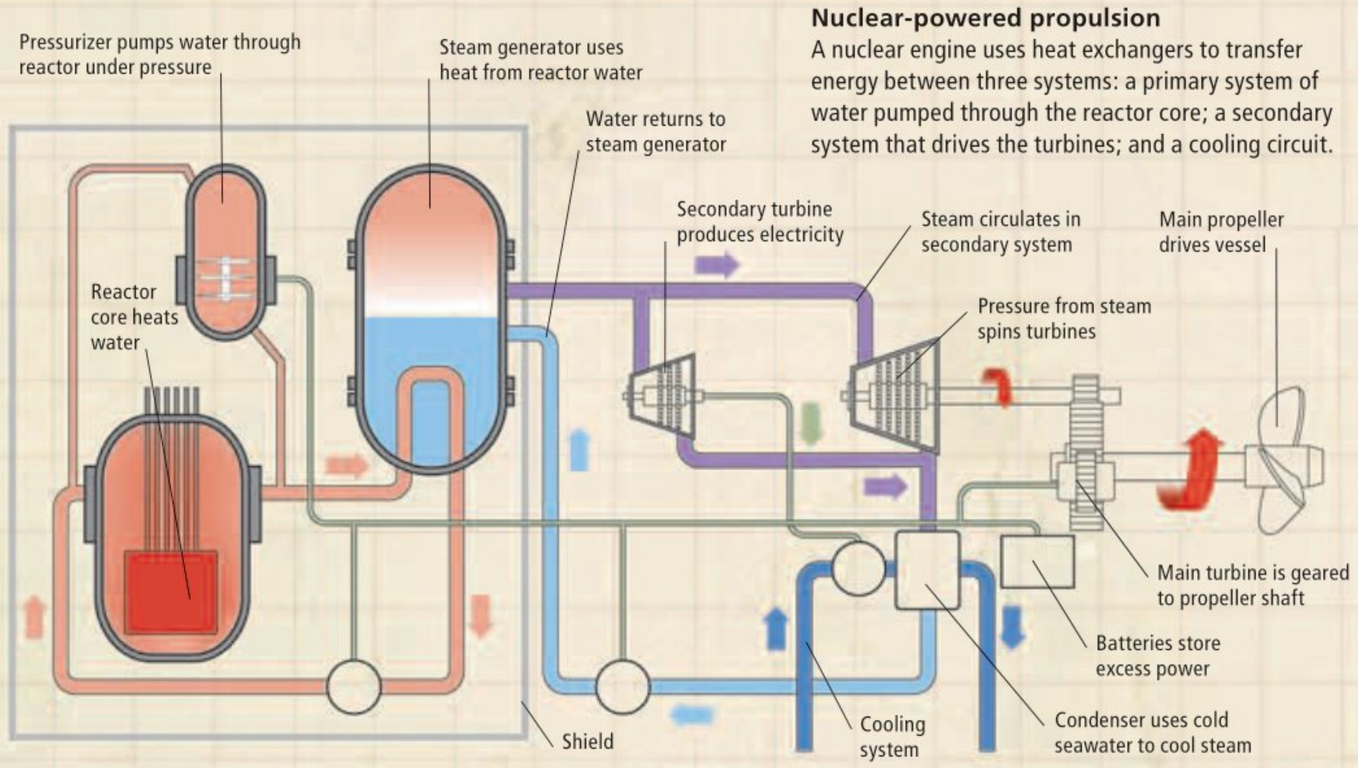
Since the end of World War II there have been no major battles at sea. The end of the war found the United States in possession of what was in practice an unchallenged worldwide naval supremacy. Defeated Germany and Japan were denied any significant naval forces. Britain and France still maintained navies of significant size, but were not potential opponents of the United States. The Soviet Union emerged as a global superpower rival for the United States in the Cold War, but the Soviet navy was not a major force in the first decades after the war. When the Soviet Union did develop a major fleet, by the 1970s, both sides planned for a sea conflict that never happened. Indeed, the Soviets and Americans observed rules to prevent hostile encounters between their navies. Thus the Soviet Union did not intervene with its navy during the Korean War in the 1950s, although the United States and its Allies operated large fleets close to the Soviet Pacific coast, and during the Vietnam War the Americans mostly did not interfere with Soviet seaborne supplies of war material to North Vietnam. With the demise of the Soviet Union in 1991, the United States was left with no credible enemy for a

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

NUCLEAR POWER

Nuclear propulsion has been in existence for over half a century—the first nuclear-powered vessel, the submarine USS *Nautilus,* was launched in 1955. Nuclear power has some impressive advantages over conventional propulsion systems since nuclear reactors produce a high power output and rarely need refueling. For these reasons, and the fact that nuclear reactors do not require air to operate, nuclear propulsion is ideal for submarines, which spend long periods of time submerged and away from refueling ships or ports.

Nuclear power has also been used in some surface vessels. A basic steam-turbine nuclear reactor works by generating heat through the fission of nuclear material. The heat converts water to steam, and the steam is used to drive a turbine that powers the vessel's propshaft and generators. Nuclear propulsion is not without disadvantage: heavy and expensive structures need to be put in place to contain the radiation, and the reactor core continues to be radioactive for hundreds of years after the ship is decommissioned.



Nuclear-powered propulsion
A nuclear engine uses heat exchangers to transfer energy between three systems: a primary system of water pumped through the reactor core; a secondary system that drives the turbines; and a cooling circuit.

major war. But the Middle East offered plenty of scope for US power-projection in which naval forces could play a central role.

SUPPORTING LAND FORCES

The largest naval operations since 1945 have been conducted in support of land forces, with firepower deployed for the bombardment of targets on land. During the Korean War and the Vietnam War, big naval guns and carrier aircraft were used by the Americans and their allies on a massive scale to provide fire support and to devastate targets in enemy territory. This pattern was repeated in Iraq and Afghanistan in the 1990s and more recently—although with ship-launched missiles replacing the big warships' heavy guns.

These large-scale operations were largely uncontested at sea, but during the same period several of the world's smaller navies engaged in some sharp, if mostly limited, naval combat that provided the opportunity for real-life use of developing new technologies and tactics. The Middle East and the Indian subcontinent were the scenes of interesting encounters, including the successful use of a ship-to-ship missile in the sinking of the Israeli destroyer *Eilat* by Egyptian missile boats in 1967. The Falklands War of 1982 was an unequal contest between the Royal Navy and Argentina's small and ageing fleet, but a more balanced contest between the British ships and shore-based Argentinian aircraft armed with advanced missiles as well as bombs.

AWESOME POWER

By the early 21st century the firepower of navies was far beyond anything that had previously existed, even if nuclear warheads were left out of account. The aircraft and missiles of the fleets assembled by the United States and its allies for operations in Afghanistan and Iraq constituted an awesome concentration of force and sophisticated technology. Nuclear submarines were among the technological wonders of the modern world. Whether such supremely impressive naval forces were a weapon that would continue to suit 21st-century strategic needs in the age of the "War on Terror" remained to be demonstrated.

Quiet sentinels
Modern nuclear-powered submarines such as HMS *Astute*, launched by the Royal Navy in 2007, are able to remain submerged for months at a time.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

BALLISTIC MISSILES

Unlike cruise missiles, which take a guided flight path to their targets, ballistic missiles are guided only during the relatively brief powered multi-stage lift-off and initial flight, which takes the missile to sub-orbital altitudes. Thereafter the missile flies on using its own ballistic, free-flight energy, eventually deploying nuclear or conventional warheads at supersonic speeds to the target area. Ranges of these missiles vary from a few hundred miles to more than 3,418 miles (5,500 km) in inter-continental models. Naval ballistic missiles are primarily submarine-launched weapons. The first operational naval model was the Polaris, which entered service with the US Navy in 1961 after a five-year development program. The latest Trident ballistic missiles have a range of 7,000 miles (11,300 km), reach speeds of 18,000 mph (29,000 kph) in sub-orbit, and use star-sighting and inertial guidance systems.

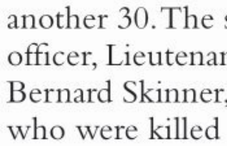
Polaris nuclear missile
The Polaris missile was a submarine-launched, solid-fuel, nuclear-armed, ballistic missile (SLBM), which was carried by British submarines from 1968. It was later replaced by Trident I.

COLD WAR CONFLICTS

AFTER THE END OF World War II the United States and it allies became involved in global resistance to the spread of Communism. Communist triumph in the Chinese Civil War in 1950 was followed by a major war in Korea, where Communist North Korean and Chinese forces fought South Korean and US-led United Nations forces. The navies of the United States and its allies were deployed on a large scale through the three years of the war, operating unchallenged around the whole Korean peninsula. As well as the amphibious operations such as that at Inchon in September 1950, they provided close air support for UN ground forces with carrier aircraft, and flattened North Korean coastal towns with naval gunfire. The fact that both the Communist Soviet Union and the United States possessed nuclear weapons deterred them from fighting one another directly, but a dangerous confrontation developed after Fidel Castro came to power in Cuba in 1959 and allied his country with the Soviets. The possibility that the Soviets might defy a naval blockade imposed on Cuba by the United States during the missile crisis of 1962 brought the world close to nuclear disaster.

THE COLD WAR

YANGTZE INCIDENT



Date April 20–July 31, 1949
Forces British: 4 frigates; Chinese: shore batteries
Losses British: none; Chinese: none

Location Yangtze River, near Jiangyin, China

On April 20, 1949, the British frigate HMS *Amethyst* sailed up the politically fraught waters of the Yangtze River in China. At this time, China was split between Chiang Kai-Shek's beleaguered Nationalists and the Communists of Mao Tse-tung's ascendant People's Liberation Army (PLA), with the Yangtze forming one of the frontlines in the conflict. *Amethyst* was tasked with shipping supplies to the British community at Nanking, and with the relief of the guardship HMS *Consort* stationed there, a journey that would take it through the heart of a war zone. From the outset, *Amethyst* was shelled at close range by several PLA shore batteries, resulting in over 50 hits that killed 17 crewmen and wounded another 30. The ship's commanding officer, Lieutenant Commander Bernard Skinner, was among those who were killed during the shelling.

RESCUE MISSION

With the *Amethyst* run aground off Rose Island near Jiangyin, HMS *Consort* launched a spectacular high-speed rescue effort, knocking out several Chinese shore batteries before being forced to retreat. Other rescue attempts by the vessels HMS *Black Swan* and HMS *London* were similarly roughly handled, resulting in many dead and wounded. Thereafter, *Amethyst* remained trapped for 14 weeks during negotiations—during this time the ship's company (under Lieutenant Commander John Kerans) managed to complete major temporary repairs. On the night of July 30–31, *Amethyst* fired up her engines and made a break for the sea in a storm of gunfire. The ship punched through the boom at the mouth of the Yangtze River and made open water and safety. The incident was cheered in Britain, and the crew were hailed as heroes.

THE INCHON LANDINGS

In August 1950 United Nations and South Korean forces were pinned in the Pusan area of southern Korea. UN Supreme Commander General Douglas MacArthur planned a bold amphibious operation to land troops behind North Korean lines at Inchon. The conditions for landings were difficult. Inchon had one of the most extreme tidal ranges in the world—around 36 ft (11 m) maximum variation between low and high tide—and was surrounded by treacherous mudflats. The two sea approaches, the Flying Fish Channel and the Eastern Channel, were narrow and difficult to negotiate. The approaches were dominated by the fortified island of Wolmi-do, which would have to be captured first. On the other hand, the UN forces had total command of the sea and air. The operation, codenamed Chromite, was set for September 15, when the tide would be high enough to allow large tank landing craft to reach the shore.

THE KOREAN WAR

THE INCHON LANDINGS

Date	September 15, 1950
Location	South Korea
Result	UN victory

COMBATANTS

UNITED STATES	NORTH KOREA

COMMANDERS

Douglas MacArthur **Arthur D Struble**	**Choi Yong-kun**

FORCES

Ships: 261 ships, 40,000 troops	**Ships:** 1,000 troops

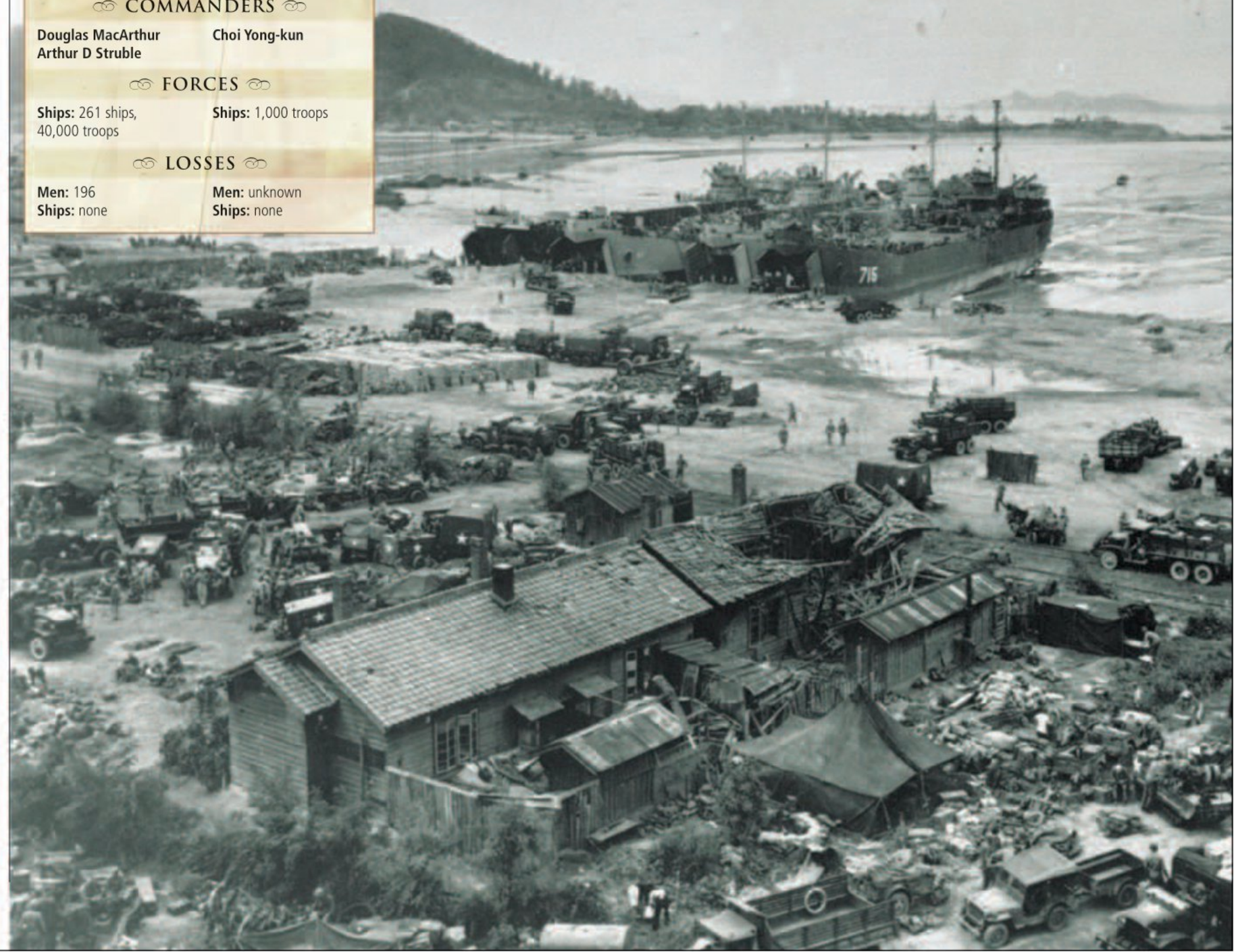
LOSSES

Men: 196 **Ships:** none	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** none

AMPHIBIOUS OPERATION

A force of 261 ships, including British and Canadian vessels as well as American, assembled under Vice Admiral Arthur D. Struble, although preparations were disrupted by a typhoon in early September. Diversionary attacks were mounted to disperse the North Korean defenses, but Inchon itself was thoroughly softened up with strikes by carrier aircraft. Seven destroyers made

US troops land at Inchon
In the course of operations around the port of Inchon, UN forces landed some 50,000 US troops. The Inchon landings led to the recapture of Seoul and turned around UN fortunes in the Korean War.



THE COLD WAR

BAY OF PIGS

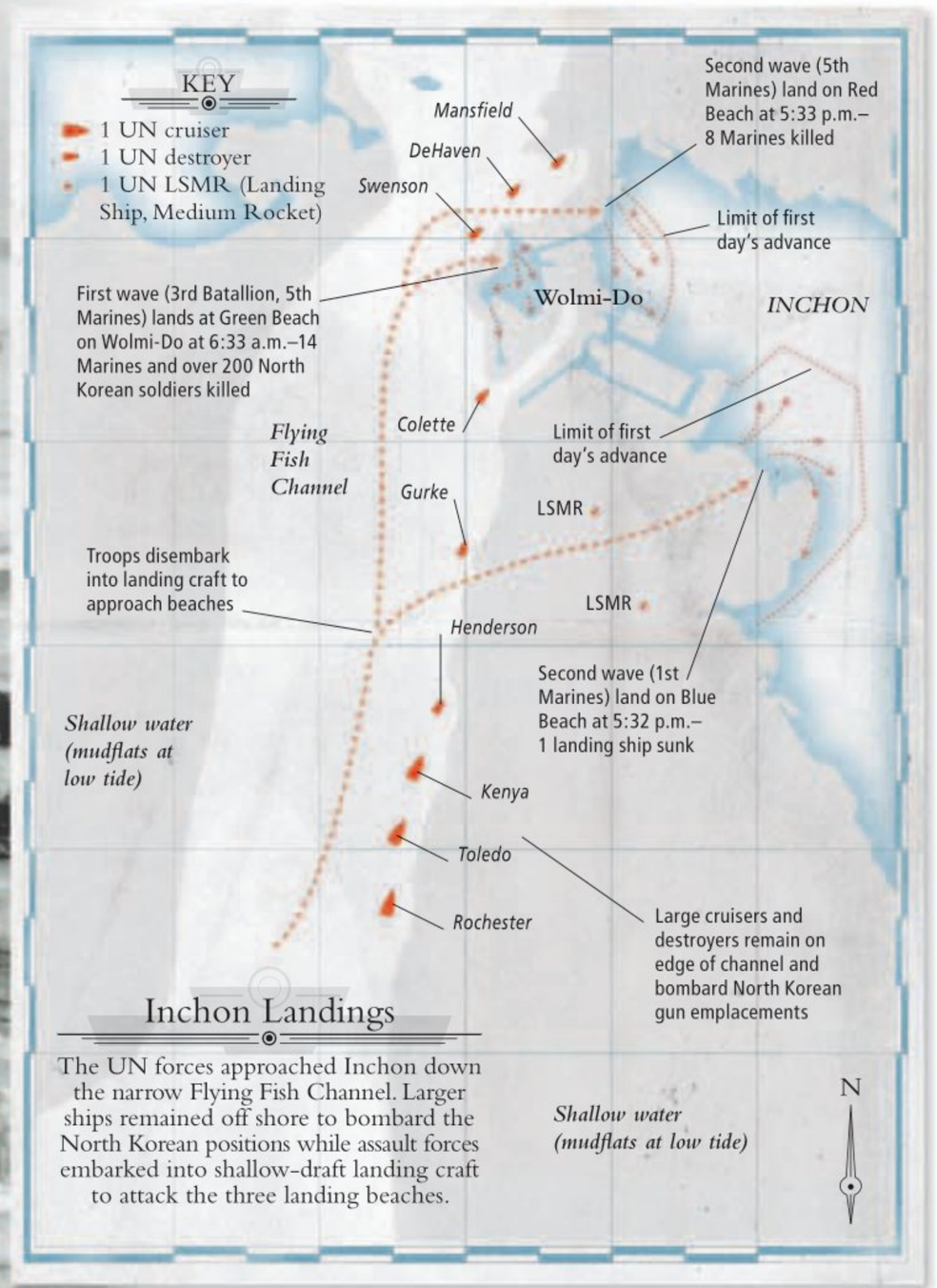
Date April 17, 1961
Forces Americans/Cuban exiles: 1 aircraft carrier, 6 destroyers, 4 freighters, 2 landing craft; Cubans: 15,000 men
Losses Americans/Cuban exiles: 1 freighter sunk; Cubans: unknown
Location Off coast of southwest Cuba

In the early 1960s, with Communist dictator Fidel Castro firmly in power in Cuba, relations between the United States and its Caribbean neighbor were deteriorating fast. In 1961 the US government decided to pursue a military solution. The Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) trained a group of 1,500 Cuban exiles for an invasion of Cuba, with the aim of removing Castro from power. The exiles were to land at the Bay of Pigs in four freighters, alongside two CIA landing craft, with heavy air and fire support from the US carrier *Essex* and six US Navy destroyers.

The landing force went in on April 17, 1961. Air strikes destroyed initial Cuban resistance and the landing was successful. However, the invasion force was subsequently destroyed over three days of fighting, to the embarrassment of the US government. Four US pilots also died during engagements over Cuba and Cuban strike jets managed to sink one enemy freighter.

a risky foray into the Flying Fish Channel to test North Korean defenses. When shore guns opened up, revealing their location, these were destroyed by air attack and salvoes from cruisers.

On the night of September 14-15 US Marines traveled toward Wolmi-do on board the high-speed destroyers *Bass*, *Diachanko*, and *Wantuck*, preceded by a destroyer escort, followed by large landing craft with heavy equipment, and covered by a force of cruisers. The Marines transferred to landing craft and went ashore at first light, exploiting the morning flood tide. An intense naval bombardment ensured that resistance was slight. The follow-up landings, to the north and south of Wolmi-do, had to wait for the late afternoon tide. The North Koreans proved unable to mount a swift counterattack, however, and by around 5:30 p.m. Marines were swarming up ladders over seawalls in Inchon itself. Marine casualties on the day amounted to 22 killed and 174 wounded. The success of the landings led to the recapture of the South Korean capital Seoul and obliged North Korean forces to retreat northward in an effort to avoid encirclement. It also unfortunately tempted MacArthur to take the war into North Korea, leading to the involvement of Chinese troops and a bloody stalemate lasting into 1953.



Inchon Landings

The UN forces approached Inchon down the narrow Flying Fish Channel. Larger ships remained off shore to bombard the North Korean positions while assault forces embarked into shallow-draft landing craft to attack the three landing beaches.

US blockade of Cuba
Soviet tanker *Polzunov* is inspected by the US Navy picket ship *Vesole* as it carries a cargo of ballistic missiles away from Cuba on November 9, during the Soviet withdrawal of missiles from the island.

THE COLD WAR

CUBAN MISSILE CRISIS

Date October-November 1962
Forces Americans/Allies: 183 warships; Soviets: unknown
Losses Americans/ Allies: none; Soviets: none
Location Atlantic, northeast of Cuba

From the summer of 1962, Soviet engineers and scientists began work on the Communist-controlled island of Cuba, establishing medium-range ballistic missile launch facilities. By using Cuba as a nuclear missile launch-pad, the USSR could target almost the whole of the southern United States. When the facilities were revealed by U-2 reconnaissance flights over the island in October 1962, the deployments terrified the US authorities.

The US government of John F. Kennedy opted to take a tough stance against the Soviets, issuing a demand that the missiles and their facilities be withdrawn from Cuban soil immediately, and threatening a nuclear response against the Soviet Union should it attempt any open aggression. The stakes were raised when the United States, with maritime support from Venezuela, Argentina, and Dominica, imposed a naval blockade off Cuba with warships, aircraft carriers, and nuclear-armed submarines. On October 24, the blockade faced its first major challenge with the approach of 19 cargo ships, mostly containing missile equipment, shadowed by Soviet submarines. A dramatic stand-off ensued, which finally resolved itself when most of the Soviet ships turned around in the face of US intransigence.

Only one Soviet ship, the tanker *Bucharest*, managed to make it through to Havana. Tensions escalated and for a time the world teetered on the brink of nuclear war. Ultimately, however, the US naval blockade effectively convinced the Soviet government under Nikita Khrushchev that Cuba was not a viable investment for missile defense, and it agreed to remove the missile sites from Cuba under UN inspection. The naval blockade of Cuba was finally lifted on November 20.

Submarine Geiger counter
The US deployed nuclear submarines during the Cuban blockade. Geiger counters such as this one were used to check levels of radiation in the vessels and monitor how much radiation had been absorbed by crews.

> THE SOVIET GOVERNMENT CANNOT INSTRUCT THE CAPTAINS OF SOVIET VESSELS BOUND FOR CUBA TO OBSERVE THE ORDERS OF THE AMERICAN NAVAL FORCES BLOCKADING THAT ISLAND.
>
> **NIKITA KRUSHCHEV, SOVIET PREMIER,** LETTER TO US PRESIDENT JOHN F. KENNEDY

COLD WAR WARRIOR

The crew of the USS *Nautilus*, the world's first nuclear-powered submarine, takes to her deck as she enters New York Harbor in 1957. The next year *Nautilus* made the first submerged transit of the North Pole. Nuclear submarines, able to stay submerged for weeks or even months at a time and carrying a payload of ballistic missiles, soon became a key part of the Cold War stalemate.

NAUTILUS
6

THE VIETNAM WAR

THE POPULAR IMAGE of the Vietnam War is of foot-slogging search-and-destroy operations. The impression does little justice to the key US and South Vietnamese naval operations during the decade-long conflict. US involvement in the Vietnam War began in earnest at sea with the Gulf of Tonkin engagement in 1964, and ended with major evacuations from the South Vietnamese coastline in 1975. In between were a huge range of maritime operations. Aircraft carrier groups sat at two locations off the Vietnamese coast ("Yankee Station" and "Dixie Station") to launch naval air strikes against North Vietnam and Viet Cong targets in South Vietnam. Navy and Coast Guard units cut Communist supply lines during Operation Market Time, while a composite US Navy and US Army "Brown Water Navy" fought the Communists along the waterways of the Mekong Delta. Vietnam also saw more traditional forms of naval warfare, with the battleship *New Jersey* deployed to provide fire support to ground troops with her huge 16-in guns. Although the Vietnam War ultimately ended in defeat for the West, the efforts of the US maritime forces were arguably the most successful component of the war.

RIVERINE OPERATIONS

The Mekong River Delta in South Vietnam was home to over 50 percent of the country's population during the Vietnam war and contained the most fertile rice-producing land. It was also laced with 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of tangled, jungle-shrouded waterways that provided superb covert transportation lanes for Communist insurgents, the Viet Cong, to traffic people, supplies, and weapons. Taking the war to the Viet Cong along the Mekong was the task of the "Brown Water Navy" a collection of US Army, Navy, and South Vietnamese riverine patrol units.

The first unit tasked with patrolling the Mekong was the River Patrol Force (RPF), established in 1965. In terms of vessels, US forces made use of almost anything that could float and be armed, including World War II-era landing craft and French colonial monitor gunboats. Yet the arsenal also included purpose-built vessels such as the Patrol Boat, River (PBR) whose shallow draft, a high-speed of 25 knots, and armament of machine guns and grenade launchers made it an ideal river assault craft.

The US launched Operation Game Warden in 1966, aimed at stopping and searching vessels along the Mekong waterways. These patrols could be violent affairs—in 1967 alone Game Warden operations destroyed 2,000 enemy vessels, and boarded around 400,000. Yet US forces soon sought more aggressive solutions. The result was the creation of the Mobile Riverine Force a joint army-navy unit dedicated to search-and-destroy operations. Soldiers (principally the 9th Infantry Division) were carried into battle in Armored Troop Carriers (ATCs), with fire support from gun-bristling monitor gunboats. Headquarters were created from floating base ships—often converted LSTs (Landing Ships, Tank) left over from World War II. Pontoons provided platforms for floating artillery firebases.

The Mobile Riverine Force was critical in curtailing Viet Cong influence in the Mekong, particularly during the Communist Tet offensive of 1968, when the riverine craft were used to deploy troops around South Vietnam to douse the fires of Viet Cong uprisings. In 1969 the MRF was reorganized under the SEALORDS program (the Southeast Asia Lake, Ocean, River, and Delta Strategy). The 9th Infantry were detached for other land warfare duties, but the boat force grew in scale and included the now 258-boat strong RPF.

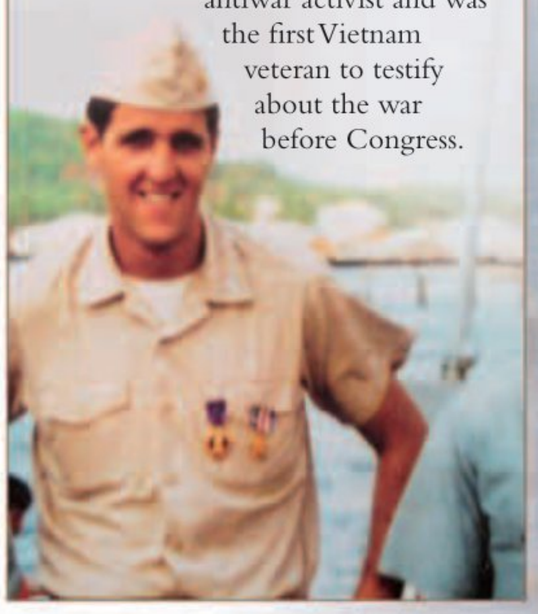
Slow but sure
The turtle emblem on this uniform patch is an affectionate nod to the armored monitor gunboats used by riverine units in Vietnam.

1943–PRESENT

JOHN KERRY

SWIFT BOAT COMMANDER AND ANTI-WAR ACTIVIST

Future US Senator and presidential candidate John Kerry served in Vietnam from 1968–1970, his first tour of duty being aboard the frigate USS *Gridley*. Kerry voluntarily transferred to be the commander of a Patrol Craft, Fast (PCF) Swift boat, performing coastal and river interdiction. In this role he saw much action, receiving three Purple Hearts for wounds sustained in action. After leaving Vietnam, Kerry became an antiwar activist and was the first Vietnam veteran to testify about the war before Congress.



THE VIETNAM WAR

THE GULF OF TONKIN INCIDENT

Date August 2-4, 1964
Forces Americans: 2 destroyers; North Vietnamese: 5–8 torpedo boats
Losses Americans: none; North Vietnamese: c.3 boats destroyed

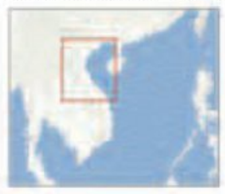
Location Gulf of Tonkin, North Vietnam

The Gulf of Tonkin incident provided a pretext for escalating US involvement in the Vietnam War. On August 2, 1964, the destroyer USS *Maddox* was engaged in intelligence-gathering off the Gulf of Tonkin when she was approached by three North Vietnamese torpedo boats. Warning shots failed to deter the attackers, and US gunfire subsequently destroyed one boat and damaged another. Two days later *Maddox* was on patrol with another destroyer, *Turner Joy*. Radio operators on board suddenly reported five enemy torpedo boats approaching, resulting in a blaze of US gunfire and reports that two enemy craft had been sunk. Later analysis contended that the reports were false and no enemy craft were present. Nonetheless, the incidents led to retaliatory air attacks on North Vietnam and persuaded US Congress to effectively commit to war.

Jet warfare
Deck crew on board the carrier *Bon Homme Richard* prepare F-8 Crusader fighter jets for action against North Vietnamese aircraft in 1965.

THE VIETNAM WAR

OPERATION ROLLING THUNDER



Date March 2, 1965–November 1,1968
Forces Americans: 600 ships; North Vietnamese: extensive Soviet-supplied air defenses
Losses Americans: 922 aircraft; North Vietnamese: unknown

Location Gulf of Tonkin and North Vietnam

Rolling Thunder was the name of the aerial bombing campaign over North Vietnam, initiated in March 1965 with the intention of pounding the North Vietnamese government into submission. A sustained bombing campaign, carried out over several years, inflicted huge damage—air force, navy, and Marine Corps aircraft dropped 864,000 tons of bombs—but ultimately failed to break North Vietnamese resistance or convince the government not to aid Communist insurgency in the South.

The US Navy and Marine Corps component of Rolling Thunder was primarily delivered by the carrier aircraft of "Yankee Station" based 75 miles (140 km) off the Gulf of Tonkin. Yankee Station consisted of multiple US aircraft carriers during the Rolling Thunder operations, including *Coral Sea*, *Hancock*, *Constellation*, and *Midway*. By operating in a multi-carrier unit, Yankee Station was able to keep up the round-the-clock commitments of the air war. Its aviators ran terrible risks from Soviet-supplied SA-2 Guideline missiles and vast barrages of conventional anti-aircraft fire. There were also some horrific offshore accidents, the most famous of which resulted from the accidental firing of a Zuni rocket aboard USS *Forrestal* on July 29, 1967. The missile ignited fuel and ordnance, and subsequent fires and detonations killed 134 and destroyed or damaged 64 aircraft. In total, 454 naval aviators and many more air force pilots died during Operation Rolling Thunder.

The SEALORDS program ran until 1970, when the Brown Water efforts began to wind down, having killed thousands of Viet Cong personnel and stemmed the Communist flow of supplies to and from Cambodia. The Riverine War was a dirty, violent campaign, but it had played a vital role in the efforts to destroy the Viet Cong.

Monitor on patrol
An American Swift patrol boat converted into an armored monitor gunboat churns slowly past defoliated vegetation during counter-insurgency operations on the Saigon River.

THE VIETNAM WAR

RIVERINE OPERATIONS

Date 1965–1970
Location Principally the Mekong River Delta
Result US superiority

COMBATANTS

UNITED STATES	VIET CONG

COMMANDERS

William Westmoreland	Local commanders

FORCES

Ships: 258 patrol and minesweeping boats, 184 monitors and transports, 25 helicopter gunships, 15 aircraft in 1969	**Ships:** unknown

LOSSES

Men: 5,182 **Ships:** unknown	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** unknown

THE VIETNAM WAR

OPERATION MARKET TIME

Date March 11,1965–December 1972
Forces Americans: unknown; North Vietnamese: unknown
Losses Unknown

Location Coastal waters of South Vietnam

On February 16, 1965, a US helicopter flying along the coast of central South Vietnam spotted a North Vietnamese trawler unloading arms and ammunition at Vung Ro Bay—the first tangible evidence that North Vietnam was using open sea routes to supply Communist insurgents in South Vietnam. The US Navy responded to the incident by launching Market Time, a major coastal patrol operation designed to cut the open–water supply lines between North and South Vietnam.

Operation Market Time ran for seven years along a 1,200 mile (2,000 km) stretch of the South Vietnamese coast. It was delivered by Task Force 115, the Coastal Patrol Force. By 1966 hundreds of US Navy, Coast Guard, and South Vietnamese Navy craft were involved. The screening operation was organized around nine patrol sectors stretching 40 miles (65 km) out to sea. Close to the shore, US Navy Patrol Gunboats, armed junks, and Coast Guard Cutters performed stop-and-search operations. Further from the coast, larger navy minesweepers and destroyers intercepted deep-water traffic. US Navy surveillance aircraft patrolled the waters beyond.

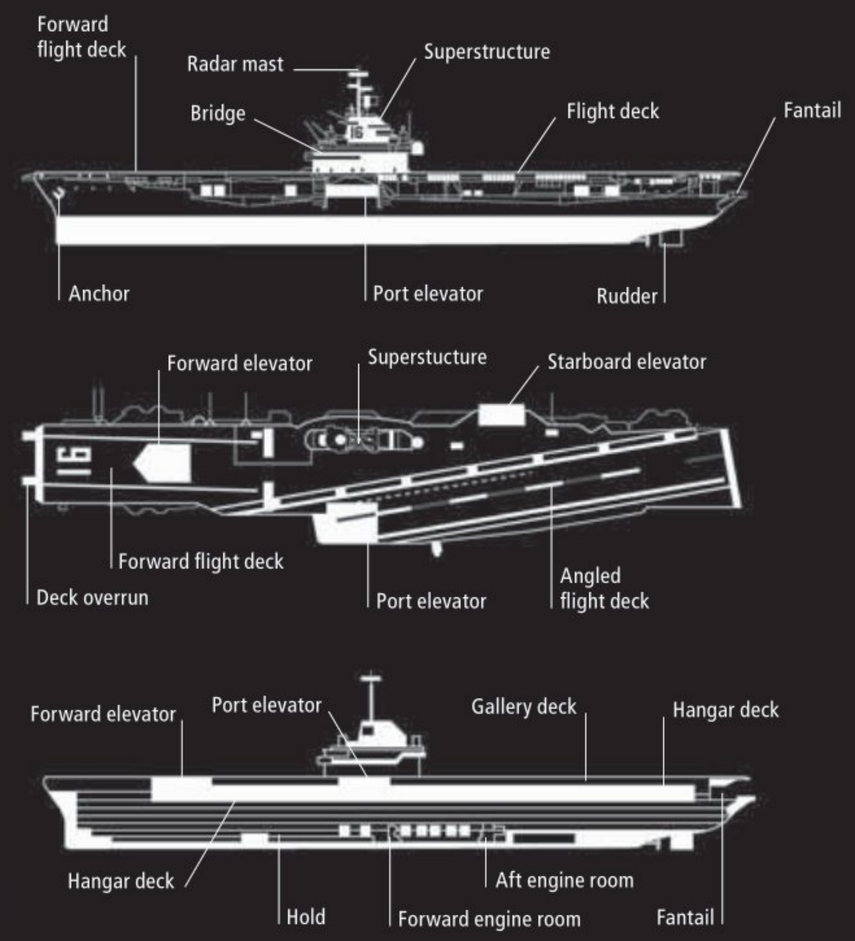
The effect of Market Time on the Communist supply lines was profound. Out of 50 North Vietnamese trawlers that attempted the run south between 1965 and 1972, US forces captured or destroyed 49. Communist forces almost entirely abandoned the coastal route in favor of the inland Ho Chi Minh Trail.

USS LEXINGTON

THE FIRST AIRCRAFT CARRIER to bear the name *Lexington* was sunk at the Coral Sea in 1942. The name was transferred to a new fleet carrier commissioned in 1943, which played a prominent part in the battles of the Philippine Sea and Leyte Gulf. *Lexington* remained in service until 1991, making her the longest serving carrier in the US Navy.

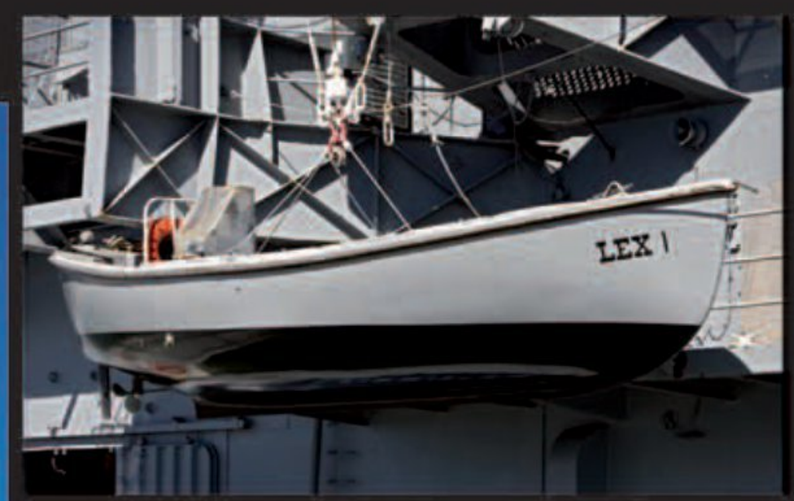
KNOWN AS THE "BLUE GHOST" because of her dark blue paint scheme, *Lexington* operated some 80 aircraft during World War II. The ship had the standard layout for a World War II carrier, with an island superstructure offset to starboard and aircraft taking off and landing along a straight flight deck stretching from the stern to the bow. With the aid of a steam-operated catapult and an arrestor cable, aircraft could take off and land using half the length of the flight deck, leaving the rest free for shifting planes up from and down to the hangars on lifts. If a landing went wrong, only a crash barrier prevented an aircraft piling into planes being marshalled on the deck. After the war, carriers were designed with a landing deck angled to port, so that if anything went wrong the landing pilot could accelerate off and come round for a second try. *Lexington* was given an angled flight deck during extensive modernization in the 1950s. By the time she was decommissioned in 1991, *Lexington* was the oldest working aircraft carrier in the US Navy. She is now a museum ship at Corpus Christi, Texas.

The Blue Ghost
At her permanent mooring in Corpus Christi, Texas, the floodlit shape of the *Lexington*, affectionately nicknamed the "Blue Ghost," can be seen from around the bay.

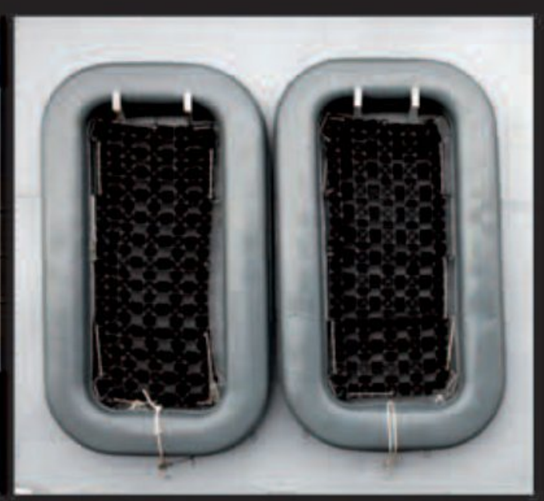


USS Lexington
The second Essex-class aircraft carrier to be commissioned, *Lexington* is 910 ft (275 m) long. She can carry enough fuel in her tanks to sail nonstop for a distance of 30,000 miles (50,000 km).

Superstructure
The island superstructure is the ship's command-and-control center. The radar mast carries six different radar systems as well as radio antennas and other equipment. Below this, the island houses the bridge, pilot-house, radar room, flight control center, and other key command areas.



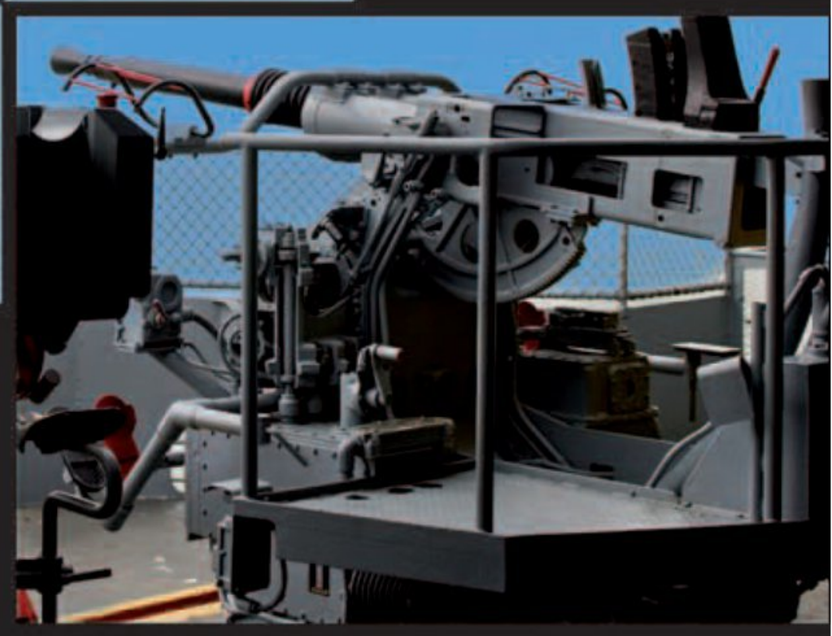
Whaler MK11
Suspended from the starboard aft edge of the flight deck, the lightweight 26 ft (8 m) long Mk11 Whaler motorboat was used to ferry personnel to shore. It could carry up to 22 passengers.



Life rafts
Two rigid, puncture-proof life rafts known as Carley floats are fixed to the starboard side of the island. In case of emergency, the lightweight rafts could be launched simply by casting them into the water.

> "PILOTS ARE THE WEAPON OF THIS FORCE. PILOTS ARE THE THINGS YOU HAVE TO NURTURE. PILOTS ARE THE PEOPLE YOU HAVE TO TRAIN ... YOU HAVE TO TRAIN OTHER PEOPLE TO SUPPORT THE PILOTS.
>
> **ADMIRAL MARC MITSCHER,** COMMANDER OF FAST CARRIER TASK FORCE 58 ON *LEXINGTON*, 1941

3-in anti-aircraft gun
Lexington was fitted with a range of light 20-mm and 40-mm anti-aircraft guns (and several 5-in dual-purpose guns). Most of the light anti-aircraft guns were removed during *Lexington*'s extensive 1955 refit and replaced with heavier 3-in guns such as this one.



40-mm Bofors anti-aircraft gun
The Bofors 40-mm gun was the US Navy's standard anti-aircraft weapon during World War II. *Lexington* carried 15 Bofors 40-mm quad mounts, each with four guns. Each quad mount required a crew of 10 men to load and operate it.

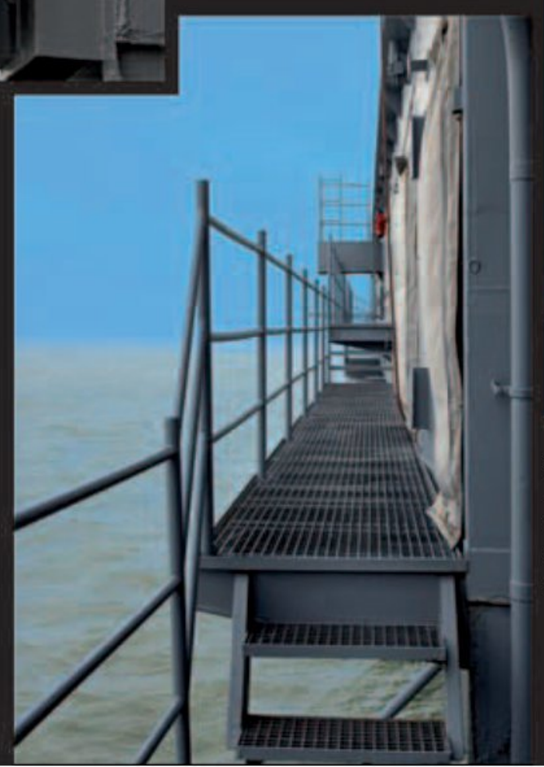
Navigation and flag bridges
The windows of the navigation bridge (where the captain commands the ship) and the flag bridge (where the admiral commands the fleet) enjoy a panoramic view over the surrounding area. Above the navigation bridge the mast bristles with radar.

Skyhawk
An A-4 Skyhawk Marine aircraft on *Lexington*'s flight deck. The Skyhawk entered service in 1956 and was the US Navy's primary light bomber during the early years of the Vietnam War.

Flight deck status lights
The carrier flight deck was an extremely busy and hazardous place to work. The flight deck status lights were used to show a clear, caution, or warning status to the flight deck personnel.

Air defense
The Mk37 Fire-Control Director, one of several air defense radar on board the carrier, could track and respond to incoming air threats.

Life-raft pods
Each of the barrel-shaped pods suspended off the starboard side of the flight deck contains a 15-man life raft. In the event of the ship sinking, hydrostatic devices inside would release the pods from their mountings and carry them to the surface, inflating the rafts.



Catwalks
Suspended walkways known as catwalks run down the sides of the deck, giving the crew a way to move around the carrier without crossing the busy and dangerous flight decks.

Warning notice
A notice on the side of the island reminds deck crews about some of the dangers of working on a busy flight deck.

BELOW DECKS

LEXINGTON HAD A complement of 2,600 officers and men, berthed in generally spartan conditions. *Lexington* represented a step forward from earlier carriers in some respects, however, notably the comfort of its pilot's briefing room. Much space below deck was devoted to the stowage of aircraft. The operation of aircraft in the confined space of a ship inevitably led to accidents, such as gruesome encounters between men and propellers.

« Bridge indicators
The bridge is fitted with a range of instruments, including this wind speed and direction indicator and the equipment for the bridge officers to talk to other areas of the ship.

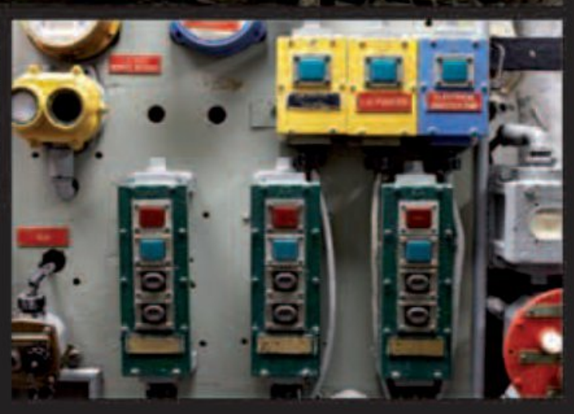
» Navigation bridge
High in the island superstructure, with slanted windows to reduce the glare, the navigation bridge was the main command center of the ship. The large device in the center of the bridge is the navigational radar monitor.

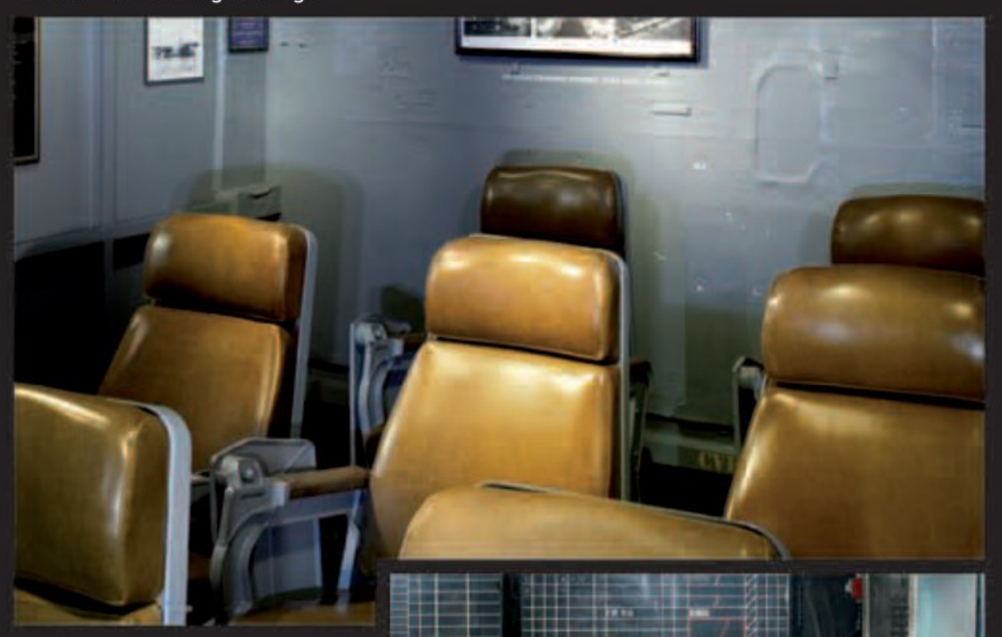
» Pilothouse
Situated behind the bridge, the pilothouse is where the ship would have been steered and its speed controlled. In the center of the room stand the engine order telegraph, helm wheel, and magnetic compass.

» Pilot's ready room
The air-conditioned ready rooms were where pilots and air crew were briefed prior to their missions. Foldaway desks allowed the airmen to make notes during briefings.

» Port engine control panel
Eight steam boilers powered the ship's four Westinghouse steam turbine engines. Control panels in each of the two engine rooms were used to control the turbine pressures and operate the engines.

» Engine control panel
Numerous dials, switches, and gauges were used to indicate the turbine pressures and operate the ship's engines.





« Hangar division doors
Heavy hangar doors divided the main hangar into bays, helping to limit the damage from fired or explosions within individual bays. Each door section weighs over eight tons.

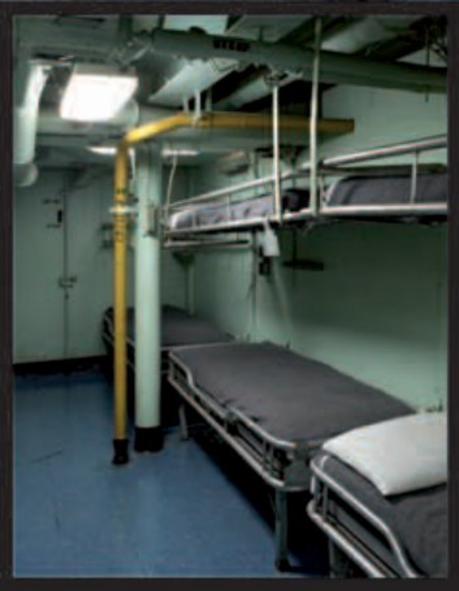
« Tow truck
With so many planes to move around the hangars, tow trucks were an indispensable piece of the ship's equipment.

» Air Operations room
Planning and coordination for flight operations took place in the Air Ops room. The plot board listed all the day's flying schedules.

Female berthing
Lexington was the first US Navy ship to have women serving on board. A sign at the entrance of the female berthing area indicates the protocol expected from male crewmen entering the women's living quarters.

Surgery room
Lexington was equipped with extensive medical facilities. As well as this operating room, the ship also had a triage emergency room, a dentist's office, a diagnostics laboratory, an X-ray room, and a prosthetics lab.

Bed pans
This set of bed pans and "piss pots" in the ship's sick bay was designed with utility in mind.



Sick bay
The sick bay was located below the hangar deck, a common site for accidents. Beds could be raised to make room for stretchers.

Admiral's quarters
The rooms reserved for the admiral, when he was on board, were comfortable but by no means lavish.

Captain's galley
There were separate galleys and messes for the enlisted men and officers. The captain had his own galley which was used to make meals for the captain and his guests.

Captain's "at sea" cabin
In addition to a well-appointed stateroom and dining area on the gallery deck, the captain also had a small "at sea cabin" nearer the bridge. The room is furnished with a small bathroom, a table and chair, and a bed with raised sides to keep the captain from rolling out during rough weather.

Soup kettles
With more than 2,000 enlisted men on board, feeding the crew was a 24-hour operation. These gigantic soup kettles, like much of the kitchen equipment, were made out of stainless steel for ease of cleaning and maintenance.

Galley ovens
The ship's ovens are much larger than normal, and there are lots of them. The size of the ship meant that feeding the crew was more like feeding a small city than a regular ship. The ovens, like the rest of the galley, were in constant use.

Crew shelter and food service area
Small shelters around the ship provided areas for the gun crews to relax while remaining close to their guns in case of emergencies. Though sparsely furnished, the rooms provided a refuge from bad weather and a place to unwind and eat in comparative safety.

THE FALKLANDS WAR

ARGENTINA LAUNCHED A MILITARY campaign to invade and occupy South Georgia and the Falkland Islands, disputed British possessions in the South Atlantic, on March 19, 1982. The British opted to retake the islands by military force, which it achieved by mid-June. The British victory was made possible by the rapid deployment of a naval task force across 8,000 miles (12,900 km) of Atlantic Ocean. The task force consisted of two small carriers, *Hermes* and *Invincible*, operating Harrier jump-jets, and ships carrying troops and equipment, screened by destroyers and frigates. A submarine force was sent to keep the Argentinian navy away from an "exclusion zone" around the islands. As the task force drew closer to the Falklands in early May, both sides suffered naval losses. The aging Argentinian cruiser *General Belgrano* was sunk by a submarine while the Royal Navy lost a destroyer to air attack from land-based aircraft. On May 21 British troops landed at San Carlos, but air attacks intensified. Argentinian forces on the Falklands surrendered on June 14, but it proved a close-run conflict. British losses were high, with 15 ships either sunk or badly damaged.

The sinking of HMS Antelope
On May 24, while on air defense duty at the entrance to San Carlos Water, the British frigate HMS *Antelope* was attacked and sunk by two Argentine A-4 Skyhawk jets.

LANDINGS AT SAN CARLOS WATER

THE FALKLANDS WAR

SAN CARLOS LANDINGS

Date May 21–25, 1982
Location San Carlos Water, off East Falkland Island
Result British victory

COMBATANTS

BRITAIN	ARGENTINA

COMMANDERS

John "Sandy" Woodward	**Ernesto Crespo, Juan Lombardo**

FORCES

Ships: c.100 vessels	**Aircraft:** c.110 attack aircraft

LOSSES

Ships: 1 destroyer, 2 frigates, 1 container ship	**Aircraft:** 103
Men: 53	**Men:** unknown

The landing of British troops on the Falklands began on May 21, initiating the most intensive phase of the air-sea conflict. The Royal Navy positioned its destroyers and frigates in Falkland Sound to intercept air attacks with their missile defenses, while the carriers *Hermes* and *Invincible*, operating far to the east for fear of Exocet missile attack, flew off Sea Harriers to provide a combat air patrol. The amphibious assault began at dawn with 4,000 men being landed by a variety of amphibious ships around San Carlos bay. Within 24 hours the beachhead had been secured and the land campaign had begun.

The naval forces, however, were still fighting for their lives. Argentinian air attacks began two hours after first light on May 21, the principal attackers being Skyhawk and Mirage fighters flying low-level bombing and strafing runs from bases on the Argentine mainland. The British ships replied with machine gun and cannon fire, as well as numerous Sea Slug, Sea Cat, and Sea Wolf missiles—although many of the missiles suffered technical failures. The County-Class destroyer *Antrim* was hit by a dud bomb that knocked out her surface-to-air missile systems; the Type 22 frigate *Brilliant* was strafed; and the Leander Class frigate *Argonaut* was crippled in the water by multiple bomb strikes. Worse still, the Type 21 frigate *Ardent* was hit by two 1,000 lb (454 kg) bombs and sank. The only compensation was that the Argentine air force had lost 16 aircraft during the first day's fighting, an unsustainable daily loss.

It was the beginning of a difficult week for the British naval forces around San Carlos Water. The frigate *Antelope* was sunk on May 24 and on May 25 the destroyer *Coventry* and frigate *Broadsword* were attacked by waves of A-4 Skyhawks in Falkland

> "I WAS TWO DECKS DOWN AND COULD SEE NO WAY OUT. THE SMOKE WAS SUFFOCATING AND THE DOORS WERE BLOCKED BY FIRE. I WAS CALM AND PREPARED TO DIE."
>
> **CAPTAIN DAVID HART DYKE**, DESCRIBING THE SINKING OF THE HMS *COVENTRY* ON MAY 25, 1982

1932–PRESENT

JOHN "SANDY" WOODWARD

SENIOR COMMANDER OF THE SOUTH ATLANTIC TASK FORCE

After joining the Royal Navy at the age of just 13, John "Sandy" Woodward spent most of his early career on submarines, where he gained his first command, the submarine *Warspite*, in 1969. Promoted to rear admiral in 1981, the following year he was given command of the British Task Force sent to the Falklands. Woodward received a knighthood for his service during the war, finishing his career as a full admiral.

Sound. *Broadsword* was hit by a bomb that failed to explode; *Coventry* was not so lucky. The destroyer was hit by three bombs, two of which exploded. The operations room was devastated, killing or injuring most senior officers. Another victim was the transport ship *Atlantic Conveyor,* sunk by an Exocet missile that ironically had been diverted from its original warship target by the successful use of chaff.

Nonetheless, May 25 proved to be something of a turning point for the British ships around the Falklands. With the Argentine air force unable to sustain its daily losses, British forces were able to establish a degree of air superiority over San Carlos Water. The Harrier jets performed outstandingly, shooting down 32 aircraft for the loss of five of their own—none in air-to-air combat. Thereafter the Argentine air force was able to make only brief assaults, though it would claim many more British lives during the attack on the landing ship *Sir Galahad* at Port Fitzroy on June 8.

THE FALKLANDS WAR

SINKING OF THE BELGRANO

Date May 2, 1982
Forces British: 1 submarine; Argentine: 1 cruiser
Losses British: none; Argentine: 1 cruiser

Location South of Falkland Islands, South Atlantic

The sinking of the Argentine cruiser *General Belgrano* remains one of the most controversial incidents of the Falklands War. By April 30, when the *Belgrano*'s presence was first registered by British surveillance, the Royal Navy had established a circular exclusion zone around the Falkland Islands with a radius of 230 miles (370 km). The *Belgrano*, accompanied by two Argentine destroyers, was actually 40 miles (64 km) outside this exclusion zone and might therefore have been considered safe from attack. The British authorities, however, decided that the *Belgrano* did pose a serious threat to the British Task Force. It was directing aircraft attack missions and carried a powerful array of long-range and anti-aircraft guns. On May 2 the order came from London that the *Belgrano* was to be sunk. The tool for this job was the nuclear-powered submarine *Conqueror*, which had been shadowing the enemy cruiser since April 30. When she received the order to attack, *Conqueror* closed to firing range at 3:57 p.m. on May 2, firing three Mark 8 mod 4 torpedoes. These were old, unguided weapons compared to the modern Tigerfish homing torpedoes the *Conquerer* also had on board at the time, but there were some concerns about the Tigerfish's reliability. Two of the torpedoes, each carrying 800 lb (364 kg) of Torpex explosive, hit the cruiser and detonated, ripping open her hull and killing around 275 men. Within 20 minutes the *Belgrano*'s crew were abandoning ship; many men would float in the South Atlantic for several days, some surviving, some not. In total 321 men out of the *Belgrano*'s crew of 1,000 died in the attack.

Mark 8 torpedo
Despite carrying modern Mark 24 Tigerfish torpedoes, HMS *Conqueror* opted to use the much older but more reliable Mark 8 torpedo to attack the ARA *Belgrano*.

Silent hunter
HMS *Conqueror* is the only nuclear-powered submarine to have sunk an enemy ship using torpedoes, and one of only two to have sunk an enemy warship since World War II.

THE FALKLANDS WAR

SINKING OF THE SHEFFIELD

Date May 4–10, 1982
Forces English: 1 destroyer; Argentine: 2 aircraft
Losses English: 1 destroyer; Argentine: none

Location Off Port Stanley, Falkland Islands

On May 4, the British Type 42 guided-missile destroyer HMS *Sheffield* was on defensive station off the Falkland Islands when her aging radar systems picked up what appeared to be inbound missiles, although no launch aircraft were detected. Two Exocet anti-ship missiles had however been launched by Argentine Super Etendard aircraft, and only a few seconds after their detection, one of the missiles struck the HMS *Sheffield* amidships. The missile started a raging fire that could not be extinguished because of the destruction of many of the ship's fire-control systems in the initial impact. Eventually the captain gave the order for the ship to be abandoned—21 men had been killed. The stricken ship was towed out to sea and scuttled on May 10. The sinking of the *Sheffield* was the first major loss for the British Task Force around the Falklands—and the first Royal Navy vessel to be sunk in battle for almost 40 years.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

MODERN AIR DEFENSE SYSTEMS

Hostile aircraft armed with anti-ship missiles are one of the most potent threats to modern warships. As a response, navies tend to use three levels of onboard air defense technology. First are the electronic countermeasures (ECM) suites dedicated to jamming missile homing systems, or the radar systems of the attack aircraft themselves. ECM might include chaff and radar-jamming equipment, but these pose no real danger to the aircraft itself. The second level is more aggressive, and consists of automated missile or gun defense systems. These are linked to fire-control systems that can automatically acquire the targets and fire either a guided missile or, in the case of gun systems like the US Phalanx, deliver hails of radar-aimed cannon or machine-gun fire. The final, and most basic, level of air defense is provided by optically aimed machine guns and cannon. Even the most modern vessels often have pintle mounts for machine-guns dotted around the ship's rails, and these can provide a last-ditch method of air defense.

Phalanx anti-missile system
The US Navy's Phalanx close-in weapon system (CIWS) uses an automated radar and fire-control system to track incoming anti-ship missiles and destroy them with its M61 Vulcan cannon.

REGIONAL CONFLICTS

ALTHOUGH MOST CONFLICTS since 1945 have been largely restricted to land warfare, the "war in peace" has nonetheless featured some major regional naval engagements. Significant naval actions occured, for example, around the troubled Middle Eastern region during the Arab-Israeli wars of the 1960s and 70s, and in the waters around the Indian subcontinent during the later decade. The navies involved in these engagements have not been the world's largest by any means, but in many cases they were pioneers in testing out modern ship-versus-ship weapon systems and electronic countermeasures in actual combat situations. In this capacity they often had a formative role in the development of naval weaponry by the major Western and Soviet bloc powers. The diversity of postwar regional naval engagements has also been impressive, and has ranged from gunboat missile actions through to well-organized suicide bombings and carrier aircraft attacks. Sheer cost has limited the capacity of many regional powers to maintain navies in recent years, but investment in modern weapons technology has enabled them to remain a potent threat to far larger forces.

ARAB-ISRAELI WARS

SINKING OF THE EILAT

Date October 21, 1967
Forces Israelis: 1 destroyer; Egyptians: 2 missile boats
Losses Israelis: 1 destroyer; Egyptians: none

Location Off Egyptian coastline, near Port Said

Prior to her sale to Israel in 1955, the *Eilat* had seen service in World War II as the British Z-Class destroyer HMS *Zealous*. Renamed *Eilat*, she enjoyed a long operational record, including the sinking of two Egyptian vessels.

On October 21, 1967, the *Eilat* was on a routine patrol of the Sinai coastline, which took her some 15 miles (25 km) from the Egyptian city of Port Said, when she suddenly came under attack from an Egyptian Komar-class missile boat. The boat fired a Russian-built SS-N-2 Styx anti-ship missile that struck the *Eilat*, destroying her communications and powerplant. The *Eilat* was attacked again 90 minutes later, receiving another missile strike that caused her magazine to detonate. The crew abandoned ship, but many were wounded in the water when one of the ship's depth charges exploded. A total of 47 Israeli sailors were killed.

The *Eilat* was the first ship to be sunk in battle by a ship-launched anti-ship missile. It was a huge blow to the Israeli navy and led to a major review of Israeli naval strategy. The resulting focus on fast, missile-armed boats and missile countermeasures would reap major benefits for the Israeli navy six years later at Latakia.

Styx anti-ship missile
A fast missile boat launches a Soviet SS-N-2 Styx missile of the type that sunk the Israeli destroyer INS *Eilat*.

THE BATTLE OF LATAKIA

The battle of Latakia was a milestone in postwar naval engagements—never before had anti-ship missiles and missile-jamming technology been pitted against one another in open combat. The context of the battle was the opening actions of the 1973 Yom Kippur War.

On October 6, Egyptian forces launched a surprise eastward thrust across the Suez Canal against Israeli forces in the Sinai. Syria made a simultaneous attack from the north across the Golan Heights. In an attempt to check the potential threat to Israeli ships from Syrian missile boats, Israeli commanders decided to mount a preemptive naval strike, sending six Saar-class corvettes to draw the Syrian missile boats out of their harbor at Latakia and destroy them. The Syrian vessels posed a realistic threat to Israeli shipping. They were armed with the same SS-N-2 Styx anti-ship missiles that had sunk the Israeli destroyer *Eilat* in 1967. The Israeli warships were also armed with anti-ship missiles, but since the Israeli Gabriel—which had yet to be used in battle—had only half the range of the Styx, the crews would have to rely on newly developed, and still unproven, electronic countermeasures (ECM). These consisted of two principal elements: chaff dispensers to fill the air with metallic strips, clouding the incoming missile's target picture; and jamming systems designed to confuse the missile's tracking system. At Latakia both systems would be tested for the first time against real threats.

Israeli missile boat
A group of Saar 4-class Israeli missile boats of the type used at Latakia. The side of one of the Gabriel missile launchers is just visible at the stern.

MISSILE DUEL

Contact was made quickly as the six Israeli missile boats approached Latakia. An offshore Syrian P-4 torpedo boat was picked up on radar, and the Israeli corvette *Hanit* moved to engage her, sinking the boat with long-range gunfire. Assuming that the Syrian torpedo boat had reported their presence off Latakia, the Israeli boats waited for new threats to emerge. The radar soon threw up another contact, a Syrian T-43 minesweeper to the northeast. This time *Reshef* peeled off to deal with her, hitting the ship with a Gabriel missile at a range of 11 miles (18 km). *Reshef* rejoined the main group, now coming within Styx missile range of Latakia.

At this point the Syrians responded in earnest. Three Syrian missile boats

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

ANTI-SHIP MISSILES AND MISSILE DEFENSE

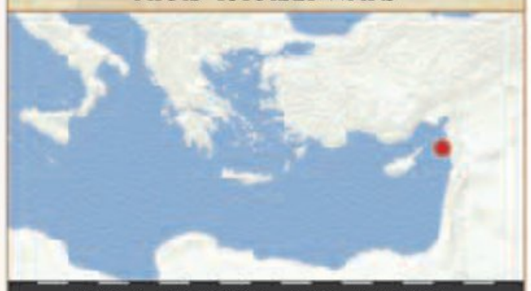
Although anti-ship missiles were trialed to some degree during World War II, it was only during the late 1950s and 1960s that they began to challenge gunnery as the primary weapon of combat vessels. Pioneering missiles such as the SS-N-2 Styx proved their worth in action, most notably sinking the Israeli destroyer *Eilat* in 1967, and inspired the US Navy to develop its own Harpoon missile during the 1970s. By the 1980s all major world navies had equipped themselves with ship-launched missile systems plus, in many cases, electronic countermeasures (ECM) to combat enemy missile threats. Among the more effective anti-ship missiles developed in the 1980s, the Exocet gained particular notoriety in its air-launched form during the Falklands War. Most such missiles use active radar or infrared homing systems, and some of the longer-range examples can hit targets well over 62 miles (100 km) away. Even terrorist units have used missiles against ships—in 2006 a Hezbollah unit hit and damaged an Israeli corvette with a Chinese-made C-802 missile.

Sea Sparrow
Fitted on board many US and NATO warships, the RIM-7 Sea Sparrow is a lightweight, radar-guided missile system used to provide point defense against air attack, incoming missiles, or small surface craft.

Excocet MM38 ship-launched missile
The French-built Exocet missile is designed to target large warships—the Type-42 destroyer HMS *Sheffield* was sunk by an Exocet during the Falklands War.

(two Komar class and one Osa class) moved out from harbor and fired their Styx missiles, well beyond the range of the Gabriels. As the missiles approached the Israelis deployed their jamming systems and chaff—both worked, and the missiles splashed harmlessly into the sea. The Israelis now closed to range, and a missile exchange ensued in which all three Syrian boats were destroyed.

ARAB-ISRAELI WARS



THE BATTLE OF LATAKIA

Date	October 7, 1973
Location	Off the port of Latakia, Syria
Result	Israeli victory

COMBATANTS

ISRAEL	SYRIA

COMMANDERS

Benjamin Telem	Fuad Abu Zikry

FORCES

Ships: 6 missile boats	**Ships:** 3 missile boats, 1 torpedo boat, 1 minesweeper

LOSSES

Men: none **Ships:** none	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** 3 missile boats, 1 torpedo boat, 1 minesweeper

INDO-PAKISTAN WAR

1971 INDO-PAKISTAN WAR

Date December 3–16, 1971
Forces Indians: c.100 ships; Pakistanis: c.40 ships
Losses Indians: 1 frigate; Pakistanis: 1 destroyer, 1 minesweeper, 1 submarine, 4 patrol boats

Location Off coast of East Pakistan and Karachi

The two week-war between India and Pakistan over the separatist movement that led to the creation of Bangladesh, featured some of the largest naval engagements seen in Asia since World War II. The priority for the Indian navy was to stop the flow of supplies between East and West Pakistan. The Indian aircraft carrier *Vikrant* was dispatched to blockade the port of Chittagong in East Pakistan, its Sea Hawk aircraft seriously damaging the harbor facilities. The Pakistani submarine *Ghazi*, sent to oppose the *Vikrant*, was sunk, possibly by Indian depth charges. On December 3, India launched a night-time attack on Karachi harbor in West Pakistan, sinking a destroyer and crippling several other vessels.

The short conflict confirmed the superiority of the Indian navy. India lost only one major vessel, the former British frigate *Khukri*, torpedoed by a Pakistani submarine, and largely achieved its goal of a naval blockade.

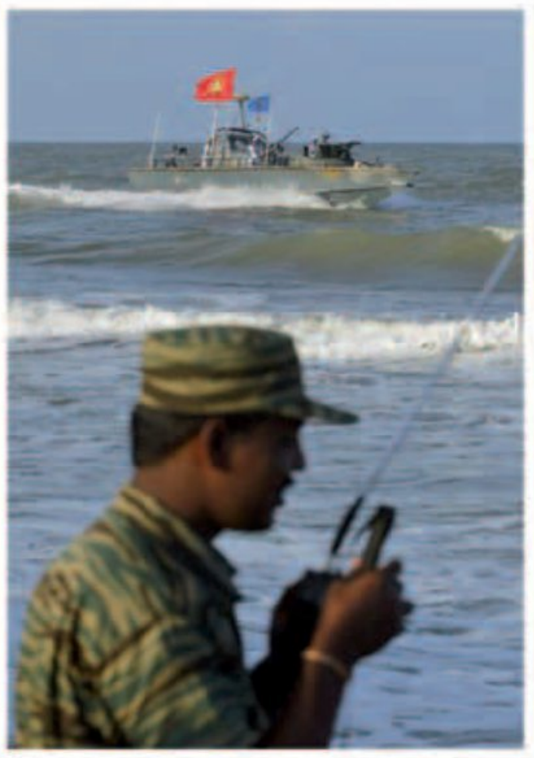
SRI LANKAN CIVIL WAR

SRI LANKA AND THE SEA TIGERS

Date 1984–present
Forces Sri Lankans: c.50 combat, support, and patrol vessels in 2008; Sea Tigers: unknown
Losses Sri Lankans: 30 gunboats, 1 freighter; Sea Tigers: unknown

Location Off coast of Sri Lanka

The Sea Tigers are the naval element of the Liberation Tigers of Tamil Elam, or Tamil Tigers, an insurgency force conducting a longstanding war aimed at creating a separatist Tamil state in northern Sri Lanka. The naval force was founded in the mid-1980s, and went on to specialize in speedboat suicide attacks, fast patrol boat assaults, and small-scale amphibious landings. In these tactics they have been notably successful—at the time of writing the Sea Tigers have sunk over 30 Sri Lankan gunboats and one freighter. They have also proved elusive opponents—following an operation, the small craft are generally brought ashore and hidden in the jungle on trailers. They have experienced setbacks, however. In one engagement on October 20, 2006, the Sri Lankan navy destroyed nine rebel boats and reportedly killed over 170 Tamil Tiger insurgents. The Sea Tigers have an advanced structure and logistical network. Freighters are used to bring in supplies, which are transferred to shore in the fast patrol boats. They also have their own version of Special Forces—frogmen using rebreather apparatus have made attacks on shipping, in one case sinking a freighter at the Kankesanturai naval base. With these capabilities, the Sea Tigers are likely to be a thorn in the side of the Sri Lankan navy for years to come.



Sea Tiger suicide vessel
Sea Tiger suicide soldiers—known as Black Tigers—ride a patrol boat through shallow waters near the rebel-controlled town of Mullathivu in 2005.

MIDDLE EAST AND TERRORISM

SINCE THE END of World War II the Middle East has been both a flashpoint for conventional conflicts and a breeding ground for terrorism. Much of the impulse for this has derived from the particular political and historical conditions in the region—questions of land, oil, nationhood, and religion. The other great catalyst for war has been the relations between Iraq and the wider world. The Iran-Iraq War led to around one million deaths in the 1980s, and generated many of the political conditions that led to the Gulf War of 1990–91. Following the terrorist attacks on New York in September 2001 and the subsequent US-led "War on Terror," tensions in the Middle East remained high. The invasion of Taliban-controlled Afghanistan and the ongoing conflict in Iraq mean that foreign troops continue to be deployed throughout the region. In all these conflicts, the waters of the Gulf have been a critical battle zone. Controlling the shipping lanes through this vital oil-producing region remains essential, hence the United States Navy still maintains a forceful presence in the region, guarding against terrorist and conventional foe alike.

OPERATION PRAYING MANTIS

PRAYING MANTIS

Date April 18, 1988
Forces Americans: 10 ships; Iranians: 13 ships
Losses Americans: 1 helicopter; Iranians: 3 speedboats, 1 frigate, 2 oil platforms damaged

Location
Persian Gulf

On April 14, 1988, the US Perry class frigate *Samuel B. Roberts* was patrolling the Gulf waters off Qatar when it spotted three naval mines in the water. In its attempt to evade the devices the ship hit a fourth mine that detonated, injuring 10 and blowing open the side of the hull. The mines were identified from their serial numbers as Iranian. With the United States committed to keeping the Gulf navigable for Kuwaiti oil tankers, a strong US reaction was inevitable.

US RETALIATION

The American response was codenamed Operation Praying Mantis. Commanded by Rear-Admiral Anthony A. Less, Praying Mantis had as its main objective the destruction of Iranian oil platforms in the Gulf by amphibiously deployed US Marine and SEAL units. As a by-product, it was hoped that this would draw Iranian warships into the Gulf waters, where they could be destroyed by the US surface vessels plus carrier aircraft flying from the *Enterprise*.

The attack was launched on April 18 when two units of destroyers, frigates, and amphibious ships assaulted the Sassan and Sirri oil platforms. Resistance was first crushed by naval gunfire, then Marines were dropped by helicopter onto the platforms, where they placed demolition charges and left.

Sassan oil platform
US Marines inspect an anti-aircraft gun on one of the two Iranian oil platforms destroyed during Operation Praying Mantis.

The Iranian navy responded in force. It sent out a group of armed Boghammar speedboats, though three of these were quickly sunk by bombing runs from US A-6E Intruder aircraft. A Kaman-class fast attack craft was similarly despatched by Harpoon missiles and naval gunfire. Two Iranian F-4 fighters made a run at the guided-missile cruiser *Wainwright*, but were scared off when *Wainwright* replied with Standard surface-to-air missiles. The Iranians now committed their most significant naval vessels—the frigates *Sahand* and *Sabalan*. *Sahand* went first, but was intercepted by aircraft and destroyed by three Harpoon missiles and four laser-guided bombs. The *Sabalan* was crippled by a single bomb dropped down its funnel; the US aircraft and ships then left it dead in the water.

Operation Praying Mantis, the largest US military engagement since the end of World War II, dealt a major blow to the Iranian navy and to Iranian pride. US losses amounted to two men killed in a helicopter crash, an unusually light toll for such a high-risk mission.

WITNESS TO WAR

COMMANDER BUD LANGSTON

A-6 INTRUDER PILOT DURING THE ATTACK ON IRANIAN FRIGATE SABALAN

OPERATION PRAYING MANTIS

"My bombardier-navigator was looking at this (Iranian ship) on our ***forward looking infrared*** *and it certainly matched the silhouette that we're looking for. So we made a* ***high speed dive right down*** *to on top of the water a couple miles behind the ship and as we approached* ***the ship opened fire on us and that gave a pretty good idea it wasn't a friendly*** *… she clearly had the number of the Sabalan and tracers were going over the canopy from its* ***anti-aircraft guns and shoulder fired weapons*** *and rounds were going off all around the canopy."*

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

MARK 45 GUN

Although naval cannon have been largely superceded by guided missiles as the primary anti-ship and anti-aircraft defense on modern warships, the fully-automated Mark 45 proves that there is still a role for a fast and accurate lightweight naval gun. First developed in the 1960s by BAE Systems, the 5-in Mark 45 has gone on to become the principal lightweight naval gun of the US Navy and several other navies worldwide. Aboard US ships the Mark 45 is controlled by the Mark 86 Gun Fire Control System or the Mark 160 Gun Computing System, both of which give rapid automated target acquisition and fire control. The gun is fed by an automatic loading system that can fuel automatic rates of fire of up to 20 rounds per minute, and the gun can engage naval, land, or even (with air burst shells) aerial targets. Although most Mark 45s have a range of about 15 miles (24 km), the latest Mod 4 version has a greater velocity and, with advanced rocket-assisted, satellite-guided ammunition, a range of up to 71 miles (115 km). The qualities of the Mark 45 will doubtless keep it in service for many more years to come.

Lightweight naval artillery
The guided-missile destroyer USS *Forrest Sherman* fires a rocket-assisted 5-in shell from her Mk-45 Mod-4 gun during exercises in the Atlantic.

Shore bombardment
The USS *Wisconsin* fires one of her nine 16-in guns at an Iraqi shore target during Operation Desert Storm.

THE FIRST GULF WAR

The Gulf War of 1990–91 was a massive naval operation as well as a major air and land campaign. At the time of Saddam Hussein's invasion of Kuwait on August 2, 1990, the US Navy, Royal Navy, Saudi Arabia, and others already had significant naval assets on station. Once Operation Desert Shield—the Coalition operation for the protection of Saudi Arabia—was implemented, the naval presence expanded enormously.

The US had to provide naval logistics for a swelling land army—during the first six months of Desert Shield sealift accounted for over 2 million tons of supplies shipped ashore. Two carrier battlegroups (centered on *Eisenhower* and *Independence*) were on station by August 8, providing huge offshore air capability. Four more carrier battlegroups and several surface warfare battlegroups would soon join them, including two battleships (*Wisconsin* and *Missouri*). The Coalition also enforced a naval embargo, resulting in hundreds of stop-and-search operations in Gulf waters: by January 1991 the US Navy had conducted 6,221 challenges and 749 boardings.

> "YOU'D FLY ALONG THE ROAD, LOOKING FOR SOMETHING. IT WAS UNBELIEVABLE, THE NUMBER OF TARGETS AVAILABLE."
>
> **CAPTAIN ANDREW HALL**, MARINE AV-8B HARRIER PILOT DURING FIRST GULF WAR

On January 17, 1991, Desert Shield turned into Operation Desert Storm, and the shooting war began with a heavy, prolonged air attack on Iraq's forces and infrastructure. Desert Storm opened with naval vessels launching Tomahawk cruise missiles at key targets throughout Iraq, destroying much of Saddam's command-and-control structure. The carrier groups in the Gulf and Red Sea then contributed naval and Marine air assets to the Coalition air campaign, destroying vast amounts of Iraqi military material and killing many thousands of Iraqi troops. Navy E6-AB Prowler ECM aircraft also played a critical role in jamming Iraqi air defenses to open a door for strike aircraft attacks. In total, US Navy and Marine Corps pilots flew some 30,000 sorties from the US carriers during the war.

DENOUEMENT

Out at sea there were skirmishes with Iraqi craft. Lynx helicopters from Royal Navy vessels destroyed 15 Iraqi vessels, including minesweepers and patrol boats, using anti-ship missiles. US vessels wrecked Iraqi positions atop several oil platforms, while naval aircraft took out Iraqi minelayers. When the land offensive opened, not only did Coalition marine forces take leading roles, but US naval units conducted simulated amphibious landings off the Kuwaiti coast to hold the attention of Iraqi coastal troops, who were actually being outflanked from behind. The US battleships delivered huge offshore bombardments. By February 27, offensive operations had effectively ceased and Kuwait was back in Kuwaiti hands.

FIRST GULF WAR

THE FIRST GULF WAR

Date	August 2, 1990–April 11, 1991
Location	The Gulf, Red Sea, Kuwait, and Iraq
Result	Coalition victory

COMBATANTS

US-LED COALITION	IRAQ

COMMANDERS

Stanley R. Arthur **Norman Schwartzkopf**	**Saddam Hussein**

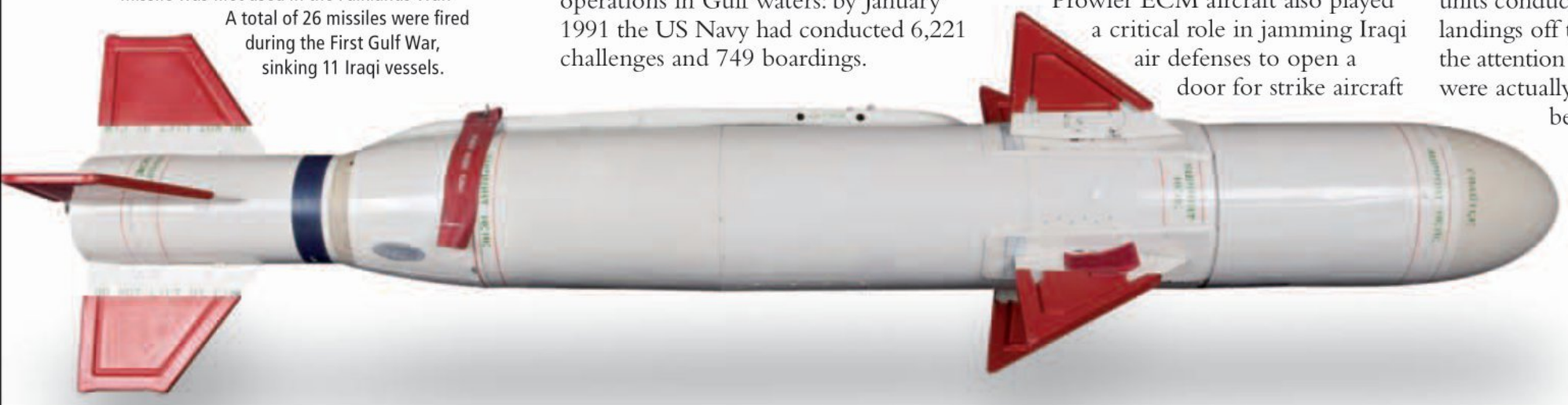
FORCES

Ships: c.150 combat and logistical ships, including 6 US carrier battlegroups	**Ships:** c.80 military vessels, mostly gunboats and missile boats

LOSSES

Men: 64 US Marines and US Navy personnel **Ships:** none	**Men:** unknown **Ships:** unknown

Sea Skua anti-ship missile
The British Sea Skua radar-guided anti-ship missile was first used in the Falklands War. A total of 26 missiles were fired during the First Gulf War, sinking 11 Iraqi vessels.



ATTACK ON USS COLE

ATTACK ON THE USS COLE

Date October 12, 2000
Forces Americans: 1 destroyer; terrorists: 1 suicide boat
Losses Americans: 1 destroyer damaged; terrorists: 1 suicide boat sunk

Location Port of Aden, Yemen

On October 12, 2000, the Arleigh Burke-class guided-missile destroyer USS *Cole* made a routine refueling stop in Aden Harbor, Yemen. The *Cole* was a very new addition to the US Navy arsenal. She had been launched in 1996 and was equipped with the latest Aegis integrated guided weapons system. The Middle East was a potentially dangerous part of the world for the ship and its crew, but Aden was classed as a relatively safe harbor. The ship had been refuelling for some 50 minutes when, at 11:18 a.m., a speedboat made an approach to the port side of the destroyer, piloted by two men. The vessel seemed to present no threat; indeed, many of the US sailors thought that it was the local garbage collection boat. Yet on board the speedboat was a large quantity of explosives, which the suicide bombers then detonated against the side of the ship.

Waterline blast
A gaping 35 ft (10.6 m) hole mars the side of USS *Cole*. The ship was carried back to the US for repairs aboard a heavy transport ship.

The explosion ripped open the port side of the *Cole*; its force was directed into the galley area, where many men where lining up to eat, killing 17 and injuring another 39.

AFTERMATH

Although the keel of the vessel was not significantly damaged, water poured into the ship through the open hull, and it took the whole day to bring the flooding under control. The first naval assistance to the *Cole* came in from the Royal Navy Type-23 frigate HMS *Marlborough*, which was sailing through the Gulf and diverted to provide medical and engineering aid. A force of US Marines arrived shortly afterward to provide additional security.

The bombing was planned by the Al-Qaeda terrorist group and carried out by operatives most likely acting with the support of Sudanese officials. The US Navy subsequently changed its rules of engagement—which had prevented the ship's guards firing on the approaching boat—to protect US vessels from similar attacks. Nonetheless, the bombing was a grim reminder of the vulnerability of modern warships, however well defended against conventional attack, to small vessels posing as non-combatants.

USS Cole limps home
The damaged destroyer is towed out of Aden by a Military Sealift Command tug before returning to the United States for repairs lasting 14 months.

"WAR ON TERROR"

INVASION OF AFGHANISTAN

Date 2001–
Forces Coalition forces: unknown; Afghans: none
Losses Coalition forces: none; Afghans: none

Location Persian Gulf and Afghanistan

The invasion of Afghanistan by US, UK, and Coalition forces in 2001—named Operation Enduring Freedom—presented significant problems in terms of air support. Afghanistan is a land-locked country with no substantial infrastructure, hence there was little in the way of Forward Operating Bases (FOBs) for Allied aircraft. For much of the early part of the campaign, therefore, air support was almost exclusively provided by US Navy and Marine Corps aviation operating from carrier battle groups in the Gulf. The attack sorties ran in over Pakistan (Iran was, and remains, prohibited airspace) to bomb enemy bunkers and positions, the great distance to the inland target leaving scant time for loitering over the target. Only once the US Air Force began deploying heavy bombers to Diego Garcia, a British overseas territory in the Indian Ocean, did responsibility for the attacks become shared. Today the US Marine Corps (USMC) deploys aviation combat elements to support its ground forces on operations, deploying from FOBs established since the invasion.

US Marine and Navy aircraft were also integral to the invasion itself. The Marine Corps force that established the first strategic base in Afghanistan, for example, deployed Marine helicopters from the amphibious assault ships *Peleliu* and *Boxer*. The US Navy and USMC continue to provide support operations to ground troops, particularly as the US Marine Corps has been so heavily in demand for the ground fighting.

9-11 Let's Roll
Crew members assemble on the deck of amphibious assault ship USS *Belleau Wood* to remember the September 2001 terrorist attacks on New York, the catalyst for the invasion of Afghanistan.

"WAR ON TERROR'

INVASION OF IRAQ

Date March 20–April 11, 2003
Forces Americans: 115 ships; British: 22 ships; Iraqis: unknown
Losses Coalition forces: unknown; Iraqis: unknown

Location Persian Gulf, Red Sea, and Iraq

In many ways the invasion of Iraq in 2003 was very different than the war conducted against Saddam Hussein's forces in 1991. Instead of repeating the first Gulf War's prolonged air campaign as preparation for the ground assault, the second war against Iraq saw a near simultaneous launch of air and ground assets, with land forces making a direct, fast strike toward the Iraqi capital Baghdad. Nonetheless, as with the 1991 conflict, it was the US Navy that fired the opening shots.

At 5:15 a.m. on March 20, 2003, the Ticonderoga-class destroyer USS *Bunker Hill* fired the first of many US Navy Tomahawk missiles targeted at command-and-control centers and political targets deep in Iraq. Shortly afterward, US and UK ground forces attacked Iraq from across the Kuwaiti border. The US forces, with a large Marine Corps spearhead, would strike up to Baghdad, while British troops took responsibility for securing Basra, Iraq's second city.

SHOCK AND AWE

The order of battle of the coalition's naval contingent was formidable. The US Navy element alone (by far the biggest portion) ran to 115 ships, including five carrier battle groups centered around the carriers *Kitty Hawk*, *Constellation*, *Theodore Roosevelt*, *Abraham Lincoln,* and *Harry S. Truman*. The aviation striking power of these carrier groups was truly enormous, and F-18 Hornets, F-14 Tomcats, and US Marine Corps AV-8B Harriers provided close-air support for the advancing troops. The *Constellation* carrier group alone flew more than 1,500 sorties during Operation Iraqi Freedom – as the US operations were codenamed – during which it dropped more than 1 million lb (450,000 kg) of ordnance. Tomahawk-armed destroyers within the group (including *Bunker Hill*) fired a total of 408 cruise missiles.

SUPPORT MISSIONS

Allied warships also provided offshore gunnery platforms for missions on land. For example, the Royal Navy warships HMS *Richmond*, *Marlborough*, and *Chatham,* and HMAS *Anzac* delivered bombardments in support of British Royal Marine and USMC assaults on the Al-Faw peninsula, a critical southern action that included the capture of Umm Qasr, the only deep-water port in Iraq.

Baghdad was finally secured in the first week of April 2003, after what appeared to be a vigorously successful operation. The post-invasion conflict, however, far exceeded the worst expectations in terms of fighting, and US Marine and Navy air assets remain on call to deliver strikes in support of counter-insurgency operations.

US Carrier Strike Group
Nuclear-powered supercarrier *George Washington* is accompanied by ships from her strike group during their deployment in the Gulf in support of Operation Iraqi Freedom in June 2004.

WEAPONS AND TECHNOLOGY

SHIP-LAUNCHED CRUISE MISSILES

The development of cruise missiles that track to a target in a sustained, guided flight pattern began during World War II on both sides of the Allied-Axis divide, but was refined to operational level during the postwar period. The Regulus was the first US ship-launched version. It had a range of 575 miles (926 km) and could be launched from both submarines and surface vessels. Regulus was deployed between 1955 and 1964. In the 1970s and 80s the world caught up with US advances and a wide range of ship-launched cruise missiles emerged in other world navies, such as the SS-N-12 (USSR) and the HY-2 Haiyang (China). The most famous of all the cruise missiles, however, remains the Tomahawk, used to powerful effect during both the 1991 and 2003 Persian Gulf Wars. Based on this success, new generations of long-range cruise missiles have recently entered service with many navies, including Pakistan, India, France, and Russia.

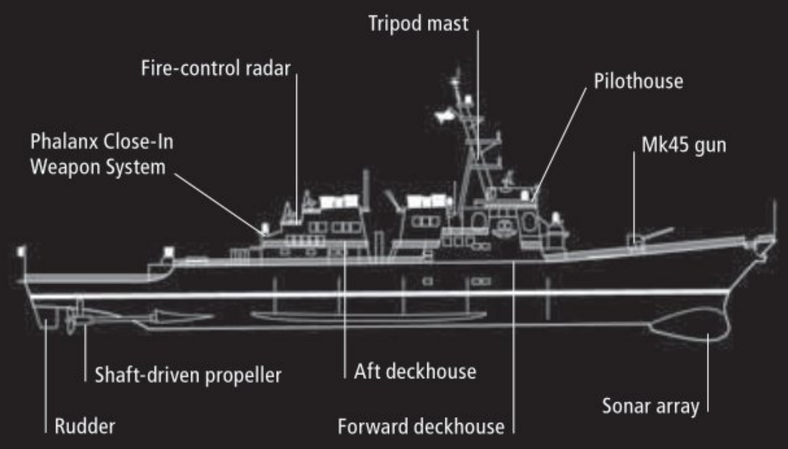
Tomahawk cruise missile
A subsonic Tomahawk missile is fired from an armored box launcher during Operation Desert Storm.

Regulus cruise missile
The turbojet-powered supersonic Regulus was the US Navy's main strategic nuclear deterrent during the early days of the Cold War.

USS DONALD COOK

THE ARLEIGH BURKE-CLASS guided-missile destroyer *Donald Cook*, named for a Marine hero of the Vietnam War, was launched in 1997. Deployed in Operation Iraqi Freedom in March 2003 as part of the Battle Group led by the carrier *Harry S Truman*, she was among the first ships to launch Tomahawk cruise missiles against targets in Iraq.

THE FIRST ARLEIGH BURKE-CLASS destroyer was commissioned in 1991. *Donald Cook* belongs to Flight II, incorporating significant advances in armament and electronics. The ship is packed with diverse weaponry, giving her what the US Navy calls "multi-mission offensive and defensive capabilities." The Mk41 vertical launch system fires anti-aircraft missiles, anti-submarine missiles, missiles for destroying other surface ships, and cruise missiles for strike operations against land targets. The destroyer does not have the covered helicopter hangar fitted to later ships in the class, but a launch-pad allows an attack helicopter to be embarked. Survivability is a key concept in the destroyer's design and equipment. The Arleigh Burke-class were among the first ships to incorporate elements of "stealth" technology, with buried funnels and rounded shapes to reduce the ship's radar profile, as well as features to suppress infrared emissions. They were also the first American all-steel warships. Replacing the aluminum superstructure with steel was meant to reduce damage in case of a missile hit. The destroyer has a crew of 30 officers and more than 300 enlisted personnel.



USS Donald Cook
Donald Cook is the 25th Arleigh Burke-class guided-missile destroyer to be built for the US Navy. Despite being classed as a destroyer, *Donald Cook* is over 150m (500ft) in length and displaces 8,400 tons when full, making her similar in size to many World War II cruisers.

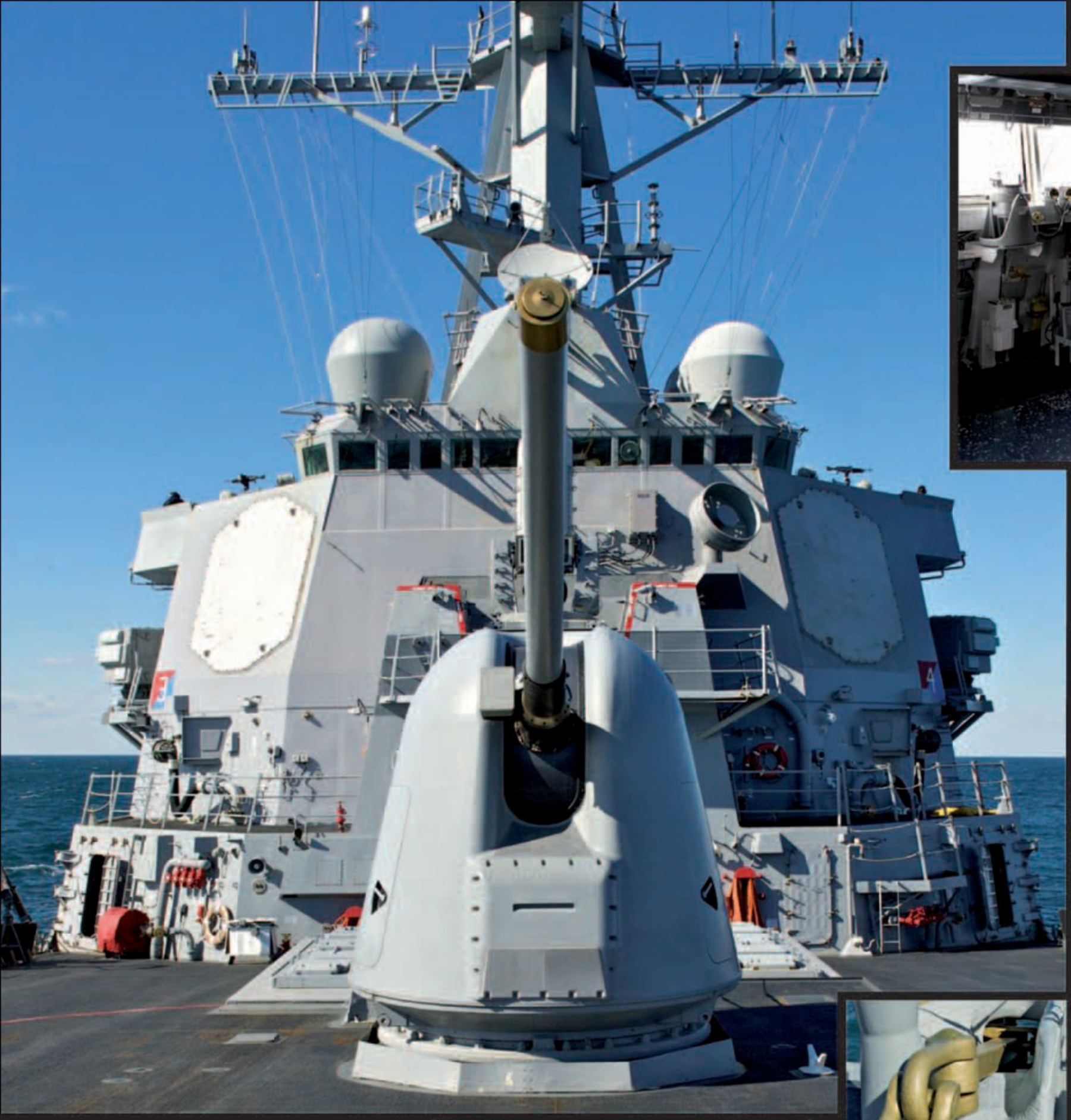
Stealth warship
The USS *Donald Cook* and her fellow Arleigh Burke-class destroyers are among the most advanced surface combatants in service today.

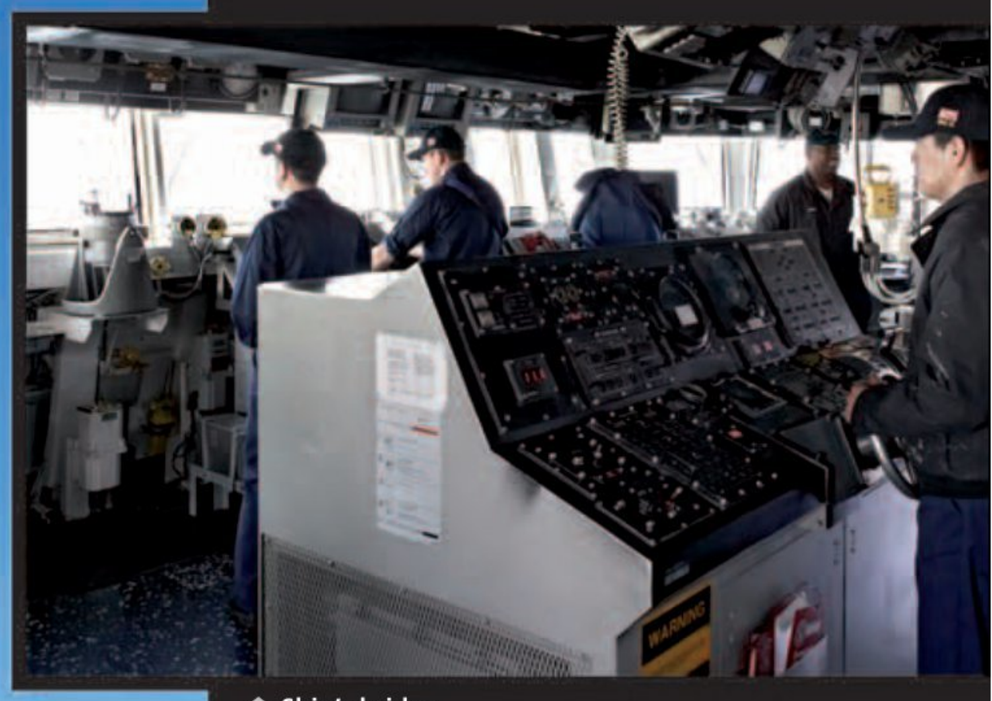
> "THESE DESTROYERS ... ARE A SPECIAL CLASS OF SHIPS, THE CLASS OF ARLEIGH BURKE. ADMIRAL BURKE WAS THE INSPIRATION FOR THESE SHIPS. THEY WERE MEANT TO BE FEARED AND FAST, THE VERY ATTRIBUTES THAT EARNED THEIR NAMESAKE THE NICKNAME "31-KNOT BURKE."
>
> **PRESIDENT BILL CLINTON**, SPEECH AT THE FUNERAL SERVICE OF ADMIRAL ARLEIGH BURKE, 1996

» Landing indicator lights
A system of lights helps to guide the helicopter in to land. A green light indicates a good approach, amber caution, and red that the helicopter is too low. Two flashing red lights tell the pilot to abort.

» Helicopter landing-pad
Donald Cook can embark and refuel an SH-60 Seahawk helicopter, providing search and attack capabilities as well as an effective way to move cargo and personnel.

» Torpedo tubes
Two sets of Mk32 triple torpedo tubes can be used to target submarines. The system fires the torpedoes using compressed air from a flask at the rear of tubes.



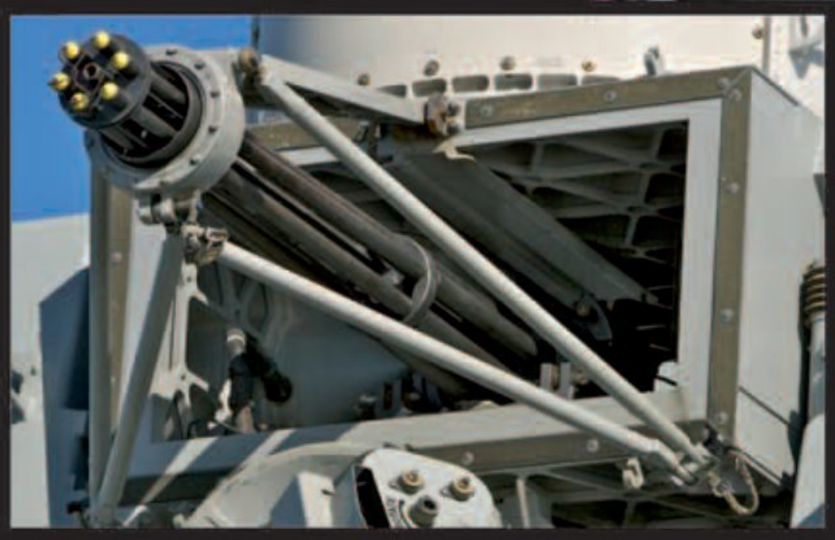


Ship's bridge
The helmsman steers the ship from the helm station in the center of the bridge. The ship also has an automated digital steering system, allowing a course to be entered and automatically maintained.

25-mm chain gun
Two Mk38 chain guns provide close-range defense against small surface threats such as hostile patrol boats or floating mines. The guns are manually aimed and operated and can fire up to 200 rounds per minute.

Anchor chain
This lightweight 4,000 lb (1,800 kg) anchor and the heavier 9,000 lb (4,000 kg) main anchor are both carefully positioned to stop them striking the large sonar dome on the hull as they are lowered.

Mk45 gun and deckhouse
The 5in-gun on *Donald Cook*'s forward deck is the guided-missile destroyer's only large artillery weapon, designed for use against surface warships or aircraft, or for shore bombardment. The mast and deckhouse behind the gun bristle with radomes, antennas, jamming devices, and other types of navigational and electronic warfare equipment.



Chaff and decoy launcher
The Mk36 Super Rapid Bloom Offboard Chaff (SRBOC) system can fire a range of chaff and infrared decoys to confuse hostile missiles and fire-control systems.

Phalanx weapon system
USS *Donald Cook* is fitted with two Phalanx Close-In Weapon Systems (CIWS) using automated radar-controlled 20-mm rotary cannon that can identify, track, and destroy incoming threats such as missiles.

Missile launch cells
The ship's two Vertical Launch Systems (VLS) can store and fire up to 90 Standard medium-range surface-to-air missiles, Tomahawk long-range cruise missiles, or ASROC anti-submarine missiles. In 2003 these launchers fired some of the first Tomahawk strikes of Operation Iraqi Freedom.

BELOW DECKS

THE AEGIS COMBAT SYSTEM at the heart of the ship's operations detects incoming missile and aircraft threats and deploys countermeasures, missiles, and gunfire. The ship's AN/SPY 1-D phased array radar can track hundreds of targets simultaneously. There are steel bulkheads throughout the ship in case a hit is suffered, and especially vital equipment is given extra armor by Kevlar shields. An air filtration system forms part of the comprehensive protection against nuclear, biological, and chemical attack. The gas turbine engines are derived from the engines used on jet airliners such as the Boeing 747.

» Main passageway
Double-plated bulkheads and interior air-lock doors provide protection and allow vital areas—such as the Central Control Station at the end of this corridor—to be isolated.

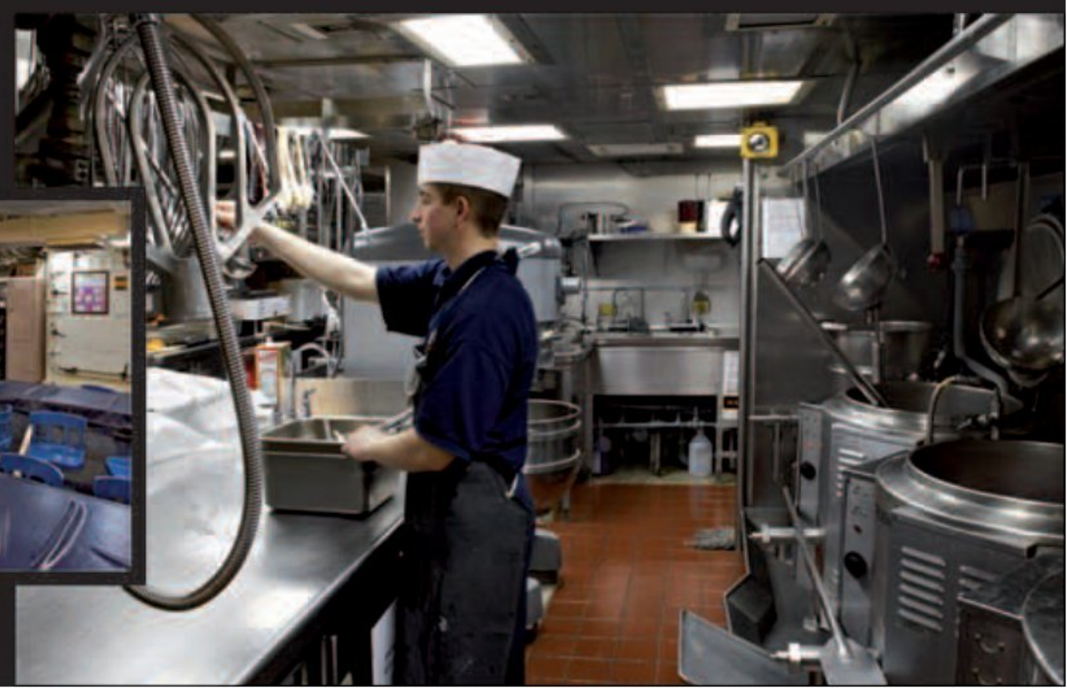
« Tactical Coordinator
The CIC is manned by a team of highly trained specialists, each with a specific role to play. The Tactical Information Coordinator seen here, for example, handles tactical data coming in from allied ships.

« Airtight hatch
To protect the ship and crew against contamination from chemical or biological agents, the Collective Protection System (CPS) divides the ship into zones, separated by airtight hatches, enabling the crew to maintain a pressurized, filtered environment.

« « Combat Information Center
The Combat Information Center (CIC), the tactical heart of the ship, is dominated by the AEGIS combat system, an advanced computer-based control and information system that integrates the data coming in from the radar and satellite systems and controls the ship's weapons and electronic countermeasures.

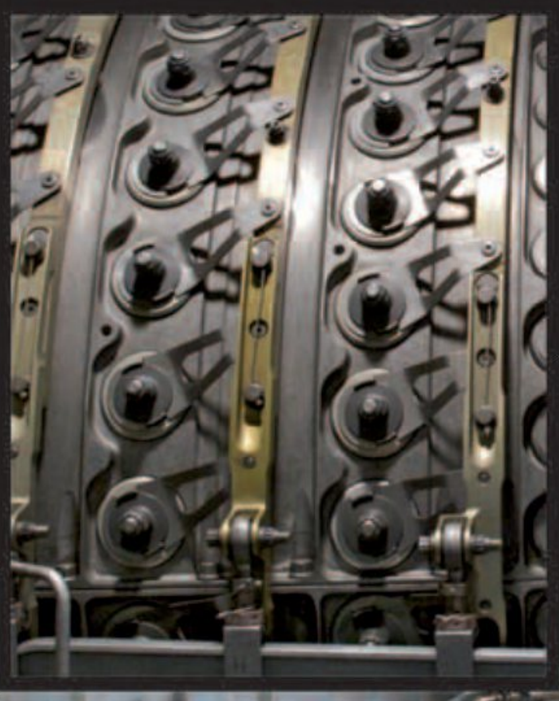
» Enlisted mess
Enlisted men on *Donald Cook* eat most of their meals in an informal self-service cafeteria next to the ship's galley. Officers have a separate mess.

» Ship's galley
The spacious and well-equipped kitchens on board *Donald Cook* allow the galley staff to prepare three hot meals a day, with a choice of dishes, for a crew of over 300 officers and enlisted men.

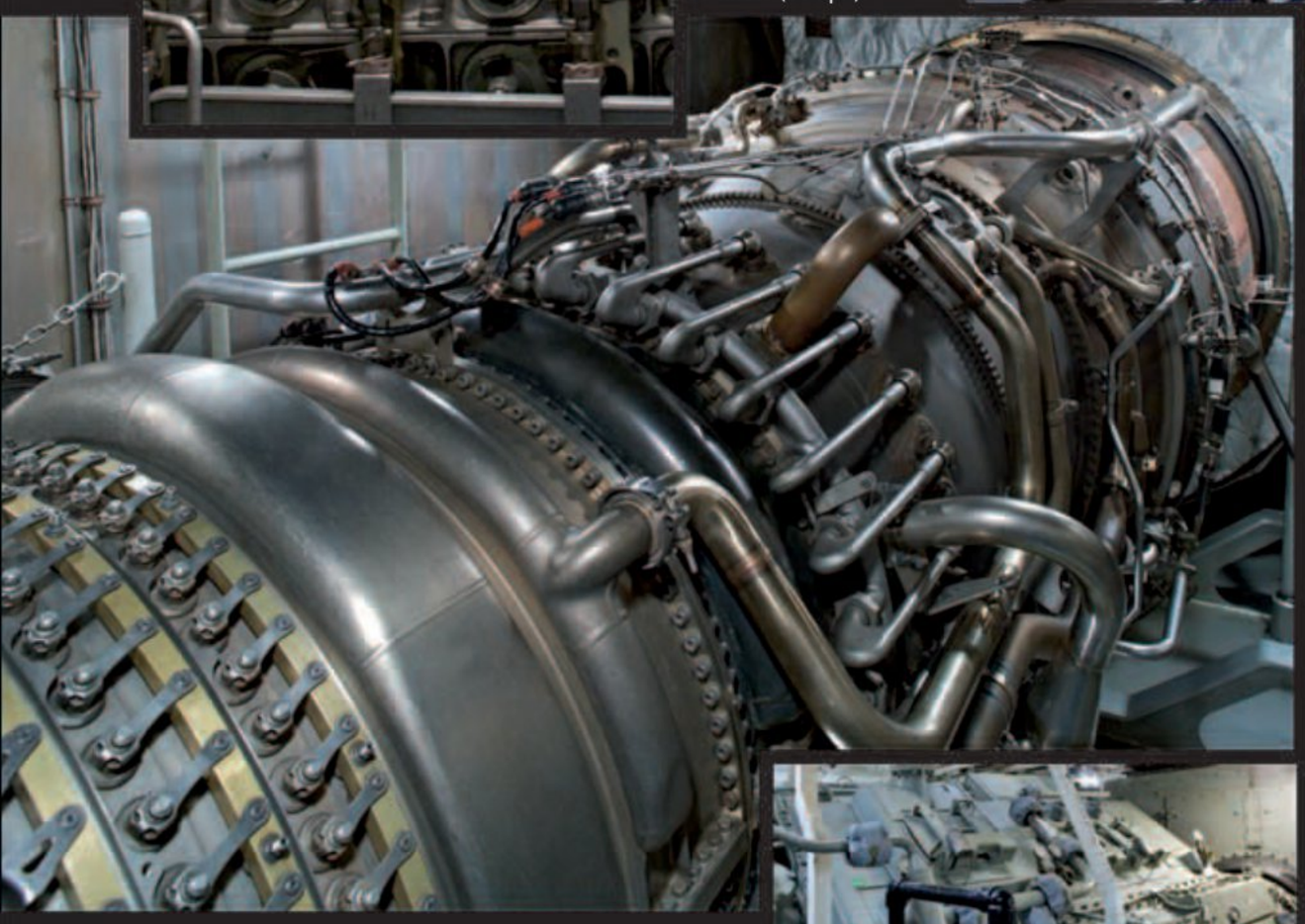


5-in gun magazine
Located underneath the Mk45 gun mounting, the 5-in shell magazine on *Donald Cook* stores 680 rounds of ammunition. The yellow markings on the shells indicate high explosive. Propellent powder is stored nearby.

Ammunition loading systems
A small team inside the magazine operates a computerized loading system that ensures an uninterrupted supply of ammunition to the Mk45 gun on the deck above. It can select and load different types of ammunition, from high-explosive to illumination, at the touch of a button.



Gas turbine
The four LM2500 gas turbine engines are key to *Donald Cook*'s speed and maneuverability, powering her to over 30 knots (56 kph).



Main engine room
The ship's two fuel oil transfer and purification systems, one in each of the two main engine rooms, remove water and solid contaminants from the engine fuel supply.

Halon room
The halon system forms a key part of the *Donald Cook*'s damage control systems. Fire-suppressant halon gas can be directed from canisters in the halon room throughout the ship to fight internal fires.

Firefighting gear
As part of the ship's extensive fire-control systems, several fire stations containing protective overalls, fire hoses, and closed breathing apparatus are located around the decks.

Reducer gear
The two propulsion reducer gears (one in each engine room) are among the most expensive pieces of machinery on board. They convert the high-speed, low-torque output of the gas turbine engines into low-speed high-torque output suitable for driving the ship's propeller shafts.

CARRIER STRIKE FIGHTER JET

Deck crew direct an F/A-18 Hornet strike fighter and ground attack aircraft as it prepares to launch from the US supercarrier *Kitty Hawk* during its operations in the Persian Gulf. Around 85 aircraft are deployed on the carrier, which ranks among the largest warships ever built, with a crew of over 5,000 men. The F/A-18 has been the mainstay of American naval aviation since the 1980s.

405

INDEX

A

"a scaloccio" rowing **87**, 98
Abbasid Caliphate 64
Abdullah bin Saad bin Abil Sarh 64
Abe, Admiral Hiroaki 318
Aboukir *see* Nile, Battle of the
Aboukir, sinking of the **268**
Abu Zikry, Fuad 343
Achaemenes 33
Action of June 17 (1815) **205**
Action of June 29 1694 **148**
Actium, Battle of 28, 43, 49, **50–51**
Aden 346
Adherbal 45
Aegates Islands, Battle of **44**
Aegean Sea 208
Aegospotami, Battle of 36, **39**
Afghanistan, invasion of 275, 329, **346**
Agar, Lieutenant Augustus 276
Agosta, Battle of **144**
Agrippa, Marcus Vipsanius **49**, 50
Ainsworth, Rear Admiral Walden 320
air defense systems, modern **341**
aircraft
  early naval aviation **277**
  F-4U Corsair fighter-bomber 273
  F/A-18 Hornet strike fighter 352–3
  Fairey Swordfish 282, 303
  float planes 277
  postwar 275
  Sea Harriers 340
  World War II 273, 278–9
aircraft carriers 20, **22**, 272–5, 277, 309, 313
  USS *Lexington* **336–9**
Akiyama, Admiral Teruo 320
Al-Qaeda 346
Alabama vs. *Kearsarge* 226, **230**
Alalia, Battle of 31
Alava, Admiral 189
Alcibiades 36
alcohol 140, 286, 307
Alcuin 76
Aleutian Islands 320
Alexander the Great 50
Alexandria 42, 50, 302, 304
  Bombardment of **223**
  Raid on (1942) **305**
Alfonso III of Aragon 71
Algeciras Bay, Battle of **187**
Algeria 88, 205, 302
Alghero, Battle of **68**
Algiers, bombardment of 201
Ali Pasha, Admiral 93–5
Alicudi, Battle of **144**
Almeida, Francisco de 88
Almeida, Lourenço de 88
Álvarez de Ávila, Admiral Juan 126
American Civil War 214, 216, **226–37**
American Revolutionary War 158, 159, **166–71**, 200
amphibious warfare 20, 272, 274, **326**, 329
  Inchon Landings **330–31**
  Iwo Jima **326**
  Landings at San Carlos Water **340–41**
  Normandy Landings **300–301**
amputations 198
anchors 28, 29
  fouled anchor 177
Angevins 70–73
Anglo-Burmese Wars 225
Anglo-Dutch Wars
  First 129, 130–31, **132–3**, 134
  Second 130–31, **134–5**
  Third 130–31, 134, **138–9**, 143
Anglo-Egyptian War 223
Anglo-Saxons 74, 76, 77, 80
Anglo-Spanish Wars 117–25
Anglo-Zanzibar War 225
Annebault, Admiral Claude d' 84–5
Anson, Vice Admiral George 161, 162
Antagonids 42
anti-aircraft defense 285, **317**
anti-aircraft missiles 275
anti-ship missiles (ASMs) **328**, 342, **343**, 345
anti-submarine tactics **296–7**
anti-torpedo boat guns 260
Antiochus III of Syria 48
Antoku, Emperor 59
Antony, Mark 28, 48, 49, 50–51
Anund Jacob, King of Sweden 77
Apollo 78
Apraksin, Admiral Fyodor 154
Apsimarus 65
Aquitaine 74
Arabs
  Arab-Israeli Wars 342–3
  Byzantine-Arab Wars 62, **64–5**
Aragon 29, 62, 68, 70–73
archers 75, 82
Argentina
  Argentine-Brazil War 206
  Cuban Missile Crisis 331
  Falklands War 340–41
  War of the Triple Alliance 212
Arginusae, Battle of **38–9**
Ariabignes 34
Arleigh Burke class guided-missile destroyers **348–51**
Armistead, Lieutenant Colonel George 205
arms race 215, 328
Arnold, Benedict 166
arpax 43, 49
arquebuses 87, 109
Artemesium, Battle of 32, **33**
Arthur, Stanley R. 345
Articles of War 131, 140, 163
Asan, Battle of **246**
ASDIC 296, 297
Asia
  Naval Warfare in **52–3**
  see also China; India; Japan; Korea; Pakistan
astrolabes 71, 207
Athens 27, 28, 30–39, 40
Atlantic
  U-boat war 274, **290–97**
  World War II 274, 278
  see also convoy system
Attalus of Pergamon 48
Augustus, Emperor 28, 43, 48, 49, 50–51
Austen, Captain Francis 192
Australia
  World War I 261
  World War II 309, 312–13, 320
Austria
  Austro-Italian War 216, **219**
  Second Schleswig War 218
  War of the Austrian Succession 159, 160, **161**
  World War I 268
Austria, Don John of 93–5, **93**, 96, 98–9
Aytona, Marquis of 127
Azores, Battle of the
  1582 116, **117**
  1591 **125**

B

backstaff (English quadrant) 151
Baekgang, Battle of **54**
Baekje War 52, **54**
Baghdad 347
balingers 75
ballistas 43
ballistic missiles **329**
Baltic Sea 28, 75, 186, 192, 208
  Baltic Conflicts **150–57**
Baltimore, Bombardment of **205**
Banckert, Adriaen 139
Bantam Bay, Battle of **126**
Barbarigo, Agostino 93–5
Barbarossa *see* Kheir-ed-Din
Barbary pirates 29, 64, 86, 87, 88, 90, 92, 132, 200, 202
Barbary Wars
  First 202
  Second 205
Barbavara *see* Bocanegra, Egidio
barber surgeons 198
Barclay, Commander Robert 203
Barfleur, Battle of 143, 144, **145**
Bargash, Khalid bin 225
barques, flying 52
Barron, Commodore James 202
Bart, Captain Jean 105, 143, **148**
Baskerville, Sir Thomas 125
Basque Roads, Battle of **192**
battle plans
  Actium 51
  Arginusae 38
  Artemesium 33
  Beachy Head 147
  Cape Ecnomus 46–7
  Cape Matapan 304
  Cape St. Vincent 179
  Chesapeake Bay 170–71
  Dan-no-Ura 58–9
  Dardanelles 263
  First of June 177
  Gravelines 121
  Hampton Roads 237
  Hansando 112–13
  Hunting the *Bismarck* 282–3
  Inchon Landings 331
  Jutland 266–7
  La Hogue 145
  Lepanto 95
  Leyte Gulf 323
  Lissa 219
  Malta (1283) 73
  Manila Bay 242–3
  Midway 314–15
  Mississippi Forts 229
  Mobile Bay 231
  Navarino 209
  Nile 181
  Normandy Landings 300
  Pearl Harbor 310
  Philippine Sea 321
  Quiberon Bay 164
  Raid on the Medway 135
  River Plate 280
  The Saints 169
  Salamis 35
  Santiago de Cuba 239
  Savo Island 316
  Sluys 82
  Suriago Strait 324–5
  Trafalgar 191
  Tsushima 250
  Vyborg Bay 157
  Yellow Sea 249
battlecruisers 18, 215
battleships **18**, **20**, 215
Bay of Pigs 330, **331**
Bazán, Alonso de 125
Beachy Head, Battle of 143, 144, 145, **146–7**
beating to quarters 100
Beatty, Admiral David 260, 262, 265–7
Begada, Sultan Mahmud 88
Béhuchet, Nicolas 82–3
Beijing 223
Belgium
  World War I 269
  World War II 300
Belgrano, sinking of the 341
Bell, Captain F.S. 280
Benavides y Bazan, Juan de 127
Benbow, Admiral John 148
Bergen, Battle of **134**
Berkley, Vice Admiral William 134
Bey, Rear Admiral Erich 281
binoculars 251, 309, 310
biremes **8**, 30, 31
biscuits, ship's 197, 306
Bismarck, Hunt for the 280, **282–3**
Bismarck Sea, Battle of **320**
Black Prince 83
Black Sea 39, 74, 156, 208, 216
Blake, General-at-Sea Robert 131, **132**, 133
Bligh, Captain William 177
blunderbuss pistols 176
boarding 28, 43, 44, 52, 62, 88, 104, 114
  boarding weapons **165**
boatswain's call 171
Bocanegra, Ambrosio 83
Bocanegra, Egidio 82–3
Bode, Captain Howard 316
Bohemond 66
Bolivar, Simon 206
Bolsheviks 276
bomb-ketches 187, 202
Bonaparte, Napoleon 176, 180, 186, 188
Bonvin, Admiral Bartolomé 72
Borbonino, Lanfranco 66
Borough, Vice Admiral William 117
Boscawen, Edward 158, 162, 163
Boshin War **246**
Bosphorus, Battle of the **68**
Bourne, Rear Admiral Nehemiah 132
Brasidas, General 36
Brazil
  Argentine-Brazil War 206
  War of Independence 200
  War of the Triple Alliance 212
breaking the line 106, 159, 168–9, **179**
breech-loading guns 16, **240**
Brest, Battle of **84**
Britain
  Age of Nelson **174–5**
  American Revolutionary War 159, **166–71**
  Anglo-Burmese Wars **225**
  Anglo-Egyptian War **223**
  Anglo-Zanzibar War **225**
  Cold War 330
  Crimean War **218**
  Falklands War 328, 329, **340–41**
  First Gulf War **345**
  French Revolutionary Wars **176–83**
  gunboat imperialism 214, **222–3**, 225, 244, 245, 248
  Maintaining British Naval Power **158–9**
  Napoleonic Wars 105, 107, 174, **186–92**
  Opium Wars **222–3**
  Raid on Kronstadt **276**
  Rise of British Naval Power 107, **158–73**
  Roman invasion of 43
  Seven Years War 159, **162–5**
  HMS *Victory* **194–7**
  War of 1812 200, **202–5**
  War of the Austrian Succession 159, 160, **161**
  War of Jenkins' Ear **160**
  War of the Quadruple Alliance **160**
  War on Terror 346–7
  World War I 258–69
  World War II 278–83, 290–97, 300–305, 308–13, 327
  see also England; Royal Navy
British East India Company 222
broadsides 12, 104, **145**, 159
Broome, Jack 292
Brown, Vice Admiral C.R. 327
Brown, Admiral William 206
Brown Water Navy 334
Brueys, Admiral François-Paul 180, 182
Buchanan, Admiral Franklin 230–31, 235
bunks 173, 199, 288
Bunnell, David 203
Burke, Admiral Arleigh 348
Burma 225, 309
Bushnell, David 166
Byng, Admiral Sir George 160
Byng, Admiral John 162, **163**
Byzantine Empire 8–9, 29, 43, 68
  Byzantine-Arab Wars 27, 62, **64–5**
  Norman-Byzantine War 66
Byzantium 48

C

Cadiz
  Anglo-Dutch attack on 124, **125**
  Drake's raid on 114, **117**
Caesar, Julius 49, 50
Caishi, Battle of 54
Calabria, Battle of
  964 **65**
  1940 **302**
Callaghan, Admiral Daniel J. 318
Callanicus 62
Callao, Battle of **238**
Callicratidas 38–9
Cameron, Lieutenant Donald 281
Campbell, William P. 326
Campeche, Battle of **238**
Camperdown, Battle of 176, **177**
Campioni, Admiral Inigo 302, 303
Canada
  American Revolutionary War 166
  World War II 278, 290
cannon 29, 63, 74, 80, 86, 104, 108, 109, 114, 159, **184–5**, 212
cannon-balls **185**, 190
HMS *Canopus* 217
Canton 222, 223
Canute, King of England, Denmark and Norway 76, **77**
Cao Cao 55
Cape Cherchell, Battle of **276**
Cape Ecnomus, Battle of 6, 43, 44, **46–7**
Cape Engano, Battle of 323, 324
Cape Espartel, Battle of **276**
Cape Esperance, Battle of **317**
Cape Finisterre, Battle of **161**, 165
Cape Matapan, Battle of 302, 303, **304–5**
Cape Orlando, Battle of **71**
Cape Palos, Battle of **276**
Cape Passaro, Battle of **160**
Cape St. Vincent, Battle of
  1780 158, **167**
  1797 174, 176, **178–9**, 194
caravels **11**, 28
Carden, Admiral Sackville 262–3
Carew, Vice Admiral George 84–5
Caribbean
  American Revolutionary War 166, 168
  Drake and Hawkins' expedition to the 124, **125**
carracks **10**, 12, 28, 75, 80, 104
Carrara, Francesco da 68, 69
carronade 14, 178, 195
Cartagena, Battle of **149**
Cartagena (de Indias), Battle of **160**
Carthage 27, 28, 31, 42, 43, 64
  Battle of **65**
  Punic Wars **44–7**
Castaneta, Vice Admiral Antonio 160
Castile 75, 83
Castro, Fidel 331
Catalonia 27, 62, 63, 68, 71, 72
catapult ships 53
catapults 43, 49, 52, **53**, 62, 65
Cathcart, Lord 160
Catherine II, Empress of Russia 156
Cattaneo, Admiral Carlo 304
Catullus, Caius 44
Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) 331
Cerda, Carlos de la 83
Cerda, Admiral Francisco de la 144
Cervera y Topete, Admiral Pascual 239
Ceylon *see* Sri Lanka
Champlain, Lake 166, 202, **204–5**
Charles II, King of England 131, 134, 135, 138, 139
Charles V, Emperor 84, 86, 90
Charles XI, King of Sweden 153
Charles XII, King of Sweden 155
Charles of Anjou 70, 71, 72
Charles the Fair 76
Charles of Nassau-Siegen, Prince 156, 157
Charles of Salerno 70, 71
Charleston Harbor, Battle of **230**
Chateau-Renault, Vice Admiral Louis Rousselet de 148
Chateurenault, Marquis de 146–7
Chatham, Battle of *see* Medway, Raid on the
Chatham docks 131
Chen Lin 111
Chen Youliang 57
Chesapeake Bay, Battle of 6, 159, 166, 168, **170–71**
Chesma, Battle of **208**
Chiang Kai-Shek 330
Chibi *see* Red Cliffs, Battle of
Chichagov, Admiral Vasili 156–7

Chilchonryang, Battle of 110, **111**
Chile
  Chilean Civil War **238**
  War of Independence 200, **206**
  War of the Pacific 227, **238**
China 12, 28–9, **52–3**, 108, 109, 110, 217, 248, 309
  Fall of the Han Dynasty **55**
  Fall of the Yuan Dynasty **57**
  Jurchen-Song Wars 52, **54**
  Mongol-Song Wars **56**
  Opium Wars **222–3**
  Silla-Baekje Wars **54**
  Sino-French War **224–5**
  Sino-Japanese Wars 244, 245, **246–7**, 252–3
  Yangtze Incident **330**
Chincha Islands War **238**
Chioggia, War of 29, **68–9**
Chios 32
  Battle of **48**
Choi-Yong-kun 330
Choiseul, Duc de 159
Chola dynasty 52
Christian IV, King of Denmark 153
chronometers 207
Cicero 45
Ciliax, Vice Admiral Otto 281
Cimon of Athens 32
Cinque Ports 81
Claudius Pulcher, Publius **45**, 78
cleanliness **172–3**, 199
Clement IV, Pope 70
Cleopatra VII, Queen of Egypt 28, 50–51
Clermont, Vice Admiral René de 84
Clinton, Bill 348
Clue-Sabran, Admiral Jean-François de la 163
Cochrane, Admiral Thomas 192, 200, **206**
Cochrane, Vice Admiral Sir Alexander 205
Codrington, Sir Edward 208–9
cogs **10**, 28, 74, 75
Colberger Heide, Battle of **153**
Colbert, Jean-Baptiste 138, 142, **143**
Cold War 274–5, 328, 329, **330–33**
USS *Cole*, attack on **346**
Collaart, Jacob 127
Collingwood, Vice Admiral 178, 189, 190, 191
Colt Navy revolver 227
Columbus, Christopher 10, 29, 114
commerce raiding 143, 148, 212, 215, 259, 260, 261, 268, 274, 280
compass 52, 207, 278
compound engine **225**
Conflans, Herbert de Brienne, Comte de 164, 165
Congreve, William 205
Congreve rockets 192, **205**
Conon, General 38
Constans II, Emperor 64
Constantine IV, Emperor 65
Constantinople
  Ottoman conquest of 29, 86
  Sack of (1204) 62
  Siege of (674–677) 64, **65**
Constitution vs. *Guerriere* **202**
Contarini, Doge Andrea 68, 69
convicts, as oarsmen 87, **92**, 118
convoy system 212, 259, 268, 273, **278–9**, 281, **290–97**
  Arctic Convoy PQ-17 **292–3**
  Convoy HX-79 **291**
  Convoy HX-229 & SC-122 **293**
  Convoy ONS-5 **294**
  Convoy SC-7 **291**
cooking *see* food and drink
Copenhagen
  Battle of (1801) 175, **186–7**, 189
  Battle of (1807) **192**, 205
  Dutch-Swedish War 152
copper-plated hulls 14, 107
Coral Sea, Battle of the 274, 308, **312–13**
Corcyra 36
Córdoba, Admiral José de 178
Corinth 28, 36
Cornut, Admiral Guillaume de 72
Cornwallis, General Charles 171
Cornwell, Jack 266
Coronel, Battle of **261**
Corsica 31, 44, 66
corvus 27, 43, **44**, 52
cottonclads 229
Counter-Armada **124**
Counts, Battle of the **71**
Courbet, Admiral Amédée 224–5
Court la Bruyère, Admiral de 161
Cowan, Rear Admiral Sir Walter 276
Crace, Rear Admiral John 312
Cradock, Admiral Sir Christopher 261
crane's wing formation 112–13
Craven, Commander Tunis 230
Crawford, Jack **177**
Crespo, Ernesto 340
Cressy, sinking of the **268**
Crete 64, 87, 304
  Battle of 279, **305**
Creutz, Admiral Lorens 153
crew profiles
  British ship of the line officers **163**
  galleon (1550-1650) **118**
  Greek trireme 31, **39**, 40–41
  Japanese Imperial warship **247**
  Renaissance galley 87, **92**, 96, 98–9
  U-boat crew (World War II) **293**
  US aircraft carrier (World War II) **313**
crews
  21st-century 275
  age of sail 104–5, 106
  age of steam and steel 213
  conscription 92, 142, 158, 174, 213
  discipline and punishment 100–101
  press-ganging 105, 163, 174, 213
  recruitment 104–5, 163, 213, 247
  training 158, 213, 247
  uniforms 213
  see also countries by name; crew profiles; life on board; Royal Navy
Crimean War 214, 216, **218**
Cromwell, Oliver 131
Cronstedt, Colonel Carl 157
crossbows 52, 62, 67, 82, 83
crossing the T **245**
cruise missiles 22, **347**
cruisers **18–19**, 212, 215, 227, 245
Crusades 29, 62, 63, 66
Crutchley, Admiral Victor 316
Cuba
  Bay of Pigs 330, **331**
  Cuban Missile Crisis 330, **331**
  Santiago de Cuba 227, 238, **239**
Cuddalore, Battle of **169**
culverin **129**
Cunningham, Admiral Sir Andrew B. 302–5, **303**
Curzola, Battle of **67**
cutlass 107, 165, 174
cutters 14
Cuxhaven Raid **262**
Cyprus 28, 30, 64
Cyrus the Great 32
Cyrus the Younger 39
Cyzicus 48, 65
  Battle of **36**

D

D-Day 300–301
da Gama, Vasco 75, 88
Dacres, Captain James 202
Dagu forts, Attack on the 222, **223**
Dahlgren, John A. 221
Dahlgren guns 221, 236
Dalmatia 67
Damme, Battle of **81**
Dan-no-ura, Battle of 29, 52, 54, **58–9**, 60
Dandolo, Admiral Andrea 67
Dandolo, Admiral Jacopo 66
Danube, River 43
Dardanelles, Battle of the 259, 260, **262–3**
Darius I, King of Persia 32
Darius II, King of Persia 39
De Bange obturation 240
de Burgh, Hubert 81
de Henin, Maximilien, Count of Bossu 116
de Longespee, William **81**
de Montfort, Guy, Count of Nola 71
de Montfort, Simon 71
de Robeck, Admiral John 262–3
de Ruyter, Lieutenant Admiral Michiel 106, 131, 132, **134**, 135, 138, 139, 144
de Winter, Jan Willem 177
de With, Vice Admiral Witte Corneliszoon 127, 128, 132, 152
de Witt, Cornelis 135
de Witt, Johan 134, 135, 138
Deane, Anthony 142
Deane, General-at-Sea Richard 133
Decatur, Stephen 107, 200, **202**, 205
Delaval, Sir Ralph 146–7
Delian League 32, 36
Demologos 201
den Haen, Admiral 144
Denmark
  Baltic conflicts **150–51**
  Dutch-Swedish War **152**
  Great Northern War **154–5**
  Napoleonic Wars **186–7**, **192**
  Norwegian-Danish War **76–7**
  Scanian War **153**
  Second Schleswig War **218**
  Thirty Years War **153**
  Wars of King Canute **77**
depth charges **297**
desertion 100
Desherbiers de l'Etanduère, Marquis 161
destroyers **17**, **18–19**, **20**, **22**, 212, 215, 275
  USS *Donald Cook* **348–51**
HMS *Devastation* 216
Dewey, Commodore George 226, 240–43
di Lauria, Admiral Roger 29, 70–73, **71**
Dickmann, Arend 153
diekplous 31
diet 306–7
Dionysius of Phocaea 32
Dionysius of Sicily 27
dirks 245
Dirkszoon, Cornelis 116
discipline **100–101**, 213
disease **198–9**
dispensary, ship's 99, 197, **198**, 287
distress signals 193
ditty boxes 172
Diu, Battle of **88**
Djerba, Battle of 86, **88**
Dobson, Commander Claude 276
dockyards 74, 104
doctors, ship 198–9
Dogger Bank, Battle of
  1696 **148**
  1915 260, **262**
Dominica 168, 331
Don Antonio, Prior of Crato 117
USS *Donald Cook* 141, **348–51**
Dönitz, Admiral Karl 280, 290–91, 293, 294
Doolittle, Lieutenant Colonel James 311
Doolittle Raid **311**
Doorman, Admiral Karel 312–13
Doria, Admiral Andrea 88, **89**, 90
d'Oria, Admiral Conrad 71
Doria, Admiral Giovanni Andrea 93–5
Doria, Admiral Lampa 67
Doria, Admiral Oberto 66
Doria, Octavian 67
Doria, Admiral Paganino 68
Doria, Admiral Pietro 68, 69
Dover, Battle of
  1217 **81**
  1652 **132**
Dowding, John 292
Downie, Commodore George 204
Downs, Battle of the 115, 126, **128–9**, 133
Drake, Sir Francis 104, 105, **114**
  privateering 116, 117, 124, 125
  raid on Cadiz 114, **117**
  Spanish Armada 119–21
HMS *Dreadnought* 215, 258
dreadnoughts 215, **258**
Drepana, Battle of 44, **45**, 78
dromons 8, **9**, 62, **64**
du Pont, Rear Admiral Samuel Francis 230
ducking 100
Duckworth, Vice Admiral 192
Dudley, Admiral John 84–5
Duff, Captain George 190
Duguay-Trouin, Captain René 143, 149
Duilius, Gaius 44
Dumanoir, Admiral 190, 191
Duncan, Admiral Adam 177
Dundas, Vice Admiral James 218
Dungeness, Battle of 132
Dunkirk
  evacuation of 279, **300**
  Sortie **127**
Duperré, Commodore Guy-Victor 192
Dupetit-Thouars, Captain 180
Duquesne, Admiral Abraham 139, 143, 144
Durand-Linois, Admiral Charles-Alexandre 187
Durazzo, Battle of **66**
Dutch East India Company 126, 127, 131
Dutch East Indies 308, 309
Dutch Republic
  Anglo-Dutch Wars 129, **130–39**
  Baltic Conflicts **150–51**
  Dutch Revolt 114, 116, 119, **128–9**
  Dutch-Portuguese War **126**, **129**
  Dutch-Swedish War **152**
  Franco-Dutch Wars **144–9**
  Rise of Dutch Sea Power 13, 115, **126–7**
  Scanian War **153**
  War of the Spanish Succession **148–9**
  see also Netherlands
Dutch West India Company 126, 127
Dynekilen, Battle of **155**

E

E-boats 300, 301
Eastern Solomons, Battle of 316, **317**
Edward III, King of England 82, 83
Edwards, Commodore Richard 149
Egypt
  Ancient 26, 30, 42, 50
  Anglo-Egyptian War **223**
  Arab-Israeli Wars **342–3**
  Battle of Navarino **208–9**
  Byzantine-Arab Wars **64**
  French Revolutionary Wars **180–83**
  Portuguese-Ottoman War **88**
Ehrenskjold, Rear Admiral Nils 154
Ehrensvärd, Admiral Carl August 156
Eighty Years War **126–9**
Eilat, sinking of the 328, **342**, 343
Eirik Hakonarson, Earl of Lade 76
electronic warfare 22, 275, 328, 341, 343, 349
Elizabeth I, Queen of England 105, 114, 116, 119, 124
Ellet, Charles 229
Elliot, Lieutenant Jesse 203
Elphinston, Rear Admiral John 208
Ely, Eugene 277
SMS *Emden*, sinking of **261**
Empress Augusta Bay, Battle of **320**
Endrass, Engelbert 291
England
  Anglo-Dutch Wars 129, **130–39**
  Anglo-Spanish Wars **117–25**
  Bombardment of the English Coast (1914) **262**
  Civil War **132**
  Counter-Armada **124**
  foundation of navy 107, 114
  Hundred Years War 74–5, **82–3**
  King John's War with France **81**
  Norman Conquest **80–81**
  Spanish Armada 114, 115, 117, **118–23**, 124
  Vikings invasions **76–7**
  War of the League of Augsburg **145–7**
  War of the League of Cambrai **84**
  War of the Spanish Succession **148–9**
  Wars of François I & Charles V **84–5**
  see also Britain
English Channel 74–5, 119
  Channel Dash 1942 **281**
  Evacuations and Landings **300–301**
  Norman Invasion of England **80–81**
Enigma machines 294, **305**
Ericsson, John 236
Esmond, Lietenant-Commander Eugene 281
Essex, Robert Devereux, Earl of 124, 125
Estrées, Admiral Jean d' 138, 139, 143, 147
Etajima Naval Academy 247
Euboea 33
Eudoras 48
Eurybiades 33, 34
Eurymedon, Twin Battles of **32**
Eustace the Monk 81
Evelyn, John 135
Evertsen, Lieutenant Admiral Cornelis 134, 146–7
Exocet missiles 343
Ezel, Battle of 151, 155

F

Falkland Islands
  Battle of (1914) 260, **261**
  Falklands War 275, 328, 329, **340–41**
Farragut, Admiral David G. 228–32, **231**
Figueroa, Don Lope de 117
Finland, Gulf of 154, 156–7
fire control systems **319**
firepower 27, 29, 75, 86–7
fireships 55, 76, 120, 121, 128, 129, 136–7, 139, 145, 153, 187
First of June, Battle of the 174, **176–7**
Fischer, Olfert 187
flag systems 193
Flamborough Head, Battle of **167**
flamethrowers 62
Flanders, Count of 81
flare pistols 193
Flecknoe, Richard 78
Fleet Air Arm 278, 281, 303
Fleming, Admiral Klas 153
Fletcher, Rear Admiral Frank 312, 314, 316, 317
flintlocks 159, 168, 192, 200
flogging 100, 101, 213
Floor, Captain Jan 116
Foley, Captain Thomas 180
Foochow, Battle of **224–5**
food and drink 99, 197, 255, 285, **306–7**, 339, 350
Forbin, Admiral Claude de 149
formation, maintaining 62
Fort Pillow 229
Four Days' Battle 131, **134**
France
  American Revolutionary War 159, **166–71**
  Crimean War **218**
  Franco-Dutch Wars 130, 138–9, 143, **144–8**
  Franco-Prussian War **216**
  French Navy 105, 107, 142–3, 174, 216, 272
  French Revolution 176
  French Revolutionary Wars 174, **176–83**, 186
  gunboat imperialism 222, 223, 244
  Hundred Years War 74–5, **82–3**
  King John's War **81**
  Napoleonic Wars 107, 174, 186–92, **186–92**, 200
  Norman Conquest **80–81**
  Quasi War 200
  Seven Years War 159, **162–5**
  Sino-French War **224–5**
  The Sun King's Navy **142–3**
  Viking raids 76
  War of the Austrian Succession 159, 160, **161**
  War of the Portuguese Succession **117**
  War of the Spanish Succession **148–9**
  Wars of François I & Charles V **84–5**
  World War I 262–3
  World War II 302
François I, King of France 74, 84
Franks 76
Fraser, Admiral Sir Bruce 281
Frederick II, Emperor 70
Frederick III, King of Sicily 71
Frederick Hendrick of Orange-Nassau 128
Fredrikshamn, Battle of 150
French East India Company 161
frigates 14, **15**, **23**, 151, 159, 212, 275
Fulton, Robert 201

G

Gabbard, Battle of the 132, **133**
Galera Real **96–9**
Galissonière, Marquis de la 162
galleasses **12**, 87
galleons **12–13**, 104, 114, 115
  16th-century galleon crew **118**
galleys **8–9**, **26–9**
  Galera Real **96–7**
  Olympias **40–41**
  Renaissance galley crew **92**
Gallipoli Peninsula 262–3
Galvez, Juan 238
Gambier, Admiral James 192
gambling 140, 141
Gangut, Battle of **154**
Gardner guns 223
Gatling guns **223**
Gatling, Richard Jordan 223
geiger counters 331
Gempei Wars 52, **56**, **58–61**
general pursuit 106, **159**
Genoa 27, 64, 74, 75, 82, 83, 88, 90
  Battle of Lepanto **93–5**
  Pisan-Genoese War **66**
  Rise of the Italian Maritime Republics 62, **66**
  Venetian-Genoese Wars **66–9**
  War of the Sicilian Vespers **71**
Gensoul, Admiral Marcel 302
George III, King of England 177
Germany
  German Navy 213, 216, 217, 258–9, 272–3, 278–9
  World War I 258–69
  World War II 278–83, 290–97, 300–305
  see also Prussia
Gherardesca, Ugolino della 66
Gibraltar 149, 167, 302, 304
  Battle of 114, **126**
giving the prow 117
Gjoe, Marcus 139
Gloire 216, 217
Glossop, Captain John 261
Goguryeo dynasty 52
The *Golden Hind* 104
Golitsyn, General Mikhail 155
Goodenough, Commodore William 260
Goths 43
Goto, Rear Admiral 317
Gozo, Battle of **92**
Graf Spee 280–81
Grand Port, Battle of **192**
grappling 28, 43, 52, 88
  grappling hooks 128
Grasse, François Joseph Paul, Comte de 168, 169, 170–71
Gravelines, Battle of 120–21
Graves, Admiral Thomas 170–71
Gravina, Admiral Federico 188, 190
Great Northern War 151, **154–5**
great ships 74, 75, 104
Greece
  Battle of Preveza **89**
  Greek War of Independence 200, 201, **208–9**
Greek fire 8, 27, 29, **62**, 65
Greeks, Ancient 8–9, 26–7, 78, 100
  Olympias **40–41**
  Peloponnesian War **36–9**
  Persian Wars **32–5**
  Rise of the **32–3**
Green, Samuel D. 235
Greig, Admiral Samuel 156, 208
Grengam, Battle of 151, **155**
Grenville, Sir Richard 124, 125
Gretton, Commander Peter 294
Grimani, Antonio 88
Guadalcanal, Battle for **316–19**
Guadalcanal, Naval Battle of 308, 310, 316, **318–19**
Guépratte, Rear Admiral Emile 262–3
Guerriere **202**
Guiscard, Robert 66
Gujerat 88
Gulf of Naples, Battle of **70**
Gulf of Tonkin incident **335**
Gulf War
  First (1990-1991) 275, 328, 344, **345**
  Second (2003) 275, 329, **347**
gun founding **221**
gunboats **15**, **17**
  gunboat imperialism 214, **222–5**
gunpowder 52, 53, 109
guns
  anti-aircraft guns 285, 317
  anti-torpedo boat guns 260
  arquebuses 87, 109
  blunderbuss pistols 176
  boarding pistols 165
  breech-loading guns 16, **240**
  carronades 159
  Colt Navy revolver 227
  Dahlgren guns 221, 236
  flare pistols 193
  flintlocks 159, 168, 192, 200
  Gardner guns 223
  Gatling guns **223**
  handguns 86
  Mark 45 guns **344**
  matchlock muskets 133, 144
  percussion pistol 223
  reloading guns 117, 187
  Roth-Steyr M1907 262
  smoothbore naval gun 209
  Snider-Enfield rifle 225
  swivel guns 87, 88, 161, 192
  turret guns 16, 212, **264**
  Very pistol 214
  volley guns 187
  Webley Mark VI revolver 265
  wheellock muskets 152
Gustav Vasa, King of Sweden 150
Gustavus III, King of Sweden 150, 156–7
Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden 12, 150
Gylippus 37

H

Habsburgs, Ottoman-Habsburg Wars **88–9**
Hakodate Bay, Battle of **246**
Hall, Captain Andrew 345
Hall, Captain William 222
Halsey, Admiral William 317, 322–4
Hamad bin Muhammed, Sultan 225
Hamad bin Thuwaini, Sultan 225
Hamelin, Vice Admiral Ferdinand 218
Hamilcar Barco 46, 47
Hamilton, Lady Emma 189
Hammidia, Admiral Rais 205
hammocks 172, 173, 197
Hampton Roads, Battle of **234–7**
Han dynasty 52, 55, 57
handguns 86
hanging 101
Hannibal Gisco 44
Hanno 44, 47
Hansando, Battle of 109, 110, **112–13**
Hanseatic League 75
Harald Hardrada 77, 80–81
hard tack 197, 306
Hardy, Captain 186
Harman, Rear Admiral John 134
Harmensz, Admiral Wolphert 126
Harold II, King of England 80–81
Harrison, John 207
Hartlepool 262
Harvey, Captain John 176–7
Harwood, Commodore Henry 280
Hase, Commander Georg von 265
Hastings, Battle of 81
Hawke, Admiral Edward 158, 161, 162, 164, **165**
Hawkins, Sir John 116, **124**, 125
Hedgehog bomblet 297
Heidkamp, Wilhelm 262
Helgeå, Battle of **77**
Heligoland, Battle of **218**
Heligoland Bight, Battle of **260**
Hellespont 39
hemmemas 151
Henry, Frederick 127
Henry Grace à Dieu 74, 75
Henry III, King of England 81
Henry V, King of England 75
Henry VII, King of England 74
Henry VIII, King of England 74, 84–5, 114
Herodotus 32, 33
Heyden, Admiral Login 209
Heyn, Piet 105, 114, 126, **127**, 129
Hideyoshi, Toyotomi 108, 109, 110, 111, 113
Hipper, Vice Admiral Franz von 262, 265–7
Hittites 28, 30
Hogland, Battle of **156**
Hogue, sinking of the **268**
Hollaer, Marinus 127
Holmes, Sir Robert 131
Holy League 29, 86, 89, 92, 93–5, 96
Hong Kong 222
Hood, Admiral Samuel 168, 169, 170–71
Hood, sinking of the **282**
Hope, Rear Admiral James 223
hoplites 31, 37
Hopsonn, Vice Admiral Thomas 148
horary quadrant 126
Horn, Field-Marshal Henrik 153
Horthy, Admiral Miklos 269
Hosogaya, Vice Admiral Boshiro 320
Howard, Admiral Edward 84
Howard, Lord Thomas 119–21, 125
Howe, Lord 176, 177
Huang Gai 55
Huff-Duff **296**
Hugh, Count of Brienne 71
Hughes, Vice Admiral Sir Edward 158, 169
Hull, Captain Isaac 202
Hundred Years War 29, 74, 75, 80, **82–3**
Hungary 68, 69
Hussein, Saddam 345, 347
Huyghens, James 129
Hybertszoon, Henriks 150
Hyder Ali, Prince 169
hygiene **172–3**, 198, 286

I

Iachino, Admiral Angelo 304–5
Ibrahim Pasha 208
Inchon Landings 329, **330–31**
India 52, 88, 162
  Indo-Pakistan War (1971) **343**
Indian Ocean 52, 53, 88, 126, 166, 169, 308
Ingenohl, Admiral Friedrich von 262
Inland Sea 56
Ioannes the Patrician 65
Ionian revolt 32
USS *Iowa* 20, 298–9, 317
Iquique, Battle of **238**
Iran
  First Gulf War **345**
  Iran-Iraq War **344**
  Operation Praying Mantis 344
Iraq
  invasion of (2003) 275, 329, **347**, 348
  Iran-Iraq War **344**
  World War II 308
ironclads **16–17**, 212, 216, 217
Irrawaddy River, Battle of **225**
Islam 64
Israel, Arab-Israeli Wars 342–3
Italy
  Austro-Italian War 216, **219**
  Italian Navy 216, 272, 278
  Maritime Republics 27, 29, 62–3, 64, **66–8**
  World War II 278, 279, 302–5
Ito, Admiral Seiichi 246, 327
Iwo Jima, landings at 284, **326**, 327

J

Jacobites 145
James I, King of England 124
James II, King of Aragon 71
James II, King of England 134, 138, 139, 142, 145
Japan 29, **52–3**, **108–13**, 226
  Boshin War **246**
  Failed Mongol Invasion of **57**
  Gempei Wars 52, **56**, **58–61**
  Imperial Japanese Navy 213, **244–5**, **247**, 272–3
  Invasion of Korea 107, 108, **110–13**
  Mikasa **252–5**
  Russo-Japanese War 215, 244, 245, 246, **248–51**, 252
  Silla-Baekje Wars **54**
  Sino-Japanese Wars 244, 245, **246–7**, 252–3
  World War I 245
  World War II 273, 274, **308–27**
Japanese Sea, Battle of the **249**
Java Sea, Battle of **312–13**
Jean Bart
  attack on **268**
  mutiny on 276
Jefferson, Thomas 202
Jellicoe, Admiral Sir John 258, **264**, 265–7
Jenkins, Captain Robert 160
Jenkins' Ear, War of 160
Jervis, Admiral Sir John 174–5, 178–9, 194
Jessen, Rear Admiral Karl 249
John, King of England 81
Jones, Lieutenant Catesby ap Roger 235, **236**
Jones, John Paul 166, **167**
Jonquière, Admiral Jacques-Pierre de la 161
Juel, Admiral Niels 153
junks, war 52, 53
Jurchen-Song Wars 52, **54**
Jutland, Battle of 215, 258, 259, 260, **264–7**, 278

K

kabuksons see turtle ships
Kaliakria, Battle of **208**
kamikaze tactics 274, 308, 309, 318, 320, 324, 327
Kamimura, Vice Admiral 249
Karl X Gustav, King of Sweden 152
Karl, Grand Admiral Prince 156–7
Kearsarge 226, **230**
keel hauling 100
Kemel Reis 88
Kennedy, John F. 331
Kentish Knock, Battle of **132**
Keppel, Admiral Augustus 167, 194
Kerans, Lieutenant Commander John 330
Kerry, John **334**
Key, Francis Scott 200, 205
Keyes, Commodore Sir Roger 260, 269
Kheir-ed-Din **86**, 87, 89, 90
Khrushchev, Nikita 331
Kimmel, Rear Admiral Husband E. 310
Kimura, Rear Admiral Masatomi 320
Kincaid, Admiral Thomas 318, 322, 323
Kirk, Rear Admiral Alan G. 301
USS *Kitty Hawk* 352–3
Kjöge Bay, Battle of 152, **153**
Knights of St John 86, 88, 92, 93, 143
Knyvet, Sir Thomas 84
Komandorski Islands, Battle of **320**
Kondo, Vice Admiral Nobutake 318
Korea 12, **52**, 57, **108–9**, 248
  Inchon landings 329, **330–31**
  Japanese invasion 107, 108, **110–13**
  Korean War 274, **329**
  Silla-Baekje Wars **54**
Kretschmer, Otto 291
Kronstadt, raid on **276**
Kublai Khan 52, 56, 57
Kula Gulf, Battle of **320**
Kuribayashi, Lieutenant-General Tadamichi 326
Kurita, Admiral Takeo 322–4
Kuwait 275, 329, 344, 345

L

La Hogue, Battle of 142, 143, 144, **145**
La Rochelle, Battle of 74, **83**
Laborde, Angel 206
Lade, Battle of **32**
Lagos Bay, Battle of 162, **163**, 169
Lake Champlain, Battle of 202, **204–5**
Lake Erie, Battle of 202, **203**
Lake Maracaibo, Battle of **206**
Lake Poyang, Battle of 54, **57**
Lancaster, Sir James 118
landing craft **21**, 301, **326**
landings *see* amphibious warfare
Lángara, Commodore Juan de 167
Langsdorff, Captain Hans 280–81
Langston, Commander Bud 344
Lapeyrère, Admiral de 268
Las Hormigas, Battle of **71**
Latakia, Battle of 275, **342–3**
Laughton, John Knox 167
laundry 172, 173, 287
Le Baker de Swynebroke, Geoffrey 82
League of Armed Neutrality 186, 187
League of Augsburg, War of the 143, 144, **145–8**
League of Cambrai, War of the **84**
Lee, Sergeant Ezra 166
Lee, Vice Admiral Willis A. 318
leg irons 100, 196
Leissegues, Rear Admiral 192
leisure time **140–41**
Leontius, Emperor 65
Lepanto, Battle of 29, 78, 86, 87, 92, **93–9**, 117
Les Espagnols sur Mer, Battle of **83**
Lesbos 32, 38
Less, Rear Admiral Anthony A. 344
Lestock, Vice Admiral Richard 161
USS *Lexington* **336–9**
Leyte Gulf, Battle of 6, 308, 309, 320, **322–5**, 336
Lezo, Admiral Bas de 160
Liaodung Peninsula 246
liburnians 43, 50
Libya 202
life on board
  21st Century 275
  age of sail 99, 106
  age of steam and steel 213
  discipline and punishment **100–101**
  food and drink **306–7**
  living conditions **172–3**
  medicine, disease and surgery **198–9**
  recreation **140–41**
  religion and superstition **78–9**
  see also crew profiles; virtual tours
Lind, James 199
Lindisfarne, raid on 29, **76**
line of battle 106–7, 130, 131, **133**
Lisbon 124
Lissa, Battle of 216, **219**
Liu Bei 55
living conditions **172–3**
Lizard, Battle of the **149**
London, Treaty of (1827) 209
London Conference (1930) 272
Long, John D. 241
longbows 82
longitude **207**
longships, Viking **10**, 28, 74, 76–7
Looks, Captain-Lieutenant Hartwig 295
Loredano, Andrea 88
Louis XII, King of France 84
Louis XIII, King of France 142
Louis XIV, King of France 105, 107, 138, 142–3, 144, 145, 153
Louis XV, King of France 159
Lowestoft, Battle of **134**
Lucas, Captain Jean-Jacques 190
Lusitania, sinking of 259, **268**
Lütjens, Admiral Günther 282
Lysander **39**

M

Maass, Rear Admiral Leberecht 260
MacArthur, General Douglas 320, 330–31
Macdonough, Master Commandant Thomas 204
Macedonian Wars 42, 48
McMorris, Rear Admiral Charles 320
McNaught, William 225
Mahan, Alfred Thayer 7, 214, 227
Maine 227
Makarov, Admiral Stepan 248
Malaga, Battle of **149**
Malaya 308, 309, 311
Malta
  Battle of (1283) 70, **72–3**
  Ottoman-Habsburg Wars 88
  Siege of (1565) 86, 88, **92**
  World War II 302, 304, 305
man-of-war 159
Manchuria 309
Manila Bay, Battle of 226, 227, 238, **240–43**
Mao-Tse-Tung 330

maps
American Civil War 228
Anglo-Dutch Wars 131
First Punic War 44
Great Northern War 154
Italian Maritime Republics 66
Japanese Advance (World War II) 309
Japanese-Korean War 109
Mediterranean Theatre 1940–43 302
Mediterranean World 650–950 64
Napoleonic Europe 175
Ottoman Empire 87
Peloponnesian War 36
Persian Wars 32
Russo-Japanese War 248
Spanish Armada 119
U-Boat War 290
Viking World 76
War in the Pacific 1943–45 320
War of the Sicilian Vespers 70
World War I in Northwest Europe 259
Mariana Islands 273, 309, 320, 321
Marin, Commodore Thomas 238
Mark 45 guns **344**
Marmara, Sea of 65
Marshall, William 81
Martinique 158
Marufo, Admiral Matteo 69
Mary Rose 75, 80, 84, **85**
Masataka, Commander Chihaya **318**
Mascarenhas, Admiral Fernão de 129
Masts, Battle of the 29, **64**
Matanzas Bay, Battle of **127**
Matapan, Battle of **87**
matchlock muskets 133, 144
Mathews, Vice Admiral Thomas 161
Mauritius 192
medicine 99, 197, **198–9**, 287, 339
Medina Sidonia, Duke of 119–21
Mediterranean
in Ancient World 30–51
in Middle Ages 10, 62–73
Ottoman ascendancy in 86–99
in World War II 274, **302–5**
Medway, Raid on the 134, **135**
Meiji, Emperor of Japan 244, 246
Mekong Delta 334
mêlée tactics **127**
Meloria, Battle of **66**, 67
Memphis, Battle of **229**
Mendez Nuñez, Admiral Casto 238
merchant vessels 28, 104, 105, 215, 260
see also commerce raiding; convoy system; piracy; privateering
Merrill, Rear Admiral Aaron "Tip" 320
Mers-el-Kebir, Battle of **302**
Messina 144
messing 306–7
Mexico, Texas-Mexican Wars **238**
Michifusa, Kurushima 111
Middle East, and terrorism 275, **344–7**
Midway, Battle of 310, **314–15**, 319
Mikasa **252–5**
Mikawa, Vice Admiral Gunichi 316
Milan 68
Miletus 32
Miller, Doris "Dorie" **311**
Miller, Captain Ralph 178
Minamoto clan 29, 52, 56, 58–9, 60
Mindarus 36
mines 215, 245, 258, **261**, 279, 329
Ming dynasty 28–9, 53, 57, 108, 109, 110
Minoans 8, 26, 30
Minorca, Battle of **162**, 169
missiles **22**, 272, **275**
anti-aircraft missiles 275
anti-ship missiles (ASMs) **328**, 342, **343**, 345
ballistic missiles **329**
cruise missiles 22, **347**
Exocet missiles 343
missile defense **341**, 342, **343**
Polaris missiles 329
Regulus cruise missiles 347
Sea Skua anti-ship missiles 345
Sea Sparrow missiles 343
surface-to-air missiles (SAMs) 328
Tomahawk cruise missiles 275, 347, 349
Trident missiles 329
Mississippi Forts, Forcing of the **228–9**, 232–3
Mitchell, John K. 228
Mitscher, Vice Admiral Marc 321, 327, 336
Mizushima, Battle of **56**
Mobile Bay, Battle of **230–31**
Modon, Battle of **68**
Monck, General-at-Sea George 131, 132, 134, 135
Mongols 52, 54
Mongol-Japanese Wars **57**
Mongol-Song Wars **56**
USS *Monitor* 216, 234–7
Monte Santiago, Battle of **206**
Montevideo, Battle of **206**
Montgomery, Captain James E. 229
Montojo y Pasaron, Admiral Patricio 240–43
Moore, Commodore Edwin Ward 238
Moreno, Captain Francisco 276
Morley, Sir Edward 83
Morosini, Alberto 66
Morse code **193**
mortars **297**
Muawiyah I, Caliph 64, 65
Mulberry artificial harbors 301
Müller, Karl von 261
music 140
Mustafa Kemal 262
mutiny 100, 174, 176, 276
Mycenaeans 30
Mylae, Battle of 43, **44**
Myonessus, Battle of **48**
Myongyang, Battle of 110, **111**
Mytilene 38–9

N

Nagumo, Vice Admiral Chuichi 310, 314–15, 317
Nakhimov, Admiral Pavel 218
Naples 70, 71
Napoleon I, Emperor 176, 180, 186, 188
Napoleon III, Emperor 216
Napoleonic Wars 107, 174, **186–92**, 200
Narvik, Battle of **300**
Naulochus, Battle of 48, **49**
Naupactus, Battle of **36**, 37
nautical instruments **207**
USS *Nautilus* 332–3
Naval Academy, Annapolis 213
Naval Air Station Pensacola 313
Naval Aviation Pilots 313
Naval Defence Act (1889) 217
Navarino, Battle of 200, 201, **208–9**
Navarro, Admiral José 161
navies *see* countries by name; crews; Royal Navy
Navigation Act (1661) 132
Nebogatov, Admiral Nikolai 251
Negapatam, Battle of **158**
Nelson, Admiral Horatio 79, 176, **189**, 194, 202
Age of Nelson **174–5**
Battle of Cape St Vincent **178–9**
Battle of Copenhagen **186–7**
Battle of the Nile **180–81**
Battle of Trafalgar **188–91**, 193
tactics 106–7, 179
Netherlands
Dutch Navy 105, 107
French Revolutionary Wars 176, **177**
gunboat imperialism 244
World War II 300, 308, 310, 312–13
see also Dutch Republic
New Guinea 312, 320
New Orleans 228
New World, discovery of 29
New York 134
Nicetas, Patriarch 65
Nicholas II, Tsar 249
Nicias 37
Nicol, John 180
night vision goggles 274
Nile, Battle of the 8, 107, 174, 176, **180–81**, 182–3
Nile Delta 26, 30
Nimitz, Admiral Chester 314, **323**
9-11 attack 275, 344, 346
Nishimura, Admiral Shoji 312, 322–5
Nissa, Battle of **77**
Nore mutiny 174, 176
Noritsune, Taira no 56
Normandy Landings 272, 279, **300–301**
Normans
Conquest of England 74, **80–81**
Norman–Byzantine War **66**
Norreys, Sir John 124
North Cape, Battle of **281**
North Korea *see* Korea
North Sea
Anglo-Dutch rivalry **130–39**
Viking raids 76, 77
World War I 215, 260, 262, **265–8**
World War II 278–9, 281
Norton, Captain James 206
Norway
Baltic Conflicts 152
Great Northern War **154–5**
Norwegian-Danish War **76–7**
World War II 279, 281, 292, **300**
Noryang, Battle of 110, **111**
nuclear weapons 272, **328**, 329, 330
nutrition 198, 199, 306–7

O

oarsmen
Greek trireme 31, **39**, 40–41
Renaissance galley **92**, 96, 98–9
"a scaloccio" rowing **87**, 98
slaves and convicts as 87, **92**, 118
O'Brien, Captain Christopher 100
Oceanic Empires 114–29
Octavian *see* Augustus, Emperor
Odo, Count 76
off-shore bombardment **220**
Ohnishi, Admiral 324
Okinawa, Battle of 284, 308, **327**
Okpo, Battle of 113
Olaf Eriksson, King of Sweden 76
Olaf Haraldson, King of Norway 77
Olaf Trygvasson, King of Norway 76
Oland, Battle of 152, **153**
Oldendorf, Rear Admiral Jesse 325
Oliwa, Battle of **153**
Olympias **40–41**
Omar, Caliph 64
omens 78
Omori, Rear Admiral Sentaro 320
Onslow, Vice Admiral Richard 177
Operation Chromite 330
Operation Desert Shield 345
Operation Desert Storm 329, 345, 347
Operation Enduring Freedom 328, **346**
Operation Excess **304**
Operation Game Warden 334
Operation Iraqi Freedom 348
Operation Ka 317
Operation Market Time 334, **335**
Operation Praying Mantis **344**
Operation Rolling Thunder **335**
Operation Sho-Go 322, 325
Operation Tungsten 281
Opium Wars 205, 214, **222–3**
Oquendo, Antonio de 128, 129
Oresund 152
Orlov, Count Alexsei Grigoryevich 208
Orvilliers, Comte d' 167
Ostende, raids on **269**
Otranto Strait **269**
Ottoman Empire
ascendancy in Mediterranean **86–99**, 114
Crimean War **218**
decline of 200–201
Later Ottoman Battles **208–9**
Ottoman-Habsburg Wars **88–9**
Portuguese-Ottoman War **88**
rise of 29, 63, 66, 69
Venetian-Ottoman War **88**
World War I 262–3
Ozawa, Admiral Jisaburo 321–4

P

Pacific
Japanese conflicts in the 244, 245
War of the Pacific 227, **238**
World War II 274, **308–27**
paddle-wheel craft 16, 17, 28, 52, 53, 201, 217, 226, 227
Padilla, Jose Prudencio 206
Padua 68, 69
Page, General Richard L. 231
Paixhans, Henri-Joseph 201
Pakistan, Indo-Pakistan War (1971) **343**
Palermo, Battle of **144**
Palliser, Admiral Sir Hugh 167
Palmerston, Lord 223
Pangallo, Biagio 142
panokseons 109, 110, 111, 112, 113
Papacy 89, 93
Paraguay, War of the Triple Alliance 212
Paris, raid on **76**
Parker, Admiral Sir Hyde 175, 186
Parma, Duke of 120, 121
Parsons, Charles 217
Paul III, Pope 89
Pearl Harbor, attack on 273, 274, 308, 309, **310–11**
Pearse, Captain Joseph 222
Pellew, Admiral Edward 166
Peloponnesian League 36
Peloponnesian War 28, 30, **36–9**
Pembroke, Earl of 83
pennants 193
Pennington, Vice Admiral John 128
penteconters **8**, 26, 31
percussion pistol 223
Pergamon 48
Pericles 36
periplous 31
Pernambuco, Battle of **129**
Perry, Commodore Matthew 226, 244
Perry, Commander Oliver Hazard 200, 202
Persano, Count Carlo di 219
Persian Empire 26–7, 39
Persian Wars 26–7, 30, 31, **32–5**
Persian Gulf, First Gulf War **345**
Peru
Chincha Islands War **238**
War of the Pacific 227, **238**
Peter III of Aragon 70, 71, 72
Peter the Great, Tsar **151**, 154
Petz, Captain Anton von 219
Philip II, King of Spain 88, 93, 96, 116, 117, 119, 120, 122
Philip III, King of France 71
Philip V, King of Macedon 48
Philip Augustus, King of France 81
Philip le Bel, King of France 74
Philippine Sea, Battle of the 309, 319, 320, **321**, 336
Philippines 227, 240–43, 309, 320–25
Phillips, Admiral Sir Tom 311
Philocles 39
Phocaea 31
Phoenicians 8, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 42
Phormio 36
pikes 165
pilots, naval **313**
piracy
Barbary pirates 29, 64, 86, 87, 88, 90, 92, 132, 200, 202, 205
Pompey's Campaign against **48**
wako ("dwarf raiders") 108
see also commerce raiding; privateers
Pisa
Pisan-Genoese War **66**
Rise of the Italian Maritime Republics 62, **66**
Pisani, Admiral Niccolo 68
Pisani, Admiral Vettor 68–9
Piyale Pasha, Grand Admiral 88, 92
Place, Lieutenant Basil 281
Plum Run Bend, Battle of **229**
Plutarch 32
Poland, Polish-Swedish wars 152, **153**
Polaris missiles 329
Polo, Marco 67
Polybius 47
polyremes 8, 27
Polyxenidas 48
Pompeius, Sextus 48, 49
Pompey the Great 42, 43
Campaign against the Pirates **48**
Ponza, Battle of **71**
Pook's Turtles 229
Port Arthur, Battle of 245, 246, **248–9**
Portland, Battle of **132**
Porto Bello, capture of 158, **160**
portolan charts 63
Portsmouth 74
Portugal
Asian colonies 115
Dutch-Portuguese War **126**, **129**
Portuguese-Ottoman War **88**
South American wars of independence 200, **206**
Spanish rule in 107, 124, 129
voyages of exploration 11, 29, 74, 75, 108, 114
War of the Portuguese Succession 107, **117**
Postwar conflicts **328–53**
Pound, Sir Dudley 293
Prat, Captain Arturo 238
pre-dreadnoughts **16**, 217, **252–4**
Preble, Commodore Edward 202
Prendergast, Major-General Harry 225
Preuilly, Marquis de 144
Preveza, Battle of 86, **89**
Prevost, Sir George 204
Pridham-Wippell, Vice Admiral Henry 304
Prien, Commander Gunther 290, **291**
Primauget, Captain 84
HMS *Prince of Wales*, sinking of the **311**
Pringle, Captain Thomas 166
prison hulks 101
privateers
Dunkirk Sortie **127**
English and Dutch 114, 115, 116, 119, 124, 125
Sea Beggars 116
see also commerce raiding; piracy
Provence 27, 63, 70, 71, 72
Providen, Battle of **169**
Prussia
Franco-Prussian War **216**
Second Schleswig War **218**
PT boats 21
Ptolemies 27, 42, 50
Puerto de Cavite, Battle of **129**
Puget, Pierre 142
Puke, Colonel Johan af 156–7
Punic Wars 27, 42, 43, **44–7**
punishment **100–101**
"Purple" encoding machine 314
Pusan, Battle of **110**

Q

Q-ships **269**
Qing dynasty 223
quadrants 126, 151, 163, 207
Quadruple Alliance, War of the **160**
Quasi War 200
Querini, Admiral Maffeo 67
Quiberon Bay, Battle of 162, **164–5**
Quiéret, Admiral Hugues 82–3
quinqueremes 27, 42, 50

R

radar 274, 278, 294, **296**
Raeder, Admiral Erich 280
Raizo, Rear Admiral 319
Raleigh, Sir Walter 118, 125
ramming 8, 27, 28, **31**, **32**, 40, 43, 52, 218, 219, 235, 236
Ramsay, Admiral Sir Bertram 300, 301
rangefinders 319
rating system 13, **14**, 104
Rawlings, Vice Admiral Sir Bernard 327
Rawson, Rear Admiral Harry 225
Reche, Captain Rheinhardt 293
recruitment 104–5, 163, 213, 247
conscription 92, 142, 158, 174, 213
press gangs 105, 163, 174, 213
Red Cliffs, Battle of 29, 52, 54, **55**
Red Sea 53, 308, 345
Regillus, Lucius Aemilius 48
Regulus, Marcus Atilius 47
Regulus cruise missiles 347
religion 78, **79**
reloading guns 117, 187
HMS *Repulse*, sinking of the **311**
Revenge 124, **125**
Reynald III Quarrel, Count of Avella 71
Rhine, River 43
Rhodes 42, 48, 64, 86
Richelieu, Cardinal 142
Rigny, Admiral Henri de 209
River Plate, Battle of the **280–81**
riverine operations, Vietnam **334–5**
Robert II of Artois, Count 71
rocket-launchers 110
Rodney, Admiral Sir George **158**, 159, 166, 167, 168, 169, 174, 179

Rome, Ancient 8, 27, 28, 29, 78
  First Punic War **44–7**
  Roman Civil Wars **49–51**
  Roman Naval Warfare **42–3**
  Rome Achieves Mastery of the Mediterranean **48–51**
Rommel, Erwin 301
Rooke, Admiral Sir George 148, 149
Roosevelt, Franklin D. 310
Roosevelt, Theodore 227
Roth-Steyr M1907 262
Rouen 74
Royal Naval College, Dartmouth 213
Royal Navy
  in the Age of Nelson **174–5**
  British naval officers (18th-century) **163**
  discipline and punishment **100–101**, 174, 213
  food and drink **306–7**
  mutinies 174, 176, 177
  organization, training and recruitment 105, 158, 163
  postwar 274–5, 340
  rating system 14
  religious personnel 79
  status of 107, 160, 200, 214, 216–17, 226
  in World War I **258**, 278
  in World War II 272–3, **278–9**
Royal Navy Air Service 277
Royal Oak, sinking of the 279, **291**
Rozhdestvenski, Admiral Zinovi 250–51
Rundstedt, Gerd von 301
Rupert, Prince 134, 139
Russell, Edward 145
Russia
  Crimean War **218**
  Great Northern War 151, **154–5**
  Napoleonic Wars 186, 187
  Russian Civil War **276**
  Russian Navy 151, 216
  Russo-Japanese War 215, 244, 245, 246, **248–51**, 252
  Russo-Swedish War 150–51, **156–7**
  Russo-Turkish War 201, **208**
  see also Soviet Union

S

Sacheon, Battle of 113
sacrifices 78
Said Bey, Admiral 208
sailing ships **10–15**
  Galera Real **96–9**
  Gun, Sail and Empire **104–7**
  Rise of Sail 28, **74–5**
  HMS *Victory* **194–7**
sails 8, 10, 12, 74, 75
St Clément, François de 92
Saints, Battle of the 158, 159, 166, **168–9**, 174
Sakamoto, Lieutenant Commander 244
Salamis, Battle of 30, 31, 32, **34–5**, 78
Samos 32
Sampson, Admiral William T. 239
samurai 52, 53, 59, 244, 245, 247
San Carlos Water, landings at **340–41**
San Juan de Ulúa, Battle of **116**
San Martin, Jose de 206
Sandwich, Earl of 138
Santa Cruz, Battle of 316, **318**
Santa Cruz, Marqués de 93–5, **117**, 119
Santiago de Cuba, Battle of 227, 238, **239**
Santo Domingo, Battle of **192**
Sardinia 44, 66, 68
Saumarez, Rear Admiral Sir James 187
Savo Island, Battle of **316**
Savoy 88, 93
Scanian War 152, **153**
Scapa Flow 259
Scarborough 262
Scheer, Admiral Reinhard 258, **260**, 265–7
Scheldt estuary 81, 82, 127
Schepke, Joachim 291
Scheveningen, Battle of 129, 130, **132**
Schleswig Wars **218**
Schley, Commodore Winfield Scott 239
Schoonveldt, Battle of **139**
Schwartzkopf, General Norman 345
Schwieger, Walther 268
Scott, Rear Admiral Norman 317
screw propulsion 16, 212, **217**
scurvy 198, 199, 306
Sea Beggars 116
Sea People 26, 30
Sea Skua anti-ship missiles 345
Sea Sparrow missiles 343
Sea Tigers **343**
sea-hawk ships 53
SEALORDS programme 334–5
Seine, River 76
Seleucids 27, 42, 48
Selim the Grim, Emperor 87
semi-submersible warships 236
Semmes, Captain Raphael 230
Sevastopol Forts, Battle of **218**
Sevastopol, Siege of 216
Seven Years War 158, 159, **162–5**
sextants 207, 317
Seymour, Admiral Sir Frederick 223
HMS *Sheffield*, sinking of the **341**
shells 16, 18, 201, 212, **220–21**, 245
Sherwood, Commander Robert 294
Shigeyoshi, Taguchi 59
Shima, Admiral 323, 324
Shimonoseki, Straits of 58–9
ship-launched missile technology 328
ships of the line **12**, **14**, 75, 104
  British naval officers **163**
  HMS *Victory* **194–7**
shot **220–21**
Sicily 31, 36, 37, 49, 63, 64, 65, 144, 160
  First Punic War **44–7**
  War of the Sicilian Vespers **70–73**
  World War II 300, 302, 304
siege machines 27
Sigfrid (Viking chieftan) 76
signalling **193**
Silla kingdom 54
Silvio, Doge 66
Simeon of Durham 77
Singapore, fall of 308
Sino-French War **224–5**
Sino-Japanese Wars 244, 245, **246–7**, 252–3, 256–7
Sinope, Battle of **218**
Sirte, Second Battle of **305**
Sjoblad, Erik 155
Slaak, Battle of **127**
slave trade 124, 134, 217, 225
slaves, as oarsmen 87, **92**
sleeping arrangements **172–3**, 196–7, 255, 288, 339
sloops-of-war 12, **13**, 14, **15**, 134, 151, 222
Sluys, Battle of 28, 29, **82–3**
smoothbore naval gun 209
Snider-Enfield rifle 225
Solebay, Battle of **138–9**
Solent, Battle of the **84–5**
Solomon Islands 308, 312, 320
Sommerville, Admiral James 282
sonar 274, 278, 294, **296**
Song dynasty 28, 52, 53, 54, 56
Sonni Sturluson 76
Sound, Battle of the **152**
South America 238–9
  The Americas at War **226**
  War of Jenkins' Ear **160**
  wars of independence 200–201, **206**
  see also Argentina; Brazil; Chile; Paraguay; Peru; Uruguay; Venezuela
South Korea *see* Korea
Southampton 74
Soviet Union
  Cold War 274, **330–31**
  collapse of 275
  Soviet Navy 274
  World War II 292
  see also Russia
Spain
  American Revolutionary War **167**
  Anglo-Spanish Wars **117–25**
  Battle of Lepanto **93–5**
  Chincha Islands War **238**
  Dutch Revolt 114, 116, **126–9**
  French Revolutionary Wars **178–9**
  Galera Real **96–9**
  Napoleonic Wars **187–91**
  Sicilian revolt against 144
  South American wars of independence 200–201, **206**
  Spanish Civil War **276**
  Spanish Empire 107, 114–17, 124–9, 160, 238–9
  Spanish-American War 215, 226, 227, 238, **239–43**
  voyages of exploration 29, 114, 116
  War of the Austrian Succession 160, **161**
  War of Jenkins' Ear **160**
  War of the Portuguese Succession **117**
  War of the Quadruple Alliance **160**
  War of the Spanish Succession 143, 144, **148–9**, 160
Spanish Armada 12, 105, 114, 115, 116, 117, **118–23**, 124
Spanish Netherlands 115, 116, 126–8
Sparta 28, 32, 33, 34, 36, 38–9
Spee, Admiral Graf Maximilian von 260, 261
Spencer, Midshipman Philip 101
spice trade 88, 126, 131
Spiridov, Admiral Grigory 208
Spithead mutiny 174, 176
Spragge, Admiral Sir Edward 139
Sprague, Rear Admiral Clifton 324, 325
Spruance, Rear Admiral Raymond 314, **319**, 321, 327
Squid bombs and mortars **297**
Sri Lanka 169, 308
  Civil War **343**
Stamford Bridge, Battle of 77, 80
Stark, Oscar 249
stealth technology 348
steam-power 16, 18, 201, 212, 213, 216
  early naval steam engines **217**
Steele, Sub-Lieutenant Gordon 276
Steer, Lieutenant Andrei Petrovich 249
steering wheel, ship's 14, 158
Stickney, Lieutenant J.L. 241
Stjernskjold, Nils 153
Stoddart, Rear Admiral Archibald 261
Strozzi, Filippo 117
Struble, Admiral Arthur 331
Sturdee, Vice Admiral Frederick 261
submarines **16**, **20**, 212, 215, 227
  anti-submarine warfare **296–7**
  how submarines work **291**
  hunter-killer 274, 275
  living conditions 172, 173, 199, 293, 307
  midget 301
  nuclear **22–3**, 274, 275, 328, 332–3, 341
  X-craft 281
  see also U-boats
Suenson, Commodore Edouard 218
Suffren, Admiral Pierre André de **169**
Sui dynasty 52
suicide bombers 342
Sukeyuki, Admiral 246, 247
Suleiman the Magnificent 87, 92
Suluc Mehmed Pasha 93–5
Sun Quan 55
super-dreadnoughts **18**, 215, **258**
  USS *Texas* **284–9**
superstitions 78
Suppiluliumus II, King 30
surface-to-air missiles (SAMs) 328
surgery 99, 197, **198–9**, 287, 339
Suriago Strait, Battle of **323–5**
surrender 106
Svein Estridsson 77
Svein Forkbeard, King of Denmark 76, 77
Svenskund
  First Battle of **156**
  Second Battle of 151, **157**
Svold, Battle of **76**
Sweden
  Baltic Conflicts 12, **150–51**
  Dutch-Swedish War **152**
  Great Northern War 151, **154–5**
  Polish-Swedish wars 152, **153**
  Russo-Swedish War 150, 151, **156–7**, 208
  Vikings 76, 77
swivel guns 87, 88, 161, 192
swoopers, covered 52
swords 192, 218
Sybota, Battle of **36**
Syracuse, Fourth Battle of 36, **37**
Syria 27, 42, 48, 64, 65
  Arab-Israeli Wars **342–3**

T

tacking **83**
tactics
  20th and 21st century 272–5
  age of galleys 27–8, 29, 52, 62
  age of sail 106–7
  age of steam and steel 212–15
  anti-submarine **296–7**
  boarding 28, 43, 44, 52, 62, 88, 104, 114, 165
  breaking the line 106, 159, 168–9, **179**
  broadsides 12, 104, **145**, 159
  crane's wing formation 112–13
  crossing the T **245**
  giving the prow 117
  grappling 28, 43, 52, 88
  hit-and-run 57
  kamikaze 274, 308, 309, 318, 320, 324, 327
  line of battle 106–7, 130, 131, **133**
  mêlée **127**
  off-shore bombardment **220**
  ramming 8, 27, 28, **31**, **32**, 40, 43, 52, 218, 219, 235, 236
  suicide bombers 342
  surrender 106
  tacking and wearing **83**
  trireme (diekplous and periplous) **31**
  weather gage 106, **159**
  Wolf Pack 290, **294**
  zigzag movements 296
  see also battle plans; technology; weapons
Taira clan 29, 56, 58–9, 60
Tang dynasty 52, 54
Tangdao, Battle of **54**
Taranto, Battle of 274, 302, **303**
Tassafaronga, Battle of **319**
technology
  amphibious warfare **326**
  ASDIC 296, 297
  astrolabes 71, 207
  backstaff 151
  binoculars 251, 309, 310
  boatswain's call 171
  chronometers 207
  compass 52, 207, 278
  compound engine **225**
  copper-plated hulls 14, 107
  corvus 27, 43, **44**, 52
  dreadnoughts and super-dreadnoughts **258**
  early naval aviation **277**
  early naval steam engines **217**
  Enigma machines 294, **305**
  fire control systems **319**
  geiger counters 331
  gun founding **221**
  horary quadrant 126
  how submarines work **291**
  Huff-Duff **296**
  longitude **207**
  missile defense **341**, 342, **343**
  modern air defense systems **341**
  Morse code **193**
  nautical instruments **207**
  night vision goggles 274
  nuclear power **328**
  portolan charts 63
  "Purple" encoding machine 314
  quadrants 126, 151, 163, 207
  rangefinders 319
  screw propulsion 16, 212, **217**
  sextants 207, 317
  ship-launched missile technology 328
  ship's steering wheel 14, 158
  signalling **193**
  sonar and radar 274, 278, 294, **296**
  stealth technology 348
  steam-power 16, 18, 201, 212, 213, 216, **217**
  telescopes 203, 207, 246
  U-boat computer 293
  see also weapons
Teddiman, Rear Admiral Thomas 134
Tegetthoff, Captain Wilhelm von 218, **219**
Telem, Benjamin 343
Tendra, Battle of **208**
terrorism 329, 344–7
  War on Terror 275, **346–7**
Tet offensive 334
USS *Texas* **284–9**
Texas-Mexican Wars **238**
Texel, Battle of **139**
Themistocles **32**, 33, 34, 78
Theophiliscus 48
Theramenes 36
Thermopylae, Battle of 33
Thibaw, King of Burma 225
Thirty Years War **152–3**
Thrasybulus 36
Three Kingdoms period 52, 55
Thucydides 36, 37
Thutmose III, Pharaoh 26
Tiberios III, Emperor 65
time lines
  Age of Galleys **28–9**
  Carriers, Submarines and Missile **274–5**
  Gun, Sail and Empire **106–7**
  Steam and Steel **214–15**
Ting Ju ch'ang, Admiral 246, 247
Tirpitz, Admiral Alfred von 217
Tirpitz, Attacks on 280, **281**
Tithrafstes 32
Togo Heihachiro, Admiral 245, 247–51, **248**, 252–5
Tokugawa shogunate 246
Tokyo, air raid on **311**
Toledo, Don Garcia de 92
Tomahawk cruise missiles 275, 347, 349
Tomomori, Taira no 56, **56**, 59
Tooke, William 157
Tordenskjold, Commander Peter **155**
torpedo boats **17**, **19**, **21**, 212, 227
torpedoes 16, 213, 215, **246**, 282, 303, 305, 341
Torrington, Arthur Herbert, 1st Earl of 146–7
Tostig 80
Toulon, Battle of **161**
Toulouse, Comte de 149
Tourville, Admiral Anne Hilarion de 144, 145, 146
Tovey, Admiral John 282–3
tower ships 52, 53
trade 6–7, 27, 29, 62–3, 66, 69, 88, 114–15, 126–7, 130, 131, 132
Trafalgar, Battle of 94, 174, 179, 180, 186, **188–91**
Trapani, Battle of **66**
trebuchets 53, 54
Tricomalee, Battle of **169**
Trident missiles 329
Triple Alliance, War of the **212**
Tripoli Harbor, Battle of **202**
triremes **8–9**, 26, 27, 28
  oarsmen **39**
  Olympias **40–41**
  ram of a **32**
  tactics **31**
Tromp, Admiral Cornelis 134, 139, 153
Tromp, Admiral Maarten 126, 128, **129**, 130, 131, 132, 133
Troubridge, Captain Thomas 178
Troude, Captain Aimable 187
Tsushima, Battle of 215, 244, 248, **250–51**, 252, 309
Tunis, Capture of 90–91
Turgut Reis 92
Turks *see* Ottoman Empire
Turner, Admiral 316
turret guns 16, 212, **264**
turtle ships **12**, **108**, 110, 111, 112, 113
Turtle submersible **166**
turumas 151
Tyrwhitt, Commodore Reginald 260, 262

U

U-boats
  crew **293**
  Wolf Pack tactics **294**
  World War I 215, 258–60, **268–9**
  World War II **20–21**, 173, 273, 278, 279, 280, **290–97**, 300, 301, 305, 307
Ubieta, Vice Admiral Luis de 276
udemas 151
Ugaki, Vice Admiral 327
Ukraine 74

Uluç Ali 92, 93–5
Umayyad Caliphate 65
United Provinces *see* Dutch Republic
United States
  American Civil War **226–37**
  American Revolutionary War **166–71**
  The Americas at War **226–7**
  Barbary Wars **202**, **205**
  Cold War **330–31**
  conflicts in the Pacific 244, 245
  First Gulf War **345**
  Korean War **329**
  Quasi War 200
  Spanish-American War 215, 226, 227, 238, **239–43**
  Vietnam War 274–5, 329, **334–5**
  War of 1812 200, **202–5**
  War on Terror 344, **346–7**
  World War I 268
  World War II 273, 274, 278, 279, 284–9, 298–300, 308–27
United States Navy
  aircraft carrier crew **313**
  in American Civil War 226–7
  discipline and punishment 100, 101
  food and drink 307
  foundations of 14, 107, 166, 167, 200
  in postwar era 274–5
  training 213, 313
  USS *Donald Cook* **348–51**
  USS *Lexington* **336–9**
  USS *Texas* **284–9**
  in World War II 272–4, 309
Uruguay
  War of Independence **206**
  War of the Triple Alliance **212**
Ushakov, Rear Admiral Fyodor Fyodorovich 208
Ushant, Battle of **167**, 194
Uthman, Caliph 64

V

Valcour Island, Battle of **166**
Valdivia, Battle of **206**
van den Vondel, Joost 129
van der Goes, Vice Admiral Philip 148
van Dorp, Lieutenant Admiral Filips 127
van Heemskerk, Jacob 126
van Wassenaer Obdam, Admiral Jacob 134, 152
Vandals 29, 43
Varangian Guard 77
Vauban, Marquis de 142
Vaudreuil, Marquis de 168
venereal disease 198, 287
Venezuela 331
  War of Independence **206**
Venice 12, 27, 64, 74, 86, 87, 88, 92, 93–5, 198, 208
  Rise of the Italian Maritime Republics 62, **66**
  Venetian Empire **63**
  Venetian galleys **11**
  Venetian-Genoese Wars **66–9**
  Venetian-Ottoman War **88**
Vernon, Vice Admiral Edward 158, 160
Versailles, Treaty of 259, 272
Very, Edward 214
Very pistol 214
Vian, Rear Admiral Sir Philip 301, 305
HMS *Victory* 114, 172, 189–91, 193, **194–7**, 198
Vierna, Rear Admiral Manuel de 276
Vietnam
  Sino-French War **224–5**
  Vietnam War 274–5, 329, **334–5**
Vigo Bay, Battle of **148**
Vikings 26, 28, 29, 74, **76–7**, 78
Villaret de Joyeuse, Louis Thomas 176, 177
Villeneuve, Rear Admiral Pierre-Charles 180–81, 188–91
Villette-Mursay, Marquis de 146
Vitgeft, Rear Admiral Vilgelm Karlovich 249
Vladivostok 251
volley guns 187
voyages of exploration 11, 29, 74, 75, 88, 108, 114, 116
Vulso, Lucius Manlius 47
Vyborg Bay, Breakout from 150, **156–7**

W

Wace, Master 81
Wachtmeister, Admiral Karl 155, 156
Wager, Admiral Charles 149
Wakizaka Yasuharu 112–13
walking the plank 100
Walton, Captain George 160
Walwyn, Commander Humphrey 264
War of 1812 200, **202–5**
War on Terror 275, 344, **346–7**
Warburton-Lee, Commodore Bernard 300
Warren, Rear Admiral Sir Peter 161
HMS *Warrior* 217
warships
  18th century **14–15**
  ancient galleys **8–9**, **26–9**
  early modern **12–13**, **104–7**
  iron and steel **16–17**, 201, **212–15**, 216, **217**
  late 19th century & World War I **18–19**, **258–9**
  medieval **10–11**, **74–5**
  modern **22–3**, **274–5**, **278–9**
  World War II **20–21**, **272–4**
washing facilities 172, 173, 255, 286
Washington Conference (1922) 272, 273, 274
water supplies 307
Wattrang, Vice Admiral Gustav 154
weapons
  anti-aircraft defense **317**
  anti-submarine **296–7**
  arpax 43, 49
  ballistas 43
  boarding weapons **165**
  cannon 29, 63, 74, 80, 86, 104, 108, 109, 114, 159, **184–5**, 212
  cannon-balls **185**, 190
  carronade 14, 178, 195
  catapults 43, 49, 52, **53**, 62, 65
  Chinese 53, 54
  Congreve rockets 192, **205**
  crossbows 52, 62, 67, 82, 83
  culverin **129**
  cutlass 107, 165, 174
  depth charges **297**
  dirks 245
  firepower 27, 29, 75, 86–7
  fireships 55, 76, 120, 121, 128, 129, 136–7, 139, 145, 153, 187
  flamethrowers 62
  grappling hooks 128
  Greek fire 8, 27, 29, **62**, 65
  Hedgehog bomblet 297
  longbows 82
  medieval 62
  mines 215, 245, 258, **261**, 279, 329
  mortars **297**
  nuclear 272, **328**, 329, 330
  pikes 165
  Q-ships **269**
  ram of a trireme **32**
  rocket-launchers 110
  Roman 43, 49
  shells 16, 18, 201, 212, **220–21**, 245
  shot **220–21**
  siege machines 27
  Squid bombs and mortars **297**
  swords 192, 218
  torpedoes 16, 213, 215, **246**, 282, 303, 305, 341
  trebuchets 53, 54
  see also guns; missiles; technology
wearing **83**
weather gage 106, **159**
Webley Mark VI revolver 265
Weddigen, Captain-Lieutenant Otto 268
Weihaiwei, Battle of **247**
Wentworth, Major-General Thomas 160
Werner, Herbert A. 307
West Indies 162, 166, 168, 171, 192
Westmoreland, William 335
wheellock muskets 152
Whitby 262
Whitehead, Robert 246
Willaumez, Admiral Jean-Baptiste 192
William III, King of England 146
William the Conqueror 80
William of Nassau, Prince of Orange 116
Willoughby, Captain Nesbit 192
Wilson, Sir Arthur 268
Wind, Admiral Jorgen 153
Winslow, Captain John 230
Wolf Pack tactics 290, **294**
women 141
Won Kuyan 110, 111
Woodward, Admiral John "Sandy" 340, **341**
Worden, Lieutenant John L. 235, 237
World War I 212, 215, 245, **258–9**
  The U-Boat War **268–9**
  warships **18–19**, 258–9
  World War I at Sea 1914–16 **260–67**
World War II 272–4, **278–327**
  Battles in the Pacific **308–27**
  Battles in the West **278–305**
  warships **20–21**, 272–4
Wrangel, Karl Gustav 152
Wright, Rear Admiral 319

X

xebecs 87
Xenophon 38
Xerxes, King of Persia 32, 33, 34–5
Xiangyang, Siege of 53, **56**

Yalu River, Battle of 244, **246**, 247
Yamamoto, Admiral Isoroku 308, **309**, 310, 314, 317
Yamen, Battle of 54, **56**
Yangtze River 54, 55, 56, 57
  Yangtze Incident **330**
Yashima, Battle of **56**
Yazid 65
Yellow Sea 52, 111
  Battle of 248, **249**
Yi Sunshin, Admiral 108, 109, **110**, 111, 112–13
Yoichi, Nasu no 56
Yom Kippur War 342
York, James, Duke of *see* James II
Yorktown 171
Yoshihiro, Shimazu 111
Yoshimaka, Minamoto no 56
Yoshitsune, Minamoto no 56, 59
Yoshiyasu, General Yada 56
Yuan dynasty 52, 54, 56, 57

Z

Zaccaria, Benedetto 66
Zanzibar, Battle of **225**
Zeebrugge, raids on **269**
Zeno, Admiral Carlo 68, 69
Zhang Hongfan, General 56
Zhang Peilun 224
Zhang Shijie, General 56
Zheng He, Admiral 28, 53
Zheng Jia 54
Zhou Yu 55
Zhu Yuanzhang 57
zigzag movements 296
Zonchio, Battle of **88**
Zuiderzee, Battle of **116**

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:

Key:
(a-above; b-below/bottom; c-centre; f-far; l-left; r-right; t-top)
AA – The Art Archive;
AAA – Ancient Art & Architecture Collection;
BAL – Bridgeman Art Library;
IWM – Imperial War Museum;
MEPL – Mary Evans Picture Library;
NMM – National Maritime Museum;
UK Crown – © Crown Copyright 2008 reproduced with the permission of the Controller, HMSO, London

1 DK Images: Barcelona Maritime Museum. **2–3** Getty Images: Digital Vision. **4–5** Corbis: The Gallery Collection. **6** DK Images: Barcelona Maritime Museum (tc) (tr); Hellenic Maritime Museum (tl); Mikasa Preservation Society (bl) (bc) (br). **7** DK Images: © UK Crown (tr); USS Donald Cook (bl); USS Lexington (br) (bc). **8** DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (tl) (cr). Science & Society Picture Library: (bl). **9** DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (t) (c). MEPL: (b). **10** DK Images: Statens Historiska Museum, Stockholm (bc). Science & Society Picture Library: (t) (cl) (cr). **11** BAL: Musee de la Marine, Paris, France, Lauros / Giraudon (br). DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (t). Science & Society Picture Library: (c). **12** John Hamill: (cl). NMM: (tr). Science & Society Picture Library: (cr). **13** akg-images: Nederlands Scheepvaart Museum (br). AA: Private Collection Italy / Alfredo Dagli Orti (cl). BAL: Private Collection, Photo © Bonhams, London, UK (cr). NMM: (t). **14** BAL: Private Collection, Photo / Bonhams (cr). DK Images: NMM (t). NMM: (cl). **15** NMM: (tr) (br) (cl) (cr). **16** DK Images: Gettysburg National Military Park, PA (b). © Musée National de la Marine: (tr). NMM: (c). The Royal Navy Submarine Museum: (tl). **17** DK Images (t). Getty Images: Imagno (br). NMM: (ca) (cb). **18** DK Images: IWM (b). NMM: (t) (c). **19** Cody Images: (b). NMM: (ca) (cb) (t). **20** DK Images (cb); Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (b); NMM (t). NMM: (ca). **21** DK Images: Andy Crawford (cb); NMM (ca). www.ww2incolor.com: (br). NMM: (t). **22** DK Images: NMM (ca); Gary Ombler (t). NMM: (cb). **23** DK Images: Tim Ridley (t); © UK Crown (ca) (cb). Courtesy of US Navy: Todd P. Cichonowicz (b). **24–25** DK Images: Averof Museum. **26** AA: Gianni Dagli Orti (bl). British Library: (br). Corbis: Araldo de Luca (c). DK Images: Averof Museum (bc). Photo Scala, Florence: National Archaeological Museum (tl). **27** Alamy Images: North Wind Picture Archives (t). AA: Topkapi Museum Istanbul / Alfredo Dagli Orti (bc). BAL Palazzo Pubblico, Siena, Italy (bl). DK Images: Barcelona Maritime Museum (br). **28** AA: AA379160 (tl). DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (bl); Hoplite Society (br). **29** AA: Museo Correr Venice / Alfredo Dagli Orti (t). DK Images: NMM (b). **30** AAA: (c). AA: Dagli Orti / Museo Naval Madrid (b). Corbis: Bettmann (t). **31** Corbis: Bettmann (t). DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (c). **32** Corbis: Werner Forman (br). DK Images: Averof Museum (bl). **33** Alamy Images: broombank (b). **34** MEPL: (b). Werner Forman Archive: British Museum (t). **36** Alamy Images: Visual Arts Library (London) (c). **37** Corbis: Bettmann (b). DK Images: Hoplite Society (c). **38** AAA: (b). AA: Dagli Orti / Museo Naval Madrid (t). **39** Corbis: Dagli Orti (b). **40** MEPL: Hans Bohrdt (c). **40–41** DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum. **42** Corbis: Araldo de Luca (t). Peter Newark's Military Pictures: (b). **43** Corbis: Araldo de Luca (t). Photo Scala, Florence: Ministero Beni e Att. Culturali (b). TopFoto.co.uk: Alinari (c). **44** akg-images: Peter Connolly (b); Nimatallah (c). **45** MEPL: (b). 46 AAA: (t). **47** Photo Scala, Florence: (t). **48** AAA: (bl) (fbl). DK Images: Dave King (cr). **49** AA: Dagli Orti / Museo Prenestino Palestrina (b). BAL: Louvre, Paris (cl). **50** Corbis: Fine Art Photographic Library (t). NMM: (b). **52** British Library: (tl). China Tourism Photo Library: (bl). **53** British Library: (tr). China Tourism Photo Library: (bc). DK Images: The Wallace Collection, London (cr). **54–55** China Foto Press. **55** Corbis: Asian Art & Archaeology, Inc. (tc). **56** Corbis: Asian Art & Archaeology, Inc (cl). DK Images: University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge (br). **57** British Library: (bl). Corbis: Asian Art & Archaeology, Inc. (t). **58** The Trustees of the British Museum: (tl). **59** V&A Images: (tc). **60–61** AA: Oriental Art Museum Genoa / Alfredo Dagli Orti. **62** BAL: Prado, Madrid, Spain (bl). Photo Scala, Florence: Doge's Palace (tl). **63** AA: Naval Museum Genoa / Alfredo Dagli Orti (cl). Photo Scala, Florence: Doge's Palace (tr). **64** DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (b). **65** AAA: (c). **66** BAL: Louvre, Paris, France, Lauros / Giraudon (br). **67** DK Images: The Wallace Collection, London (tr). North Wind Picture Archives: (br). **68** AA: Museo Bottacin Padua / Gianni Dagli Orti (tc) (tr). **68–69** AA: Museo Correr Venice / Alfredo Dagli Orti. **70** akg-images: British Library (cb). iStockphoto.com: (b). **71** AA: Bibliothèque Nationale Paris / Alfredo Dagli Orti (b). DK Images: Max Alexander (tr). **72** BAL: Museu Maritim Atarazanas, Barcelona, Catalunya, Spain, Index (b). NMM: (c). SuperStock: age fotostock (tr). **74** AA: Historiska Muséet Oslo / Alfredo Dagli Orti (bl). BAL: Musee de la Marine, Paris, France, Archives Charmet (tl). British Library: (cr). **75** AA: Marine Museum Lisbon / Gianni Dagli Orti (br). BAL: Musee de la Marine, Paris, France, Archives Charmet (tr). **76** Corbis: The Gallery Collection (br). **77** TopFoto.co.uk: The British Library /HIP (c). The Viking Ship Museum, Roskilde, Denmark: (l). **78** DK Images: The British Museum (cl). Museu Marítim de Barcelona: (br). **79** BAL: Private Collection (t). DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (cl); © UK Crown (bc). IWM: (br). **80** DK Images: Private Collection (cr). **80–81** BAL: Musee de la Tapisserie, Bayeux, France, With special authorisation of the city of Bayeux (b). **81** Alamy Images: Nick Miners. MEPL: (cr). **82** NMM: (tr). **82–83** AA: Bibliothèque Nationale Paris / Harper Collins Publishers. **84** The Mary Rose Trust: (cr). **84–85** Artists Harbour Ltd./www.artistsharbour.com. **85** DK Images:

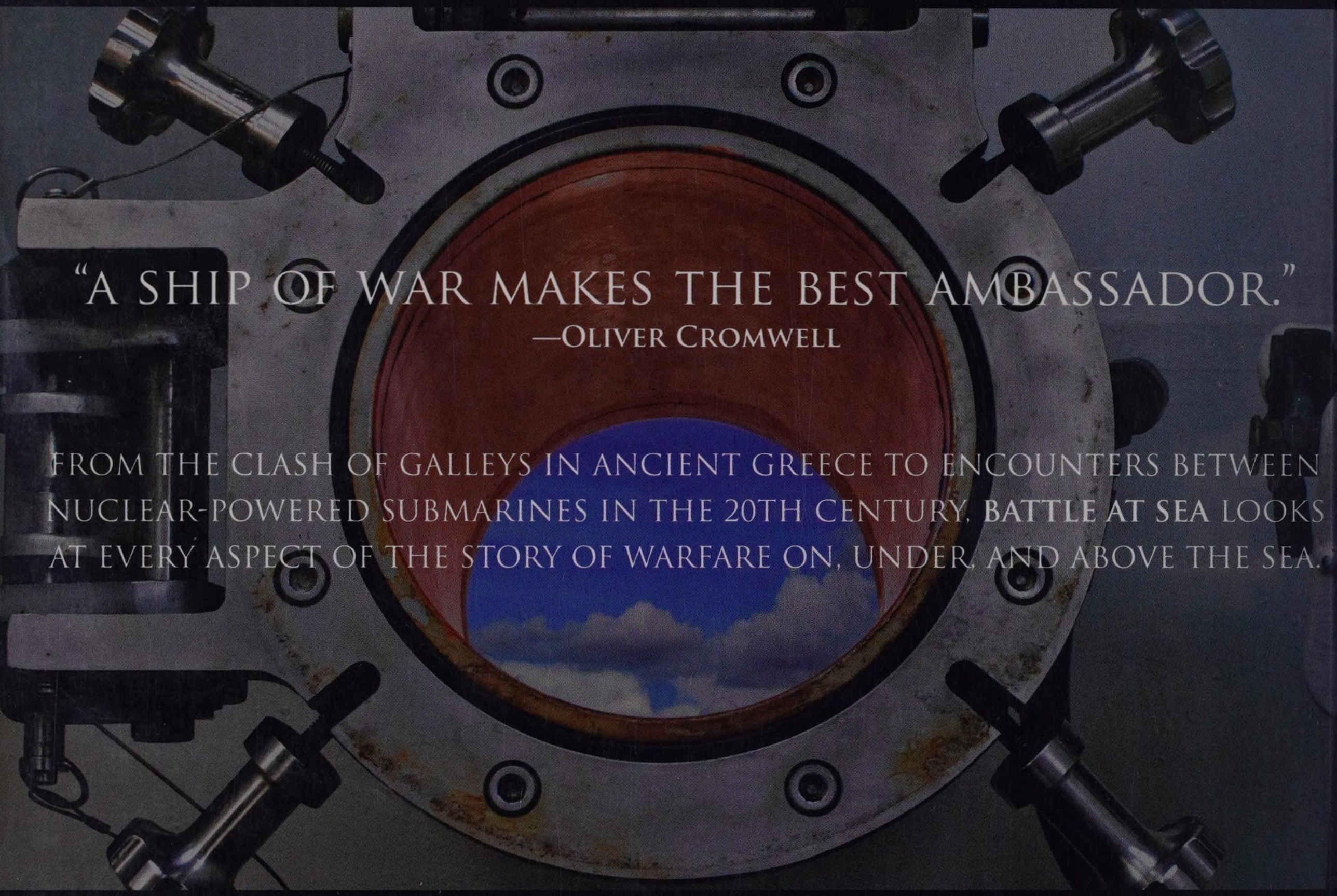
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

NMM (t). **86** AA: Museo Correr Venice / Alfredo Dagli Orti (cr); Topkapi Museum Istanbul / Alfredo Dagli Orti (tl). BAL: Topkapi Palace Museum, Istanbul, Turkey (bl). **87** AA: Museo Don Alvaro de Bazan Viso Del Marqués / Gianni Dagli Orti] (b). **88** BAL: British Museum, London, UK (cr). DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (b). **89** Corbis: Arte & Immagini srl (c). Istanbul Naval Museum: Turkish General Staff, Ankara (tl) (b). **90-91** AA: University Library Geneva / Gianni Dagli Orti. **92** BAL: Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris, France, Lauros / Giraudon (b). Corbis: Araldo de Luca (tl). **93** akg-images: (bl). Photo Scala, Florence: Maps Gallery (t). **94** DK Images: Barcelona Maritime Museum (tl). NMM: (b). **96** BAL: Museu Maritim Atarazanas, Barcelona, Catalunya, Spain, Index (c). **96-97** DK Images: Barcelona Maritime Museum. **98-99** DK Images: Barcelona Maritime Museum. **99** DK Images: © UK Crown (br). **100** DK Images: © UK Crown (bl). NMM: On loan from Lymington and Pennington Town Council (c). San Diego Historical Society : (tr). **100-101** MEPL: ILN Pictures (b). **101** DK Images: © UK Crown (crb). NMM: (tr). Wellcome Library, London: (cra). **104** Corbis: Bettmann (br); Macduff Everton (bc); Joel W. Rogers (c). DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (bl). **105** AAA: (br). BAL: Private Collection, Photo © Rafael Valls Gallery, London, UK (t); Timothy Millett Collection (cl). DK Images: © UK Crown (bc). NMM: (bl). **106** DK Images: © UK Crown (br). NMM: (cl). **106-107** DK Images: © UK Crown. **107** DK Images: Courtesy of the Gettysburg National Military Park, PA (c). NMM: (tr). **108** AAA: Europhoto (tl). Korean War Academy: (b). **109** AAA: Europhoto (cl) (br). **110** AAA: Europhoto (bl). www.koreanhero.net: Chesungdang (Victory Hall) (tc). **110-111** AAA: Europhoto (c). **111** AAA: Europhoto (c) (br). **112** AAA: Europhoto (t). **113** AAA: Europhoto (t). **114** akg-images: Nederlands Scheepvaart Museum (tl). AA: Biblioteca Nazionale Marciana Venice / Gianni Dagli Orti (cr). BAL: The Crown Estate (bl). **115** akg-images: Nederlands Scheepvaart Museum (tr). Rijksmuseum Amsterdam: (b). **116** AAA: University Library Geneva / Gianni Dagli Orti (b). **117** AA: Museo Don Alvaro de Bazan Viso Del Marqués / Gianni Dagli Orti (cl); San Carlos Museum Mexico City / Gianni Dagli Orti (cr). **118** NMM: (cr). **118-119** AA: Society of Apothecaries / Eileen Tweedy (b). **119** NMM: (tr). **120** NMM: (tl) (b). **122-123** AAA. **124** AA: Marine Museum Lisbon / Gianni Dagli Orti (b). BAL: NMM, UK (c). **125** AA: University Library Geneva / Gianni Dagli Orti (br). MEPL: (t). **126** akg-images: Rijksmuseum (b). NMM: (cr). **127** Alamy Images: AAA Photostock (tc). MEPL: Rue Des Archives (bl). NMM: (c). **128** DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (c). **128-129** NMM: (b). **129** NMM: (tc). **130** Alamy Images: MEPL (b). NMM: (tl). **131** DK Images: Kim Sayer (cl). Peter Newark's Military Pictures: (br). **132** MEPL: (b). NMM: (c). **133** DK Images: Royal Armouries (tr). NMM: (t). **134** MEPL: (cr). NMM: (c). **135** NMM: (tl) (b). **136-137** NMM. **138** BAL: Bonhams, London, UK (bl). NMM: (cr). **138-139** NMM: (b). **139** NMM: (tr). **140** DK Images: © UK Crown (bl); Dave King (tr); © UK Crown (c). IWM: (cl). MEPL: (br). **141** DK Images: USS Donald Cook (cr). NMM: (tc) (b). **142** Peter Newark's Military Pictures: (tl) (bl). **143** AA: Musée Saint Denis Reims / Gianni Dagli Orti (br). Peter Newark's Military Pictures: (tr). Rama: Musée national de la Marine, Paris, France (c). **144** DK Images: Explosion! Museum/Royal Armouries (b). NMM: (c). **145** NMM: (t). Réunion des Musées Nationaux Agence Photographique: Martine Beck-Coppola. **146** BAL: British Museum, London, UK (tr). NMM: (b). **148** Corbis: Stapleton Collection (tc). NMM: (cr) (b). **149** NMM: (t). **150** AA: Maritime Museum Stockholm Sweden / Alfredo Dagli Orti (tl). **150-151** AA: Naval Museum Genoa / Alfredo Dagli Orti (b). **151** akg-images: Residenzmuseum (br). AA: Maritime Museum Stockholm Sweden / Alfredo Dagli Orti (tr). NMM: (c). **152** DK Images: Royal Armouries (c). NMM: (b). **153** AA: Maritime Museum Stockholm Sweden / Alfredo Dagli Orti (c). NMM: (br). **154** BAL: Hermitage, St. Petersburg, Russia (b). **155** Det Nationalhistoriske Museum på Frederiksborg: (tr). State Hermitage, St Petersburg: (cr) (b). **156** State Hermitage, St Petersburg: (bc). **156-157** Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia: (b). **157** BAL: Radichtchev Museum, Saratov, Russia (tr). NMM: (cl). **158** BAL: Private Collection, © Royal Exchange Art Gallery at Cork Street, London (tl). DK Images: NMM (c). NMM: (bl). **158-159** NMM: Greenwich Hospital Collection (b). **159** NMM: (tr). **160** Corbis: Michael Freeman (br). NMM: (cl) (bl). **161** DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (t). BAL: Yale Center for British Art, Paul Mellon Collection, USA (b). **162** NMM: (cr). **162-163** BAL: Musee des Beaux-Arts, Marseille, France, Giraudon (b). **163** NMM: (t). Peter Newark's Military Pictures: (br). **164-165** NMM: (b). **165** DK Images: Royal Armouries (cr). NMM: (br). **166** BAL: Collection of the New-York Historical Society, USA (t). DK Images: © UK Crown (br). **167** Corbis: Stapleton Collection (tc). NMM: (c); Greenwich Hospital Collection (b). **168** NMM: (bl) (cr). **168-169** BAL: NMM, UK (t). **169** BAL: Chateau de Versailles, France, Giraudon (cr). **170** Réunion des Musées Nationaux Agence Photographique: Daniel Arnaudet / Gérard Blot (tl). **171** Corbis: (tc). NMM: (cl). **172** DK Images: © UK Crown (cl) (c); © UK Crown (tr) (bl). **172-173** MEPL: (b). **173** Corbis: Bettmann (tl). DK Images: USS Lexington (cr). **174** Alamy Images: Frumm John / Hemis.fr (bl). DK Images: Explosion! Museum/Royal Armouries (c). NMM: Greenwich Hospital Collection (tl). **174-175** NMM: (b). **176** DK Images: Judith Miller / Wallis and Wallis (c). NMM: (b). **177** NMM: (tr) (cl). **178** NMM: (b). **178-179** NMM: Greenwich Hospital Collection. **180** NMM: (tr) (b). **184** AA: Nelson Museum Monmouth / Eileen Tweedy (br). **184-185** DK Images: © UK Crown. **185** NMM: (bl). **186** NMM: (cl). **186-187** NMM: (b). **187** DK Images: Royal Armouries (t). **188-189** BAL: Private Collection (b). **189** AA: Eileen Tweedy (cr); Royal Naval Museum Portsmouth / Harper Collins Publishers (tr). **190** akg-images: NMM (b). NMM: (t). **192** Alamy Images: Rolf Richardson (cr). DK Images: Explosion! Museum/Royal Armouries (b); Royal Armouries (tl). **193** DK Images: IWM (ca); © UK Crown (br). Peter Newark's Military Pictures: (tr). **194** BAL: Royal Naval Museum, Portsmouth, Hampshire, UK (c). **194-195** DK Images: © UK Crown. **196-197** DK Images: © UK Crown. **198** DK Images: © UK Crown (tr) (bl) (br). NMM: (bc). **199** Corbis: (bl); Hulton-Deutsch Collection (tr). DK Images: Judith Miller / Branksome Antiques (tl). © UK Crown (br). **200** Corbis: Smithsonian Institution (c). DK Images: Wallace Collection (bl). **201** NMM: (tl) (b) (tr). **202** BAL: Atwater Kent Museum of Philadelphia/ Courtesy of Historical Society of Pennsylvania Collection (cl). NMM: (bc). United States Naval Institute: (cr). **203** Corbis: PoodlesRock (t). NMM: (c). **204** NMM: (c). **204-205** BAL: Courtesy of the Council, National Army Museum, London, UK/ BAL Nationality. **205** Science & Society Picture Library: Science Museum (tl). **206** AA: Private Collection Scotland (cr). **207** BAL: Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris (tr). NMM: (cr) (bl) (c) (cra). **208** akg-images: Coll. Archiv f.Kunst & Geschichte (c). **209** DK Images: Hellenic Maritime Museum (cl). **210-211** DK Images: Mikasa Preservation Association; Museo Nacional de Historia Lima / Gianni Dagli Orti (br). **212** AA: Museo Nacional de Bellas Artes Buenos Aires / Gianni Dagli Orti (bc); Nacional de Bellas Artes Buenos Aires / Gianni Dagli Orti (cl). DK Images: Explosion! Museum (cr). **213** akg-images: Coll. Archiv f.Kunst & Geschichte. (bc). BAL: Collection of the New-York Historical Society, USA (bl). DK Images: Mikasa Preservation Association (br). Science & Society Picture Library: (t). **214** BAL: Chicago History Museum, USA (tl). DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (cl); Gettysburg National Military Park, PA (br); NMM (bl). **215** AA: IWM / Eileen Tweedy (tr). DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (br). **216** BAL: Royal Hospital Chelsea, London, UK (tl). MEPL: (b). **217** BAL: Royal Hospital Chelsea, London, UK (tr). DK Images: Tim Ridley (cl). **218** BAL: Central Naval Museum, St. Petersburg, Russia (cl); Private Collection/ Archives Charmet (br). DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (cr). **219** Getty Images: Imagno (t) (br). **220** DK Images: US Army Heritage and Education Center - Military History Institute (br). NMM: (tr). **220-221** DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower. **221** Stapleton Collection: (b). **222** AA: Eileen Tweedy (c). NMM: (br). **223** AA: John Meek (cr). DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (t) Explosion! Museum/NMM (br). **224-225** Getty Images: Roger Viollet. **225** DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (b); NMM (tr). **226** Peter Newark's Military Pictures (tl) DK Images (c). **226-227** AA: Naval Museum Genoa / Alfredo Dagli Orti (b). **227** Peter Newark's Military Pictures (tr). **228** DK Images: Confederate Memorial Hall, New Orleans (bl). **228-229** BAL: Atwater Kent Museum of Philadelphia/ Courtesy of Historical Society of Pennsylvania Collection (b). **229** Corbis: (tr). Naval Historical Center: (cl). **230-231** Corbis: Burstein Collection (b). **231** AA: (br). **232-233** BAL: Chicago History Museum, USA. **234** Corbis: Bettmann (tr). **234-235** Corbis: Bettmann. **236** BAL: Private Collection/ Peter Newark Military Pictures (bl). Corbis: Medford Historical Society Collection (tl). DK Images: US Army Heritage and Education Center - Military History Institute (cl). **238** NMM: (br). San Jacinto Museum of History: (cl). **239** Corbis: (b). NMM: (tc). **240** Corbis: Hulton-Deutsch Collection (tr). **240-241** Naval History & Heritage Command: Courtesy of the Naval Historical Foundation, donation of Mrs. F. Parotto. **242** Corbis: (b). NMM: (tc). **244** BAL: Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris, France/ Lauros / Giraudon (bl). Corbis: Philadelphia Museum of Art (tl). **245** Corbis: Philadelphia Museum of Art (tr). NMM: (cl). **246** Alamy Images: The Print Collector (bl). NMM: (c). The Royal Navy Submarine Museum: (br). **247** Corbis: Philadelphia Museum of Art (t) (br). **248** Corbis: (bl). **248-249** Corbis: Bettmann. **250** MEPL: (bl). **252** Getty Images: Hulton Archive (ca). **252-253** DK Images: Mikasa Preservation Society. **254-255** DK Images: Mikasa Preservation Society (b). **256-257** Corbis: Philadelphia Museum of Art. **258** Alamy Images: MEPL (c). Cody Images: (t). DK Images: NMM (b). **259** Cody Images: (b). DK Images: Gary Ombler (c). **260** DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (bc). MEPL: Albrecht Meyer (br). **261** Cody Images: (bl) (br). DK Images: Explosion! Museum/Royal Naval Museum (tr). **262** AA: IWM (cb). DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (ca). **263** NMM: (t). **263-264** Corbis: Bettmann (b). **264** DK Images: Texas Parks and Wildlife Department (tl). Getty Images: Popperfoto (tr). Peter Newark's Military Pictures: (c). **264-265** AA: Eileen Tweedy (b). **265** NMM: (cr). **266** Alamy Images: Classic Image (t). AA: IWM (b). DK Images: IWM (cl). **268** Cody Images: (b); © UK Crown (ca). DK Images: © UK Crown (c). **269** Cody Images: (tl) (b). DK Images: © UK Crown (cr). **270-271** DK Images: Texas Parks and Wildlife Department. **272** DK Images: Texas Parks and Wildlife Department (bl) (bc); USS Donald Cook (br). TopFoto.co.uk: Ullsteinbild (c). **273** Cody Images: (t). DK Images: Old Flying Machine Company (c); Texas Parks and Wildlife Department (bc); USS Donald Cook (bl); USS Lexington (br); © UK Crown (bl). **274** DK Images: © UK Crown (cl). Courtesy of US Navy: Danielle M. Sosa (cr). **275** DK Images: © UK Crown (bl) (br). Mc Grogan's Patch Design LLC: Donald Mc Grogan BMCS (SW) USN Ret. DAV (cl). Courtesy of US Navy: Jeremie Yoder (t). **276** MEPL: (br). TopFoto.co.uk: (c). **277** Cody Images: (br). Corbis: Bettmann (tr). DK Images: IWM (cl). MEPL: (crb). US Air Force: (cr). **278** DK Images: © UK Crown (bl). Getty Images: Fox Photos (t). **279** Corbis: Bettmann (t). DK Images: Explosion! Museum/Royal Naval Museum (c). **280** Peter Newark's Military Pictures: (c). **280-281** TopFoto.co.uk: (b). **281** Naval Historical Center: (cr). **283** akg-images: Ullstein Bild (t). **284-285** DK Images: USS Texas. **286-287** DK Images: USS Texas. **288-289** DK Images: USS Texas. **291** Cody Images. Getty Images: Hulton Archive (r). **292** The Museum of World War II: (t). **292-293** MEPL: (cl). TopFoto.co.uk: (b). **293** The Museum of World War II: (t). TopFoto.co.uk: (b). **294-295** TopFoto.co.uk: Topham / AP (b). **296** Cody Images: (t). DK Images: © UK Crown (c). **296-297** DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (b). **297** Cody Images: (t). **298-299** Corbis: Phan J. Alan Elliott. **300** DK Images: IWM (bl). **300-301** www.ww2incolor.com: (b). **301** DK Images: © UK Crown (t). www.ww2incolor.com: (cr). **302** Cody Images: (b). **303** DK Images: Gary Ombler (t). MEPL: (cr). TopFoto.co.uk: (b). **304** NMM: (t). **304-305** TopFoto.co.uk: (b). **305** DK Images: IWM (c) (br). **306** DK Images: Barcelona Maritime Museum (t); © UK Crown (b). **307** DK Images: Explosion! Museum / Museum of Naval Firepower (tc); Hellenic Maritime Museum (cr). Getty Images: Hulton Archive (br). MEPL: (tr). **308** Cody Images: (tr) (b). Courtesy of The Museum of World War II, Natick, Massachusetts: (cl). **309** Christie's Images Ltd.: (cl). Cody Images: (br). **310** Courtesy of The Museum of World War II, Natick, Massachusetts: (c). **310-311** Getty Images: MPI (b). **311** Corbis: (cr). Getty Images: Hulton Archive (tl). **312** Cody Images: (tl) (b). NMM: (tr). **313** Naval Historical Center: (br). **314** National Museum of The United States Air Force: (t). **315** Corbis: (t). **316** Naval Historical Center: (b). **317** DK Images: (t); Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (br); IWM (tc). Naval Historical Center: (bl). **318** www.historicalimagebank.com: (cr). Naval Historical Center: (bl). PA Photos: (t). **319** Getty Images: American Stock (cl). **321** Cody Images: (br). **322-323** TopFoto.co.uk: Jon Mitchell (b). **323** Corbis: Bettmann (tr). **324** Cody Images: (tl). Corbis: (b). **326** Bovington Tank Museum: Roland Groom (br). Naval Historical Center: (c). **327** Getty Images: US Navy/Time & Life Pictures (bl). Naval Historical Center: (t). **328** Corbis: Reuters (tl). **328-329** Getty Images: BAE Systems (b). **329** Corbis: Reuters (tr). DK Images: The Trustees of the IWM (br). **330** Getty Images: C. K. Rosk/US Army/National Archives/ Time Life Pictures (b). **331** DK Images: © UK Crown (br). Getty Images: Carl Mydans/Time & Life Pictures (tr). **332-333** Corbis: Hulton-Deutsch Collection. **334** Corbis: Tim Page (b). Getty Images: Kerry Campaign (bl). Mc Grogan's Patch Design LLC: Donald Mc Grogan BMCS (SW) USN Ret. DAV (ca). **335** Corbis: Bettmann (tr). **336** Alamy Images: Ian Leonard (bl). USS Lexington: (c). **336-337** DK Images: USS Lexington. **337** Alamy Images: Ian Leonard (bc). **338-339** DK Images: USS Lexington. **340** Rex Features: John W Jockel (c). **341** Cody Images: (tr). DK Images: © UK Crown (c). Rex Features: Nils Jorgensen (cl). Courtesy of US Navy: Kenny Swartout (br). **342** Cody Images: (cr) (bl). **343** DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (c). Getty Images: R. Beesley/U.S. Navy (t). PA Photos: Gemunu Amarasinghe/AP (br). **344** Department of Defense, Media: (cl). Courtesy of US Navy: Joshua Adam Nuzzo (br). **345** Corbis: (t). DK Images: Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower (b). **346** Corbis: Reuters (c). Department of Defense, Media: (b). Getty Images: US Navy (t). **347** Alamy Images: Bob Pardue (cr). Department of Defense, Media: (b). Rex Features: Roger-Viollet (tr). **348** Courtesy of US Navy: Michael W. Pendergrass (cl). **348-349** DK Images: USS Donald Cook. **350-351** DK Images: USS Donald Cook. **352-353** Corbis: Thomas Hartwell

All other images © Dorling Kindersley
For further information see:
www.dkimages.com

Dorling Kindersley would like to thank the following:

Mariana Evmolpidou, Anastasia Anagnostopoulou-Paloubi, Kleopatra Rigaki (Hellenic Maritime Museum); P. Sofikitis, Captain Dalianis, John Rigas, Dimitris Grigoropoulos (Averof Museum/Trireme Olympias); Alba Espargaró, Miriam Vallvé (Barcelona Maritime Museum); Marc Farrance, Nick Bremner, Derek Gurney, Phil Hazell (Explosion! Museum of Naval Firepower); Alexandra Geary (Royal Navy Submarine Museum); Sandi McNorton (USS *Lexington*); Andy Smith & staff (USS *Texas*); Chief Kreidel, staff & crew (USS *Donald Cook*)
Jacket design: Duncan Turner
Additional design and DTP assistance: Stephanie Allingham, Adam Brackenbury, Almudena Diaz, Peter Draper, Luca Frassinetti, John Goldsmid, Edward Kinsey, Tim Lane, Dean Morris, Phil Sergeant, Balwant Singh, Becky Tennant, Adam Walker



"A SHIP OF WAR MAKES THE BEST AMBASSADOR."
—OLIVER CROMWELL

FROM THE CLASH OF GALLEYS IN ANCIENT GREECE TO ENCOUNTERS BETWEEN NUCLEAR-POWERED SUBMARINES IN THE 20TH CENTURY, **BATTLE AT SEA** LOOKS AT EVERY ASPECT OF THE STORY OF WARFARE ON, UNDER, AND ABOVE THE SEA.

Jacket images: *Front:* **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Rafael Valls Gallery, London, UK bc (painting); **Corbis:** Bettmann bl; Robert Marien t; Ron Sachs/CNP fbr; **Dorling Kindersley:** Courtesy of US Navy: Danielle M. Sosa br; USS Lexington bc; **Getty Images:** Popperfoto fbl. *Back:* **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Rafael Valls Gallery, London, UK bc (painting); **Corbis:** Bettmann bl; Ron Sachs/CNP fbr; **Dorling Kindersley:** Courtesy of US Navy: Danielle M. Sosa br; USS Lexington bc, t; **Getty Images:** Popperfoto fbl. *Spine:* **Dorling Kindersley:** USS Lexington

All other images © **Dorling Kindersley**
For further information see:
www.dkimages.com

$24.95 USA
$27.50 Canada

Packed with photographs, maps, 3-D battle plans, eyewitness accounts, technology and weapon features, descriptions of life on board, and vivid accounts of the greatest engagements at sea, this is the definitive illustrated account of naval warfare throughout history.

Editorial consultant **Captain Christopher Page** served for 37 years in the United Kingdom's Royal Navy before retiring to take up the post of Head of the Naval Historical Branch of the Naval Staff.

R.G. Grant is a history writer who has published more than 30 books, many of them dealing with aspects of military conflict. He has written on the American Revolution, World War I, and World War II, and is the author of DK's *Battle*, *Warrior*, and *Flight*.

DK
Discover more at
www.dk.com

IS 978-0756671860 BVA Battle at Sea TP
nted in China
2495
4 00006 08263 3
9